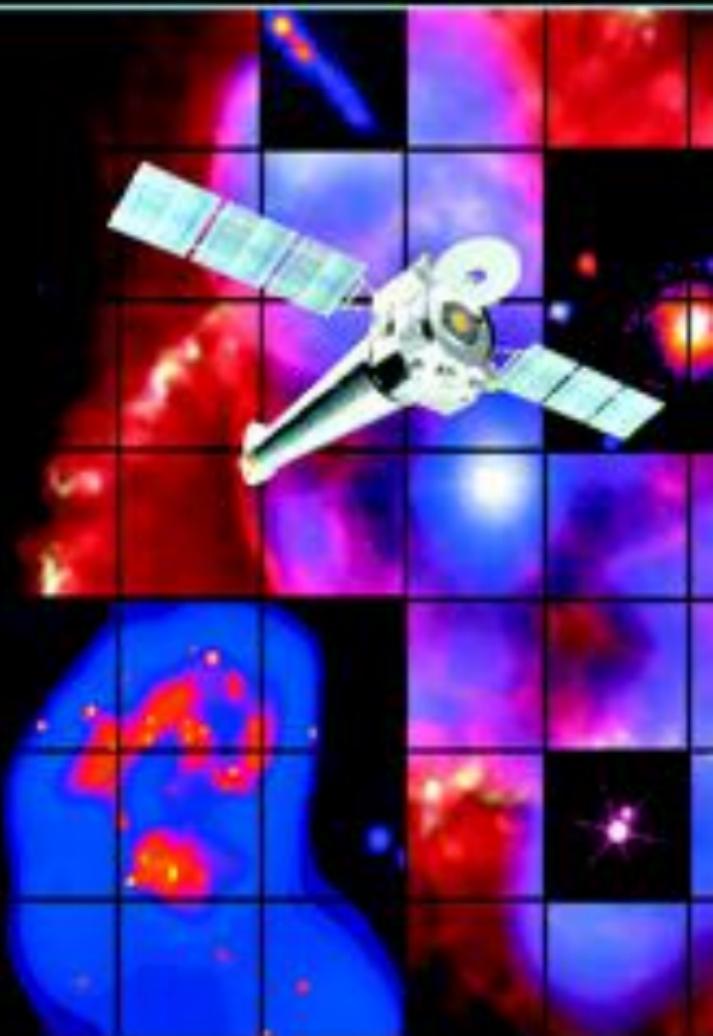


# Handbook of **Space Astronomy** and **Astrophysics**

Martin V. Zombeck

Third Edition



CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE

[www.cambridge.org/9780521782425](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521782425)

This page intentionally left blank

# HANDBOOK OF SPACE ASTRONOMY AND ASTROPHYSICS

Third Edition

Fully updated and including data from space-based observations, this Third Edition is a comprehensive compilation of the facts and figures relevant to astronomy and astrophysics. As well as a vast number of tables, graphs, diagrams, and formulae, it also includes a comprehensive index and bibliography, allowing readers to easily find the information they require. The book covers a diverse range of topics in addition to astronomy and astrophysics, including atomic physics, nuclear physics, relativity, plasma physics, electromagnetism, mathematics, probability and statistics, and geophysics.

This handbook contains the most frequently used information in modern astrophysics, and is an essential reference for graduate students, researchers and professionals working in astronomy and the space sciences. A website containing extensive supplementary information and databases, maintained by the author, can be found at [www.cambridge.org/9780521782425](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521782425).

MARTIN ZOMBECK was a senior scientist at the High Energy Astrophysics Division of the Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics in Cambridge, Massachusetts. He is co-editor of *High Resolution X-ray Spectroscopy of Cosmic Plasmas* (Cambridge University Press, 1990).



# HANDBOOK OF SPACE ASTRONOMY AND ASTROPHYSICS

Third Edition

MARTIN V. ZOMBECK

*Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory, Cambridge, USA*



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo  
  
Cambridge University Press  
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK  
Published in the United States of America by Cambridge University Press, New York  
  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)  
Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9780521782425](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521782425)  
© Cambridge University Press 2007

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provision of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published in print format 2006

ISBN-13 978-0-511-34872-3 eBook (EBL)

ISBN-13 978-0-521-78242-5 hardback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of urls for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

---

# Contents

---

*Some weeks later the Einsteins were taken to the Mt. Wilson Observatory in California. Mrs. Einstein was particularly impressed by the giant telescope. ‘What on Earth do they use it for?, she asked. Her host explained that one of its chief purposes was to find out the shape of the Universe. “Oh”, said Mrs. Einstein, “my husband does that on the back of an envelope. - Bennett Cerf in “Try and Stop Me”.*

## *Foreword*

## *Preface*

1	General data	1
2	Astronomy and astrophysics	35
3	Radio astronomy	185
4	Infrared and submillimeter astronomy	211
5	Ultraviolet astronomy	233
6	X-ray astronomy	253
7	Gamma-ray astronomy	293
8	Cosmic rays	309
9	Earth’s atmosphere and environment	323
10	Relativity and cosmology	347
11	Atomic physics	367
12	Electromagnetic radiation	385
13	Plasma physics	405
14	Experimental astronomy and astrophysics	413
15	Astronautics	535
16	Mathematics	551
17	Probability and statistics	579
18	Radiation safety	597
19	Astronomical catalogs	611
20	Computer science	623
21	Glossary of abbreviations and symbols	651
	<i>Appendices</i>	659
	<i>Index</i>	753



---

# Foreword

---

Modern astrophysics requires the use of observations over the broadest range of wavelengths to fully understand the physical nature of the objects and processes we wish to study in the universe.

Data are obtained from ground-based and space-based observations operating in radio, infrared, visible, ultraviolet, x-rays and gamma rays. The design and operation of the instrumentation used to gather this information, the telescopes and detectors themselves, depend on the interaction between matter and radioactivity at the different wavelengths and requires in-depth knowledge of the findings of molecular, atomic, nuclear, and particle physics.

The observer needs to have the data at hand to understand the properties and the limitations of the instrumentation and their relevance to data reduction, analysis, and interpretation.

The theorist who is seeking new models to interpret the findings from the most sensitive and sophisticated observatories that ever existed needs, from time to time, a reality check with what is known.

The *Handbook of Space Astronomy and Astrophysics* gathers in one place the most frequently-used information in modern astrophysics and presents it in the most useful fashion to the non-specialist in a particular field.

I always loved the chapter on relativistic astrophysics and I am glad it has been retained and improved. I am also glad for the new chapters on experimental subjects that bring the Handbook up-to-date.

I am certain that some young person will find here, as I did, useful food for thought and inspiration that he or she will need to design the next generation of telescopes.

Washington, DC  
May, 2005

Riccardo Giacconi  
Nobel laureate, 2002  
Physics



---

# Preface

---

I have compiled the tables, graphs, diagrams, and formulae in this book in order to provide a ready reference and working tool for the practicing space astronomer and astrophysicist. Ground-based astronomers, students, and advanced amateur astronomers will find much here of interest, too. The material represents a diversified selection based upon the circumstance that the space astronomer and astrophysicist must draw upon knowledge of atomic physics, nuclear physics, relativity, plasma physics, electromagnetism, mathematics, probability and statistics, geophysics, experimental physics, *et cetera*, in addition to the classical branches of astronomy. My hope is that this book will replace hunting through many separate works or a trip to the reference library or to the World Wide Web. In that spirit, I welcome suggestions of material for inclusion in a later edition and, of course, corrections or criticism.

There are 21 chapters in the book. The first chapter contains physical, astronomical, and numerical constants, and unit conversions. Chapters 2-8 cover general astronomy and astrophysics, radio, infrared, ultraviolet, X-ray, and gamma-ray astronomy, and cosmic rays. Chapter 9 contains information on the Earth's atmosphere and environment relevant to space science. Chapter 10 covers special and general relativity and chapter 11 provides relevant information in atomic physics. Electromagnetic radiation and plasma physics are the subjects of chapters 12 and 13. The remaining chapters deal with the tools of the trade, *viz.*, information on radiation and particle interactions, detectors, astronautics, useful mathematical relations, probability and statistics formulae, laboratory radiation safety, a comprehensive list of astronomical catalogs, and computer science. Each chapter ends with a bibliography for further reading on the subject of the chapter and for more extensive reference material. The last chapter contains a glossary of abbreviations and symbols. 11 Appendices contain material that is of a tutorial nature, not suitable for inclusion in the main text, and material suggested recently by reviewers. The book has a complete index.

The question of units is always a problem in a book of this type; sticking to one consistent set (SI, for example) is not very useful to the practitioner; distance to a galaxy in meters, the energy of an X-ray

photon in joules, or the pressure of a gas in newton m<sup>-2</sup> would leave most scientists frustrated. I have tried to use the unit systems common to the particular field. Thus I have used SI (International System of Units), c.g.s., and Gaussian (e.s.u. c.g.s. units); whatever is customary. What is being used is usually noted and whenever the units are not noted, any consistent system will do. If in doubt, perform a numerical check. Besides a complete set of fundamental constants in SI units, I have also provided a subset in c.g.s. units, which are commonly used in the formulae in this book, and unit conversion tables.

I have established and will maintain a Web site at <http://www.astrohandbook.com>, where I will provide links to supplementary information for each chapter and a list of *errata*, if any. The links will provide extensive data bases, complete online texts and scientific journal articles, tutorials, online interactive programs for converting units, calculating astronomical coordinates, plotting X-ray absorption and reflectivity, symbolic mathematics, and much more. I have avoided, with a few exceptions, listing the URLs (uniform resource locator) of online source material since locations and file names often change.

I wish to acknowledge colleagues for their useful suggestions and encouragement, especially Gerald Austin, Daniel Fabricant, George Field, who suggested that I first publish the handbook as a Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory Special Report, Jonathan Grindlay, Paul Gorenstein, F. Rick Harnden, Almus Kenter, Ralph Kraft, Jeffrey McClintock, Gary Meehan, Stephen Murray, who first suggested that I publish my set of notes in handbook form, and Daniel Schwartz of the Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, Joachim Truemper of the Max-Planck-Institut für Extraterrestrische Physik (MPE), and Rashid Sunyaev of the Max-Plank-Institut für Astrophysik.

The typesetting in Latex was initially done by Instill Technologies, BE 277 Salt Lake, Kolkata 700064, India. The partners for this company, Sutanu Ghosh and Pijush K. Maiti did a superior job in typesetting the extensive tables and complex formulae of the handbook. The majority of the typesetting and the completion of the project was accomplished by Gautami Maiti and Pijush K. Maiti of Anin, BC 97 Salt Lake, Kolkata 700064, India. I thank Himel Ghosh, formerly of the Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, for suggesting that I work with Drs. Ghosh and Maiti. The fact that they are physicists helped matters considerably.

My son, Richard, provided substantial technical assistance in the last minute preparations of the book for submission to the publisher.

Now that the book is in electronic format, updated versions will be more easily prepared. A searchable, online version of the book is in the works. Many of the quotations are from "Physically Speaking, a Dictionary of

Quotations on Physics and Astronomy”, Carl C. Gaither and Alma E. Cavazos-Gaither, Institute of Physics Publishing, 1997.

Please cite the original source, if you are referencing any of the material in the *Handbook* in research publications.

I have made every effort to cite the sources for the material presented in this book and to obtain permissions, wherever necessary. If I have omitted a citation, please bring it to my attention.

Naples, Florida  
March, 2006

Martin V. Zombeck  
[mvz@alum.mit.edu](mailto:mvz@alum.mit.edu)



---

# Chapter 1

---

## General data

*Facts themselves are meaningless. It's only the interpretation we give those facts which counts.* - Earl Stanley Gardner

International system of units (SI)	2
Fundamental physical constants (SI)	3
Fundamental physical constants (c.g.s.)	14
Sun-Earth system constants	15
Cosmological data	16
Unit conversions	17
Conversion tables	18
Energy unit conversion	23
Conversion factors for natural units	23
Flux density conversion	24
Numerical constants	25
Mathematical formulae	26
Elementary particles (short list)	27
Elementary particles	28
Energy conversions	29
Prefixes and symbols	30
Periodic table of the elements	31
Greek alphabet	33
Bibliography	33

**International system of units (SI)**

<b>Physical quantity</b>	<b>Name of unit</b>	<b>Symbol</b>
<i>Base units</i>		
length	meter	m
mass	kilogram	kg
time	second	s
electric current	ampere	A
thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	K
amount of substance	mole	mol
luminous intensity	candela	cd
<i>Derived units with special names</i>		
plane angle	radian	rad
solid angle	steradian	sr
frequency	hertz	Hz
energy	joule	J
force	newton	N
pressure	pascal	Pa
power	watt	W
electric charge	coulomb	C
electric potential	volt	V
electric resistance	ohm	$\Omega$
electric conductance	siemens	S
electric capacitance	farad	F
magnetic flux	weber	Wb
inductance	henry	H
magnetic flux density	tesla	T
luminous flux	lumen	lm
illuminance	lux	lx
celsius temperature	degree celsius	$^{\circ}\text{C}$
activity (of a radioactive source)	becquerel	Bq
absorbed dose (of ionizing radiation)	gray	Gy
dose equivalent	sievert	Sv

**Fundamental physical constants (SI)**

(1986 recommended values of the fundamental physical constants. The digits in parentheses are the one-standard-deviation uncertainty in the last digits of the given value. For the latest recommended values see: <http://physics.nist.gov/constants>.)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
<b>GENERAL CONSTANTS</b>				
<i>UNIVERSAL CONSTANTS</i>				
speed of light in vacuum	$c$	299 792 458	$\text{m s}^{-1}$	(exact)
permeability of vacuum	$\mu_0$	$4\pi \times 10^{-7}$ $= 12.566\,370\,614\dots$	$\text{N A}^{-2}$ $10^{-7} \text{ N A}^{-2}$	(exact)
permittivity of vacuum	$\epsilon_0$	$1/\mu_0 c^2$ $= 8.854\,187\,817\dots$	$10^{-12} \text{ F m}^{-1}$	(exact)
Newtonian constant of gravitation	$G$	6.672 59(85)	$10^{-11} \text{ m}^3 \text{ kg}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-2}$	128
Planck constant	$h$	6.626 075 5(40)	$10^{-34} \text{ J s}$	0.60
in electron volts, $h/\{e\}$		4.135 669 2(12)	$10^{-15} \text{ eV s}$	0.30
$h/2\pi$		1.054 572 66(63)	$10^{-34} \text{ J s}$	0.60
in electron volts, $\hbar/\{e\}$		6.582 122 0(20)	$10^{-16} \text{ eV s}$	0.30
Planck mass, $(\hbar c/G)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$m_P$	2.176 71(14)	$10^{-8} \text{ kg}$	64
Planck length, $\hbar/m_P c = (\hbar G/c^3)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$l_P$	1.616 05(10)	$10^{-35} \text{ m}$	64
Planck time, $t_P/c = (\hbar G/c^5)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$t_P$	5.390 56(34)	$10^{-44} \text{ s}$	64

## Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
<i>ELECTROMAGNETIC CONSTANTS</i>				
elementary charge	$e$	1.602 177 33(49)	$10^{-19}$ C	0.30
	$e/h$	2.417 988 36(72)	$10^{14}$ A J $^{-1}$	0.30
magnetic flux quantum, $h/2e$	$\Phi_0$	2.067 834 61(61)	$10^{-15}$ Wb	0.30
Josephson frequency-voltage ratio	$2e/h$	4.835 976 7(14)	$10^{14}$ Hz V $^{-1}$	0.30
quantized Hall conductance	$e^2/h$	3.877 046 14(17)	$10^{-5}$ S	0.045
quantized Hall resistance, $h/e^2 = \frac{1}{2}\mu_0 c/\alpha$	$R_H$	25 812.805 6(12)	$\Omega$	0.045
Bohr magneton, $e\hbar/2m_e$	$\mu_B$	9.274 015.4(31)	$10^{-24}$ J T $^{-1}$	0.34
in electron volts, $\mu_B/\{e\}$		5.788 382 63(52)	$10^{-5}$ eV T $^{-1}$	0.089
in hertz, $\mu_B/h$		1.399 624 18(42)	$10^{10}$ Hz T $^{-1}$	0.30
in wavenumbers, $\mu_B/\hbar c$		46.686 437(14)	$m^{-1}$ T $^{-1}$	0.30
in kelvins, $\mu_B/k$		0.671 709 9(57)	K T $^{-1}$	8.5
nuclear magneton, $e\hbar/2m_p$	$\mu_N$	5.050 786 6(17)	$10^{-27}$ J T $^{-1}$	0.34
in electron volts, $\mu_N/\{e\}$		3.152 451 66(28)	$10^{-8}$ eV T $^{-1}$	0.089
in hertz, $\mu_N/h$		7.622 591 4(23)	MHz T $^{-1}$	0.30
in wavenumbers, $\mu_N/\hbar c$		2.542 622 81(77)	$10^{-2}$ m $^{-1}$ T $^{-1}$	0.30
in kelvins, $\mu_N/k$		3.658 246(31)	K T $^{-1}$	8.5

## Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
<b>ATOMIC CONSTANTS</b>				
<i>ATOM</i>				
fine structure constant, $\frac{1}{2}\mu_0 c e^2/h$	$\alpha$	7.297 353 08(33)	$10^{-3}$	0.045
inverse fine-structure constant	$\alpha^{-1}$	137.035 989 5(61)	$m^{-1}$	0.045
Rydberg constant, $\frac{1}{2}m_e c \alpha^2/h$	$R_\infty$	10973 731.534(13)	$10^{15}$ Hz	0.0012
in hertz, $R_\infty c$		3.289 841 949 9(39)	$10^{-18}$ J	0.0012
in joules, $R_\infty hc$		2.179 874 1(13)	eV	0.60
in electron volts, $R_\infty hc/\{e\}$		13.605 698 1(40)	$10^{-10}$ m	0.30
Bohr radius, $\alpha/4\pi R_\infty$	$a_0$	0.529 177 249(24)	$10^{-18}$ J	0.045
Hartree energy, $e^2/4\pi\epsilon_0 a_0 = 2R_\infty hc$	$E_h$	4.359 748 2(26)	eV	0.60
in electron volts, $E_h/\{e\}$		27.211 396 1(81)	$10^{-4}$ m <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>	0.30
quantum of circulation	$h/2m_e$	3.636 948 07(33)	$10^{-4}$ m <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>	0.089
	$h/m_e$	7.273 896 14(65)	$10^{-4}$ m <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>	0.089
<i>ELECTRON</i>				
electron mass	$m_e$	9.109 389 7(54)	$10^{-31}$ kg	0.59
		5.485 799 03(13)	$10^{-4}$ u	0.023
in electron volts, $m_e c^2/\{e\}$		0.510 999 06(15)	MeV	0.30

## Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
electron-muon mass ratio	$m_e/m_\mu$	4.836 332 18(71)	$10^{-3}$	0.15
electron-proton mass ratio	$m_e/m_p$	5.446 170 13(11)	$10^{-4}$	0.020
electron-deuteron mass ratio	$m_e/m_d$	2.724 437 07(6)	$10^{-4}$	0.020
electron- $\alpha$ -particle mass ratio	$m_e/m_\alpha$	1.370 933 54(3)	$10^{-4}$	0.021
electron specific charge	$-e/m_e$	-1.758 819 62(53)	$10^{11} \text{ C kg}^{-1}$	0.30
electron molar mass	$M(e), M_e$	5.485 799 03(13)	$10^{-7} \text{ kg mol}^{-1}$	0.023
Compton wavelength, $h/m_e c$	$\lambda_C$	2.426 310 58(22)	$10^{-12} \text{ m}$	0.089
$\lambda_C/2\pi = \alpha a_0 = \alpha^2/4\pi R_\infty$	$\lambda_C$	3.861 593 23(35)	$10^{-13} \text{ m}$	0.089
classical electron radius, $\alpha^2 a_0$	$r_e$	2.817 940 92(38)	$10^{-15} \text{ m}$	0.13
Thomson cross-section, $(8\pi/3)r_e^2$	$\sigma_e$	0.665 246 16(18)	$10^{-28} \text{ m}^2$	0.27
electron magnetic moment in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_e$	928.477 01(31)	$10^{-26} \text{ J T}^{-1}$	0.34
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_e/\mu_B$	1.001 159 652 193(10)	$1 \times 10^{-5}$	0.020
electron magnetic moment anomaly, $\mu_e/\mu_B - 1$	$a_e$	1.159 652 193(10)	$10^{-3}$	0.0086
electron g-factor, $2(1 + a_e)$	$g_e$	2.002 319 304 386(20)	$1 \times 10^{-5}$	
electron-muon magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_e/\mu_\mu$	206.766 967(30)	0.15	
electron-proton magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_e/\mu_p$	658.210 688 1(66)	0.010	

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
<i>MUON</i>				
muon mass	$m_\mu$	1.883 532 7(11)	$10^{-28}$ kg	0.61
in electron volts, $m_\mu c^2 / \{e\}$		0.113 428 913(17) 105.658 389(34) $m_\mu/m_e$	u MeV	0.15 0.32
muon-electron mass ratio		206.768 262(30) $M(\mu), M_\mu$	0.15	0.15
muon molar mass		1.134 289 13(17) $\mu_\mu$	$10^{-4}$ kg mol $^{-1}$ $10^{-26}$ J T $^{-1}$	0.15 0.33
muon magnetic moment in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_\mu/\mu_B$	4.490 451 4(15) 4.841 970 97(71)	$10^{-3}$	0.15
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_\mu/\mu_N$	8.890 598 1(13)		0.15
muon magnetic moment anomaly, $[\mu_\mu/(e\hbar/2m_\mu)] - 1$	$a_\mu$	1.165 923 0(84) 2.002 331 846(17)	$10^{-3}$	7.2 0.0084
muon g-factor, $2(1 + a_\mu)$	$g_\mu$	3.183 345 47(47)		0.15
muon-proton magnetic moment ratio				
<i>PROTON</i>				
proton mass	$m_p$	1.672 623 1(10) 1.007 276 470(12) in electron volts, $m_p c^2 / \{e\}$	$10^{-27}$ kg u MeV	0.59 0.012 0.30
proton-electron mass ratio	$m_p/m_e$	938.272 31(28) 1836.152 701(37)		0.020

## Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
proton-muon mass ratio	$m_p/m_\mu$	8.880 244 4(13)	$10^7 \text{ C kg}^{-1}$	0.15
proton specific charge	$e/m_p$	9.578 830 9(29)	$10^{-3} \text{ kg mol}^{-1}$	0.30
proton molar mass	$M(p), M_p$	1.007 276 470(12)	$10^{-15} \text{ m}$	0.012
proton Compton wavelength, $h/m_p c$	$\lambda_{C,p}$	1.321 410 02(12)	$10^{-16} \text{ m}$	0.089
$\lambda_{C,p}/2\pi$	$\lambda_{C,p}$	2.103 089 37(19)	$10^{-16} \text{ m}$	0.089
proton magnetic moment	$\mu_p$	1.410 607 61(47)	$10^{-26} \text{ J T}^{-1}$	0.34
in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_p/\mu_B$	1.521 032 202(15)	$10^{-3}$	0.010
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_p/\mu_N$	2.792 847 386(63)		0.023
diامagnetic shielding correction for protons in pure water, spherical sample, 25°C, $1 - \mu_p'/\mu_p$	$\sigma_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$	25.689(15)	$10^{-6}$	—
shielded proton moment ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , sph., 25°C)	$\mu_p'$	1.410 571 38(47)	$10^{-26} \text{ J T}^{-1}$	0.34
in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_p'/\mu_B$	1.520 993 129(17)	$10^{-3}$	0.011
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_p'/\mu_N$	2.792 775 642(64)		0.023
proton gyromagnetic ratio	$\gamma_p$	26 752.2128(81)	$10^4 \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ T}^{-1}$	0.30
	$\gamma_p/2\pi$	42.577 469(13)	$\text{MHz T}^{-1}$	0.30
uncorrected ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , sph., 25°C)	$\gamma_p'$	26 751.5255(81)	$10^4 \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ T}^{-1}$	0.30
	$\gamma_p'/2\pi$	42.576 375(13)	$\text{MHz T}^{-1}$	0.30

Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
<i>NEUTRON</i>				
neutron mass in electron volts, $m_nc^2/\{e\}$	$m_n$	1.674 928 6(10) 1.008 664 904(14)	$10^{-27} \text{ kg}$ $\text{u}$	0.59 0.014
neutron-electron mass ratio	$m_n/m_e$	939.565 63(28)	$\text{MeV}$	0.30
neutron-proton mass ratio	$m_n/m_p$	1838.683 662(40)		0.022
neutron molar mass	$M(n), M_n$	1.001 378 404(9)	$10^{-3} \text{ kg mol}^{-1}$	0.009
neutron Compton wavelength, $h/m_nc$	$\lambda_{C,n}$	1.319 591 10(12)	$10^{-15} \text{ m}$	0.014
$\lambda_{C,n}/2\pi$		2.100 194 45(19)	$10^{-16} \text{ m}$	0.089
neutron magnetic moment <sup>(a)</sup> in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_n$	0.966 237 07(40)	$10^{-26} \text{ J T}^{-1}$	0.41
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_n/\mu_B$	1.041 875 63(25)	$10^{-3}$	0.24
neutron-electron magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_n/\mu_N$	1.913 042 75(45)		0.24
neutron-proton magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_n/\mu_e$	1.040 668 82(25)	$10^{-3}$	0.24
	$\mu_n/\mu_p$	0.684 979 34(16)		0.24
<i>DEUTERON</i>				
deuteron mass in electron volts, $m_dc^2/\{e\}$	$m_d$	3.343 586 0(20) 2.013 553 214(24)	$10^{-27} \text{ kg}$ $\text{u}$	0.59 0.012
deuteron-electron mass ratio	$m_d/m_e$	1875.613 39(57) 3670.483 014(75)	$\text{MeV}$	0.30 0.020

Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
deuteron-proton mass ratio	$m_d/m_p$	1.999 007 496(6)		0.003
deuteron molar mass	$M(d), M_d$	2.013 553 214(24)	$10^{-3} \text{ kg mol}^{-1}$	0.012
deuteron magnetic moment <sup>(a)</sup>	$\mu_d$	0.433 073 75(15)	$10^{-26} \text{ J T}^{-1}$	0.34
in Bohr magnetons	$\mu_d/\mu_B$	0.466 975 447 9(91)	$10^{-3}$	0.019
in nuclear magnetons	$\mu_d/\mu_N$	0.857 438 230(24)		0.028
deuteron-electron magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_d/\mu_e$	0.466 434 546 0(91)	$10^{-3}$	0.019
deuteron-proton magnetic moment ratio	$\mu_d/\mu_p$	0.307 012 203 5(51)		0.017
PHYSICO-CHEMICAL CONSTANTS				
Avogadro constant	$N_A, L$	6.022 136 7(36)	$10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1}$	0.59
atomic mass constant, $m_u = \frac{1}{12}m(^{12}\text{C})$	$m_u$	1.660 540 2(10)	$10^{-27} \text{ kg}$	0.59
in electron volts, $m_u c^2 / \{e\}$		931.494 32(28)	MeV	0.30
Faraday constant	$F$	96 485 309(29)	$\text{C mol}^{-1}$	0.30
Faraday constant	$N_A h$	3.990 313 23(36)	$10^{-10} \text{ J s mol}^{-1}$	0.089
molar Planck constant	$N_A hc$	0.119 626 58(11)	$\text{J m mol}^{-1}$	0.089
molar gas constant	$R$	8.314 510(70)	$\text{J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$	8.4

(a) The scalar magnitude of the deuteron moment is listed here. The neutron magnetic dipole is directed oppositely to that of the proton, and corresponds to the dipole associated with a spinning negative charge distribution. The vector sum,  $\mu_d = \mu_p + \mu_n$ , is approximately satisfied.

Fundamental physical constants (SI) (*cont.*)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
Boltzmann constant, $R/N_A$ in electron volts, $k_e/\{e\}$ in hertz, $k/h$ in wavenumbers, $k/hc$	$k$	1.380 658(12) 8.617 385(73) 2.083 674(18) 69.503 87(59)	$10^{-23} \text{ J K}^{-1}$ $10^{-5} \text{ eV K}^{-1}$ $10^{10} \text{ Hz K}^{-1}$ $\text{m}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$	8.5 8.4 8.4 8.4
molar volume (ideal gas), $RT/p$ $T = 273.15 \text{ K}, p = 101.325 \text{ Pa}$	$V_m$	22.414 10(19)	$\text{L mol}^{-1}$	8.4
Loschmidt constant, $N_A/V_m$	$n_0$	2.686 763(23)	$10^{25} \text{ m}^{-3}$	8.5
$T = 273.15 \text{ K}, p = 100 \text{ kPa}$	$V_m$	22.711 08(19)	$\text{L mol}^{-1}$	8.4
Sackur-Tetrode constant (absolute entropy constant), $(b)^{(b)} \frac{5}{2} + \ln\{(2\pi m_u k T_1/h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} k T_1/p_0\}$ $T_1 = 1 \text{ K}, p_0 = 100 \text{ kPa}$	$S_0/R$	-1.151 693(21) -1.164 856(21)		18
$p_0 = 101.325 \text{ Pa}$				18
Stefan-Boltzmann constant, $(\pi^2/60)k^4/\hbar^3 c^2$ first radiation constant, $2\pi\hbar c^2$ second radiation constant, $hc/k$	$\sigma$ $c_1$ $c_2$	5.670 51(19) 3.741 774 9(22) 0.014 387 69(12)	$10^{-8} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ K}^{-4}$ $10^{-16} \text{ W m}^2$ $\text{m K}$	34 0.60 8.4
Wien displacement law constant, $b = \lambda_{\max} T = c_2/4.965 114 23\dots$	$b$	2.897 756(24)	$10^{-3} \text{ m K}$	8.4

(b) The entropy of an ideal monoatomic gas of relative atomic weight  $A_r$  is given by

$$S = S_0 + \frac{3}{2} R \ln A_r - R \ln(p/p_0) + \frac{5}{2} R \ln(T/K).$$

### Fundamental physical constants (**SI**) (*cont.*)

#### MAINTAINED UNITS AND STANDARD VALUES

A summary of ‘maintained’ units and ‘standard’ values and their relationship to SI units, based on a least-squares adjustment with 17 degrees of freedom. The digits in parentheses are the one-standard-deviation uncertainty in the last digits of the given value.

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
electron volt, $(e/C) \text{ J} = \{e\} \text{ J}$	eV	1.602 177 33(49)	$10^{-19} \text{ J}$	0.30
(unified) atomic mass unit, $1 \text{ u} = m_{\text{u}} = \frac{1}{12} m(^{12}\text{C})$	u	1.660 540 2(10)	$10^{-27} \text{ kg}$	0.59
standard atmosphere	atm	101 325	Pa	(exact)
standard acceleration of gravity	$g_{\text{n}}$	9.806 65	$\text{m s}^{-2}$	(exact)
‘AS-MAINTAINED’ ELECTRICAL UNITS				
BIPM <sup>(a)</sup> maintained ohm, $\Omega_{69-\text{BI}}$	$\Omega_{\text{BI}85}$	$1 - 1.563(50) \times 10^{-6}$ $= 0.999\,998\,437(50)$	$\Omega$	0.050
$\Omega_{\text{BI}85} \equiv \Omega_{69-\text{BI}}$ (1 Ja 1985)	$\frac{d\Omega_{69-\text{BI}}}{dt}$	-0.0566(15)	$\mu\Omega/\alpha$	—
drift rate of $\Omega_{69-\text{BI}}$	$V_{76-\text{BI}}$	$1 - 7.59(30) \times 10^{-6}$ $= 0.999\,992\,41(30)$	V	0.30
BIPM maintained volt, $V_{76-\text{BI}} = 483\,594 \text{ GHz}(h/2e)$				

## Fundamental physical constants (SI) (cont.)

Quantity	Symbol	Value	Units	Relative uncertainty (ppm)
BIPM maintained ampere, $A_{\text{BIPM}} = V_{76-\text{BI}}/\Omega_{69-\text{BI}}$	$A_{\text{BIS5}}$ $= 0.999\,993\,97(30)$	$1 - 6.03(30) \times 10^{-6}$ $A$	$A$	0.30
<i>X-RAY STANDARDS</i>				
Cu x-unit: $\lambda(\text{CuK}\alpha_1) \equiv 1537.400$ xu	$xu(\text{CuK}\alpha_1)$	1.0002077 89(70)	$10^{-13}$ m	0.70
Mo x-unit: $\lambda(\text{MoK}\alpha_1) \equiv 707.831$ xu	$xu(\text{MoK}\alpha_1)$	1.0002099 38(45)	$10^{-13}$ m	0.45
$\text{\AA}^*: \lambda(\text{W}\text{K}\alpha_1) \equiv 0.209\,100 \text{\AA}^*$	$\text{\AA}^*$	1.00001481(92)	$10^{-10}$ m	0.92
lattice spacing of Si (in vacuum, 22.5°C) <sup>(b)</sup>	$a$ $d_{220}$	0.543 101 96(11) 0.192 015 540(40)	nm nm	0.21 0.21
molar volume of Si, $M(\text{Si})/\rho(\text{Si}) = N_A a^3/8$	$V_m(\text{Si})$	12.058 817 9(89)	$\text{cm}^3 \text{ mol}^{-1}$	0.74

<sup>(a)</sup> BIPM: Bureau International des Poids et Mesures.<sup>(b)</sup> The lattice spacing of single-crystal Si can vary by parts in  $10^7$  depending on the preparation process. Measurements at Physikalisch-Technische Bundesanstalt (FRG) indicate also the possibility of distortions from exact cubic symmetry of the order of 0.2 ppm.(Reprinted with permission from CODATA Bulletin, Number 63, Cohen, E. Richard & Taylor, Barry N., *The 1986 Adjustment of the Fundamental Physical Constants*, Copyright 1987, Pergamon Press, Ltd.)

## A short list of fundamental physical constants (c.g.s.)

---

Speed of light in vacuum	$c = 2.997\,924\,58 \times 10^{10} \text{ cm s}^{-1}$
Gravitational constant	$G = 6.672\,59 \times 10^{-8} \text{ dyn cm}^2 \text{ g}^{-2}$
Planck's constant	$\hbar = 6.626\,075\,5 \times 10^{-27} \text{ erg s}$
Electron charge	$e = 4.803\,206\,8 \times 10^{-10} \text{ esu}$
Mass of electron	$m_e = 9.109\,389\,7 \times 10^{-28} \text{ g}$
Mass of proton	$m_p = 1.672\,623\,1 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g}$
Mass of neutron	$m_n = 1.674\,928\,6 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g}$
Atomic mass unit (amu)	$m_u = 1.660\,540\,2 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g}$
Proton-electron mass ratio	$m_p/m_e = 1\,836.152\,701$
Fine structure constant	$hc/2\pi e^2 = 1/\alpha = 137.035\,989\,5$
Classical electron radius	$e^2/m_e c^2 = r_e = 2.817\,940\,92 \times 10^{-13} \text{ cm}$
Bohr radius	$\begin{aligned} h^2/4\pi^2 m_e e^2 &= a_0 \\ &= 0.529\,177\,249 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm} \end{aligned}$
Electron Compton wavelength	$h/m_e c = \lambda_c = 2.426\,310\,58 \times 10^{-10} \text{ cm}$
Rydberg constant	$2\pi^2 m_e e^4 / ch^3 = R_\infty = 109\,737.315\,34 \text{ cm}^{-1}$
Boltzmann constant	$k = 1.380\,658 \times 10^{-18} \text{ erg K}^{-1}$
Stefan-Boltzmann constant	$\begin{aligned} \sigma = 2\pi^5 k^4 / 15h^3 c^2 \\ &= 5.670\,51 \times 10^{-5} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ K}^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$
Thomson cross-section	$8\pi r_e^2 / 3 = e\sigma = 0.665\,246\,16 \times 10^{-24} \text{ cm}^2$
Bohr magneton	$\begin{aligned} eh/4\pi m_e &= \mu_B \\ &= 9.274\,015\,4 \times 10^{-21} \text{ gauss cm}^3 \end{aligned}$
Permeability of vacuum	$\mu_0 = 1$
Permittivity of vacuum	$\varepsilon_0 = 1$
Magnetic flux quantum $h/2e$	$\Phi_0 = 2.067\,834\,61 \times 10^{-7} \text{ M (maxwell)}$
Quantized Hall conductance $e^2/h$	$G_0 = 3.482\,767\,48 \times 10^7 \text{ statS}$
Avogadro constant	$N_A, L = 6.022\,136\,7 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1}$
Faraday constant $N_A e$	$F = 2.892\,556\,8 \times 10^{14} \text{ esu mol}^{-1}$
Molar gas constant	$R = 8.314\,510 \times 10^7 \text{ erg mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$
Electron volt	$eV = 1.602\,177\,33 \times 10^{-12} \text{ erg}$
(unified) atomic mass unit	$\begin{aligned} 1 u &= m_u = m(^{12}\text{C})/12 \\ &= 1.660\,540\,2 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g} \end{aligned}$

---

(Based on constants recommended by the 1986 CODATA Committee in previous table.)

**Sun-Earth system constants****Sun (Best Estimate)**

Radius	$6.96 \times 10^8$ m
Semidiameter at mean distance	$15'59''.63 = 959''.63$
Mass	$1.9891 \times 10^{30}$ kg
Mean density	$1.41 \times 10^3$ kg m <sup>-3</sup>
Surface gravity	$2.74 \times 10^2$ ms <sup>-2</sup>
Motion relative to nearby stars	$1.94 \times 10^4$ ms <sup>-1</sup>
Period of synodic rotation ( $\phi$ = latitude)	$26.90 + 5.2 \sin^2 \phi$ days
Period of sidereal rotation	25.38 days

**Earth (IAU System)**

Equatorial radius for Earth	$a = 6378140$ m
Dynamical form-factor for Earth	$J_2 = 0.001\,082\,63$
Flattening of Earth	$1/f = 298.257$
Polar radius	$b = 6356755$ m
Mass of the Earth	$M = 5.9742 \times 10^{24}$ kg
Mean density	$5.52 \times 10^3$ kg m <sup>-3</sup>
Normal gravity ( $g$ ) ( $\phi$ = latitude)	$9.806\,21 - 0.025\,93 \cos 2\phi$ + 0.000 03 cos 4 $\phi$ ms <sup>-2</sup>

Rotation period with respect to fixed stars

in mean sidereal time	24 <sup>h</sup> 00 <sup>m</sup> 00 <sup>s</sup> .008 4
in mean solar time	23 <sup>h</sup> 56 <sup>m</sup> 04 <sup>s</sup> .098 9

Rate of rotation

Annual rate of precession (T in centuries from J2000.0)

general precession in longitude  $50''.290\,966 + 0''.022\,222\,6T$

Constant of nutation (J2000.0)  $N = 9''.202\,5$

Solar parallax  $8''.794\,148$

Constant of Aberration (J2000.0)  $20''.495\,52$

Light-time for 1 AU  $499.004\,782$  s

1 AU  $1.495\,787\,0 \times 10^{11}$  m

Mean eccentricity of orbit  $0.016\,708\,617$

Obliquity of the ecliptic (T in centuries from J2000.0)  $23^\circ 26'21''.448 - 46''.815T$

Mean Earth-Sun distance  $1.000\,001\,017\,8$  AU

Mean orbital speed  $29.785\,9 \times 10^3$  m s<sup>-1</sup>

Sun/Earth mass ratio  $332946.0$

Moon/Earth mass ratio  $0.012\,300\,2$

Mean lunar distance  $3.844 \times 10^8$  m

**Time**

1 day = 24 hours = 1440 minutes = 86400 seconds

1 Julian year = 365.25 days = 8766 hours = 525960 minutes  
= 31557600 seconds

Tropical year (J2000.0) 365.242 days  
(equinox to equinox)

The Earth-Sun Lagrange points are discussed in Chapter 15.

(From Seidelmann, P.K., *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*, University Science Books, Mill Valley, CA, 1990)

Additional data can be found in Chapters 2 and 9.

## Cosmological data

---

Hubble constant	$H_0 = 70 \pm 7 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ (1999, HST Key Project Team) $= (2.3 \pm 0.2) \times 10^{-18} \text{ s}^{-1}$
Hubble time	$1/H_0 = (4.3 \pm 0.4) \times 10^{17} \text{ s}$ $= (14 \pm 1) \times 10^9 \text{ years}$
Hubble distance	$R = c/H_0 = (4.3 \pm 0.4) \times 10^3 \text{ Mpc}$ $= (1.3 \pm 0.1) \times 10^{26} \text{ m}$
Critical density	$\rho_c = 3H_0^2/8\pi G$ $= (9.5 \pm 1) \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg m}^{-3}$
Volume	$4\pi R^3/3 = (3.3 \pm 0.3) \times 10^{11} \text{ Mpc}^3$ $= (9.2 \pm 0.9) \times 10^{78} \text{ m}^3$
Smoothed density of galactic material throughout universe (Allen 1973)	$2 \times 10^{-31} \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ $= 2 \times 10^{-28} \text{ kg m}^{-3}$ $1 \times 10^{-7} \text{ atom cm}^{-3}$ $= 1 \times 10^{-1} \text{ atom m}^{-3}$
Space density of galaxies	$3 \times 10^9 M_\odot \text{ Mpc}^{-3}$
Luminous emission from galaxies	$0.02 \text{ Mpc}^{-3}$
Mean sky brightness from galaxies	$3 \times 10^8 L_\odot \text{ Mpc}^{-3}$
Cosmic background	$1.4 (m_v = 10) \text{ deg}^{-2}$
thermodynamic temperature	$2.728 \pm 0.002 \text{ K}$ (COBE)
Energy density of cosmic background radiation (CBR)	$0.261\,53(T/2.728)^4 \text{ eV cm}^{-3}$ $4.190\,17 \times 10^{-14}(T/2.728)^4 \text{ joule m}^{-3}$ $411.87 \text{ cm}^{-3} = 4.1187 \times 10^8 \text{ m}^{-3}$
Number density of CBR	
Energy density of relativistic particles	$0.439\,72 \text{ eV cm}^{-3}$ $= 7.045\,09 \times 10^{-14} \text{ joule m}^{-3}$
Weak coupling constant	$g_{wk} = 1.435 \times 10^{-49} \text{ erg cm}^3$ $= 1.435 \times 10^{-62} \text{ joule m}^3$

---

(See Chapter 10 and <http://pdg.lbl.gov/2002/astrorpp.pdf> for additional data.)

## Unit conversions

---

$$1 \text{ keV: } hc/E = 12.398\,54 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm} \quad 1 \text{ keV} = 1.602\,177 \times 10^{-9} \text{ erg} \\ = 1.602\,177 \times 10^{-16} \text{ joule}$$

$$1 \text{ keV: } E/h = 2.417\,965 \times 10^{17} \text{ Hz} \quad 1 \text{ joule} = 10^7 \text{ erg}$$

$$1 \text{ keV: } E/k = 11.6048 \times 10^6 \text{ K} \quad 1 \text{ calorie} = 4.184 \text{ joule}$$

$$1.0 \text{ EH}z: h\nu = 4.135\,71 \text{ keV}$$

$$1 \text{ parsec} = 3.261\,633 \text{ light years} = 3.085\,678 \times 10^{18} \text{ cm} \\ = 3.085\,678 \times 10^{16} \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ light year} = 9.460\,530 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm} = 9.460\,530 \times 10^{15} \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ XU} = 1.002\,09 \times 10^{-11} \text{ cm} = 1.002\,09 \times 10^{-13} \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ \AA ngstrom} \equiv 1 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm} = 1 \times 10^{-10} \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ amu: } Mc^2 = 1.492\,41 \times 10^{-3} \text{ erg} = 931.494 \text{ MeV} \\ = 1.492\,41 \times 10^{-10} \text{ joule}$$

$$760 \text{ torr} = 1.013 \times 10^6 \text{ dyn cm}^{-2} = 1 \text{ atmos.} = 1.013 \text{ bars} \\ = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ pascals}$$

$$1 \text{ Rayleigh} \equiv (1/4\pi) \times 10^6 \text{ photons cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}$$

$$1 \text{ Uhuru ct s}^{-1} = 1.7 \times 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{ (2 - 6 keV)} \\ = 2.4 \times 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{ (2 - 10 keV)}$$

X-ray source intensity in millerabs =

$$10^3 \int_{E_1}^{E_2} E(dN/dE)dE / \int_{E_1}^{E_2} E(dN/dE)_{\text{Crab}}dE$$

$dN/dE$  and  $(dN/dE)_{\text{Crab}}$  are the source and Crab Nebula photon spectral flux density, respectively.

For  $E_2 = 10$  keV and  $E_1 = 2$  keV,

$$\int_E^{E_2} E(dN/dE)_{\text{Crab}}dE = 2.3 \times 10^{-8} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

Crab spectrum is from Chapter 6.

$$1 \text{ flux unit} \equiv 10^{-26} \text{ watt m}^{-2} \text{Hz}^{-1} \equiv 1 \text{ Jansky}$$

$$1.0 \mu\text{Jy} = 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{Hz}^{-1} \\ = 0.242 \times 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1} \\ = 1.509 \times 10^{-3} \text{ keV cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$$

$$1 \text{ curie: amount of material undergoing } 3.7 \times 10^{10} \text{ disintegrations s}^{-1}$$

$$1 \text{ nautical mile} = 1852 \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ statute mile} = 1609.344 \text{ m}$$

$$\text{intensity (erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{Hz}^{-1})$$

$$= 3.33 \times 10^{-19} \lambda^2 (\text{\AA}) \text{ intensity (erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{\AA}^{-1})$$

$$1 \text{ barn} = 10^{-24} \text{ cm}^2 = 10^{-28} \text{ m}^2$$

$$1 \text{ tesla} = 10^4 \text{ gauss}$$

$$0^\circ\text{C} = 273.15 \text{ K}$$


---

### Conversion tables

(A given amount of a physical quantity, expressed in the units of one system, is expressed as an equivalent number of units in another system.)

Quantity	Amount	Unit	Amount	Unit
<b>LENGTH</b>				
1				
1	$\text{meter (SI)} = 1.000\,00E + 02$	centimeter (cgs)		
1	$\text{light year} = 9.460\,63E + 15$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{parsec} = 3.085\,68E + 16$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{\AAngstrom} = 1.000\,01E - 10$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{\AAngstrom} = 1.000\,01E - 08$	centimeter (cgs)		
1	$\text{micron} = 1.000\,00E - 06$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{nanometer} = 1.000\,00E - 09$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{XU} = 1.002\,09E - 13$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{fermi} = 1.000\,00E - 15$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{nautical mile} = 1.852\,00E + 03$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{statute mile} = 1.609\,34E + 03$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{astron. unit (AU)} = 1.495\,98E + 11$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{solar radius} = 6.959\,90E + 08$	meter (SI)		
1	$\text{centimeter (cgs)} = 3.240\,78E - 19$	parsec		
1	$\text{centimeter (cgs)} = 6.684\,56E - 14$	astron. unit (AU)		
1	$\text{meter (SI)} = 3.240\,78E - 17$	parsec		
1	$\text{meter (SI)} = 6.684\,54E - 12$	astron. unit (AU)		
1	$\text{inch (Eng)} = 2.540\,00E - 02$	meter (SI)		
<b>VOLUME</b>				
1	$\text{fluid ounce (US)} = 2.957\,353E - 05$	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	$\text{ft}^3 = 2.831\,685E - 02$	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	$\text{in}^3 = 1.638\,706E - 05$	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	$\text{gallon (US)} = 3.785\,412E - 03$	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	$\text{gallon (US)} = 3.785\,412\text{E}00$	liter		

Conversion tables (*cont.*)

Quantity	Amount	Unit	Amount	Unit
MASS				
1	gallon (US) = 4.000	quart		
1	quart = 2.000	pint		
1	liter = 1.000 000E - 03	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	barrel = 1.589 873E - 01	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
1	cup = 2.366E + 02	mL		
1	yd <sup>3</sup> = 7.645 549E - 01	meter <sup>3</sup> (SI)		
		gram (cgs)		
		gram (cgs)		
		kilogram (SI)		
		gram (cgs)		
		kilogram (SI)		
		at. mass unit (amu)		
1	at. mass unit (amu) = 1.660 54E - 24	solar mass		
1	at. mass unit (amu) = 1.660 54E - 27	at. mass unit (amu)		
1	solar mass = 1.989 10E + 33	kilogram (SI)		
1	solar mass = 1.989 10E + 30	gram (cgs)		
1	gram (cgs) = 6.02214E + 23	at. mass unit (amu)		
1	gram (cgs) = 5.027 40E - 34	solar mass		
1	kilogram (SI) = 6.02214E + 26	at. mass unit (amu)		
1	kilogram (SI) = 5.027 40E - 31	solar mass		
1	kilogram (SI) = 2.024 62E + 00	pound (avdp.)		
1	kilogram (SI) = 3.527 40E + 01	ounce (avdp.)		
1	pound (avdp.) = 4.535 92E - 01	kilogram (SI)		
1	pound (avdp.) = 1.600 90E + 01	ounce (avdp.)		
1	ounce (avdp.) = 2.834 95E + 01	gram (cgs)		
1	gram (cgs) = 3.527 40E - 02	ounce (avdp.)		
1	ounce (troy) = 3.110 35E + 01	gram (cgs)		
1	gram (cgs) = 3.215 07E - 02	ounce (troy)		
ENERGY				
1	joule (SI) = 1.000 000E + 07	erg (cgs)		
1	joule (SI) = 6.241 51E + 18	electron volt (eV)		

### Conversion tables (*cont.*)

Quantity	Amount	Unit	Amount	Unit	Unit
	1	erg (cgs) = 1.000 00E - 07		joule (SI)	
	1	erg (cgs) = 6.241 51E + 11		electron volt	
	1	electron volt = 1.602 18E - 12		erg (cgs)	
	1	amu $\times c^2$ = 9.314 95E + 08		electron volt	
	1	gm (cgs) $\times c^2$ = 5.609 59E + 32		electron volt	
	1	calorie = 4.184 00E + 00		joule (SI)	
FORCE					
	1	newton (SI) = 1.000 00E + 05		dyne (cgs)	
	1	dyne (cgs) = 1.000 00E - 05		newton (SI)	
	1	pound force = 4.448 22E + 00		newton (SI)	
	1	newton (SI) = 2.248 09E - 01		pound force	
PRESSURE					
	1	pascal (SI) = 1.000 00E + 00		newton m <sup>-2</sup> (SI)	
	1	bar = 1.000 00E + 06		dyne cm <sup>-2</sup> (cgs)	
	1	bar = 9.869 23E - 01		atmosphere	
	1	torr = 1.333 22E - 03		bar	
	1	psi = 6.894 76E + 03		pascal (SI)	
	1	pascal = 1.450 38E - 04		psi	
	1	psi = 6.894 76E - 02		bar	
	1	psi = 5.171 49E + 01		torr	
POWER					
	1	watt (SI) = 1.000 00E + 07		erg s <sup>-1</sup> (cgs)	
	1	horsepower = 7.457 00E + 02		watt (SI)	
	1	Btu s <sup>-1</sup> (Eng) = 1.055 80E + 03		watt (SI)	

## Conversion tables (*cont.*)

## Conversion tables

Quantity	Amount	Unit	Amount	Unit
TIME				
1	second (SI) = 1	second (cgs)		
1	minute = 6.000 00E + 01	second		
1	hour = 3.600 00E + 03	second		
1	day = 8.640 00E + 04	second		
1	tropical year = 3.155 69E + 07	day		
1	tropical year = 3.652 42E + 02	tropical year		
1	second = 3.168 88E - 08	second (SI)		
1	sidereal second = 9.972 70E - 01	day		
1	sidereal year = 3.652 56E + 02	day		
TEMPERATURE				
T	kelvin = $T - 273.15$	celsius		
T	kelvin = $(9/5) \times (T - 273.15) + 32$	fahrenheit		
T	celsius = $T + 273.15$	kelvin		
T	fahrenheit = $(5/9) \times (T - 32) + 273.15$	kelvin		
T	celsius = $(9/5) \times T + 32$	fahrenheit		
T	fahrenheit = $(5/9) \times (T - 32)$	celsius		
1	electron volt : 1.160 48E + 04	kelvin		
1	kelvin : 8.617 12E - 05	electron volt		
ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM				
Charge	coulomb = 2.997 92E + 09	statcoulomb		
Charge density	coulomb m <sup>-3</sup> = 2.997 92E + 03	statcoul cm <sup>-3</sup>		
Current	ampere (coul s <sup>-1</sup> ) = 2.997 92E + 09	statampere		
Current density	ampere m <sup>-2</sup> = 2.997 92E + 05	statamp cm <sup>-2</sup>		
Electric field	volt m <sup>-1</sup> = 3.335 65E - 05	statvolt cm <sup>-1</sup>		
Potential	volt = 3.335 65E - 03	statvolt		

Conversion tables (*cont.*)

Quantity	Amount	Unit	Amount	Unit
Resistance	1	$\text{ohm} = 1.112\,65E - 12$	$\text{s cm}^{-1}$	
Resistivity	1	$\text{ohm m} = 1.112\,65E - 10$	s	
Conductance	1	$\text{siemens} = 8.987\,52E + 11$	$\text{cm s}^{-1}$	
Conductivity	1	$\text{mho}^{-1} = 8.987\,52E + 09$	$\text{s}^{-1}$	
Capacitance	1	$\text{farad} = 8.987\,52E + 11$	cm	
Magnetic flux	1	$\text{weber} = 1.000\,00E + 08$	$\text{gauss cm}^2$ (maxwell)	
Magnetic flux density	1	$\text{tesla} = 1.000\,00E + 04$	gauss	
Magnetic field	1	$\text{ampere-turn m}^{-1} = 1.256\,64E - 02$	gauss	
Inductance	1	$\text{henry} = 1.112\,65E - 12$	oersted	
		$\text{s}^2 \text{ cm}^{-1}$		
MISCELLANEOUS				
Radio-activity	1	$\text{curie (SI)} = 3.700\,00E + 10$	disinteg. $\text{s}^{-1}$	
Intensity	1	$\text{rayleigh} = 7.957\,75E + 04$	$\text{ph cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}$	
Flux density	1	$\text{fu or jansky} = 1.000\,00E - 26$	watt m $^{-2}$ Hz $^{-1}$	
Flux density	1	$\text{jansky} = 1.000\,00E - 05$	$\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{GHz}^{-1}$	
Flux density	1	$\text{jansky} = 2.417\,97E - 06$	$\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$	
Flux density	1	$\text{jansky} = 1.509\,00E + 03$	$\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$	
Energy equivalence	1	$\text{eV} : 1.239\,85E + 04$	$\text{\AA} \text{ngstrom}$	
Wavelength equivalence	1	$\text{eV} : 2.417\,97E + 11$	Hz	
Angle	1	$\text{arcsec} = 4.848\,14E - 06$	eV	
Angle	1	$\text{arcmin} = 2.908\,88E - 04$	radian	
Angle	1	$\text{degree} = 1.745\,33E - 02$	radian	
Solid angle	1	$\text{arcsec}^2 = 2.350\,40E - 11$	radian	
Solid angle	1	$\text{arcmin}^2 = 8.461\,70E - 08$	steradian	
Solid angle	1	$\text{deg}^2 = 3.046\,20E - 04$	steradian	

**Energy unit conversion**

TO $\rightarrow$		$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	$\lambda(\mu\text{m})$	$\lambda(\text{cm})$	$\nu(\text{Hz})$	$E(\text{keV})$	$\tilde{\nu}(\text{cm}^{-1})$	$E(\text{erg})$
FROM $\downarrow$								
$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	1	$10^{-4}\lambda$	$10^{-8}\lambda$	$3.00 \times 10^{18}/\lambda$	$12.4/\lambda$	$10^8/\lambda$	$1.99 \times 10^{-8}/\lambda$	
$\lambda(\mu\text{m})$	$10^4\lambda$	1	$10^{-4}\lambda$	$3.00 \times 10^{14}/\lambda$	$1.24 \times 10^{-3}/\lambda$	$10^4/\lambda$	$1.99 \times 10^{-12}/\lambda$	
$\lambda(\text{cm})$	$10^8\lambda$	$10^4\lambda$	1	$3.00 \times 10^{10}/\lambda$	$1.24 \times 10^{-7}/\lambda$	$1/\lambda$	$1.99 \times 10^{-16}/\lambda$	
$\nu(\text{Hz})$	$3.00 \times 10^{18}/\nu$	$3.00 \times 10^{14}/\nu$	$3.00 \times 10^{10}/\nu$	1	$4.14 \times 10^{-18}\nu$	$3.34 \times 10^{-11}\nu$	$6.63 \times 10^{-27}\nu$	
$E(\text{keV})$	$12.4/E$	$1.24 \times 10^{-3}/E$	$1.24 \times 10^{-7}/E$	$2.42 \times 10^{17}E$	1	$8.07 \times 10^6 E$	$1.60 \times 10^{-9}E$	
$\tilde{\nu}(\text{cm}^{-1})$	$10^8/\tilde{\nu}$	$10^4/\tilde{\nu}$	$1/\tilde{\nu}$	$3.00 \times 10^{10}\tilde{\nu}$	$1.24 \times 10^{-7}\tilde{\nu}$	1	$1.99 \times 10^{-16}\tilde{\nu}$	
$E(\text{erg})$	$1.99 \times 10^{-8}/E$	$1.99 \times 10^{-12}/E$	$1.99 \times 10^{-16}/E$	$1.51 \times 10^{26}E$	$6.24 \times 10^8 E$	$5.03 \times 10^{15}E$	$1$	

(Reprinted with permission from Eureka Scientific, Inc., Oakland, CA)

Note: 1 Å = 0.1 nanometer.

**Conversion factors for natural units;  $c = \hbar = 1$ .**

	$s^{-1}$	$\text{cm}^{-1}$	K	eV	amu	erg	g
$\text{s}^{-1}$	1	$0.334 \times 10^{10}$	$0.764 \times 10^{-11}$	$0.658 \times 10^{-15}$	$0.707 \times 10^{-24}$	$1.055 \times 10^{-27}$	$1.173 \times 10^{-48}$
$\text{cm}^{-1}$	$2.998 \times 10^{10}$	1	0.229	$1.973 \times 10^{-5}$	$2.118 \times 10^{-14}$	$3.161 \times 10^{-17}$	$0.352 \times 10^{-37}$
K	$1.310 \times 10^{11}$	4.369	1	$0.862 \times 10^{-4}$	$0.962 \times 10^{-13}$	$1.381 \times 10^{-16}$	$1.537 \times 10^{-37}$
eV	$1.519 \times 10^{15}$	$0.507 \times 10^5$	$1.160 \times 10^4$	1	$1.074 \times 10^{-9}$	$1.602 \times 10^{-12}$	$1.783 \times 10^{-33}$
amu	$1.415 \times 10^{24}$	$0.472 \times 10^{14}$	$1.081 \times 10^{13}$	$0.931 \times 10^9$	1	$1.492 \times 10^{-3}$	$1.661 \times 10^{-24}$
erg	$0.948 \times 10^{27}$	$0.316 \times 10^{17}$	$0.724 \times 10^{16}$	$0.624 \times 10^{12}$	$0.670 \times 10^3$	1	$1.113 \times 10^{-21}$
g	$0.852 \times 10^{48}$	$2.843 \times 10^{37}$	$0.651 \times 10^{37}$	$0.561 \times 10^{33}$	$0.602 \times 10^{24}$	$0.899 \times 10^{21}$	1

Flux Density Conversion ( $E$  in keV;  $\lambda$  in Å)

TO → FROM ↓		$S_\nu(\text{Jy})$	$f_E \left( \frac{\text{photons}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s keV}} \right)$	$f_\lambda \left( \frac{\text{photons}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Å}} \right)$	$F_\lambda \left( \frac{\text{ergs}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Å}} \right)$	$F_\nu \left( \frac{\text{ergs}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Hz}} \right)$
$f_E \left( \frac{\text{photons}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s keV}} \right)$	$6.63 \times 10^{-4} E f_E$	$f_E$	$8.07 \times 10^{-2} E^2 f_E$	$1.29 \times 10^{-10} E^3 f_E$	$6.63 \times 10^{-27} E f_E$	$10^{-23} S_\nu$
$f_\lambda \left( \frac{\text{photons}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Å}} \right)$	$6.63 \times 10^{-4} \lambda f_\lambda$	$8.07 \times 10^{-2} \lambda^2 f_\lambda$	$f_\lambda$	$1.99 \times 10^{-8} f_\lambda / \lambda$	$6.63 \times 10^{-27} \lambda f_\lambda$	
$F_\lambda \left( \frac{\text{ergs}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Å}} \right)$	$3.34 \times 10^4 \lambda^2 F_\lambda$	$4.06 \times 10^6 \lambda^3 F_\lambda$	$5.03 \times 10^7 \lambda F_\lambda$	$F_\lambda$	$3.34 \times 10^{-19} \lambda^2 F_\lambda$	
$F_\nu \left( \frac{\text{ergs}}{\text{cm}^2 \text{s Hz}} \right)$	$10^{23} F_\nu$	$1.51 \times 10^{26} F_\nu / E$	$1.51 \times 10^{26} F_\nu / \lambda$	$3.00 \times 10^{18} F_\nu / \lambda^2$	$F_\nu$	

(Reprinted with permission from Eureka Scientific, Inc., Oakland, CA)

## Numerical constants

---

$\pi = 3.141\,592\,7$	$\text{rad} = 57.295\,78 \text{ deg}$
$e = 2.718\,281\,8$	$= 3.437\,747 \times 10^3 \text{ arcmin}$
$\ln 2 = 0.693\,147\,2$	$= 2.062\,648 \times 10^5 \text{ arcsec}$
$\log_{10} 2 = 0.301\,030\,0$	$\text{steradian} = 32\,400/\pi^2$
	$= 3.2828 \times 10^3 \text{ deg}^2$
$\ln 10 = 2.302\,585\,1$	$= 1.1818 \times 10^7 \text{ arcmin}^2$
$\log_{10} e = 0.434\,294\,5$	$= 4.2545 \times 10^{10} \text{ arcsec}^2$
$(2\pi)^{1/2} = 2.506\,628$	$\text{degree} = 0.017\,4533 \text{ rad}$
$\pi^2 = 9.869\,604$	$\text{arcmin} = 2.908\,88 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad}$
$2^{10} = 1024$	$\text{arcsec} = 4.848\,137 \times 10^{-6} \text{ rad}$
$e^{-1} = 0.367\,879\,4$	$\text{deg}^2 = 3.0462 \times 10^{-4} \text{ steradian}$
$\Gamma(1/2) = \pi^{1/2}$	$\text{arcmin}^2 = 8.4617 \times 10^{-8} \text{ steradian}$
Feigenbaum's constants:	$\text{arcsec}^2 = 2.3504 \times 10^{-11} \text{ steradian}$
$\delta = 4.669\,201\,6$	Fibonacci numbers:
$\alpha = 2.502\,907\,875\,0$	$F_1 = 1 \quad F_2 = 1$
Euler-Mascheroni: $0.577\,215\,664\,9$	$F_{n+2} = F_n + F_{n+1}, n \geq 1$
Golden mean = $0.618\,033\,988\,7\dots$	

<i>Powers of 2:</i>			<i>Number system conversions:</i>			
<i>n</i>	$2^n$	$\log 2^n$	Decimal	Octal	Binary	Hexadecimal
0	1	0.00	0	0	0000	0
1	2	0.30	1	1	0001	1
2	4	0.60	2	2	0010	2
3	8	0.90	3	3	0011	3
4	16	1.20	4	4	0100	4
5	32	1.51	5	5	0101	5
6	64	1.81	6	6	0110	6
7	128	2.11	7	7	0111	7
8	256	2.41	8	10	1000	8
9	512	2.71	9	11	1001	9
10	1024	3.01	10	12	1010	A
11	2048	3.31	11	13	1011	B
12	4096	3.61	12	14	1100	C
13	8192	3.91	13	15	1101	D
14	16\,384	4.21	14	16	1110	E
15	32\,768	4.52	15	17	1111	F
20	1\,048\,576	6.02	16	20	10000	10
25	33\,554\,432	7.53				
<i>n</i>		$0.301n$				

---

## Mathematical formulae

$$(a+x)^n = a^n + na^{n-1}x + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^{n-2}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}a^{n-3}x^3 + \cdots + nax^{n-1} + x^n, \quad \text{where } n \text{ is any positive integer.}$$

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots.$$

$$\ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots \quad \text{for } -1 < x \leq 1.$$

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots, \quad \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots.$$

$$\int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du + C, \quad \begin{aligned} \int_0^\pi \sin^2 nx \, dx &= \int_0^\pi \cos^2 nx \, dx \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{for an integer, } n \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-a^2 x^2} dx = \pi^{1/2} / 2a, \quad \int_0^\infty x^n e^{-ax} dx = \Gamma(n+1) / a^{n+1}.$$

$$F(u) = \int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) e^{-2\pi i ux} dx \leftrightarrow f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^\infty F(u) e^{2\pi i ux}.$$

The factorial  $n!$  is defined for a positive integer  $n$  as  $n! \equiv n(n-1)\cdots 2 \cdot 1$ .

$n! \approx (2\pi)^{1/2} n^{n+1/2} e^{-n}$  (for large  $n$ ).

The functional equation of the Gamma Function:

$$\Gamma(x+1) = x\Gamma(x), \quad \text{for } x > 0. \quad \Gamma(n+1) = n!, \quad \text{for integer } n > 0.$$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = - \int_b^a f(x) dx, \quad \begin{aligned} \int_a^b f(x) dx &= \int_a^c f(x) dx \\ &\quad + \int_c^b f(x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} f[u(x)] = \frac{df}{du} \frac{du}{dx}, \quad \frac{d}{dx} [u(x)v(x)] = v \frac{du}{dx} + u \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \ln y(x) = y'(x)/y(x), \quad 2.30 \log_{10} x = \log_e x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} [\log(u(x)/v(x))] = v(x)[u'(x)/v(x) - u(x)v'(x)/v(x)^2] / \ln(10)u(x),$$

where ' denotes  $\frac{d}{dx}$ .

$$\sin(A+B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B, \quad \sin 2A = 2 \sin A \cos A$$

$$\cos(A+B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B, \quad \cos 2A = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A.$$

$$e^{ix} = \cos x + i \sin x.$$

$$(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^n = \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta.$$

**Elementary particles** (short list)

Particle	Charge	Mass (amu)	Spin	Magnetic moment	Mean life <sup>(a)</sup> (s)
Photon	0	0	1	0	stable
$\pi$ -meson	+1, -1	0.149 84	1	0	$2.60 \times 10^{-8}$
	0	0.144 90	0	0	$0.83 \times 10^{-16}$
Neutrino	0	$< 10^{-6}$	1/2	$\sim 0$	stable
Electron, positron	-1, +1	0.000 548 6	1/2	$1.001\ 160\ \mu_B^{(b)}$	stable
$\mu$ -meson	-1, +1	0.1134	1/2	$0.004\ 842\ \mu_B$	$2.20 \times 10^{-6}$
Proton	+1, -1	1.007 276	1/2	$2.792\ 85\ \mu_B^{(c)}$	stable
Neutron	0	1.008 665	1/2	$-1.913\ 04\ \mu_N$	$917 \pm 14$

(<sup>a</sup>) half-life = mean life  $\times \ln 2$

(<sup>b</sup>)  $\mu_B = eh/4\pi m_e c = 9.274\ 015\ 4(31) \times 10^{-24} \text{ JT}^{-1}$

(<sup>c</sup>)  $\mu_N = eh/4\pi m_p c = 5.050\ 786\ 6(17) \times 10^{-27} \text{ JT}^{-1}$ .

(Data from 'Reviews of Particle Properties', *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **52**, No. 2, April 1980)

### Short List of Elementary Particles

(The second column is the isospin  $t$ , while the next column is the spin and parity,  $J^P$ . Masses and lifetimes have generally been rounded; see the original reference for error bars and a complete listing of particle properties.)

Particle	$t$	$J^P$	Mass (MeV)	Mean life (s)
<i>LEPTONS</i>				
$e$		$\frac{1}{2}$	0.511 003	Stable
$\mu$		$\frac{1}{2}$	105.6594	$2.197\,14 \times 10^{-6}$
$\tau$		$\frac{1}{2}$	1784	$5 \times 10^{-13}$
<i>NONSTRANGE BARYONS</i>				
$p$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	938.280	Stable
$n$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	939.573	925
$\Delta$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{3}{2}^+$	1232	$6 \times 10^{-24}$
<i>STRANGENESS = -1 BARYONS</i>				
$\Lambda$	0	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1115.60	$2.63 \times 10^{-10}$
$\Sigma^+$	1	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1189.36	$8.00 \times 10^{-11}$
$\Sigma^0$	1	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1192.46	$6 \times 10^{-20}$
$\Sigma^-$	1	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1197.34	$1.48 \times 10^{-10}$
<i>STRANGENESS = -2 BARYONS</i>				
$\Xi^0$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1314.9	$2.9 \times 10^{-10}$
$\Xi^-$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	1321.3	$1.64 \times 10^{-10}$
<i>STRANGENESS = -3 BARYON</i>				
$\Omega^-$	0	$\frac{3}{2}^+$	1672.5	$8.2 \times 10^{-11}$
<i>NONSTRANGE CHARMED BARYON</i>				
$\Lambda_c^+$	0	$\frac{1}{2}^+$	2282	$1 \times 10^{-13}$
<i>NONSTRANGE MESONS</i>				
$\pi^\pm$	1	$0^-$	139.567	$2.603 \times 10^{-8}$
$\pi^0$	1	$0^-$	134.963	$8.3 \times 10^{-17}$
$\eta$	0	$0^-$	548.8	$8 \times 10^{-19}$
$\rho$	1	$1^-$	769	$4.3 \times 10^{-24}$
$\omega$	0	$1^-$	782.6	$6.6 \times 10^{-23}$
$\eta'$	0	$0^-$	957.6	$2.4 \times 10^{-21}$
$\phi$	0	$1^-$	1019.6	$1.6 \times 10^{-22}$
$J/\Psi$	0	$1^-$	3096.9	$1.0 \times 10^{-20}$
$\Upsilon$		$1^-$	9456	$1.6 \times 10^{-20}$
<i>STRANGENESS = -1 MESONS</i>				
$K^\pm$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$0^-$	493.67	$1.237 \times 10^{-8}$
$K^0, \bar{K}^0$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$0^-$	497.7	$K_S : 8.92 \times 10^{-11}$ $K_L : 5.18 \times 10^{-8}$
<i>CHARMED NONSTRANGE MESONS</i>				
$D^\pm$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$0^-$	1869.4	$9 \times 10^{-13}$
$D^0, \bar{D}^0$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$0^-$	1864.7	$5 \times 10^{-13}$
<i>CHARMED STRANGE MESON</i>				
$F^\pm$	0	$0^-$	2021	$2 \times 10^{-13}$

(From Shapiro, S.L. & Teukolsky, S.A., *Black Holes, White Dwarfs, and Neutron Stars*, John Wiley and Sons, 1983, with permission.) For a complete list of elementary particles see <http://pdg.lbl.gov/>.

## Energy conversions

---

1 erg	$= 1 \text{ dyne-centimeter} = 10^{-7} \text{ joule}$
1 joule	$= 1 \text{ newton-meter}$
1 foot-pound	$= 1.356 \text{ joule}$
1 calorie	$= 4.184 \text{ joule}$
1 Btu	$= 1.055 \times 10^3 \text{ joule}$
1 horsepower-hour	$= 2.6845 \times 10^6 \text{ joule}$
1 kilowatt-hour	$= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ joule} = 3.413 \times 10^3 \text{ Btu}$
1 MeV	$= 1.6 \times 10^{-13} \text{ joule}$
Energy of fission of	
1 atom of $^{235}\text{U}$	$= 199 \text{ MeV} = 3.2 \times 10^{-11} \text{ joule}$
Energy equivalent of	
1 ton of TNT	$= 4.2 \times 10^9 \text{ joule}$
Energy of fission of	
1 kilogram of $^{235}\text{U}$	$= 20 \text{ kilotons of TNT}$
Hydrogen fusion:	$D + T \rightarrow {}_2\text{He}^4 + n + 17.6 \text{ MeV}$
Energy equivalent of	
1 gram of matter	$= 9 \times 10^{13} \text{ joule}$
High heat value of	
1 ton of coal	$= 26 \times 10^6 \text{ Btu}$
High heat value of	
1 cord of red oak	$= 30 \times 10^6 \text{ Btu}$
High heat value of	
100 gallons of fuel oil	$= 15 \times 10^6 \text{ Btu}$
High heat value of	
20 000 cu ft natural gas	$= 20 \times 10^6 \text{ Btu}$
US energy consumption	$= 10^{20} \text{ joule yr}^{-1} \text{ (proj. 1970–2000)}$
Earth's daily receipt of	
solar energy	$= 1.49 \times 10^{22} \text{ joule} = 4.2 \times 10^{12} \text{ Mwh}$
Earth's rotational energy	$= 2.2 \times 10^{29} \text{ joule}$
Earth's total heat content	$= 3 \times 10^{31} \text{ joule}$
1 D-cell flashlight battery	$= 10^4 \text{ watt-s} = 10^4 \text{ joule}$

---

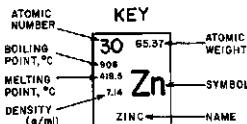
**Prefixes and symbols**

(used with SI units to indicate decimal multiples and submultiples)

Multiples			Submultiples		
Factor	Prefix	Symbol	Factor	Prefix	Symbol
$10^{24}$	yotta	Y	$10^{-1}$	deci	d
$10^{21}$	zetta	Z	$10^{-2}$	centi	c
$10^{18}$	exa	E	$10^{-3}$	milli	m
$10^{15}$	peta	P	$10^{-6}$	micro	$\mu$
$10^{12}$	tera	T	$10^{-9}$	nano	n
$10^9$	giga	G	$10^{-12}$	pico	p
$10^6$	mega	M	$10^{-15}$	femto	f
$10^3$	kilo	k	$10^{-18}$	atto	a
$10^2$	hecto	h	$10^{-21}$	zepto	z
10	deca	da	$10^{-24}$	yocto	y

## Periodic table of the elements

GROUP IA	
1 1.00797	H
-252.7	
-259.2	
0.071	
HYDROGEN	IIA
3 6.939	4 9.0122
1330	2770
180.5	(277)
0.83	1.85
LITHIUM	BERYLLIUM
11 22.9898	12 24.312
892	107
57.8	65.0
0.97	1.74
NA	Mg
SODIUM	MAGNESIUM
19 20.002	20 40.08
760	47.90
63.7	22 50.942
0.86	24 51.996
K	Li
CALCIUM	SCANDIUM
37 85.47	38 87.62
580	39 88.905
38.9	40 91.22
1.35	41 92.906
Rb	Ca
STRONTIUM	Y
55 132.905	56 137.54
690	57 138.91
28.7	72 178.49
1.90	73 180.948
Cs	Ba
CESIUM	LANTHANUM
87 (223)	88 (226)
—	89 (227)
FRANCIUM	RADIUM

PERIODIC TABLE  
OF THE ELEMENTS

		IIIB	IVB	VB	VIIB	VIIIB	VIII	
19	20	44.956	22	47.90	23	50.942	24	51.996
760	47.90	23 50.942	24 51.996	25 54.938	26 55.847	27 58.935	28 58.71	
63.7	140	3330	3460	3450	3150	3000	3150	
0.86	1539	1539	1688	1600	1245	1356	1453	
K	Ca	Sc	Ti	V	Cr	Mn	Fe	Co
POTASSIUM	CALCIUM	SCANDIUM	TITANIUM	VANADIUM	CHROMIUM	MANGANESE	IRON	NICKEL
37	38	39 88.905	40 91.22	41 92.906	42 95.94	43 (96)	44 101.07	45 102.905
85.47	87.62	39 88.905	40 91.22	41 92.906	42 95.94	43 (96)	44 101.07	45 102.905
580	2927	3390	3300	3540	3140	4900	4500	3980
38.9	1509	1852	2660	2610	11.0	2000	1966	1852
1.35	2.8	4.47	8.4	10.2	11.0	18.2	18.4	18.0
RUBIDIUM	STRONTIUM	Y	ZIRCONIUM	ZIRCONIUM	MOLYBDENUM	TECHNETIUM	RUTHENIUM	PALLADIUM
55 132.905	56 137.54	57 138.91	72 178.49	73 180.948	74 183.985	75 186.2	76 190.2	77 192.2
690	140	5470	5400	5425	5820	5800	5300	4820
28.7	714	920	2822	2984	5410	5180	4800	4280
1.90	3.5	6.17	13.1	16.6	21.0	21.6	22.5	21.4
Cs	Ba	La	Hf	Ta	W	Re	Os	Pt
CESIUM	BARIUM	LANTHANUM	HAFNIUM	TANTALUM	WOLFRAM	RHENIUM	OSMIUM	IRIDIUM
87 (223)	88 (226)	89 (227)	104					
—	Fr	Ra	Ac					
FRANCIUM	RADIUM	ACTINIUM						
58	59	60	61	62	63	64		
140.12	140.907	144.24	(147)	150.35	151.96	157.25		
5466	5127	3087	1800	1431	1512			
755	535	1024	1072	626				
6.67	6.77	7.00	7.34	6.26				
CERIUM	PRASEODIUM	NEODYMIUM	PROMETHIUM	SAMARIUM	EUROPIUM	GADOLINIUM		
90 232.038	91 (231)	92 238.03	93 (237)	94 (242)	95 (243)	96 (247)		
3850	3127	3018	3035	—				
1750	1024	1132	440					
11.7	15.4	19.07	19.5					
THORIUM	PROTACTINIUM	URANIUM	NEPTUNIUM	PLUTONIUM	AMERICIUM	CURIUM		

VALUES FOR GASEOUS ELEMENTS ARE FOR LIQUIDS AT THE BOILING POINT.

OUTLINE - SYNTHETICALLY PREPARED.

## **Periodic table of the elements (cont.)**

		III A		IV A		V A		VI A		VII A		VIII A
		5		6		7		8		9		2
		(20.0)		4850 3727.6		-165.9 -210.6		-165 -218.6		-165.2 -219.6		4.0026
		2.34		B		C		N		O		-265.9 -296.7 0.162
		BORON		CARBON		NITROGEN		OXYGEN		FLUORINE		He
		13		26.9815		14		30.9738		16		HELIUM
		2450 660 2.70		Al		28.086 2680 1410 2.33		280 w 44.2 w		32.064 544.6 119.0 2.07		10 20.183
		ALUMINUM		SILICON		PHOSPHORUS		SULFUR		17		NEON
		30		65.57		31		32		33		18 39.948
		3095 1083 8.86		Cu		Zn		31		32		10 -19.8 -19.4 1.40
		COPPER		ZINC		Ga		Ge		As		Ar
		31		63.72		31		63.72		33		18 -19.8 -19.4 1.40
		31		2337 29.8		31		280 w 44.2 w		34		18 39.948
		31		29.8		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31		5.91		31		1.82w		34		18 39.948
		31										

## Greek alphabet

---



---

A	$\alpha$	Alpha	N	$\nu$	Nu
B	$\beta$	Beta	$\Xi$	$\xi$	Xi
$\Gamma$	$\gamma$	Gamma	O	$o$	Omicron
$\Delta$	$\delta$	Delta	$\Pi$	$\pi$	Pi
E	$\epsilon$	Epsilon	P	$\rho$	Rho
Z	$\zeta$	Zeta	$\Sigma$	$\sigma$	Sigma
H	$\eta$	Eta	T	$\tau$	Tau
$\Theta$	$\theta$	Theta	$\Upsilon$	$\upsilon$	Upsilon
I	$\iota$	Iota	$\Phi$	$\phi$	Phi
K	$\kappa$	Kappa	X	$\chi$	Chi
$\Lambda$	$\lambda$	Lambda	$\Psi$	$\psi$	Psi
M	$\mu$	Mu	$\Omega$	$\omega$	Omega

---



---

## Bibliography

*BETA Mathematics Handbook*, Rade, L. and Westergren, B., CRC Press, Inc. (1990).

*CODATA recommended values of the fundamental physical constants: 1998*, P.J. Mohr and B.N. Taylor, Rev. Mod. Phys., **72**, No. 2, 2000.

*Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, CRC Press, Inc.

*International Critical Tables of Numerical Data, Physics, Chemistry, and Technology*, McGraw-Hill Book Company.

*Landolt-Bornstein: Zahlenwerte und Funktionen aus Physik, Chemie, Astronomie, Geophysik, und Technik*, Springer-Verlag.

*Reviews of Particle Properties*, C. Caso, et al., The European Physical Journal C3 (1998).

*Standard Mathematical Tables and Formulae*, D. Zwillinger, ed., CRC Press, Inc. (1996).

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

# Chapter 2

---

## Astronomy and astrophysics

*...to observe is not enough. We must use our observations, and to do that we must generalize.* - Henri Poincaré

The Solar System	38
<i>The Sun</i>	38
<i>Solar eclipses</i>	48
<i>Solar system elemental abundances</i>	50
<i>The planets (physical elements)</i>	51
<i>The planets (mean orbital elements)</i>	52
<i>The planets (additional data)</i>	53
<i>Natural satellites in the solar system (orbital data)</i>	54
<i>Natural satellites in the solar system (physical and photometric data)</i>	56
<i>Selected comets</i>	58
<i>Periodic comets</i>	59
<i>Selected asteroids</i>	62
<i>Asteroid distribution histogram</i>	63
<i>Annual major meteor showers</i>	64
<i>Meteoroid flux density</i>	65
<i>Glossary of meteor astronomy terms</i>	66
<i>Contents of the solar system</i>	68
Extrasolar planets	69
Stars	71
<i>Star charts</i>	71
<i>Constellations</i>	73
<i>The 50 visually brightest stars in the sky (in order of brightness)</i>	75
<i>The 100 visually brightest stars (limiting magnitude, V = 2.59)</i>	78

<i>Stars within 5 pc</i>	83
<i>Stars of large proper motion</i>	86
<i>Bright white dwarfs</i>	87
<i>Pulsars</i>	88
<i>Globular clusters</i>	93
<i>Prominent OB associations</i>	94
<i>Orbital elements of some binary stars</i>	96
<i>Classification of variable stars</i>	97
<i>Galactic supernova remnants</i>	100
<i>Typical supernova light curves</i>	100
<i>Henry Draper spectral classification</i>	101
<i>Spectral type and luminosity class</i>	101
<i>Hertzsprung-Russell diagram</i>	102
<i>Hertzsprung-Russell diagram with stellar examples</i>	103
<i>Infrared and visible spectral features</i>	104
<i>Calibration of MK spectral types</i>	105
<i>Classification and absolute magnitude of stars</i>	107
<i>Stellar mass, luminosity, radius and density</i>	108
<i>Present-day mass function (PDMF)</i>	110
<i>Star number densities</i>	112
<i>Relative number of stars</i>	114
<i>Integrated star light</i>	114
<i>Mean star density vs visual magnitude</i>	115
<i>Star counts</i>	116
<i>Luminosity functions</i>	116
<i>Parameters of the interstellar gas</i>	117
<i>Proton-proton chain and the CNO cycle</i>	118
<i>Stellar structure equations</i>	119
<b>Galaxies</b>	120
<i>Properties of the Milky Way Galaxy</i>	120
<i>The Local Group</i>	121
<i>Hubble's classification of galaxies</i>	122
<i>Selected brighter galaxies</i>	123
<i>Named galaxies</i>	124
<i>Representative active galactic nuclei</i>	125
<i>Objects with large redshifts (<math>Z &gt; 5.06</math>)</i>	128
<i>Prominent clusters of galaxies</i>	129
<i>The Messier catalog</i>	130

Universe	133
<i>Mass-radius-density data for astronomical objects</i>	133
<i>Primordial light element abundances</i>	134
<i>The background radiation spectrum of the Universe</i>	135
<i>Redshift survey</i>	136
Astronomical photometry	137
<i>Standard photometric systems</i>	139
<i>Interstellar reddening</i>	142
<i>Absolute magnitude</i>	144
<i>Moon, night sky, sun, and planetary brightness</i>	144
Spherical astronomy	146
<i>Time</i>	146
<i>The celestial sphere</i>	151
<i>Coordinates</i>	152
<i>The Zodiac</i>	152
<i>Astronomical coordinate transformations</i>	153
<i>Approximate reduction of astronomical coordinates</i>	155
<i>Reduction for precession – approximate formulae</i>	156
Major ground-based astronomical telescopes	157
<i>Reflecting telescopes</i>	157
<i>Refracting telescopes</i>	158
<i>Schmidt telescopes</i>	159
<i>Radio telescopes</i>	160
The Hubble Space Telescope	162
<i>Description of the Hubble Space Telescope</i>	163
Glossary of astronomical terms	168
Bibliography	184

## The Solar System

---

### *The Sun*

---

#### Global parameters

Mass	$1.989 \times 10^{30}$ kg
Radius	$6.955 \times 10^8$ m
Surface area	$6.079 \times 10^{18}$ m <sup>2</sup>
Volume	$1.409 \times 10^{27}$ m <sup>3</sup>
Moment of inertia	$5.7 \times 10^{46}$ kg m <sup>2</sup>
Mean density	$1.412 \times 10^3$ kg m <sup>-3</sup>
Gravity at surface	$2.740 \times 10^2$ m s <sup>-2</sup>
Escape velocity at surface	$6.177 \times 10^5$ m s <sup>-1</sup>
Magnetic field strengths (typical)	
Sunspots	$2000\text{--}4000 \times 10^{-4}$ tesla
Polar field	$1 \times 10^{-4}$
Bright, chromospheric network	$25 \times 10^{-4}$
Ephemeral (unipolar) active regions	$20 \times 10^{-4}$
Chromospheric plages	$200 \times 10^{-4}$
Prominences	$10\text{--}100 \times 10^{-4}$
Sidereal rotation (func. of lat.)	$14^\circ.4 - 3^\circ.0 \sin^2 \phi$ per day <sup>(1)</sup>
Sidereal period for helio. long.	25.38 days
Sunspot cycle	$\sim 11.4$ y
Luminosity	$3.842 \times 10^{26}$ W (var.) <sup>(2)</sup>
Radiation emittance at Sun's surface	$6.319 \times 10^7$ W m <sup>-2</sup> (var.)
Mean radiation intensity of Sun's disk	$2.012 \times 10^7$ W m <sup>-2</sup> sr <sup>-1</sup> (var.)
Specific mean energy production	$1.932 \times 10^{-4}$ W kg <sup>-1</sup> (var.)
Standard Model parameters <sup>(3)</sup>	
Central density	$1.5 \times 10^5$ kg m <sup>-3</sup>
Central temperature	$15.7 \times 10^6$ K
Central pressure	$2.33 \times 10^{16}$ Pascal
Central hydrogen content by mass, X <sub>c</sub>	0.355
Density at 1 R <sub>⊕</sub>	$2.18 \times 10^{-4}$ kg m <sup>-3</sup>
Temperature at 1 R <sub>⊕</sub>	6000 K
Pressure at 1 R <sub>⊕</sub>	$8.27 \times 10^3$ Pascal
Photospheric abundances <sup>(4)</sup>	
X(H)	0.706
Y(He)	0.274
Z(Li–U)	0.019

---

***The Sun* (cont.)****Earth dependent parameters**

1 Astronomical Unit (AU)	$1.4959787066 \times 10^{11}$ m
Light-time for 1 AU	499.00478 s
Mean distance from Earth	1.000001057 AU
Perihelion distance	$1.4710 \times 10^{11}$ m
Aphelion distance	$1.5210 \times 10^{11}$ m
Inclination of equator to ecliptic	$7^\circ 15'$
Solar parallax	$8''.794144$
Semidiameter of Sun at mean distance	$959''.63$
Solid angle of Sun at mean distance	$6.8000 \times 10^{-5}$ sr
Oblateness: semidiam. equator-pole diff.	$0''.0086$
Solar constant	$1.365 - 1.367 \times 10^3$ W m <sup>-2</sup>
Synodic rotation (func. of lat.)	$13^\circ.4 - 3^\circ.0 \sin^2 \phi$ per day
Synodic period for helio. long.	27.28 days

**The Sun as a star**

V	-26.75
B	-26.10
U	-25.91
m <sub>bol</sub>	-26.83
M <sub>V</sub>	+4.82
M <sub>B</sub>	+5.47
M <sub>U</sub>	+5.66
M <sub>bol</sub>	+4.74
Bolometric correction, BC	-0.08
T <sub>eff</sub>	5777 K
Spectral type	G2 V
Age of Sun	$(4.5 - 4.7) \times 10^9$ yr
Velocity relative to nearby stars	19.7 km s <sup>-1</sup>
Solar apex	$\alpha = 271^\circ, \delta = 30^\circ$
Velocity relative to CBR	370 km s <sup>-1</sup>
Velocity around galactic center	220 km s <sup>-1</sup>
Distance from galactic center	8.5 kpc
Mean magnetic field (photosphere)	10 – 15 G*
Frequency of flares (solar max.)	$1000 - 2000$ y <sup>-1</sup>
Frequency of flares (solar min.)	$20 - 60$ y <sup>-1</sup>
Coronal mass ejection (CME) avg. mass	$3 \times 10^{12}$ kg
Coronal mass ejection (CME) avg. k.e.	$2 \times 10^{23}$ J
X-ray luminosity (excluding flares)	$3 - 100 \times 10^{15}$ W

\*Time and spatial average; from S. Saar, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 2005.

**The Sun (cont.)**

- <sup>1</sup> Based upon sunspot groups as tracers.
- <sup>2</sup> approx. 0.1% peak-to-peak variation; 11 year cycle.
- <sup>3</sup> Guenther, D.B., et al., Ap J, **387**, 372, 1992.
- <sup>4</sup> Anders, E. and Grevesse, N., Geo. Cosm. Acta, **53**, 197, 1989.
- <sup>5</sup> H $\alpha$  importance  $\geq 1$ .

1 pascal = 1 newton m $^{-2}$  = 10 dyne cm $^{-2}$

1 tesla =  $1 \times 10^4$  Gauss

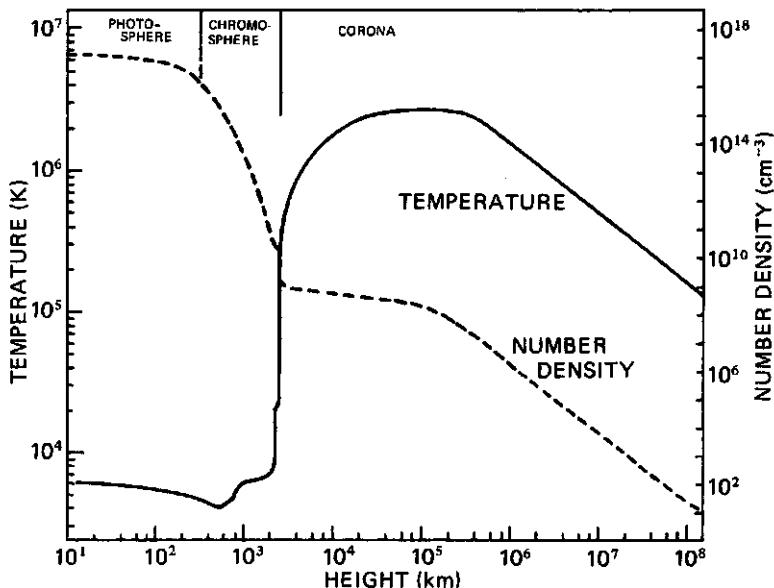
1 watt = 1 J s $^{-1}$  =  $1 \times 10^7$  erg s $^{-1}$

1 kg m $^{-3}$  =  $1 \times 10^{-3}$  g cm $^{-3}$

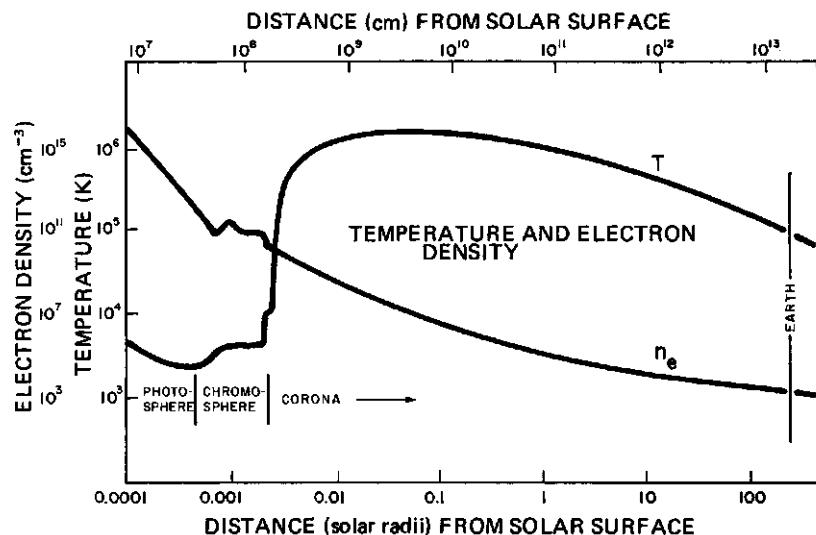
(Except where noted, data is from: W.C. Livingston in, *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, A.N. Cox, ed., Springer, 2000 and the *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*, P.K. Seidelmann, University Science Books, 1992.)

**The Sun (cont.)**

Temperature and density as a function of distance from the solar surface. (Courtesy of G. Withbroe, Harvard/Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics.

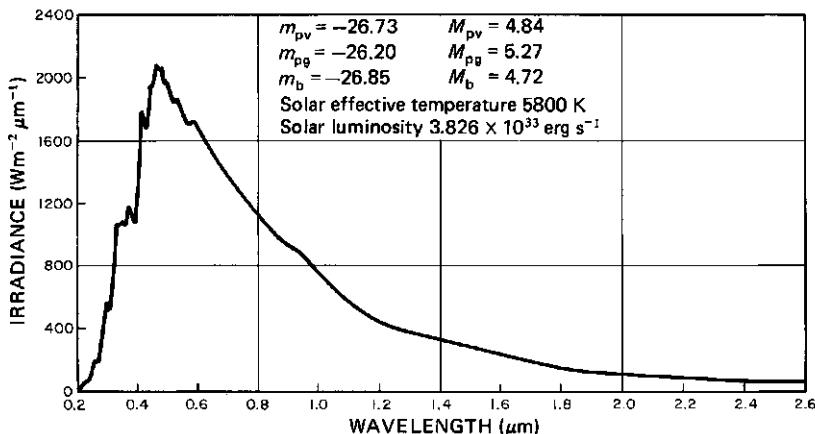


Solar temperature and electron density. (Adapted from Carrigan, A.L. & Skrivanek, R.A., *Aerospace Environment*, Air Force Cambridge Research Laboratories, Massachusetts, 1974.)

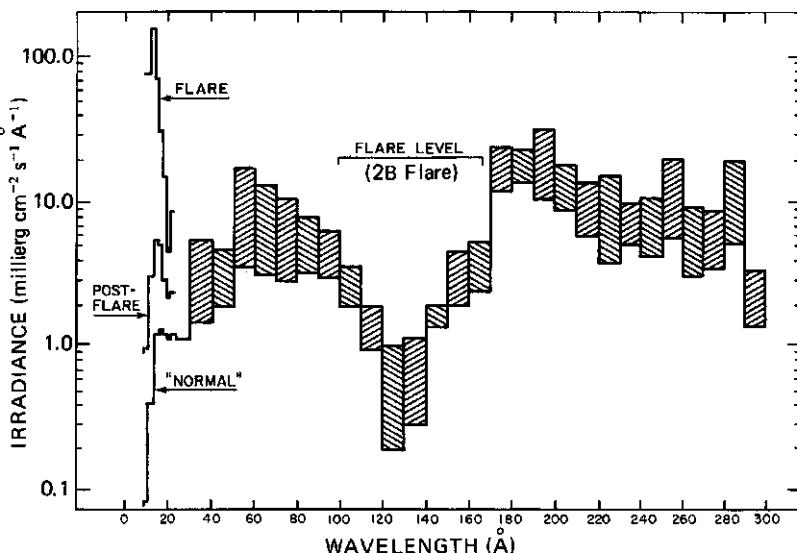


### The Sun (cont.)

Solar spectral irradiance. (Adapted from Carrigan, A.L. & Skrivanek, R.A., *Aerospace Environment*, Air Force Cambridge Research Laboratories, Massachusetts. 1974.)

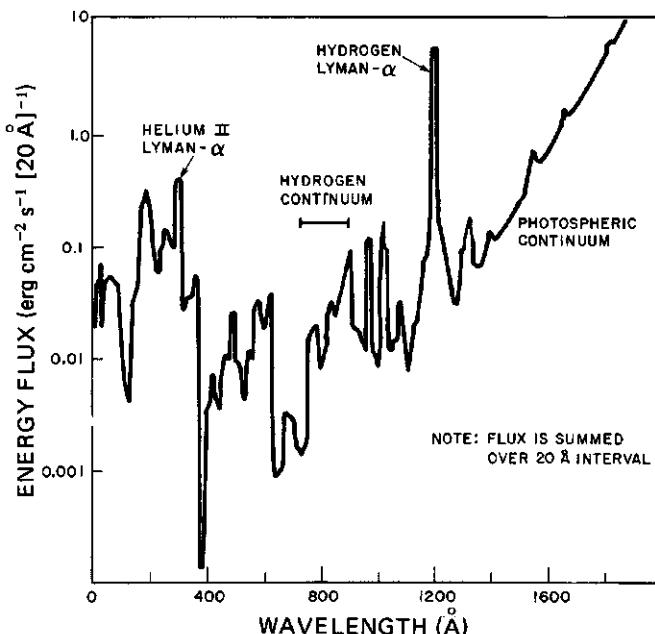


The solar spectral irradiance at 1 AU between 10 and 300 Å. Three states of solar activity are shown for the region 10–30 Å. The vertical extent of the shaded areas is representative of the variability of the spectral irradiance for changing solar conditions. (Adapted from Manson, J.E. in *The Solar Output and Its Variation*, O.R. White, ed., Colorado Associated University Press, Boulder, 1977.)

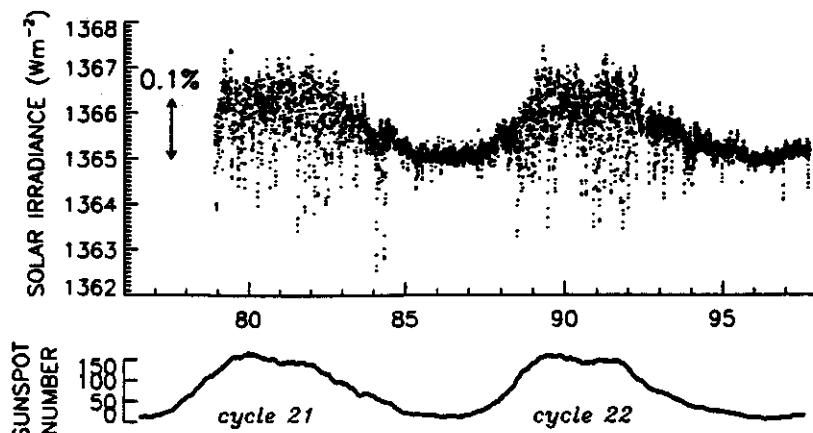


### The Sun (cont.)

Solar EUV flux distribution incident on Earth's atmosphere (moderately active, non-flaring sun). (Adapted from Carrigan, A.L. & Skriwanek, R.A., *Aerospace Environment*, Air Force Cambridge Research Laboratories, Massachusetts, 1974.)



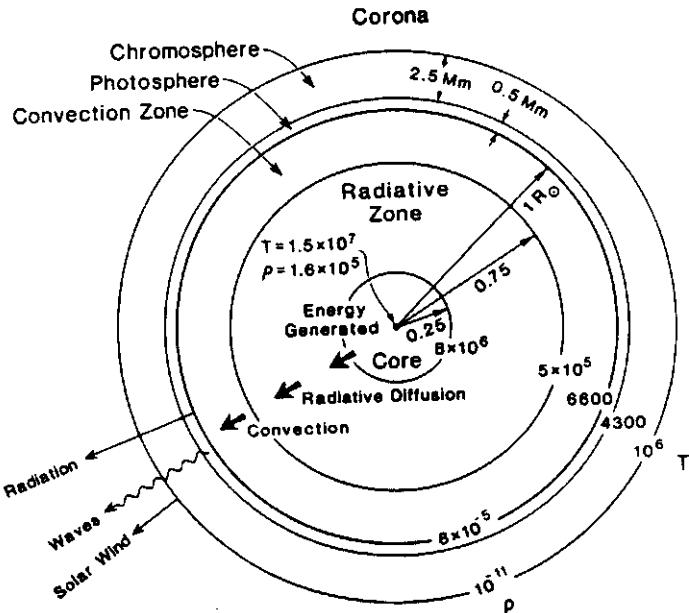
Daily mean values of the Sun's total irradiance from 1979 to 1997. (Adapted from the Encyclopedia of Astronomy and Astrophysics, Institute of Physics Publishing, 2001.)



### The Sun (cont.)

Overall structure of the solar interior.

(From Kivelson, M.G. and Russell, C.T., eds., *Introduction to Space Physics*, Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)



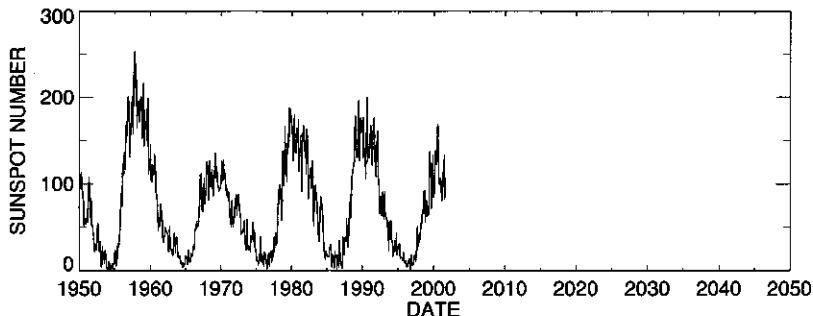
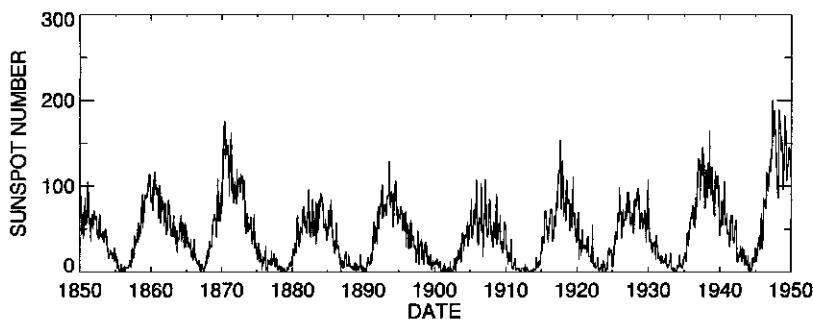
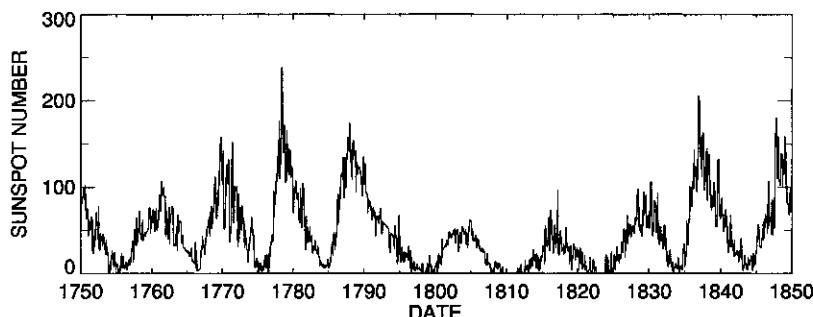
Solar-wind flux densities and fluxes near the orbit of the Earth

	Flux Density	Flux Through Sphere at 1 AU
Protons	$3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$8.4 \times 10^{35} \text{ s}^{-1}$
Mass	$5.8 \times 10^{-16} \text{ g cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$1.6 \times 10^{12} \text{ g s}^{-1}$
Radial momentum	$2.6 \times 10^{-9} \text{ pascal (Pa)}$	$7.3 \times 10^{14} \text{ newton (N)}$
Kinetic energy	$0.6 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$1.7 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Thermal energy	$0.02 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$0.05 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Magnetic energy	$0.01 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$0.025 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Radial magnetic flux	$5 \times 10^{-9} \text{ tesla (T)}$	$1.4 \times 10^{15} \text{ weber (Wb)}$

(From Kivelson, M.G. and Russell, C.T., eds., *Introduction to Space Physics*, Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)

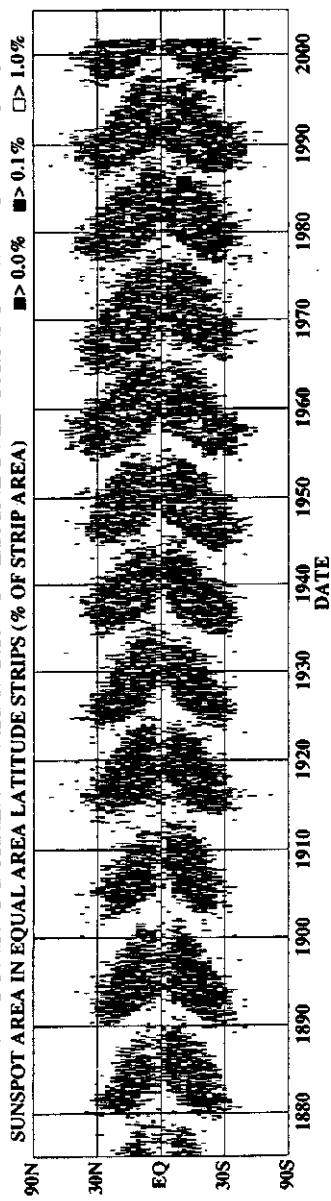
***The Sun* (cont.)**

Monthly averages of the sunspot numbers. The sunspot number is calculated by first counting the number of sunspot groups and then the number of individual sunspots. The “sunspot number” is then given by the sum of the number of individual sunspots and ten times the number of groups. Since most sunspot groups have, on average, about ten spots, this formula for counting sunspots gives reliable numbers even when the observing conditions are less than ideal and small spots are hard to see. (D.H. Hathaway, NASA/MSFC, 2001.)

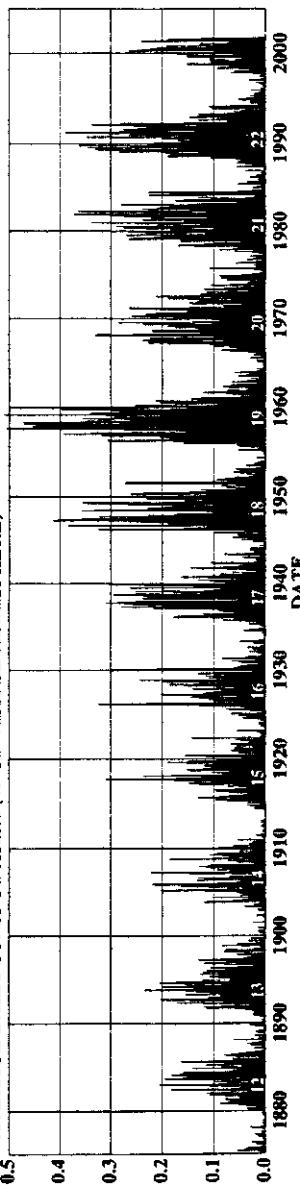


Sunspots do not appear at random over the surface of the sun but are concentrated in two latitude bands on either side of the equator. A butterfly diagram shows the positions of the spots for each rotation of the Sun and shows that these bands first form at mid-latitudes, widen, and then move toward the equator as each cycle progresses. (D.H. Hathaway, NASA/MSFC, 2001.)

### DAILY SUNSPOT AREA AVERAGED OVER INDIVIDUAL SOLAR ROTATIONS



AVERAGE DAILY SUNSPOT AREA (% OF VISIBLE HEMISPHERE)

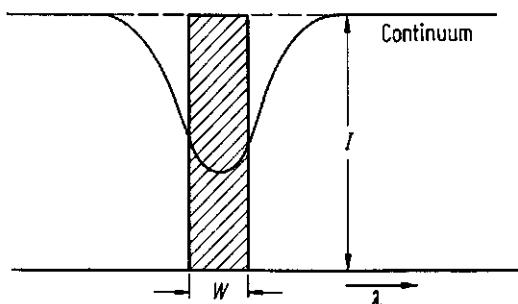


## Fraunhofer lines in the solar spectrum

$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	Element	W( $\text{\AA}$ )	$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	Element	W( $\text{\AA}$ )
3581.21	Fe I	2.14	4920.51	Fe I	0.43
3719.95	Fe I	1.66	4957.61	Fe I	0.45
3734.87	Fe I	3.03	5167.33	Mg I	0.65
3749.50	Fe I	1.91	5172.70	Mg I	1.26
3758.24	Fe I	1.65	5183.62	Mg I	1.58
3770.63	H <sub>11</sub>	1.86	5232.95	Fe I	0.35
3797.90	H <sub>10</sub>	3.46	5269.55	Fe I	0.41
3820.44	Fe I	1.71	5324.19	Fe I	0.32
3825.89	Fe I	1.52	5238.05	Fe I	0.38
3832.31	Mg I	1.68	5528.42	Mg I	0.29
3835.39	H <sub>9</sub>	2.36	5889.97	Na I	0.63
3838.30	Mg I	1.92	5895.94	Na I	0.56
3859.92	Fe I	1.55	6122.23	Ca I	0.22
3889.05	H <sub>8</sub>	2.35	6162.18	Ca I	0.22
3933.68	Ca II	20.25	6562.81	H $\alpha$	4.02
3968.49	Ca II	15.47	6867.19	O <sub>2</sub>	Tell*
4045.82	Fe I	1.17	7593.70	O <sub>2</sub>	Tell*
4101.75	H <sub>6</sub>	3.13	8194.84	Na I	0.30
4226.74	Ca I	1.48	8498.06	Ca II	1.46
4310 ± 10	CH	G band	8542.14	Ca II	3.67
4340.48	H <sub>7</sub>	2.86	8662.17	Ca II	2.60
4383.56	Fe I	1.01	8688.64	Fe I	0.27
4361.34	H <sub>β</sub>	3.68	8736.04	Mg I	0.29
4891.50	Fe I	0.31			

\*Tell - Telluric. Absorption lines produced by the Earth's atmosphere.

Note: The equivalent width W is the width of a rectangle with the height of the continuum adjacent to the absorption line and the same area as the absorption line.



$W \equiv \int_{\lambda_1}^{\lambda_2} [(F_c - F_\lambda)/F_c] d\lambda$ , where  $F_\lambda$  is the spectral flux at wavelength  $\lambda$  in the line,  $F_c$  = the continuum flux, and  $F_\lambda = F_c$  for  $\lambda \geq \lambda_2$  and  $\lambda \leq \lambda_1$ .

(Data from Lang, K., *Astrophysical Formulae*, Vol. I, Springer-Verlag, 1999.)

**Solar eclipses, 2001-2010**

Date	Eclipse Type	Eclipse <sup>1</sup> Magnitude	Central <sup>2</sup> Duration	Geographic Region of Eclipse Visibility <sup>3</sup>
2001 Jun 21	Total	1.050	04m57s	e S. America, Africa [Total: Atlantic, s Africa, Madagascar]
2001 Dec 14	Annular	0.968	03m53s	N. & C. America, nw S. America [Annular: c Pacific, Costa Rica]
2002 Jun 10	Annular	0.996	00m23s	e Asia, Australia, w N. America [Annular: n Pacific, w Mexico]
2002 Dec 04	Total	1.024	02m04s	s Africa, Antarctica, Indonesia, Australia [Total: s Africa, s Indian, s Australia]
2003 May 31	Annular	0.938	03m37s	Europe, Asia, nw N. America [Annular: Iceland, Greenland]
2003 Nov 23	Total	1.038	01m57s	Australia, N. Z., Antarctica, s S. America [Total: Antarctic]
2004 Apr 19	Partial	0.736	—	Antarctica, s Africa
2004 Oct 14	Partial	0.927	—	ne Asia, Hawaii, Alaska
2005 Apr 08	Hybrid <sup>4</sup>	1.007	00m42s	N. Zealand, N. & S. America [Hybrid: s Pacific, Panama, Colombia, Venezuela]
2005 Oct 03	Annular	0.958	04m32s	Europe, Africa, s Asia [Annular: Portugal, Spain, Libya, Sudan, Kenya]
2006 Mar 29	Total	1.052	04m07s	Africa, Europe, w Asia [Total: c Africa, Turkey, Russia]
2006 Sep 22	Annular	0.935	07m09s	S. America, w Africa, Antarctica [Annular: Guyana, Suriname, F. Guiana, s Atlantic]
2007 Mar 19	Partial	0.874	—	Asia, Alaska
2007 Sep 11	Partial	0.749	—	S. America, Antarctica
2008 Feb 07	Annular	0.965	02m12s	Antarctica, e Australia, N. Zealand [Annular: Antarctica]
2008 Aug 01	Total	1.039	02m27s	ne N. America, Europe, Asia [Total: n Canada, Greenland, Siberia, Mongolia, China]
2009 Jan 26	Annular	0.928	07m54s	s Africa, Antarctica, se Asia, Australia [Annular: s Indian, Sumatra, Borneo]
2009 Jul 22	Total	1.080	06m39s	e Asia, Pacific Ocean, Hawaii [Total: India, Nepal, China, c Pacific]
2010 Jan 15	Annular	0.919	11m08s	Africa, Asia [Annular: c Africa, India, Malymar, China]
2010 Jul 11	Total	1.058	05m20s	s S. America [Total: s Pacific, Easter Is., Chile, Argentina]

<sup>1</sup>**Eclipse magnitude** is the fraction of the Sun's diameter obscured by the Moon. For annular eclipses, the eclipse magnitude is always less than 1. For total eclipses, the eclipse magnitude is always greater than or equal to 1. For both annular and total eclipses, the value listed is actually the ratio of diameters between the Moon and the Sun.

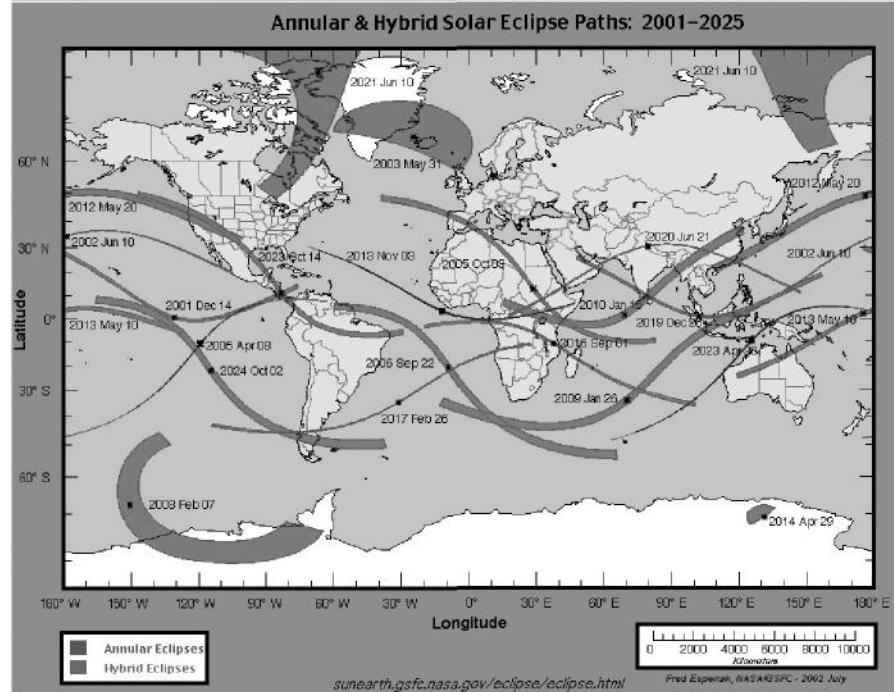
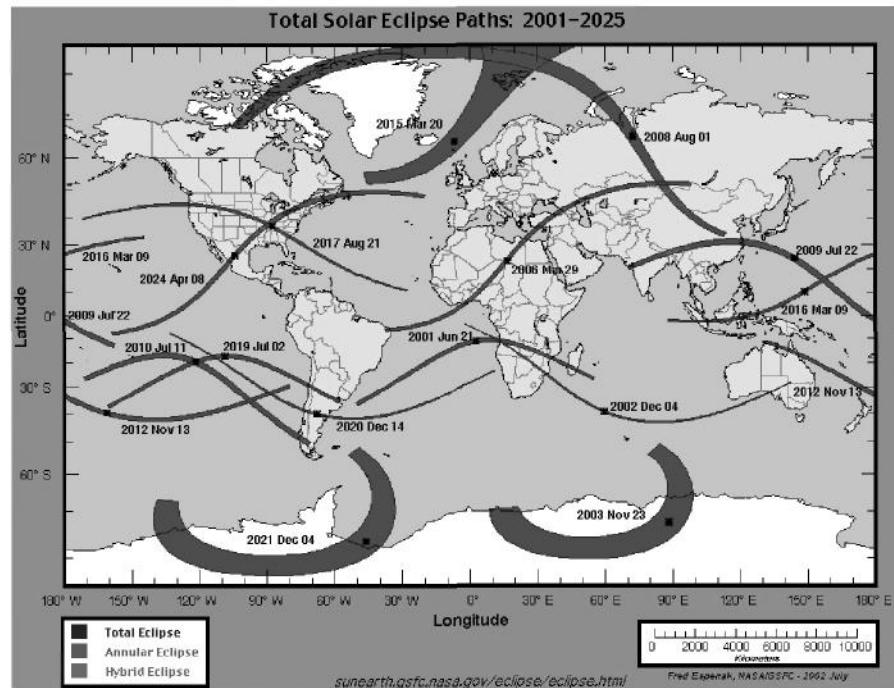
<sup>2</sup>**Central Duration** is the duration of a total or annular eclipse at Greatest Eclipse.

**Greatest Eclipse** is the instant when the axis of the Moon's shadow passes closest to Earth's center.

<sup>3</sup>**Geographic Region of Eclipse Visibility** is the portion of Earth's surface where a partial eclipse can be seen. The central path of a total or annular eclipse covers a much smaller region of Earth and is described in brackets [ ].

<sup>4</sup>**Hybrid** eclipses are also known as **annular/total** eclipses. Such an eclipse is both total and annular along different sections of its umbral path.

(From F. Espenak, NASA/GSFC, 2001)

**Solar eclipses (cont.)**

**Solar system elemental abundances ( $\log N_H = 12.00$ )**

Element	Photosphere*	Meteorites†	Element	Photosphere	Meteorites
1 H	12.00	[12.00]	44 Ru	$1.84 \pm 0.07$	$1.82 \pm 0.02$
2 He	$[10.99 \pm 0.035]$	[10.99]	45 Rh	$1.12 \pm 0.12$	$1.09 \pm 0.03$
3 Li	$1.16 \pm 0.1$	$3.31 \pm 0.04$	46 Pd	$1.69 \pm 0.04$	$1.70 \pm 0.03$
4 Be	$1.15 \pm 0.10$	$1.42 \pm 0.04$	47 Ag	$(0.94 \pm 0.25)$	$1.24 \pm 0.01$
5 B	$(2.6 \pm 0.3)$	$2.88 \pm 0.04$	48 Cd	$1.86 \pm 0.15$	$1.76 \pm 0.03$
6 C	$8.56 \pm 0.04$	[8.56]	49 In	$(1.66 \pm 0.15)$	$0.82 \pm 0.03$
7 N	$8.05 \pm 0.04$	[8.05]	50 Sn	$2.0 \pm (0.3)$	$2.14 \pm 0.04$
8 O	$8.93 \pm 0.035$	[8.93]	51 Sb	$1.0 \pm (0.3)$	$1.04 \pm 0.07$
9 F	$4.56 \pm 0.3$	$4.48 \pm 0.06$	52 Te	—	$2.24 \pm 0.04$
10 Ne	$[8.09 \pm 0.10]$	[8.09 ± 0.10]	53 I	—	$1.51 \pm 0.08$
11 Na	$6.33 \pm 0.03$	$6.31 \pm 0.03$	54 Xe	—	$2.23 \pm 0.08$
12 Mg	$7.58 \pm 0.05$	$7.58 \pm 0.02$	55 Cs	—	$1.12 \pm 0.02$
13 Al	$6.47 \pm 0.07$	$6.48 \pm 0.02$	56 Ba	$2.13 \pm 0.05$	$2.21 \pm 0.03$
14 Si	$7.55 \pm 0.05$	$7.55 \pm 0.02$	57 La	$1.22 \pm 0.09$	$1.20 \pm 0.01$
15 P	$5.45 \pm (0.04)$	$5.57 \pm 0.04$	58 Ce	$1.55 \pm 0.20$	$1.61 \pm 0.01$
16 S	$7.21 \pm 0.06$	$7.27 \pm 0.05$	59 Pr	$0.71 \pm 0.08$	$0.78 \pm 0.01$
17 Cl	$5.5 \pm 0.3$	$5.27 \pm 0.06$	60 Nd	$1.50 \pm 0.06$	$1.47 \pm 0.01$
18 Ar	$[6.56 \pm 0.10]$	[6.56 ± 0.10]	62 Sm	$1.00 \pm 0.08$	$0.97 \pm 0.01$
19 K	$5.12 \pm 0.13$	$5.13 \pm 0.03$	63 Eu	$0.51 \pm 0.08$	$0.54 \pm 0.01$
20 Ca	$6.36 \pm 0.02$	$6.34 \pm 0.03$	64 Gd	$1.12 \pm 0.04$	$1.07 \pm 0.01$
21 Sc	$3.10 \pm (0.09)$	$3.09 \pm 0.04$	65 Tb	$(-0.1 \pm 0.3)$	$0.33 \pm 0.01$
22 Ti	$4.99 \pm 0.02$	$4.93 \pm 0.02$	66 Dy	$1.1 \pm 0.15$	$1.15 \pm 0.01$
23 V	$4.00 \pm 0.02$	$4.02 \pm 0.02$	67 Ho	$(0.26 \pm 0.16)$	$0.50 \pm 0.01$
24 Cr	$5.67 \pm 0.03$	$5.68 \pm 0.03$	68 Er	$0.93 \pm 0.06$	$0.95 \pm 0.01$
25 Mn	$5.39 \pm 0.03$	$5.53 \pm 0.04$	69 Tm	$(0.00 \pm 0.15)$	$0.13 \pm 0.01$
26 Fe	$7.67 \pm 0.03$	$7.51 \pm 0.01$	70 Yb	$1.08 \pm (0.15)$	$0.95 \pm 0.01$
27 Co	$4.92 \pm 0.04$	$4.91 \pm 0.03$	71 Lu	$(0.76 \pm 0.30)$	$0.12 \pm 0.01$
28 Ni	$6.25 \pm 0.04$	$6.25 \pm 0.02$	72 Hf	$0.88 \pm (0.08)$	$0.73 \pm 0.01$
29 Cu	$4.21 \pm 0.04$	$4.27 \pm 0.05$	73 Ta	—	$0.13 \pm 0.01$
30 Zn	$4.60 \pm 0.08$	$4.65 \pm 0.02$	74 W	$(1.11 \pm 0.15)$	$0.68 \pm 0.02$
31 Ga	$2.88 \pm (0.10)$	$3.13 \pm 0.03$	75 Re	—	$0.27 \pm 0.04$
32 Ge	$3.41 \pm 0.14$	$3.63 \pm 0.04$	76 Os	$1.45 \pm 0.10$	$1.38 \pm 0.03$
33 As	—	$2.37 \pm 0.05$	77 Ir	$1.35 \pm (0.10)$	$1.37 \pm 0.03$
34 Se	—	$3.35 \pm 0.03$	78 Pt	$1.8 \pm 0.3$	$1.68 \pm 0.03$
35 Br	—	$2.63 \pm 0.08$	79 Au	$(1.01 \pm 0.15)$	$0.83 \pm 0.06$
36 Kr	—	$3.23 \pm 0.07$	80 Hg	—	$1.09 \pm 0.05$
37 Rb	$2.60 \pm (0.15)$	$2.40 \pm 0.03$	81 Tl	$(0.9 \pm 0.2)$	$0.82 \pm 0.04$
38 Sr	$2.90 \pm 0.06$	$2.93 \pm 0.03$	82 Pb	$1.85 \pm 0.05$	$2.05 \pm 0.03$
39 Y	$2.24 \pm 0.03$	$2.22 \pm 0.02$	83 Bi	—	$0.71 \pm 0.03$
40 Zr	$2.60 \pm 0.03$	$2.61 \pm 0.03$	90 Th	$0.12 \pm (0.06)$	$0.08 \pm 0.02$
41 Nb	$1.42 \pm 0.06$	$1.40 \pm 0.01$	92 U	$(< -0.47)$	$-0.49 \pm 0.04$
42 Mo	$1.92 \pm 0.05$	$1.96 \pm 0.02$			

\* Values in parentheses are uncertain.

† Values in brackets are based upon solar or other astronomical data.

(From Anders, A. and Grevesse, N., *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, **53**, 197, 1989.)

### The planets (physical elements)

Planet	Mass $10^{24}$ kg	Radius (equ.) km	Angular Diameter $60''/2$	Distance from Earth AU	Flattening (geom.)	Mean Density $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$	Sidereal Period of Rotation $d$	Inclination of Equator to orbit $\circ$	Equatorial surface gravity (Earth = 1)	Equatorial escape velocity $(\text{km s}^{-1})$
Mercury	0.33022	2429.7	11. <sup>0</sup> 0	0.613	0	5.43	58.6462	0.0	0.387	4.3
Venus	4.8690	6051.9	60. <sup>0</sup> 2	0.277	0	5.24	-243.01	177.3	0.879	10.3
Earth (Moon)	5.9742	6378.140	-	-	0.00335364	5.515	0.99726968	23.45	1.000	11.2
Mars	0.073453	1738	31. <sup>0</sup> 8	0.00257	0	3.34	27.32166	6.68	0.166	2.38
Jupiter	1898.8	71492	17. <sup>9</sup> 9	0.524	0.00647630	3.94	1.025495675	25.19	0.380	5.0
Saturn	568.50	60268	46. <sup>8</sup> 8	4.203	0.0618744	1.33	0.41354 (System III)	3.12	2.339	59.5
Uranus	86.625	25559	19. <sup>4</sup> 4	8.539	0.0979624	0.70	0.4375 (System III)	26.73	0.925	35.6
Neptune	102.78	24764	2. <sup>3</sup> 3	29.06	0.0171	1.76	0.768	97.86	0.794	21.22
Pluto	0.015	1151	0. <sup>1</sup> 1	38.44	0	1.1	-6.3867	118? <sup>2</sup>	0.77	1.32

The angular diameters correspond to the distances from the Earth (in AU) given in the adjacent column. The distances from the Earth refer to inferior conjunction for Mercury and Venus and to mean opposition for the other planets.

<sup>1</sup> AU =  $1.495979 \times 10^{11}$  m.

System III refers to the apparent rate of rotation derived from radio emissions.

Equatorial surface gravity,  $g = GM/R_{\text{eq}}^2$  ( $g_{\text{Earth}} = 9.80 \text{ m s}^{-2}$ ).

Equatorial escape velocity =  $(2GM_{\text{eq}})^{1/2}$ ,  $M_{\text{eq}}$ , mass of planet; G, universal gravitational constant;  $R_{\text{eq}}$ , equatorial radius of planet.

Earth-Moon mean distance =  $3.84401 \times 10^5$  km.  
(Adapted from the *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*, Seidelmann, P.K., University Science Books, 1992.) A number of astronomers consider Pluto to be a minor planet along with the recently discovered (2005) 2003 UB313. Minor planet is the official term for asteroids and trans-Neptunian objects (TNOs). Physical elements for 2003 UB313: mass = ?, radius = at least 1200 km, mean density = ?, absolute magnitude = -1.1.

### The planets (mean orbital elements)

Planet	Inclination ( $i$ )	Eccentricity ( $e$ )	Mean Longitude of Node ( $\Omega$ )	Mean Longitude of Perihelion ( $\varpi$ )	Mean Longitude at Epoch (L)
Mercury	7°00'17"95051	0.20166317524914	48°19'51"21495	77°27'22"/02855	252°15.03"5985
Venus	3°23'40"07828	0.0067718819142	76°40'41".71268	131°33'49"34607	181°58'47"2304
Earth	0.0	0.0167086171510	0.0	102°56'14"5310	100°27'59"21464
Mars	1°50'39"01532	0.0934006199474	49°33'29"13554	338°03'36"84233	358°25.59"78866
Jupiter	1°18'11"77079	0.0484948512199	100°27'51".98631	14°19'52"71326	34°21.05"34211
Saturn	2°29'19"96115	0.0555086211772	113°39'55".88853	93°03'43"43421	50°04'38"89695
Uranus	0°46'23"53621	0.04629588985125	74°00'21".41002	175°00'18"57320	314°03'18"01840
Neptune	1°46'11"82795	0.0089880948652	130°47'02".60528	48°07'25"28581	304°20'55"19574
Pluto	17°08'31"8	0.249050	110°17'49"7	224°08'05".5	238°44'38"2

Sidereal Period (Julian years)	Synodic Period ( $d$ )	Mean Daily Motion ( $n$ ) (°)	Mean Orbital Velocity (km/s)	Mean Distance (AU)	Mean Distance (10 <sup>11</sup> m)
Mercury	0.21081445	11.58775	4°09'237706	47.8725	0.3790983098
Venus	0.61518257	583.9214	1°60'216874	35.0214	0.723298200
Earth	0.99907862	0.98564736	29.7855	1.0000010178	1.49398023
Mars	1.88071105	779.9361	0°52'407109	24.1309	1.5236793419
Jupiter	11.85652502	398.8840	0°08312944	13.0697	5.2026031913
Saturn	29.42351935	378.0919	0°03349791	9.6724	9.5549095957
Uranus	83.74740682	369.6360	0°01176904	6.8352	19.284460618
Neptune	163.7323045	367.4867	0°006020076	5.4778	28.750338615
Pluto	248.0208	366.7207	0°003973966	4.7490	45.04449769

The mean orbital elements are for the epoch J2000.0 = JD2451545.0 = 2000 January 1.5 except for Pluto.

The elements for Pluto are based on a fit over one century.

The sidereal period is the period of revolution measured with respect to the fixed stars; the synodic period is the interval between successive oppositions of a superior planet or successive inferior conjunctions of an inferior planet.

$$1 \text{ AU} = 1.49597870 \times 10^{11} \text{ m.}$$

(Adapted from the *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*, Seidelmann, P.K., University Science Books, 1992.) A number of astronomers consider Pluto to be a minor planet along with the recently discovered (2005) 2003 UB313. Minor planet is the official term for asteroids and trans-Neptunian objects (TNOs). Orbital elements (JD 2453600.5) for 2003 UB313: inclination = 44.177°, eccentricity = 0.4416129, longitude of the ascending node = 35.8750°, argument of perihelion = 151.3115°, orbital period = 203.500 d, mean orbital velocity = 3.436 km s<sup>-1</sup>, semi-major axis = 67.7091 AU, perihelion = 37.808 AU, aphelion = 97.610 AU, mean anomaly = 197.5379°.

***The planets*** (additional data)

Planet	Perihelion Distance (AU)	Aphelion Distance (AU)	V <sub>max</sub>	Magnetic Dipole Moment <sup>b</sup> (Wm <sup>-2</sup> )	Solar Constant (Wm <sup>-2</sup> )	T <sub>BB</sub> (K)	Oblateness
Mercury	0.31	0.47	-1.2	$3 \times 10^{19}$	9936.9	445	0.0
Venus	0.72	0.73	-4.28	$< 8 \times 10^{17}$	2613.9	325	0.0
Earth	0.98	1.02	-3.86 <sup>a</sup>	$8.02 \times 10^{22}$	1367.6	277	0.00335
Mars	1.38	1.67	-2.52	$1 \times 10^{18}$	589.0	225	0.006476
Jupiter	4.95	5.45	-2.7	$1.56 \times 10^{27}$	50.5	123	0.064874
Saturn	9.00	10.4	-0.6	$4.72 \times 10^{25}$	15.04	90	0.097962
Uranus	18.27	20.06	+5.3	$3.83 \times 10^{24}$	3.71	63	0.022927
Neptune	29.71	30.34	+7.50	$2.16 \times 10^{24}$	1.47	50	0.0182
Pluto	29.7	49.1	+13.8			44	

1 AU =  $1.496 \times 10^{11}$  m.

V<sub>max</sub>, maximum visual apparent magnitude.

<sup>a</sup> As seen from the Sun.

<sup>b</sup> Units are A m<sup>2</sup>.

The theoretical value (ignoring dipole offset) for the planetary surface magnetic field at the magnetic equator is

$$B_0 = \mu_0 M / 4\pi R^3 \text{ weber m}^{-2} \text{ (or tesla} = 1 \times 10^4 \text{ gauss)}$$

where

M = the magnetic dipole moment

R = the radius of the planet at the magnetic equator.

$\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}$  H m<sup>-1</sup>, the vacuum magnetic permeability.

For the Earth, the surface field is  $3.1 \times 10^{-5}$  T = 0.31 gauss.

T<sub>BB</sub>, blackbody temperature.

Oblateness,  $(R_{eq} - R_{pol})/R_{eq}$

***Natural satellites in the solar system*** (orbital data)

Planet	Satellite	Orbital Period <sup>1</sup> (R = Retrograde)	Semimajor Axis	Orbital Eccentricity	Inclination of Orbit to Planet's Equator
		d	× 10 <sup>3</sup> km		°
Earth	Moon	27.321 661	384.400	0.054 900 489	18.28–28.58
Mars	I Phobos	0.318 910 23	9.378	0.015	1.0
	II Deimos	1.262 440 7	23.459	0.000 5	0.9–2.7
Jupiter	I Io	1.769 137 786	422	0.004	0.04
	II Europa	3.551 181 041	671	0.009	0.47
	III Ganymede	7.154 552 96	1 070	0.002	0.21
	IV Callisto	16.689 018 4	1 883	0.007	0.51
	V Amalthea	0.498 179 05	181	0.003	0.40
	VI Himalia	250.566 2	11 480	0.157 98	27.63
	VII Elara	259.652 8	11 737	0.207 19	24.77
	VIII Pasiphae	735 R	23 500	0.378	145
	IX Sinope	758 R	23 700	0.275	153
	X Lysithea	259.22	11 720	0.107	29.02
	XI Carme	692 R	22 600	0.206 78	164
	XII Ananke	631 R	21 200	0.168 70	147
	XIII Leda	238.72	11 094	0.147 62	26.07
	XIV Thebe	0.674 5	222	0.015	0.8
	XV Adrastea	0.298 26	129		
	XVI Metis	0.294 780	128		
Saturn	I Mimas	0.942 421 813	185.52	0.020 2	1.53
	II Enceladus	1.370 217 855	238.02	0.004 52	0.00
	III Tethys	1887 802 160	294.66	0.000 00	1.86
	IV Dione	2.736 914 742	377.40	0.002 230	0.02
	V Rhea	4.517 500 436	527.04	0.001 00	0.35
	VI Titan	15.945 420 68	1 221.83	0.029 192	0.33
	VII Hyperion	21.276 608 8	1 481.1	0.104	0.43
	VIII Iapetus	79.330 182 5	3 561.3	0.028 28	14.72
	IX Phoebe	550.48 R	12 952	0.163 26	177 <sup>2</sup>
	X Janus	0.694 5	151.472	0.007	0.14

*Natural satellites in the solar system* (orbital data, cont.)

Planet	Satellite	Orbital Period <sup>1</sup> (R = Retrograde)	Semimajor Axis	Orbital Eccentricity	Inclination of Orbit to Planet's Equator
		d	$\times 10^3$ km		
	XI	Epimetheus	0.694 2	151.422	0.009
	XII	Helene	2.736 9	377.40	0.005
	XIII	Telesto	1.887 8	294.66	
	XIV	Calypso	1.887 8	294.66	
	XV	Atlas	0.601 9	137.670	0.000
	XVI	Prometheus	0.613 0	139.353	0.003
	XVII	Pandora	0.628 5	141.700	0.004
	XVIII	Pan	0.575 0	133.583	
Uranus	I	Ariel	2.520 379 35	191.02	0.003 4
	II	Umbriel	4.144 177 2	266.30	0.005 0
	III	Titania	8.705 871 7	435.91	0.002 2
	IV	Oberon	13.463 238 9	583.52	0.000 8
	V	Miranda	1.413 479 25	129.39	0.002 7
	VI	Cordelia	0.335 033	49.77	< 0.001
	VII	Ophelia	0.376 409	53.79	0.010
	VIII	Bianca	0.434 577	59.17	< 0.001
	IX	Cressida	0.463 570	61.78	< 0.001
	X	Desdemona	0.473 651	62.68	< 0.001
	XI	Juliet	0.493 066	64.35	< 0.001
	XII	Portia	0.513 196	66.09	< 0.001
	XIII	Rosalind	0.558 459	69.94	< 0.001
	XIV	Belinda	0.623 525	75.26	< 0.001
	XV	Puck	0.761 832	86.01	< 0.001
Neptune	I	Triton	5.876 854 1 R	354.76	0.000 016
	II	Nereid	360.136 19	5 513.4	0.751 2
	III	Naiad	0.294 396	48.23	< 0.001
	IV	Thalassa	0.311 485	50.07	< 0.001
	V	Despina	0.334 655	52.53	< 0.001
	VI	Galatea	0.428 745	61.95	< 0.001
	VII	Larissa	0.554 654	73.55	0.001 4
	VIII	Proteus	1.122 315	117.65	< 0.001
Pluto	I	Charon	6.387 25	19.6	< 0.001
					99 <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sidereal periods, except that tropical periods are given for satellites of Saturn.

<sup>2</sup> Relative to ecliptic plane.

<sup>3</sup> Referred to equator of 1950.0.

(From the 1999 *Astronomical Almanac*, USNO, Government Printing Office.) As of August, 2005, the current number of natural satellites is Mercury = 0, Venus = 0, Earth = 1, Mars = 2, Jupiter = 63, Saturn = 47, Uranus = 27, Neptune = 13, Pluto = 1.

**Natural satellites in the Solar System** (physical and photometric data)

		Satellite	Mass (Planet = 1)	Radius km	$V_0^*$
Earth		Moon	0.01230002	1738	-12.74
Mars	I	Phobos	$1.5 \times 10^{-8}$	$13.5 \times 10.8 \times 9.4$	11.3
	II	Deimos	$3 \times 10^{-9}$	$7.5 \times 6.1 \times 5.5$	12.40
Jupiter	I	Io	$4.68 \times 10^{-5}$	1815	5.02
	II	Europa	$2.52 \times 10^{-5}$	1569	5.29
	III	Ganymede	$7.80 \times 10^{-5}$	2631	4.61
	IV	Callisto	$5.66 \times 10^{-5}$	2400	5.65
	V	Amalthea	$38 \times 10^{-10}$	$135 \times 83 \times 75$	14.1
	VI	Himalia	$50 \times 10^{-10}$	93	14.84
	VII	Elara	$4 \times 10^{-10}$	38	16.77
	VIII	Pasiphae	$1 \times 10^{-10}$	25	17.03
	IX	Sinope	$0.4 \times 10^{-10}$	18	18.3
	X	Lysithea	$0.4 \times 10^{-10}$	18	18.4
	XI	Carme	$0.5 \times 10^{-10}$	20	18.0
	XII	Ananke	$0.2 \times 10^{-10}$	15	18.9
	XIII	Leda	$0.03 \times 10^{-10}$	8	20.2
	XIV	Thebe	$4 \times 10^{-10}$	$55 \times 45$	15.7
	XV	Adrastea	$0.0 \times 10^{-10}$	$12.5 \times 10 \times 7.5$	19.1
	XVI	Metis	$0.5 \times 10^{-10}$	20	17.5
Saturn	I	Mimas	$8.0 \times 10^{-8}$	196	12.9
	II	Enceladus	$1.3 \times 10^{-7}$	250	11.7
	III	Tethys	$1.3 \times 10^{-6}$	530	10.2
	IV	Dione	$1.85 \times 10^{-6}$	560	10.4
	V	Rhea	$4.4 \times 10^{-6}$	765	9.7
	VI	Titan	$2.38 \times 10^{-4}$	2575	8.28
	VII	Hyperion	$3 \times 10^{-8}$	$205 \times 130 \times 110$	14.19
	VIII	Iapetus	$3.3 \times 10^{-6}$	730	11.1
	IX	Phoebe	$7 \times 10^{-10}$	110	16.45
	X	Janus		$110 \times 100 \times 80$	14:

***Natural satellites in the Solar System*** (physical and photometric data, cont.)

	Satellite	Mass (Planet = 1)	Radius km	$V_0^*$
XI	Epimetheus		$70 \times 60 \times 50$	15:
XII	Helene		$18 \times 16 \times 15$	18:
XIII	Telesto		$17 \times 14 \times 13$	18.5:
XIV	Calypso		$17 \times 11 \times 11$	18.7:
XV	Atlas		$20 \times 10$	18:
XVI	Prometheus		$70 \times 50 \times 40$	16:
XVII	Pandora		$55 \times 45 \times 35$	16:
XVIII	Pan		10	
Uranus	I	Ariel	$1.56 \times 10^{-5}$	14.16
	II	Umbriel	$1.35 \times 10^{-5}$	14.81
	III	Titania	$4.06 \times 10^{-5}$	13.73
	IV	Oberon	$3.47 \times 10^{-5}$	13.94
	V	Miranda	$0.08 \times 10^{-5}$	16.3
	VI	Cordelia	13	24.1
	VII	Ophelia	15	23.8
	VIII	Bianca	21	23.0
	IX	Cressida	31	22.2
	X	Desdemona	27	22.5
	XI	Juliet	42	21.5
	XII	Portia	54	21.0
	XIII	Rosalind	27	22.5
	XIV	Belinda	33	22.1
	XV	Puck	77	20.2
Neptune	I	Triton	$2.09 \times 10^{-4}$	13.47
	II	Nereid	$2 \times 10^{-7}$	18.7
	III	Naiad		24.7
	IV	Thalassa		23.8
	V	Despina		22.6
	VI	Galatea		22.3
	VII	Larissa	$104 \times 89$	22.0
	VIII	Proteus	$218 \times 208 \times 201$	20.3
Pluto	I	Charon	0.22	16.8

\* $V_0$  = visual magnitude at opposition.

23 small irregular jovian satellites have been discovered in the period 1999–2001.

(From the 1999 *Astronomical Almanac*, USNO, Government Printing Office.) As of August, 2005, the current number of natural satellites is Mercury = 0, Venus = 0, Earth = 1, Mars = 2, Jupiter = 63, Saturn = 47, Uranus = 27, Neptune = 13, Pluto = 1.

*Selected comets*

Number	Name	Orbital Period	Perihelion Date	Perihelion Distance	Semi-Major Axis	Orbital Eccentricity	Orbital Inclination	Absolute Magnitude*
1P	Halley	76.1 yr	1986-02-09	0.587 AU	17.94 AU	0.967	162.2	5.5
2P	Encke	3.30	2003-12-28	0.340	2.21	0.847	11.8	9.8
6P	d'Arrest	6.51	2008-08-01	1.346	3.49	0.614	19.5	8.5
9P	Tempel 1	5.51	2005-07-07	1.500	3.12	0.519	10.5	12.0
19P	Borrelly	6.86	2001-09-14	1.358	3.61	0.624	30.3	11.9
21P	Giacobini-Zinner	6.52	1998-11-21	0.996	3.52	0.706	31.8	9.0
26P	Grigg-Skjellerup	5.09	1992-07-22	0.989	2.96	0.664	21.1	12.5
27P	Crommelin	27.89	1984-09-01	0.743	9.20	0.919	29.0	12.0
45P	Honda-Mrkos -Pajdusakova	5.29	1995-12-25	0.528	3.02	0.825	4.3	13.5
46P	Wirtanen	5.46	2013-10-21	1.063	3.12	0.652	11.7	9.0
55P	Tempel-Tuttle	32.92	1998-02-28	0.982	10.33	0.906	162.5	9.0
73P	Schwassmann -Wachmann 3	5.36	2006-06-02	0.937	3.06	0.694	11.4	11.7
75P	Kohoutek	6.24	1973-12-28	1.571	3.4	0.537	5.4	12.1
76P	West-Kohoutek -Ikemura	6.46	2000-06-01	1.596	3.45	0.540	30.5	10.5
81P	Wild 2	6.39	2003-09-25	1.583	3.44	0.540	3.2	6.5
95P	Chiron	50.7	1996-02-14	8.46	13.7	0.383	7	
107P	Wilson-Harrington Hale-Bopp	4.29 4000.	2001-03-26 1997-03-31	1.000 0.914	2.64 250.	0.623 0.995	2.8 89.4	9.0 -1.0
	Hyakutake	~40000.	1996-05-01	0.230	~1165.	0.9998	124.9	

\*Absolute magnitude: This is the brightness a comet would exhibit if placed 1 AU from both the Earth and Sun.

The comets were selected for historical interest or are subjects for flybys. (NASA/Goddard, 2000)

*Periodic comets, periods under 200 yr*

Desig.	Name	Discovery	Last T	Next T	Period	Inclin.
2P	Encke	1786	2000	2003	3.3 yr	11.8°
107P	Wilson-Harrington	1949	1996	2001	4.3	2.8
26P	Grigg-Skjellerup	1902	1997	2002	5.11	21.1
79P	du Toit-Hartley	1945	1987	2003	5.21	2.9
141P	Machholz 2	1994	1999	2005	5.22	12.8
96P	Machholz 1	1986	1996	2001	5.24	60.1
45P	Honda-Markos-Pajdusakova	1948	1995	2001	5.27	4.2
73P	Schwassmann-Wachmann 3	1930	1995	2001	5.34	11.4
25D	Neujmin 2	1916	1927	Lost	5.43	10.6
46P	Wirtanen	1948	1997	2002	5.46	11.7
5D	Brorsen	1846	1879	Lost	5.46	29.4
41P	Tuttle-Giacobini-Kresak	1858	1995	2001	5.46	9.2
10P	Tempel 2	1873	1999	2005	5.47	12.0
9P	Tempel 1	1867	2000	2005	5.51	10.5
71P	Clark	1973	2000	2006	5.52	9.5
125P	Spacewatch	1991	1996	2002	5.56	10.0
88P	Howell	1981	1998	2004	5.57	4.4
133P	Elst-Pizarro	1996	1996	2001	5.61	1.4
124P	Mrkos	1991	1996	2002	5.64	31.5
11D	Tempel-Swift	1869	1908	Lost	5.68	5.4
100P	Hartley 1	1985	1997	2003	6.02	25.7
83P	Russell 1	1979	1985	2006	6.1	22.7
37P	Forbes	1929	1999	2005	6.13	9.9
116P	Wild 4	1990	1996	2003	6.16	3.7
104P	Kowal 2	1979	1998	2004	6.18	15.5
54P	de Vico-Swift	1844	1965	Lost	6.31	3.6
127P	Holt-Olmstead	1990	1997	2003	6.33	14.4
7P	Pons-Winnecke	1819	1996	2002	6.37	22.3
103P	Hartley 2	1986	1997	2004	6.39	13.6
57P	du Toit-Neujmin-Delporte	1941	1996	2002	6.39	2.8
81P	Wild 2	1978	1997	2003	6.39	3.2
31P	Schwassmann-Wachmann 2	1929	1994	2002	6.39	3.8
76P	West-Kohoutek-Ikemura	1975	1993	2000	6.41	30.5
105P	Singer Brewster	1986	1999	2005	6.44	9.2
22P	Kopff	1906	1996	2002	6.45	4.7
43P	Wolf-Harrington	1924	1997	2004	6.46	18.5
6P	d'Arrest	1851	1995	2002	6.51	19.5
118P	Shoemaker-Levy 4	1991	1997	2003	6.51	8.5
87P	Bus	1981	2000	2007	6.52	2.6
94P	Russell 4	1984	1997	2003	6.58	6.2
67P	Churyumov-Gerasimenko	1969	1996	2002	6.59	7.1
49P	Arend-Rigaux	1951	1998	2005	6.61	18.3
21P	Giacobini-Zinner	1900	1998	2005	6.61	31.9
3D	Bielä	1772	1852	Broke up	6.62	12.6
62P	Tschenishan 1	1965	1998	2004	6.64	10.5
44P	Reinmnnuth 2	1947	1994	2001	6.64	7.0
112P	Urata-Niijima	1986	2000	2006	6.65	24.2
114P	Wiseman-Skiff	1986	2000	2006	6.66	18.3
75P	Kohoutek	1975	1994	2001	6.67	5.9
130P	McNaught-Hughes	1991	1998	2004	6.69	7.3

*Periodic comets, periods under 200 yr (cont.)*

Desig.	Name	Discovery	Last T	Next T	Period	Inclin.
18D	Perrine-Mrkos	1896	1968	Lost?	6.72 yr	17.8°
15P	Finlay	1886	1995	2002	6.76	3.7
51P	Harrington	1953	1994	2001	6.78	8.7
60P	Tsuchinshan 2	1965	1999	2005	6.79	6.7
65P	Gunn	1970	1996	2003	6.83	10.4
110P	Hartley 3	1988	1994	2001	6.88	11.7
19P	Borrelly	1904	1994	2001	6.88	30.3
138P	Shoemaker-Levy 7	1991	1998	2005	6.89	10.1
16P	Brooks 2	1889	1994	2001	6.89	5.5
86P	Wild 3	1980	1994	2001	6.91	15.5
84P	Giclas	1978	1999	2006	6.95	7.3
48P	Johnson	1949	1997	2004	6.97	13.7
69P	Taylor	1915	1997	2004	6.97	20.5
77P	Longmore	1975	1995	2002	6.98	24.4
148P	Anderson-LINEAR	1963	1963	2001	7.04	3.7
70P	Kojima	1970	2000	2007	7.04	6.6
131P	Mueller 2	1990	1997	2004	7.05	7.4
33P	Daniel	1909	1992	2008	7.06	20.1
17P	Holmes	1892	2000	2007	7.07	19.2
113P	Spitaler	1890	1994	2001	7.1	5.8
78P	Gehrels 2	1973	1997	2004	7.2	6.3
98P	Takamizawa	1984	1998	2006	7.21	9.5
108P	Ciffreo	1985	2000	2007	7.25	13.1
129P	Shoemaker-Levy 3	1991	1998	2005	7.25	5.0
102P	Shoemaker 1	1984	1991	2006	7.26	26.3
106P	Schuster	1977	1999	2007	7.29	20.1
30P	Reinmuth 1	1928	1995	2002	7.31	8.1
4P	Faye	1843	1999	2006	7.34	9.1
89P	Russell 2	1980	1994	2002	7.38	12.0
147P	Kushida-Muramatsu	1993	1993	2001	7.44	2.4
47P	Ashbrook-Jackson	1948	1993	2001	7.49	12.5
91P	Russell 3	1983	1997	2005	7.49	14.1
61P	Shajn-Schaldach	1949	1993	2001	7.49	6.1
135P	Shoemaker-Levy 8	1992	1999	2007	7.49	6.1
52P	Harrington-Abell	1955	1999	2006	7.53	10.2
144P	Kushida	1994	1994	2001	7.58	4.1
123P	West-Hartley	1989	1996	2003	7.59	15.3
150P	2000 WT168	2000	2001	2008	7.66	18.5
97P	Metcalf-Brewington	1906	1991	2001	7.76	13.0
146P	Shoemaker-LINEAR	1984	2000	2008	7.88	21.6
39P	Oterma	1942	1958	Lost?	7.88	4.0
121P	Shoemaker-Holt 2	1989	1996	2004	8.05	17.7
82P	Gehrels 3	1975	1993	2001	8.11	1.1
80P	Peters-Hartley	1846	1998	2006	8.12	29.9
111P	Helin-Roman-Crockett	1989	1996	2004	8.16	4.2
14P	Wolf	1884	2000	2009	8.21	27.9
24P	Schaumasse	1911	1993	2001	8.22	11.8
58P	Jackson-Neujmin	1936	1995	2004	8.24	13.5
50P	Arend	1951	1999	2007	8.24	19.2
132P	Helin-Roman-Alu 2	1989	1997	2006	8.24	5.8
120P	Mueller 1	1987	1996	2004	8.41	8.8

*Periodic comets, periods under 200 yr (cont.)*

Desig.	Name	Discovery	Last T	Next T	Period	Inclin.
36P	Whipple	1933	1994	2003	8.53 yr	9.9°
74P	Smirnova-Chernykh	1975	1992	2001	8.57	6.6
145P	Shoemaker-Levy 5	1991	2000	2009	8.69	11.8
136P	Mueller 3	1990	1999	2007	8.71	9.4
115P	Maury	1985	1994	2002	8.74	11.7
32P	Comas Sola	1926	1996	2005	8.83	12.9
119P	Parker-Hartley	1989	1996	2005	8.89	5.2
143P	Kowal-Mrkos	1984	2000	2009	8.95	4.7
149P	Muller 4	1992	1992	2001	9.01	29.7
72P	Denning-Fujikawa	1881	1978	2005	9.01	8.6
93P	Lovas 1	1980	1998	2007	9.15	12.2
64P	Swift-Gehrels	1889	1991	2009	9.21	9.3
137P	Shoemaker-Levy 2	1990	2000	2009	9.37	4.7
59P	Keams-Kwee	1963	1999	2009	9.47	9.4
128P	Shoemaker-Holt 1	1987	1997	2007	9.51	4.4
139P	Väisälä-Oterma	1939	1998	2008	9.54	2.3
117P	Helin-Roman-Alu 1	1989	1997	2005	9.57	9.7
42P	Neujmin 3	1929	1993	2004	10.63	4.0
40P	Väisälä 1	1939	1993	2004	10.78	11.6
68P	Klemola	1965	1998	2009	10.82	11.1
34P	Gale	1927	1938	Lost	10.99	11.7
142P	Ge-Wang	1988	1999	2010	11.17	12.2
85P	Boethin	1975	1986	2008	11.23	5.8
56P	Slaughter-Burnham	1958	1993	2005	11.59	8.2
53P	Van Biesbroeck	1954	1991	2003	12.43	6.6
92P	Sanguin	1977	1990	2002	12.5	18.7
63P	Wild 1	1960	1999	2013	13.24	19.9
126P	IRAS	1983	1996	2010	13.29	46.0
8P	Tuttle	1790	1994	2008	13.51	54.7
101P	Chernykh	1977	1992	2005	13.96	5.1
29P	Schwassmann-Wachmann 1	1927	1989	2004	14.85	9.4
66P	du Toit	1944	1974	2003	14.97	18.7
99P	Kowal 1	1977	1992	2007	15.02	4.4
90P	Gehrels 1	1972	1987	2002	15.06	9.6
134P	Kowal-Vavrova	1983	1998	2014	15.58	4.3
140P	Bowell-Skiff	1983	1999	2015	16.18	3.8
28P	Neujmin 1	1913	1984	2002	18.19	14.2
27P	Crommelin	1818	1984	2011	27.41	29.1
55P	Tempel-Tuttle	1865	1998	2031	33.22	162.5
38P	Stephan-Oterma	1867	1980	2018	37.71	18.0
95P	Chiron	1977	1996	2046	50.78	6.9
20D	Westphal	1852	1913	Lost?	61.86	40.9
13P	Olbers	1815	1956	2024	69.56	44.6
23P	Brorsen-Metcalf	1847	1989	2059	70.54	19.3
12P	Pons-Brooks	1812	1954	2024	70.92	74.2
122P	de Vico	1846	1995	2069	74.41	85.4
1P	Halley	240 BC	1986	2061	76.01	162.2
109P	Swift-Tuttle	1862	1992	2126	135	113.4
35P	Herschel-Rigollet	1788	1939	2092	154.91	64.2

Last T, year of last perihelion passage.

Next T, next predicted perihelion year.

Period, orbital period taken from last observed apparition.

Inclin., inclination with respect to the ecliptic.

Orbital element may change due to perturbations, especially encounters with Jupiter.

### Selected asteroids

Asteroid Number	Name	Diameter (km)	$\sim$ Mass $10^{15}$ kg	Rotation Period hr	Orbital period yr	Semimajor Axis AU	Eccentricity	Orbital Inclination°
1	Ceres	960 × 932	870,000	9.075	4.60	2.767	0.0789	10.58
2	Pallas	570 × 525 × 482	318,000	7.811	4.61	2.774	0.2299	34.84
3	Juno	240	20,000	7.210	4.38	2.669	0.2579	12.97
4	Vesta	530	300,000	5.342	3.63	2.362	0.0895	7.14
45	Eugenia	226	6,100	5.639	4.49	2.721	0.0831	6.61
140	Siwa	103	1,500	18.5	4.51	2.734	0.2157	3.19
216	Kleopatra	217 × 94		5.385	4.67	2.793	0.2535	13.14
243	Ida	58 × 23	100	4.633	4.84	2.861	0.0451	1.14
253	Mathilde	66 × 48 × 46	103.3	417.7	4.31	2.646	0.2680	6.71
433	Eros	33 × 13 × 13	6.69	5.270	1.76	1.458	0.2229	10.83
951	Gaspra	19 × 12 × 11	10	7.042	3.29	2.209	0.1738	4.10
1566	Icarus	1.4	0.001	2.273	1.12	1.078	0.8269	22.86
1620	Geographos	2.0	0.004	5.222	1.39	1.245	0.3356	13.34
1862	Apollo	1.6	0.002	3.063	1.81	1.471	0.5600	6.36
2060	Chiron	180	4,000	5.9	50.7	13.633	0.3801	6.94
2530	Shipka				5.25	3.019	0.1237	10.10
2703	Bodnar				3.25	2.194	0.0572	6.04
3352	McAuliffe	2 – 5			2.57	1.879	0.3686	4.77
3840	Ministrobelli				3.38	2.249	0.0831	3.92
4179	Toutatis	4.6 × 2.4 × 1.9	0.05	130.	3.98	2.512	0.6339	0.47
4680	Nereus	2			1.82	1.490	0.3603	1.42
4769	Castalia	1.8 × 0.8	0.0005		1.10	1.063	0.4831	8.89
4979	Otawara	5.5	0.2		3.19	2.168	0.1449	0.91
9969	Braille	2.2 × 1.0			3.58	2.341	0.4336	29.0
1998	SF36	~1			1.52	1.324	0.2759	1.71

**1** Ceres—The largest and first discovered asteroid, by G. Piazzi on January 1, 1801. Ceres comprises over one-third the  $2.3 \times 10^{21}$  kg estimated total mass of all the asteroids.

**2** Pallas—The 2nd largest asteroid and second asteroid discovered, by H. Olbers in 1802.

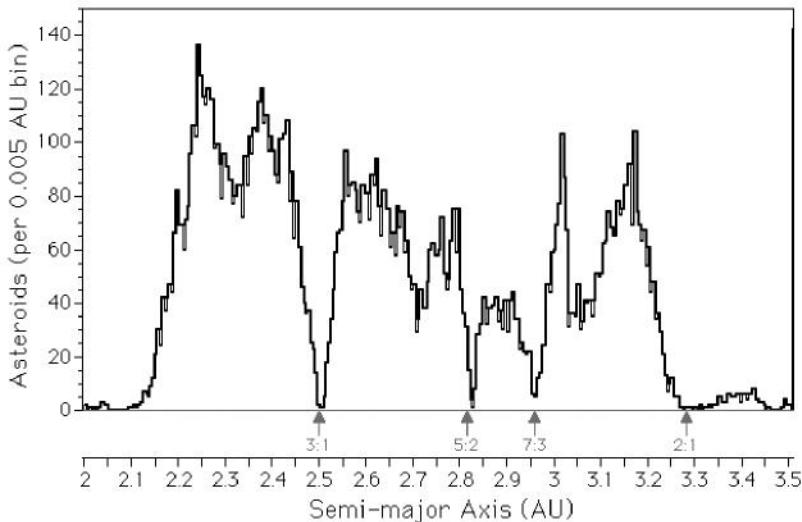
**3** Juno—The 3rd asteroid discovered, by K. Harding in 1804.

**4** Vesta—The 3rd largest asteroid. The asteroids were selected for historical interest, are subjects for flybys, or because of peculiarities (near-Earth, odd shape, double object).

(NASA/Goddard, 2000)

### Asteroid distribution histogram

This histogram shows the primary Kirkwood gaps in the main asteroid belt. These gaps (labeled “3:1”, “5:2”, “7:3”, “2:1”) are caused by mean-motion resonances between an asteroid and Jupiter. For example, the 3:1 Kirkwood gap is located where the ratio of an asteroid’s orbital period to that of Jupiter is 3/1 (the asteroid completes 3 orbits for every 1 orbit of Jupiter). The effect of these mean-motion resonances is a change in the asteroid’s orbital elements (particularly semi-major axis) sufficient to create the gaps in semi-major axis space.



(NASA/JPL, 1999)

Estimated total mass of asteroids =  $1.8 \times 10^{24}$  g.

Estimated densities (most asteroids):  $1.0 - 3.5$  g cm $^{-3}$ .

Typical rotation period, approx. 9 h (range: 2 to greater than 1000 h).

*Annual major meteor showers*

Shower	Activity	Max	Radiant					
			$\lambda$	$\alpha$	$\delta$	V	ZHR	
Quadrantids	Dec 28-Jan 07	Jan 3/4	283	229	+49	41	45-200	
Lyrids	Apr 16-Apr 22	Apr 21/22	032	271	+33	49	10	
$\eta$ Aquarids	Apr 21-May 12	May 05	046	337	-01	66	10	
$\alpha$ Capricornids	Jul 15-Sep 11	Aug 1	129	307	-08	25	6-14	
Southern $\delta$ Aquarids	Jul 14-Aug 18	Jul 29	125	339	-17	34	15-20	
Northern $\delta$ Aquarids	Jul 16-Sep 10	Aug 13	139	344	+02	42	10	
Perseids	Jul 23-Aug 22	Aug 11/12	140	047	+57	59	80	
Orionids	Oct 15-Oct 29	Oct 20/21	208	095	+16	66	20	
Southern Taurids	Sep 17-Nov 27	Nov 1-7	216	053	+12	27	5	
Northern Taurids	Oct 12-Dec 02	Nov 4-7	221	054	+21	29	7	
Leonids	Nov 14-Nov 21	Nov 17	235	153	+22	71	10-15	
Geminids	Dec 09-Dec 19	Dec 13/14	262	112	+33	35	80	
Ursids	Dec 17-Dec 24	Dec 22/23	271	217	+76	33	10-15	

$\alpha, \delta$ : Coordinates for a shower's radiant position, at maximum;  $\alpha$  is right ascension,  $\delta$  is declination. Radians drift across the sky each day due to the Earth's own orbital motion around the Sun.

$\lambda$ : Solar longitude at maximum, a precise measure of the Earth's position on its orbit which is not dependent on the vagaries of the calendar. All  $\lambda$ 's are given for the equinox J2000.0.

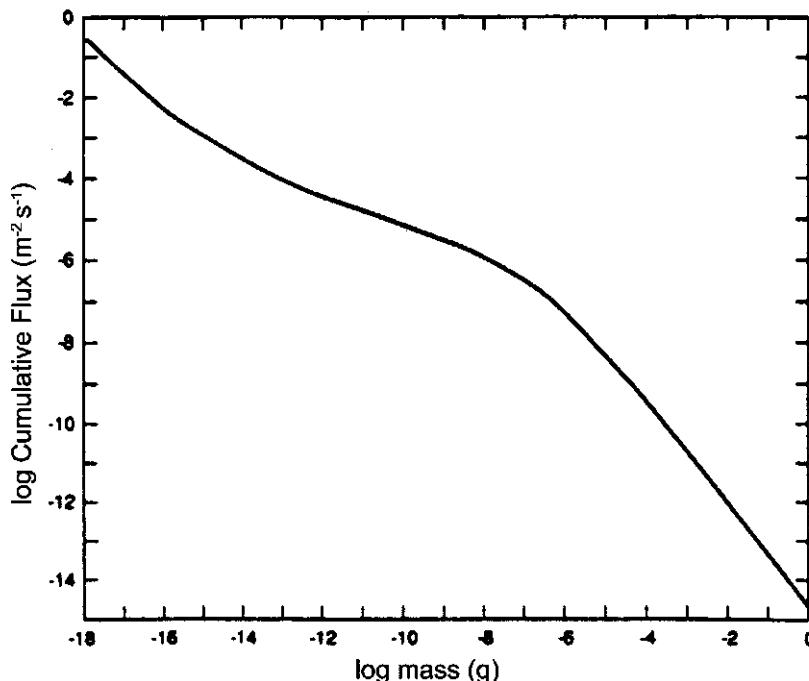
V: Atmospheric or apparent meteoric velocity given in  $\text{km s}^{-1}$ . Velocities range from about  $11 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  (very slow) to  $72 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  (very fast).  $40 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  is roughly medium speed.

ZHR: Zenith Hourly Rate, a calculated maximum number of meteors an ideal observer would see in perfectly clear skies with the shower radiant overhead. This figure is given in terms of meteors per hour.

### Meteoroid flux density

---

Cumulative flux density of meteoroids that are larger than a given mass *vs* the meteoroid mass for meteoroids near the Earth. (From *The Astronomy and Astrophysics Encyclopedia*, Cambridge University Press, 1991.)




---

An analytical expression for the meteoroid flux density in the vicinity of the Earth-Moon system is given by

$$F = 7.9 m^{-1.16} 10^6 \text{ km}^{-2} \text{ yr}^{-1}, \quad 10^{-10} < m < 10^5 \text{ kg}$$

Where  $F$  is the number of meteoroids with mass greater than  $m$  (kg) per  $10^6 \text{ km}^2$  per year. Meteoroids with masses greater than 6 kg will arrive in the vicinity of the Earth-Moon system at a rate of approximately 1 per  $10^6 \text{ km}^2$  per year.

(From Schubert, G. and Walterscheid, R.L, in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Editor, Springer, 1999.)

## *Glossary of meteor astronomy*

---

---

### **Asteroid**

One of a number of objects ranging in size from sub-km to about 1000 km, most of which lie between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter; also called ‘minor planet’. The preliminary designations consist of the year of discovery, an upper case letter to indicate the half month in that year (A = Jan 1–15, B = Jan 16–31, ..., Y = Dec 16–31, the letter I being omitted), and a second upper case letter in sequence. When this sequence of 25 letters (with I again being omitted) has been completed it is repeated and followed by a sequential number. Permanent designations consist of numbers and names, beginning with (1) Ceres, given to asteroids for which orbits are accurately determined. Names are generally proposed by the discoverer.

### **Comet**

A diffuse body of solid particles and gas, which orbits the Sun. The orbit is usually highly elliptical or even parabolic. Comets are unstable bodies with masses of the order of  $10^{18}$  g whose average lifetime is about 100 perihelion passages. Periodic comets comprise only  $\sim 4\%$  of all known comets. Periodic comets are designated by a number, followed by “P/” and its name; e.g. Halley’s comet has the designation 1P/Halley, the parent body of the Perseids, 109P/Swift-Tuttle.

### **Fireball**

A bright meteor with an apparent visual magnitude of -4 mag. or brighter.

### **Meteor**

In particular, the light phenomenon which results from the entry into the Earth’s atmosphere of a solid particle from space.

### **Meteorite**

A natural object of extraterrestrial origin (meteoroid) that survives passage through the atmosphere and hits the ground.

### **Meteoroid**

A solid object moving in interplanetary space, of a size considerably smaller than a asteroid and considerably larger than an atom or molecule.

### **Meteoroid Stream**

Stream of solid particles released from a parent body such as a comet or asteroid, moving on similar orbits. Various ejection directions and velocities for individual meteoroids cause the width of a stream and the gradual distribution of meteoroids over the entire average orbit.

### **Meteor Shower**

A number of meteors with approximately parallel trajectories. The meteors belonging to one shower appear to emanate from their radiant.

### **Micrometeorite**

A small extraterrestrial particle that has survived entry into the Earth’s

atmosphere. The actual size is not rigorously constrained but is operationally defined by the collection procedure. Micrometeorites found on the Earth's surface are smaller than 1 mm, those collected in the stratosphere are rarely as large as 50  $\mu\text{m}$ .

### **Persistent train**

Remaining glow due to ionization in the upper atmosphere after the passage of a meteoroid. The intensity and duration depend on the meteoroid's atmospheric entry velocity, its size, and its composition. Bright fireballs occasionally caused trains visible for several minutes.

### **Radiant**

The point where the backward projection of the meteor trajectory intersects the celestial sphere. More generally, the point in the sky where meteors from a specific shower seem to come from.

### **Radio observations**

Two main methods are used, forward scatter observations and radar observations. The first are easy to carry out, but deliver only data on the general meteor activity; showers cannot be associated. The last is carried out by professional astronomers. Meteor radiants and meteoroid orbits can be determined.

### **Solar longitude**

Angular distance along the Earth's orbit measured from the intersection of the ecliptic and the celestial equator where the Sun moves from south to north. It gives the position of the Earth on its orbit and, hence, is a more appropriate information on a meteor shower's maximum than the date.

---

---

(Adapted from the International Meteor Organization)

### *Contents of the solar system*

---

*Contents of the planetary system (mass, energy, and momentum)*

Total mass of planets	$2.669 \times 10^{27}$ kg
Total mass of satellites	$6.2 \times 10^{23}$ kg
Total mass of asteroids	$1.8 \times 10^{21}$ kg
Total mass of meteoric and cometary matter	$6.0 \times 10^{15}$ kg
Total mass of entire planetary system	$2.670 \times 10^{27}$ kg
Total angular momentum of planetary system	$3.148 \times 10^{43}$ kg m <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>
Total translational kinetic energy of the planetary system	$1.99 \times 10^{35}$ Joule
Total rotational energy of planets	$0.7 \times 10^{35}$ Joule

For comparison:

Mass of the Sun	$1.989 \times 10^{30}$ kg
Solar angular momentum (based on surface rotation)	$1.63 \times 10^{41}$ kg m <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>

*Contents of comet source regions (mass and number)*

Estimated total mass of Oort Cloud of comets	$10^{25} - 10^{27}$ kg
Estimated number of Oort cloud comets	$10^{11} - 10^{13}$
Estimated distance of the Oort cloud	$10^3 - 10^5$ AU
Estimated total mass of Kuiper belt of comets	$10^{22} - 10^{26}$ kg
Estimated number of Kuiper belt comets	$10^8 - 10^{12}$
Estimated distance of the Kuiper belt	30 – 1000 AU

---

(From Allen's Astrophysical Quantities, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.)

## Extrasolar planets

Star	$M_p \sin i$	P	a	e	K	M	$\alpha$	$\delta$
1 HD83443b	0.35	2.986	0.04	0.00	57.0	0.79 09 37	11.8	-43 16 20
2 HD46375	0.25	3.024	0.04	0.02	35.2	1.00 06 33	12.6	5 27 47
3 HD179949	0.93	3.092	0.04	0.00	112.0	1.24 19 15	33.2	-24 10 46
4 HD187123	0.54	3.097	0.04	0.01	72.0	1.06 19 46	58.1	34 25 10
5 $\tau$ Boo	4.14	3.313	0.05	0.02	474.0	1.30 13 47	15.7	17 27 25
6 BD-103166	0.48	3.487	0.05	0.05	60.6	1.10 10 58	28.8	-10 46 13
7 HD75289	0.46	3.508	0.05	0.01	56.0	1.15 08 47	40.4	-41 44 12
8 HD209458	0.63	3.524	0.05	0.02	82.0	1.05 22 03	10.8	18 53 4
9 51Peg	0.46	4.231	0.05	0.01	55.2	1.06 22 57	28.0	20 46 8
10 $\nu$ Andb	0.68	4.617	0.06	0.02	70.2	1.30 01 36	47.8	41 24 20
11 HD68988	1.90	6.276	0.07	0.14	187.0	1.20 08 18	22.2	61 27 39
12 HD168746	0.24	6.400	0.07	0.00	28.0	0.92 18 21	49.8	-11 55 22
13 HD217107	1.29	7.130	0.07	0.14	139.7	0.98 22 58	15.5	-2 23 43
14 HD162020	13.73	8.420	0.07	0.28	1813.0	0.70 17 50	38.4	-40 19 6
15 HD130322	1.15	10.720	0.09	0.05	115.0	0.89 14 47	32.7	0 16 53
16 HD108147	0.35	10.880	0.10	0.56	37.0	1.05 12 25	46.3	-64 01 20
17 HD38529	0.79	14.310	0.13	0.12	53.6	1.39 05 46	34.9	1 10 5
18 55Cnc	0.93	14.660	0.12	0.03	75.8	1.03 08 52	35.8	28 19 51
19 GJ86	4.23	15.800	0.12	0.04	379.0	0.86 02 10	25.9	-50 49 25
20 HD195019	3.55	18.200	0.14	0.02	271.0	1.02 20 28	18.6	18 46 10
21 HD6434	0.48	22.090	0.15	0.30	37.0	0.99 01 04	40.2	-39 29 18
22 HD192263	0.81	24.350	0.15	0.22	68.2	0.79 20 13	59.8	0 52 1
23 HD83443c	0.17	29.830	0.17	0.42	14.0	0.79 09 37	11.8	-43 16 20
24 GJ876c	0.56	30.120	0.13	0.27	81.0	0.32 22 53	16.7	-14 15 49
25 $\rho$ CrB	0.99	39.810	0.22	0.07	61.3	0.95 16 01	2.7	33 18 12
26 HD74156b	1.55	51.600	0.28	0.65	108.0	1.05 08 42	25.1	4 34 41
27 HD168443b	7.64	58.100	0.29	0.53	470.0	1.01 18 20	3.9	-9 35 45
28 GJ876b	1.89	61.020	0.21	0.10	210.0	0.32 22 53	16.7	-14 15 49
29 HD121504	0.89	64.620	0.32	0.13	45.0	1.02 13 57	17.2	-56 02 24
30 HD178911B	6.46	71.500	0.33	0.14	343.0	0.90 19 09	3.1	34 35 59
31 HD16141	0.22	75.800	0.35	0.00	10.8	1.00 02 35	19.9	-3 33 38
32 HD114762	10.96	84.030	0.35	0.33	615.0	0.82 13 12	19.7	17 31 2
33 HD80606	3.43	111.800	0.44	0.93	414.0	0.90 09 22	37.6	50 36 13
34 70Vir	7.42	116.700	0.48	0.40	316.2	1.10 13 28	25.8	13 46 44
35 HD52265	1.14	119.000	0.49	0.29	45.4	1.13 07 00	18.0	-5 22 2
36 HD1237	3.45	133.800	0.51	0.51	164.0	0.96 00 16	12.7	-79 51 4
37 HD37124	1.13	154.800	0.55	0.31	48.0	0.91 05 37	2.5	20 43 51
38 HD82943c	0.88	221.600	0.73	0.54	34.0	1.05 09 34	50.7	-12 07 46
39 HD8574	2.23	228.800	0.76	0.40	76.0	1.10 01 25	12.5	28 34 0
40 HD169830	2.95	230.400	0.82	0.34	83.0	1.40 18 27	49.5	-29 49 1
41 $\nu$ Andc	2.05	241.300	0.83	0.24	58.0	1.30 01 36	47.8	41 24 20
42 HD12661	2.84	250.500	0.80	0.19	89.1	1.07 02 04	34.3	25 24 51
43 HD89744	7.17	256.000	0.88	0.70	257.0	1.40 10 22	10.6	41 13 46
44 HD202206	14.68	258.900	0.77	0.42	554.0	0.90 21 14	57.8	-20 47 21
45 HD134987	1.63	265.000	0.82	0.37	53.7	1.05 15 13	28.7	-25 18 34

See end of the table for explanation of column headings.

**Extrasolar planets (cont.)**

Star	$M_p \sin i$	P	a	e	K	M	$\alpha$	$\delta$
46 HD17051	2.12	312.000	0.91	0.15	63.0	1.03 02 42 33.5	-50 48 1	
47 HD92788	3.88	337.000	0.97	0.28	113.0	1.07 10 42 48.5	-2 11 2	
48 HD142	1.00	337.100	0.98	0.38	29.6	1.10 00 06 19.2	-49 04 31	
49 HD28185	5.59	385.000	1.00	0.06	168.0	0.90 04 26 26.3	-10 33 3	
50 HD177830	1.24	391.000	1.10	0.40	34.0	1.17 19 05 20.8	25 55 14	
51 HD4203	1.64	406.000	1.09	0.53	51.0	1.06 00 44 41.2	20 26 56	
52 HD27442	1.32	415.000	1.16	0.06	32.0	1.20 04 16 29.0	-59 18 8	
53 HD210277	1.29	436.600	1.12	0.45	39.1	0.99 22 09 29.9	-7 32 55	
54 HD82943b	1.63	444.600	1.16	0.41	46.0	1.05 09 34 50.7	-12 07 46	
55 HD19994	1.66	454.000	1.19	0.20	42.0	1.10 03 12 46.4	-1 11 46	
56 HD114783	0.99	501.000	1.20	0.10	27.0	0.92 13 12 43.8	-2 15 54	
57 HD222582	5.18	576.000	1.35	0.71	179.6	1.00 23 41 51.5	-5 59 9	
58 HD23079	2.54	627.300	1.48	0.06	56.7	1.10 03 39 43.1	-52 54 57	
59 HD141937	9.67	658.800	1.48	0.40	247.0	1.00 15 52 17.5	-18 26 10	
60 HD160691	1.99	743.000	1.65	0.62	54.0	1.08 17 44 8.7	-51 50 3	
61 HD213240	3.75	759.000	1.60	0.31	91.0	0.95 22 31 0.4	-49 25 60	
62 16CygB	1.68	796.700	1.69	0.68	50.0	1.01 19 41 52.0	50 31 3	
63 HD4208	0.81	829.000	1.69	0.04	18.3	0.93 00 44 26.7	-26 30 56	
64 HD10697	6.08	1074.000	2.12	0.11	114.0	1.10 01 44 55.8	20 04 59	
65 47UMab	2.56	1090.500	2.09	0.06	49.7	1.03 10 59 28.0	40 25 49	
66 HD190228	5.01	1127.000	2.25	0.43	96.0	1.20 20 03 0.8	28 18 25	
67 HD50554	4.49	1296.000	2.36	0.51	94.9	1.04 06 54 42.8	24 14 44	
68 $\nu$ Andd	4.29	1308.500	2.56	0.31	70.4	1.30 01 36 47.8	41 24 20	
69 HD33636	7.71	1553.000	2.62	0.39	148.0	0.99 05 11 46.4	4 24 13	
70 HD106252	7.10	1722.000	2.77	0.57	150.7	0.96 12 13 29.5	10 02 30	
71 HD168443c	16.96	1770.000	2.87	0.20	289.0	1.01 18 20 3.9	-9 35 45	
72 HD145675	4.05	1775.000	2.93	0.37	70.4	1.06 16 10 24.3	43 49 3	
73 HD39091	10.37	2115.200	3.34	0.62	196.2	1.10 05 37 9.9	-80 28 9	
74 HD74156c	7.46	2300.000	3.47	0.40	121.0	1.05 08 42 25.1	4 34 41	
75 $\epsilon$ Eri	0.88	2518.000	3.36	0.60	19.0	0.80 03 32 55.8	-9 27 30	
76 47UMac	0.76	2640.000	3.78	0.00	11.0	1.03 10 59 28.0	40 25 49	

i, inclination of the planetary orbit with respect to the plane of the sky in degrees.

$M_p$ , mass of the planet (in Jupiter masses).

P, period of the planetary orbit in days.

a, semimajor axis of the orbit in AU.

e, eccentricity of the orbit.

K, semi-amplitude of the radial velocity of the star in  $m \text{ s}^{-1}$ .

M, mass of the star (in solar masses).

$\alpha, \delta$  star's right ascension and declination, International Celestial Reference System coordinates (2000.0); hh mm ss, dd mm ss.

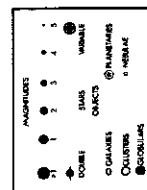
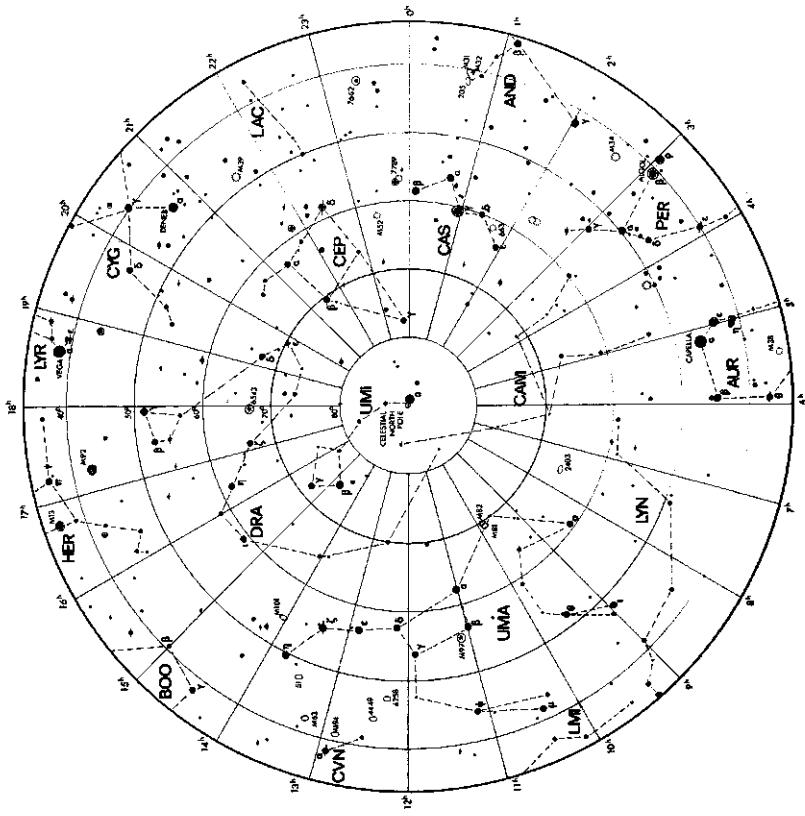
$M_p \sin i = 4.92 \times 10^{-3} \text{ KM}^{2/3} \text{ P}^{1/3}$ ,  $a = 1.96 \times 10^{-2} \text{ P}^{2/3} \text{ M}^{1/3}$ .

(University of California Planet Search Project, list as of 19 November 2001)

See <http://exoplanets.org/> for an up-to-date list of extrasolar planets.

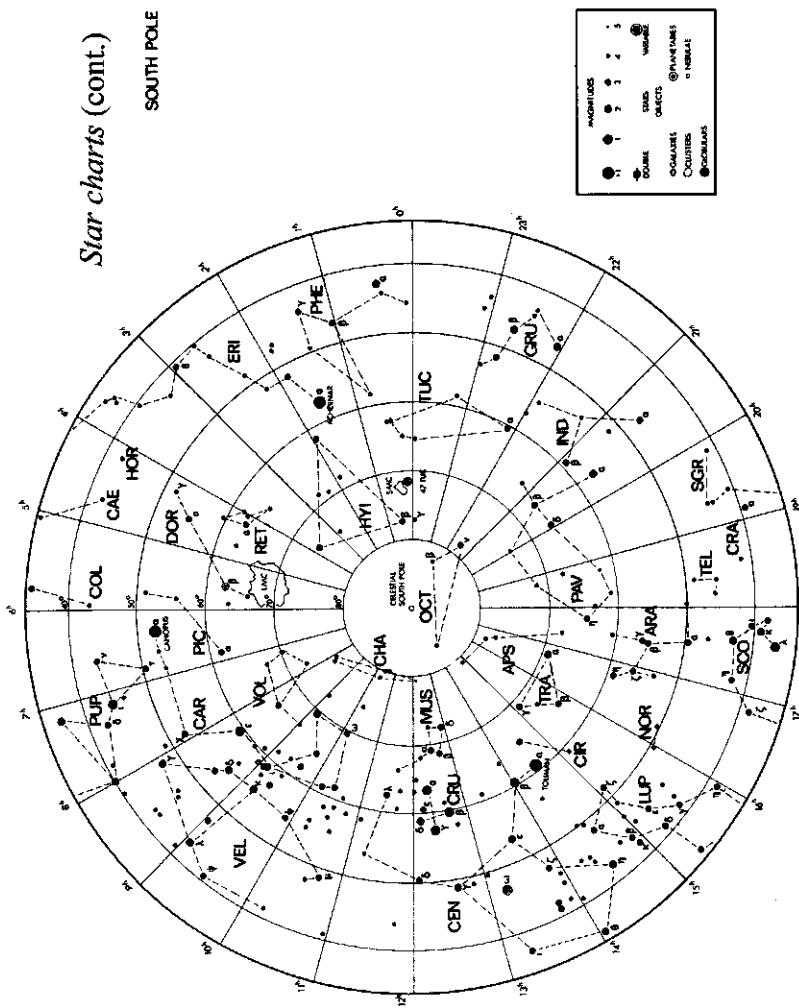
## Star charts

NORTH POLE



## Star charts (con

## Star charts (cont.)



(Adapted from Vehrenberg, H. and Blank, D., *Handbook of the Constellations*, Treugessell-Verlag, 1973.)

*Constellations*

Constellation	Gen. ending	Contr.	Description	$\alpha$	$\delta$	Area <sup>(a)</sup> (sq. deg.)	Order of size
Andromeda	-dae	And	the chained maiden <sup>(b)</sup>	1 <sup>h</sup>	40°N	722.278	19
Antlia	-liae	Ant	the air pump	10	35 S	238.901	62
Apus	-podis	Aps	the bird of paradise	16	75 S	206.327	67
Aquarius	-rii	Aqr	the water pourer	23	15 S	979.854	10
Aquila	-lae	Aql	the eagle	20	5 N	652.473	22
Ara	-rae	Ara	the altar	17	55 S	237.057	63
Aries	-ietis	Ari	the ram	3	20 N	441.395	39
Auriga	-gae	Aur	the wagoner	6	40 N	657.438	21
Boötes	-tis	Boo	the ploughman	15	30 N	906.831	13
Caelum	-aeli	Cae	the burin	5	40 S	124.865	81
Camelopardalis	-di	Cam	the giraffe	6	70 N	756.828	18
Cancer	-cri	Cnc	the crab	9	20 N	505.872	31
Canes Venatici	-num -corum	CVn	the hunting dogs	13	40 N	485.194	38
Canis Major	-is -ris	CMa	the large dog	7	20 S	380.118	43
Canis Minor	-is -ris	CMi	the small dog	8	5 N	183.367	71
Capricornum	-ni	Cap	the goat	21	20 S	413.947	40
Carina	-nae	Car	the keel	9	60 S	494.184	34
Cassiopeia	-peiae	Cas	Cassiopeia	1	60 N	598.407	25
Centaurus	-ri	Cen	the centaur	13	50 S	1060.422	9
Cepheus	-phei	Cep	King Cepheus	22	70 N	587.787	27
Cetus	-ti	Cet	the sea monster	2	10 S	1231.411	4
Chamaeleon	-ntis	Cha	the chameleon	11	80 S	131.592	79
Circinus	-ni	Cir	the pair of compasses	15	60 S	93.353	85
Columba	-bae	Col	the dove	6	35 S	270.184	54
Coma Berenices	-mae -cis	Com	the hair of Berenice	13	20 N	386.475	42
Corona Australis	-nae -lis	CrA	the southern crown	19	40 S	127.696	80
Corona Borealis	-nae -lis	CrB	the northern crown	16	30 N	178.710	73
Corvus	-vi	Crv	the crow	12	20 S	183.801	70
Crater	-eris	Crt	the cup	11	15 S	182.398	53
Crux	-ucis	Cru	the southern cross	12	60 S	68.447	88
Cygnus	-gni	Cyg	the swan	21	40 N	803.983	16
Delphinus	-ni	Del	the dolphin	21	10 N	188.5499	69
Dorado	-dus	Dor	the swordfish	5	65 S	179.173	72
Draco	-onis	Dra	the dragon	17	65 N	1082.952	8
Equuleus	-lei	Equ	the foal	21	10 N	71.641	87
Eridanus	-ni	Eri	the river	3	20 S	1137.919	6
Formax	-acis	For	the furnace	3	30 S	397.502	41
Gemini	-norum	Gem	the twins	7	20 N	513.761	30
Grus	-ruis	Gru	the crane	22	45 S	365.513	45
Hercules	-lis	Her	Hercules	17	30 N	1225.148	5
Horologium	-gii	Hor	the clock	3	60 N	248.885	58
Hydra	-drae	Hya	the water snake	10	20 S	1302.844	1
Hydrus	-dri	Hyi	the sea serpent	2	75 S	243.035	61
Indus	-di	Ind	the Indian	21	55 S	294.006	49
Lacerta	-tae	Lac	the lizard	22	45 N	200.688	68
Leo	-onis	Leo	the lion	11	15 N	946.964	12
Leo Minor	-onis -ris	LMi	the small lion	10	35 N	231.956	64
Lepus	-poris	Lep	the hare	6	20 S	290.291	51
Libra	-rae	Lib	the balance	15	15 S	538.052	29
Lupus	-pi	Lup	the wolf	15	45 S	333.683	46
Lynx	-ncis	Lyn	the lynx	8	45 N	545.386	28
Lyra	-rae	Lyr	the lyre	19	40 N	286.476	52
Mensa	-sae	Men	the table <sup>(c)</sup>	5	80 S	153.484	75
Microscopium	-pii	Mic	the microscope	21	35 S	209.513	66
Monoceros	-rotis	Mon	the unicorn	7	5 S	481.569	35

**Constellations (cont.)**

Constellation	Gen. ending	Contr.	Description	$\alpha$	$\delta$	Area <sup>(a)</sup> (sq. deg.)	Order of size
Musca	-cae	Mus	the fly	12°	70°S	138.355	77
Norma	-mae	Nor	the square	16	50 S	165.290	74
Octans	-ntis	Oct	the octant	22	85 S	291.045	50
Ophiuchus	-chi	Oph	the serpent bearer	17	0	948.340	11
Orion	-nis	Ori	the hunter	5	5 N	594.120	26
Pavo	-vonis	Pav	the peacock	20	65 S	377.666	44
Pegasus	-si	Peg	the winged horse	22	20 N	1120.794	7
Perseus	-sei	Per	Perseus	3	45 N	614.997	24
Phoenix	-nisis	Phe	the Phoenix	1	50 S	469.319	37
Pictor	-ris	Pic	the easel	6	55 S	246.739	59
Pisces	-cium	Psc	the fishes	1	15 N	889.417	14
Piscis Austrinus	-is -ni	PsA	the southern fish	22	30 N	245.375	60
Puppis	-ppis	Pup	the poop	8	40 S	673.434	20
Pyxis (= Malus)	-xidis	Pyx	the compass	9	30 S	220.833	65
Reticulum	-li	Ret	the net	4	60 S	113.936	82
Sagitta	-tae	Sge	the arrow	20	10 N	79.923	86
Sagittarius	-rii	Sgr	the archer	19	25 S	867.432	15
Scorpius	-pii	Sco	the scorpion	17	40 S	496.783	33
Sculptor	-ris	Scl	the sculptor	0	30 S	474.764	36
Scutum	-ti	Sct	the shield <sup>(d)</sup>	19	10 S	109.114	84
Serpens	-ntis	Ser	the serpent	18	5 S	639.928	23
(Caput and Cauda)							
Sextans	-ntis	Sex	the sextant	10	0	313.515	47
Taurus	-ri	Tau	the bull	4	15 N	797.249	17
Telescopium	-pii	Tel	the telescope	19	50 S	251.512	57
Triangulum	-li	Tri	the triangle	2	30 N	131.847	78
Triangulum Australe	-li -lis	TrA	the southern triangle	16	65 S	109.978	83
Tucana	-nae	Tuc	the toucan	0	65 S	294.557	48
Ursa Major	-sae -ris	UMa	the great bear	11	50 N	1279.660	3
Ursa Minor	-sae -ris	UMi	the little bear	15	70 N	255.864	56
Vela	-lorum	Vel	the sails	9	50 S	499.649	32
Virgo	-ginis	Vir	the virgin	13	0	1294.428	2
Volans	-ntis	Vol	the flying fish	8	70 S	141.354	76
Vulpecula	-lae	Vul	the little fox	20	25 N	268.165	55

(a) From *Sky and Telescope*, June 1983.

(b) Daughter of Cepheus and Cassiopeia.

(c) After Table Mountain in South Africa.

(d) Of John Sobieski, the Polish hero.

*The 50 visually brightest stars (in order of brightness)*

Rank	Classical Name	Star Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	V	d	$\sigma_{\text{rel}}$	$M_V$	Spec. Type	HIP
0	Sun				-26.75	$4.85 \times 10^{-6}$		4.82	G2 V	
1	Sirius	9 $\alpha$ CMa	06 45 08.9	-16 42 58	-1.46	2.64	0.4	1.43	A1 Vm	32349
2	Canopus	$\alpha$ Car	06 23 57.1	-52 41 45	-0.72	95.8	5.1	-5.63	F0 II	30438
3	Arcturus	16 $\alpha$ Boo	14 15 39.7	+19 10 57	-0.04	11.25	0.8	-0.3	K2 III Fe-0.5	69673
4	Figil Kentaurus	$\alpha^1$ Cen	14 39 35.9	-60 50 07	-0.01	1.35	0.2	4.34	G2 V	71683
5	Vega	3 $\alpha$ Lyr	18 36 56.3	+38 47 01	0.03	7.76	0.4	0.58	A0 Va	91262
6	Capella	13 $\alpha$ Aur	05 16 41.4	+45 59 53	0.08	12.94	1.2	-0.48	G5 IIIe + G0 III	24608
7	Rigel	19 $\beta$ Ori	05 14 32.3	-08 12 06	0.12	236.8	19.2	-6.75	B8 Ia:	24436
8	Procyon	10 $\alpha$ CMi	07 39 18.1	+05 13 30	0.38	3.49	0.3	2.66	F5 IV-V	37779
9	Achernar	$\alpha$ Eri	01 37 42.9	-57 14 12	0.46	44.0	2.5	-2.76	B3 Vpe	7588
10	Betelgeuse	58 $\alpha$ Ori	05 55 10.3	+07 24 25	0.5	131	21.5	-5.09	M1-2 Ia-Lab	27989
11	Hadar	Beta Cen	14 03 49.4	-60 22 23	0.61	161	9	-5.42	B1 III	68702
12	Altair	53 $\alpha$ Aql	19 50 47.0	+08 52 06	0.77	5.15	0.5	2.21	A7 V	97649
13	Aldebaran	87 $\alpha$ Tau	04 35 55.2	+16 30 33	0.85	20.0	1.9	-0.65	K5 III	21421
14	Antares	21 $\alpha$ Sco	16 29 24.4	-26 25 55	0.96	185	31.1	-5.38	M1.5 Iab-ab + B4 Ve	80763
15	Spica	67 $\alpha$ Vir	13 25 11.6	-11 09 41	0.98	80	6.9	-3.55	B1 III-IV + B2 V	65474
16	Föllux	78 $\beta$ Gem	07 45 18.9	+28 01 34	1.14	10.3	0.9	1.07	K0 IIIb	37826
17	Formalhaut	24 $\alpha$ PsA	22 57 39.1	-29 37 20	1.16	7.69	0.7	1.73	A3 V	113368
18	Mimosa	$\beta$ Cru	12 47 43.2	-59 41 19	1.25	108	6.6	-3.92	B0.5 III	62434
19	Deneb	50 $\alpha$ Cyg	20 41 25.9	+45 16 49	1.25	989	56.4	-8.73	A2 Ia	102098
20	Acrux	$\alpha^1$ Cru	12 26 35.9	-63 05 57	1.33	98	6.6	-3.63	B0.5 IV	60718
21	Regulus	32 $\alpha$ Leo	10 08 22.3	+11 58 02	1.35	23.8	1.9	-0.53	B7 V	49669
22	Adhara	21 $\epsilon$ CMa	06 58 37.5	-28 58 20	1.5	132	7.5	-4.1	B2 II	33579

See end of the table for explanation of column headings.

*The 50 visually brightest stars (cont.)*

Rank	Classical Name	Star Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	V	d	$\sigma_{\text{rel}}$	$M_V$	Spec. Type	HIP
23	Gacrux	$\gamma$ Cru	12 31 09.9	-57 06 48	1.63	26.9	1.8	-0.52	M3.5 III	61084
24	Shaula	35 $\lambda$ Sco	17 33 36.5	-37 06 14	1.63	21.5	19.4	-5.04	B2 IV + B	85927
25	Bellatrix	24 $\gamma$ Ori	05 25 07.9	+06 20 59	1.64	74	7.3	-2.72	B2 III	25336
26	El Nath	112 $\beta$ Tau	05 26 17.5	+28 36 27	1.65	40	3.5	-1.37	B7 III	25248
27	Mia placidus	$\beta$ Car	09 13 12.0	-69 43 02	1.68	34.1	1.6	-0.98	A2 IV	45238
28	Alnitjan	46 $\epsilon$ Ori	05 36 12.8	-01 12 07	1.7	41.1	37.4	-6.37	B0 Ia	26311
29	Al Na'ir	$\alpha$ Gru	22 08 14.0	-46 57 40	1.74	31.1	2.5	-0.72	B7 IV	109268
30	Alioth	77 $\epsilon$ UMa	12 54 01.7	+55 57 35	1.77	24.8	1.5	-0.2	A0 pCr	62956
31		$\gamma^2$ Vel	08 09 32.0	-47 20 12	1.78	25.8	13.7	-5.28	WC8 + O9 I	38953
32	Mirfak	33 $\alpha$ Per	03 24 19.4	+49 51 40	1.79	181	1.2	-4.5	F5 Ib	15863
33	Dubhe	50 $\alpha$ UMa	11 03 43.7	+61 45 03	1.79	37.9	2	-1.1	K0 IIIa	54061
34	Wezen	25 $\delta$ CMa	07 08 23.5	-26 23 36	1.84	54.9	30.8	-6.86	F8 Ia	34444
35	Kaus Australis	20 $\epsilon$ Sgr	18 24 10.3	-34 23 05	1.85	44.3	4.5	-138	B9.5 III	90185
36	Avior	$\varepsilon$ Car	08 22 30.8	-59 30 35	1.86	194	9.5	-4.58	K3 III + B2: V	41037
37	Alkaid	85 $\eta$ UMa	13 47 32.4	+49 18 48	1.86	30.8	2.3	-0.59	B3 V	67301
38	Sargas	$\theta$ Sco	17 37 19.2	-42 59 52	1.87	83	7	-2.74	F1 II	86228
39	Menkaliman	34 $\beta$ Aur	05 59 31.7	+44 56 51	1.9	25.2	2	-0.1	A2 IV	28360
40	Atria	$\alpha$ TrA	16 48 39.9	-69 01 40	1.92	127	8	-3.61	K2 IIb-IIla	82273
41	Alhena	24 $\gamma$ Gem	06 37 42.7	+16 23 57	1.93	32	7.5	-0.6	A0 IV	31681
42	Peacock	$\alpha$ Pav	20 25 38.9	-56 44 06	1.94	56	3.9	-1.81	B2 IV	100751
43		$\delta$ Vel	08 44 42.2	-54 42 30	1.96	24.4	0.9	0.02	A1 V	42913

*The 50 visually brightest stars (cont.)*

Rank	Classical Name	Star Name	$\alpha^{2000}$	$\delta^{2000}$	V	d	$\sigma_{\text{rel}}$	$M_V$	Spec. Type	HIP
44	Mirzam	2 $\beta$ CMa.	06 22 42.0	-17 57 21	1.98	153	10.1	-3.95	B1 II-III	30324
45	Castor	66 $\alpha$ Gem	07 34 36.0	+31 53 18	1.98	15.8	1.9	0.99	A1 V	36850
46	Alphard	30 $\alpha$ Hya	09 27 35.2	-08 39 31	1.98	54.3	4.2	-1.7	K3 II-III	46390
47	Hamal	13 $\alpha$ Ari	02 07 10.4	+23 27 45	2	20.2	2	0.47	K2 III	9884
48	Polaris	1 $\alpha$ UMi	02 31 48.7	+89 15 51	2.02	132	6.3	-3.59	F7: Ib-Iv	11767
49	Nunki	34 $\alpha$ Sgr	18 55 15.9	-26 17 48	2.02	69	6.1	-2.17	B2.5 V	92855
50	Deneb	16 $\beta$ Cet	00 43 35.2	+52 59 12	2.04	29.4	2.4	-0.3	K0 III	3419
	Kaitos									

Column headings:

Star name: Flamsteed number, Bayer letter, and constellation abbreviation.

 $\alpha$  : right ascension for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0; hh mm ss. $\delta$  : declination for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0; dd, mm ss.

V: visual magnitude in the U,B, V system.

d: distance to the star in parsecs (pc); 1 pc =  $3.086 \times 10^{16}$  m = 3.262 lyr. $\sigma_{\text{rel}}$  : relative uncertainty in the distance in percent. $M_V$  : absolute visual magnitude.

Spec. Type: spectral type and luminosity class in the MKK system.

HIP: Hipparcos catalog number.

For updated parallaxes, absolute magnitudes, and proper motions see:

*The 150 Stars in the Hipparcos Catalogue with Highest Apparent Magnitude,*

**The 100 visually brightest stars** (limiting magnitude,  $V = 2.59$ )

Star name	$\alpha_{2000}$	$\delta_{2000}$	$\mu(\alpha)$	$\mu(\delta)$	$V$	$B - V$	$M_V$	Spec	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$d$ (pc)	Notes
21 $\alpha$ And	0 <sup>h</sup> 08 <sup>m</sup> 23 <sup>s</sup> .2	+29°05'26"	+0 <sup>8</sup> 0.010	-0 <sup>n</sup> .16	2.06	-0.11	0.3	A0 P	-12	22 mn	Alpheratz, m
11 $\beta$ Cas	0 09 10.6	+59 08 59	+0.068	-0.18	2.27	0.34	1.9	F2 IV	+12	13 ts	Caph, m
$\alpha$ Phe	0 26 17.0	-42 18 22	+0.019	-0.39	2.39	1.09	0.2	K0 III	+75	24 s	(Ankaa), m
18 $\alpha$ Cas	0 40 30.4	+56 32 15	+0.006	-0.03	2.23	1.17	-0.9	K0 II-III	-4	37 s	Schedar, m
16 $\beta$ Cet	0 43 35.3	-17 59 12	+0.016	+0.04	2.04	1.02	0.2	K0 III	+13	21 ts	Deneb Kait, Diphda
27 $\gamma$ Cas	0 56 42.4	+60 43 00	+0.003	0.00	2.47	-0.15	-4.6	B0 IV e	-7	240 s	Cih, m, v
43 $\beta$ And	1 09 43.8	+35 37 14	+0.015	-0.11	2.06	1.58	-0.4	M0 III	0	27 ts	Mirach, m
$\alpha$ Eri	1 37 42.9	-57 14 12	+0.013	-0.03	0.46	-0.16	-1.6	B5 IV	+19	26 s	Achernar
57 $\gamma^1$ And	2 03 53.9	+42 19 47	+0.004	-0.05	2.18	1.20	-0.1	K2 III	-12	37 mn	Almach
57 $\gamma^2$ And	2 03 54.7	+42 19 51	+0.003	-0.05	5.03	A0 P	-14	37 mn	m		
13 $\alpha$ Ari	2 07 10.3	+23 27 45	+0.014	-0.14	2.00	1.15	-0.1	K2 III	-14	26 ts	Hamal
68 $\sigma$ Cet	1 19 20.6	-2 58 39	-0.001	-0.23	2.0	1.7	-0.3	Md	+64	29 mn	Mira, m, v
1 $\alpha$ UMi	2 31 50.4	+89 15 51	+0.232	-0.01	2.02	0.60	-4.6	F8 Ib	-17	Polaris, m	
92 $\alpha$ Cet	3 02 16.7	+4 05 23	-0.001	-0.07	2.53	1.64	-0.5	M2 III	-26	40 mn	Menkar
26 $\beta$ Per	3 08 10.1	+40 57 21	0.000	0.00	2.12	-0.05	-0.2	B8 V	+4	29 ts	Algol, m, v
33 $\alpha$ Per	3 24 19.3	+49 51 40	+0.003	-0.02	1.80	0.48	-4.6	F5 Ib	-2	190 s	Mirfak, m
87 $\alpha$ Tau	4 35 55.2	+16 30 33	+0.005	-0.19	0.85	1.54	-0.3	K5 III	+54	21 ts	Aldebaran, m
13 $\alpha$ Aur	5 16 41.3	+45 59 53	+0.008	-0.42	0.08	0.80	+0.3	G8 III	+30	13 t	Capella, m
19 $\beta$ Ori	5 14 32.2	-8 12 06	0.000	0.00	0.12	-0.03	-7.1	B8 Ia	+21	280 s	Rigel, m
24 $\gamma$ Ori	5 25 07.8	+6 20 59	-0.001	-0.01	1.64	-0.22	-3.6	B2 III	+18	110 s	Bellatrix, m
112 $\beta$ Tau	5 26 17.5	+28 36 27	+0.002	-0.17	1.65	-0.13	-1.6	B7 III	+8	40 mx	El Nath, m
34 $\delta$ Ori	5 32 00.3	-0 17 57	0.000	0.00	2.23	-0.22	O9.5 II	+16	40 mx	Mintaka, m	
11 $\alpha$ Lep	5 32 43.7	-17 49 20	0.000	0.00	2.58	0.21	-4.7	F0 Ib	+25	290 s	Arneb, m

\*See end of the table for explanation of column headings.

*The 100 visually brightest stars (cont.)*

Star name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	$\mu(\alpha)$	$\mu(\delta)$	$V$	$B - V$	$M_V$	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$d$ (pc)	Notes
46 ε Ori	5 <sup>h</sup> 36 <sup>m</sup> 12 <sup>s</sup> .7	-1° 12' 07"	0 <sup>h</sup> .000	0 <sup>m</sup> .00	1.70	-0.19	-6.2	B0 Ia	+26	370 s Alnilam, m
50 ζ Ori	5 40 45.5	-1 56 34	0.000	0.00	1.77	-0.21	-5.9	09.5 Ib	+18	340 s Alnitak, m
53 κ Ori	5 47 45.3	-9 40 11	0.000	-0.01	2.06	-0.17	0.4	B0.5 Ia	+21	Saiph
58 α Ori	5 55 10.2	+7 24 26	+0.002	+0.01	0.50	1.85	-4.4	M2 Iab	+21	Betelgeuse, m
34 β Aur	5 59 31.7	+44 56 51	-0.005	0.00	1.90	0.03	0.6	A2 IV	-18	Menkalih, m
2 β CMa	6 22 41.9	-17 57 22	-0.001	0.00	1.98	-0.23	-4.8	B1 II-III	+34	Mirzam, m
α Car	6 23 57.1	-52 41 44	+0.003	+0.02	-0.72	0.15	-8.5	F0 Ia	+21	Canopus
24 γ Gem	6 37 42.7	+16 23 57	+0.003	-0.04	1.93	0.00	0.0	A0 IV	-13	Alhena, m
9 α CMa	6 45 08.9	-16 42 58	-0.038	-1.21	-1.46	0.01	1.4	A1 V	-8	Sirius, m
21 ε CMa	6 58 37.5	-28 58 20	0.000	0.00	1.50	-0.21	-4.4	B2 II	+27	Adhara, m
25 δ CMa	7 08 23.4	-26 23 36	-0.001	0.00	1.86	0.65	-8.0	F8 Ia	+34	Wezen
31 η CMa	7 24 05.6	-29 18 11	-0.001	0.00	2.44	-0.07	-7.0	B5 Ia	+41	Aludra, m
66 α Gem	7 34 35.9	+31 53 18	-0.013	-0.10	1.58	0.04	1.2	A1 V	-1	Castor, m
10 α CMi	7 39 18.1	+5 13 30	-0.047	-1.03	0.38	0.42	2.6	F5 IV	-3	Procyon, m
78 β Gem	7 45 18.9	+28 01 34	-0.047	-0.05	1.14	1.00	0.2	K0 III	+3	Pollux, m
ζ Pup	8 03 35.0	-40 00 12	-0.003	+0.01	2.25	-0.26	O5.8	-24	Naos	
γ Vel	8 09 31.9	-47 20 12	-0.001	0.00	1.78	-0.22	WC7	+35	m	
ε Car	8 22 30.8	-59 30 34	-0.003	+0.01	1.86	1.27	-2.1	K0 II	+12	(Avior)
δ Vel	8 44 42.2	-54 42 30	+0.003	-0.08	1.96	0.04	0.3	A0 V	+2	m
λ Vel	9 07 59.7	-43 25 57	-0.002	+0.01	2.21	1.66	-4.4	K5 Ib	+18	Suhail
β Car	9 13 12.2	-69 43 02	-0.029	+0.10	1.68	0.00	-0.6	A0 III	-5	Miaplacidus
ϵ Car	9 17 05.4	-59 16 13	-0.002	0.00	2.25	0.18	-4.7	F0 Ib	+13	Aspidiske,
κ Vel	9 22 06.8	-55 00 38	-0.001	+0.01	2.50	-0.18	-2.9	B2 IV	+22	Scutulum
30 α Hyo	9 27 35.2	-8 39 31	-0.001	+0.03	1.98	1.44	-0.2	K3 III	-4	m
									26 mn	Alphard

### *The 100 visually brightest stars (cont.)*

Star name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	$\mu(\alpha)$	$\mu(\delta)$	$V$	$B-V$	$M_V$	Spec	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$d$ (pc)	Notes
32 $\alpha$ Leo	10 <sup>h</sup> 08 <sup>m</sup> 22 <sup>s</sup> .2	+11°58'02"	-0°.017	0''.00	1.35	-0.11	-0.7	B7 V	+4	26 ts	Regulus, m
411 $\gamma^1$ Leo	10 19 58.3	+19 50 30	+0.022	-0.15	2.28	1.08	0.2	K0 III	-37		Algieba, m
411 $\gamma^2$ Leo	10 19 58.6	+19 50 25	+0.022	-0.17	3.58			G7 III	-36		m
18 $\beta$ UMa	11 01 50.4	+56 22 56	+0.010	+0.03	2.37	-0.02	1.0	A1 V	-12	1.9 ts	Merak
50 $\alpha$ UMa	11 03 43.6	+61 45 03	-0.017	-0.07	1.79	1.07	0.0	K0 III	-9	2.3 ts	Dubhe, m
38 $\delta$ Leo	11 14 06.4	+20 31 25	+0.010	-0.14	2.56	0.12	1.5	A4 V	-21	1.6 s	Zosma, m
94 $\beta$ Leo	11 49 03.5	+14 34 19	-0.034	-0.12	2.14	0.09	1.7	A3 V	0	1.2 mx	Denebola, m
54 $\gamma$ UMa	11 53 49.7	+53 41 41	+0.011	+0.01	2.44	0.00	0.6	A0 V	-13	2.3 s	Phedra
4 $\gamma$ Crv	12 15 48.3	-17 32 31	-0.011	+0.02	2.59	-0.11	-1.2	B8 III	-4	5.7 s	Gienah
$\alpha^1$ Cru	12 26 35.9	-63 05 56	-0.004	-0.02	1.41	0.1	-3.8	B1 IV	-11	110 s	Acrux, m
$\alpha^2$ Cru	12 26 36.5	-62 05 58	-0.005	-0.02	1.88	0.0	-3.3	B3 n	-1	110 s	m
$\gamma$ Cru	12 31 09.9	-57 06 47	+0.003	-0.27	1.63	1.59	-0.5	M3 III	+21	27 s	(Gacrux), m
$\gamma$ Cen	12 41 30.9	-48 57 34	-0.019	-0.01	2.17	-0.01	-0.5	A0 III	-8	3.4 s	Muhilfain, m
$\beta$ Cru	12 47 43.2	-59 41 19	-0.005	-0.02	1.25	-0.23	-4.3	B0 III	+20	130 mx	Mimosa
77 $\epsilon$ UMa	12 54 01.7	+55 57 35	+0.013	-0.01	1.77	-0.02	0.4	A0 P	-9	19 mn	Alioth
79 $\zeta$ UMa	13 23 55.5	+54 55 31	+0.014	-0.02	2.27	0.02	1.4	A2 V	-9	18 ts	Mizar, m
37 $\alpha$ Vir	13 25 11.5	-11 09 41	-0.003	-0.03	0.98	-0.23	-3.5	B1 V	+1	79 s	Spica, m, v
$\varepsilon$ Cen	13 39 53.2	-53 27 58	-0.002	-0.02	2.30	-0.22	-3.5	B1 V	+6	150 s	m
35 $\eta$ UMa	13 47 32.3	+49 18 48	-0.013	-0.01	1.86	-0.19	-1.7	B3 V	-11	33 mx	Alkaid
$\zeta$ Cen	13 55 32.3	-47 17 17	-0.006	-0.04	2.55	-0.22	-3.0	B2 IV	+7	110 mx	m
$\beta$ Cen	14 03 49.4	-60 22 22	-0.003	-0.02	0.61	-0.24	-5.1	B1 II	140 s	Hadar, m	
5 $\theta$ Cen	14 06 40.9	-36 22 12	-0.043	-0.52	2.06	1.01	1.7	K0 II-IV	+1	14 ts	(Menkent)
6 $\alpha$ Boo	14 15 39.6	+19 10 57	-0.077	-2.00	-0.04	1.23	-0.2	K2 II p	-5	11 t	Arcturus
$\eta$ Cen	14 35 30.3	-42 09 28	-0.003	-0.04	2.31	-0.19	-2.9	B3 III	0	110 s	m
$\alpha^2$ Cen	14 39 35.4	-60 50 13	-0.494	+0.69	1.39	5.8	K1 V	-21	1.3 t	Rigel Kent, m	
$\alpha^1$ Cen	14 39 36.7	-60 50 02	-0.494	+0.69	0.00	0.68	4.4	G2 V	-25	1.3 t	
$\alpha$ Lup	14 41 55.7	-47 23 17	-0.002	-0.02	2.30	-0.20	-4.4	B1 III	+7	210 s	

*The 100 visually brightest stars (cont.)*

Star name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	$\mu(\alpha)$	$\mu(\delta)$	$V$	$B - V$	$M_V$	Spec	$R_V$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$d$ (pc)	Notes
36 $\varepsilon$ Boo	14 <sup>h</sup> 44 <sup>m</sup> 59 <sup>s</sup> .1	+27°04'27"	-0 <sup>s</sup> .004	+0 <sup>''</sup> .02	2.37	0.97	-0.9	K0 II-III	-17	46 s	Izar
7 $\beta$ UMi	14 50 42.2	+74 09 19	-0.009	+0.01	2.08	1.47	-0.3	K4 III	+17	29 ts	Kochab
5 $\alpha$ Ori	15 34 41.2	+26 42 53	+0.009	-0.09	2.23	-0.02	0.6	A0 V	+2	24 s	Alphecca, m
7 $\delta$ Sco	16 00 19.9	-22 37 18	-0.001	-0.03	2.32	-0.12	-4.1	B0 V	-14	170 s	Dzuba
8 $\beta^1$ Sco	16 05 26.1	-19 48 19	0.000	-0.02	2.64	-0.07	-4.3	B0.5 V	-7	250 s	Acrab, m
8 $\beta^2$ Sco	16 05 26.4	-19 48 07	-0.001	-0.02	4.92	-0.02	-2.5	B2 V	-5	250 s	
21 $\alpha$ Sco	16 29 24.3	-26 25 55	0.000	-0.02	0.96	1.83	-4.7	M1 Ib	-3	100 s	Antares, m, v
13 $\zeta$ Oph	16 37 09.4	-10 34 02	+0.001	+0.02	2.56	0.02	-4.4	09.5 V	-19	170 s	
$\alpha$ TrA	16 48 39.8	-69 01 39	-0.005	-0.03	1.92	1.44	-0.1	K2 III	-4	17 s	(Atria)
26 $\varepsilon$ Sco	16 50 09.7	-34 17 36	-0.049	-0.25	2.29	1.15	-0.1	K2 III	-3	20 m.x	
35 $\zeta$ Oph	17 10 22.5	-15 43 30	+0.003	+0.09	2.43	0.06	1.4	A2 V	-1	18 ts	Sabik, m
35 $\lambda$ Sco	17 33 36.4	-37 06 14	0.000	-0.03	1.63	-0.22	-3.0	B2 IV	0	84 s	Shaula, m
55 $\alpha$ Oph	17 34 55.9	+12 33 36	+0.008	-0.23	2.08	0.15	0.3	A5 III	+13	19 s	Ras Alhague
$\theta$ Sco	17 37 19.0	-42 59 52	+0.001	0.00	1.87	0.40	-5.6	F0 I-II	+1	280 s	
$\kappa$ Sco	17 42 29.0	-39 01 48	-0.001	-0.03	2.41	-0.22	-3.0	B2 IV	-10	120 s	
33 $\gamma$ Dra	17 56 36.2	+51 29 20	-0.001	-0.02	2.23	1.52	-0.3	K5 III	-28	31 s	Eltanin, m
20 $\varepsilon$ Sgr	18 24 10.2	-34 23 05	-0.003	-0.13	1.85	-0.03	-0.3	B9 IV	-11	26 s	Kaus Australis, m
3 $\alpha$ Lyr	18 36 56.2	+38 47 01	+0.017	+0.28	0.03	0.00	0.5	A0 V	-14	8.1 t	Vega, m
34 $\sigma$ Sgr	18 55 15.7	-26 17 48	+0.001	-0.05	2.02	-0.22	-2.0	B3 IV-V	-11	64 s	Nunki, m
53 $\alpha$ Aql	19 50 46.8	+8 52 06	+0.036	+0.39	00.77	0.22	2.2	A7 IV-V	-26	5.1 t	Altair, m
37 $\gamma$ Cyg	20 22 13.5	+40 15 24	0.000	0.00	2.20	0.68	-4.6	F8 Ib	-8	230 s	Sadir, m
$\alpha$ Pav	20 25 38.7	-56 44 06	+0.002	-0.08	1.94	-0.20	-2.3	B3 IV	+2	71 s	(Peacock), m
50 $\alpha$ Cyg	20 41 25.8	+45 16 49	0.000	+0.01	1.25	0.09	-7.5	A2 Ia	-5	560 s	Deneb, m
53 $\varepsilon$ Cyg	20 46 12.5	+33 58 13	+0.028	+0.33	2.46	1.03	0.2	K0 III	-10	25 ts	Gienar, m
5 $\alpha$ Cep	21 18 34.6	+62 35 08	+0.022	+0.05	2.44	0.22	1.7	A7 IV-V	-10	145 s	Alderamin, m
8 $\varepsilon$ Peg	21 44 11.0	+9 52 30	+0.002	0.00	2.38	1.52	-3.6	K2 Ib	+5	160 s	Enif, m

### The 100 visually brightest stars (cont.)

Star name	$\alpha_{2000}$	$\delta_{2000}$	$\mu(\alpha)$	$\mu(\delta)$	$V$	$B - V$	$M_V$	Spec	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$d$ (pc)	Notes
$\alpha$ Gru	22 <sup>h</sup> 08 <sup>m</sup> 13 <sup>s</sup> .8	-46°57'40"	+0 <sup>8</sup> .013	-0 <sup>0</sup> .15	1.74	-0.13	0.1	B5 V	+12	21 mx	(Al Na'ir), m
$\beta$ Gru	22 42 39.9	-46 53 05	+0.014	-0.01	2.11	1.62	-2.4	M3 II	+2	53 mx	
24 $\alpha$ PsA	22 57 38.9	-29 37 20	+0.026	-0.16	1.16	0.09	2.0	A3 V	+7	6.7 t	Fomalhaut
53 $\beta$ Peg	23 03 46.3	+28 04 58	+0.014	+0.14	2.42	1.67	-1.4	M2 II-III	+9	54 s	Scheat, m, v
54 $\alpha$ Peg	23 04 45.5	+15 12 19	+0.004	-0.04	2.49	-0.04	0.2	B9 V	-4	31 ts	Markab

#### Column headings

Star name: the Flamsteed number, Bayer letter, and constellation abbreviation.

$\alpha$  2000: right ascension for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0.

$\delta$  2000: declination for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0

$\mu(\alpha)$ : proper motion in right ascension in seconds of time per year.

$\mu(\delta)$ : proper motion in declination in seconds of arc per year.

$V$ : visual magnitude in the standard U, B, V photometric system.

$B - V$ : the color index in the U, B, V system.

$M_V$ : the absolute visual magnitude ( $M_V = v + 5 - 5 \log d$  (pc)).

Spec: the spectral type and luminosity class in the MKK system.

$RV$ : radial velocity. Positive means receding from the Solar System.

$d$  (pc): distance to the star in parsecs. ' $\circ$ ' denotes the distance is based on a trigonometric parallax; 's' denotes spectroscopic parallax;

'm' denotes a minimum likely value; 'mx' denotes a maximum likely value.

Notes: the classical names are given here; 'm' means the star is part of a multiple system; 'v' means the star is variable. Only the dominant star is listed. If more than one member of a multiple system is visually bright, all the visually bright members are listed ( $V < 8.0$ ). The combined magnitude of a pair of close stars is given by:

$$m = m_2 - 2.5 \log(R + 1) \quad \text{where } R = 10^{0.4(m_2 - m_1)}, m_1 \text{ is the magnitude of the brightest component, and } m_2 \text{ is that of the fainter star.}$$

(Data are from *Sky catalogue 2000.00*, Hirshfeld, A. & Sinnott, R., eds., Sky Publishing Corp., 1982.)

For updated parallaxes, absolute magnitudes, and proper motions see:

*The 150 Stars in the Hipparcos Catalogue with Highest Apparent Magnitude*,  
<http://astro.estec.esa.nl/Hipparcos/table365-new.html>.

*Stars within 5 pc*

No.	Name	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	Trig. parallax, $\pi$	Proper motion, $\mu/\text{yr}^{-1}$	Radial velocity, $v_r \text{ km s}^{-1}$	Spec	V	$B - V$	$U - B$	$R - I$	$M_V$	Luminosity ( $L_\odot = 1$ )
1	Sun						G2 V	-26.72	0.65	0.10	4.85	1.0	
2	Proxima Cen	14 <sup>h</sup> 26 <sup>m</sup> 3 <sup>s</sup>	-62° 28'	0 <sup>0</sup> .772 ± 0 <sup>0</sup> .007	3.85	-16	dM5 e	11.05	1.97	1.65	15.49	0.000 06	
	α Cen A	14 36.2	-60 38	0.750 ± 0.010	3.68	-22	G2 V	-0.01	0.68	0.22	4.37	1.6	
	α Cen B						K0 V	-1.33	0.88	0.24	5.71	0.45	
3	Barnard's star	17 55.4	+4 33	0.545 ± 0.003	10.31	-108	M5 V	9.54	1.74	1.29	1.25	13.22	0.00045
4	Wolf 359	19 54.1	+7 19	0.421 ± 0.006	4.70	+13	dM8 e	13.53	2.01	1.54	1.85	16.65	0.000 02
5	BD+36°2147	11 00.6	+36 18	0.397 ± 0.004	4.78	-84	M2 V	7.50	1.51	1.12	0.91	10.50	0.0055
6	L 726 - 8 = A	1 36.4	-18 13	0.387 ± 0.012	336	+29	dM6 e	12.52	1.85	1.09:	1.6	15.46	0.000 06
	UV Cet = B						{ 13.02 }						
7	Sirius A	6 42.9	-16 39	0.277 ± 0.006	1.33	-8	dM6 e	-1.46	0.00	-0.04	0.12	15.96	0.000 04
	Sirius B						DA	8.3:	-0.12:	-1.03:		11.2	0.003
8	Ross 154	18 46.7	-23 53	0.345 ± 0.012	0.72	-4	dM5 e	10.45	1.70	1.17	1.30	13.14	0.000 48
9	Ross 248	23 39.4	+43 55	0.314 ± 0.004	1.60	-81	dM6 e	12.29	1.91	1.48	1.56	14.78	0.000 11
10	ε Eri	3 30.6	-9 38	0.303 ± 0.004	0.98	+16	K2 V	3.73	0.88	0.58	0.30	6.14	0.30
11	Ross 128	11 45.1	+1 06	0.298 ± 0.006	1.38	-13	dM5	11.10	1.76	1.30	1.30	13.47	0.000 36
12	61 Cyg A	21 04.1	+38 30	0.294 ± 0.006	5.22	-64	K3 V	5.22	1.17	1.11	0.47	7.56	0.082
	61 Cyg B						K7 V	6.03	1.37	1.23	0.60	8.37	0.039
13	ε Ind	21 59.6	-57 00	0.291 ± 0.010	4.70	-40	K5 V	4.68	1.05	1.00	0.40	7.00	0.14
14	BD +43° 44A	0 15.5	+43 44	0.290 ± 0.006	2.90	+13	M1 V	8.08	1.56	1.24	0.88	10.39	0.0061
	+43 44B						M6 V e	11.06	1.80	1.40	1.22	13.37	0.000 39
15	L 789 - 6	22 35.7	-15 36	0.290 ± 0.007	3.26	-60	dM7 e	12.18	1.96	1.54	1.66	14.49	0.000 14
16	Procyon A	7 36.7	+5 21	0.285 ± 0.006	1.25	-3	F5 IV-V	0.37	0.42	0.03	0.14	2.64	7.65
	Procyon B						DF	10.7				13.0	0.000 55
17	BD +53°1915A	18 42.2	+59 33	0.282 ± 0.004	2.29	0	dM4	8.90	1.54	1.11	1.07	11.15	0.0030
	+59 1915B						dM5	9.69	1.59	1.14	1.14	11.94	0.0015
18	CD -36°15603	23 02.6	-36 09	0.279 ± 0.024	6.90	+10	M2 V	7.35	1.48	1.18	0.85	9.58	0.013
19	G 51 - 15	8 26.9	+26 57	0.278 ± 0.004	1.27			14.81	2.06	1.79	17.03	0.000 01	

*Stars within 5 pc (cont.)*

No.	Name	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	Trig. Parallax, $\pi$	Proper motion, $\mu^h_{\text{yr}^{-1}}$	Radial velocity $v_r \text{ km s}^{-1}$	Spec	V	$B - V$	$U - B$	$R - I$	$M_V$	Luminosity ( $L_\odot = 1$ )
20	$\tau$ Cet	1 <sup>h</sup> 41 <sup>m</sup> 7 <sup>s</sup>	-16°12'	0 <sup>n</sup> .277 ± 0 <sup>n</sup> .007	1.92	-16	G8 V	3.50	0.72	0.22	0.26	5.72	0.45
21	BD+5°1668	7 24.7	+5 23	0.266 ± 0.006	3.77	+26	dM5	9.82	1.56	1.12	1.19	11.94	0.0015
22	L 725 - 32	09.9	-17 16	0.261 ± 0.012	1.32	+28	dM5 e	12.04	1.83	1.46	1.44	14.12	0.000 20
23	CD-39°14192	21 14.3	-39 04	0.260 ± 0.012	3.46	+21	M0 V	6.66	1.49	1.20	0.69	8.74	0.028
24	Kapteyn's star	5 09.7	-45 00	0.256 ± 0.010	8.72	+245	sdM0 pec	8.84	1.56	1.05	0.77	10.88	0.0039
25	Krüger 60A	22 26.2	+57 27	0.253 ± 0.004	0.86	-26	dM3	9.85	1.62	1.25	1.14	11.87	0.0016
	Krüger 60B						dM5 e	11.3	1.8	1.3	1.3	13.3	0.0004
26	BD-12°4523	16 27.5	-12 32	0.247 ± 0.007	1.18	-13	dM5	10.11	1.60	1.16	1.20	12.07	0.0013
27	Ross 614 A	6 26.8	-2 46	0.246 ± 0.004	1.00	+24	dM7 e	11.10	1.71	1.15	1.40	13.12	0.000 49
	Ross 614 B						dM7 e	14	1.71	1.15	1.40	16	0.000 04
28	Van Maanen's star	0 46.5	+5 09	0.232 ± 0.004	2.99	+54	DG	12.37	0.56	0.02	0.16	14.20	0.000 18
29	Wolf 424 A	12 30.9	+9 18	0.230 ± 0.006	1.76	-5	dM6 e	13.16	1.80	1.18	1.62	14.97	0.000 09
	Wolf 424 B						dM6 e	13.4	1.80	1.18	1.62	15.2	0.000 07
30	CD-37°15492	0 02.5	-37 36	0.225 ± 0.012	6.11	+23	M4 V	8.56	1.46	1.03	0.92	10.32	0.0065
31	L 1159 - 16	1 57.5	+12 50	0.224 ± 0.004	2.09		dM8 e	12.26	1.82	1.35	1.35	14.01	0.000 22
32	BD+50°1725	10 08.3	+49 42	0.222 ± 0.010	1.45	-26	K7 V	6.59	1.36	1.28	0.60	8.32	0.041
33	CD-46°11540	17 24.9	-46 51	0.216 ± 0.012	1.06		dM4	9.37	1.53	1.21	1.03	11.04	0.0033
34	G 158 - 27	0 04.2	-7 48	0.214 ± 0.007	2.04		dM	13.74	1.95	1.52	1.59	15.39	0.000 06
35	CD-49°3515	21 30.2	-49 13	0.214 ± 0.010	0.81	+8	M1 V	8.67	1.46	1.05	0.93	10.32	0.0065
36	CD-44°11909	17 33.5	-44 17	0.213 ± 0.007	1.16		M5	10.96	1.65	1.20	1.26	12.60	0.000 79
37	BD+68°946	17 36.7	+68 23	0.213 ± 0.006	1.31	-22	M3.5 V	9.15	1.50	1.08	1.10	10.79	0.0042
38	G 208 - 44 -A	19 52.3	+44 18	0.211 ± 0.004	0.74			13.41	1.90			15.03	0.000 08
	G 208 - 45 -B											15.61	0.000 05
39	BD-15°6290	22 50.6	-14 31	0.209 ± 0.007	1.14	+9	dM5	10.17	1.60	1.15	1.22	11.77	0.0017
40	$\phi(40)$ Eri A	4 13.0	-7 44	0.207 ± 0.003	4.08	-42	K1 V	4.43	0.82	0.44	0.31	6.01	0.34
	Eri B						DA	9.52	0.03	-0.68	-0.10	11.10	0.0032
40	Eri C	4 13.1	-7 44		4.07	-21	dM4 e	11.17	1.66	0.83	1.31	12.75	0.000 69

*Stars within 5 pc (cont.)*

No.	Name	$\alpha$	1950	$\delta$	1950	Trig. parallax, $\pi$	Proper motion, $\mu'' \text{yr}^{-1}$	Radial velocity, $v_r \text{km s}^{-1}$	Spec	$V$	$B - V$	$U - B$	$R - I$	$M_V$	Luminosity ( $L_\odot = 1$ )
41	BD+20°2465	10 <sup>h</sup> 16 <sup>m</sup> 9 <sup>s</sup>	+20°07'	0 <sup>''</sup> .206 ± 0 <sup>''</sup> .006	0.49	+11	M4.5	Ve	9.43	1.54	1.06	1.12	11.00	0.0035	
42	L 145 – 141	11 43.0	-64 33	0.206 ± 0.012	2.68		DC		11.50	0.19	-0.60	0.04	13.07	0.000 52	
43	70 Oph A	18 02.9	+2 31	0.203 ± 0.006	1.12	-7	K0	V	4.22	{ 0.86	0.51	0.30	5.76	0.43	
	70 Oph B						K5	V	6.00	}			7.54	0.084	
44	BD+43°4305	22 44.7	+44 05	0.200 ± 0.004	0.83	-2	dM5	e	10.2	1.6	1.1	1.15	11.7	0.0018	
45	Altair	19 48.3	+8 44	0.198 ± 0.006	0.66	-26	A7	IV-V	0.76	0.22	0.08	0.02	2.24	11.1	
46	AC+79°3888	11 44.6	+78 58	0.193 ± 0.007	0.89	-119	sdM4		10.8	1.60	1.18	12.23	0.0011		
47	G9 – 36 = A	8 55.4	+19 57	0.192 ± 0.004	0.89		m		14.06	1.84	15.48	0.000 06			
	LP426 – 40 = B						m		14.92	1.93					
48	BD+15°2620	13 43.2	+15 10	0.192 ± 0.007	2.30	+15	M4	V	8.49	1.44	1.10	0.86	16.34	0.000 025	

: denotes approximate value.

For updated parallaxes, absolute magnitudes, and proper motions see:

*The 150 Start in the Hipparcos Catalogue Closest to the Sun,*<http://astro.estec.esa.nl/Hipparcos/table361.html>.

(Adapted from Landolt-Börnstein, V1/2C, Springer-Verlag, 1982.)

*Stars of large proper motion*

Star Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	V	B-V	Spec	$\mu$	Con
Barnard's Star	17 57.9	+04.6	9.54	+1.74	M5 V	10.27	OPH
Kapteyn's Star	05 11.2	-44.9	8.81	+1.59	M0 V	8.73	PIC
Groombridge 1830	11 52.7	+37.8	6.45	+0.75	G8 Vp	7.04	UMA
Lacaille 9352	23 05.4	-35.8	7.33	+1.48	M2 V	6.90	PSA
Cordoba 32416	00 05.0	-37.3	8.96	+1.46	M4 V	6.08	SCL
Ross 619	08 11.9	+08.8	12.5	+1.7	dM5	5.30	CNC
61 CYG A	21 06.6	+38.7	5.19	+1.19	K5 V	5.20	CYG
61 CYG B	21 06.6	+38.7	6.02	+1.38	K7 V	5.20	CYG
Lalande 21185	11 03.5	+36.0	7.47	+1.52	M2 V	4.78	UMA
Wolf 359	10 56.7	+07.0	13.66	+1.75	M6e	4.71	LEO
$\varepsilon$ IND	22 03.0	-56.8	4.74	+1.07	K5 V	4.69	IND
Lalande 21258	11 05.8	+43.5	8.66	+1.52	M2 V	4.53	UMA
WX UMA	11 05.8	+43.5	14.8	+1.2	dM5.5e	4.53	UMA
$\sigma^2$ ERI A	04 15.5	-07.6	4.42	+0.81	K1 V	4.08	ERI
$\sigma^2$ ERI B	04 15.5	-07.6	9.50	+0.11	DA	4.08	ERI
$\sigma^2$ ERI C	04 15.5	-07.6	11.2	+1.5	M4e	4.08	ERI
Wolf 489	13 36.9	+03.7	14.8	+0.96	DC	3.87	VIR
Proxima Centauri	14 30.2	-62.7	10.68	+2.72	M5e	3.85	CEN
BD +5 1668	07 27.4	+05.4	9.82	+1.56	M5	3.76	CMI
$\mu$ CAS	01 07.9	+55.0	5.12	+0.69	G2 VI	3.75	CAS
$\alpha$ Centauri A	14 40.0	-60.8	0.33	+0.60	G2 V	3.69	CEN
$\alpha$ Centauri B	14 40.0	-60.8	1.70	+0.85	K0 V	3.69	CEN
Washington 5584	15 10.3	-16.3	9.05	+0.78	K0 VI	3.68	LIB
Washington 5583	15 10.3	-16.4	9.44	+0.86	dK0	3.68	LIB
LP 9 - 231	17 50.7	+82.7	14.8	+0.6	g	3.59	UMI
Lacaille 8760	21 17.5	-38.9	6.70	+1.42	M0 V	3.46	MIC
Luyten 726 - 8A	01 38.8	-17.9	12.5	+1.7	M6e	3.36	CET
Luyten 726 - 8B	01 38.8	-17.9	12.95	+1.76	M6e	3.36	CET
Luyten 789 - 6	22 38.4	-15.3	12.2	+1.7	M6	3.25	AQR
Ross 451	11 40.4	+67.3	12.23	+1.45	sdM0	3.20	DRA
82 ERI	03 19.7	-43.1	4.26	+0.70	G5 V	3.14	ERI
Ross 578	03 38.2	-11.4	13.1	+1.5	M2	3.06	ERI
van Maanen 1	00 49.1	+05.4	12.4	+0.56	DG	2.98	PSC

Column headings:

 $\alpha$ 2000: right ascension for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0;

hh mm.m.

 $\delta$ 2000: declination for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0; dd.d.

V: visual magnitude in the U, B, V system.

B-V: color index.

Spec. Type: spectral type and luminosity class in the MKK system.

 $\mu$ : proper motion in arcsec  $y^{-1}$ .

Con: constellation.

For updated parallaxes, absolute magnitudes, and proper motions see:  
*The 150 Stars in the Hipparcos Catalogue with Largest Proper Motion*,  
<http://astro.estec.esa.nl/Hipparcos/table362.html>.

***Bright white dwarfs***

Star Name	Con	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	V	d
Sirius B	CMA	06 45.1	-16.7	8.3	2.6
40 ERI B	ERI	04 15.4	-07.7	9.5	4.8
Procyon B	CMI	07 39.3	+05.2	10.7	3.5
Feige 34	UMA	10 39.6	+43.1	11.1	17
W1346	CYG	20 34.4	+25.1	11.5	14
EG247	CAM	05 05.5	+52.8	11.8	43
He3 (EG50)	AUR	06 47.6	+37.5	12.0	18
EG62 (LP 532 - 81)	PYX	08 41.5	-32.9	12.0	9.1
EG3 68	DRA	16 48.4	+59.1	12.2	12
van Maanen's star	PSC	00 49.2	+05.4	12.4	4.3
EG180	CAM	04 31.2	+59.0	12.4	5.5
AC + 70 5824	UMI	13 38.9	+70.3	12.8	31
EG15	ARI	02 08.8	+25.2	13.2	31

Column headings:

Con: constellation

$\alpha$  2000: right ascension for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0;  
hh mm.m.

$\delta$  2000: declination for equator, equinox, and epoch 2000.0; dd.d.

V: visual magnitude in the U, B, V system.

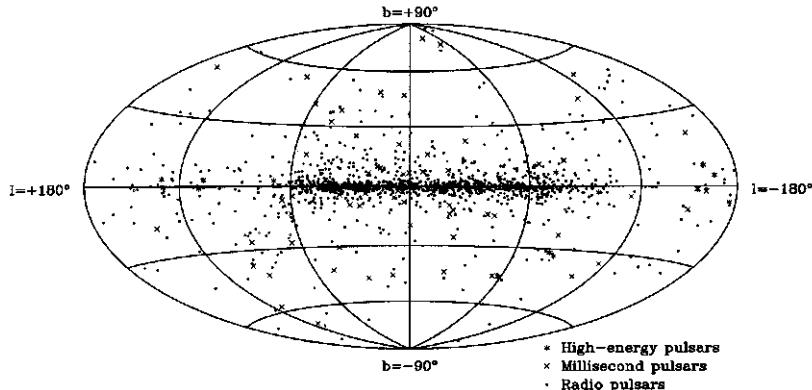
d: distance in parsec.

D: diameter in km.

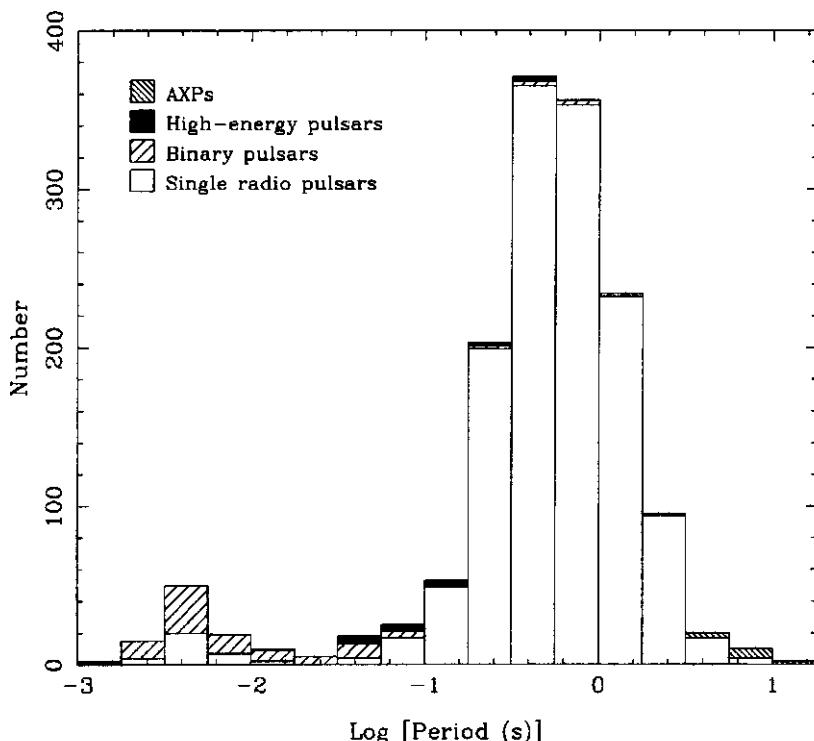
## Pulsars

---

Galactic distribution of pulsars.  $0^\circ$  latitude corresponds to the Galactic plane, while  $0^\circ$  longitude,  $0^\circ$  latitude corresponds to the direction of the Galactic center. (From the Australia Telescope National Facility Catalog of 1529 pulsars, 2005.)



Period distribution of pulsars. (From the Australia Telescope National Facility Catalog of 1529 pulsars, 2005.)



*The 20 fastest radio pulsars (as of February 2002)*

Pulsar Name	$\alpha$	J2000	$\delta$	J2000	P(s)	dP/dt	Epoch (MJD)	DM( $\text{pc cm}^{-3}$ )	d (kpc)
J1939+2134	19 <sup>h</sup> 39 <sup>m</sup> 38.56 <sup>s</sup>		+21°34'59.1"		0.0015578064924327	1.05110E-04	50100.000000	71.0370	9.65
J1959+2048	19 59	36.77	+20 48 15.1	0.0016074016848063	1.68515E-05	48196.000000	29.1168	1.53	
J0034-0534	00 34	21.83	-05 34 36.6	0.0018771818543796	5.06000E-06	49550.000000	13.7630	0.98	
J0023-7203J	00 23	59.40	-72 03 58.8	0.002100633545588	9.78420E-06	51000.000000	24.5845	5.00	
J1701-3006F	17 01	13	-30 06 43	0.0022950000000000		52247.000000	115.6400	4.16	
J0218+4322	02 18	06.35	+42 32 17.5	0.0023233094564600	7.50000E-05	49150.608600	61.2500	5.85	
J0024-7204W	00 24		-72 04	0.0023520000000000		24.3000	5.00		
J0024-7204F	00 24	03.85	-72 04 42.8	0.0026235793491669	6.45070E-05	51000.000000	24.3819	5.00	
J0024-7204O	00 24	04.65	-72 04 53.7	0.0026433432956678	3.03800E-05	51000.000000	24.3000	5.00	
J0024-7204S	00 24	03.98	-72 04 42.3	0.0028304059560080	-1.20470E-04	51779.745150	24.3000	5.00	
J1908-3741	19 08	52.0	-37 41 35	0.0029471094385460		52055.870432	10.3500	0.55	
J2229+2643	22 29	50.89	+26 43 57.8	0.0029778192947192	1.90000E-06	49440.000000	23.0190	1.43	
J1824-2452	18 24	32.01	-24 52 10.8	0.0030543146292528	1.61845E-03	47953.500000	119.8289	5.50	
J1807-2459	18 07	21	-24 59 51	0.003094487974000	-7.00000E-04	51734.975100	134.0000	3.27	
J0613-0200	06 13	43.97	-02 00 47.1	0.0030618440367440	9.57200E-06	50315.000000	38.7792	2.19	
J1640+2224	16 40	16.75	+22 24 09.0	0.0031633158173403	2.90000E-06	49360.000000	18.4150	1.18	
J0024-7204H	00 24	06.70	-72 04 06.8	0.0032103407094388	1.64000E-06	51000.000000	24.3700	5.00	
J1701-3006E	17 01	13	-30 06 43	0.0032340000000000		52247.000000	115.6400	4.16	
J1910-5958	19 10	52	-59 58 54	0.0032661820000000		51745.000000	33.5200	2.18	
J1701-3006D	17 01	13	-30 06 43	0.0034180000000000		52247.000000	115.6400	4.16	

$\alpha, \delta =$  position of pulsar, P = pulse period, dP/dt = pulse period derivative in unit of  $10^{-15} \text{ s s}^{-1}$ ,  
 Epoch = modified Julian date of the epoch of observation,

$DM =$  dispersion measure =  $\int_0^d N_e \, dl$  where  $d =$  distance of the pulsar from the Sun,  $N_e =$  electron number density in interstellar space.

$$\text{The pulse arrival time for two different observing frequencies } f_1 \text{ and } f_2 \text{ differs by: } t_2 - t_1 = \frac{e^2}{2\pi m_e c} \left( \frac{1}{f_2^2} - \frac{1}{f_1^2} \right) DM.$$

$d =$  Pulsar distance in most cases estimated using the Taylor & Cordes (1993) model for  $N_e$ . (Data from the Australia National Facility Catalog of 1323 Pulsars, 2002.)

***Binary pulsars in the Galaxy***

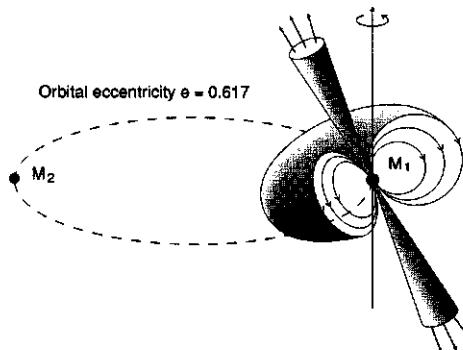
Pulsar	$P$ (ms)	$P_b$ (d)	$e^a$	$f(M)^b$ ( $M_\odot$ )	$M_2^c$ ( $M_\odot$ )	$\log(B)^d$ (G)	$P/(2\dot{P})$ (y)
J0045–7319	926.3	51	0.808	2.169	~ 10	12.3	$3 \times 10^6$
1259–63	47.8	1237	0.870	1.53	~ 10	11.5	$3 \times 10^5$
1820–11	279.8	358	0.794	0.068	(0.8)	11.8	$3 \times 10^6$
1534+12	37.9	0.42	0.274	0.315	1.34	10.0	$2 \times 10^8$
1913+16	59.0	0.32	0.617	0.132	1.39	10.4	$1 \times 10^8$
2303+46	1066.4	12.3	0.658	0.246	1.4	11.9	$3 \times 10^7$
J2145–0750	16.0	6.8	0.000021	0.0241	(0.51)	< 8.9	$> 8 \times 10^9$
0655+64	195.7	1.03	$7 \times 10^{-6}$	0.071	(0.8)	10.1	$5 \times 10^9$
0820+02	864.8	1232	0.0119	0.0030	(0.23)	11.5	$1 \times 10^8$
J1803–2712	334	407	0.00051	0.0013	(0.17)	10.9	$3 \times 10^8$
1953+29	6.1	117	0.00033	0.0024	(0.21)	8.6	$3 \times 10^9$
J2019+2425	3.9	76.5	0.000111	0.0107	(0.37)	8.3	$1 \times 10^{10}$
J1713+0747	4.6	67.8	0.000075	0.0079	(0.33)	8.3	$9 \times 10^9$
1855+09	5.4	12.3	0.000022	0.0056	0.26	8.5	$5 \times 10^9$
J0437–4715	5.8	5.7	0.000018	0.0012	(0.17)	8.7	$2 \times 10^9$
J1045–4509	7.5	4.1	0.000019	0.00177	(0.19)	8.6	$6 \times 10^9$
J2317+1439	3.4	2.46	< 0.000002	0.0022	(0.21)	8.1	$1 \times 10^{10}$
J0034–0534	1.9	1.6	< 0.0001	0.0012	(0.17)	8.0	$4 \times 10^9$
J0751+18	3.5	0.26	< 0.01	(0.15)			
1718–19	1004	0.26	< 0.005	0.00071	(0.14)	12.2	$1 \times 10^7$
1831–00	520.9	1.8	< 0.004	0.00012	(0.07)	10.9	$6 \times 10^8$
1957+20	1.6	0.38	< $4 \times 10^{-5}$	$5 \times 10^{-6}$	0.02	8.1	$2 \times 10^9$

<sup>a</sup> Eccentricity.<sup>b</sup> Mass function,  $f(M) = (M_2 \sin i)^3 / (M_1 + M_2)^2$ , where  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are the masses of the pulsar and companion, respectively;  $i$ , the orbital inclination, is the angle between the plane of the orbit and the plane of the sky. $M_\odot$  represent's the Sun's mass as a unit of measurement.<sup>c</sup> Mass of pulsar's companion. Values in parentheses are estimated from  $f(M)$ , assuming a pulsar mass of  $1.4 M_\odot$  and  $i = 60^\circ$ .<sup>d</sup> Dipole surface field,  $B = 3.2 \times 10^{19} (P\dot{P})^{1/2}$  gauss.(Adapted from Phinney, E.S and Kulkarni, S.R., Annu. Rev. Astron. Astrophys, **32**: 591, 1994.)

### Binary pulsar PSR 1913+16

---

A schematic diagram showing the binary pulsar PSR 1913+16.  
 (Longair, M.S., *High Energy Astrophysics*, Cambridge University Press, 1994, with permission)



Binary period = 7.751939337 hours  
 Pulsar period = 59 milliseconds  
 Neutron star mass  $M_1 = 1.4411(7) M_\odot$   
 Neutron star mass  $M_2 = 1.3874(7) M_\odot$

### Parameters of PSR 1913+16

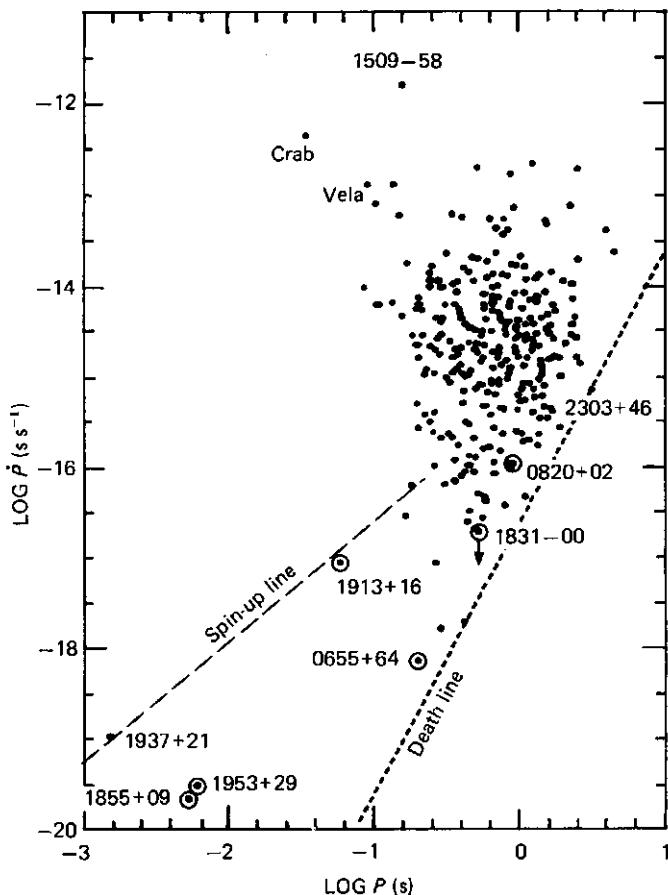
---

Parameter	Symbol (units)	Value
<b>(i) "Physical" parameters</b>		
Right Ascension	$\alpha$	19 <sup>h</sup> 15 <sup>m</sup> 28.00018(15)
Declination	$\delta$	16°06'27".4043(3)
Pulsar Period	$P_p$ (ms)	59.029997929613(7)
Derivative of Period	$\dot{P}_p$	$8.62713(8) \times 10^{-18}$
<b>(ii) "Keplerian" parameters</b>		
Projected semimajor axis	$a_p \sin i(s)$	2.3417592(19)
Eccentricity	$e$	0.6171308(4)
Orbital Period	$P_b$ (day)	0.322997462736(7)
Longitude of periastron	$\omega_0(^{\circ})$	226.57528(6)
Julian date of periastron	$T_0$ (MJD)	46443.99588319(3)
<b>(iii) "Post-Keplerian" parameters</b>		
Mean rate of periastron advance	$(\dot{\omega}) (^{\circ} \text{ yr}^{-1})$	4.226621(11)
Redshift/time dilation	$\gamma'$ (ms)	4.295(2)
Orbital period derivative	$\dot{P}_b(10^{-12})$	-2.422(6)

(Will, C.M., *The Confrontation between General Relativity and Experiment*,  
<http://www.livingreviews.org/Articles/Volume4/2001-4will/>, 2002.)

### Pulsars (cont.)

Distribution of periods and period derivatives for 353 pulsars. The seven known binary pulsars, indicated by circles around the dots, have unusually small period derivatives and hence relatively weak magnetic fields. (Dewey, R. J. *et al.*, *Nature*, **322**, 712, 1986, with permission.)



*A selection of globular clusters*

Name	Equatorial Coord.		Galactic Coord.		V	Diameter
	$\alpha$ (2000)	$\delta$ (2000)	$l$	$b$		
NGC 104 = 47 Tuc	0 <sup>h</sup> 24 <sup>m</sup> 1	-72°05'	305°9	-44°9	4.0	30
NGC 362	1 03.2	-70 51	301.5	-46.3	6.6	13
NGC 3201 = Dun 445	10 17.6	-46 25	277.2	+8.6	6.8	18
NGC 4833 = LacI-4	12 59.6	-70 53	303.6	-8.0	7.4	14
NGC 5024 = M 53	13 12.9	+18 10	333.0	+79.8	7.7	13
NGC 5139 = $\omega$ Cen	13 26.8	-47 29	309.1	+15.0	3.6	36
NGC 5272 = M 3	13 42.2	+28 23	42.2	+78.7	6.4	16
NGC 5286 = Dun 388	13 46.4	-51 22	311.6	+10.6	7.6	9
NGC 5904 = M 5	15 18.6	+ 2 05	3.9	+46.8	5.8	17
NGC 5986 = Dun 552	15 46.1	-37 47	337.0	+13.3	7.1	10
NGC 6093 = M 80	16 17.0	-22 59	352.7	+19.5	7.2	9
NGC 6121 = M 4	16 23.6	-26 32	351.0	+16.0	5.9	26
NGC 6205 = M 13	16 41.7	+36 28	59.0	+40.9	5.9	17
NGC 6218 = M 12	16 47.2	- 1 57	15.7	+26.3	6.6	14
NGC 6254 = M 10	16 57.1	- 4 06	15.1	+23.1	6.6	15
NGC 6266 = M 62	17 01.2	-30 07	353.6	+7.3	6.6	14
NGC 6273 = M 19	17 02.6	-26 16	356.9	+9.4	7.2	14
NGC 6341 = M 92	17 17.1	+43 08	68.4	+34.9	6.5	11
NGC 6388	17 36.3	-44 44	345.5	-6.7	6.8	9
NGC 6397	17 40.7	-53 40	338.2	-12.0	5.6	26
NGC 6402 = M 14	17 37.6	- 3 15	21.3	+14.8	7.6	12
NGC 6441	17 50.2	-37 03	353.5	-5.0	7.4	8
NGC 6626 = M 28	18 24.5	-24 52	7.8	-5.6	7.0	11
NGC 6637 = M 69	18 31.4	-32 21	1.7	-10.3	7.7	7
NGC 6656 = M 22	18 36.4	-23 54	9.9	-7.6	5.1	24
NGC 6715 = M 54	18 55.1	-30 29	5.6	-14.1	7.7	9
NGC 6723 = Dun 573	18 59.6	-36 38	0.1	-17.3	7.3	11
NGC 6752 = Dun 295	19 10.9	-59 59	336.5	-25.6	5.4	20
NGC 6809 = M 55	19 40.0	-30 58	8.8	-23.3	6.9	19
NGC 7078 = M 15	21 30.0	+12 10	65.0	-27.3	6.4	12
NGC 7089 = M 2	21 33.5	- 0 49	53.4	-35.8	6.5	13
NGC 7099 = M 30	21 40.4	-23 11	27.2	-46.8	7.5	11

V = integrated apparent visual magnitude.

(Data from Roth, G.D., ed., *Compendium of Practical Astronomy*, Vol. 3, Springer-Verlag, 1994.)

For a catalog of galactic globular clusters see Harris, W.E. 1996, AJ, 112, 1487 or <http://www.physics.mcmaster.ca/Globular.html>

**Prominent OB associations**

Name	$\alpha$	2000	$\delta$	2000	Diameter ( $'$ )	Distance (pc)	O stars	B stars	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	Clusters	Stars
Cas OB4	0 <sup>h</sup> 28 <sup>m</sup> 4 <sup>s</sup>	4	+62°42'		2880	5	12	-43	103		
Cas OB14	0	28.8	+63	22	1110	0	3	-8			$\kappa$ Cas
Cas OB1	1	00.8	+61	30	120	2510	0	5	-38		
Cas OB8	1	46.2	+61	19		2880	1	10	-30		
Per OB1	2	14.5	+57	19	360	2290	9	56	-41		
Cas OB6	2	43.2	+61	23	480	2190	17	8	-47		
Cam OB1	3	31.6	+58	38		1000	3	9	-6		
Per OB3	3	27.8	+49	54		170					
Per OB2	3	42.2	+33	26	480×300	400	1	3			
Aur OB2	5	28.3	+34	54		3160	5	3	-13		
Aur OB1	5	21.7	+33	52	360×300	1320	5	5	-3		
Gem OB1	6	09.8	+21	35	300	1510	4	13	+13		
Ori OB1	5	31.4	-2	41	960	460	9	6			
Mon OB1	6	33.1	+8	50	840×300	550	1	0	+22		
Mon OB2	6	37.2	+4	50	360×250	1510	10	7	+28		
CMa OB1	7	07.0	-10	28	240	1320	4	3	+27		
Pup OB1	7	54.8	-27	05	240×180	2510	7	0	+43		
Vel OB2	8	11.8	-47	50		460					
Vel OB1	8	49.9	-45	00	360×240	1400	5	11			
Car OB1	10	46.7	-59	05	120×66	2510	6	15			
Car OB2	11	06.0	-59	51	330×150	2000	8	6			
Car OB4	11	08.3	-60	31	114×54						
Cen OB2	11	35.3	-62	36	84×48	2500					
Cen OB1	13	04.8	-62	04	360	2510	2	19			
Nor OB1	15	58.7	-54	30		2500	0	6			
									6031?		

 $\alpha, \delta$  Per $\zeta, \alpha, \chi$  Per $\kappa$  Cas

381?

581,

663;

654?

h,

 $\chi$  Per

IC 1805

1444?

1502?

Trapezium

 $\chi^2$  Ori $\theta, \beta, \gamma, \delta$  Ori

S Mon

Plaskett's star

T

2175?

1893, IC 410

1912, 60; 1931?

Vela pulsar?

2264

2244

2335, 53; 2343?

2467?

2659?

3293; IC 2581?

3572, Tr 18

3590

IC 2944

 $\lambda$  Cen $\chi$  Cru

*Prominent OB associations* (cont.)

Name	$\alpha$	2000	$\delta$	2000	Diameter ( $'$ )	Distance (pc)	O stars	B stars	$R_V$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	Clusters	Stars
Sco-Cen	16:	m	-25: <sup>o</sup>		160					IC 2602?	$\alpha$ CMa, $\alpha$ Carm $\alpha$ Eri
Ara OB1	16	39.5	-46 46	270 $\times$ 180	1380		10		-18	6169, 93	$\mu$ Nor
Sco OB1	16	53.5	-41 57	96 $\times$ 66	1910	18	0	3	-4	6231	$\zeta^1$ Sco
Sco OB2	16	14.9	-25 55		160						$\alpha, \beta^1, \delta$ Sco
Sgr OB1	18	07.9	-21 28	570 $\times$ 240	1580	8	9		-4	6514, 30-1	$\mu$ Sgr
Sgr OB4	18	14.4	-19 03		2400	1	6		+3	6603	
Ser OB1	18	20.8	-14 35	300 $\times$ 180	2190	9	9		-23	6611	
Ser OB2	18	18.6	-11 58	500:	2000:	9	6		+6	6604?	
Vul OB1	19	44.0	+24 13		2000	5	7		+8	6823	
Cyg OB3	20	04.7	+35 50		2290	9	15	0		6871?	
Cyg OB1	20	17.8	+37 38	420 $\times$ 240	1820	12	28		-7	6913, IC 4996	
Cyg OB9	20	23.3	+39 56		1200	7	7		-20	6910	
Cyg OB2	20	32.4	+41 17	30	1820	13	2				
Cyg OB4	21	13.1	+37 52		1000						
Cyg OB7	21	02.7	+49 43		830	3	6		-10		$\sigma$ Cyg
Cep OB2	21	47.9	+61 04	480	830	8	9		-20	7160, IC 1396	$\mu, v, \lambda$ Cep
Cep OB1	22	24.6	+55 14	210	3470	7	26		-51	7380?	$\beta$ Cep
Lac OB1	22	41.2	+39 05	900 $\times$ 540	600	1	0				10 Lac
Cep OB3	23	00.4	+64 03		870	3	3		-21		
Cas OB5	23	58.7	+60 22	150	2510	5	10		-46	7788; 7790?	$\rho$ Cas
Cep OB4	23	59.5	+67 35		840	2	0				

: denotes approximate value.

(adapted from *Sky Catalogue 2000.0*, Vol. 2, Sky Publishing Corp., 1985.)

### The orbital elements of some binary stars

Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	Period, $P$ (mean solar years)	Epoch of periastron, $t$	Longitude of periastron, $\omega(^{\circ})$	Eccen- tricity, $e$	Semi- major axis of orbit, $a$ (arcsec)	Inclin. orbit, $i$ ( $^{\circ}$ )	Position angle of ascending node, $\Omega$ ( $^{\circ}$ )	Position angle of ascension node, $\Omega$ ( $^{\circ}$ )	Distance, $d$ (pc)
$\eta$ CrB	15 <sup>h</sup> 23 <sup>m</sup> 21 <sup>s</sup>	30°17'	41.623	1934.008	219.907	0.2763	0.907	59.025	23.717	14	
$\gamma$ Vir	12 41 40	-01 27	171.37	1836.433	252.88	0.8808	3.746	146.05	31.78	11	
$\eta$ Cas	00 49 06	57 49	480	1889.6	268.59	0.497	11.9939	34.76	278.42	5.9	
$\zeta$ Ori	05 40 46	-01 56	1508.6	2070.6	47.3	0.07	2.728	72.0	155.5	340	
$\alpha$ CMa	06 45 09	-16 43	50.09	1894.13	147.27	0.5923	7.500	136.53	44.57	2.7	
(Sirius)											
$\delta$ Gem	07 20 07	21 59	1200	1437	57.19	0.1100	6.9753	63.28	18.38	18	
$\alpha$ Gem	07 34 36	31 53	420.07	1965.3	261.43	0.33	6.295	115.94	40.47	14	
(Castor)											
$\alpha$ CMi	07 39 18	5 14	40.65	1927.6	269.8	0.40	4.548	35.7	284.3	3.5	
(Procyon)											
$\alpha$ Cen	14 39 36	-60 50	79.920	1955.56	231.560	0.5116	17.583	79.240	204.868	1.3	
$\alpha$ Sco	16 29 24	-26 26	900	1889.0	0.0	0.0	3.21	86.3	273.0	100	
(Antares)											

<sup>a</sup> semi-major axis,  $P$  period of revolution,  $M_1, M_2$  stellar masses,  $\frac{a^3}{P^2} = \frac{G}{4\pi^2} (M_1 + M_2)$ , where  $G$  is the gravitational constant (Kepler's third law).

If we express masses in solar masses, periods in years, and distances in astronomical units, we have  $(M_1 + M_2)P^2 = a^3$  ( $a$  (AU) =  $a$  (arcsec)  $\times d$  (pc)).

<sup>e</sup> eccentricity,

<sup>t</sup> epoch of the periastron passage (the closest approach of the stars),

$\Omega$  position of the ascending node. The nodes are points of intersection of the relative orbit and a plane tangential to the celestial sphere at the position of the bright component,

$\omega$  longitude of the periastron, the angle between the radius vector to the ascending node and that in the direction of the periastron, measured from the node to the periastron in the direction of the orbital motion,

<sup>i</sup> inclination, the angle between the orbital plane and the plane tangential to the celestial sphere.

(Adapted from Duffett-Smith, P., *Practical Astronomy With Your Calculator*, Cambridge University Press, 1988.)

*The classification of variable stars*

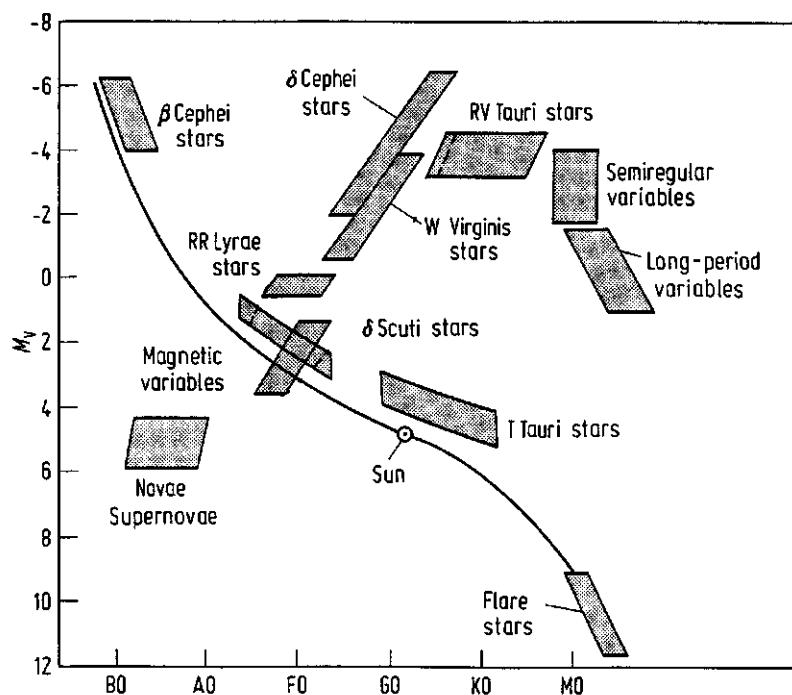
Main class	Subclass	Brightness variation (mag)	Period (d)	Typical representative		Brightness <sup>(a)</sup> (mag)		Period (d)
				min	max	min	max	
Cepheids	C	Classical cepheids	0.1–2.0	1–50 or 70	TW CMa	9.5	11.0 p	6.99
	C&	Classical cepheids	0.1–2.0	1–50 or 70	6 Cep	4.1	5.2 p	5.37
	CW	Long-period cepheids	0.1–2.0	1–50 or 70	W Vir	9.9	11.3 p	17.29
I		Irregular variables	—	—	RX Cep	7.5	7.8 v	—
Ia		Irregular variables	—	—	V395 Cyg	7.8	8.4 v	—
Ib		Irregular variables	—	—	CO Cyg	9.6	10.6 v	—
Ic		Irregular variables	—	—	TZ Cas	9.2	10.5 v	—
Mira, Ceti stars	M	and more	2.5–5.0	80–1000	o Cet	2.0	10.1 v	331.62
Long-period variables								
Red giant variables	SR	Semiregular variables	1–2.0	30–1000	VW UMa	8.4	9.1 p	125
	SRa	Semiregular variables	< 2.5	—	Z Aqr	9.5	12.0 p	136.9
	SRb	Semiregular variables	—	—	AF Cyg	7.4	9.4 p	94.1
	SRc	Semiregular variables	—	—	$\mu$ Cep	3.6	5.1 v	—
	SRd	Semiregular variables	—	—	UU Her	8.5	10.6 p	—
RR Lyrae variables	RR	Cluster variables	< 1 – 2.0	0.05–1.2	V736 Oph	12.3	13.7 p	—
	RRa	Cluster variables	< 1.5	0.5 and 0.7	RR Lyr	6.94	8.03 p	0.567
	RRc	Cluster variables	—	0.3	SX UMa	10.6	11.2 p	0.307
RV Tauri variables	RV	Variable supergiants	3	30–150	EP Lyr	10.2	11.6 p	83.43
	RVa	Red-giant variables	3	30–150	AC Her	7.4	9.2 p	75.46
	RVb	Red-giant variables	3	30–150	R Sge	9.0	11.2 p	70.594
	$\beta$ C	$\beta$ Cephei V.	0.1	0.1–0.3	$\beta$ Cep	3.3	3.35 p	0.190
	$\delta$ Sc	Scuti variables	< 0.25	1.0	$\delta$ Sct	4.9	5.19 p	0.194
	$\alpha^2$ CV	$\alpha^2$ Canis Ven. variables	< 0.1	1–25	$\alpha^2$ CVn	3.0	3.1 p	5.47

*The classification of variable stars (cont.)*

Main class	Subclass	Brightness variation (mag)	Period (d)	Typical representative		Brightness <sup>(a)</sup> (mag)		Period (d)
				max	min	max	min	
Eruptive variables	N	Novae	7-16	—	—	V603 Aql	—	—
	Na	Novae	7-16	—	—	RR Pic	1.2	10.8 p
	Nb	Novae	7-16	—	—	RT Ser	10.6	12.8 p
	Nc	Novae	7-16	—	—	T GrB	2.0	16 p
	Nd	Recurrent novae	7-16	—	—	P Cyg	3.0	10.8 v
	Ne	Nova-like variables	—	—	—	CM Tau	6 v	29000
	SN	Supernovae	20	—	—	(SN 1054 Crab Nebula)	—	—
	RCB	R Coronae Borealis variables	1-9	10-100	R CrB	5.8	14.8 v	—
RW	RW Aurigae variables	—	—	RW Aur	9.6	13.6 p	—	
UG	U Geminorum variables (SS Cygni variables)	2-6	20-600	U Gem	8.9	14.0 v	103	
UV	UV Ceti variables	1-6	—	UV Cet	7.0	12.9 v	—	
Z	Z Camelopardalis variables	2-5	10-40	—	—	—	—	—
Eclipsing variables	E	Eclipsing variables	—	—	QX Cas	10.2	10.6 p	—
	EA	Algol variables	—	0.2-10 000	$\beta$ Per	2.2	3.47 v	2.867
	EB	$\beta$ Lyrae variables	< 2.0	> 1	$\beta$ Lyr	3.4	4.34	12.908
	EW	W Ursae Majoris variables	0.8	1	W UMa	8.3	9.03 p	0.334
	Ell	Ellipsoid variables	—	—	$b$ Per	4.6	4.66 p	1.527
	Unclassifiable variables	—	—	—	V389 Cyg	5.5	5.69 p	—

<sup>(a)</sup> P = photographic, v = visual.(Adapted from Roth, G.D., ed., *Handbuch für Sternfreunde*, Springer-Verlag, 1967.)

Position of various classes of variable stars in the H-R diagram. (Adapted from Roth, G.D., Compendium of Practical Astronomy, Springer-Verlag, 1994.)



### Representative galactic supernova remnants

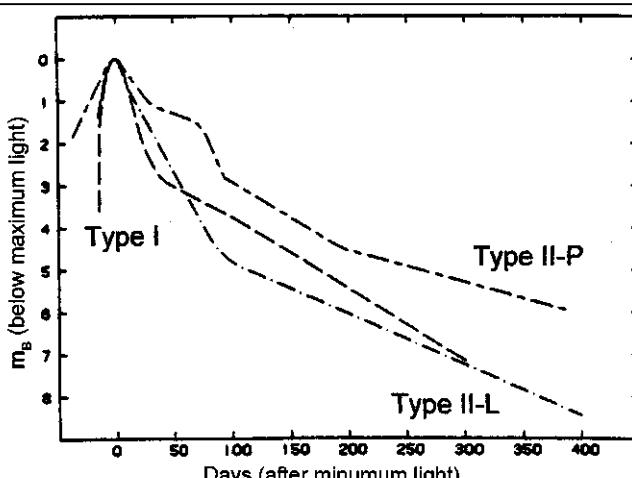
Name	Galactic coordinates $\ell^{\text{II}}, b^{\text{II}}$	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	Radio size	Optical size
CTA 1	119°53 +9°77	00 <sup>h</sup> 04 <sup>m</sup> 18 <sup>s</sup>	+72°04'5	90'	50' × 90'
Tycho	120.09 +1.41	00 22 33	+63 51.8	8'	8'
HB 3	132.70 +1.30	02 14	+62 18	140'	...
HB 9	160.39 +2.75	04 57	+46 36	130' × 155'	90' × 125'
OA 184	166.07 +4.40	05 15 38	+41 46	70' × 90'	70' × 80'
VRO 42.05.01	166.27 +2.53	05 23 21	+43 00	70' × 75'	35' × 40'
S 147	180.33 -1.68	05 36 45	+27 44.5	175'	195 × 200'
Crab	184.55 -5.78	05 31 31	+21 58.9	290'' × 420''	290' × 420''
IC 443	189.01 +3.02	06 14 06	+22 37.2	47' × 54'	48'
Monoceros	205.62 -0.10	06 35	+06 30	210'	180' × 200'
Puppis	260.40 -3.42	08 20 30	-42 50	45' × 65'	50' × 80'
Vela	263.37 -3.01	08 32	-45 00	300'	270'
MSH 10-53	284.17 -1.78	10 15 40	-58 40.5	33' × 50'	1' × 5'
RCW 86	315.44 -2.33	14 39 08	-62 15	55'	8' × 31'
RCW 89	320.36 -0.97	15 09 30	-58 46	8':	450'' × 580''
RCW 103	332.43 -0.39	16 13 54	-50 55.8	7'	5'.7 × 9'.5
Kes 45	342.05 +0.13	16 50 11	-43 30.3	30'	... × 20'
Kepler	004.52 +6.82	17 27 41	-21 26.6	3'	21'' × 64''
W28	006.46 -0.09	17 57 36	-23 25	30'	30'
3C 400.2	053.62 -2.23	19 36 30	+17 08	20'	4' × 6'
DR 4	078.13 +1.81	20 20 38	+40 03.4	≤ 3'	2' × 3'
Cygnus	074.27 -8.49	20 49 30	+30 45	160' × 240'	160' × 210'
Cas A	111.73 -2.13	23 21 10	+58 32.4	4'	4'
CTB 1	116.94 +0.18	23 56 45	+62 10	35': × 45':	32'

: denotes approximate value.

(Adapted from van den Bergh *et al.*, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **26**, 19, 1973.)

See <http://www.mrao.cam.ac.uk/surveys/> for a complete catalog of SNRs.

### Typical supernovae light curves

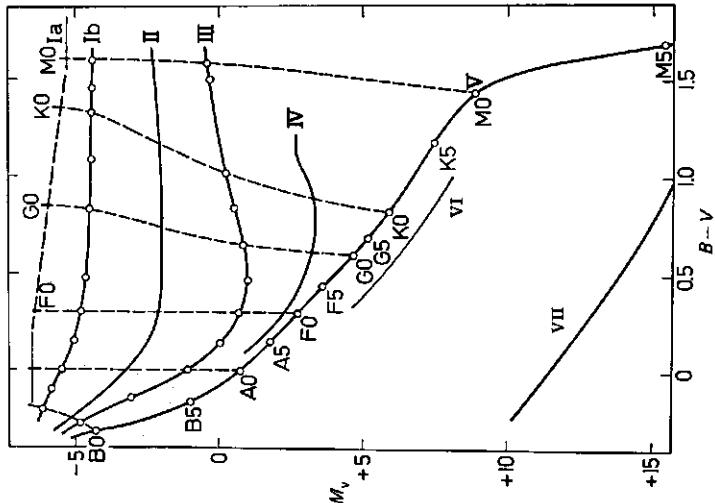


(Adapted from Doggett, J. and Branch, D., *Astron. J.*, 90, 2303, 1985.)

### Henry Draper (HD) spectral classification

Class	Class characteristics
O	Hot stars with He II absorption
B	He I absorption; H developing later
A	Very strong H, decreasing later; Ca II increasing
F	Ca II stronger; H weaker; metals developing
G	Ca II strong; Fe and other metals strong; H weaker
K	Strong metallic lines; CH and CN bands developing
M	Very red; TiO bands developing strongly

Spectral type and luminosity class of the MK classification; dependence on color index  $B-V$  and visual absolute magnitude  $M_v$ .  
 (Adapted from Unsöld, A., *The New Cosmos*, Springer-Verlag, 1969.)

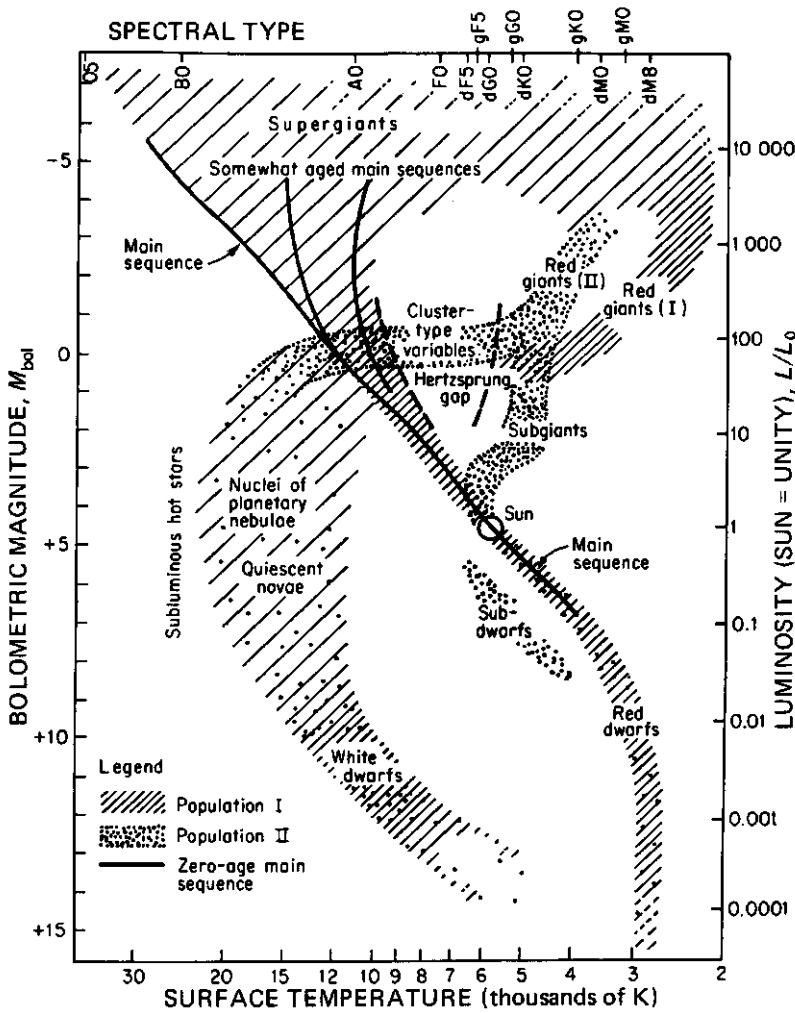


### Spectral type and luminosity class (MK, or Yerke's classification)

Luminosity class	Examples:	Spectral type
Ia	$\alpha$ Boo (Arcturus)	K2 III
Ib	$\alpha$ CMi (Procyon)	F5 IV
II	$\beta$ Gem (Pollux)	K0 III
III	$\alpha$ Lyrae (Vega)	A0 V
IV	$\alpha$ UMi (polaris)	F8 Ib
V	$\alpha$ CMa (Sirius)	A1 V
VI	$\alpha$ Cyg (Deneb)	A2 Ia
VII	$\alpha$ Leo (Regulus)	B7 V
	$\beta$ Ori (Rigel)	B8 Ia
	Sun	G2 V

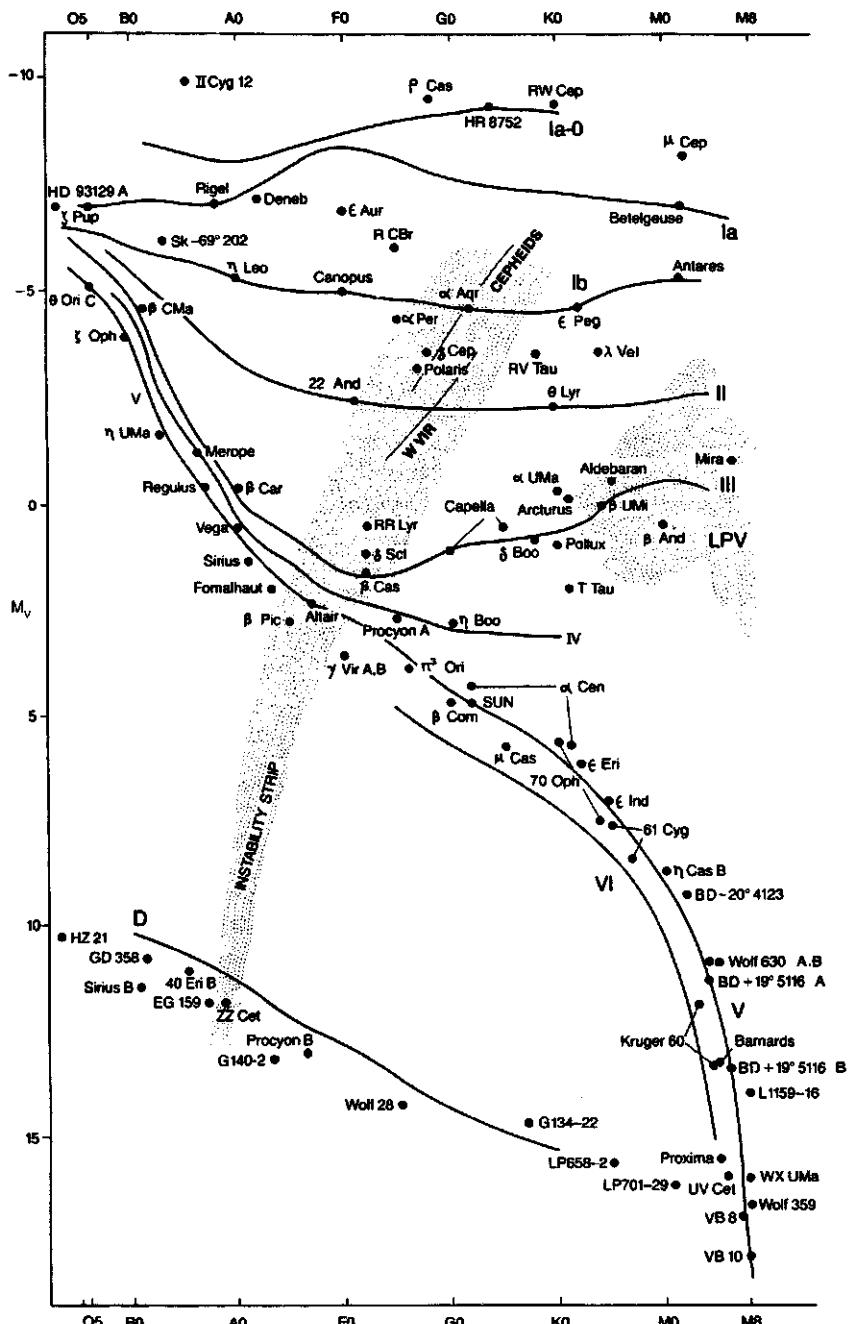
### Hertzsprung–Russell diagram

Hertzsprung–Russell or temperature luminosity diagram. (Adapted from Goldberg, L. & Dyer, E. R. in *Science in Space*, L. V. Berkner & H. Odishaw, eds., McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1961.)



Hertzsprung-Russell diagram with stellar examples.

(From Kaler, J.B., *Stars and their Spectra*, Cambridge University Press, 1989, with permission.)



*An incomplete list of astrophysically important infrared and visible spectral features*

Identification	Wavelength (Å)	Identification	Wavelength (Å)
He I	10 830	O II	4649
C I	10 691	N III	4641
Si I	10 689	N III	4634
Si I	10 627	Mg I	4571
Si I	10 603	He II	4541
Si I	10 371	Mg II	4481
He II	10 124	He I	4472
He II	10 120	He I	4471
Na I	9961	He I	4388
C III	9710	Fe I	4384
O I	8446	[O III]	4363
He II	8237	H I $\gamma$	4340
O I	7774	O II	4318
He I	7065	G band <sup>(b)</sup>	4300
H I $\alpha$	6563	Ca I	4227
[O I]	6363 <sup>(a)</sup>	He II	4200
[O I]	6300	H I $\delta$	4102
Na I (D)	5896	He II	4100
Na I (D)	5890	N III	4097
He I	5876	Si IV	4089
He II	5412	O II	4073
Fe XIV	5303	He I	4026
Mg I	5175 <sup>(b)</sup>	H I $\varepsilon$	3970
Mg I	5173	Ca II (H)	3968
[O III]	5007	[Ne III]	3968
[O III]	4959	He I	3965
He I	4922	Ca II (K)	3934
H I $\beta$	4861	[Ne III]	3869
He II	4686	He I	3820
C IV	4658	O III	3760
O II	4650	[O II]	3727
C II	4650	[Ne V]	3426

$$\dagger h\nu \text{ (eV)} = 123\ 98.54/\lambda \text{ (\AA}).$$

<sup>(a)</sup> Forbidden transitions are noted by brackets.

<sup>(b)</sup> Superposition of CH band and metallic lines.

*Calibration of MK spectral types*

Sp	$M(V)$	$B - V$	$U - B$	$V - R$	$R - I$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	BC
MAIN SEQUENCE, V							
O5	-5.7	-0.33	-1.19	-0.15	-0.32	42 000	-4.40
O9	-4.5	-0.31	-1.12	-0.15	-0.32	34 000	-3.33
B0	-4.0	-0.30	-1.08	-0.13	-0.29	30 000	-3.16
B2	-2.45	-0.24	-0.84	-0.10	-0.22	20 900	-2.35
B5	-1.2	-0.17	-0.58	-0.06	-0.16	15 200	-1.46
B8	-0.25	-0.11	-0.34	-0.02	-0.10	11 400	-0.80
A0	+0.65	-0.02	-0.02	0.02	-0.02	9 790	-0.30
A2	+1.3	+0.05	+0.05	0.08	0.01	9 000	-0.20
A5	+1.95	+0.15	+0.10	0.16	0.06	8 180	-0.15
F0	+2.7	+0.30	+0.03	0.30	0.17	7 300	-0.09
F2	+3.6	+0.35	0.00	0.35	0.20	7 000	-0.11
F5	+3.5	+0.44	-0.02	0.40	0.24	6 650	-0.14
F8	+4.0	+0.52	+0.02	0.47	0.29	6 250	-0.16
G0	+4.4	+0.58	+0.06	0.50	0.31	5 940	-0.18
G2	+4.7	+0.63	+0.12	0.53	0.33	5 790	-0.20
G5	+5.1	+0.68	+0.20	0.54	0.35	5 560	-0.21
G8	+5.5	+0.74	+0.30	0.58	0.38	5 310	-0.40
K0	+5.9	+0.81	+0.45	0.64	0.42	5 150	-0.31
K2	+6.4	+0.91	+0.64	0.74	0.48	4 830	-0.42
K5	+7.35	+1.15	+1.08	0.99	0.63	4 410	-0.72
M0	+8.8	+1.40	+1.22	1.28	0.91	3 840	-1.38
M2	+9.9	+1.49	+1.18	1.50	1.19	3 520	-1.89
M5	+12.3	+1.64	+1.24	1.80	1.67	3 170	-2.73
GIANTS, III							
G5	+0.9	+0.86	+0.56	0.69	0.48	5 050	-0.34
G8	+0.8	+0.94	+0.70	0.70	0.48	4 800	-0.42
K0	+0.7	+1.00	+0.84	0.77	0.53	4 660	-0.50
K2	+0.5	+1.16	+1.16	0.84	0.58	4 390	-0.61
K5	-0.2	+1.50	+1.81	1.20	0.90	4 050	-1.02
M0	-0.4	+1.56	+1.87	1.23	0.94	3 690	-1.25
M2	-0.6	+1.60	+1.89	1.34	1.10	3 540	-1.62
M5	-0.3	+1.63	+1.58	2.18	1.96	3 380	-2.48

Absolute magnitude, colors, effective surface temperatures, and bolometric corrections for various spectral types and luminosity classes.

(From Drilling, J.S. and Landolt, A.U. in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000, with permission.)

***Calibration of MK spectral types (cont.)***

Sp	$M(V)$	$B - V$	$U - B$	$V - R$	$R - I$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	BC
SUPERGIANTS, I							
O9	-6.5	-0.27	-1.13	-0.15	-0.32	32 000	-3.18
B2	-6.4	-0.17	-0.93	-0.05	-0.15	17 600	-1.58
B5	-6.2	-0.10	-0.72	0.02	-0.07	13 600	-0.95
B8	-6.2	-0.03	-0.55	0.02	0.00	11 100	-0.66
A0	-6.3	-0.01	-0.38	0.03	0.05	9 980	-0.41
A2	-6.5	+0.03	-0.25	0.07	0.07	9 380	-0.28
A5	-6.6	+0.09	-0.08	0.12	0.13	8610	-0.13
F0	-6.6	+0.17	+0.15	0.21	0.20	7460	-0.01
F2	-6.6	+0.23	+0.18	0.26	0.21	7 030	-0.00
F5	-6.6	+0.32	+0.27	0.35	0.23	6 370	-0.03
F8	-6.5	+0.56	+0.41	0.45	0.27	5 750	-0.09
G0	-6.4	+0.76	+0.52	0.51	0.33	5 370	-0.15
G2	-6.3	+0.87	+0.63	0.58	0.40	5 190	-0.21
G5	-6.2	+1.02	+0.83	0.67	0.44	4 930	-0.33
G8	-6.1	+1.14	+1.07	0.69	0.46	4 700	-0.42
K0	-6.0	+1.25	+1.17	0.76	0.48	4 550	-0.50
K2	-5.9	+1.36	+1.32	0.85	0.55	4 310	-0.61
K5	-5.8	+1.60	+1.80	1.20	0.90	3 990	-1.01
M0	-5.6	+1.67	+1.90	1.23	0.94	3 620	-1.29
M2	-5.6	+1.71	+1.95	1.34	1.10	3 370	-1.62
M5	-5.6	+1.80	+1.60:	2.18	1.96	2 880	-3.47

*Classification and absolute magnitude of stars ( $M_v$ )*

Population II									
	Supergiants			Bright giants			Subgiants		
Sp	Ia	Ib	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	
O5	-6.4			-5.4		-5.7			
B0	-6.7	-6.1	-5.4	-5.0	-4.7	-4.1	-3.3	+10.2	
B5	-6.9	-5.7	-4.3	-2.4	-1.8	-1.1	-0.2	+10.7	+2.3
A0	-7.1	-5.3	-3.1	-0.2	+0.1	+0.7	+1.5	+11.3	+0.8
A5	-7.7	-4.9	-2.6	+0.5	+1.4	+2.0	+2.4	+12.2	+0.5
F0	-8.2	-4.7	-2.3	+1.2	+2.0	+2.6	+3.1	+12.9	+0.4
F5	-7.7	-4.7	-2.2	+1.4	+2.3	+3.4	+3.9	+13.6	+4.8
G0	-7.5	-4.7	-2.1	+1.1	+2.9	+4.4	+4.6	+14.3	+4.1
G5	-7.5	-4.7	-2.1	+0.7	+3.1	+5.1	+5.2	+14.9	+6.4
K0	-7.5	-4.6	-2.1	+0.5	+3.2	+5.9	+6.0	+15.3	+7.3
K5	-7.5	-4.6	-2.2	-0.2		+7.3	+7.3	+15	+8.4
M0	-7.5	-4.6	-2.3	-0.4		+9.0	+9.0	+15	+10
M2	-7		-2.4	-0.6		+10.0	+10.0	+12	-3
M5				-0.8		+11.8	+11.8	+14	-0.6
M8				+16				+16	-2.2

Relation between absolute magnitude  $M_v$  and emission line width  $W$  (FWHM in  $\text{km s}^{-1}$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Emission line} & \quad \text{Relation} \\ \text{Ca II K} & \quad M_v = 27.59 - 14.94 \log W \text{ (Wilson-Bappu)} \\ \text{Mg II K} & \quad M_v = 34.93 - 15.15 \log W \\ \text{H L}\alpha & \quad M_v = (40.2 \pm 4.5) - (14.7 \pm 1.6) \log W \end{aligned}$$

(<sup>a</sup>) Zero age main sequence.  
(After Allen, C.W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, The Athlone Press, 1973.)

**Stellar mass, luminosity, radius and density** (luminosity and radius with mass; white dwarfs omitted)

$\log(M/M_\odot)$	$\log(L/L_\odot)$	$M_{\text{bol}}$	$M_v$	$M_B$	$\log(R/R_\odot)$ main seq.
-1.0	-2.9	+12.1	15.5	+17.1	-0.9
-0.8	-2.5	+10.9	13.9	+15.5	-0.7
-0.6	-2.0	+9.7	12.2	+13.9	-0.5
-0.4	-1.5	+8.4	10.2	+11.8	-0.3
-0.2	-0.8	+6.6	7.5	+8.7	-0.14
0.0	0.0	+4.7	4.8	+5.5	0.00
+0.2	+0.8	+2.7	2.7	+3.0	+0.10
+0.4	+1.6	+0.7	1.1	+1.1	+0.32
+0.6	+2.3	-1.1	-0.2	-0.1	+0.49
+0.8	+3.0	-2.9	-1.1	-1.2	+0.58
+1.0	+3.7	-4.6	-2.2	-2.4	+0.72
+1.2	+4.4	-6.3	-3.4	-3.6	+0.86
+1.4	+4.9	-7.6	-4.6	-4.9	+1.00
+1.6	+5.4	-8.9	-5.6	-6.0	+1.15
+1.8	+6.0	-10.2	-6.3	-6.9	+1.3

(After Allen, C. W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, Athlone Press, 1973.)

**Stellar mass, luminosity, radius and density** (mass, radius, luminosity, and mean density with spectral class)<sup>(a)</sup>

Sp	log( $M/M_{\odot}$ )			log( $R/R_{\odot}$ )			log $\bar{\rho}$ ( $\text{g cm}^{-3}$ )			log( $L/L_{\odot}$ )		
	I	III	V	I	III	V	I	III	V	I	III	V
O5	+2.2	+1.6			+1.3	+1.2	+0.87	-2.1		-2.0		+5.7
B0	+1.7	+1.25			+1.5	+1.0	+0.58	-2.9		-1.2		+5.4
B5	+1.4	+0.81			+1.6	+0.8	+0.40	-3.5		-0.78		+4.3
A0	+1.2	+0.51			+1.7		+0.24	-3.8		-0.55		+2.9
A5	+1.1	+0.32			+1.8		+0.13	-4.2		-0.26		+1.9
F0	+1.1	+0.23			+1.9		+0.08	-4.2		-0.01		+1.3
F5	+1.0	+0.11			+1.9	+0.6	+0.08	-4.5		+0.03		+0.8
G0	+1.0	+0.4	+0.04		+2.0	+0.8	+0.02	-4.9	-1.8	+0.13	+3.8	+0.4
G5	+1.1	+0.5	-0.03		+2.1	+1.0	-0.03	-5.2	-2.4	+0.20	+3.8	+0.1
K0	+1.1	+0.6	-0.11		+2.3	+1.2	-0.07	-5.7	-2.9	+0.25	+3.9	+0.1
K5	+1.2	+0.7	-0.16		+2.6	+1.4	-0.13	-6.4	-3.4	+0.38	+4.2	+0.1
M0	+1.2	+0.8	-0.33		+2.7		-0.20	-6.7	-4	+0.4	+4.5	-0.1
M2	+1.3		-0.41		+2.9		-0.3	-7.2		+0.7	+4.7	-1.2
M5		-0.67				-0.5			+1.0		+3.0	-1.5
M8		-1.0				-0.9			+1.8		-2.1	-3.1

(a) I = supergiant, III = giant, V = dwarf.

A single column between III and V represents main sequence.

(After Allen, C. W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, Athlone Press, 1973.)

*Present-day mass function (PDMF)*

$M_v$	$\phi(M_v)$ (stars pc $^{-3}$ mag $^{-1}$ )	$\log M/M_\odot$	$-\frac{dM_v}{d\log M}$	$2H$ (pc)	$\log T_{\text{MS}}(\text{y})$	$f_{\text{MS}}$	$\phi_{\text{MS}}(\log M)$ (stars pc $^{-2}$ $\log M^{-1}$ )
-6	1.49(-8)*	2.07	3.7	180	6.42	0.40	3.97(-6)*
-5	7.67(-8)	1.80	3.7	180	6.50	0.40	2.04(-5)
-4	3.82(-7)	1.53	3.7	180	6.58	0.41	1.04(-4)
-3	1.80(-6)	1.26	3.7	180	6.84	0.42	5.03(-4)
-2	7.86(-6)	0.99	3.7	180	7.19	0.43	2.25(-3)
-1	3.07(-5)	0.72	3.7	180	7.68	0.46	9.41(-3)
0	1.04(-4)	0.45	10.8	180	8.36	0.50	1.01(-1)
1	2.95(-4)	0.36	10.8	180	8.62	0.56	3.21(-1)
2	6.94(-4)	0.26	10.8	180	8.93	0.64	8.63(-1)
3	1.36(-3)	0.17	10.8	300	9.24	0.78	3.44(+0)
4	2.26(-3)	0.08	10.8	465	9.60	0.98	1.11(+1)
5	3.31(-3)	-0.02	10.8	630	9.83	1.00	2.25(+1)
6	4.41(-3)	-0.11	10.8	650	10.28	1.00	3.10(+1)
7	5.48(-3)	-0.20	10.8	650	—	1.00	3.85(+1)
8	6.52(-3)	-0.29	10.8	650	—	1.00	4.58(+1)
9	7.53(-3)	-0.39	10.8	650	—	1.00	5.29(+1)
10	8.52(-3)	-0.48	10.8	650	—	1.00	5.98(+1)

*Present-day mass function (PDMF) (cont.)*

$M_v$	$\phi(M_v)$ (stars pc $^{-3}$ mag $^{-1}$ )	$\log M/M_\odot$	$- \frac{dM_v}{d\log M}$	$2H$ (pc)	$\log T_{MS}(y)$	$f_{MS}$	$\phi_{MS}(\log M)$ (stars pc $^{-2}$ log $M^{-1}$ )
11	9.54(-3)	-0.57	10.8	650	—	1.00	6.70(+1)
12	1.06(-2)	-6.67	10.8	650	—	1.00	7.44(+1)
13	1.17(-2)	0.76	10.8	650	—	1.00	8.21(+1)
14	1.29(-2)	-0.85	10.8	650	—	1.00	9.06(+1)
15	1.41(-2)	-0.94	10.8	650	—	1.00	9.90(+1)
16	1.41(-2)	-1.04	10.8	650	—	1.00	9.90(+1)

\* Number in parenthesis is power of 10.

$\phi(M_v) \equiv$  luminosity function of field stars.

$\phi_{MS}(\log M) \equiv$  present-day mass function (PDMF) of main-sequence field stars in the solar neighborhood is given by

$$\phi_{MS}(\log M) + \phi(M_v) \left| \frac{dM_v}{d\log M} \right| \frac{2H(M_v)f_{MS}(M_v)}{2H(M_v)f_{MS}(M_v)},$$
 where  $H(M_v)$  is the scale height assuming that stars are distributed as exp  $(-|z|/H)$ , where  $z$  is the distance measured perpendicular to the Galactic plane.

The factor  $f_{MS}(M_v)$  gives the fraction of stars at a given magnitude that are on the main sequence  $T_{MS}$  = the main-sequence lifetime is given by

$$T_{MS} = \frac{\Delta X_{MS} M E}{L} \simeq 13 \times 10^9 (M/M_\odot)^{-2.5} \text{ yr}, M \leq 10 M_\odot,$$

where  $\Delta X_{MS}$  = the mass fraction of hydrogen burned during the main-sequence phase,  $\sim 0.13$ .

$E$  = energy released per gram in the nuclear fusion reaction,  $H \rightarrow He \simeq 6.4 \times 10^{18} \text{ erg g}^{-1}$ .

$L$  = total luminosity of star.

(Adapted from Shapiro, S.L. & Teukolsky, S.A. *Black Holes, White Dwarfs, and Neutron Stars*, John Wiley and Sons, 1983.)

*Star number densities* ( $\log N_{\text{m}}(pg)$ ) with galactic latitude <sup>(a)</sup>

$m_{\text{pg}}$	Galactic latitude						Mean
	$0^{\circ}$	$\pm 5^{\circ}$	$\pm 10^{\circ}$	$\pm 20^{\circ}$	$\pm 30^{\circ}$	$\pm 40^{\circ}$	
0.0	-4.0		-4.3		-4.4		-4.25
1.0	-3.4		-3.75		-3.9		-3.70
2.0	-2.83		-3.20		-3.3		-3.18
3.0	-2.32		-2.69		-2.8		-2.60
4.0	-1.75	-1.83	-1.88	-2.01	-2.16	-2.25	-2.30
5.0	-1.28	-1.36	-1.43	-1.56	-1.69	-1.76	-1.80
6.0	-0.82	-0.90	-0.97	-1.10	-1.22	-1.29	-1.34
7.0	-0.39	-0.46	-0.53	-0.66	-0.77	-0.84	-0.89
8.0	0.05	-0.01	-0.09	-0.22	-0.32	-0.40	-0.45
9.0	0.52	0.43	0.35	0.22	0.12	0.04	-0.01
10.0	0.97	0.88	0.80	0.66	0.54	0.46	0.40
11.0	1.43	1.33	1.23	1.08	0.96	0.87	0.80
12.0	1.88	1.77	1.65	1.50	1.37	1.26	1.19
13.0	2.30	2.19	2.07	1.90	1.76	1.64	1.54
14.0	2.72	2.61	2.48	2.28	2.12	1.98	1.88
15.0	3.12	3.00	2.88	2.65	2.46	2.31	2.20
16.0	3.48	3.41	3.24	3.00	2.77	2.61	2.48
17.0	3.83	3.78	3.60	3.33	3.07	2.84	2.75
18.0	4.20	4.10	3.93	3.63	3.35	3.14	2.99
19.0	4.5	4.4	4.3	3.9	3.6	3.4	3.2
20.0	4.7	4.7	4.6	4.2	3.8	3.6	3.4
21.0	5.0	4.9	4.8	4.5	4.0	3.7	3.6

(a)  $N_{\text{m}}(pg \approx B)$  = number of stars per square degree brighter than photographic magnitude  $m_{\text{pg}}$

*Star number densities* ( $\log N_m(\text{vis})$ ) with galactic latitude <sup>(b)</sup> (cont.)

$m_{\text{vis}}$	Galactic latitude						Mean
	$0^\circ$	$\pm 5^\circ$	$\pm 10^\circ$	$\pm 20^\circ$	$\pm 30^\circ$	$\pm 40^\circ$	
0.0	-3.9		-4.2		-4.3		-4.1
1.0	-3.3		-3.6		-3.7		-3.56
2.0	-2.7		-3.0		-3.1		-3.00
3.0	-2.14		-2.5		-2.6		-2.43
4.0	-1.55	-1.63	-1.68	-1.81	-1.96	-2.05	-2.12
5.0	-1.08	-1.16	-1.23	-1.36	-1.49	-1.56	-1.60
6.0	-0.60	-0.68	-0.75	-0.88	-1.00	-1.07	-1.12
7.0	-0.16	-0.23	-0.30	-0.43	-0.54	-0.61	-0.66
8.0	0.29	0.23	0.15	0.02	-0.08	-0.16	-0.21
9.0	0.78	0.69	0.61	0.48	0.38	0.30	0.25
10.0	1.25	1.16	1.08	0.94	0.82	0.74	0.68
11.0	1.73	1.63	1.53	1.38	1.26	1.17	1.10
12.0	2.18	2.07	1.93	1.80	1.67	1.57	1.49
13.0	2.60	2.49	2.37	2.20	2.08	1.94	1.84
14.0	3.02	2.91	2.78	2.60	2.44	2.28	2.18
15.0	3.42	3.30	3.18	2.95	2.78	2.61	2.50
16.0	3.78	3.71	3.54	3.30	3.09	2.91	2.78
17.0	4.13	4.08	3.90	3.60	3.37	3.19	3.05
18.0	4.50	4.40	4.23	3.93	3.65	3.44	3.29
19.0	4.8	4.7	4.6	4.2	3.9	3.7	3.5
20.0	5.0	5.0	4.9	4.5	4.1	3.9	3.7
21.0	5.3	5.2	5.1	4.8	4.3	4.1	3.9

(b)  $N_m(\text{vis} \approx V)$  = number of stars per square degree brighter than visual magnitude  $m_{\text{vis}}$ .  
 (After Allen, C. W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, Athlone Press, 1973.)

**Relative numbers of stars in each class** (up to  $V = 8.5$  in HD Catalog)

Sp	O	B	A	F	G	K	M
% stars	1	10	22	19	14	31	3

(After Allen, C. W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, Athlone Press, 1973.)

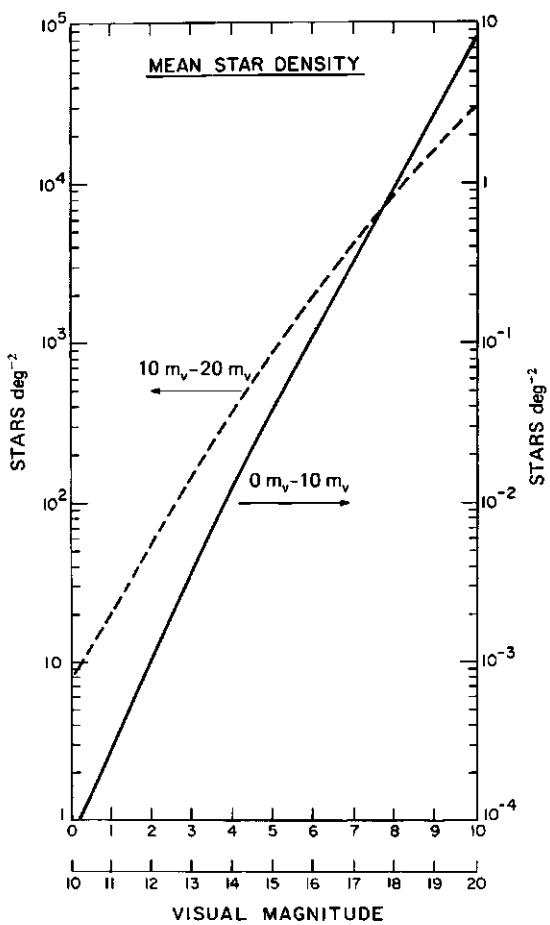
### **Integrated star light as a function of galactic latitude**

Latitude	Star light (10th mag deg $^{-2}$ )			Star light (10th mag deg $^{-2}$ )			Star light (10th mag deg $^{-2}$ )		
	pg	V	Latitude	pg	V	Latitude	pg	V	
0	180	372	20	54	105	60	21	38	
5	123	247	30	37	71	70	19	35	
10	88	176	40	29	54	80	18	34	
15	69	138	50	24	43	90	18	34	

Integrated star light from whole sky: 230 zero pg mag stars; 460 zero V mag stars. Night sky total brightness (zenith, mean sky)  $\approx 1(m_v = 22.5)$  star arcsec $^{-2}$ .

(After Allen, C. W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, Athlone Press, 1973.)

### *Mean star density vs. visual magnitude*



### Star counts

A formula for estimating ( $\sim 15\%$  accuracy) differential  $A$  and integral  $N$  star counts for a given galactic longitude  $l$ , latitude  $b$ , and apparent magnitudes  $V$  and  $B$  over the ranges  $b \geq 20^\circ$ ,  $5 \leq m \leq 30$  for zero obscuration,  $\Delta m = 0$ , has been derived by Bahcall & Soneira (*Ap. J. Suppl.*, **44**, 73, 1980). (For non-zero obscuration, replace  $m$  by  $m - \Delta m$ , where  $\Delta m_V = 0.15 \csc b$  and  $\Delta m_B = 0.20 \csc b$ .) The units of  $A$  are stars  $\text{mag}^{-1} \text{deg}^{-2}$  and  $N$  are stars  $\text{deg}^{-2}$ .

$$D(l, b, m) = \frac{C_1 10^{\beta(m-m*)}}{[1 + 10^{\alpha(m-m*)}]^\delta} \frac{1}{[\sin b(1 - \mu \cot b \cos l)]^{3-\gamma}}$$

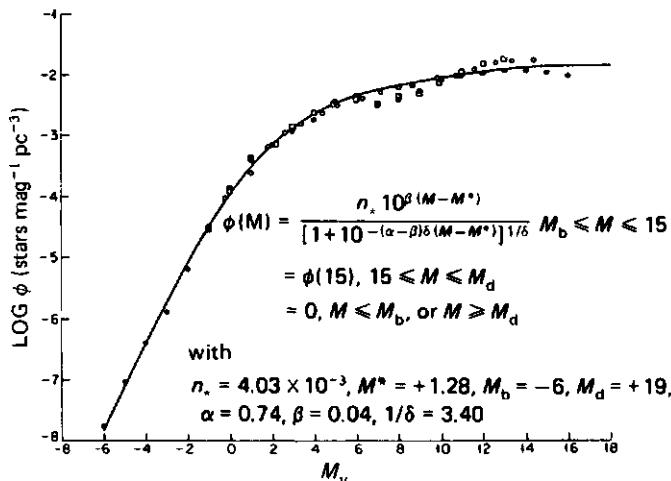
$$+ \frac{C_2 10^{\eta(m-m\ddagger)}}{[1 + 10^{\kappa(m-m\ddagger)}]^\lambda} \frac{1}{(1 - \cos b \cos l)^\sigma},$$

where the constants are  $\sigma = 1.45 - 0.20 \cos b \cos l$ ,

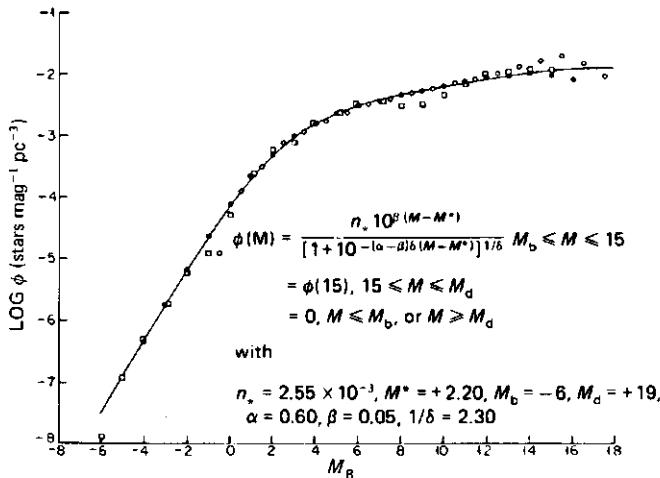
Constant	Range of $m$									
	$m \leq 12$			$12 < m < 20$			$m \geq 20$			
$\mu$	0.03			$0.0075(m-12) + 0.03$			0.09			
$\gamma$	0.36			$0.04(12-m) + 0.36$			0.04			
Star count	$C_1$	$C_2$	$\alpha$	$\beta$	$\delta$	$m^*$	$\kappa$	$\eta$	$\lambda$	$m\ddagger$
$A_V = D$	200	400	-0.2	0.01	2	15	-0.26	0.065	1.5	17.5
$N_V = D$	925	1050	-0.132	0.035	3.0	15.75	-0.180	0.087	2.5	17.5
$A_B = D$	235	370	-0.227	0.0	1.5	17	-0.175	0.06	2.0	18
$N_B = D$	950	910	-0.124	0.027	3.1	16.60	-0.167	0.083	2.5	18

### Luminosity functions

Local stellar luminosity function for the disk in the Visual band. The solid line is an analytic approximation, (Adapted from Bahcall, J. H. & Soneira, R. M., *Ap. J. Suppl.* **44** 73, 1980.)



Local stellar luminosity function for the disk in the Blue band. The solid line is an analytic approximation. (Adapted from Bahcall, J. N. & Soneira, R. M., *Ap. J. Suppl.*, 44, 73, 1980.)



### Parameters of the interstellar gas

Mean density $\rho$	$3 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g cm}^{-3}$
Typical particle density	
$n$ (HI) in diffuse clouds	$20 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
$n$ (HI) between clouds	$0.1 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
$n_H$ in molecular clouds	$10^3 - 10^6 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
Typical temperature $T$	
Diffuse HI clouds	80 K
HI between clouds	6000 K
HII photon ionized regions	8000 K
Coronal gas between clouds	$6 \times 10^5 \text{ K}$
Root-mean-square random cloud velocity	$10 \text{ km s}^{-1}$
Isothermal sound speed $C$	
HI cloud at 80 K	$0.7 \text{ km s}^{-1}$
HII gas at 8000 K	$10 \text{ km s}^{-1}$
Magnetic field $B$	$2.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ G}$
Effective thickness $2H$ of HI cloud layer	250 pc

(Adapted from Spitzer, L., *Physical Processes in the Interstellar Medium*, John Wiley and Sons, 1977.)

***Proton-proton chain and the CNO cycle***

	Reaction	Neutrino energy (MeV)
The proton-proton chain		
PP-I	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{H} + \text{H} \rightarrow \text{D} + e^+ + \nu_e \text{ (99.75\%)} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{H} + \text{H} + e^- \rightarrow \text{D} + \nu_e \text{ (0.75\%)} \\ \text{D} + \text{H} \rightarrow {}^3\text{He} + \gamma \\ {}^3\text{He} + {}^3\text{He} \rightarrow 2\text{H} + {}^4\text{He} \text{ (87\%)} \end{array} \right.$	0–0.420 spectrum 1.44 line
PP-II	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} {}^3\text{He} + {}^4\text{He} \rightarrow {}^7\text{Be} + \gamma \text{ (13\%)} \\ {}^7\text{Be} + e^- \rightarrow {}^7\text{Li} + \nu_e \\ {}^7\text{Li} + \text{H} \rightarrow \gamma + {}^8\text{Be} \rightarrow 2{}^4\text{He} \end{array} \right.$	0.861 (90%) line 0.383 (10%) line
PP-III	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} {}^7\text{Be} + \text{H} \rightarrow {}^8\text{B} + \gamma \text{ (0.017\%)} \\ {}^8\text{B} \rightarrow {}^9\text{Be}^* + e^+ + \nu_e \\ \quad \downarrow \\ \quad 2{}^4\text{He} \end{array} \right.$	0–14.1 spectrum
The carbon-nitrogen cycle		
	$\begin{array}{l} \text{H} + {}^{12}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{13}\text{N} + \gamma \\ {}^{13}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{13}\text{C} + e^+ + \nu_e \\ \text{H} + {}^{13}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}\text{N} + \gamma \\ \text{H} + {}^{14}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{15}\text{O} + \gamma \\ {}^{15}\text{O} \rightarrow {}^{15}\text{N} + e^+ + \nu_e \\ \text{H} + {}^{15}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{12}\text{C} + {}^4\text{He} \end{array}$	0–1.20 spectrum 0–1.73 spectrum

---

***Stellar structure equations (spherical symmetry)***


---

Equation of hydrostatic equilibrium

$$\frac{dP(r)}{dr} = -\frac{GM(r)\rho(r)}{r^2}$$

Equation of continuity of mass

$$\frac{dM(r)}{dr} = 4\pi r^2 \rho(r)$$

Equation of energy transport

$$\frac{dT(r)}{dr} = -\frac{3\kappa\rho(r)L(r)}{16\pi acr^2T(r)^3} \quad \text{radiative diffusion}$$

$$\frac{dT(r)}{dr} = \frac{(\gamma - 1)}{\gamma} \frac{T(r)}{P(r)} \frac{dP(r)}{dr} \quad \text{convection}$$

Equation of conservation of energy

$$\frac{dL(r)}{dr} = 4\pi r^2 \rho(r)\varepsilon(r)$$

P = pressure

M(r) = mass interior to a sphere of radius r

G = gravitational constant

$\rho$  = density

T = temperature

L = luminosity

$\kappa$  = opacity

$\gamma$  = ratio of specific heats

a =  $4\sigma/c$  = radiation density constant

$\sigma$  = Stefan-Boltzmann constant

c = speed of light

$\varepsilon$  = energy generation

---



---

## Galaxies

### *Properties of the Milky Way Galaxy*

---

Type of galaxy:

Hubble-van den Bergh system      Sb(-Sb<sup>+</sup>)I-II

de Vaucouleur's system      SAB(rs) bc II

Morgan's system      gkS 7

$M_V$  (mag): -20.5

Diameter: 23 kpc      Scale height of disc:  $z_0 = 0.17$  kpc

(isophote: 25.0 mag (B) arcsec<sup>-2</sup>)

Period of rotation:  $2.5 \times 10^8$  yr

Mass:

Visible mass:  $2 \times 10^{11} M_\odot$       Total mass:  $1 \times 10^{12} M_\odot$  ( $R < 200$  kpc)

Gas:  $8 \times 10^9 M_\odot$

Age:  $1.2 \times 10^{10}$  yr

Density in solar neighborhood:

Stars:  $0.05 M_\odot$  pc<sup>-3</sup>

Total known:  $0.08 M_\odot$  pc<sup>-3</sup>

Galactic nucleus:

$R < 0.4$  pc  $\approx 5 \times 10^6 M_\odot$

$R < 150$  pc  $\approx 1 \times 10^9 M_\odot$

Central bulge  $R(< 2.5$  kpc):  $\approx 4 \times 10^{10} M_\odot$

Luminosity of the galaxy:      Energy density in the galaxy:

Radio	$3 \times 10^{38}$ erg s <sup>-1</sup>	Starlight	$0.7 \times 10^{-12}$ erg cm <sup>-2</sup>
-------	--	-----------	--

Infrared	$3 \times 10^{41}$	Turbulent gas	$0.5 \times 10^{-12}$
----------	--------------------	---------------	-----------------------

Optical	$3 \times 10^{43}$	Cosmic rays	$2 \times 10^{-12}$
---------	--------------------	-------------	---------------------

X-ray	$10^{39} - 10^{40}$	Magnetic field	$2 \times 10^{-12}$
-------	---------------------	----------------	---------------------

$\gamma$ -ray (> 100 MeV)	$5 \times 10^{38}$	2.7 K radiation	$0.4 \times 10^{-12}$
---------------------------	--------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

Total luminosity (bolometric):  $3.6 \times 10^{10} L_\odot$

Stellar radiation emission (solar neighborhood):

$1.5 \times 10^{-3}$  ( $M_{\text{bol}} = 0$ ) stars pc<sup>-3</sup>

$1.5 \times 10^{-23}$  erg cm<sup>-3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup>

Stellar luminous radiation emission (solar neighborhood):

$6.7 \times 10^{-4}$  ( $M_V = 0$ ) stars pc<sup>-3</sup>

Distance of the Sun from the galactic center:

$8.7 \pm 0.6$  kpc (IAU, 1985)

$7.1 \pm 1.2$  kpc (courtesy of M. Reid, Harvard-Smithsonian)

Height of Sun above galactic disk:  $24 \pm 6$  pc

Galactic coordinates of the nucleus:  $l^{\text{II}} = l = 0$ ,  $b^{\text{II}} = b = 0$

Equatorial coordinates of the nucleus:

$\alpha_{2000} = 17^{\text{h}} 45^{\text{m}} 37.1991^{\text{s}}$

$\delta_{2000} = -28^\circ 56' 10.221''$

$$L_\odot = 3.83 \times 10^{33} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$$

Note: The mass and energy parameters are representative not definitive; consult the literature for currently accepted values. Additional data on the Milky Way Galaxy can be found in Trible, V., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, A.N. Cox, ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.

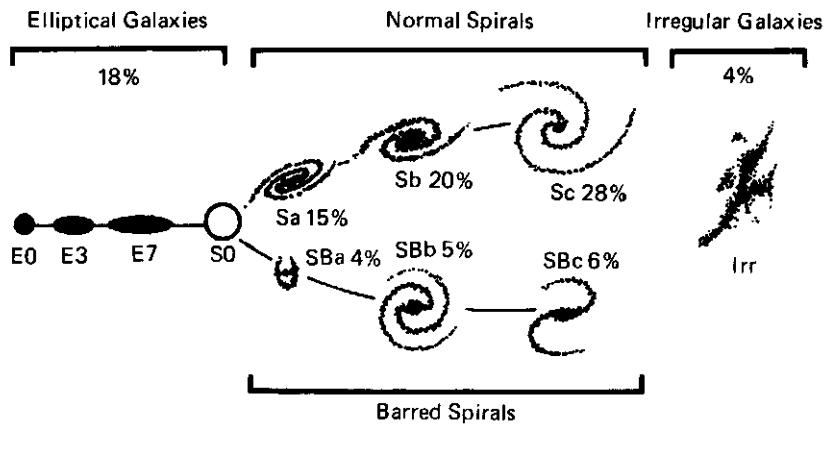
### The local group

Name	$\alpha$	2000	$\delta$	2000	V (mag)	Dimension	Type	$M_v$	Distance (kpc)	Diameter (kpc)
Andromeda galaxy	0429 <sup>m</sup> 37 <sup>s</sup>	+41° 16'	3.4	178' × 63'	Sb	-21.1	730	38		
Milky Way	(17 45.6	-28 56)				-20.5	(8.5)	30:		
Triangulum galaxy	1 33.9	+30 39	5.7	62' × 39	Sb+	-18.9	900	16		
Large Magellanic Cloud	5 23.6	-69 45	0.1	650' × 550	S Br	-18.5	50	9.5		
IC 10	0 20.4	+59 18	10.3	5' × 4	Ir+:	-17.6	1300	1.9		
Small Magellanic Cloud	0 52.7	-72 50	2.3	280' × 160	S Bmp	-16.8	60	4.9		
NGC 205	0 40.4	+41 41	8.0	17' × 10	E6:	-16.4	730	3.6		
NGC 221	0 42.7	+40 52	8.2	8' × 6	E2	-16.4	730	1.7		
NGC 6822	19 44.9	-14 48	9:	10' × 10	Ir+:	-15.7	520	1.5		
NGC 185	0 39.0	+48 20	9.2	12' × 10	dE0	-15.2	730	2.5		
NGC 147	0 33.2	+48 30	9.3	13' × 8	dE4	-14.9	730	2.8		
IC 1613	1 04.8	+2 07	9.3	12' × 11	Ir+:	-14.8	740	2.6		
WLM system	0 02.0	-15 28	10.9	12' × 4	Ir+:	-14.7	1600	5.6		
Leo A	9 59.4	+30 45	12.6	5' × 3	Ir+:	-14.1	2300	3.3		
Forbax dwarf galaxy	2 39.9	-34 32	8:	20: × 14:	dE3	-13.3	130	2.2:		
IC 5152	22 02.9	-51 17	11:	5' × 3	Ir+:	-13.5	1500	2.2		
Pegasus dwarf galaxy	23 28.6	+14 45	12.0	5' × 3	Ir+:	-13.4	1300	1.9		
Sculptor dwarf galaxy	0 59.9	-33 42	10:	dE3	-11.7	85	1.5:			
Leo I	10 08.4	+12 18	9.8	11' × 8	dE3	-11.0	230	0.7		
Andromeda I	0 45.7	+38 00	13.2	dE0	-11:	730				
Andromeda II	1 16.4	+33 27	13:	dE0	-11:	730				
Andromeda III	0 35.4	+36 31	13:	dE2	-11:	730				
Aquarius dwarf galaxy	20 46.9	-12 51		Ir	-11:	1500				
Sagittarius dwarf galaxy	19 30.0	-17 41	15:	Ir-:	-10:	1100				
Leo II	11 13.5	+22 10	11.5	15' × 13	dE0	-9.4	230	1.0		
Ursa Minor dwarf galaxy	15 08.8	+67 12	12:	27' × 16	dE6	-8.8	75	0.6		
Draco dwarf galaxy	17 20.2	+57 55	11:	34' × 19	dE3	-8.6:	80	0.8		
LGS 3	1 03.8	+21 53	15:	2	Ir	-8.5:	900	0.5		
Carina dwarf galaxy	6 41.6	-50 58		dE			170			

: denotes approximate value  
 (Adapted from *Sky Catalogue 2000.0*, Vol. 2, Sky Publishing Corp., 1985.)

### *Hubble's classification of galaxies*

The number  $n$  behind the symbol  $E$  characterizes the ellipticity:  $n = 10(a - b)/a$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are the major and minor diameters of the ellipse. The letters  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  following S and SB characterize the increasing degree of opening of the spiral arms. (Adapted from *Landolt-Börnstein, Astronomy and Astrophysics*, 1982.)



***Selected brighter galaxies* ( $B_T < 10$ ; local group excluded)**

Galaxy	$\alpha$	J2000	$\delta$	J2000	Diam. <sup>a</sup>	b/a <sup>b</sup>	$B_T$ <sup>c</sup>	$(B - V)_0^d$	Type	Dist. (Mpc)	log $M_{\text{tot}}$
NGC 55	00 <sup>h</sup> 15 <sup>m</sup>	-39 <sup>o</sup> 13'	32.4	0.17	8.42	0.54	SBC/in III	1.3	9.87		
NGC 247	00 <sup>h</sup> 47 <sup>m</sup>	-20 <sup>o</sup> 46'	21.4	0.32	9.67	0.54	SABC/d III-IV	2.1	10.02		
NGC 253	00 <sup>h</sup> 48 <sup>m</sup>	-25 <sup>o</sup> 17'	27.5	0.25	8.04		SABc II	3.0	10.87		
NGC 300	00 <sup>h</sup> 54 <sup>m</sup>	-37 <sup>o</sup> 41'	21.9	0.71	8.72	0.58	Sc/d II-IV	1.2	9.89		
NGC 628 = M74	01 <sup>h</sup> 37 <sup>m</sup>	+15 <sup>o</sup> 47'	10.5	0.91	9.95	0.51	SAC II	9.7			
NGC 1068 = M77	02 <sup>h</sup> 43 <sup>m</sup>	-00 <sup>o</sup> 01'	7.1	0.85	9.61	0.70	SAB II	14.4			
NGC 1291	03 <sup>h</sup> 17 <sup>m</sup>	-41 <sup>o</sup> 00'	9.8	0.83	9.39	0.91	SB0/a	8.6			
NGC 1313	03 <sup>h</sup> 18 <sup>m</sup>	-66 <sup>o</sup> 30'	9.1	0.76	9.20	0.48	SBC/d III-IV	3.7	10.31		
NGC 1316 (Fornax A)	03 <sup>h</sup> 23 <sup>m</sup>	-37 <sup>o</sup> 12'	12.0	0.71	9.42	0.87	SAB0/a pec	16.9			
NGC 2403	07 <sup>h</sup> 37 <sup>m</sup>	+65 <sup>o</sup> 36'	21.9	0.56	8.93	0.39	Sed III	4.2	10.67		
NGC 2903	09 <sup>h</sup> 32 <sup>m</sup>	+21 <sup>o</sup> 30'	12.6	0.48	9.68	0.55	SABbc I-II	6.3	10.91		
NGC 3031 = M81	09 <sup>h</sup> 50 <sup>m</sup>	+69 <sup>o</sup> 04'	26.9	0.52	7.89	0.82	SAab I-II	1.4	10.73		
NGC 3034 = M82	09 <sup>h</sup> 56 <sup>m</sup>	+89 <sup>o</sup> 41'	11.2	0.38	9.30	0.79	10/amorphous	5.2			
NGC 3115	10 <sup>h</sup> 05 <sup>m</sup>	-07 <sup>o</sup> 43'	7.2	0.84	9.87	0.94	S0	6.7			
NGC 3521	11 <sup>h</sup> 06 <sup>m</sup>	-00 <sup>o</sup> 02'	11.0	0.47	9.83	0.68	SABbc II	7.2	10.99		
NGC 3627 = M66	11 <sup>h</sup> 20 <sup>m</sup>	+13 <sup>o</sup> 00'	9.1	0.46	9.65	0.60	SABB II	6.6	10.74		
NGC 4258 = M106	12 <sup>h</sup> 19 <sup>m</sup>	+47 <sup>o</sup> 18'	14.8	0.39	9.10	0.55	SABbc II-III	6.8	11.17		
NGC 4449	12 <sup>h</sup> 28 <sup>m</sup>	+48 <sup>o</sup> 06'	6.2	0.71	9.99	0.41	IB/Sim IV	3.0			
NGC 4472 = M49	12 <sup>h</sup> 30 <sup>m</sup>	+08 <sup>o</sup> 00'	10.2	0.81	9.37	0.05	E1-2/S0	16.8			
NGC 4486 = M87	12 <sup>h</sup> 31 <sup>m</sup>	+12 <sup>o</sup> 23'	8.3	0.79	9.59	0.03	eD, E0/p	16.8			
NGC 4594 = M104	12 <sup>h</sup> 40 <sup>m</sup>	-11 <sup>o</sup> 37'	8.7	0.41	8.98	0.45	Sa/ab	20.0	11.38		
	(Sombrero)										
NGC 4631	12 <sup>h</sup> 42 <sup>m</sup>	+32 <sup>o</sup> 32'	15.5	0.17	9.75	0.55	SBC/d III	6.9	10.70		
NGC 4649 = M60	12 <sup>h</sup> 44 <sup>m</sup>	+11 <sup>o</sup> 33'	7.4	0.81	9.81	0.05	S0/E2	16.8			
NGC 4736 = M94	12 <sup>h</sup> 51 <sup>m</sup>	+41 <sup>o</sup> 07'	11.2	0.81	8.99	0.72	SAab II	4.3	10.78		
NGC 4826 = M64	12 <sup>h</sup> 57 <sup>m</sup>	+21 <sup>o</sup> 41'	10.0	0.54	9.36	0.71	Sab II	4.1			
NGC 4945	13 <sup>h</sup> 05 <sup>m</sup>	-49 <sup>o</sup> 28'	20.0	0.19	9.3		SBCd IV	5.2			
NGC 5055 = M63	13 <sup>h</sup> 16 <sup>m</sup>	+42 <sup>o</sup> 02'	12.6	0.58	9.31	0.64	SABC II-III	7.2	11.15		
NGC 5128 (Cen. A)	13 <sup>h</sup> 25 <sup>m</sup>	-43 <sup>o</sup> 01'	25.7	0.79	7.84	0.88	S0p	4.9			

a,  $\delta$ , diameters, b/a,  $B_T$ , B-V are from de Vaucouleurs, G., et al., *Third Reference Catalogue of Bright Galaxies* (RC3), University of Texas Press, 1990.

Type from Sandage, A. and Tammann, G.A., *A revised Shapley Ames Catalog of Bright Galaxies*, Carnegie Institution of Washington, 1987 and de Vaucouleurs, G., et al., *Third Reference Catalogue of Bright Galaxies* (RC3), University of Texas Press, 1990.

Distances from Tully, R.B., *Nearby Galaxies Catalog*, Cambridge University Press, 1987.

<sup>a</sup> Arcminutes, isophotal to  $25^m$  arcsec $^{-2}$

<sup>b</sup> Axial ratio, to  $25^m$  arcsec $^{-2}$  isophote.

<sup>c</sup> B total magnitude; entire galaxy; not corrected for absorption.

<sup>d</sup> Entire galaxy, corrected for reddening.

(Adapted from Trimble, V. in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.)

*Named galaxies*

Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000
Andromeda galaxy = M31 = NGC 224	00 <sup>h</sup> 42 <sup>m</sup> 7 <sup>s</sup>	+41°16'
Andromeda I	00 45.7	+38 00
Andromeda II	01 16.3	+33 25
Andromeda III	00 35.3	+36 30
Andromeda IV	00 42.5	+40 34
BL Lac	22 02.7	+42 17
Capricorn dwarf = Pal 13†	21 46.8	-21 15
Caraffe galaxy	04 28.0	-47 54
Carina dwarf	06 46.3	-51 03
Cartwheel galaxy	00 37.4	-33 45
Centaurus A = NGC 5128 = Arp 135	13 25.4	-43 02
Circinus galaxy	14 13.2	-65 20
Copeland Septet = NGC 3745/54 = Arp 320	11 37.7	+22 01
Cygnus A	19 59.4	+40 44
Draco dwarf = DDO 208	17 20.0	+57 55
Fath 703	15 13.8	-15 28
Formax A = NGC 1316	03 22.7	-37 12
Fornax dwarf	02 39.9	-34 31
Fourcade-Figueroa object	13 35.2	-33 53
GR8 = DDO 155	12 58.7	+41 13
Hardcastle Nebula	13 13.0	-32 42
Hercules A	16 51.2	+05 01
Holmberg I + DDO 63	09 40.5	+71 12
Holmberg II = DDO 50 = Arp 268	08 19.0	+70 43
Holmberg III	09 14.9	+74 14
Holmberg IV = DDO 185	13 54.6	+53 54
Holmberg V	13 40.7	+54 20
Holmberg VI = NGC 1325 A	03 24.8	-21 20
Holmberg VII = DDO 137	12 34.7	+06 18
Holmberg VIII = DDO 166	13 13.3	+36 13
Holmberg IX = DDO 66	09 57.6	+69 03
Hydra A	09 18.1	-12 06
Large Magellanic Cloud	05 23.5	-69 45
Leo I = Harrington-Wilson No. 1 = Regulus Dwarf = DDO 74	10 08.5	+12 18
Leo II = Harrington-Wilson No. 2 = Leo B = DDO 93	11 13.5	+22 10
Leo A = Leo III = DDO 69	09 59.4	+30 45
Lindsay-Shapley ring	06 43.1	-74 14
Maffei I	02 36.3	+59 39
Maffei II	02 41.9	+59 36
Mayall's Object = Arp 148 = VV 32	11 03.9	+40 51
Mice = NGC 4676 = Arp 242	12 47.1	+30 38
Pegasus dwarf = DDO 216	23 28.5	+14 44
Perseus A = NGC 1275	03 19.8	+41 31
Reticulum dwarf	04 36.2	-58 50
Reinmuth 80 = NGC 4517 A	01 00.0	-33 42

***Named galaxies (cont.)***

Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000
Seashell galaxy	13 <sup>h</sup> 47 <sup>m</sup> 3	-30°25'
Serpens dwarf	15 16.0	-00 08
Seyfert's Sextet = NGC 6027 A-D	15 59.2	+20 45
Sextans A = DDO 75	10 11.1	-04 43
Sextans B = DDO 70	10 00.0	+05 20
Sextans C	10 05.5	+00 04
Small Magellanic Cloud	00 52.8	-72 50
Sombrero galaxy = M 104 = NGC 4594	12 40.2	-11 37
Stephan's Quintet = NGC 7317-20 = Arp 319	22 36.0	+33 58
Triangulum galaxy = M33 = NGC 598	01 34.5	+30 39
Ursa Minor dwarf = DDO 199	15 08.8	+67 12
Virgo A = M87 = NGC 4486 = Arp 152	12 30.8	+12 23
Whirlpool galaxy = M51 = NGC 5194	13 29.9	+47 12
Wild's Triplet = Arp 248	11 46.8	-03 50
Wolf-Lundmark-Melotte object = DDO 221	00 02.0	-15 27
Zwicky No. 2 = DDO 105	11 58.5	+38 04
Zwicky's triplet = Arp 103	16 49.5	+45 28

† Probably a distant globular cluster.

(Adapted from Landolt-Börnstein, *Astronomy and Astrophysics*, VI/2C, Springer-Verlag, 1982.)

***Representative active galactic nuclei (AGNs)***

Object	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	$z$	$m_V$
<i>QUASARS</i>				
Q 0002-422	00 <sup>h</sup> 02 <sup>m</sup> 16 <sup>s</sup>	-42°14'	2.758	17.4
PHL 938	00 58 20	01 55	1.95	17.2
4C 25.05	01 23 57	25 44	2.34	17.5
PHL 1093	01 37 23	01 17	0.262	17.1
PHL 1194	01 48 52	09 03	0.298	17.5
RN 8	02 10 49	86 05	0.184	19.0
Q 0242-410	02 42 02	-41 04	2.214	18.1
Q 0324-407	03 24 29	-40 47	3.056	17.6
PKS 0424-13	04 24 48	-13 10	2.16	17.5
Q 0453-423	04 53 48	-42 21	2.661	17.3
Q 0551-366	05 51 02	-36 38	2.307	17.0
OH 471	06 42 53	44 55	3.39	18.5
PKS 0736+01	07 36 43	01 44	0.192	16.5
4C 05.34	08 05 19	04 41	2.86	18.2
0938+119	09 38 32	11 59	3.19	19.0
3C 232	09 55 25	32 38	0.533	15.8
Ton 490	10 11 06	25 04	1.63	15.4
PKS 1217+02	12 17 39	02 20	0.240	16.5
3C 273	12 36 33	02 20	0.158	12.8
Q 1246-057	12 46 29	-05 43	2.212	17.0
B 340	12 04 48	34 40	0.184	17.0
1331+170	13 31 10	17 04	2.08	16.0

*Representative active galactic nuclei (cont.)*

Object	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	$z$	$m_V$
3C 323.1	15 <sup>h</sup> 45 <sup>m</sup> 31 <sup>s</sup>	21°01'	0.264	16.7
4C 29.50	17 02 11	29 51	1.92	19.1
3C 351	17 04 03	60 49	0.371	15.3
Q 2116-358	21 16 22	-35 49	2.341	17.0
PKS 2135-14	21 35 01	-14 46	0.200	15.5
2256+017	22 56 25	01 48	2.66	18.5
<i>SEYFERT GALAXIES</i>				
<i>Seyfert 1 galaxies</i>				
Mrk 335	00 03 45	19 55	0.025	14.2
I Zw 1	00 51 00	12 25	0.061	14.3
Mrk 376	07 10 36	45 47	0.056	16.0
Mrk 79	07 38 47	49 56	0.020	13.4
Mrk 10	07 43 07	61 03	0.029	15.0
Mrk 110	09 21 44	52 30	0.036	16.1
NGC 3227	10 20 47	20 07	0.0033	13.5
NGC 3516	11 03 24	72 50	0.0093	13.1
NGC 4151	12 08 01	39 41	0.0033	12.0
Mrk 236	12 58 18	61 55	0.052	17.0
Mrk 279	13 51 52	69 33	0.0307	15.4
Mrk 290	15 34 45	58 04	0.0308	15.6
Mrk 486	15 35 21	54 43	0.039	15.0
Mrk 509	20 41 26	-10 54	0.0355	13.0
NGC 7469	23 00 44	08 36	0.0167	13.6
Mrk 541	23 53 30	07 15	0.041	15.5
<i>Seyfert 2 galaxies</i>				
Mrk 1	01 13 19	32 50	0.016	16.6
NGC 1068	02 40 07	-00 14	0.003 63	10.5
Mrk 612	03 21 10	-03 19	0.020 22	16.5
III Zw 55	03 38 38	-01 28	0.0246	14.0
Mrk 3	06 09 48	71 03	0.0137	13.8
Mrk 78	07 37 56	65 18	0.0375	15.6
Mrk 622	08 04 21	39 09	0.022 83	15.6
Mrk 34	10 30 52	60 17	0.051	14.8
Mrk 176	11 29 54	53 14	0.0269	15.5
Mrk 270	13 39 41	56 55	0.009	15.0
Mrk 463E	13 53 40	18 37	0.0505	16.0
Mrk 533	23 25 24	08 30	0.028 73	16.0
<i>BL LAC OBJECTS</i>				
PKS 0215+015	02 15 13	01 31		18.3
AO 0235+164	02 35 53	16 24		15.5
PKS 0521-365	05 21 14	-36 30	0.55	15.0
PKS 0548-323	05 48 50	-32 17	0.069	15.5
OJ 287	08 51 57	20 18		14.0
4C 22.25	09 57 34	22 48		18.0
Mkn 421	11 01 41	38 29	0.03	13.5
Mkn 180	11 33 30	70 25	0.0458	15.0
AP Lib	15 14 45	-24 11	0.049	15.0
Mkn 501	16 52 12	39 50	0.034	13.8
BL Lac	22 00 40	42 02	0.0688	14.5

*Representative active galactic nuclei (cont.)*

Object	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	$z$	$m_v$
<i>RADIO GALAXIES</i>				
<i>BLRGs</i>				
3C 109	04 <sup>h</sup> 10 <sup>m</sup> 55 <sup>s</sup>	11°15'	0.306	18.0
3C 120	04 30 32	05 15	0.033	14.6
3C 227	09 45 07	07 39	0.0855	16.3
3C 234	09 58 57	29 02	0.1846	17.1
3C 287.1	13 29 04	25 24	0.2156	18.5
PKS 1417-19	14 17 02	-19 15	0.1195	17.5
4C 35.37	15 31 45	35 52	0.1565	17.5
3C 332	16 14 44	30 09	0.1515	16.0
3C 381	18 32 28	47 24	0.1614	17.5
3C 382	18 33 12	32 39	0.0586	15.4
3C 390.3	18 45 38.8	79 43	0.0569	15.4
3C 445	22 21 15	-02 21	0.0568	15.8
<i>NLRGs</i>				
3C 33	01 06 14	13 04	0.0595	16.3
3C 98	03 56 10	10 18	0.0306	14.8
3C 178	07 22 33	-09 30	0.0079	16.1
3C 184.1	07 32 20	70 20	0.1182	17
3C 192	08 02 38	24 16	0.0598	16.2
3C 327	15 59 56	02 06	0.1039	16.3
3C 433	21 21 30	24 52	0.1025	15.7
3C 452	22 43 33	39 25	0.082	16.6
PKS 2322-12	23 22 43	-12 24	0.0821	15.8
<i>LINERS</i>				
Mrk 1158	01 32 07	34 47	0.0151	16.2
NGC 1052	02 38 37	-08 28	0.0048	13.2
Ark 160	08 17 52	19 31	0.019	17.6
NGC 2841	09 18 35	51 11	0.0022	13.5
NGC 2911	09 31 05	10 23	0.0106	15.3
NGC 3031	09 51 30	69 18	-0.0001	12.4
NGC 3758	11 33 48	21 52	0.0296	16.6
NGC 3998	11 55 20	55 44	0.0038	13.3
NGC 4036	11 58 54	62 10	0.0046	14.0
NGC 4278	12 17 36	29 34	0.0022	13.6
NGC 5005	13 08 37	37 19	0.0033	14.1
NGC 5077	13 16 53	-12 24	0.0094	14.4
NGC 5371	13 53 33	40 42	0.0086	15.0
Mrk 298	16 03 18	17 56	0.0345	16.2
Mrk 700	17 01 21	31 31	0.034	15
NGC 6764	19 07 01	50 51	0.008	15.5

BLRGs: broad-line radio galaxies; NLRGs: narrow-line radio galaxies; LINERS: low-ionization nuclear emission-line region.

Redshift  $z = \Delta\lambda/\lambda$ .

$m_v$  = approximate nuclear visual magnitude.

Luminosity distance  $D_L(q_0 = 0) = \frac{cz}{H_0}(1 + 0.5z)$ . For other values of  $q_0$  see chapter on Relativity and Cosmology.

(Adapted from Landolt-Börnstein, *Astronomy and Astrophysics*, V1/2C, Springer-Verlag, 1982.)

**Objects with large redshifts ( $z > 5.06$ )**

Object Name*	$\alpha$ J2000	$\delta$ J2000	Type	$z$
SDSS J0338+0021	03 <sup>h</sup> 38 <sup>m</sup> 29.3 <sup>s</sup>	+00°21'56"	QSO	5.07
SDSS J120441.72-002149.5	12 04 41.7	-00 21 50	QSO	5.11
TN J0924-2201	09 24 19.9	-22 01 41	G	5.19
SDSSp J120823.82+001027.7	12 08 23.8	+00 10 28	QSO	5.273
SDSS J172341.09+555340.6	17 23 41.1	+55 53 41	QSO	5.30
HDF:[WBD96] 3-0951.0	12 36 59.9	+62 12 19	Gpair	5.34
6C 0140+326:[DS98] RD1	01 43 42.8	+32 54 00	G	5.35
RD J030117+002025	03 01 17.0	+00 20 57	QSO	5.50
HDF:[LYF96] 4-269	12 36 45.9	+62 11 58	G	5.60
CADIS 9H e0580	09 13 59.8	+46 11 47	G	5.69
CADIS 9H e0931	09 13 31.6	+46 13 32	G	5.70
CADIS 9H e0304	09 13 36.2	+46 10 42	G	5.70
CADIS 9H e1359	09 13 58.3	+46 15 37	G	5.70
CADIS 9H e0778	09 13 30.8	+46 12 44	G	5.71
CADIS 9H e1305	09 13 54.8	+46 15 25	G	5.71
CADIS 9H e1090	09 13 32.1	+46 14 20	G	5.72
SSA 22 HCM1	22 17 39.7	+00 13 49	G	5.74
SDSS J1044-0125	10 44 33.0	-01 25 02	QSO	5.80
SDSSp J083643.85+005453.3	08 36 43.8	+00 54 53	QSO	5.82
SDSSp J130608.26+035626.3	13 06 08.3	+03 56 26	QSO	5.99
SDSSp J1030227.10+052455.0	10 30 27.1	+05 24 55	QSO	6.28
SDSS J172201.84+563744.7	17 22 01.8	+56 37 45	QSO	6.50

(List as of the end of 2001)

\*6C: Sixth Cambridge Catalog of Selected Areas.

CADIS: Calar Alto Deep Imaging Survey.

SDSS: Sloan Digital Sky Survey.

SDSSp: Sloan Digital Sky Survey, provisory.

HDF: Hubble Deep Field.

RD: SSE2000; Stern, Spinrad, Eisenhardt, *et al.*., *Astrophys. J.*, **533**, L75, 2000.TN: DVR2000; De Brueck, Van Breugel, Roettgering, *et al.*, *Astron. Astrophys. Suppl. Ser.*, **143**, 303, 2000.

SSA: Small Selected Area; Hawaii Deep Survey fields.

DS98: Dumm and Schild, *New Astronomy*, **3**, 137, 1998.WBD96: Williams, Blaquier, Dickinson, *et al.*, *Astron. J.*, **112**, 1335, 1996.HCM1: HMC99b; Hu, McMahon, and Cowie, *Astrophys. J.*, **522**, L9, 1999.LYF98: Lanzetta, Yahil, and Fernandez-Soto, *Astron. J.*, **116**, 1066, 1998.

### Prominent clusters of galaxies

Name	Abell No.	$\alpha$	2000	$\delta$	2000	Diameter ( $^{\circ}$ )	$RV$ ( $\text{km s}^{-1}$ )	$R_S$ type	Radio source	Notes
Haufen A	151	1 <sup>h</sup> 08 <sup>m</sup> 99 <sup>s</sup>	-15 <sup>o</sup> 5'25'			15.800	cD			
	194	1 25.6	-1 30	0.3		5320	L	541, 5, 7	3C 40	In Perseus supercluster
	400	2 57.6	+6 02			7200	I		3C 75	
Perseus	426	3 18.6	+41 32	4		5460	L	1275	3C 84	In Perseus supercluster; XRS
Fornax II		3 28	-20 45	7		1560				
Fornax I		3 32	-35 20	7		1500				
Gemini	568	7 07.6	+35 03	0.5		23 400	C	1316	For A	
Cancer		8 21	+20 56	3		4800				
Hydra II		8 58	+3 09			60 900				
Leo	1020	10 27.8	+10 25	0.6		19 500				Also Abell 1016?
Hydra, I	1060	10 36.9	-27 32			3000	C	3309, 11		XRS
Ursa Major II		10 58	+56 46	0.2		41 000				
Leo A	1185	11 10.9	+28 41			10 500	C	3550		
	1367	11 44.5	+19 50			6150	F	3842, 62	3C 264	In Coma supercluster; XRS
Ursa Major I	1377	11 47.1	+55 44	0.7		15 300	B			
Virgo		12 30	12 23	12		1200		4472, 86	Vir A	In Local supercluster; XRS
Centaurus		12 50	-41 18	2		3200		4696	PKS	XRS
Coma	1656	12 59.8	+27 59	4		6650	B	4889		In Coma supercluster; XRS
Boötes	1930	14 33	31 33	0.3		39 300				
Corona Borealis	2065	15 22.7	+27 43	0.5		21 600	C			
Hercules	2151	16 05.2	+17 45	1.7		11 200	F	6040, 47	4C+17.66	In Hercules supercluster; XRS
	2152	16 05.4	+16 27			11 500	J			In Hercules supercluster
	2197	16 28.2	+40 54			9100	L	6173		
	2199	16 28.6	+39 31	0.2		9200	cD	6166	3C 338	In Hercules supercluster; XRS
Pegasus II		23 10	+ 7 36	2		12 700		7720	4C+07.61	
Pegasus I		23 22	+ 9 02	1		4000		7619	PKS	

$z = RV/3.00 \times 10^5$ ; distance (Mpc) =  $RV/50$  ( $H_0 = 50 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ ).

(Adapted from *Sky Catalogue 2000.0*, Vol. 2, Sky Publishing Corp., 1985.)

*The Messier catalog*

M	NGC	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	Const.	Dim.( $'$ )	V	Common	
						(mag)	Type	name
1	1952	5 <sup>h</sup> 34. <sup>m</sup> 5	+22°01'	Tau	6 × 4	8.4:	Di	Crab Nebula
2	7089	21 33.5	-0 49	Aqr	13	6.5	Gb	
3	5272	13 42.2	+28 23	CVn	16	6.4	Gb	
4	6121	16 23.6	-26 32	Sco	26	5.9	Gb	
5	5904	15 18.6	+2 05	Ser	17	5.8	Gb	
6	6405	17 40.1	-32 13	Sco	15	4.2	OC	
7	6475	17 53.9	-34 49	Sco	80	3.3	OC	
8	6523	18 03.8	-24 23	Sgr	90 × 40	5.8:	Di	Lagoon Nebula
9	6333	17 19.2	-18 31	Oph	9	7.9:	Gb	
10	6254	16 57.1	-4 06	Oph	15	6.6	Gb	
11	6705	18 51.1	-6 16	Sct	14	5.8	OC	
12	6218	16 47.2	-1 57	Oph	14	6.6	Gb	
13	6205	16 41.7	+36 28	Her	17	5.9	Gb	Hercules Cluster
14	6402	17 37.6	-3 15	Oph	12	7.6	Gb	
15	7078	21 30.0	+12 10	Peg	12	6.4	Gb	
16	6611	18 18.8	-13 47	Ser	7	6.0	OC	
17	6618	18 20.8	-16 11	Sgr	46 × 37	7:	Di	Omega Nebula
18	6613	18 19.9	-17 08	Sgr	9	6.9	OC	
19	6273	17 02.6	-26 16	Oph	14	7.2	Gb	
20	6514	18 02.6	-23 02	Sgr	29 × 27	8.5:	Di	Trifid Nebula
21	6531	18 04.6	-22 30	Sgr	13	5.9	OC	
22	6656	18 36.4	-23 54	Sgr	24	5.1	Gb	
23	6494	17 56.8	-19 01	Sgr	27	5.5	OC	
24		18 16.9	-18 29	Sgr	90	4.5:		
25	IC 4725	18 31.6	-19 15	Sgr	32	4.6	OC	
26	6694	18 45.2	-9 24	Sct	15	8.0	OC	
27	6853	19 59.6	+22 43	Vul	8 × 4	8.1:	Pl	Dumbbell Nebula
28	6626	18 24.5	-24 52	Sgr	11	6.9:	Gb	
29	6913	20 23.9	+38 32	Cyg	7	6.6	OC	
30	7099	21 40.4	-23 11	Cap	11	7.5	Gb	
31	224	0 42.7	+41 16	And	178 × 63	3.4	S	Andromeda Galaxy
32	221	0 42.7	+40 52	And	8 × 6	8.2	E	
33	598	1 33.9	+30 39	Tri	62 × 39	5.7	S	
34	1039	2 42.0	+42 47	Per	35	5.2	OC	
35	2168	6 08.9	+24 20	Gem	28	5.1	OC	
36	1960	5 36.1	+34 08	Aur	12	6.0	OC	
37	2099	5 52.4	+32 33	Aur	24	5.6	OC	
38	1912	5 28.7	+35 50	Aur	21	6.4	OC	

*The Messier catalog (cont.)*

M	NGC	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	Const.	Dim.( $'$ )	V (mag)	Type	Common name
39	7092	21 <sup>h</sup> 32 <sup>m</sup> 2	+48°26'	Cyg	32	4.6	OC	
40		12 22.4	+58 05	UMa		8:		
41	2287	6 47.0	-20 44	CMa	38	4.5	OC	
42	1976	5 35.4	-5 27	Ori	66 × 60	4:	Di	Orion Nebula
43	1982	5 35.6	-5 16	Ori	20 × 15	9:	Di	
44	2632	8 40.1	+19 59	Cnc	95	3.1	OC	Praesepe
45		3 47.0	+24 07	Tau	110	1.2	OC	Pleiades
46	2437	7 41.8	-14 49	Pup	27	6.1	OC	
47	2422	7 36.6	-14 30	Pup	30	4.4	OC	
48	2548	8 13.8	-5 48	Hya	54	5.8	OC	
49	4472	12 29.8	+8 00	Vir	9 × 7	8.4	E	
50	2323	7 03.2	-8 20	Mon	16	5.9	OC	
51	5194-5	13 29.9	+47 12	CVn	11 × 8	8.1	S	Whirlpool Galaxy
52	7654	23 24.2	+61 35	Cas	13	6.9	OC	
53	5024	13 12.9	+18 10	Com	13	7.7	Gb	
54	6715	18 55.1	-30 29	Sgr	9	7.7	Gb	
55	6809	19 40.0	-30 58	Sgr	19	7.0	Gb	
56	6779	19 16.6	+30 11	Lyr	7	8.2	Gb	
57	6720	18 53.6	+33 02	Lyr	1	9.0:	Pl	Ring Nebula
58	4579	12 37.7	+11 49	Vir	5 × 4	9.8	S	
59	4621	12 42.0	+11 39	Vir	5 × 3	9.8	E	
60	4649	12 43.7	+11 33	Vir	7 × 6	8.8	E	
61	4303	12 21.9	+4 28	Vir	6 × 5	9.7	S	
62	6266	17 01.2	-30 07	Oph	14	6.6	Gb	
63	5055	13 15.8	+42 02	CVn	12 × 8	8.6	S	
64	4826	12 56.7	+21 41	Com	9 × 5	8.5	S	
65	3623	11 18.9	+13 05	Leo	10 × 3	9.3	S	
66	3627	11 20.2	+12 59	Leo	9 × 4	9.0	S	
67	2682	8 50.4	+11 49	Cnc	30	6.9	OC	
68	4590	12 39.5	-26 45	Hya	12	8.2	Gb	
69	6637	18 31.4	-32 21	Sgr	7	7.7	Gb	
70	6681	18 43.2	-32 18	Sgr	8	8.1	Gb	
71	6838	19 53.8	+18 47	Sge	7	8.3	Gb	
72	6981	20 53.3	-12 32	Aqr	6	9.4	Gb	
73	6994	20 58.9	-12 38	Aqr				
74	628	1 36.7	+15 47	Psc	10 × 9	9.2	S	
75	6864	20 06.1	-21 55	Sgr	6	8.6	Gb	
76	650-1	1 42.4	+51 34	Per	2 × 1	11.5:	Pl	
77	1068	2 42.7	-0 01	Cet	7 × 6	8.8	S	
78	2068	5 46.7	+0 03	Ori	8 × 6	8:	Di	
79	1904	5 24.5	-24 33	Lep	9	8.0	Gb	
80	6093	16 17.0	-22 59	Sco	9	7.2	Gb	

*The Messier catalog (cont.)*

M	NGC	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	Const.	Dim.(')	V (mag)	Type	Common name
81	3031	9 <sup>h</sup> 55 <sup>m</sup> .6	+69°04'	UMa	26 × 14	6.8	S	
82	3034	9 55.8	+69 41	UMa	11 × 5	8.4	Ir	
83	5236	13 37.0	-29 52	Hya	11 × 10	7.6:	S	
84	4374	12 25.1	+12 53	Vir	5 × 4	9.3	E	
85	4382	12 25.4	+18 11	Com	7 × 5	9.2	E	
86	4406	12 26.2	+12 57	Vir	7 × 6	9.2	E	
87	4486	12 30.8	+12 24	Vir	7	8.6	E	Virgo A
88	4501	12 32.0	+14 25	Com	7 × 4	9.5	S	
89	4552	12 35.7	+12 33	Vir	4	9.8	E	
90	4569	12 36.8	+13 10	Vir	10 × 5	9.5	S	
91	4548	12 35.4	+14 30	Com	5 × 4	10.2	S	
92	6341	17 17.1	+43 08	Her	11	6.5	Gb	
93	2447	7 44.6	-23 52	Pup	22	6.2:	OC	
94	4736	12 50.9	+41 07	CVn	11 × 9	8.1	S	
95	3351	10 44.0	+11 42	Leo	7 × 5	9.7	S	
96	3368	10 46.8	+11 49	Leo	7 × 5	9.2	S	
97	3587	11 14.8	+55 01	UMa	3	11.2:	Pl	Owl Nebula
98	4192	12 13.8	+14 54	Com	10 × 3	10.1	S	
99	4254	12 18.8	+14 25	Com	5	9.8	S	
100	4321	12 22.9	+15 49	Com	7 × 6	9.4	S	
101	5457	14 03.2	+54 21	UMa	27 × 26	7.7	S	
102							M101	
							reobservation	
103	581	1 33.2	+60 42	Cas	6	7.4:	OC	
104	4594	12 40.0	-11 37	Vir	9 × 4	8.3	S	Sombrero Galaxy
105	3379	10 47.8	+12 35	Leo	4 × 4	9.3	E	
106	4258	12 19.0	+47 18	CVn	18 × 8	8.3	S	
107	6171	16 32.5	-13 03	Oph	10	8.1	Gb	
108	3556	11 11.5	+55 40	UMa	8 × 2	10.0	S	
109	3992	11 57.6	+53 23	UMa	8 × 5	9.8	S	
110	205	0 40.4	+41 41	And	17 × 10	8.0	E?	

: denotes approximate value.

Types: diffuse nebula (Di), globular cluster (Gb), open cluster (OC), planetary nebula (Pl), or galaxy (E for elliptical, Ir for irregular, S for spiral).

Magnitudes with a colon are approximate visual magnitudes.

(Adapted from *Sky Catalogue 2000.0*, Vol. 2, Sky Publishing Corp., 1985.)

## The Universe

### *Mass-radius-density data for astronomical objects*

Class of objects	Examples	$\log M$ (g)	$\log R$ (cm)	$\log \rho$ ( $\text{g cm}^{-3}$ )	$\log \phi^{\dagger}$
Neutron stars		33.16	5.93	14.75	-0.6?
		32.54	7.44	9.60	-2.5
White dwarfs	L930-80	33.45	8.3:	7.93	-2.7
	$\alpha$ CMaB	33.30	8.77	6.37	-3.2
	vM2	32.90	9.05	4.13	-5.0
Main sequence stars	dM8	32.2	9.95	1.76	-5.6
	Sun	33.30	10.84	0.15	-5.5
	A0	33.85	11.25	-0.55	-4.7
	O5	34.9	12.1:	-2.0	-5.0:
Supergiant stars	F0	34.4	12.65	-4.2	-6.1
	K0	34.4	13.15	-5.7	-6.6
	M2	34.7	13.75	-7.2	-6.9
Protostars	IR	35.3?	16.2?	-13.9?	-8.7?
Compact dwarf elliptical galaxies	M32, core	41.0	19.5?	-18.1	-6.3
	M32, effective	42.5	20.65	-20.0	-5.9
	N4486-B	43.4	20.5	-18.75	-5.0
Spiral galaxies	LMC	43.2	21.75	-22.65	-6.3
	M33	43.5	21.8	-22.5	-6.1
	M31	44.6	22.3	-22.9	-5.5
Giant elliptical galaxies	N3379	44.3	22.0	-22.35	-5.6
	N4486	45.5	22.4	-22.3	-4.7
Compact groups of galaxies	Stephan	45.5	22.6:	-23.1:	-4.7
Small groups of spirals	Scutator	46.2	24.1	-26.7	-5.7
Dense groups of ellipticals	Virgo E, core	46.5	23.7	-25.2	-5.0
	Fornax I				
Small clouds of galaxies	Virgo S	47.0	24.3	-26.5	-5.1
	Ursa Major				
Small clusters of galaxies	Virgo F	47.2	24.3	-26.3	-4.9
Large clusters of ellipticals	Coma	48.3	24.6	-26.1	-4.9
Superclusters	Local	48.7:	25.5:	-28.4:	-4.7
	HMS sample to $m \simeq 12.5$		26.0:	-29.6	-4.6
	Lick Observatory counts to $m \simeq 19.0$		26.8	-30.5	-4.1

: denotes approximate value;? denotes large uncertainty

† The filling factor  $\phi = \rho/\rho_m$ , where  $\rho_m = 3c^2/8\pi G R_m^2$ ;  $R_m = 2GM/c^2$ .

(Adapted from de Vaucouleurs, G., *Science*, **167**, 1203, 1970.)

**Primordial element abundances (Big Bang Nucleosynthesis, BBN)**

The plot below shows the predicted light element primordial abundances as a function of the present baryon-to-photon ratio  $\eta = n_B/n_\gamma$ .

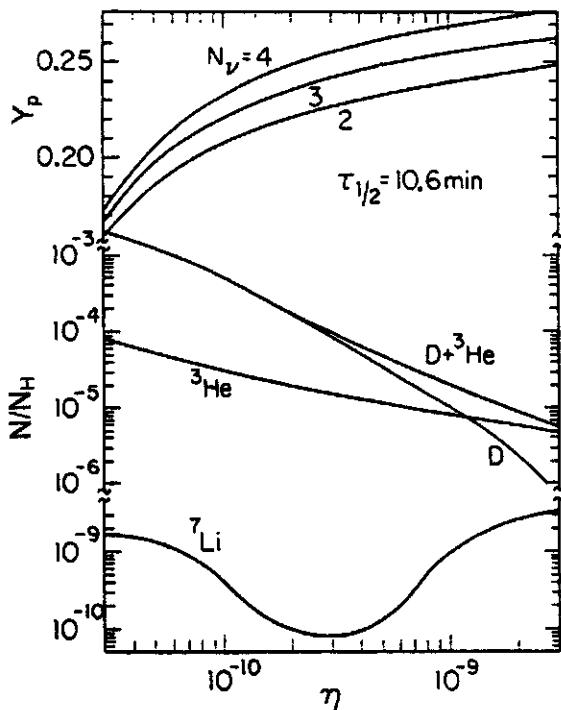
$$\rho_B = 8.68 \times 10^{-22} \eta \text{ gm cm}^{-3}, \text{ the current baryon mass density.}$$

Then  $\eta = 2.74 \times 10^{-8} \Omega_B h^2$ , since  $\Omega_B = \rho_B/\rho_c$ , the baryon density parameter, where  $\rho_c$  is the critical mass density and  $\rho_c = 3H_0^2/(8\pi G) = 1.88 \times 10^{-29} h^2 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ ;  $H_0 = 100h \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$  is the present value of Hubble's constant and G is the gravitational constant.

$Y_P = [{}^4\text{He}/(\text{H} + {}^4\text{He})]$  is the  ${}^4\text{He}$  mass fraction abundance and is plotted on a linear scale.

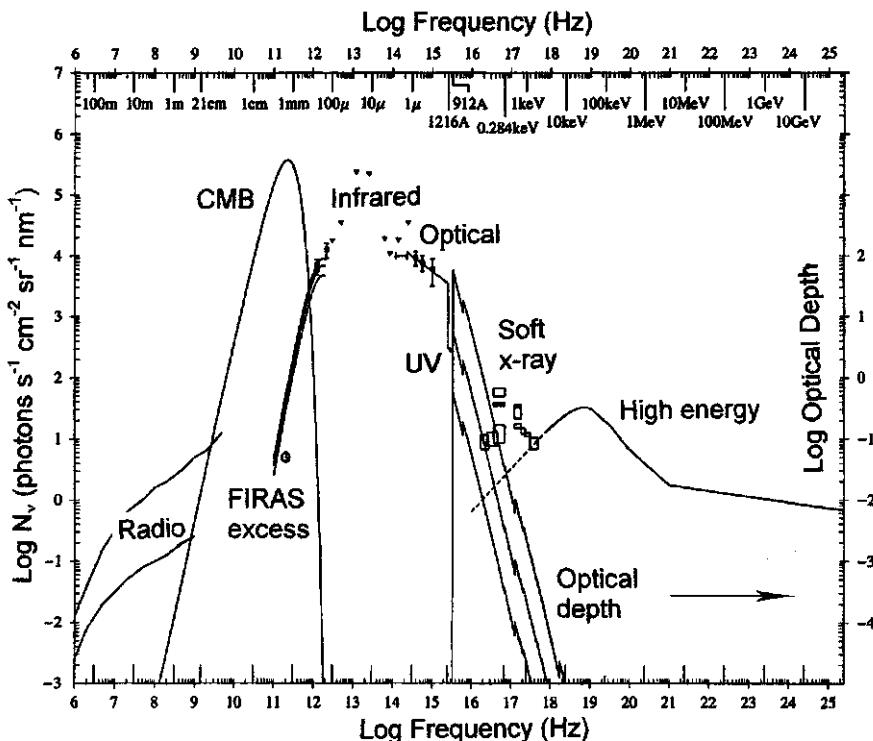
The abundances for the other isotopes are the ratios by number relative to hydrogen and are plotted logarithmically.  $N_\nu$  corresponds to the assumed number of neutrino species,  $N_\nu = 3$  corresponds to the standard Big Bang.  $\tau_{1/2}$  = the half-life of the neutron.

(Adapted from Kolb, E.W. and Turner, *The Early Universe*, Addison-Wesley, 1990.)



### The background radiation spectrum of the Universe

The radio background spectra are from the Galactic pole (lower curve) and the Galactic plane. The interstellar medium photoionization optical depth for  $10^{19}$ ,  $10^{18}$ , and  $10^{17}$  H atoms  $\text{cm}^{-2}$  is shown rather than the EUV background, which is local. (Adapted from Henry, R., *Ap. J.*, **L49**, 516, 1999.)

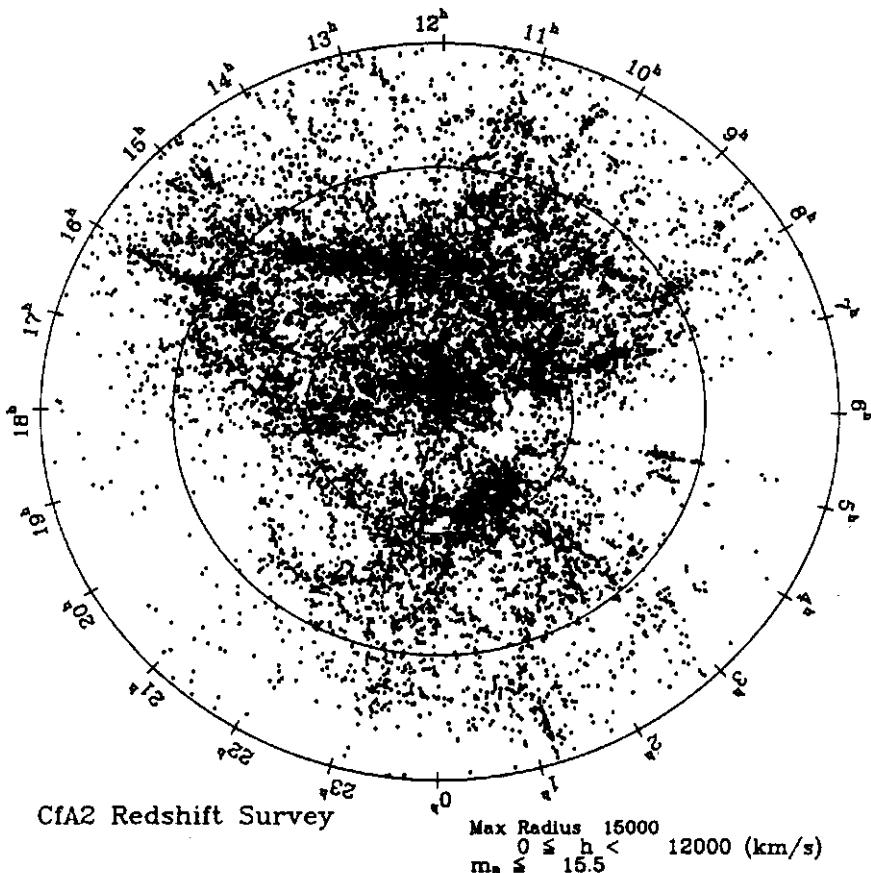


Note: The infrared background is very uncertain; upper limits only are shown.

### *Redshift survey*

The Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics Redshift Survey (CfA2).

The redshift distribution of galaxies can be seen in this polar projection of the redshifts for all the galaxies in the survey (about 18,600 galaxies). This is a section of a cylinder in equatorial coordinates looking down from the north pole to the equator with a height of  $12,000 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  and a radius of  $15,000 \text{ km s}^{-1}$ . The major structures seen are the Local Supercluster just above the middle of the plot, the Great Wall cutting from 9 hours and  $5,500 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  to 15 hours and  $9,000 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  and the Pisces-Perseus supercluster centered around 1 hour and  $4,000 \text{ km s}^{-1}$ . (Courtesy of John Huchra, CfA, 2001)




---

The luminosity distance is given to a good approximation by  $cz/H_0$  for the velocities in the figure above. For a velocity of  $12000 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  and an  $H_0 = 75 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ , the luminosity distance is 160 Mpc.

## Astronomical photometry

---

Following M. Golay (*Introduction to Astronomical Photometry*, D. Reidel Publishing Company, 1974.) we can write the following expression for the apparent magnitude difference on the Earth of two stars:

$$m_1 - m_2 = -2.5 \log \frac{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} \alpha_1^2 I_1(\lambda) T_i(\lambda, d_1) T_a(\lambda, d_1) T_t(\lambda) T_f(\lambda) r(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} \alpha_2^2 I_2(\lambda) T_i(\lambda, d_2) T_a(\lambda, d_2) T_t(\lambda) T_f(\lambda) r(\lambda) d\lambda},$$

where

- $I_1(\lambda)$  the spectral radiance of star 1.
- $I_2(\lambda)$  the same for star 2.
- $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  the apparent diameters of stars 1 and 2, which are assumed to be spherical and emit isotropic radiation.
- $T_i(\lambda, d_1)$  the fraction of the radiation of star 1 transmitted by interstellar space in the direction  $d_1$  of star 1.
- $T_i(\lambda, d_2)$  the same for star 2.
- $T_a(\lambda, d_1)$  the fraction of stellar radiation transmitted by the Earth's atmosphere when star 1 is in direction  $d_1$ .
- $T_a(\lambda, d_2)$  the same for star 2 when it is in direction  $d_2$ .
- $T_t(\lambda)$  the fraction of stellar radiation transmitted by the optical system of the telescope  $t$ , whose entry pupil is perpendicular to the star's direction.
- $T_f(\lambda)$  the fraction of stellar radiation transmitted by a filter  $f$  placed in front of the receiver.
- $r(\lambda)$  the response of the receiver  $r$  which, for simplicity, is assumed to depend only upon  $\lambda$ .

The limits of integration,  $\lambda_a$  and  $\lambda_b$  where  $\lambda_b > \lambda_a$  are defined by

$$\lambda \geq \lambda_b \quad T_a \cdot T_t \cdot T_f \cdot r \equiv 0,$$

$$\lambda \leq \lambda_a, \quad T_a \cdot T_t \cdot T_f \cdot r \equiv 0.$$

Let

$$S(\lambda) = T_t(\lambda) T_f(\lambda) r(\lambda),$$

the response of the photometric system and

$$E(\lambda) = \frac{\alpha^2}{4} I(\lambda) T_i(\lambda, d),$$

the stellar spectral irradiance at the top of the Earth's atmosphere, then the difference in apparent magnitudes for two stars outside the Earth's atmosphere is given by the expression:

$$(m_1 - m_2)_0 = -2.5 \log \frac{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} E_1(\lambda) \cdot S(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} E_2(\lambda) \cdot S(\lambda) d\lambda}.$$

We can define three wavelengths for a photometric system:

$$(1) \quad \lambda_0 = \frac{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} \lambda S(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} S(\lambda) d\lambda},$$

the mean wavelength of the pass-band defined by the response function  $S(\lambda)$ .

$$(2) \quad E(\lambda_i) \int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} S(\lambda) d\lambda = \int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} E(\lambda) S(\lambda) d\lambda,$$

where  $\lambda_i$  is the isophotal wavelength

$$(3) \quad \lambda_{\text{eff}} = \frac{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} \lambda E(\lambda) S(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} E(\lambda) S(\lambda) d\lambda},$$

the effective wavelength.

$$\lambda_{\text{eff}} - \lambda_0 = \frac{E'(\lambda_0)}{E(\lambda_0)} \cdot \mu^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_i - \lambda_0 = \frac{1}{2} \mu^2 \frac{E''(\lambda_0)}{E'(\lambda_0)},$$

where

$$\mu^2 = \frac{\int (\lambda - \lambda_0)^2 S(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int S(\lambda) d\lambda}.$$

$E'$  and  $E''$  are the first and second derivatives of  $E$  with respect to the wavelength.

The color index of a star is defined by

$$C_{AB} \equiv m_A - m_B = -2.5 \log \frac{\int_A E(\lambda) S_A(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_B E(\lambda) S_B(\lambda) d\lambda} + \text{constant},$$

where  $A$  and  $B$  represent two different spectral bands.

The relationship between the heterochromatic magnitude  $m_{\lambda_0}$  (obtained with a band of mean wavelength  $\lambda_0$ ) and monochromatic magnitudes taken at the isophotal wavelength,  $m(\lambda_i)$ , at the mean wavelength  $m(\lambda_0)$  and at the effective wavelength  $m(\lambda_{\text{eff}})$  is given by

$$m_{\lambda_0} = m(\lambda_i) + S, \quad \text{where } S = -2.5 \log \int_{\lambda_a}^{\lambda_b} S(\lambda) d\lambda.$$

$$m(\lambda_i) - m(\lambda_0) = -0.543 \mu^2 \left( \frac{E''(\lambda_0)}{E(\lambda_i)} \right)$$

$$m(\lambda_i) - m(\lambda_{\text{eff}}) = -0.543 \left( \frac{\lambda_{\text{eff}} E'(\lambda_{\text{eff}})}{E(\lambda_{\text{eff}})} + 1 \right) \frac{\lambda_0 - \lambda_{\text{eff}}}{\lambda_{\text{eff}}}$$

### Standard photometric systems

Standard U, B, V, R, I and long wavelength systems

Filter band	$\lambda_0^{(a)}$ ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	$\Delta\lambda_0$ (FWHM) ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Absolute spectral irradiance for mag = 0.0	
			$f_\lambda(0)$ (erg $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{\AA}^{-1}$ )	$f_\nu(0)$ (W $\text{m}^{-2} \text{Hz}^{-1}$ )
U	0.365	0.068	$4.27 \times 10^{-9}$	$1.90 \times 10^{-23}$
B	0.44	0.098	$6.61 \times 10^{-9}$	$4.27(4.64)^{(b)} \times 10^{-23}$
V	0.55	0.089	$3.64 \times 10^{-9}$	$3.67 \times 10^{-23}$
R	0.70	0.22	$1.74 \times 10^{-9}$	$2.84 \times 10^{-23}$
I	0.90	0.24	$8.32 \times 10^{-10}$	$2.25 \times 10^{-23}$
J	1.25	0.3	$3.18 \times 10^{-10}$	$1.65 \times 10^{-23}$
H	1.65	0.4	$1.18 \times 10^{-10}$	$1.07 \times 10^{-23}$
K	2.2	0.6	$4.17 \times 10^{-11}$	$6.73 \times 10^{-24}$
L	3.6	1.2	$6.23 \times 10^{-12}$	$2.69 \times 10^{-24}$
M	4.8	0.8	$2.07 \times 10^{-12}$	$1.58 \times 10^{-24}$
N	10.2		$1.23 \times 10^{-13}$	$4.26 \times 10^{-25}$

$$f_{\text{mks}} \lambda(0) = 10^{-2} \times f_\lambda(0) \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ nm}^{-1}$$

$$f_{\text{cgs}} \nu(0) = 10^3 \times f_\nu(0) \text{ erg s}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ Hz}^{-1}$$

(a)  $\lambda_0 = \int \lambda S(\lambda) d\lambda / \int S(\lambda) d\lambda$ , where  $S(\lambda)$  is the photometer response function.

(b) From S. Kleinmann.

U, B, R, I, N values from Allen, C.W. *Astrophysical Quantities*. The Athlone Press (1973). V, J, H, K, L, M values from Wamsteker, W., *Astron. Astrophys.*, **97**, 329 (1981).

The spectral irradiance for a star of a given magnitude is given either by:

$$\log f_\lambda(m_x) = -0.4m_x + \log f_\lambda(0),$$

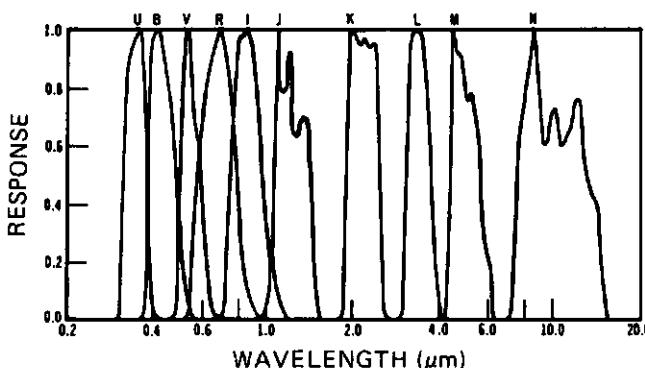
where  $f_\lambda(m_x)$  is the spectral irradiance in  $\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{\AA}^{-1}$  of a star of magnitude ( $m_x$ ) in the  $x$  filter band at the mean wavelength  $\lambda_0(x)$ , or

$$\log f_\nu(m_x) = -0.4m_x + \log f_\nu(0),$$

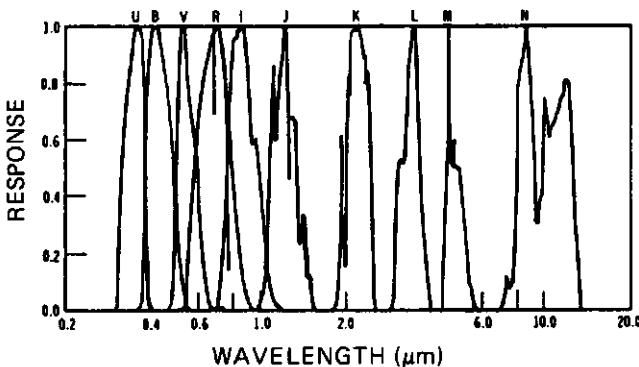
where  $f_\nu(m_x)$  is the spectral irradiance in  $\text{W m}^{-2} \text{ Hz}^{-1}$ .

The relationships above are for the irradiance at the top of the Earth's atmosphere and are valid for B through M stars.

Photometer response curves for UBVRI and long wavelength systems. (Adapted from Webbink, R.F. & Jeffers, W.Q., *Space Sci. Rev.*, **10**, 191 1969.)



Response curves of photometer plus atmosphere. (Adapted from Webink, R.F. & Jeffers, W.Q., *Space Sci. Rev.*, **10**, 191, 1969.)



#### *List of UBV primary standard stars*

HD No.	Name	V	B - V	U - B	Spectral type
12 929	$\alpha$ Ari	2.00	+1.151	+1.12	K2 III
18 331	HR 875	5.17	+0.084	+0.05	A1 V
69 267	$\beta$ Cnc	3.52	+1.480	+1.78	K4 III
74 280	$\eta$ Hya	4.30	-0.195	-0.74	B3 V
135 742	$\beta$ Lib	2.61	-0.108	-0.37	B8 V
140 573	$\alpha$ Ser	2.65	+1.168	+1.24	K2 III
143 107	$\varepsilon$ CrB	4.15	+1.230	+1.28	K3 III
147 394	$\tau$ Her	3.89	-0.152	-0.56	B5 IV
214 680	10 Lac	4.88	-0.203	-0.04	O9 V
219 134	HR 8832	5.57	+1.010	+0.89	K3 V

(List taken from Strand, K. A. A., ed., *Basic Astronomical Data*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1963.)

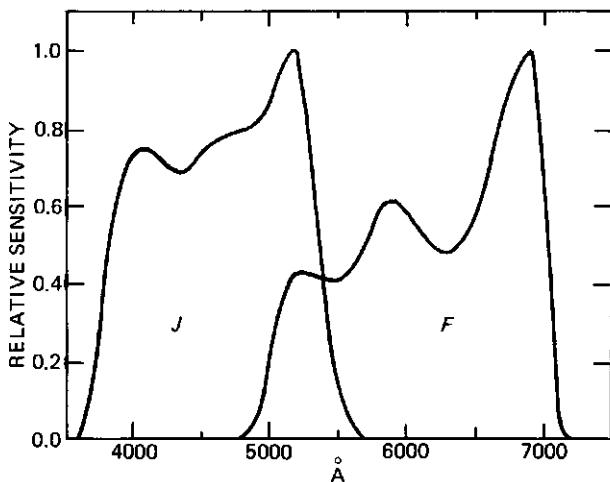
#### *Standard stars for the JHKLM system*

Standard	BS type	$m_{\text{vis}}$	J	H	K	L	M
0	519 gM 4	5.49	2.117	1.317	1.078	0.890	1.181
1	721 B5 III	4.25	4.548	4.575	4.604	4.601	4.689
2	1195 G5 III	4.17	2.672	2.233	2.119	2.025	2.156
3	2827 B5 Ia	2.44	2.565	2.548	2.557	2.472	2.542
4	4216 G5 III	2.69	1.148	0.744	0.622	0.530	0.673
5	5530 F5 IV	5.16	4.408	4.194	4.156	4.092	4.134
6	7120 K3 III	4.98	2.822	2.197	2.052	1.910	2.103
7	8204 G4 Ibp	3.74	2.346	1.964	1.865	1.794	1.882
8	8502 K3 III	2.85	0.558	-0.077	-0.091	-0.372	-0.199
9	8728 A3 V	1.16	1.075	1.034	1.019	0.998	1.025

(List taken from Wamstecker, W., *Astron. Astrophys.*, **97**, 329, 1981.)

Kron photographic *J* and *F* bands

Sensitivity functions  $S_\lambda(\lambda)$  for the *J* waveband (*left*) and the *F* waveband (*right*). (From Kron, R.G., *Ap. J.*, **43**, 305, 1980.)



The earlier photovisual ( $m_{\text{pv}}$ ) and photographic ( $m_{\text{pg}}$ ) magnitudes are related to the standard *B* and *V* magnitudes by:

$$B \equiv m_B = m_{\text{pg}} + 0.11,$$

$$V \equiv m_V = m_{\text{pv}} + 0.00.$$

Color index,

$$C = m_{\text{pg}} - m_{\text{pv}} = B - V - 0.11.$$

Bolometric correction,

$$BC = m_b - m_v = M_b - M_v,$$

where  $m_b(M_b)$  is the apparent (absolute) bolometric magnitude, a measure of the total energy output of a star.

$$M_b^{\text{star}} - 4.72 = -2.5 \log(L_{\text{star}}/L_\odot),$$

where  $L_{\text{star}}$  and  $L_\odot = 3.83 \times 10^{33} \text{ ergs}^{-1}$  are the absolute luminosities of the star and the Sun, respectively.

$$L_{\text{star}} = 2.97 \times 10^{35} \times 10^{-0.4M_b} \text{ erg s}^{-1}.$$

The total irradiance at the top of the Earth's atmosphere is

$$f = 2.48 \times 10^{-5} \times 10^{-0.4m_b} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

for a star apparent bolometric magnitude  $m_b$ .

Assuming black-body radiation, the spectral photon irradiance from a star of apparent bolometric magnitude  $m_b$  is given by:

$$f(\lambda) = \frac{8.48 \times 10^{34} \times 10^{-0.4m_b}}{T_e^4 \lambda^4 [\exp(1.44 \times 10^8 / \lambda T_e) - 1]} \text{ photons cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1}$$

$\lambda$  in Å;  $T_e$  the effective temperature of the star in K (e.g., AO star;  $m_v = 0$ ,  $T_e = 10800$ ,  $BC = -0.40$ ,  $\lambda = 5000$  Å;  $f(\lambda) = 10^3$  photons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1}$ ).

### Interstellar reddening

---

The observed color index is given by

$$C_{ij} = C_{ij}^0 + [A(\lambda_i) - A(\lambda_j)] \equiv C_{ij}^0 + E_{ij},$$

where

$A(\lambda)$  = amount of interstellar absorption at  $\lambda$ ,

$C_{ij}^0$  = intrinsic color index of the star,

$E_{ij}$  ≡ color excess.

In the  $UBV$  system, the color excesses are

$$E(B - V) \equiv (B - V) - (B - V)_0,$$

$$E(U - B) \equiv (U - B) - (U - B)_0$$

(subscript zero denotes intrinsic values).

$$A_V/E(B - V) = 3.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ (normal regions)}$$

$$\frac{E(U - B)}{E(B - V)} = 0.72 + 0.05E(B - V).$$

Relationship of reddening  $E(B - V)$  to the hydrogen column density:

$$\langle N(\text{HI} + \text{H}_2)/E(B - V) \rangle = 5.8 \times 10^{21} \text{ atoms cm}^{-2} \text{ mag}^{-1},$$

$$\langle N(\text{HI})/E(B - V) \rangle = 4.8 \times 10^{21} \text{ atoms cm}^{-2} \text{ mag}^{-1}.$$

(Bohlin *et al.*, *Ap. J.*, **224**, 132, 1978).

Visual extinction to the galactic center:

$$A_V \approx 30 \text{ mag}$$

(Becklin *et al.*, *Ap. J.*, **151**, 145, 1968).

The mean color excess  $\bar{E}_{B-V}(b)$  at galactic latitude  $b$  for objects outside the absorbing layer can be estimated by:

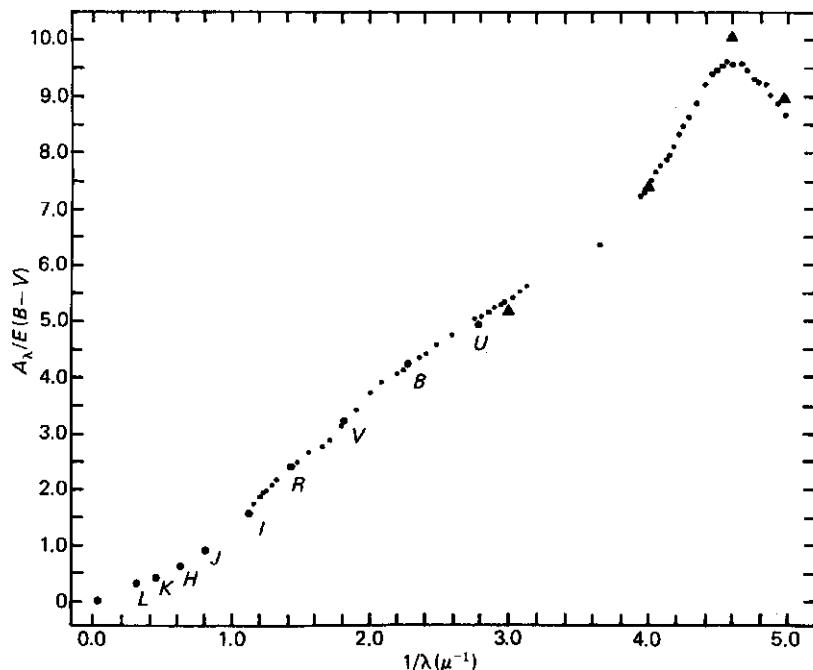
$$\bar{E}_{B-V}(b) = 0.06 \operatorname{cosec}|b| - 0.06$$

(Woltjer, L., *Astron. Astrophys.*, **42**, 109, 1975).

A more general expression giving an estimate of interstellar absorption can be found in de Vaucouleurs *et al.*, *Second Reference Catalogue of Bright Galaxies*, University of Texas Press, 1976.

*The interstellar reddening law*

$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	$1/\lambda(\mu^{-1})$	$A_\lambda/E(B-V)$	$\lambda(\text{\AA})$	$1/\lambda(\mu^{-1})$	$A_\lambda/E(B-V)$
3200	3.13	5.58	5556	1.80	3.12
3250	3.08	5.47	5840	1.71	2.91
3300	3.03	5.38	6050	1.65	2.80
3350	2.98	5.32	6436	1.55	2.65
3400	2.94	5.26	6790	1.47	2.48
3448	2.90	5.18	7100	1.41	2.35
3509	2.85	5.10	7550	1.32	2.18
3571	2.80	5.06	7780	1.28	2.06
3636	2.75	4.99	8090	1.24	1.98
3862	2.59	4.72	8188	1.22	1.94
4036	2.48	4.56	8370	1.20	1.88
4167	2.40	4.39	8446	1.18	1.85
4255	2.35	4.33	8710	1.15	1.72
4464	2.24	4.12	9700	1.03	1.50
4566	2.19	4.04	9832	1.02	1.48
4780	2.09	3.91	10 256	0.95	1.36
5000	2.00	3.70	10 610	0.94	1.28
5263	1.90	3.41	10 796	0.93	1.26
5480	1.82	3.20	10 870	0.92	1.22



(Courtesy of R. Schild, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics.)

### **Absolute magnitude**

---

The absolute magnitude  $M$  of a star is the apparent magnitude it would have if placed at a distance of 10 parsecs:

$$m - M = 5 \log D - 5 + A.$$

where  $D$  is the distance to the star in parsecs and  $A$  is a correction for interstellar absorption expressed in magnitude units.  $m - M \equiv$  distance modulus. Solving for  $D$ :

$$D = 10^{[1+(m-M-A)/5]}.$$


---

### **Moon, night sky, sun, and planetary brightness**

---

Moon

$$V(R, \phi) = 0.23 + 5 \log R - 2.5 \log P(\phi),$$

$V(R, \phi)$  = the apparent  $V$  magnitude of the Moon,

$R$  = the observer–Moon distance in AU, and

$\phi$  = the phase angle = angle between the Sun and the Earth as seen from the Moon.

$$P(0^\circ) = 1.000, \quad P(40^\circ) = 0.377, \quad P(80^\circ) = 0.127,$$

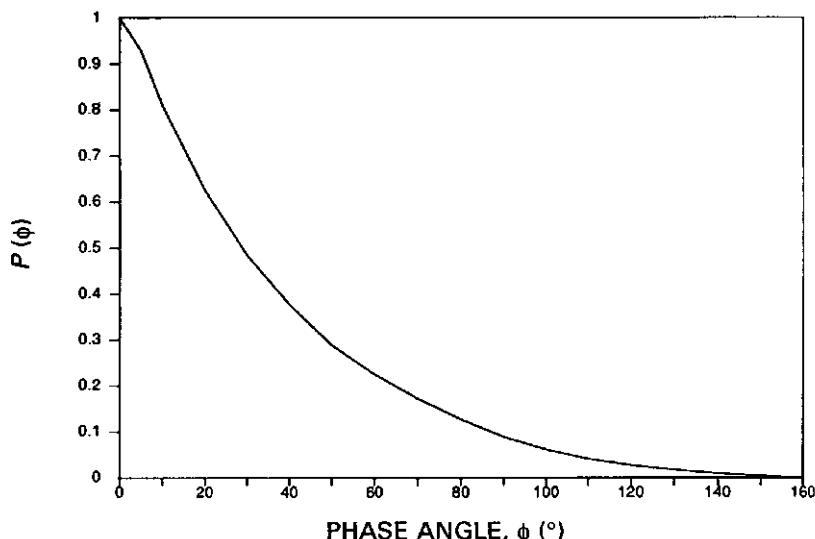
$$P(120^\circ) = 0.027, \quad P(160^\circ) = 0.001.$$

Mean lunar distance =  $2.570 \times 10^{-3}$  AU.

The  $V$  magnitude of the Moon at the Earth at opposition (full moon) is  $-12.73$ .

(Adapted from Wertz, J.R., *Spacecraft Attitude Determination and Control*, D. Reidel, 1980)

The Moon's phase law.



*Night sky*

Total brightness (zenith, mean sky)  $\approx 1$  ( $m_v = 22.5$ ) star arcsec $^{-2}$ .

*Sun*

<i>Apparent magnitude</i>	<i>Color index</i>	<i>Absolute magnitude</i>
$U = -26.06$	$U - B = +0.10$	$M_U = +5.51$
$B = -26.16$	$B - V = +0.62$	$M_B = +5.41$
$V = -26.78$	$BC = -0.07$	$M_V = +4.79$
$m_b = -26.85$		$M_b = +4.72$

*Planetary brightness*

The change in the brightness of a planet because of the changing distance from the Sun ( $r$ ) and the Earth ( $\Delta$ ) is given by:

$$V = V(1, 0) + 5 \log(r\Delta) + \alpha(p),$$

where

$V(1, 0)$  = visual magnitude of planet reduced to a distance of 1 AU from both the Sun and the Earth and phase angle  $p = 0$ .

$\alpha$  = phase law; change of planet brightness with  $p$ ,

$p$  = phase angle; angle between Sun and Earth seen from the planet

$$\cos p = \frac{r^2 + \Delta^2 - R^2}{2r\Delta},$$

where  $R$  = distance from the Earth to the Sun.

<i>Planet</i>	$V(1, 0)^{(a)}$	$\alpha^{(b)}$
Mercury	-0.42 mag	$+0.027p + 2.2 \times 10^{-13}p^6$
Venus	-4.40	$+0.013p + 4.2 \times 10^{-7}p^3$
Mars	-1.52	$+0.016p$
Jupiter	-9.40	$+0.014p$
Saturn	-8.88	$+0.044L - 2.6 \sin B + 1.2 \sin^2 B$
Uranus	-7.19	$+0.001p$
Neptune	-6.87	$+0.001p$

$p$  in degrees;  $L$  = Saturnicentric ring longitude difference of Sun and Earth;

$B$  = Saturnicentric ring latitude of Earth  $0^\circ < L < 6^\circ, 0^\circ < |B| < 27^\circ$ .

<sup>(a)</sup> (from the *The Nautical Almanac*)

<sup>(b)</sup> (from Allen, C.W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, The Athlone Press, University of London, 1973)

## Spherical astronomy

---

### Time

The *Julian Date* (JD) is a continuous count of days, including the fraction of a day, from 1 January 4713 BC (= -4712 January 1), Greenwich mean noon (= 12h UT). For Example, AD 1978 January 1, 0h UT is JD 2443509.5 and AD 1978 July 21, 15h UT, is JD 2443711.125.

Conversion of the Gregorian calendar date to the Julian date for years AD 1801-2099 can be carried out with the following formula:

$$JD = 367K - \langle (7(K + \langle (M + 9)/12 \rangle)) / 4 \rangle + \langle (275M) / 9 \rangle + I + 1721013.5 + UT/24 - 0.5\text{sign}(100K + M - 190002.5) + 0.5$$

where K is the year ( $1801 \leq K \leq 2099$ ), M is the month ( $1 \leq M \leq 12$ ), I is the day of the month ( $1 \leq I \leq 31$ ), and UT is the universal time in hours (" $\leq$ " means "less than or equal to"). The last two terms in the formula add up to zero for all dates after 1900 February 28, so these two terms can be omitted for subsequent dates. This formula makes use of the sign and truncation functions described below:

The sign function serves to extract the algebraic sign from a number.  
Examples:  $\text{sign}(247) = 1$ ;  $\text{sign}(-6.28) = -1$ .

The truncation function  $\langle \cdot \rangle$  extracts the integral part of a number.  
Examples:  $\langle 17.835 \rangle = 17$ ;  $\langle -3.14 \rangle = -3$ .

Example: Compute the JD corresponding to 1877 August 11, 7h30m UT.

Substituting  $K = 1877$ ,  $M = 8$ ,  $I = 11$  and  $UT = 7.5$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} JD &= 688859 - 3286 + 244 + 11 + 1721013.5 + 0.3125 + 0.5 + 0.5 \\ &= 2406842.8125 \end{aligned}$$

The formula given above was taken from the U.S. Naval Observatory's no-longer-published *Almanac for Computers for year 1990*.

A *Modified Julian Date* (MJD) is defined as:

$$MJD = JD - 2400000.5$$

The Julian Dates for some Besselian years:

B.Y.	Julian Date	B.Y.	Julian Date
B1850.0	2396758.203	B2000.0	2451544.533
B1900.0	2415020.313	B2050.0	2469806.643
B1950.0	2433282.423	B2100.0	2488068.753

*Time zones*

Time Zone	Add the following to UT
International Date Line East (IDLE)	
New Zealand Standard Time (NZST)	+12 hours
New Zealand Time (NZT)	
Guam Standard Time (GST)	
East Australian Standard Time (EAST)	+10 hours
Japan Standard Time (JST)	+9 hours
China Coast Time (CCT)	+8 hours
West Australian Standard Time (WAST)	+7 hours
India Standard Time (IST)	+5.5 hours
Russian Zone 3	+4 hours
Baghdad Time (BT)	
Russian Zone 2	+3 hours
Eastern European Time (EET)	
Russian Zone 1	+2 hours
Central European Time (CET)	
Middle European Time (MET)	+1 hours
Swedish Winter Time (SWT)	
Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)	
Universal Time (UT)	0 hours
Western European Time (WET)	
West African Time (WAT)	-1 hours
Atlantic Standard Time (AST)	-4 hours
Eastern Standard Time (EST)	-5 hours
Central Standard Time (CST)	-6 hours
Mountain Standard Time (MST)	-7 hours
Pacific Standard Time (PST)	-8 hours
Alaskan Standard Time (AkST)	-9 hours
Hawaiian Standard Time (HST)	-10 hours
International Date Line West (IDLW)	-12 hours

A world time zone map can be found at <http://www.worldtimezone.com/>.

### *Definitions*

One *Besselian year* is the period of a complete circuit of the mean Sun in right ascension beginning at the instant when its right ascension is 18<sup>h</sup>40<sup>m</sup>. The epochs to which stellar coordinates are referred are in Besselian year numbers. (The epoch 1950.0 started December 31, 1949 at 2209 UT.)

A *mean sidereal day* is the interval between two successive upper culminations or transits of the vernal equinox.

The *civil or mean solar day* is  $\frac{1}{365.2422}$  of a *tropical year*, the interval between two successive passages of the Sun through the vernal equinox.

*Sidereal time* is the hour angle of the vernal equinox.

*Apparent solar time* is the local hour angle of the Sun, expressed in hours, plus 12 hours.

*Mean solar time* is the local hour angle, plus 12 hours, of a fictitious *mean Sun* which moves along the equator at a constant rate equal to the average annual rate of the Sun.

*Mean solar time* at 0° longitude is called *universal time* (UT formerly *Greenwich mean time* or *GMT*).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{In 1999: } 1 \text{ mean solar day} &= 1.002\,737\,090\,35 \quad \text{mean sidereal days} \\ &= 24^{\text{h}}\,03^{\text{m}}\,56^{\text{s}}.555\,37 \text{ of mean sidereal time} \\ 1 \text{ mean sidereal day} &= 0.997\,269\,566\,33 \quad \text{mean solar days} \\ &= 23^{\text{h}}\,65^{\text{m}}\,04^{\text{s}}.090\,53 \text{ of mean solar time} \end{aligned}$$

The name *Greenwich mean time* (*GMT*) is not used in astronomy since it is ambiguous and is now used, in the sense of *UTC* in addition to the earlier sense of *UT*; prior to 1925 it was reckoned for astronomical purposes from *Greenwich mean noon* (12<sup>h</sup> *UT*).

### *Relationships with local time and hour angle*

The following general relationships are used:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Local mean solar time} &= \text{universal time} + \text{east longitude}. \\ \text{Local mean sideral time} &= \text{Greenwich mean sidereal time} + \text{east longitude} \\ \text{Local apparent sidereal time} &= \text{local mean sidereal time} + \text{equation of equinoxes} \\ &= \text{Greenwich apparent sidereal time} + \text{east longitude}. \\ \text{Local hour angle} &= \text{local apparent sidereal time} - \text{apparent right ascension} \\ &= \text{local mean sidereal time} - (\text{apparent right ascension} - \text{equation of equinoxes}). \end{aligned}$$

A further small correction for the effect of polar motion is required in the production of very precise observations.

*Notation for time-scales*

A summary of the notation for time-scales and related quantities used in the *Astronomical Almanac* is given below. Additional information is given in the *Supplement to the Almanac*.

UT = UT1; universal time; counted from 0<sup>h</sup> at midnight; unit is mean solar day.

UT0 local approximation to universal time; not corrected for polar motion.

GMST Greenwich mean sidereal time; GHA of mean equinox of date.

GAST Greenwich apparent sidereal time; GHA of true equinox of date.

TAI international atomic time; unit is the SI second.

UTC coordinated universal time; differs from TAI by an integral number of seconds, and is the basis of most radio time signals and legal time systems.

$\Delta\text{UT}$  = UT–UTC; increment to be applied to UTC to give UT.

DUT = predicted value of  $\Delta\text{UT}$ , rounded to 0<sup>s</sup>.1, given in some radio time signals.

ET ephemeris time; was used in dynamical theories and in the Almanac from 1960–83; but is now replaced by TDT and TDB.

TDT terrestrial dynamical time; used as time-scale of ephemerides for observations from the Earth's surface. TDT = TAI + 32<sup>s</sup>.184.

TDB barycentric dynamical time; used as time-scale of ephemerides referred to the barycenter of the solar system.

$\Delta\text{T}$  = ET–UT (prior to 1984); increment to be applied to UT to give ET.

$\Delta\text{T}$  = TDT–UT (1984 onwards); increment to be applied to UT to give TDT.

$\Delta\text{T}$  = TAI + 32<sup>s</sup>.184 – UT.

$\Delta\text{AT}$  = TAI–UTC; increment to be applied to UTC to give TAI.

$\Delta\text{ET}$  = ET–UTC; increment to be applied to UTC to give ET.

$\Delta\text{TT}$  = TDT–UTC; increment to be applied to UTC to give TDT.

For most purposes. ET up to 1983 December 31 and TDT from 1984 January 1 can be regarded as a continuous time-scale. Values of  $\Delta\text{T}$  for the years 1620 onwards are given in the *Astronomical Almanac*.

From the Astronomical Almanac:

The differences between the terrestrial and barycentric dynamical timescales (due to the variations in gravitational potential around the Earth's orbit) are given by:

$$\text{TDB} = \text{TDT} + 0^s.001\,658 \sin g + 0^s.000\,014 \sin 2g$$

$$g = 357^\circ.53 + 0^\circ.985\,600\,28(\text{JD} - 245\,1545.0)$$

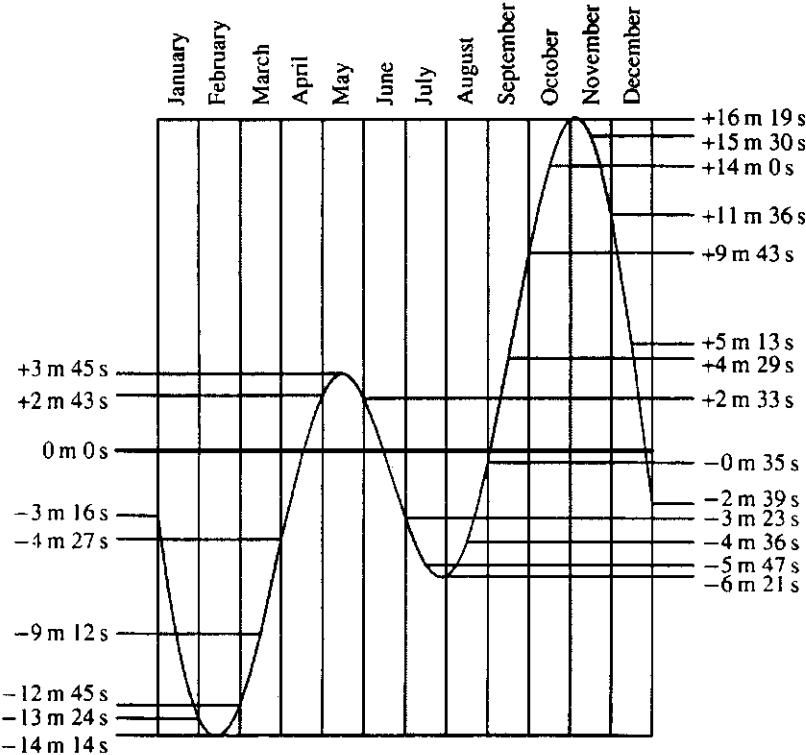
where higher-order terms are neglected and  $g$  is the mean anomaly of the Earth in its orbit around the Sun.

### *Equation of time*

The difference between local mean time (LMT) and local apparent solar time (LAT) is known as the equation of time (shown below), and is given by

$$\text{LAT} = \text{LHA Sun} + 12^{\text{h}} = \text{LMT} + \text{equation of time},$$

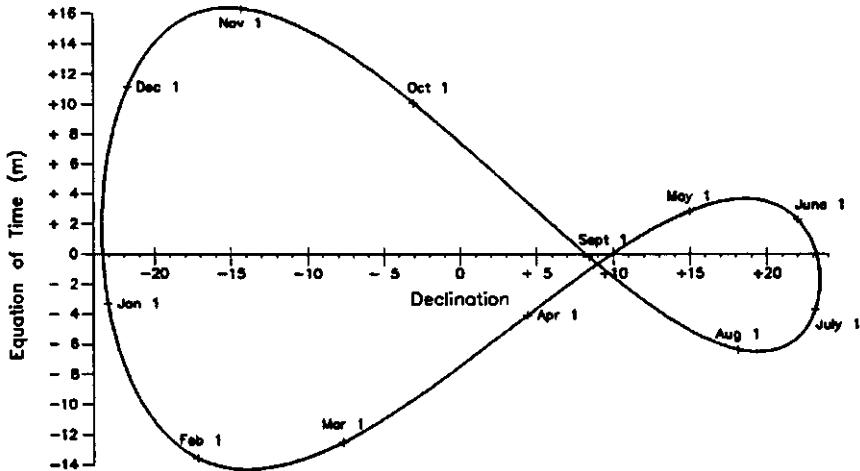
where LHA Sun is the local hour angle of the Sun.



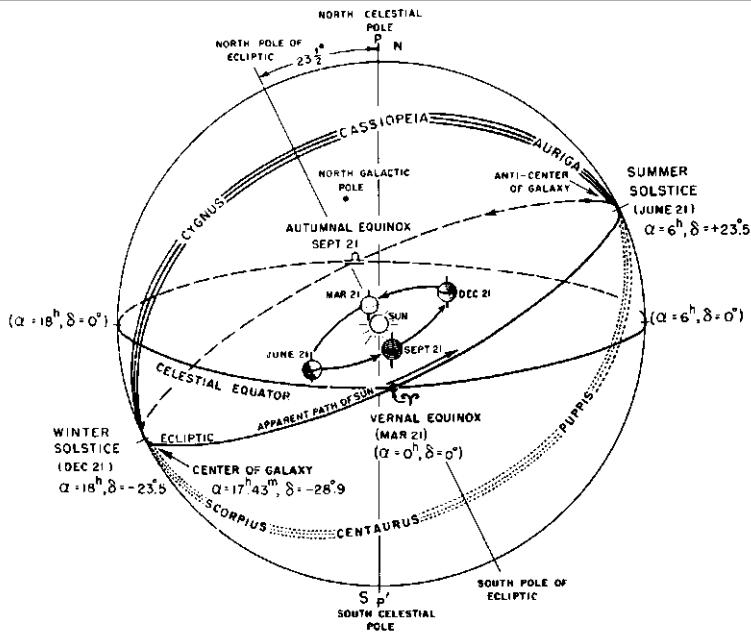
(From the *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*)

### Analemma curve

Plotting the position of the apparent Sun relative to the mean Sun (which moves uniformly along the equator) produces the *Analemma curve*. (From the *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*.)

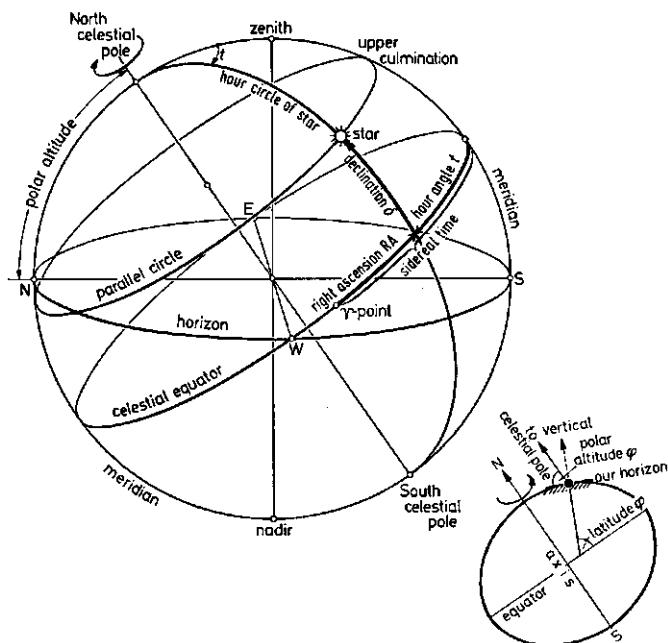


### The celestial sphere



(Adapted from Valley, S.L., ed., *Handbook of Geophysics and Space Environment*, AFCRL, 1965.)

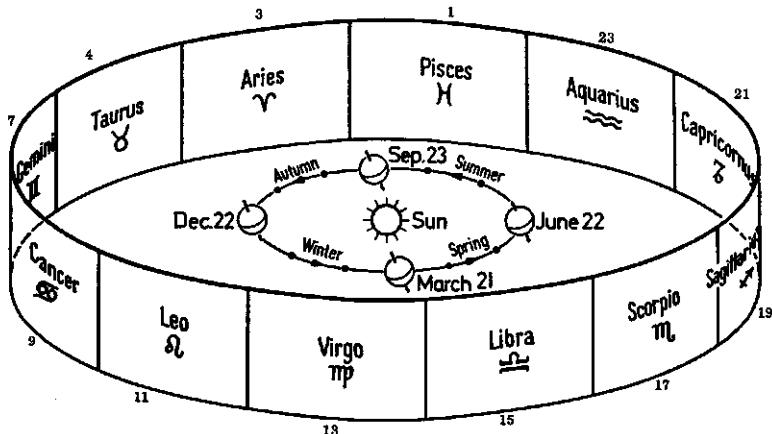
## Celestial Coordinates



(Unsoeld, A., *The New Cosmos*, Springer-Verlag, 1969, with permission.)

## The Zodiac

Path of the Earth around the Sun, seasons, and Zodiac. Perihelion is 2 January and aphelion is 2 July. Right ascension in hours of each constellation is given. (Adapted from Unsoeld, A., *The New Cosmos*, Springer-Verlag, 1969.)



### Astronomical coordinate transformations

---

#### Horizon-equatorial (celestial) systems

$$\begin{aligned}\cos h \sin A &= +\cos \delta \sin t, \\ \cos h \cos A &= -\sin \delta \cos \varphi + \cos \delta \cos t \sin \varphi, \\ \sin h &= \sin \delta \sin \varphi + \cos \delta \cos t \cos \varphi, \\ \cos \delta \sin t &= \cos \alpha \sin A, \\ \cos \delta \cos t &= \sin h \cos \varphi + \cos h \cos A \sin \varphi, \\ \sin \delta &= \sin h \sin \varphi - \cos h \cos A \cos \varphi,\end{aligned}$$

$t$  = local sidereal time –  $\alpha$  = local hour angle,  
 $A$  = azimuth, toward West from South,  
 $h$  = altitude,  
 $\varphi$  = observer's latitude,  
 $\alpha$  = right ascension,  
 $\delta$  = declination.

#### Ecliptic-equatorial (celestial) systems

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \delta \cos \alpha &= \cos \beta \cos \lambda, \\ \cos \delta \sin \alpha &= \cos \beta \sin \lambda \cos \varepsilon - \sin \beta \sin \varepsilon, \\ \sin \delta &= \cos \beta \sin \lambda \sin \varepsilon + \sin \beta \cos \varepsilon, \\ \cos \beta \cos \lambda &= \cos \delta \cos \alpha, \\ \cos \beta \sin \lambda &= \cos \delta \sin \alpha \cos \varepsilon + \sin \delta \sin \varepsilon, \\ \sin \beta &= \sin \delta \cos \varepsilon - \cos \delta \sin \alpha \sin \varepsilon, \\ \alpha &= \text{right ascension}, \delta = \text{declination}, \\ \lambda &= \text{ecliptic longitude}, \beta = \text{ecliptic latitude}, \\ \varepsilon &= \text{obliquity of the ecliptic} = 23^\circ 27' 8''.26 - 46''.845T \\ &\quad - 0''.0059T^2 + 0''.00181T^3\end{aligned}$$

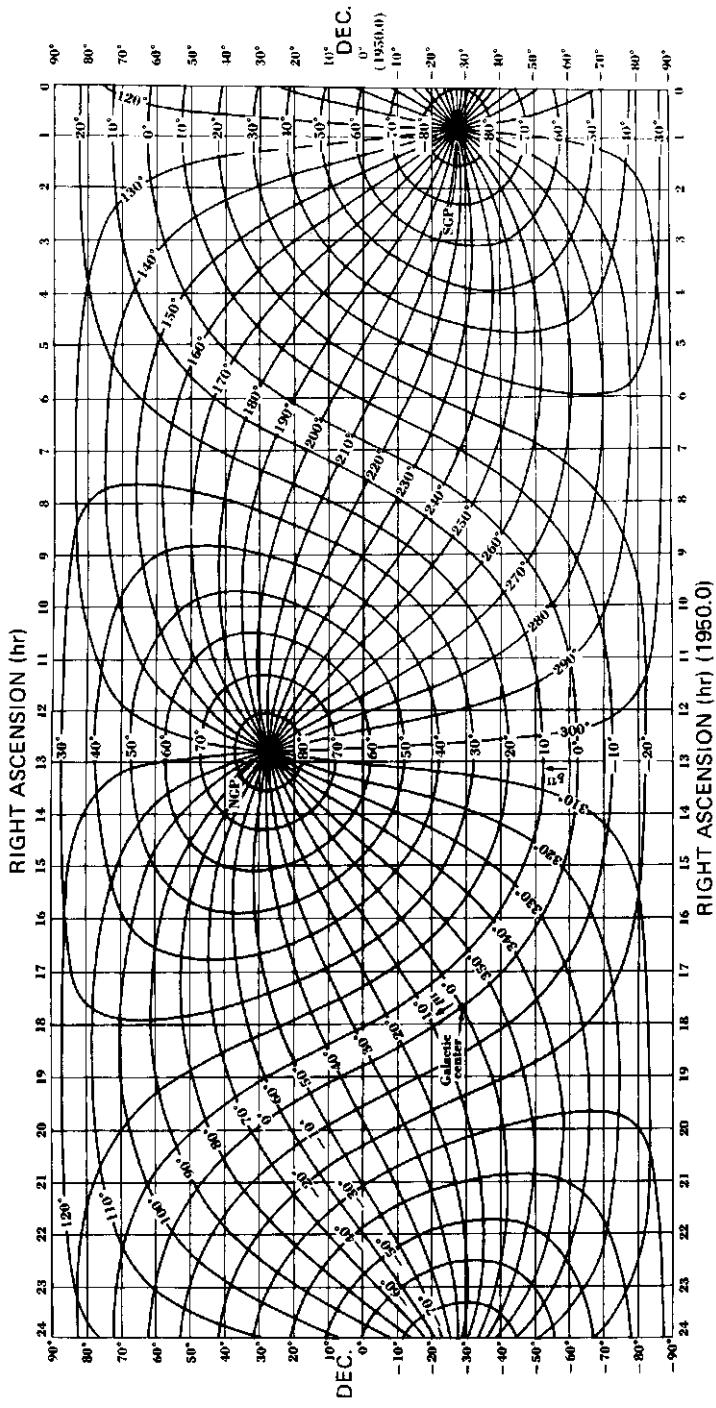
where  $T$  is the time in centuries from 1900.

#### Galactic-equatorial (celestial) systems

$$\begin{aligned}\cos b^{II} \cos(l^{II} - 33^\circ) &= \cos \delta \cos(\alpha - 282.25^\circ) \\ \cos b^{II} \sin(l^{II} - 33^\circ) &= \cos \delta \sin(\alpha - 282.25^\circ) \cos 62.6^\circ + \sin \delta \sin 62.6^\circ, \\ \sin b^{II} &= \sin \delta \cos 62.6^\circ - \cos \delta \sin(\alpha - 282.25^\circ) \sin 62.6^\circ, \\ \cos \delta \sin(\alpha - 282.25^\circ) &= \cos b^{II} \sin(l^{II} - 33^\circ) \cos 62.6^\circ - \sin b^{II} \sin 62.6^\circ, \\ \sin \delta &= \cos b^{II} \sin(l^{II} - 33^\circ) \sin 62.6^\circ + \sin b^{II} \cos 62.6^\circ, \\ l^{II} &= \text{new galactic longitude}, \\ b^{II} &= \text{new galactic latitude}, \\ \alpha &= \text{right ascension (1950.0)}, \\ \delta &= \text{declination (1950.0)}, \\ \text{For example, } l^{II} = b^{II} = 0 : \alpha &= 17^h 42^m .4, \delta = -28^\circ 55' \text{ (1950.0)}; \\ b^{II} &= +90.0, \text{ galactic north pole: } \alpha = 12^h 49^m, \delta = +27^\circ .4 \text{ (1950.0).}\end{aligned}$$

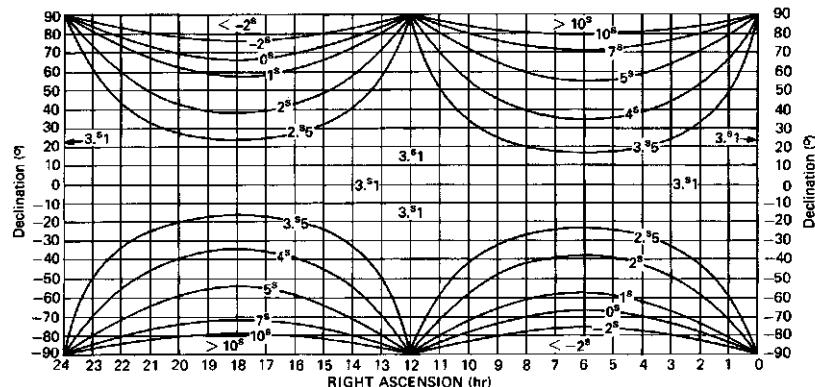
*Galactic-equatorial (celestial) systems (cont.)*

Chart for conversion of equatorial (1950.0) coordinates ( $\Pi\beta^{\text{II}}$ ) or vice versa.  
 (Kraus, J.D., *Radio Astronomy*, 2nd edn., with permission.)

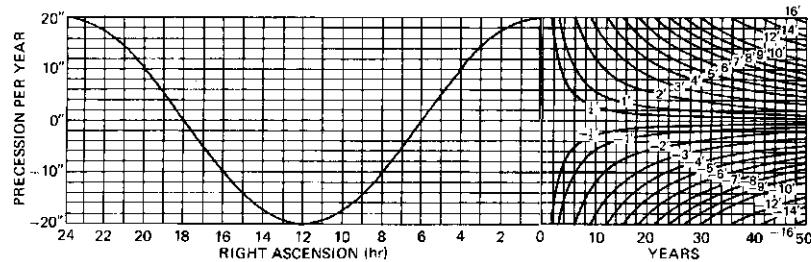


## *Approximate reduction of astronomical coordinates*

Right-ascension precession in seconds of time per year.



Declination precession in seconds of arc per year (*left*) and minutes of arc as a function of interval in years (*right*).



*Precession charts:* The charts show the precession in right ascension in seconds of time per year and of declination in seconds of arc per year as a function of position as given by the relations

$$\Delta\alpha = 3^s.07 + 1^s.34 \sin \alpha \tan \delta \quad \text{per year},$$

The lower chart also indicates the precession in declination in minutes of arc as a function of the interval in years. For example, to find the precession for an object at RA =  $04^{\text{h}}00^{\text{m}}$  for an 18-year interval one enters the chart at 4 hr, finding a precession of 10 sec of arc per year. Then moving horizontally to the right-hand chart to a point above 18 years the precession is found to be 3 min of arc for the 18-year interval.

The charts are useful for approximate precession determinations for intervals between epochs 1800.0 to 2000.0. (Kraus, J.D., *Radio Astronomy*, 2nd edn., with permission.)

### **Reduction for precession – approximate formulae**

---

These formulae are from *The Astronomical Almanac*, U.S. Government Printing Office. See the latest volume for procedures for the complete reduction of celestial coordinates, including proper motion, aberration, light-deflection, parallax, precession and nutation.

Approximate formulae for the reduction of coordinates and orbital elements referred to the mean equinox and equator or ecliptic of date ( $t$ ) are as follows:

For reduction to J2000.0

$$\alpha_0 = \alpha - M - N \sin \alpha_m \tan \delta_m$$

$$\delta_0 = \delta - N \cos \alpha_m$$

$$\lambda_0 = \lambda - a + b \cos(\lambda + c') \tan \beta_0$$

$$\beta_0 = \beta - b \sin(\lambda + c')$$

$\alpha, \delta$  = right ascension and declination

$\lambda, \beta$  = ecliptic longitude and latitude

For reduction from J2000.0

$$\alpha = \alpha_0 + M + N \sin \alpha_m \tan \delta_m$$

$$\delta = \delta_0 + N \cos \alpha_m$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + a - b \cos(\lambda_0 + c) \tan \beta$$

$$\beta = \beta_0 + b \sin(\lambda_0 + c)$$

The subscript zero refers to epoch J2000.0 and  $\alpha_m, \delta_m$  to the mean epoch; with sufficient accuracy:

$$\alpha_m = \alpha - \frac{1}{2}(M + N \sin \alpha \tan \delta)$$

$$\delta_m = \delta - \frac{1}{2}N \cos \alpha_m$$

or

$$\alpha_m = \alpha_0 + \frac{1}{2}(M + N \sin \alpha_0 \tan \delta_0)$$

$$\delta_m = \delta_0 + \frac{1}{2}N \cos \alpha_m$$

The precessional constants  $M, N$ , etc., are given by:

$$M = 1^\circ.281\,2323T + 0^\circ.000\,3879T^2 + 0^\circ.000\,0101T^3$$

$$N = 0^\circ.556\,7530T - 0^\circ.000\,1185T^2 - 0^\circ.000\,0116T^3$$

$$a = 1^\circ.396\,971T + 0^\circ.000\,3086T^2$$

$$b = 0^\circ.013\,056T - 0^\circ.000\,0092T^2$$

$$c = 5^\circ.123\,62 + 0^\circ.241\,614T + 0^\circ.000\,1122T^2$$

$$c' = 5^\circ.123\,62 - 1^\circ.155\,358T - 0^\circ.000\,1964T^2$$

where  $T = (t - 2000.0)/100 = (\text{JD} - 245\,1545.0)/36\,525$

---

## Major ground-based astronomical telescopes

### Reflecting telescopes

Name	Location	Size	Date	Latitude, Longitude, Altitude
Gran Telescopio de Canarias (GTC)	La Palma, Spain	10	2003	19 49 N, 17 54 W, 2400
Keck Telescope I	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	10	1991	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4150
Keck Telescope II	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	10	1996	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4150
Hobby-Eberly Telescope (HET)	Mt. Fowlkes, Texas	9.1	1997	30 41 N, 104 01 W, 2002
South African Large Telescope (SALT)	Sutherland, S. Africa	9.1	2004	32 23 S, 20 49 E, 1798
Large Binocular Telescope (LBT)	Mt. Graham, Arizona	2x8.4	2004	32 42 N, 109 51 W, 3170
Subaru Telescope	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	8.2	1999	19 50 N, 155 29 W, 4139
Antu (VLT 1) (VLT: Very Large Telescope)	Cerro Paranal, Chile	8.2	1998	24 38 S, 70 24 W, 2635
Kueyen (VLT 2)	Cerro Paranal, Chile	8.2	1999	24 38 S, 70 24 W, 2635
Melipal (VLT 3)	Cerro Paranal, Chile	8.2	2000	24 38 S, 70 24 W, 2635
Yepun (VLT 4)	Cerro Paranal, Chile	8.2	2000	24 38 S, 70 24 W, 2635
Gemini Telescope North	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	8.1	1999	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4214
Gemini Telescope South	Cerro Pachon, Chile	8.1	2001	30 14 S, 70 43 W, 2715
MMT Observatory 6.5 m Telescope	Mt Hopkins, Arizona	6.5	2000	31 41 N, 110 53 W, 2606
Walter Baade Telescope	Las Campanas, Chile	6.5	2000	29 00 S, 70 42 W, 2300
Landon Clay telescope	Las Campanas, Chile	6.5	2002	29 00 S, 70 42 W, 2300
Bolshoi Teleskop Azimutal'ny (BTA)	Mount Pastukhov, Russia	6.0	1975	43 39 N, 41 26 E, 2070
200-in Hale Telescope	Mount Palomar, CA	5.1	1948	33 21 N, 116 52 W, 1706
William Herschel Telescope (WHT)	La Palma, Spain	4.2	1987	28 46 N, 17 53 W, 2332
SOAR 4-m Telescope	Cerro Pachon, Chile	4.2	2002	30 21 S, 70 49 W, 2701
Victor M. Blanco Telescope (CTIO 4 m)	Cerro Tololo, Chile	4.0	1976	30 10 S, 70 49 W, 2215
Large Sky Area Multi-Object Fiber Spectroscopic Telescope (LAMOST)	Xinglong Station, China	40	2004	40 24 N, 117 34 E, 916
Anglo-Australian Telescope (AAT)	Siding Spring, Australia	3.9	1975	31 17 S, 149 04 E, 1130
Nicholas U. Mayall Reflector (Kitt Peak 4 m)	Kitt Peak, Arizona	3.8	1973	31 58 N, 111 36 W, 2120
UK Infrared Telescope (UKIRT 3.8 m)	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	3.8	1978	19 50 N, 155 28 W, 4194
Adv. Electro-Optical System Telescope	Haleakala, Hawaii	3.7	2000	20 42 N, 156 15 W, 3058
Canada-France-Hawaii Telescope (CFHT)	Mauna Kea, Hawaii	3.6	1979	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4200
Telescopio Nazionale Galileo (Galileo 3.6 m)	La Palma, Spain	3.6	1998	28 45 N, 17 54 W, 2370
ESO 3.6 m Telescope	La Silla, Chile	3.6	1977	29 15 S, 70 43 W, 2387

Size: Clear aperture in meters.

Date: date of completion, dedication ceremony, "first light", or first scientific use.

Latitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Longitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Altitude: in meters above sea level.

(Adapted from *Sky & Telescope*, G. Schilling, August 2000, Sky Publishing Company)

## Major ground-based astronomical telescopes (cont.)

### *Refracting telescopes*

Name	Location	Size	Date	Latitude, Longitude, Altitude
Yerkes Observatory, University of Chicago	Williams Bay, WI	101	1897	42 34 N, 83 33 W, 334
36-inch Refractor, Lick Observatory	Mt. Hamilton, CA	89.5	1888	37 20 N, 121 39 W, 1284
Observatoire de Paris	Meudon, France	83	1889	48 48 N, 02 14 E, 162
Zentralinstitut fuer Astrophysik	Potsdam, Germany	80	1889	52 23 N, 13 04 E, 107
The Thaw Refractor, Allegheny Observatory	Pittsburgh, PA	76	1914	40 29 N, 80 01 W, 370
Lunette Bischoffsheim, Observatoire de Nice	Mont Gros, France	74	1886	43 43 N, 07 18 E, 376
28-inch Visual Refractor, Old Roy. Green. Obs.	Greenwich, UK	71	1894	51 29 N, 00 00, 47
Gross Refraktor, Archenhold- Sternwarte	Berlin, Germany	68	1896	52 29 N, 13 29 E, 41
Gross Refraktor, Institut fuer Astronomie	Vienna, Austria	67	1880	48 14 N, 16 20 E, 240
The Innes Telescope	Johannesburg, South Africa	67	1925	26 11 S, 28 04 E, 1806
Leander McCormick Observatory	Charlottesville, VA	67	1883	38 02 N, 78 31 W, 259
26-inch Equatorial, U.S. Naval Observatory	Washington, DC	66	1873	38 55 N, 77 04 W, 92
The Thompson Refractor, Royal Greenwich Obs.	Hailsham, UK	66	1899	50 52 N, 00 20 E, 34
Yale-Columbia Refractor	Mt. Stromlo, Australia	66	1925	35 19 S, 149 00 E, 769

Size: Clear aperture in centimeters.

Date: date of completion, dedication ceremony, "first light", or first scientific use.

Latitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Longitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Altitude: in meters above sea level.

(Adapted from *Sky & Telescope*, Classen, J. & Sperling, N., 61, 1981 Sky Publishing Company)

**Major ground-based astronomical telescopes (cont.)***Schmidt telescopes*

Name	Location	Size	Date	Latitude, Longitude, Altitude
2-meter Telescope (Tautenberg Schmidt)	Tautenberg, Germany	1.3	1960	50 59 N, 11 43 E, 331
Oschin 48 inch Telescope	Palomar Mt., CA	1.2	1948	33 21 N, 116 51 W, 1706
U.K. Schmidt Telescope Unit (U.K. Schmidt)	Siding Spring Mt., Australia	1.2	1973	31 16 S, 149 04 E, 1145
Kiso Schmidt Telescope	Kiso, Japan	1.0	1975	35 48 N, 137 38 E, 1130
3TA-10 Schmidt Telescope (Byurakan Schmidt)	Mt. Aragatz, Armenia	1.0	1961	40 20 N, 44 30 E, 1450
Kvistaberg Schmidt Telescope (Uppsala Schmidt)	Kvistaberg, Sweden	1.0	1963	59 30 N, 17 36 E, 33
ESO 1 meter Schmidt	La Silla, Chile	1.0	1972	29 15 S, 70 44 W, 2318
Venezuela 1-meter Schmidt	Merida, Venezuela	1.0	1978	8 47 N, 70 52 W, 3610
Telescope de Schmidt (Calern Schmidt)	Grasse, France	0.9	1981	43 45 N, 6 56 E, 1270
Telescope Combine de Schmidt Schmidt Telescope	Brussels, Belgium	0.8	1958	50 48 N, 4 21 E, 105
Calar-Alto-Schmidtspiegel	Riga, Latvia	0.8	1968	56 47 N, 24 24 E, 75
	Calar Alto, Spain	0.8	1980	37 13 N, 2 33 W, 2168

Size: Clear aperture in meters.

Date: date of completion, dedication ceremony, "first light", or first scientific use.

Latitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Longitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Altitude: in meters above sea level.

(Adapted from *Sky & Telescope*, G. Schilling, August 2000, Sky Publishing Company)

## Major ground-based astronomical telescopes (cont.)

<i>Radio telescopes</i>		Name	Location	Aperture	Frequency Range (GHz)	Latitude, Longitude, Altitude
Name	Location					
Arecibo Observatory	Arecibo, Puerto Rico	305 m dish*	0.05 - 8	18 21 N, 66 45 W, 365		
MPI fuer Radioastronomie	Effelsberg, Germany	100 m dish	0.6 - 15	50 32 N, 06 53 E, 366		
Westerbork Synthesis Radio Observatory	Hooghalen, Netherlands	14 25 m dishes	0.3, 1.4, 8	52 55 N, 06 36 E, 5		
Radio Astronomy Observatory, Parkes	New South Wales, Aus.	64 m	0.5 - 5	33 00 S, 148 16 E, 392		
Lovell Telescope	Jodrell Bank, UK	76 m dish	0.0003 - 4	53 14 N, 02 18 W, 78		
Mullard Radio Astronomy Observatory	Cambridge, UK	8 el. interferom.	2.7, 5, 15	52 10 N, 00 03 E, 17		
Owens Valley Radio Observatory	Big Pine, California	40 m dish	0.5 - 12	37 14 N, 118 17 W, 1216		
Millimeter-Wavelength Array		6 10.4 m dishes	mm			
Solar Array		2 27 m dishes	1 - 18			
National Radio Astronomy Observatory	Greenbank, WV	100 m dish	1 - 50	38 26 N, 79 50 W, 825		
NRAO Very Large Array (VLA)	San Augustin, NM	27 25 m dishes	1.4, 1.7, 5, 15, 24	34 05 N, 107 37 W, 2124		
NRAO Very Long Baseline Array (VLBA)	Virgin Islands - Hw	10 25 m dishes	0.3 - 100	— —		
James Clerk Maxwell Telescope (JCMT)	Mauna Kea, Hw	15 m dish	230, 345, 460, 690, 810	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4092		
Submillimeter Array (SMA)	Mauna Kea, Hw	86 m dishes	180 - 900	19 49 N, 155 28 W, 4206		
IRAM 30m Telescope	Pico Veleta, Spain	30 m dish	80.1 - 115.5	37 04 N, 3 24 W, 2920		
Nobeyama 45 m Telescope	Nobeyama, Japan	45 m dish	20 - 230	35 56 N, 138 29 E, 1350		
Nobeyama Millimeter Array (NMA)	Nobeyama, Japan	6 10 m dishes	100, 150, 230	35 56 N, 138 29 E, 1350		
Plateau de Bure Interferometer	Plateau de Bure, Fr.	5 15 m dishes	80 - 115	44 38 N, 05 54 E, 2560		
			210 - 245			

### Major ground-based astronomical telescopes (cont.)

<i>Radio telescopes</i>	
Name	Location
The Large Millimeter Telescope (LMT)** Berkeley Illinois Maryland Association (BIMA)	Sierra Negra, Mexico Hat Creek, CA
Australia Telescope Compact Array, Culgoora The Five College Radio Astronomy Observatory DRAO Synthesis Telescope	New South Wales, Aus. New Salem, MA Penticton, B.C.

Size: Clear aperture in centimeters.

Date: date of completion ceremony, "first light", or first scientific use.

Latitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Longitude: in degrees and arc minutes.

Altitude: in meters above sea level.

\* Declination range:  $-2^\circ$  to  $+38^\circ$

\*\* under construction; completion 2003.

**The Hubble Space Telescope (HST)**

(Material for this section was taken from the Hubble Space Telescope Primer, 2002.)

---

The Hubble Space Telescope (HST) is managed by the Space Telescope science Institute (STScI):

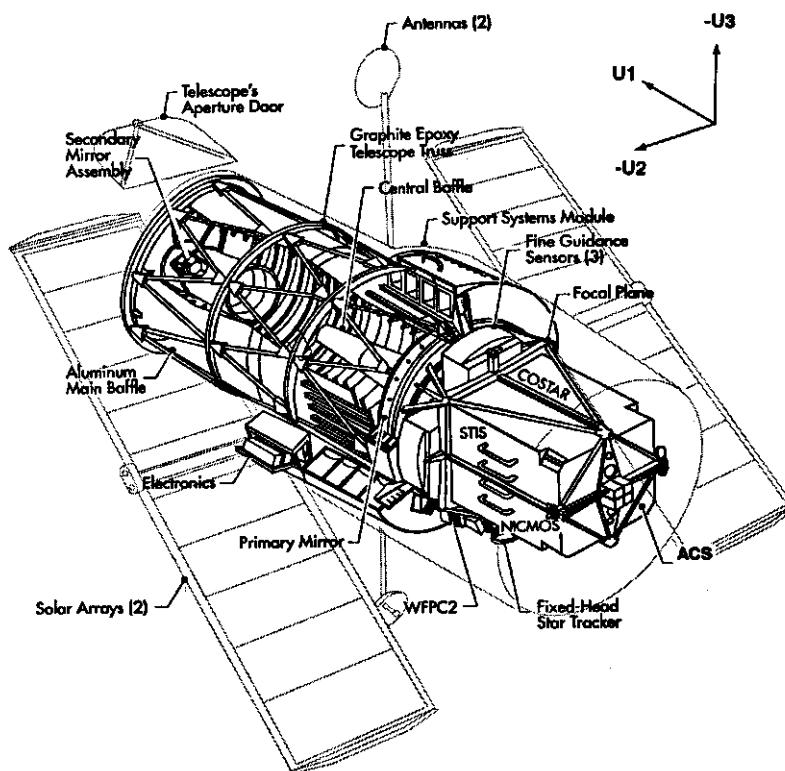
Space Telescope Science Institute  
3700 San Martin Drive  
Baltimore, MD 21218  
USA  
Tel.: (410)-338-4700  
Fax: (410)-338-4767  
E-mail: user@stsci.edu

To allow European astronomers to make use to the Hubble Space Telescope, the European Space Agency (ESA) has established the Space Telescope-European Coordinating Facility (ECF). The address of the SF-ECF:

Space Telescope-European Coordinating Facility  
European Southern Observatory  
Karl-Schwarzschild-Str. 2  
D-8046 Garching bei München  
Federal Republic of Germany  
Tel: + 49-89-320 06-291  
Fax: + 49-89-320 06-480  
E-mail: stdesk@eso.org (ST Desk)

An overview of the HST dealing with the performance of the telescope and instruments and plans for observations and data reduction and analysis can be found in the NASA publication, *The Space Telescope Observatory*, special session of commission, 44, IAU 18th General Assembly, 1982, NASA CP-2244.

---

**Description of the Hubble Space Telescope (HST)*****HST nominal orbital parameters***

Altitude	600 km
Inclination	28°.5
Orbital period	97 min
Orbital precession period	54 days

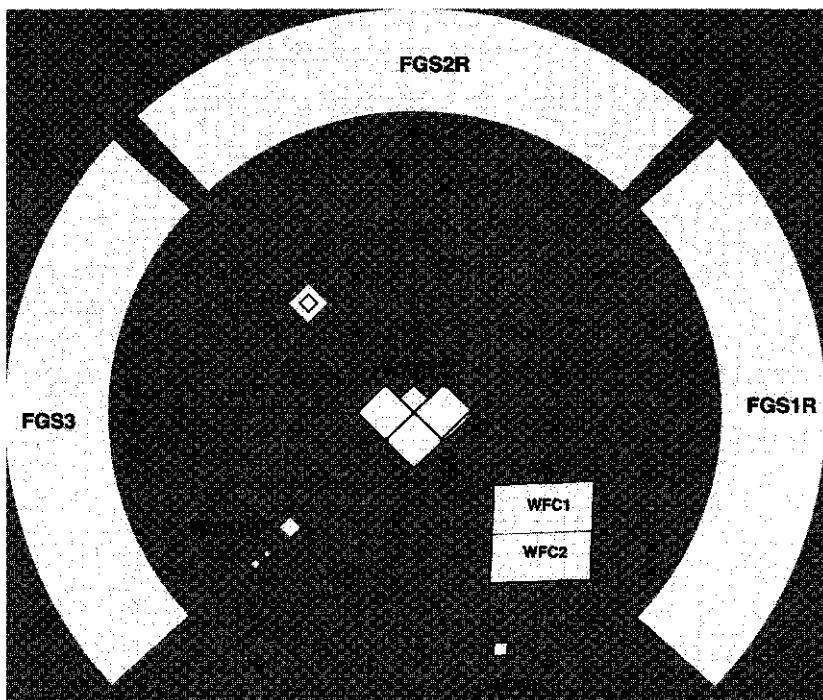
***HST Optical Characteristics and Performance***

Design	Ritchey-Chretien Cassegrain
Aperture	2.4 m
Collecting area	39,000 cm <sup>2</sup>
Wavelength Coverage	From 1100 Å (MgF <sub>2</sub> limited) To ~ 3 microns (self-emission limited)
Focal Ratio	f/24
Plate Scale (on axis)	3.58 arcsec/mm
PSF FWHM at 5000 Å	0.043 arcsec
Encircled Energy within 0.1'' at 5000 Å	87% (60%-80% at the detectors)

Because each SI unique characteristics, the actual encircled energy is instrument dependent, and may also vary with observing techniques.

**Description of the Hubble Space Telescope (cont.)****The HST field of view**

The scale in arc seconds is indicated.



- The Advanced Camera for Surveys (ACS)
- The Fine Guidance Sensor (FGS1R)
- The Near Infrared Camera and Multi-Object Spectrometer (NICMOS)
- The Space Telescope Imaging Spectrograph (STIS)
- The Wide Field and Planetary Camera 2 (WFPC2)

**Description of the Hubble Space Telescope (*cont.*)*****HST Instrument Capabilities: Direct Imaging***

SI	Field of View [arcsec]	Projected Pixel Spacing on Sky [arcsec]	Wavelength Range [Å]	Magnitude Limit <sup>2</sup>
ACS/WFC <sup>3</sup>	202×202	~ 0.05	3700–11,000	28.7
ACS/HRC	29×26	~ 0.027	2000–11,000	28.2
ACS/SBC	35×31	~ 0.032	1150–1700	22.6
NICMOS/NIC1	11×11	0.043	8000–19,000	24.5
NICMOS/NIC2	19×19	0.076	8000–25,000	25.0
NICMOS/NIC3	51×51	0.20	8000–25,000	25.0
STIS/CCD	52×52	0.05	2500–11,000	28.5
STIS/NUV	25×25	0.024	1650–3100	24.8
STIS/FUV	25×25	0.024	1150–1700	24.4
WFPC2 <sup>4</sup>	150×150	0.10	1200–11,000	27.5
	35×35	0.0455	1200–11,000	27.8

***HST Instrument Capabilities: Slit Spectroscopy***

SI	Projected Aperture Size	Resolving Power <sup>5</sup>	Wavelength Range [Å]	Magnitude Limit <sup>2</sup>
STIS <sup>6</sup>	52'' × (0.05 – 2)'' [optical]	<b>Echelles:</b> ~ 100,000	1150–3100	11.8–13.0
	(25 – 28)'' × (0.05 – 2)'' [UV first order]	~ 30,000	1150–3100	12.7–15.2
	(0.1 – 02)'' × (0.025 – 0.2)'' [UV echelle]	<b>Prism:</b> ~ 150  <b>First order:</b> ~ 8000 ~ 700	1150–3100	22.1
			1150–10,300	15.2–16.1–19.5
			1150–10,300	18.6–20.1–22.4

**Description of the Hubble Space Telescope (cont.)****HST Instrument Capabilities: Slitless Spectroscopy**

SI	Field of View [arcsec]	Projected Pixel Spacing on Sky [arcsec]	Resolving Power	Wavelength Range [Å]	Magnitude Limit <sup>2</sup>
ACS/WFC grism G800L	202×202	~ 0.05	~ 100	5500–11000	25
ACS/HRC grism G800L	29×26	~ 0.027	~ 100	5500–11000	24.2
ACS/HRC prism PR200L	29×26	~ 0.027	~ 100	2000–4000	24.7
ACS/SBC prism PR130L	35×31	~ 0.032	~ 100	1150–1700	21.5
NICMOS <sup>7</sup>	51×51	0.2	200	8000–25,000	21,20,16
STIS <sup>7</sup>	52×52	0.05	~ 700 – 8000	2000–11,000	See slit
	25×25	0.024	~ 700 – 8000	1150–3100	spectroscopy above
WFPC2 <sup>7</sup>	150×150	0.1	~ 100	3700–9800	25

**HST Instrument Capabilities: Positional Astrometry**

SI	Field of View	Precision (per observation)	Wavelength Range (Å)	Magnitude
FGSIR	69 square arcmin	1-2 mas 3 mas	4700–7100	< 14.5 < 17.0

**HST Instrument Capabilities: Binary Star Resolution and Measurements**

SI	Field of View	Separation [mas]	Accuracy [mas]	Delta Magnitude (max)	Primary Star Magnitude
FGSIR	aperture center	8 10	1 1	0.6 1.0	< 14.5 < 14.5
	5'' × 5''	15	1	1.0	< 15.5
	IFOV	20 30	1 1	2.5 4.0	< 14.5 < 15.0

***Description of the Hubble Space Telescope (cont.)******Notes for tables***

<sup>1</sup> WFPC2 and NICMOS have polarimetric imaging capabilities. STIS and NICMOS have coronographic capabilities.

<sup>2</sup> Limiting V magnitude for an unreddened AO V star in order to achieve a signal-to-noise ratio of 5 in an exposure time of 1 hour assuming low-background conditions.

The limiting magnitude for imaging in the visual is strongly affected by the sky background; under normal observing conditions, the limiting magnitude can be about 0.5 brighter than listed here. Please note that low-sky conditions limit flexibility in scheduling and are not compatible with observing in the CVZ. Single entries refer to wavelengths near the center of the indicated wavelength range. STIS direct imaging entries assume use of a clear filter for the CCD and the quartz filter for the UV (for sky suppression). For STIS spectroscopy to achieve the specified signal-to-noise ratio per wavelength pixel a 0.5" slit, multiple value are given corresponding to 1300, 2800 and 6000 Å, respectively (if in range).

The ACS/WFC, ACS/HRC and WFPC2 entries assume filter F606W. The WFPC2 Charge Transfer Efficiency (CTE) losses are negligible for this filter, due to the significant sky background accumulated over 3600 sec in F606W. However, note that WFPC2 images of faint point sources with little sky background can experience significant CTE losses.

<sup>3</sup> With ramp filters, the FOV is  $\sim 40'' \times 70''$  for the ACS/WFC.

<sup>4</sup> The WFPC2 has four CCD chips that are exposed simultaneously. Three are "wide-field" chips, each covering a  $75'' \times 75''$  field and arranged in an "L" shape, and the fourth is a "planetary" chip covering a  $35'' \times 35''$  field.

<sup>5</sup> The resolving power is  $\lambda/\Delta\lambda$ ; for STIS it is  $\lambda/2\Delta\lambda$  where  $\Delta\lambda$  is the dispersion scale in Ångstroms/pixel.

<sup>6</sup> The 25" or 28" first order slits are for the MAMA detectors, the 52" slit is for the CCD. The R  $\sim 150$  entry for the prism on the NUV-MAMA is given for 2300 Å.

<sup>7</sup> All STIS modes can be operated in a slitless manner by replacing the slit by a clear aperture. WFPC2 has a capability of obtaining low-resolution spectra by placing a target successively at various locations in the WFPC2 linear ramp filter. STIS also has a prism for use in the UV. NICMOS has a grism for use in NIC3.

---

---

## Glossary of astronomical terms

---

*aberration*: the apparent angular displacement of the observed position of a celestial object from its *geometric position*, caused by the finite velocity of light in combination with the motions of the observer and of the observed object. (See *aberration, planetary*.)

*aberration, annual*: the component of stellar aberration (see *aberration, stellar*) resulting from the motion of the Earth about the Sun.

*aberration, diurnal*: the component of stellar aberration (see *aberration, stellar*) resulting from the observer's diurnal motion about the center of the Earth.

*aberration, E-terms of*: terms of annual aberration (see *aberration, annual*) depending on the eccentricity and longitude of *perihelion* of the Earth.

*aberration, elliptic*: see *aberration, E-terms of*.

*aberration, planetary*: the apparent angular displacement of the observed position of a celestial body produced by motion of the observer (see *aberration, stellar*) and the actual motion of the observed object (see *correction for light-time*).

*aberration, secular*: the component of stellar aberration (see *aberration, stellar*) resulting from the essentially uniform and rectilinear motion of the entire solar system in space. Secular aberration is usually disregarded.

*aberration, stellar*: the apparent angular displacement of the observed position of a celestial body resulting from the motion of the observer. Stellar aberration is divided into diurnal, annual and secular components (see *aberration, diurnal; aberration, annual; aberration, secular*).

*altitude*: the angular distance of a celestial body above or below the *horizon*, measured along the great circle passing through the body and the *zenith*. Altitude is  $90^\circ$  minus *zenith distance*.

*aphelion*: the point in a planetary *orbit* that is at the greatest distance from the Sun.

*apparent place*: the position on a *celestial sphere*, centered at the Earth, determined by removing from the directly observed position of a celestial body the effects that depend on the *topocentric* location of the observer; i.e., *refraction*, diurnal aberration (see *aberration, diurnal*) and geocentric (diurnal) *parallax*. Thus the position at which the object would actually be seen from the center of the Earth, displaced by planetary aberration (except the diurnal part—see *aberration, planetary* and *aberration, diurnal*) and referred to the *true equator and equinox*.

*apparent solar time*: the measure of time based on the diurnal motion of the true Sun. The rate of diurnal motion undergoes seasonal variation because of the *obliquity* of the *ecliptic* and because of the *eccentricity* of the Earth's *orbit*. Additional small variations result from irregularities in the rotation of the Earth on its axis.

*astrometric ephemeris*: an ephemeris of a solar system body in which the tabulated positions are essentially comparable to catalog *mean places* of stars at a *standard epoch*. An astrometric position is obtained by adding to the *geometric position*, computed from gravitational theory, the correction for *light-time*. Prior to 1984, the E-terms of annual aberration (see *aberration, annual* and *aberration, E-terms of*) were also added to the geometric position.

*astronomical coordinates*: the longitude and latitude of a point on the Earth relative to the *geoid*. These coordinates are influenced by local gravity anomalies (see *zenith*.)

*astronomical unit* (AU): the radius of a circular orbit in which a body of negligible mass, and free of perturbations, would revolve around the Sun in  $2\pi/k$  days, where  $k$  is the *gaussian gravitational constant*. This is slightly less than the semimajor *axis* of the Earth's *orbit*.

*atomic second*: see *second, Système International*.

*augmentation*: the amount by which the apparent *semidiameter* of a celestial body, as observed from the surface of the Earth, is greater than the semidiameter that would be observed from the center of the Earth.

*azimuth*: the angular distance measured clockwise along the *horizon* from a specified reference point (usually north) to the intersection with the great circle drawn from the *zenith* through a body on the *celestial sphere*.

*barycenter*: the center of mass of a system of bodies; e.g., the center of mass of the solar system or the Earth—Moon system.

*barycentric dynamical time* (TDB): the independent argument of ephemerides and equations of motion that are referred to the *barycenter* of the solar system. A family of time scales results from the transformation by various theories and metrics of relativistic theories of *terrestrial dynamical time* (TDT). TDB differs from TDT only by periodic variations. In the terminology of the general theory of relativity, TDB may be considered to be a coordinate time. (See *dynamical time*.)

*catalog equinox*: the intersection of the *hour circle* of zero *right ascension* of a star catalog with the *celestial equator*. (See *dynamical equinox* and *equator*.)

*celestial ephemeris pole:* the reference pole for *nutation* and *polar motion*; the axis of figure for the mean surface of a model Earth in which the free motion has zero amplitude. This pole has no nearly-diurnal nutation with respect to a space-fixed or Earth-fixed coordinate system.

*celestial equator:* the projection onto the *celestial sphere* of the Earth's equator. (See *mean equator and equinox* and *true equator and equinox*.)

*celestial pole:* either of the two points projected onto the *celestial sphere* by the extension of the Earth's axis of rotation to infinity.

*celestial sphere:* an imaginary sphere of arbitrary radius upon which celestial bodies may be considered to be located. As circumstances require, the celestial sphere may be centered at the observer, at the Earth's center, or at any other location.

*conjunction:* the phenomenon in which two bodies have the same apparent celestial longitude (see *longitude, celestial*) or *right ascension* as viewed from a third body. Conjunctions are usually tabulated as *geocentric* phenomena, however. For Mercury and Venus, geocentric inferior conjunction occurs when the planet is between the Earth and Sun and superior conjunction occurs when the Sun is between the planet and Earth.

*constant of aberration* ( $k = 20''.49552$ , J2000.0): the ratio of the mean orbital speed of the Earth to the speed of light.

*constellation:* a grouping of stars, usually with pictorial or mythical associations, that serves to identify an area of the *celestial sphere*. Also one of the precisely defined areas of the celestial sphere, associated with a grouping of stars, that the International Astronomical Union has designated as a constellation.

*coordinated universal time* (UTC): the time scale available from broadcast time signals. UTC differs from TAI (see *international atomic time*) by an integral number of seconds; it is maintained within  $\pm 0.90$  seconds of UT1 (see *universal time*) by the introduction of one second steps (leap seconds).

*culmination:* passage of a celestial object across the observer's *meridian*, also called 'meridian passage'. More precisely culmination is the passage through the point of greatest *altitude* in the diurnal path. Upper culmination (also called 'culmination above pole' for circumpolar stars and the Moon) or transit is the crossing closer to the observer's *zenith*. Lower culmination (also called 'culmination below pole' for circumpolar stars and the Moon) is the crossing farther from the zenith.

*day:* an interval of 86 400 SI seconds (see *second, Systeme International*), unless otherwise indicated.

*day numbers:* quantities that facilitate hand calculations of the reduction of *mean place* to *apparent place*. Besselian day numbers depend solely on the Earth's position and motion; second-order day numbers, used in high precision reductions, depend on the positions of both the Earth and the star.

*declination:* angular distance on the *celestial sphere* north or south of the *celestial equator*. It is measured along the *hour circle* passing through the celestial object. Declination is usually given in combination with *right ascension* or *hour angle*.

*defect of illumination:* the angular amount of the observed lunar or planetary disk that is not illuminated to an observer on the Earth.

*deflection of light:* the angle by which the apparent path of a photon is altered from a straight line by the gravitational field of the Sun. The path is deflected radially away from the Sun by up to  $1.^{\circ}75$  at the Sun's limb. Correction for this effect, which is independent of wavelength, is included in the reduction from *mean place* to *apparent place*.

*deflection of the vertical:* the angle between the astronomical vertical and the geodetic vertical (see *zenith*; *astronomical coordinates*; *geodetic coordinates*.)

*Delta T* ( $\Delta T$ ): the difference between *dynamical time* and *universal time*; specifically the difference between *terrestrial dynamical time* (TDT) and UT1:  $\Delta T = \text{TDT} - \text{UT1}$ .

*direct motion:* for orbital motion in the solar system, motion that is counterclockwise in the orbit as seen from the north pole of the *ecliptic*; for an object observed on the celestial sphere, motion that is from west to east, resulting from the relative motion of the object and the Earth.

$\Delta \text{UT1}$ : the predicted value of the difference between UT1 and UTC, transmitted in code on broadcast time signals:  $\Delta \text{UT1} = \text{UT1} - \text{UTC}$ . (See *universal time* and *coordinated universal time*.)

*dynamical equinox:* the ascending *node* of the Earth's mean *orbit* on the Earth's *equator*; i.e., the intersection of the *ecliptic* with the *celestial equator* at which the Sun's *declination* is changing from south to north (See *catalog equinox* and *equinox*.)

*dynamical form factor* ( $J_2 = 0.00108263$ ): the second zonal harmonic coefficient in the spherical harmonic expansion of the Earth's gravitational potential.

*dynamical time:* the family of time scales introduced in 1984 to replace *ephemeris time* as the independent argument of dynamical theories and ephemerides. (See *barycentric dynamical time* and *terrestrial dynamical time*.)

*eccentric anomaly:* in undisturbed elliptic motion, the angle measured at the center of the ellipse from *pericenter* to the point on the circumscribing auxiliary circle from which a perpendicular to the major axis would intersect the orbiting body. (See *mean anomaly* and *true anomaly*.)

*eccentricity:* a parameter that specifies the shape of a conic section; one of the standard elements used to describe an elliptic *orbit* (see *elements, orbital*.)

*eclipse:* the obscuration of a celestial body caused by its passage through the shadow cast by another body.

*eclipse, annular:* a solar *eclipse* (see *eclipse, solar*) in which the solar disk is never completely covered but is seen as an annulus or ring at maximum eclipse. An annular eclipse occurs when the apparent disk of the Moon is smaller than that of the Sun.

*eclipse, lunar:* an *eclipse* in which the Moon passes through the shadow cast by the Earth. The eclipse may be total (the Moon passing completely through the Earth's *umbra*), partial (the Moon passing partially through the Earth's *umbra* at maximum eclipse), or penumbral (the Moon passing only through the Earth's *penumbra*).

*eclipse, solar:* an *eclipse* in which the Earth passes through the shadow cast by the Moon. It may be total (observer in the Moon's *umbra*), partial (observer in the Moon's *penumbra*), or annular (see *eclipse, annular*).

*ecliptic:* the mean plane of the Earth's *orbit* around the Sun.

*elements, Besselian:* quantities tabulated for the calculation of accurate predictions of an *eclipse* or *occultation* for any point on or above the surface of the Earth.

*elements, orbital:* parameters that specify the position and motion of a body in *orbit* (see *osculating elements* and *mean elements*.)

*elongation, greatest:* the instants when the *geocentric* angular distances of Mercury and Venus are at a maximum from the Sun.

*elongation (planetary):* the *geocentric* angle between a planet and the Sun, measured in the plane of the planet, Earth and Sun. Planetary elongations are measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$ , east or west of the Sun.

*elongation (satellite):* the *geocentric* angle between a satellite and its primary, measured in the plane of the satellite, planet and Earth. Satellite elongations are measured from  $0^\circ$  east or west of the planet.

*ephemeris hour angle:* an *hour angle* referred to the *ephemeris meridian*.

*ephemeris longitude:* longitude (see *longitude, terrestrial*) measured eastward from the *ephemeris meridian*.

*ephemeris meridian*: a fictitious *meridian* that rotates independently of the Earth at the uniform rate implicitly defined by *terrestrial dynamical time* (TDT). The ephemeris meridian is  $1.002\,738\Delta T$  east of the Greenwich meridian, where  $\Delta T = \text{TDT} - \text{UT1}$ .

*ephemeris time* (ET): the time scale used prior to 1984 as the independent variable in gravitational theories of the solar system. In 1984, ET was replaced by *dynamical time*.

*ephemeris transit*: the passage of a celestial body or point across the *ephemeris meridian*.

*epoch*: an arbitrary fixed instant of time or date used as a chronological reference datum for calendars, celestial reference systems, or orbital motions.

Besselian epoch =  $1900.0 + (\text{JD} - 241\,5020.31352)/365.242198781$ .  
B1950.0 is defined to be 1949 Dec 31 22:09 UT.

Julian epoch =  $2000.0 + (\text{JD} - 2451545.0)/365.25$ , where JD is the Julian date.

J2000.0 is defined to be 2000 January 1.5 in the TT timescale.

*equation of center*: in elliptic motion the *true anomaly* minus the *mean anomaly*. It is the difference between the actual angular position in the elliptic *orbit* and the position the body would have if its angular motion were uniform.

*equation of the equinoxes*: the *right ascension* of the mean *equinox* (see *mean equator and equinox* referred to the *true equator and equinox*; apparent *sidereal time* minus mean *sideral time*. (See *apparent place* and *mean place*.)

*equation of time*: the *hour angle* of the true Sun minus the hour angle of the *fictitious mean sun*; alternatively, *apparent solar time* minus *mean solar time*.

*equator*: the great circle on the surface of a body formed by the intersection of the surface with the plane passing through the center of the body perpendicular to the axis of rotation. (See *celestial equator*.)

*equinox*: either of the two points on the *celestial sphere* at which the *ecliptic* intersects the *celestial equator*; also the time at which the Sun passes through either of these intersection points; i.e., when the apparent longitude (see *apparent place* and *longitude, celestial*) of the Sun is  $0^\circ$  or  $180^\circ$ . (See *catalog equinox* and *dynamical equinox* for precise usage.)

*fictitious mean Sun*: an imaginary body introduced to define *mean solar time*; essentially the name of a mathematical formula that defined mean solar time. This concept is no longer used in high precision work.

*flattening*: a parameter that specifies the degree by which a planet's figure differs from that of a sphere; the ratio  $f = (a - b)/a$ , where  $a$  is the equatorial radius and  $b$  is the polar radius.

*Gaussian gravitational constant* ( $k = 0.017\,202\,098\,95$ ): the constant defining the astronomical system of units of length (*astronomical unit*), mass (solar mass) and time (*day*), by means of Kepler's third law. The dimensions of  $k^2$  are those of Newton's constant of gravitation:  $\text{L}^3\text{M}^{-1}\text{T}^{-2}$ .

*geocentric*: with reference to, or pertaining to, the center of the Earth.

*geocentric coordinates*: the latitude and longitude of a point on the Earth's surface relative to the center of the Earth; also celestial coordinates given with respect to the center of the Earth. (See *zenith*; *latitude, terrestrial*; *longitude, terrestrial*.)

*geodetic coordinates*: the latitude and longitude of a point on the Earth's surface determined from the geodetic vertical (normal to the specified spheroid). (See *zenith*; *latitude, terrestrial*; *longitude, terrestrial*.)

*geoid*: an equipotential surface that coincides with mean sea level in the open ocean. On land it is the level surface that would be assumed by water in an imaginary network of frictionless channels connected to the ocean.

*geometric position*: the *geocentric* position of an object on the *celestial sphere* referred to the *true equator and equinox*, but without the displacement due to planetary aberration. (See *apparent place*; *mean place*; *aberration, planetary*.)

*Greenwich sidereal date* (GSD): the number of *sidereal days* elapsed at Greenwich since the beginning of the Greenwich sidereal day that was in progress at *Julian date* 0.0.

*Greenwich sidereal day number*: the integral part of the *Greenwich sidereal date*.

*Gregorian calendar*: the calendar introduced by Pope Gregory XIII in 1582 to replace the *Julian calendar*; the calendar now used as the civil calendar in most countries. Every year that is exactly divisible by four is a leap year, except for centurial years, which must be exactly divisible by 400 to be leap years. Thus 2000 is a leap year, but 1900 and 2100 are not leap years.

*heliocentric*: with reference to, or pertaining to, the center of the Sun.

*horizon*: a plane perpendicular to the line from an observer to the *zenith*. The great circle formed by the intersection of the *celestial sphere* with a plane perpendicular to the line from an observer to the zenith is called the astronomical horizon.

*horizontal parallax*: the difference between the *topocentric* and *geocentric* positions of an object, when the object is on the astronomical *horizon*.

*hour angle*: angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured westward along the *celestial equator* from the *meridian* to the *hour circle* that passes through a celestial object.

*hour circle*: a great circle on the *celestial sphere* that passes through the *celestial poles* and it therefore perpendicular to the *celestial equator*.

*inclination*: the angle between two planes or their poles; usually the angle between an orbital plane and a reference plane; one of the standard orbital elements (see *elements, orbital*) that specifies the orientation of an *orbit*.

*international atomic time* (TAI): the continuous scale resulting from analyses by the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures of atomic time standards in many countries. The fundamental unit of TAI is the SI second (see *second, Système International*), and the epoch is 1958 January 1.

*invariable plane*: the plane through the center of mass of the solar system perpendicular to the angular momentum vector of the solar system.

*irradiation*: an optical effect of contrast that makes bright objects viewed against a dark background appear to be larger than they really are.

*Julian calendar*: the calendar introduced by Julius Caesar in 46 BC to replace the Roman calendar. In the Julian calendar a common year is defined to comprise 365 days, and every fourth year is leap year comprising 366 days. The Julian calendar was superseded by the *Gregorian calendar*.

*Julian date* (JD): the interval of time in days and fraction of a day since 1 January 4713 BC, Greenwich noon, *Julian proleptic calendar*. In precise work the time scale, e.g., *dynamical time* or *universal time*, should be specified.

*Julian date, modified* (MJD): the Julian date minus 240 0000.5.

*Julian day number* (JD): the integral part of the *Julian date*.

*Julian proleptic calendar*: the calendric system employing the rules of the *Julian calendar*, but extended and applied to dates preceding the introduction of the Julian calendar.

*Julian year*: a period of 365.25 days. This period served as the basis for the *Julian calendar*.

*Laplacian plane*: for planets see *invariable plane*; for a system of satellites the fixed plane relative to which the vector sum of the disturbing forces has no orthogonal component.

*latitude, celestial*: angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured north or south of the *ecliptic* along the great circle passing through the poles of the ecliptic and the celestial object.

*latitude, terrestrial:* angular distance on the Earth measured north or south of the *equator* along the *meridian* of a geographic location.

*librations:* variations in the orientation of the Moon's surface with respect to an observer on the Earth. Physical librations are due to variations in the rate at which the Moon rotates on its axis. The much larger optical librations are due to variations in the rate of the Moon's orbital motion, the *obliquity* of the Moon's *equator* to its orbital plane, and the diurnal changes of geometric perspective of an observer on the Earth's surface.

*light-time:* the interval of time required for light to travel from a celestial body to the Earth. During this interval the motion of the body in space causes an angular displacement of its *apparent place* from its *geometric position* (see *aberration, planetary*).

*light year:* the distance that light traverses in a vacuum during one year.

*local sidereal time:* the local *hour angle* of a *catalog equinox*.

*longitude, celestial:* angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured eastward along the *ecliptic* from the *dynamical eqinox* to the great circle passing through the poles of the ecliptic and the celestial object.

*longitude, terrestrial:* angular distance measured along the Earth's *equator* from the Greenwich *meridian* to the meridian of a geographic location.

*lunar phases:* cyclically recurring apparent forms of the Moon. New Moon, First Quarter, Full Moon and Last Quarter are defined as the times at which the excess of the apparent celestial longitude (see *longitude, celestial*) of the Moon over that of the Sun is  $0^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$ ,  $180^\circ$  and  $270^\circ$ , respectively.

*lunation:* the period of time between two consecutive New Moons.

*magnitude, stellar:* a measure on a logarithmic scale of the brightness of a celestial object considered as a point source.

*magnitude of a lunar eclipse:* the fraction of the lunar diameter obscured by the shadow of the Earth at the greatest phase of a lunar eclipse (see *eclipse, lunar*), measured along the common diameter.

*magnitude of a solar eclipse:* the fraction of the solar diameter obscured by the Moon at the greatest phase of a solar eclipse (see *eclipse, solar*), measured along the common diameter.

*mean anomaly:* in undisturbed elliptic motion, the product of the *mean motion* of an orbiting body and the interval of time since the body passed *pericenter*. Thus the mean anomaly is the angle from pericenter of a hypothetical body moving with a constant angular speed that is equal to the mean motion. (See *true anomaly* and *eccentric anomaly*.)

*mean distance:* the *semimajor axis* of an elliptic *orbit*.

*mean elements:* elements of a adopted reference *orbital* (see *elements, orbital*) that approximates the actual, perturbed orbit. Mean elements may serve as the basis for calculating *perturbations*.

*mean equator and equinox:* the celestial reference system determined by ignoring small variations of short period in the motions of the *celestial equator*. Thus the mean equator and equinox are affected only by *precession*. Positions in star catalogs are normally referred to the mean catalog equator and equinox (see *catalog equinox*) of a *standard epoch*.

*mean motion:* in undisturbed elliptic motion, the constant angular speed required for a body to complete one revolution in a *orbit* of a specified *semimajor axis*.

*mean place:* the coordinates, referred to the *mean equator and equinox* of a *standard epoch*, of an object on the *celestial sphere* centered at the Sun. A mean place is determined by removing from the directly observed position the effects of *refraction*, geocentric and stellar parallax, and stellar aberration (see *aberration, stellar*), and by referring the coordinates to the mean equator and equinox of a standard epoch. In compiling star catalogs it has been the practice not to remove the secular part of stellar aberration (see *aberration, secular*). Prior to 1984, it was additionally the practice not to remove the elliptic part of annual aberration (see *aberration, annual* and *aberration, E-terms of*).

*mean solar time:* a measure of time based conceptually on the diurnal motion of the *fictitious mean sun*, under the assumption that the Earth's rate of rotation is constant.

*mean Sun:* a fictitious Sun used to provide a standard measurements of time; it moves along the celestial equator at a uniform rate equal to the average motion of the actual Sun (see *fictitious mean Sun*).

*meridian:* a great circle passing through the *celestial poles* and through the *zenith* of any location of Earth. For planetary observations a meridian is half the great circle passing thorough the planet's poles and through any location on the planet.

*moonrise, moonset:* the times at which the apparent upper limb of the Moon is on the astronomical *horizon*; i.e., when the true *zenith distance*, referred to the centre of the Earth, of the central point of the disk is  $90^\circ 34' + s - \pi$ , where  $s$  is the Moon's semidiameter,  $\pi$  is the *horizontal parallax*, and  $34'$  is the adopted value of horizontal *refraction*.

*nadir:* the point on the *celestial sphere* diametrically opposite to the *zenith*.

*node*: either of the points on the *celestial sphere* at which the plane of an *orbit* intersects a reference plane. The position of a node is one of the standard orbital elements (see *elements, orbital*) used to specify the orientation of an orbit.

*nutation*: the short-period oscillations in the motion of the pole of rotation of a freely rotating body that is undergoing torque from external gravitational forces. Nutation of the Earth's pole is discussed in terms of components in *obliquity* and longitude (see *longitude, celestial*).

*obliquity*: in general the angle between the equatorial and orbital planes of a body or, equivalently, between the rotational and orbital poles. For the Earth the obliquity of the *ecliptic* is the angle between the planes of the *equator* and the ecliptic.

*occultation*: the obscuration of one celestial body by another of greater apparent diameter; especially the passage of the Moon in front of a star or planet, or the disappearance of a satellite behind the disk of its primary. If the primary source of illumination of a reflecting body is cut off by the occultation, the phenomenon is also called an *eclipse*. The occultation of the Sun by the Moon is a solar eclipse (see *eclipse, solar*).

*opposition*: a configuration of the Sun, Earth and a planet in which the apparent *geocentric* longitude (see *longitude, celestial*) of the planet differs by  $180^\circ$  from the apparent geocentric longitude of the Sun.

*orbit*: the path in space followed by a celestial body.

*osculating elements*: a set of parameters (see *elements, orbital*) that specifies the instantaneous position and velocity of a celestial body in its perturbed *orbit*. Osculating elements describe the unperturbed (two-body) orbit that the body would follow if *perturbations* were to cease instantaneously.

*parallax*: the difference in apparent direction of an object as seen from two different locations; conversely the angle at the object that is subtended by the line joining two designated points. Geocentric (diurnal) parallax is the difference in direction between a *topocentric* observation and a hypothetical *geocentric* observation. Heliocentric or annual parallax is the difference between hypothetical geocentric and *heliocentric* observations; it is the angle subtended at the observed object by the *semimajor axis* of the Earth's *orbit*. (See also *horizontal parallax*.)

*parsec*: the distance at which one *astronomical unit* subtends an angle of one second of arc; equivalently the distance to an object having an annual *parallax* of one second of arc.

*peculiar velocity*: random motions of galaxies relative to the mean Hubble flow.

*penumbra:* the portion of a shadow in which light from an extended source is partially but not completely cut off by an intervening body; the area of partial shadow surrounding the *umbra*.

*pericenter:* the point in an *orbit* that is nearest to the center of force. (See *perigee* and *perihelion*.)

*perigee:* the point at which a body in *orbit* around the Earth most closely approaches the Earth. Perigee is sometimes used with reference to the apparent orbit of the Sun around the Earth.

*perihelion:* the point at which a body in *orbit* around the Sun most closely approaches the Sun.

*period:* the interval of time required to complete one revolution in an *orbit* or one cycle of a periodic phenomenon, such as a cycle of *phases*.

*perturbations:* deviations between the actual *orbit* of a celestial body and an assumed reference orbit; also the forces that cause deviations between the actual and reference orbits. Perturbations, according to the first meaning, are usually calculated as quantities to be added to the coordinates of the reference orbit to obtain the precise coordinates.

*phase:* the ratio of the illuminated area of the apparent disk of a celestial body to the area of the entire apparent disk taken as a circle. For the Moon, phase designations (see *lunar phases*) are defined by specific configurations of the Sun, Earth and Moon. For eclipses phase designations (total, partial, penumbral, etc.) provide general descriptions of the phenomena (see *eclipse solar*; *eclipse*, *annular*; *eclipse*, *lunar*.)

*phase angle:* the angle measured at the center of an illuminated body between the light source and the observer.

*photometry:* a measurement of the intensity of light usually specified for a specific frequency range.

*planetocentric coordinates:* coordinates for general use, where the *z*-axis is the mean axis of rotation, the *x*-axis is the intersection of the planetary *equator* (normal to the *z*-axis through the center of mass) and an arbitrary prime *meridian*, and the *y*-axis completes a right-hand coordinate system. Longitude (see *longitude*, *celestial*) of a point is measured positive to the prime meridian as defined by rotational elements. Latitude (see *latitude*, *celestial*) of a point is the angle between the planetary equator and a line of the center of mass. The radius is measured from the center of mass to the surface point.

*planetographic coordinates:* coordinates for cartographic purposes dependent on an equipotential surface as a reference surface. Longitude (see *longitude*, *celestial*) of a point is measured in the direction opposite to the rotation (positive to the west for direct rotation) from the cartographic position of the prime *meridian* defined by a clearly observable surface feature. Latitude (see *latitude*, *celestial*) of a point

is the angle between the planetary *equator* (normal to the *z*-axis and through the center of mass) and normal to the reference surface at the point. The height of a point is specified as the distance above a point with the same longitude and latitude on the reference surface.

*polar motion*: the irregularly varying motion of the Earth's pole of rotation with respect to the Earth's crust. (See *celestial ephemeris pole*.)

*precession*: the uniformly progressing motion of the pole of rotation of a freely rotating body undergoing torque from external gravitational forces. In the case of the Earth, the component of precession caused by the Sun and Moon acting on the Earth's equatorial bulge is called lunisolar precession; the component caused by the action of the planets is called planetary precession. The sum of lunisolar and planetary precession is called general precession. (See *nutation*.)

*proper motion*: the projection onto the *celestial sphere* of the space motion of a star relative to the solar system; thus the transverse component of the space motion of a star with respect to the solar system. Proper motion is usually tabulated in star catalogs as changes in *right ascension* and *declination* per year or century.

*quadrature*: a configuration in which two celestial bodies have apparent longitudes (see *longitude*, *celestial*) that differ by  $90^\circ$  as viewed from a third body. Quadratures are usually tabulated with respect to the Sun as viewed from the center of the Earth.

*radial velocity*: the rate of change of the distance to an object.

*refraction, astronomical*: the change in direction of travel (bending) of a light ray as it passes obliquely through the atmosphere. As a result of refraction the observed *altitude* of a celestial object is greater than its geometric altitude. The amount of refraction depends on the altitude of the object and on atmospheric conditions.

*retrograde motion*: for orbital motion in the solar system, motion that is clockwise in the *orbit* as seen from the north pole of the *ecliptic*; for an object observed on the *celestial sphere*, motion that is from east to west, resulting from the relative motion of the object and the Earth. (See *direct motion*.)

*right ascension*: angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured eastward along the *celestial equator* from the *equinox* to the *hour circle* passing through the celestial object. Right ascension is usually given in combination with *declination*.

*second, Système International (SI)*: the duration of 9 192 631 770 cycles of radiation corresponding to the transition between two hyperfine levels of the ground state of cesium 133.

*selenocentric*: with reference to, or pertaining to, the center of the Moon.

*semidiameter*: the angle at the observer subtended by the equatorial radius of the Sun, Moon or a planet.

*semimajor axis*: half the length of the major axis of an ellipse; a standard element used to describe an elliptical *orbit* (see *elements, orbital*).

*sidereal day*: the interval of time between two consecutive *transits* of the *catalog equinox*. (See *sidereal time*.)

*sidereal hour angle*: angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured westward along the *celestial equator* from the *catalog equinox* to the *hour circle* passing through the celestial object. It is equal to  $360^\circ$  minus *right ascension* in degrees.

*sidereal time*: the measure of time defined by the apparent diurnal motion of the *catalog equinox*; hence a measure of the rotation of the Earth with respect to the stars rather than the Sun.

*solstice*: either of the two points on the *ecliptic* at which the apparent longitude (see *longitude, celestial*) of the Sun is  $90^\circ$  or  $270^\circ$ ; also the time at which the Sun is at either point.

*spectral types or classes*: categorization of stars according to their spectra, primarily due to differing temperatures of the atmosphere. From hottest to coolest, the spectral types are O, B, A, F, G, K and M.

*standard epoch*: a date and time that specific the reference system to which celestial coordinates are referred. Prior to 1984 coordinates of star catalogs were commonly referred to the *mean equator and equinox* of the beginning of a Besselian year (see *year, Besselian*). Beginning with 1984 the *Julian year* has been used, as denoted by the prefix J, e.g., J2000.0.

*stationary point* (of a planet): the position at which the rate of change of the apparent *right ascension* (see *apparent place*) of a planet is momentarily zero.

*sunrise, sunset*: the times at which the apparent upper limb of the Sun is on the astronomical *horizon*; i.e., when the true *zenith distance*, referred to the center of the Earth, of the central point of the disk is  $90^\circ 50'$  based on adopted values of  $34'$  for horizontal *refraction* and  $16'$  for the Sun's *semidiameter*.

*surface brightness* (or a planet): the visual magnitude of an average square arc-second area of the illuminated portion of the apparent disk.

*synodic period*: for planets, the mean interval of time between successive *conjunctions* of a pair of planets, as observed from the Sun; for satellites, the mean interval between successive conjunctions of a satellite with the Sun, as observed from the satellite's primary.

*terrestrial dynamical time* (TDT): the independent argument for apparent *geocentric ephemerides*. At 1977 January  $1^{\text{d}}00^{\text{h}}00^{\text{m}}00^{\text{s}}$  TAI, the

value of TDT was exactly 1977 January 1<sup>d</sup>.000 3725. The unit of TDT is 86 400 SI seconds at mean sea level. For practical purposes TDT = TAI + 32<sup>s</sup>.184. (See *barycentric dynamical time*; *dynamical time*; *international atomic time*.)

*terrestrial time (TT)*: identical to terrestrial dynamical time (TDT).

*terminator*: the boundary between the illuminated and dark areas of the apparent disk of the Moon, a planet or a planetary satellite.

*topocentric*: with reference to, or pertaining to, a point on the surface of the Earth, usually with reference to a coordinate system.

*transit*: the passage of a celestial object across a *meridian*; also the passage of one celestial body in front of another of greater apparent diameter (e.g., the passage of Mercury or Venus across the Sun or Jupiter's satellites across its disk); however, the passage of the Moon in front of the larger apparent Sun is called an annular eclipse (see *eclipse, annular*). The passage of a body's shadow across another body is called a shadow transit; however, the passage of the Moon's shadow across the Earth is called a solar eclipse (see *eclipse, solar*).

*true anomaly*: the angle, measured at the focus nearest the *pericenter* of an elliptical *orbit*, between the pericenter and the radius vector from the focus to the orbiting body; one of the standard orbital elements (see *elements, orbital*). (See also *eccentric anomaly, mean anomaly*.)

*true equator and equinox*: the celestial coordinate system determined by the instantaneous positions of the *celestial equator* and *ecliptic*. The motion of this system is due to the progressive effect of *precession* and the short-term, periodic variations of *nutation*. (See *mean equator and equinox*.)

*twilight*: the interval of time preceding sunrise and following sunset (see *sunrise, sunset*) during which the sky is partially illuminated. Civil twilight comprises the interval when the *zenith distance*, referred to the center of the Earth, of the central point of the Sun's disk is between 90°50' and 96°, nautical twilight comprises the interval from 96° to 102°, astronomical twilight comprises the interval from 102° to 108°.

*umbra*: the portion of a shadow cone in which none of the light from an extended light source (ignoring *refraction*) can be observed.

*universal time (UT)*: a measure of time that conforms, within a close approximation, to the mean diurnal motion of the Sun and serves as the basis of all civil timekeeping. UT is formally defined by a mathematical formula as a function of *sidereal time*. Thus UT is determined from observations of the diurnal motions of the stars. The time scale determined directly from such observations is designated UT0; it is slightly dependent on the place of observation. When UT0

is corrected for the shift in longitude of the observing station caused by *polar motion*, the time scale UT1 is obtained.

*vernal equinox*: the ascending node of the *ecliptic* on the *celestial equator*; also the time at which the apparent longitude (see *apparent place* and *longitude, celestial*) of the Sun is  $0^\circ$ . (See *equinox*.)

*vertical*: apparent direction of gravity at the point of observation (normal to the plane of a free level surface).

*year*: a period of time based on the revolution of the Earth around the Sun. The calendar year (see *Gregorian calendar*) is an approximation to the tropical year (see *year, tropical*). The anomalistic year is the mean interval between successive passages of the Earth through *perihelion*. The sidereal year is the mean period of revolution with respect to the background stars. (See *Julian year* and *year, Besselian*.)

*year, Besselian*: the period of one complete revolution in *right ascension* of the *fictitious mean sun*, as defined by Newcomb. The beginning of a Besselian year, traditionally used as a *standard epoch*, is denoted by the suffix ‘.0’. Since 1984 standard epochs have been defined by the *Julian year* rather than the Besselian year. For distinction, the beginning of a Besselian year is now identified by the prefix B (e.g., B1950.0).

*year tropical*: the period of one complete revolution of the mean longitude of the Sun with respect to the *dynamical equinox*. The tropical year is longer than the Besselian year (see *year, Besselian*) by  $0^s.148T$ , where  $T$  is centuries from B1900.0.

*zenith*: in general, the point directly overhead on the *celestial sphere*. The astronomical zenith is the extension to infinity of a plumb line. The geocentric zenith is defined by the line from the center of the Earth through the observer. The geodetic zenith is the normal to the geodetic ellipsoid or spheroid at the observer’s location. (See *deflection of the vertical*.)

*zenith distance*: angular distance on the *celestial sphere* measured along the great circle from the zenith to the celestial object. Zenith distance is  $90^\circ$  minus *altitude*.

---

(From *The Astronomical Almanac*, US Government Printing Office, with permission.)

## Bibliography

- Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.
- The Astronomical Almanac*, US Government Printing Office.
- The Astronomy and Astrophysics Encyclopedia*, Cambridge University Press, 1991.
- Astronomy and Astrophysics*, Landolt-Bornstein, Springer Verlag.
- Astrophysical Formulae*, Lang, K.R., Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- Astrophysical Quantities*, Allen, C.W., The Athlone Press, University of London, 1973.
- Compendium of Practical Astronomy*, Roth, G.D., Springer-Verlag, 1994.
- Computational Spherical Astronomy*, Taff, L.G., Wiley and Sons, 1981.
- An Introduction to Astronomical Photometry*, Golay, M.D., Reidel Publishing Company, 1974.
- Spherical Astronomy*, Green R.M., Cambridge University Press, 1985.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**

---

# Chapter 3

---

## Radio astronomy

*To the optical astronomer, radio data serves like a good dog on a hunt.* -  
Sir Fred Hoyle

Major radio surveys	186
Microwave background	187
Selected discrete radio sources	189
The brightest radio sources visible in the northern hemisphere	192
HII regions	194
Radio spectra	197
Radio flux calibrators	198
Radio propagation effects	201
<i>The Earth's atmosphere</i>	201
<i>Interplanetary medium</i>	202
<i>Interstellar medium (delay and Faraday rotation)</i>	202
<i>Interstellar medium (scintillation)</i>	203
Atmospheric opacity	203
Rotation measures of extragalactic sources	204
Ionospheric electron density	205
Letter designation of microwave bands	205
Radio-frequency lines	206
Known interstellar molecules	208
Radio pulsars	209
Bibliography	210

**Major radio surveys**

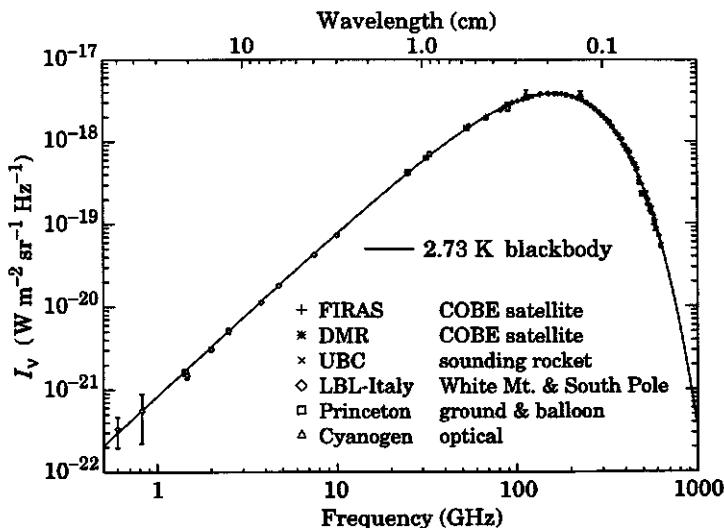
Observatory	Survey	$\nu$ (MHz)	Sources	Limit (Jy) <sup>(a)</sup>
Cambridge	3C	159	471	8
	3CR	178	—	9
	4C	178	4843	2
	5C	408	276	0.025
	6CI	151	1761	—
	6CII	151	8278	—
	6CIII	151	8749	—
	6CIV	151	5421	—
	WKB	38	1069	14
	RN	178	87	0.25
	NB	81.5	558	1
Mills Cross	MSH	86	2270	7
Parkes	PKS	408, 1410, 2650	297	4
	PKS	408, 1410	247	0.5
	PKS	408, 1410	564	0.3
	PKS	408, 1410	628	0.4
	PKS	635, 1410, 2650	397	1.5
Owens Valley	CTA	906	106	—
	CTB, CTBR	960	110	—
	CTD	1421	—	1.15
National Radio Observatory	NRAO	750, 1400	726	(3C and 3CR)
	NRAO	750, 1400	458	0.5
Bologna	B1	408	629	1
	B2	408	3235	0.2
Ohio State	O	1415	128	2, 0.5
	O	1415	236	0.37
	O	1415	1199	0.3
	O	1415	2101	0.2
Vermillion River	VRO	610.5	239	0.8
	VRO	610.5	625	0.8
Dominion Radio Observatory	DA	1420	615	2
	Dwingeloo-			
NRAO	DW	1417	188	2.3
Arecibo	AO	430	25	—
Green Bank	87GB	4.85 GHz	54,579	—
	B2	408	9929	—
	B3	408	13354	—
MIT-Green Bank	MG1	5 GHz	5974	—
	MG2	5 GHz	6182	—
	MG3	5 GHz	3427	—
	MG4	5 GHz	4621	—
Texas		365	~68,000	—
RATAN		7.6 cm	884	—

(a) 1 jansky (Jy) =  $10^{-26}$  W m $^{-2}$  Hz $^{-1}$ .

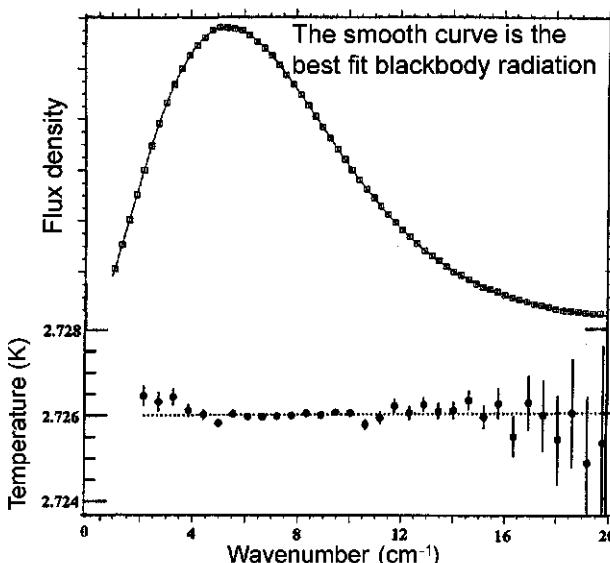
## Microwave background

---

Measurement of the surface brightness,  $I_\nu$ , of the cosmic background radiation. The spectrum of a 2.73 K blackbody emitter is also shown. (Courtesy of T. Wilkinson, Princeton University.)

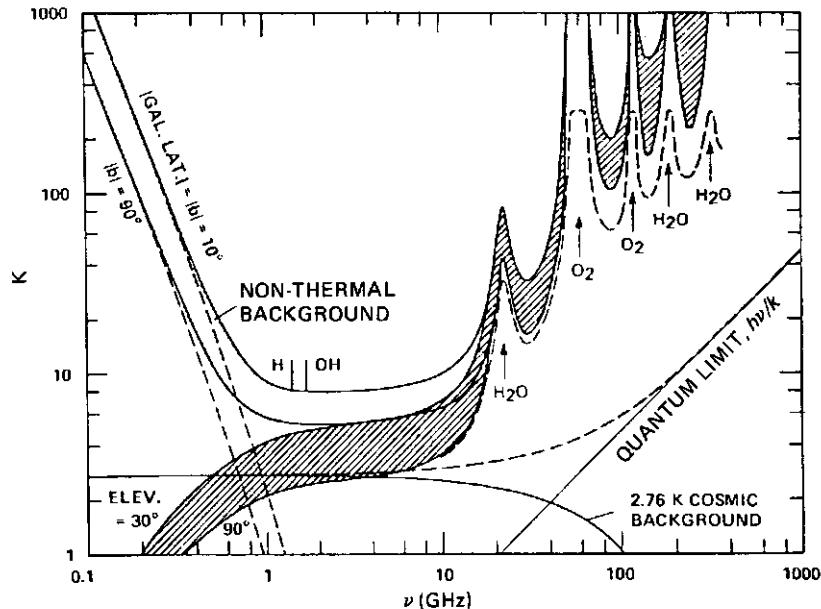


Spectrum of the cosmic microwave background (CMB) from spectrometer observations of the COBE satellite (Mather, et al., 1994, in *An Introduction to Radio Astronomy*, by Bernard F. Burke and Francis Graham-Smith, Cambridge University Press, 1997, with permission.)

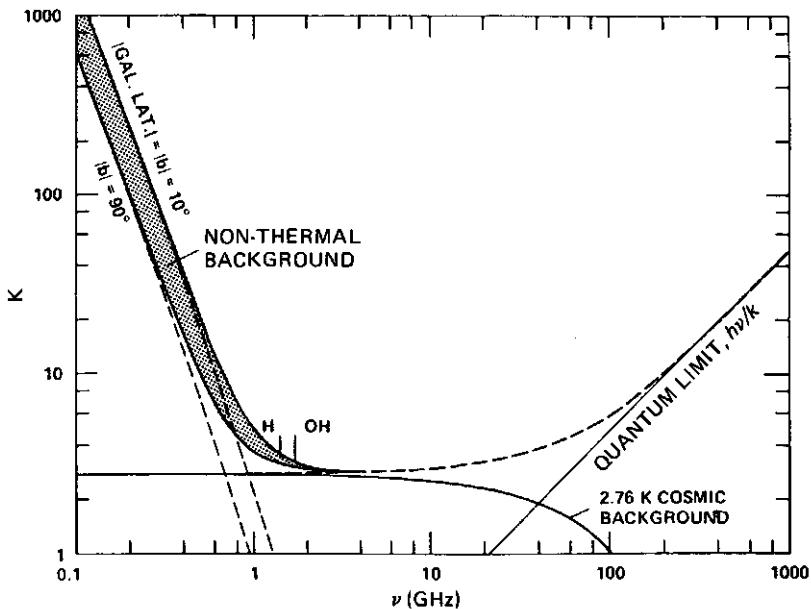


### Microwave background (cont.)

Terrestrial microwave window. (From NASA SP-419, *The Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence, SETI*.)



Free space microwave window. (From NASA SP-419, *op. cit.*)



Source			Spectral flux density (fu) <sup>(a)</sup>			Size (arcmin) (arcmin)	Log distance (pc)	Identification
	J2000.0 $\alpha$	J2000.0 $\delta$	100 (MHz)	1000 (MHz)	10 000 (MHz)			
Cas B	00 <sup>h</sup> 26 <sup>m</sup>	+64°09'	250	56	7	3.5	Tycho SN I, 1572	
And A	00 43	+41 16	190	60	140	5.8	Andr. Galaxy, M31	
	00 56	-72 44	400	100			Mult. H II region OH em	
Per A	03 19	+62 04	100	100			Seyfert Galaxy, NGC 1275	
For A	03 22	+41 30	130	20	2	7.9	Pec. Galaxy, NGC 1316?	
Per 3C 123	04 37	-37 11	400	120	Large		Gal. Nebula SN II	
	04 37	+29 40	280	70	1			
	05 02	+46 30	120	150	60 + <i>h</i> ( <i>alo</i> )			
Pic A	05 19	-45 46	400	80	Large			
	05 21	-68 57	3000	700				
Tau A	05 35	+22 01	1700	955	560	5	3.3	Crab Nebula SN I 1054
Ori Neb.	05 35	-05 22	40	340	400	10	2.7	Orion Nebula, M42
Gem 3C 157	06 18	+22 37	400	180	30 + <i>h</i>		3.1	IC 443, SN II
Mon	06 32	+04 52	400	250	70	3.0	Rosette Nebula	
Pup A	08 23	-43 07	600	150	40 + <i>h</i>			
	08 34	-45 47	500	200			2.7	Vela X (?)

Selected discrete radio sources (*cont.*)

Source	Spectral flux density (f.u) <sup>(a)</sup>						Log distance (pc)	Identification
	J2000.0 $\alpha$	J2000.0 $\delta$	100	1000	10 000	Size (arcmin)		
Hya A	09 <sup>h</sup> 18 <sup>m</sup>	-12°05'	400	60	10	1	8.4	Pec. Galaxy
Car	10 45	-59 46	500	800			3.1	Carina Nebula
3C 273	12 30	+02 02	140	50	1			Quasar
Vir A	12 30	+12 23	1800	263	40	5	7.1	Pec. Jet Galaxy, M87
Cen A	13 25	-43 02	3000	2000		5 + h	6.8	Pec. Galaxy, NGC 5128
Cen B	13 33	-60 15	600	80				
Boo 3C 295	14 12	+52 12	100	30	1			Distant galaxy
Tr A	16 14	-60 55	800	80				
3C 338	16 29	+39 32	80	7	1			4 Galaxies, NGC 6161
Her A	16 50	+04 59	700	70	8	3	8.6	Pec. Galaxy
2C 1473	17 14	-38 28	400	100				
	17 18	-00 58	400	80	10	4		Galaxy
2C 1485	17 25	-34 17	400	400	500			
Sgr A	17 31	-21 22	80	20	1		2.9	Kepler SN I, 1604
Trifid	17 46	-28 57	4000	2000	200	70	3.9	Galactic center
Lagoon	18 01	-23 24	800	300			3.0	Galactic nebula, M20
	18 04	-24 22	70	150			3.1	Galactic nebula, M8

Selected discrete radio sources (*cont.*)

Source	Spectral flux density (fu) <sup>(a)</sup>						Log distance (pc)	Identification
	J2000.0 α	J2000.0 δ	100	1000	10 000	Size (arcmin)		
Omega	18 <sup>h</sup> 05 <sup>m</sup>	-21°30'	200	150				
	18 21	-16 09	200	800	500	10	3.2	Galactic nebula, M17
	18 48	-02 03	500	300	250			
3C 392	18 56	+01 20	500	210			16	Shell source, SN
3C 398	19 10	+09 06	40	70			3	SN II region, OH em
3C 400	19 23	+14 26	400	400			60	
Cyg A	20 00	+40 43	13 800	2340	163	1.2	8.5	Radio galaxy
Cyg X	20 23	+40 22	200	400			60	
Cyg X	20 36	+41 50	150	500	50	40	3.1	? γ Cyg complex
2C 1725	20 46	+50 11	400	150			100	SN II
Cyg Loop	20 51	+30 11	400	200			150	Loops SN II
America	20 54	+44 05	700	500			150	Galactic nebula
3C 446	22 26	-04 57	30	6				Quasar
Cas A	23 23	+58 48	19 500	3300	490	4	3.4	Galactic nebula SN II

(a) Flux unit, fu =  $10^{-26}$  W m<sup>-2</sup> Hz<sup>-1</sup>.

(After Allen, C.W., *Astrophysical Quantities*, The Athlone Press, 1973, but with J2000 coordinates.)

**The brightest radio sources visible in the northern hemisphere**  
 (based on observations at the 20 cm wavelength)

Name	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	Intensity (fu)	Identification
3C 10	00 <sup>h</sup> 22 <sup>m</sup> 37 <sup>s</sup>	63°51'41"	44	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup> — Tycho's supernova
3C 20	00 40 20	51 47 10	12	Galaxy
3C 33	01 06 13	13 03 28	13	Elliptical Galaxy
3C 48	01 34 50	32 54 20	16	Quasar
3C 58	02 01 52	64 35 17	34	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup>
3C 84	03 16 30	41 19 52	14	Seyfert Galaxy
Fornax A	03 20 42	-37 25 00	115	Spiral Galaxy
NRAO 1560	04 00 00	51 08 00	26	
NRAO 1650	04 07 08	50 58 00	19	
3C 111	04 15 02	37 54 29	15	
3C 123	04 33 55	29 34 14	47	Galaxy
Pictor A	05 18 18	-45 49 39	66	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 139.1	05 19 21	33 25 00	40	Emission nebula <sup>(a)</sup>
NRAO 2068	05 21 13	-36 30 19	19	N Galaxy <sup>(c)</sup>
3C 144	05 31 30	21 59 00	875	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup> — Crab Nebula-Taurus A
3C 145	05 32 51	-05 25 00	520	Emission nebula <sup>(a)</sup> — Orion A-NGC 1976
3C 147	05 38 44	49 49 42	23	Quasar
3C 147.1	05 39 11	-01 55 42	65	Emission nebula <sup>(a)</sup> — Orion B-NGC 2024
3C 153.1	06 06 53	20 30 40	29	Emission nebula <sup>(a)</sup>
3C 161	06 24 43	-05 51 14	19	
3C 196	08 09 59	48 22 07	14	Quasar
3C 218	09 15 41	-11 53 05	43	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 270	12 16 50	06 06 09	18	Elliptical Galaxy
3C 273	12 26 33	02 19 42	46	Quasar
3C 274	12 28 18	12 40 02	198	Elliptical Galaxy— M87-Virgo A
3C 279	12 53 36	-5 31 08	11	Quasar
Centaurus A	13 22 32	-42 45 24	1330	Elliptical Galaxy— NGC 5128
3C 286	13 28 50	30 45 58	15	Quasar
3C 295	14 09 33	52 26 13	23	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 348	16 48 41	05 04 36	45	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 353	17 17 56	-00 55 53	57	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 358	17 27 41	-21 27 11	15	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup> — Kepler's supernova
3C 380	18 28 13	48 42 41	14	Quasar
NRAO 5670	18 28 51	-02 06 00	12	
NRAO 5690	18 32 41	-07 22 00	90	
NRAO 5720	18 35 33	-06 50 18	30	
3C 387	18 38 35	-05 11 00	51	

**The brightest radio sources visible in the northern hemisphere  
(cont.)**

Name	$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	Intensity (fu)	Identification
NRAO 5790	18 <sup>h</sup> 43 <sup>m</sup> 30 <sup>s</sup>	-02°46'39"	19	
3C 390.2	18 44 25	-02 33 00	80	
3C 390.3	18 45 53	79 42 47	12	N Galaxy
3C 391	18 46 49	-00 58 58	21	
NRAO 5840	18 50 52	01 08 18	15	
3C 392	18 53 38	01 15 10	171	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup>
NRAO 5890	18 59 16	01 42 31	14	
3C 396	19 01 39	05 21 54	14	
3C 397	19 04 57	07 01 50	29	
NRAO 5980	19 07 55	08 59 09	47	
3C 398	19 08 43	08 59 49	33	
NRAO 6010	19 11 59	11 03 30	10	
NRAO 6020	19 13 19	10 57 00	35	
NRAO 6070	19 15 47	12 06 00	11	
3C 400	19 20 40	14 06 00	576	
NRAO 6107	19 32 20	-46 27 32	13	
3C 403.2	19 52 19	32 46 00	75	
3C 405	19 57 44	40 35 46	1495	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup> —Cygnus A
NRAO 6210	19 59 49	33 09 00	55	
3C 409	20 12 18	23 25 42	14	
3C 410	20 18 05	29 32 41	10	
NRAO 6365	20 37 14	42 09 07	20	Emission nebula <sup>(a)</sup>
NRAO 6435	21 04 25	-25 39 06	12	Elliptical Galaxy
NRAO 6500	21 11 06	52 13 00	46	
3C 433	21 21 31	24 51 18	12	D Galaxy <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 434.1	21 23 26	51 42 14	12	
NRAO 6620	21 27 41	50 35 00	37	
NRAO 6635	21 34 05	00 28 26	10	Quasar
3C 452	22 43 33	39 25 28	11	Elliptical Galaxy
3C 454.3	22 51 29	15 52 54	11	Quasar
3C 461	23 21 07	58 32 47	2477	Supernova remnant <sup>(a)</sup> — Cassiopeia A

fu =  $10^{-26}$  W m $^{-2}$  Hz $^{-1}$ .

(a) Supernova remnants and emission nebulae lie within our own galaxy.

(b) Galaxy refers to a Dumbbell-shaped galaxy.

(c) N Galaxy refers to a galaxy with a bright nucleus.

(Adapted from Verschuur, G.L., *The Invisible Universe*, Springer-Verlag, 1974.)

**Broad classification scheme for H II regions**

Name of the object observed	Observed characteristics	Diameter [pc]	$N_e$ [ $\text{cm}^{-3}$ ]	Stage of development	Examples
Compact infrared source at $\approx 20\mu\text{m}$	Continuous emission at $\approx 20\mu\text{m}$ , but not at $2\mu\text{m}$ ; no radio continuum; optically not detectable	$\lesssim 0.05$	$> 5 \times 10^3$	Pre-Main Sequence O-star in a shell, opaque to optical radiation, including UV ("cocoon star")	IRS 5 in W 3
Compact HII region	Thermal radiocontinuum; infrared continuum; usually not detectable in the visible	$0.05\dots 1$	$\gtrsim 10^3$	Earliest phase of development of an H II region	Components in W 75, DR 21 and in NGC 7338 (see Table 4.10)
Complex HII region of intermediate density	Continuous and line radiation in the optical, infrared and radio-frequency regions	$1\dots 100$	$10\dots 10^3$	Expanding H II region	M 42, M 17
Large diffuse HII region	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Continuous and line} \\ \text{radiation in the optical, infrared and} \\ \text{radio-frequency regions} \end{array} \right\}$	$> 100$	$\lesssim 10$	Very far expanded H II region	NGC 7000 (North America Nebula)

(From *Physics of the Galaxy and Interstellar Matter*, Scheffler, H. & Elsaesser, H., Springer-Verlag, 1987, with permission.)

## Compact HII regions (contained in larger objects)

Extended object	Compact components	$\alpha_{1950}$	$\delta_{1950}$	Angular diameter [arcsec]	Distance [kpc]	Linear diameter [pc]
W3 (with opt. nebula C IC 1795)	A1-A5	$2^h 21^m 56\overset{s}{.}6$	$+61^\circ 52' 43''$	28 ... 35	3.1	0.4 ... 0.5
	C	$2^h 21^m 43\overset{s}{.}6$	$+61^\circ 52' 46''$	5		0.071
	W3(OH), comp. A	$2^h 23^m 16\overset{s}{.}5$	$+61^\circ 38' 57''$	1.5		0.024
M42	Ori A, G 209.0-19.4	$5^h 32^m 50\overset{s}{.}8$	$-5^\circ 25' 15''$	240	0.5	0.6
M8	A1 (Ring)	$18^h 00^m 37\overset{s}{.}0$	$-24^\circ 22' 50''$	15	1.4	0.10
	A4	$18^h 00^m 36\overset{s}{.}3$	$-24^\circ 22' 52''$	46		0.32
M17	S	$18^h 17^m 34\overset{s}{.}8$	$-16^\circ 13' 24''$	220	2.1	2.3
	N	$18^h 17^m 39\overset{s}{.}8$	$-16^\circ 10' 30''$	280		2.9
	E	$18^h 17^m 51\overset{s}{.}8$	$-16^\circ 11' 30''$	190		2.0
W51	G49.5-0.4d	$19^h 21^m 22\overset{s}{.}8$	$+14^\circ 25' 15''$	11	7.3	0.4
	e	$19^h 21^m 24\overset{s}{.}4$	$+14^\circ 24' 43''$	19		0.7
W75	DR 21 A	$20^h 37^m 13\overset{s}{.}7$	$+42^\circ 08' 55''$	5.7	3.0	0.083
	B	$20^h 37^m 14\overset{s}{.}0$	$+42^\circ 09' 03''$	4.0		0.058
	C	$20^h 37^m 14\overset{s}{.}1$	$+42^\circ 08' 54''$	7.1		0.101
	D	$20^h 37^m 14\overset{s}{.}2$	$+42^\circ 09' 15''$	4.2		0.062
NGC 7538 = S 158	A1	$23^h 11^m 30\overset{s}{.}3$	$+61^\circ 12' 56''$	110	2.5	1.4
	A2	$23^h 11^m 20\overset{s}{.}8$	$+61^\circ 13' 45''$	10		0.12
	B	$23^h 11^m 36\overset{s}{.}7$	$+61^\circ 12' 00''$	12		0.15
	C	$23^h 11^m 36\overset{s}{.}7$	$+61^\circ 11' 50''$	1.0		0.013

(From *Physics of the Galaxy and Interstellar Matter*, Scheffler, H. & Elsaesser, H., Springer-Verlag, 1987, with permission.)

## Compact HII regions (which are also observed as infrared sources)

Extended object	Compact components		$\Phi(20 \mu\text{m})$	$\frac{\Phi(20 \mu\text{m})}{\Phi(6 \text{ cm})}$	$L_{\text{IR}}$ [ $L_\odot$ ]
	Radio source	IR source	[Jy]		
W3	A1-A5	IRS 1	$2 \times 10^3$	70	$3 \times 10^5$
	C	IRS 4	$3 \times 10^3$	500	—
	W3 (OH)	IRS 8	$2 \times 10^2$	300	$2 \times 10^5$
M42	G209.0-19.4	IRe 1	$1.4 \times 10^5$	500	$4 \times 10^5$
	M8	A1-A4	$1.3 \times 10^3$	30	$5 \times 10^4$
M17	S	IRe 1	$5 \times 10^4$	220	$5 \times 10^6$
	N	IRe 2a	$3 \times 10^4$	140	
	W51	G49.5-0.4d	IRS 2	$1.5 \times 10^3$	
W75	c	IRS 1	—	—	$5 \times 10^6$
	DR 21 D	DR 21 N	$1 \times 10^2$	50	$6 \times 10^4$
	NGC 7538	B	IRS 2	$7 \times 10^2$	500
= S 158	C	IRS 1	$2 \times 10^2$	1700	$3 \times 10^4$

The measured radiation flux at the earth at  $\lambda = 20 \mu\text{m}$  and  $\lambda = 6 \text{ cm}$  ( $\nu = 5 \text{ GHz}$ ) are denoted by  $\Phi(20 \mu\text{m})$  and  $\Phi(6 \text{ cm})$ , respectively.  $L_{\text{IR}}$  is the total infrared luminosity of the source in units of solar luminosity  $L_\odot = 4 \times 10^{26} \text{ W}$ . 1 jansky (Jy) =  $10^{-26} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ Hz}^{-1}$ .

(From *Physics of the Galaxy and Interstellar Matter*, Scheffler, H. & Elsaesser, H., Springer-Verlag, 1987, with permission.)

**Compact HII regions (physical parameters)**

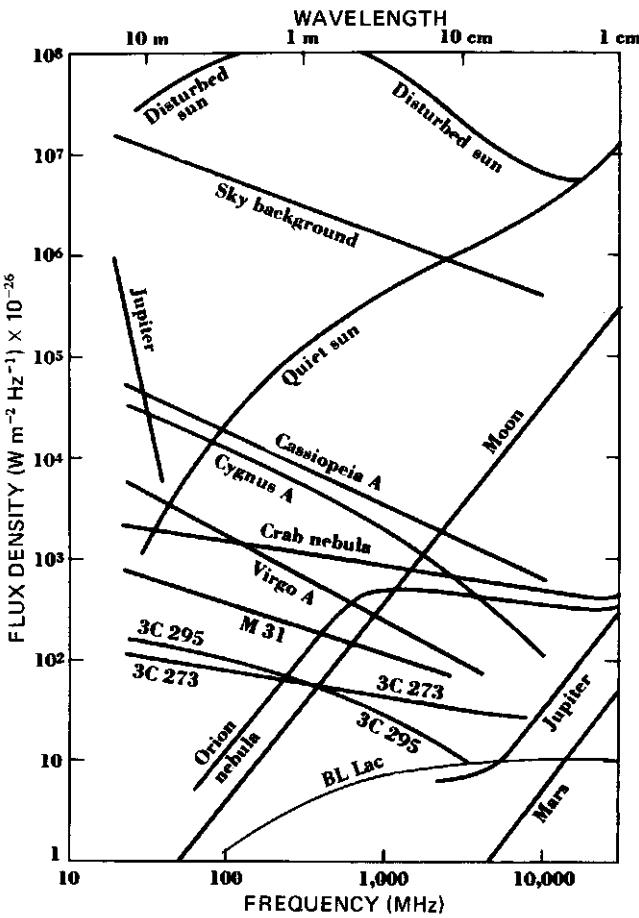
Object	$T_e$ [K]	$E$ [pc cm $^{-6}$ ]	$\overline{(N_e^2)}^{1/2}$ [cm $^{-3}$ ]	$u$ [pc cm $^{-2}$ ]	$L_e$ [s $^{-1}$ ]	$\mathcal{M}(\text{H II})$ [ $M_\odot$ ]
W3, A1-A5	8400	$2 \times 10^7$	$6 \times 10^3$	83	$4 \times 10^{49}$	10
W3(OH)	10000	$1 \times 10^9$	$2 \times 10^5$	54	$3 \times 10^{48}$	0.1
M42	8200	$6 \times 10^6$	$5 \times 10^3$	55	$7 \times 10^{48}$	10
NGC2237-46	8000	$3 \times 10^4$	20	80	$2 \times 10^{49}$	$1 \times 10^4$
M20	8000	$5 \times 10^4$	$1 \times 10^2$	50	$5 \times 10^{48}$	$2 \times 10^2$
M8	8000	$4 \times 10^5$	$6 \times 10^2$	64	$1 \times 10^{49}$	$2 \times 10^2$
M17, main source (S)	7700	$5 \times 10^6$	$2 \times 10^3$	170	$2 \times 10^{50}$	$10^2$
M16	8000	$4 \times 10^5$	$2 \times 10^2$	120	$7 \times 10^{49}$	$7 \times 10^2$
W51, main source	7300	$5 \times 10^7$	$8 \times 10^2$	190	$3 \times 10^{50}$	$10^2$
W75, DR21 A	8400	$5 \times 10^7$	$2 \times 10^4$	36	$2 \times 10^{48}$	0.2
B		$5 \times 10^7$	$3 \times 10^4$	27	$7 \times 10^{47}$	0.1
C		$9 \times 10^7$	$3 \times 10^4$	49	$4 \times 10^{48}$	0.4
D		$4 \times 10^7$	$3 \times 10^4$	27	$7 \times 10^{47}$	0.1
NGC 7538 A1	7900	$8 \times 10^5$	$1 \times 10^3$	60	$8 \times 10^{48}$	33
A2		$2 \times 10^6$	$4 \times 10^3$	14	$1 \times 10^{47}$	0.1
B		$7 \times 10^6$	$6 \times 10^3$	26	$7 \times 10^{47}$	0.3
C		$1 \times 10^7$	$1 \times 10^5$	12	$7 \times 10^{46}$	0.002
NGC 7000	7000	$4 \times 10^3$	10	100	$4 \times 10^{49}$	$2 \times 10^4$

Mean electron temperature  $T_e$ , emission measure  $E$ , root mean square electron density  $\overline{(N_e^2)}^{1/2}$ , excitation parameter  $u$ , total number of Lyman continuum photons per s  $L_c$  and total mass of ionised hydrogen  $\mathcal{M}(\text{H II})$  for a selection of H II regions.

(From *Physics of the Galaxy and Interstellar Matter*, Scheffler, H. & Elsaesser, H., Springer-Verlag, 1987, with permission)

**Radio spectra**

Spectra of typical radio sources. (Adapted from Kraus, J.D., *Radio Astronomy*, McGraw-Hill Co., 1966.)



**Radio flux calibrators**  
*(a) Spectral parameters of telescope calibrators*

Source	Frequency interval	Spectral parameters $\log S [Jy] = a + b \cdot \log \nu [\text{MHz}] + c \cdot \log^2 \nu [\text{MHz}]$		
		<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>
3C 48	405 MHz...15 GHz	2.345	$\pm 0.030$	+0.071 $\pm 0.001$
3C 123	405 MHz...15 GHz	2.921	$\pm 0.025$	-0.002 $\pm 0.001$
3C 147	405 MHz...15 GHz	1.766	$\pm 0.017$	+0.447 $\pm 0.006$
3C 161	405 MHz...10.7 GHz	1.633	$\pm 0.016$	+0.498 $\pm 0.008$
3C 218	405 MHz...10.7 GHz	4.497	$\pm 0.038$	-0.910 $\pm 0.011$
3C 227	405 MHz...15 GHz	3.460	$\pm 0.055$	-0.827 $\pm 0.016$
3C 249.1	405 MHz...15 GHz	1.230	$\pm 0.027$	+0.288 $\pm 0.007$
3C 286	405 MHz...15 GHz	1.480	$\pm 0.018$	+0.292 $\pm 0.006$
3C 295	405 MHz...15 GHz	1.485	$\pm 0.013$	+0.759 $\pm 0.009$
3C 348	405 MHz...10.7 GHz	4.963	$\pm 0.045$	-1.052 $\pm 0.014$
3C 353	405 MHz...10.7 GHz	2.944	$\pm 0.031$	-0.034 $\pm 0.001$
DR 21	7 GHz...31 GHz	1.81	$\pm 0.05$	-0.122 $\pm 0.010$
NGC 7027	10 GHz...31 GHz	1.32	$\pm 0.08$	-0.127 $\pm 0.012$

(b) Characteristics, position, and flux densities of telescope calibrators ( $J2000.0$ )

Source	$\alpha$ [h m s]	$\delta$ [° ′ ″]	$b^{II}$ [°]	$S_{400}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{750}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{1400}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{1665}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{2700}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{5000}$ [ $J_y$ ]
3C 48	1 37 41.299	+33 09 35.41	-29	39.4	25.6	15.9	13.9	9.20	5.24
3C 123	4 37 04.4	+29 40 15	-12	119.2	77.7	48.7	42.4	28.5	16.5
3C 147	5 42 36.127	+49 51 07.23	+10	48.2	33.9	22.4	19.8	13.6	7.98
3C 161	6 27 10.0	- 5 53 07	- 8	41.2	28.9	19.0	16.8	11.4	6.62
3C 218	9 18 06.0	-12 05 45	+25	134.6	76.0	43.1	36.8	23.7	13.5
3C 227	9 47 46.4	+ 7 25 12	+42	20.3	12.1	7.21	6.25	4.19	2.52
3C 249.1	11 04 11.5	+76 59 01	+39	6.1	4.0	2.48	2.14	1.40	0.77
3C 274	12 30 49.6	+12 23 21	+74	625.0	365.0	214	184	122	71.9
3C 286	13 31 08.284	+30 30 32.94	+81	25.1	19.7	14.8	13.6	10.5	7.30
3C 295	14 11 20.7	+52 12 09	+61	54.1	36.3	22.3	19.2	12.2	6.36
3C 348	16 51 08.3	+ 4 59 26	+29	168.1	86.8	45.0	37.5	22.6	11.8
3C 353	17 20 29.5	- 0 58 52		131.1	88.2	57.3	50.5	35.0	21.2
DR 21	20 39 01.2	+42 19 45	+ 1	-	-	-	-	-	-
NGC 7027 <sup>(d)</sup>	21 07 01.6	+42 14 10	- 3	-	-	1.35	1.65	3.5	5.7

(b) Characteristics, position, and flux densities of telescope calibrators ( $J2000.0$ ) (cont.)

Source	$S_{8000}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{10700}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{15000}$ [ $J_y$ ]	$S_{22235}$ [ $J_y$ ]	Spec.	Ident.	Polar. (at 5 GHz) [%]	Ang. size (at 1.4 GHz) ['"]
3C 48	3.31	2.46	1.72	1.11	$C^-$	QSS	5	< 1
3C 123	10.6	7.94	5.63	3.71	$C^-$	GAL	2	20
3C 147	5.10	3.80	2.65	1.71	$C^-$	QSS	< 1	< 1
3C 161	4.18	3.09	2.14	—	$C^-$	GAL	5	< 3
3C 218	8.81	6.77	—	—	$S$	GAL	1	core 25 halo 200
3C 227	1.71	1.34	1.02	0.73	$S$	GAL	7	180
3C 249.1	0.47	0.34	0.23	—	$S$	QSS	—	15
3C 274	48.1	37.5	28.1	20.0	$S$	GAL	1	halo 400 <sup>(a)</sup>
3C 286	5.38	4.40	3.44	2.55	$C^-$	QSS	11	< 5
3C 295	3.65	2.53	1.61	0.92	$C^-$	GAL	0.1	4
3C 348	7.19	5.30	—	—	$S$	GAL	8	115 <sup>(b)</sup>
3C 353	14.2	10.9	—	—	$C^-$	GAL	5	150
DR 21	21.6	20.8	20.0	19.0	$Th$	HII	—	20 <sup>(c)</sup>
NGC 7027 <sup>(d)</sup>	—	6.43	6.16	5.86	$Th$	PN	< 1	10

<sup>(a)</sup> Halo has steep spectral index, so for  $\lambda \leq 6$  cm, more than 90% of the flux is in the core.<sup>(b)</sup> Angular distance between the two components.<sup>(c)</sup> Angular size at 2 cm, but consists of 5 smaller components.<sup>(d)</sup> Data up to 5 GHz are the direct measurements, not calculated from fit.

Systematic errors over the frequency range 0.4–15 GHz are less than 4%.

(From Baars, J. W. M., Genzel, R., Pauliny-Toth, I. I. K., Witzel, A., *Astron. Astrophys.* **61**, 99 (1977).)

## Radio propagation effects

---



---

### *The Earth's atmosphere (> 25 MHz)*

$$S(z) = S_0 d^{-X(z)}$$

where

$S(z)$  = the flux measured at zenith distance  $z$ ,

$S_0$  = flux outside the atmosphere,

$d$  = the attenuation at the zenith for airmass 1,

$X(z)$  = relative airmass in units of the airmass at the zenith.

For a plane parallel atmospheric model:

$$X(z) = \sec z = \frac{1}{\cos z}$$

Taking into account the Earth's and troposphere's curvature:

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{H} \int_R^{R+H} \frac{\rho(r)/\rho(R)}{\left[1 - \left(\frac{R}{r} \frac{n_0}{n}\right)^2 \sin^2 z\right]^{1/2}} dr$$

where

$R$  = radius of Earth,

$H$  = height of atmosphere,

$\rho(r)$  = gas density of the atmosphere at radius  $r$ ,

$n$  = index of refraction at radius  $r$ .

$n_0$  = index of refraction at radius  $R$ .

Up to  $X = 5.2$  the following equation gives  $X(z)$ , with an error less than  $6.4 \times 10^{-4}$ .

$$X(z) = -0.0045 + 1.00672 \sec z - 0.002234 \sec^2 z - 0.0006247 \sec^3 z$$

(After K. Rohlfs, *Tools of Radio Astronomy*, Springer-Verlag, 1986.)

### ***Interplanetary medium***

The electron density as a function of distance from the Sun:

$$\mathcal{N}_e = [1.55r^{-6} + 2.99r^{-16}] \times 10^{14} \text{ (m}^{-3}\text{)}, r < 4,$$

where  $r$  is the radial distance from the Sun in units of the solar radius,

$$\mathcal{N}_e = 5 \times 10^{11}r^{-2} \text{ (m}^{-3}\text{), } 4 < r < 20.$$

The scattering angle due to the interplanetary medium may be approximated by:

$$\theta_s \simeq 50 \left( \frac{\lambda}{p} \right)^2 \text{ (arcmin),}$$

where  $\lambda$  is in meters and  $p$ , the solar impact parameter, is in solar radii.

### ***Interstellar medium (delay and Faraday rotation)***

The smooth, ionized component of the interstellar medium of the Galaxy affects propagation by introducing delay and Faraday rotation. The time of arrival of a pulse of radiation is:

$$t_p = \int_0^L \frac{dz}{v_g},$$

where  $L$  is the propagation path,  $v_g$  is the group velocity;

$$\frac{dt_p}{d\nu} \simeq -\frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 mc\nu^3} \int_0^L \mathcal{N}_e dz.$$

The integral of  $\mathcal{N}_e$  over the path length is called the *dispersion measure*,

$$D_m = \int_0^L \mathcal{N}_e dz,$$

The magnetic field of the Galaxy causes Faraday rotation of the polarization plane of radiation from extragalactic radio sources.

$$\Delta\psi = \lambda^2 R_m,$$

where  $R_m$  is the *rotation measure* given by

$$R_m = 8.1 \times 10^5 \int \mathcal{N}_e B_{\parallel} dz.$$

Here  $R_m$  is in radians per square meter,  $\lambda$  is in meters,  $B_{\parallel}$  is the longitudinal component of magnetic field in gauss (1 gauss =  $10^{-4}$  tesla),  $\mathcal{N}_e$  is in centimeters $^{-3}$ ,  $dz$  is in parsecs (pc) (1 pc =  $3.1 \times 10^{16}$  m), and  $\Delta\psi$  is the change in position angle of the electric field:

$$B_{\parallel} \simeq 2\mu G,$$

$$R_m \simeq -18|\cot b| \cos(l - 94^\circ),$$

where  $l$  and  $b$  are the galactic longitude and latitude, respectively.

**Interstellar medium** (scintillation)

Approximate formulae for interstellar scintillation:

$$\begin{aligned}\theta_s &\simeq 7.5\lambda^{11/5} & (\text{arcsec}), \quad |b| \leq 6^\circ \\ &\simeq 0.5|\sin b|^{-3/5}\lambda^{11/5} & (\text{arcsec}), \quad 0^\circ < |b| < 3^\circ - 5^\circ \\ &\simeq 13|\sin b|^{-3/5}\lambda^{11/5} & (\text{milliarcsec}), \quad |b| \geq 3^\circ - 5^\circ \\ &\simeq \frac{15}{\sqrt{|\sin b|}}\lambda^2 & (\text{milliarcsec}), \quad |b| > 15^\circ,\end{aligned}$$

where  $b$  is the galactic latitude and  $\lambda$  is the wavelength in meters.

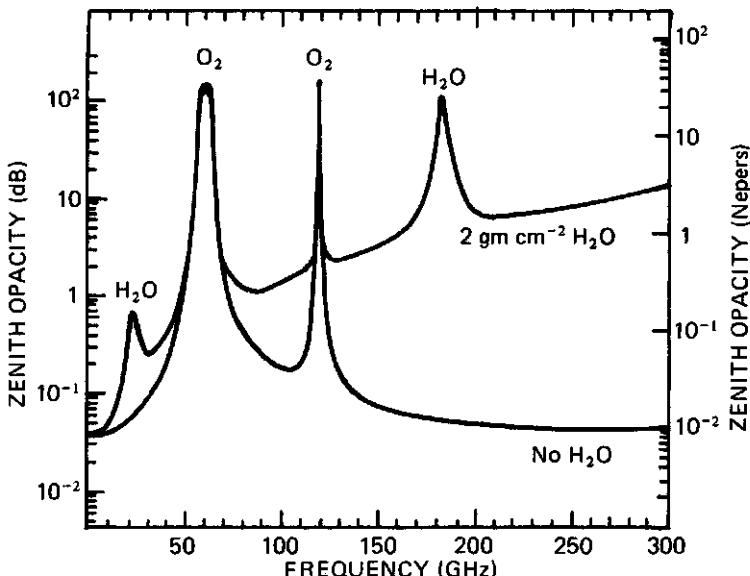
The accuracy of the approximations above decreases with decreasing  $|b|$ . In particular, the scattering angle at low latitudes,  $|b| < 1^\circ$ , can take on a large range of values.

(Adapted from Thompson, A.R., Moran, J.M. & Swenson, G.W., *Interferometry and Synthesis in Radio Astronomy*, Wiley-Interscience, 1986.)

(For propagation effects in the neutral lower atmosphere, see Thompson *et al.*, *op. cit.*)

**Atmospheric opacity**

Atmospheric zenith opacity. The absorption from narrow ozone lines has been omitted. (From Thompson, A.R. *et al.*, *op. cit.*)



### Rotation measures of extragalactic sources

The magnitudes and signs of the rotations measures of 976 extragalactic radio sources plotted in galactic coordinates. (1992 data; figure from P. P. Kronberg; private communication.)

If  $\theta$  is the observed and  $\theta_0$  is the intrinsic polarization angle measured in rad, and  $\lambda$  the wavelength in meters,

$$\theta = \theta_0 + R_m \lambda^2$$

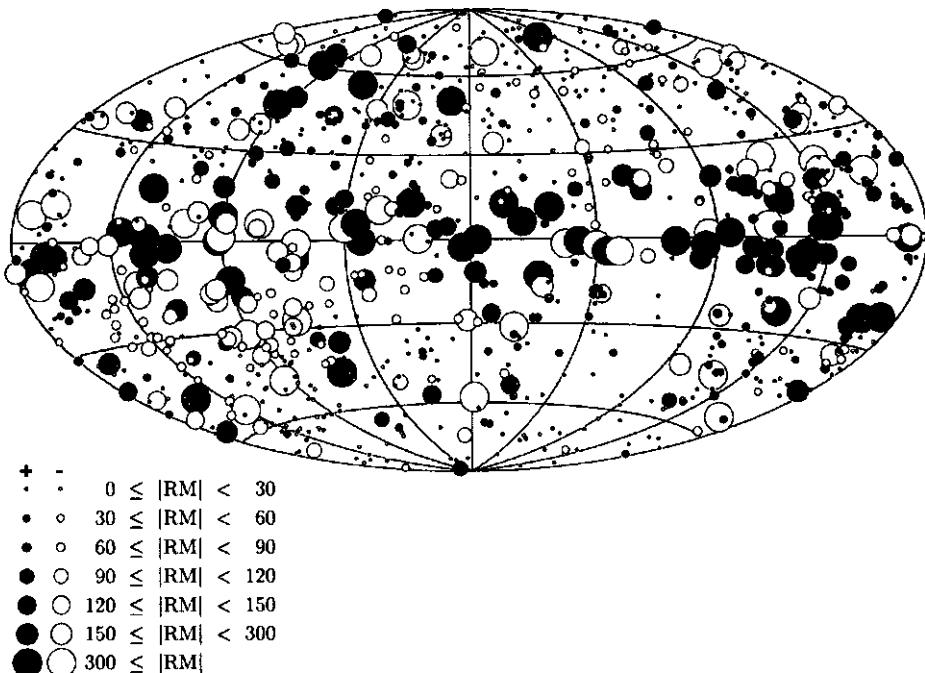
The differential rotation  $d\theta$  across a bandwidth  $d\nu$  centered at frequency  $\nu$  is given by:

$$d\theta = -2R_m \lambda^2 d\nu / \nu$$

The rotation measure  $R_m$  (rad m<sup>-2</sup>) depends on the properties of the medium:

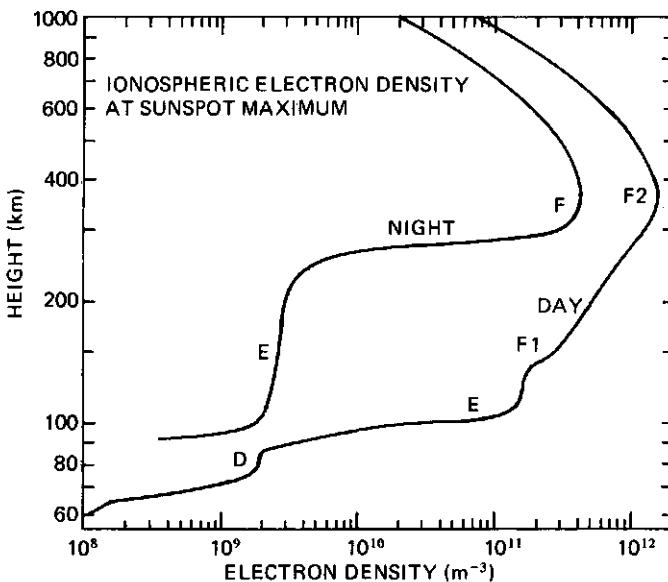
$$R_m = 8.1 \times 10^5 \int N_e B_{\parallel} dz.$$

where  $N_e$  is the electron density in cm<sup>-3</sup>,  $B_{\parallel}$  is the magnetic field along the line-of-sight in Gauss, and  $z$  is the distance to the source in parsecs.



### **Ionospheric electron density**

Idealized electron density distribution in the Earth's ionosphere. The curves drawn indicate the densities to be expected at sunspot maximum in temperate latitudes. (From Evans & Hagfors, 1968.)



### **Letter designations of microwave bands**

Band	Frequency (GHz)	Wavelength (cm)	Wavenumber ( $\text{cm}^{-1}$ )
L-Band	1–2	30–15	0.033–0.067
S-Band	1–4	15–7.5	0.067–0.133
C-Band	4–8	7.5–3.7	0.133–0.267
X-Band	8–12	3.7–2.5	0.267–0.4
Ku-Band	12–18	2.5–1.7	0.4–0.6
K-Band	18–27	1.7–1.1	0.6–0.9
Ka-Band	27–40	1.1–0.75	0.9–1.33

### Radio-frequency lines of importance to astrophysics

Substance	Rest frequency
Deuterium (DI)	327.384 MHz
Hydrogen (HI)	1420.406 MHz
Hydroxyl radical (OH)	1612.231 MHz
Hydroxyl radical (OH)	1665.402 MHz
Hydroxyl radical (OH)	1667.359 MHz
Hydroxyl radical (OH)	1720.530 MHz
Methylidyne (CH)	3263.794 MHz
Methylidyne (CH)	3335.481 MHz
Methylidyne (CH)	3349.193 MHz
Formaldehyde ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}$ )	4829.660 MHz
Methanol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ )	6668.518 MHz
Ionized helium isotope ( ${}^3\text{HeII}$ )	8665.650 MHz
Methanol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ )	12.178 GHz
Formaldehyde ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}$ )	14.488 GHz
Cyclopropenylidene ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_2$ )	18.343 GHz
Water vapour ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )	22.235 GHz
Ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ )	23.694 GHz
Ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ )	23.723 GHz
Ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ )	23.870 GHz
Silicon monoxide ( $\text{SiO}$ )	42.821 GHz
Silicon monoxide ( $\text{SiO}$ )	43.122 GHz
Carbon monosulphide (CS)	48.991 GHz
Deuterated formylium ( $\text{DCO}^+$ )	72.039 GHz
Silicon monoxide ( $\text{SiO}$ )	86.243 GHz
Formylium ( $\text{H}^{13}\text{CO}^+$ )	86.754 GHz
Silicon monoxide ( $\text{SiO}$ )	86.847 GHz
Ethylyn radical ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}$ )	87.300 GHz
Hydrogen cyanide (HCN)	88.632 GHz
Formylium ( $\text{HCO}^+$ )	89.189 GHz
Hydrogen isocyanide (HNC)	90.664 GHz
Diazenylium ( $\text{N}_2\text{H}$ )	93.174 GHz
Carbon monosulphide (CS)	97.981 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}$ )	109.782 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( ${}^{13}\text{CO}$ )	110.201 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $\text{C}^{17}\text{O}$ )	112.359 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	115.271 GHz
Formaldehyde ( $\text{H}_2{}^{13}\text{CO}$ )	137.450 GHz
Formaldehyde ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}$ )	140.840 GHz
Carbon monosulphide (CS)	146.969 GHz
Water vapour ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )	183.310 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}$ )	219.560 GHz

**Radio-frequency lines of importance to astrophysics (*cont.*)**

Substance	Rest frequency
Carbon monoxide ( $^{13}\text{CO}$ )	220.399 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	230.538 GHz
Carbon monosulphide (CS)	244.953 GHz
Hydrogen cyanide (HCN)	265.886 GHz
Formylium ( $\text{HCO}^+$ )	267.557 GHz
Hydrogen isocyanide (HNC)	271.981 GHz
Diazenylium ( $\text{N}_2\text{H}^+$ )	279.511 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}$ )	329.330 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $^{13}\text{CO}$ )	330.587 GHz
Carbon monosulphide (CS)	342.883 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	345.796 GHz
Hydrogen cyanide (HCN)	354.484 GHz
Formylium ( $\text{HCO}^+$ )	356.734 GHz
Diazenylium ( $\text{N}_2\text{H}^+$ )	372.672 GHz
Water vapour ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )	380.197 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}$ )	439.088 GHz
Carbon monoxide ( $^{13}\text{CO}$ )	440.765 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	461.041 GHz
Heavy water (HDO)	464.925 GHz
Carbon (CI)	492.162 GHz
Water vapour ( $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ )	547.676 GHz
Water vapour ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )	556.936 GHz
Ammonia ( $^{15}\text{NH}_3$ )	572.113 GHz
Ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ )	572.498 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	691.473 GHz
Hydrogen cyanide (HCN)	797.433 GHz
Formylium ( $\text{HCO}^+$ )	802.653 GHz
Carbon monoxide (CO)	806.652 GHz
Carbon (CI)	809.350 GHz

$$\lambda(\text{m}) = 0.2997925/f(\text{GHz}).$$

(From the *IAU Information Bulletin*, January 1992.)

**Known interstellar molecules (March 1999)**

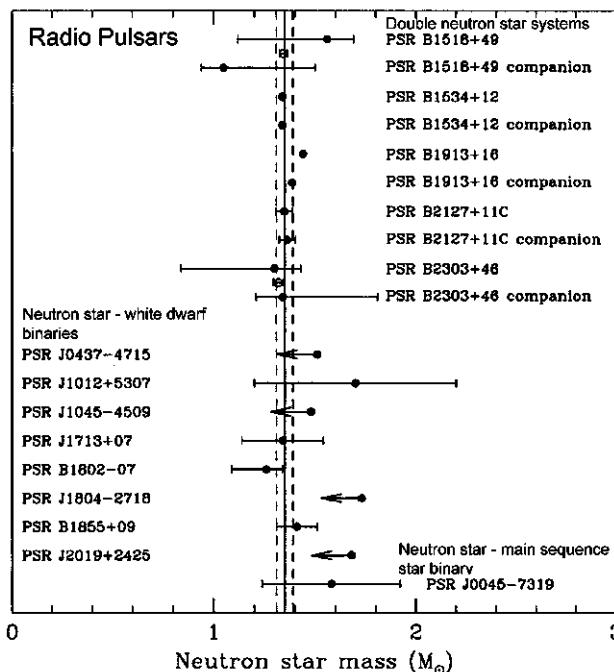
					Number of Atoms			
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
H <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O	NH <sub>3</sub>	SH <sub>4</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub> OH	CH <sub>3</sub> CHO	CH <sub>3</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	
OH	H <sub>2</sub> S	H <sub>3</sub> O <sup>+</sup>	CH <sub>4</sub>	NH <sub>2</sub> CHO	CH <sub>3</sub> NH <sub>2</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>2</sub> CN	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> O	
SO	SO <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> CO	CHOOH	CH <sub>3</sub> CN	CH <sub>3</sub> CCH	C <sub>7</sub> H	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CN	
SO <sup>+</sup>	HN <sup>+</sup>	H <sub>2</sub> CS	HC≡CCN	CH <sub>3</sub> NC	CH <sub>2</sub> CHCN	H <sub>2</sub> C <sub>6</sub>	H(C≡C) <sub>3</sub> CN	
SiO	HNO	HNCO	CH <sub>2</sub> NH	CH <sub>3</sub> SH	HC <sub>4</sub> CN	C <sub>7</sub> <sup>-</sup>	H(C≡C) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>	
SiS	SiH <sub>2</sub> ?	HNCS	NH <sub>2</sub> CN	C <sub>5</sub> H	C <sub>6</sub> H	C <sub>8</sub> H		
NO	NH <sub>2</sub>	CCCN	H <sub>2</sub> CCO	HC <sub>2</sub> CHO	c-CH <sub>2</sub> OCH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>9</sub> <sup>-</sup>		
NS	H <sub>3</sub> <sup>+</sup>	HCO <sup>+</sup>	C <sub>4</sub> H	CH <sub>2</sub> =CH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>7</sub> <sup>-</sup>			
HCl	NNO	CCCH	c-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> CCCC				
NaCl	HCO	c-CCCH	CH <sub>2</sub> CN	HC <sub>3</sub> NH <sup>+</sup>				
KCl	HCO <sup>+</sup>	CCCO	C <sub>5</sub>	C <sub>5</sub> N				
AlCl	OCS	CCCS	SiC <sub>4</sub>	C <sub>6</sub> <sup>-</sup>				
AIF	CCH	HCCCH	H <sub>2</sub> CCC	C <sub>6</sub> S?				
PN	HCS <sup>+</sup>	HCNH <sup>+</sup>	HCCNC					
SiN	c-SiCC	HCCN	HNCCC					
NH	CCO	H <sub>2</sub> CN	H <sub>3</sub> CO <sup>+</sup>					
HF	CCS	c-SiC <sub>3</sub>						
CH <sup>+</sup>	C <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>2</sub> D <sup>+</sup> ?						
CN	MgNC	NaCN						
CO	CS	CH <sub>2</sub>						
	C <sub>2</sub>	MgCN						
	SiC	HOCH <sup>+</sup>						
	CP	HCN						
	CO <sup>+</sup>	HNC						
	CH	KCN?						
							Total: 123	

*(Courtesy of P. Thaddeus, Center for Astrophysics.)*

## Radio pulsars

Neutron star masses from observations of radio pulsars in binary systems. In two cases, the average neutron star mass in a system is known with much better accuracy than the individual masses; these masses are indicated with open circles. Vertical lines are drawn at  $m = 1.35 \pm 0.04$  solar masses.

(From Thorsett, S.E. and Chakrabarty, D., Ap. J., **512**, 288, 1999.)



## Bibliography

- A Handbook of Radio Sources*, Pacholczyk, A.G., Pachart Publishing House, 1977.
- Interferometry and Synthesis in Radio Astronomy*, Thompson, A.R., Moran, J.M. & Swenson, G.W., Wiley-Interscience, 1986.
- An Introduction to Radio Astronomy*, Burke, B. & Graham-Smith, F., Cambridge University Press, 1997.
- Loves, F.J. et al., 1979, *Ap. J. (Suppl.)*, **41**, 451.
- Radio Astronomy*, 2nd edn., Kraus, J.O., Cygnus-Quasar Books.
- Tools of Radio Astronomy*, Rohlfs, K., Springer Verlag, 1986.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at: <http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

## Chapter 4

---

# Infrared and submillimeter astronomy

*A telescope in the void recently found cosmic “maternity wards” where clouds of interstellar gas and dust appear to be in various stages giving birth to stars.* - William J. Brood

Infrared sources	213
<i>Stars</i>	213
<i>Planetary nebula</i>	213
<i>H II regions</i>	213
<i>Molecular clouds</i>	214
<i>Galactic nucleus</i>	214
<i>Galactic nuclei</i>	214
<i>Active galactic nuclei</i>	214
Atmospheric transmission	215
Diffuse emission from the night sky	216
Spectral irradiance of the Sun	218
Spectral irradiance from the planets and brightest stars	219
Emission from galaxies	221
<i>Schematic overview of spectral energy distribution in galaxies</i>	221
<i>Near-IR colors and CO index for stars</i>	221
<i>IR energy distributions for a sample of galaxies</i>	222
<i>IRAS two-color diagram for non-AGN galaxies</i>	222
Broad-band infrared colors	223
<i>Blackbodies</i>	223
<i>Power-law energy spectral distributions</i>	223
Standard photometric system	224
Spectrophotometric standards in the infrared	224
Intrinsic color of stars	225
<i>Dwarfs</i>	225

<i>Giants</i>	225
Statistics of galaxies at infrared wavelengths	226
<i>Number counts at 2.2 <math>\mu</math>m</i>	226
<i>Luminosity function at 60 <math>\mu</math>m</i>	226
<i>Energy density</i>	226
Near IR and mid IR diagnostic lines	227
Selected submillimeter lines	228
Source temperatures	229
<i>Brightness temperature</i>	229
<i>Color temperature</i>	229
<i>Effective temperature</i>	229
Blackbody spectral flux densities for stars	229
Space infrared Telescope Facility (SIRTF)	230
<i>SIRTF focal plane</i>	230
<i>SIRTF instrumentation summary</i>	231
Bibliography	232

**Infrared sources**

The brightest members of the seven classes of infrared sources ( $\text{Jy} = \text{jansky} = \text{fu} = 10^{-26} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ Hz}^{-1}$ ).

**1. Stars**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
1 <sup>h</sup> 04 <sup>m</sup>	12° 19'	$0.83 \times 10^3$	CIT 3
2 17	-3 12	1.9	$\ddot{\alpha}$ Cet
3 51	11 14	1.3	NML Tau
4 57	56 07	1.0	TY Cam
5 52	7 25	2.1	$\alpha$ Ori
7 21	-25 41	11	VY C Ma
9 45	11 39	1.1	R Leo
9 45	13 30	$\sim 25$	IRC + 10216
10 13	30 49	0.83	RW LMi
10 43	-59 25	$\sim 50$	$\eta$ Car
12 01	-32 04	2.7	IRC -30187
13 46	-28 07	1.9	W Hya
16 26	-26 19	1.0	$\alpha$ Sco
18 05	-22 16	2.1	VY Sgr
18 36	-6 51	2.5	EW Sct
18 45	-2 03	2.5	AB Agl
19 24	11 16	3.3	IRC +10420
20 08	-6 25	1.4	IRC -10529
20 20	37 22	1.1	BC Cyg
20 45	39 56	4.8	NML Cyg
21 42	58 33	0.69	$\mu$ Cep

**2. Planetary nebula**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
21 <sup>h</sup> 00 <sup>m</sup>	36° 30'	$2.5 \times 10^3$	'Egg Nebula'
21 05	42 02	0.6	NGC 7027

**3. H II Regions**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
2 <sup>h</sup> 22 <sup>m</sup>	61° 52'	$5.6 \times 10^3$	W3
5 33	-5 27	5.9	M42
5 39	-1 57	3.3	NGC 2024
17 44	-28 33	0.7	Sgr B2
18 01	-24 21	3.3	M8
18 06	-20 19	3.0	W31
18 11	-17 58	1.4	HFE50
18 16	-13 46	1.4	M16

**Infrared sources (*cont.*)****3. H II Regions**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
18 <sup>h</sup> 18 <sup>m</sup>	-16° 13'	$20 \times 10^3$	M17
18 43	-2 42	1.1	HFE 56
18 59	1 08	1.0	W48
19 08	9 02	1.7	HFE 58
19 11	10 48	1.2	?
19 20	13 59	1.2	HFE 59
19 21	14 24	1.7	HFE 60
20 00	33 25	1.4	NGC 6857
20 26	37 13	1.2	Sharp 106
23 12	61 12	3.6	NGC 7358

**4. Molecular clouds**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	100 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
2 <sup>h</sup> 22 <sup>m</sup>	61° 52'	$\sim 10^4$	W3 IRS 5
5 33	-5 27	$1 \times 10^5$	KL Neb
6 05	-6 23	$5 \times 10^4$	Mon R2
16 23	-24 17	$3 \times 10^4$	$\rho$ Oph DK.Cl.
20 37	42 12	$\sim 10^4$	W75 S OH

**5. Galactic nucleus**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
17 <sup>h</sup> 43 <sup>m</sup>	-28° 54'	$2.6 \times 10^3$	Sgr A

**6. Galactic nuclei**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	20 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
00 <sup>h</sup> 45 <sup>m</sup>	-25° 34'	30	NGC 253
2 40	00 20	60	NGC 1068
9 52	69 55	100	M 82
12 55	56 15	6	MK 231

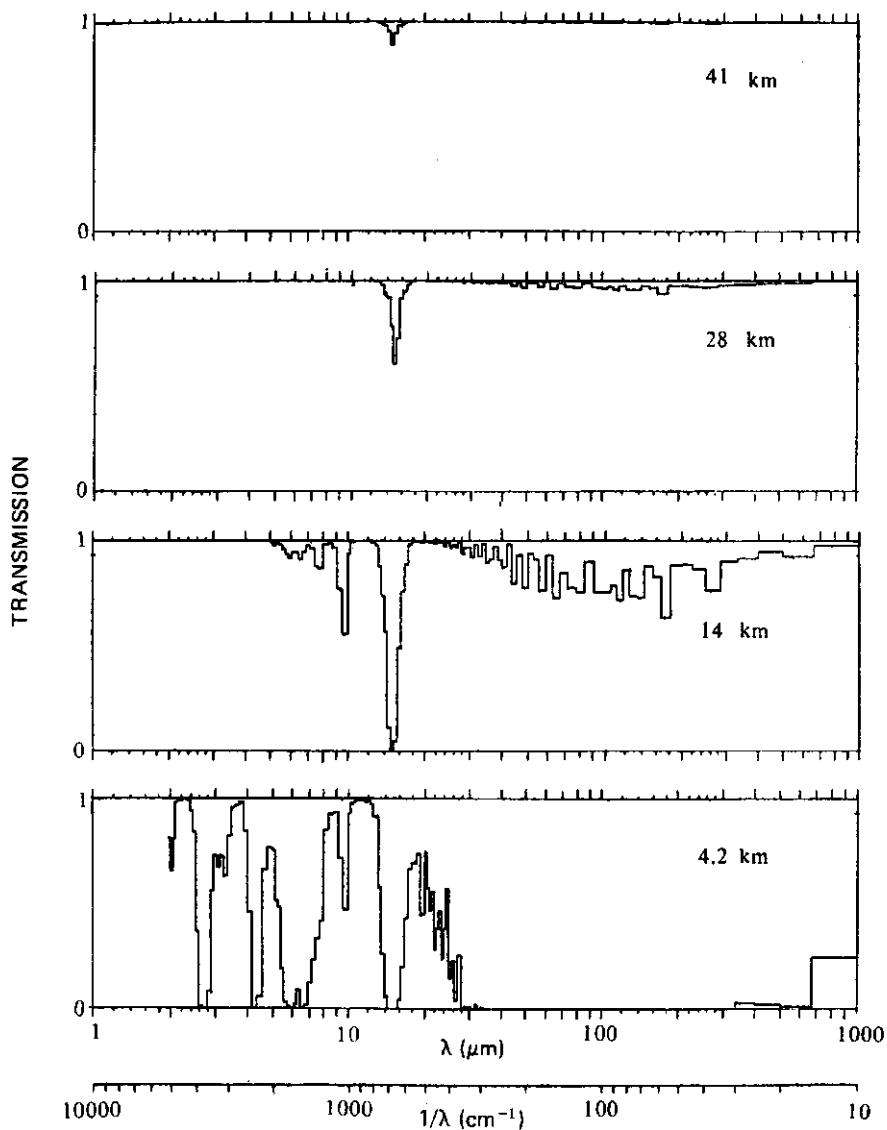
**7. Active galactic nuclei**

$\alpha$ 1950	$\delta$ 1950	10 $\mu$ flux den. (Jy)	Name
08 <sup>h</sup> 53 <sup>m</sup>	20° 15'	0.04 → 0.07	OJ 287
12 27	2 20	0.2 → 0.5	3C 273
22 01	42 12	0.2 → 0.7	BL Lac

(Adapted from Low, F. in *Symposium on Infrared and Submillimeter Astronomy*, G.G. Fazio, ed., D. Reidel Publishing Company, 1977.)

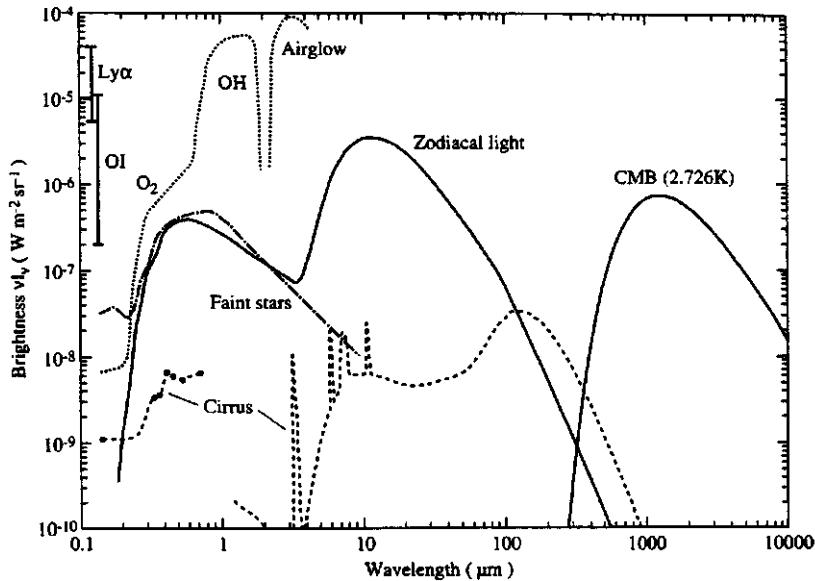
### Atmospheric transmission

Transmission of the atmosphere at infrared wavelengths at four altitudes. (Adapted from Fazio, G.G. in *Frontiers of Astrophysics*, E.H. Avrett, ed., Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 1976.)



## Diffuse emission from the night sky

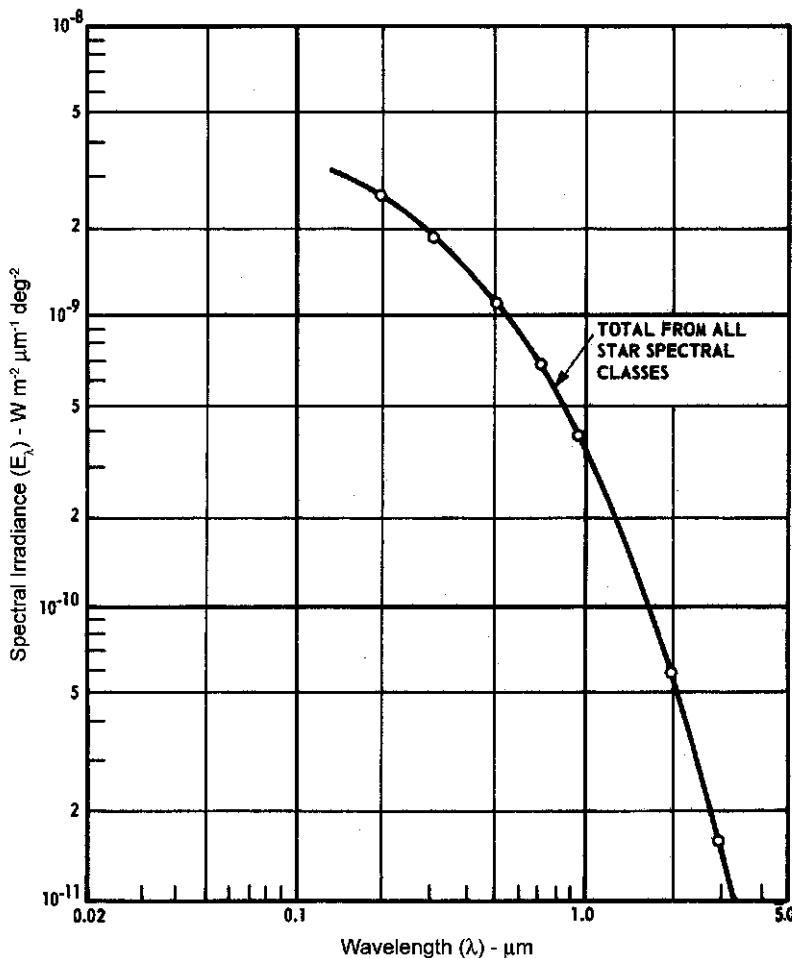
Specific intensity (times  $\nu$ ) of diffuse emission from the night sky, observed away from the galactic and ecliptic planes, from high in the Earth's atmosphere. (From *Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, I.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999, with permission.)



(Note: wisp-like clouds in the infrared are called *cirrus*)

### Diffuse emission from the night sky (cont.)

Probable spectral irradiance from one-square-degree starfield in or near the galactic plane.



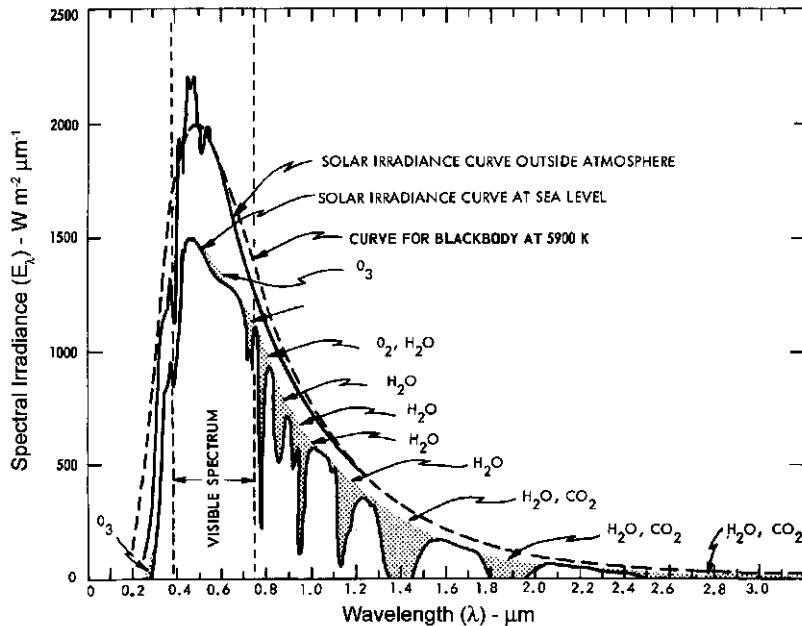

---

(From the *RCA Electro-Optics Handbook*, 1974.)

## Spectral irradiance of the Sun

---

Spectral irradiance  $E_\lambda$  of the sun at mean earth-sun separation. Shaded areas indicate absorption at sea level due to the atmospheric constituents shown.

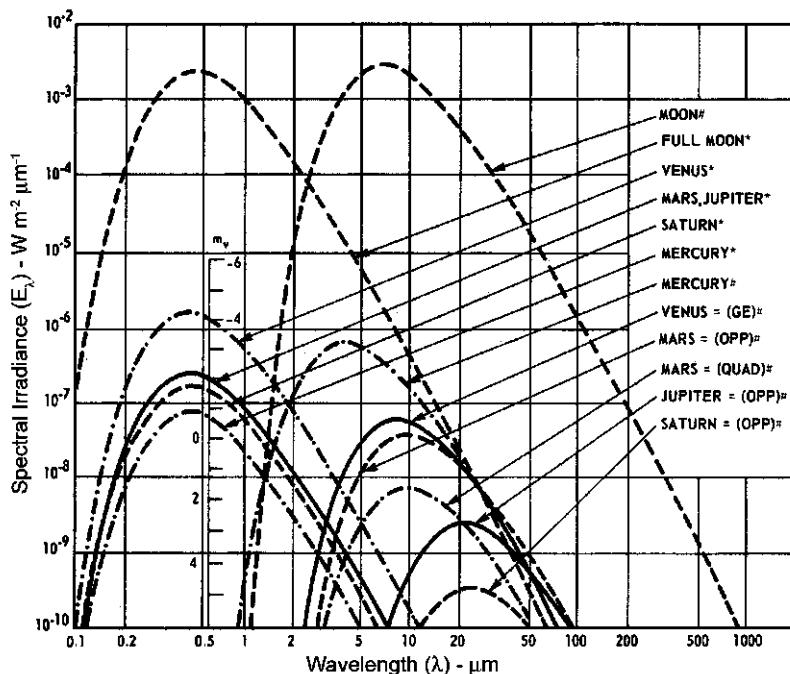



---

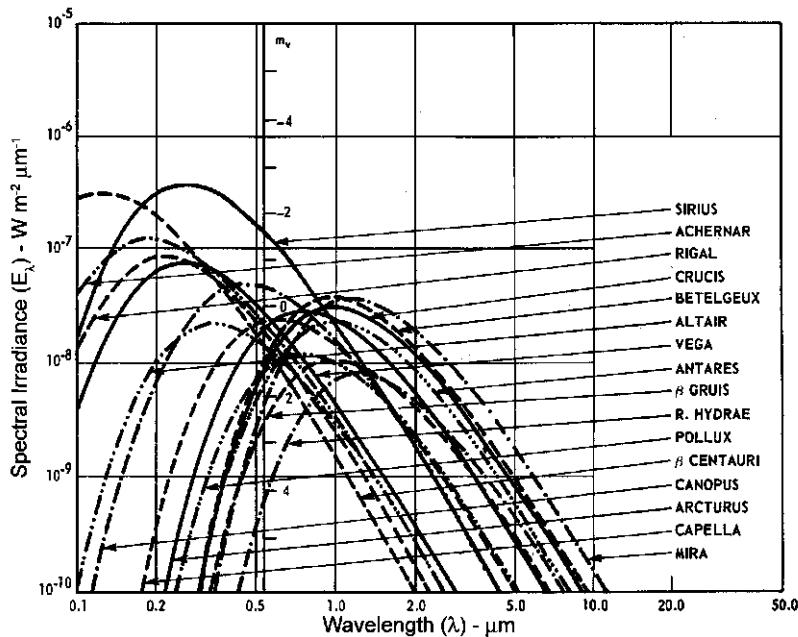
(From the *RCA Electro-Optics Handbook*, 1974.)

## Spectral irradiance from the planets and brightest stars

Calculated spectral irradiance from planets at the top of the atmosphere;  
 \* = calculated irradiance from planets at brightest due only to sun  
 reflectance; GF = inferior planet at greatest elongation; OPP = superior  
 planet at opposition; QUAD = superior planet at quadrature; # =  
 calculated irradiance from planets due only to self emission;  $m_\nu$  = visual  
 magnitude at maximum spectral irradiance



Calculated spectral irradiance from the brightest stars outside of the earth's atmosphere;  $m_v$  = visual magnitude at maximum spectral irradiance.



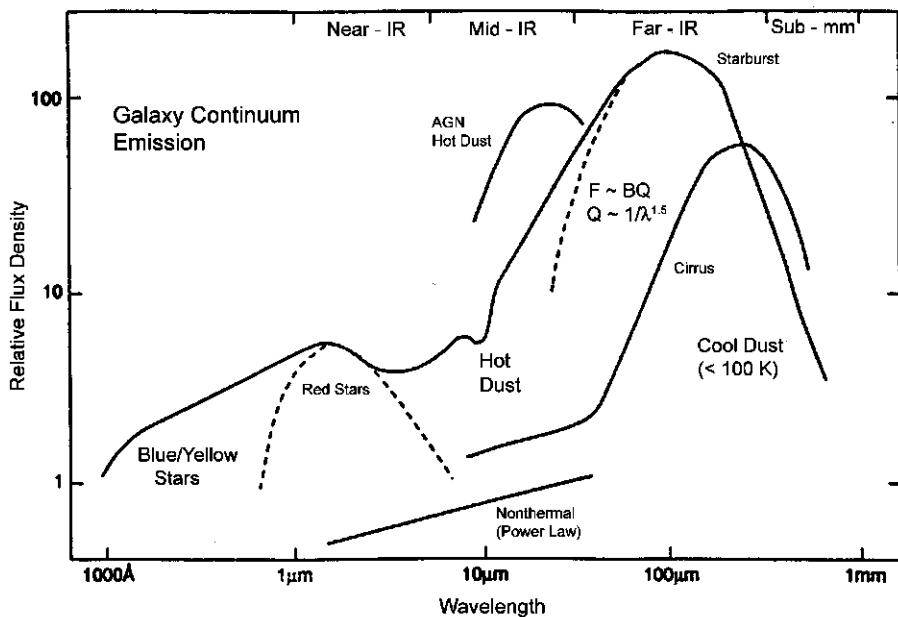

---

(From the *RCA Electro-Optics Handbook*, 1974.)

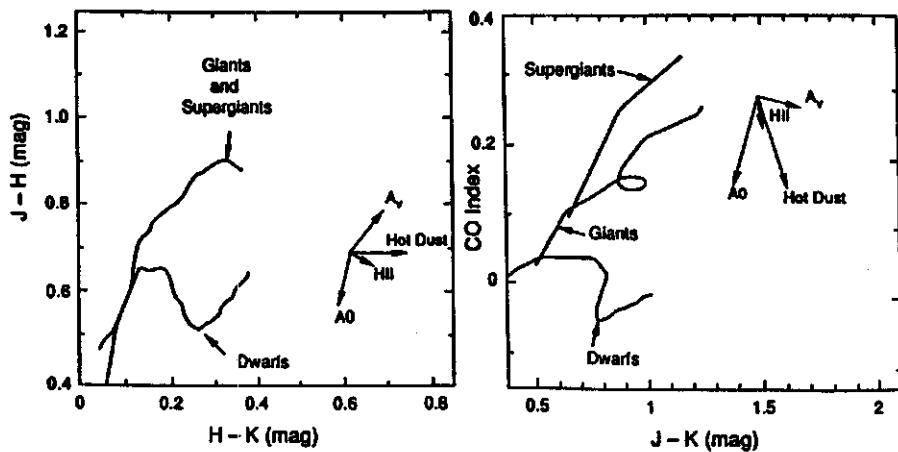
## Emission from galaxies

---

### Schematic overview of spectral energy distributions in galaxies

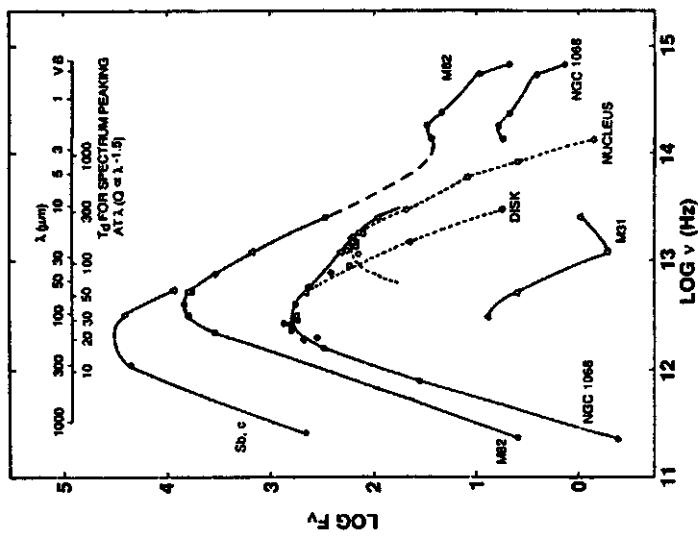
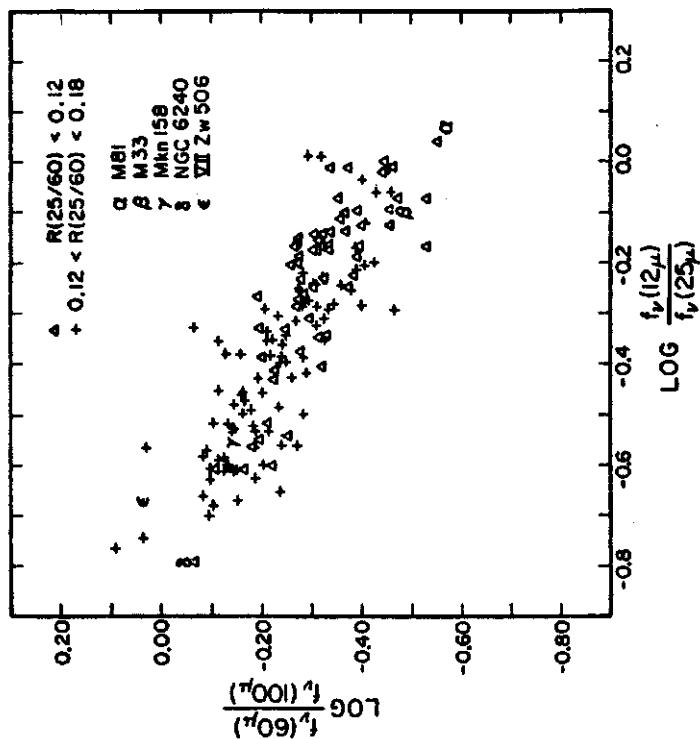


### Near-IR colors and CO index for stars



Emission from galaxies (cont.)  
*IR energy distributions for a sample of galaxies.*

*IRAS two-color diagram for non-AGN galaxies*



(From C.M. Telesco in *Infrared Astronomy*, Mammpaso, A., Prieto, M., and Sanchez, F., Cambridge University Press, 1993, with permission.)

**Broad-band infrared colors***Blackbodies*

Temp (K)	<i>J-H</i>	<i>H-K</i>	<i>K-L</i>	<i>L-N</i>
300	9.37	6.92	7.69	8.59
400	7.03	5.20	5.66	6.14
500	5.62	4.14	4.43	4.69
600	4.67	3.42	3.60	3.75
800	3.45	2.50	2.56	2.60
1000	2.70	1.93	1.94	1.94
3000	0.63	0.43	0.41	0.42
5000	0.25	0.17	0.16	0.17
10000	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

*Power-law energy spectral distributions*

Exponent	<i>J - H</i>	<i>H - K</i>	<i>K - L</i>	<i>L - N</i>
-2	1.11	1.13	1.80	4.63
-1	0.78	0.82	1.31	3.39
0	0.46	0.50	0.83	2.19
1	0.13	0.18	0.34	1.00
2	-0.20	-0.14	-0.14	-0.16

Calculated for the JHKL filters used in the SAAO (Carter, B.S., Mon. Not. R. astr. Soc., **242**, 1, 1990.) photometric system. The color zero points for each index have been adjusted to be 0.0 for a 10000K blackbody. (From *Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, I.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999, with permission.)

**Standard Photometric System**

Band	$\lambda_{\text{eff}}$ μm	$\nu_0$ Hz	$F_\lambda$ W cm <sup>-2</sup> μm <sup>-1</sup>	$F_\nu$ W m <sup>-2</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup>	$\log F_\nu$	$\log \nu_0$
<i>U</i>	0.366	$8.19 \times 10^{14}$	$4.175 \times 10^{-12}$	$1.790 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.75	14.913
<i>B</i>	0.438	$6.84 \times 10^{14}$	$6.32 \times 10^{-12}$	$4.063 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.39	14.835
<i>V</i>	0.545	$5.50 \times 10^{14}$	$3.631 \times 10^{-12}$	$3.636 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.44	14.740
<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>	0.641	$4.68 \times 10^{14}$	$2.177 \times 10^{-12}$	$3.064 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.51	14.670
<i>I<sub>C</sub></i>	0.798	$3.79 \times 10^{14}$	$1.126 \times 10^{-12}$	$2.416 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.62	14.575
<i>J</i>	1.22	$2.46 \times 10^{14}$	$3.15 \times 10^{-13}$	$1.59 \times 10^{-23}$	-22.80	14.390
<i>H</i>	1.63	$1.84 \times 10^{14}$	$1.14 \times 10^{-13}$	$1.02 \times 10^{-23}$	-23.01	14.26
<i>K</i>	2.19	$1.37 \times 10^{14}$	$3.96 \times 10^{-14}$	$6.4 \times 10^{-24}$	-23.21	14.14
<i>L</i>	3.45	$8.7 \times 10^{13}$	$7.1 \times 10^{-15}$	$2.9 \times 10^{-24}$	-23.55	13.94
<i>M</i>	4.8	$6.3 \times 10^{13}$	$2.2 \times 10^{-15}$	$1.70 \times 10^{-24}$	-23.77	13.80
<i>N</i>	10.6	$2.8 \times 10^{13}$	$9.6 \times 10^{-17}$	$3.60 \times 10^{-25}$	-24.44	13.55
<i>Q</i>	21	$1.43 \times 10^{13}$	$6.4 \times 10^{-18}$	$9.4 \times 10^{-26}$	-25.03	13.15

Absolute spectral irradiance for mag = 0.0 star. Sources for **UBVR<sub>C</sub>I<sub>C</sub>JHKL** are Bessell, M.S., Castelli, F., and Plez, B., Astron. Astrophys., **333**, 231, 1998.  $V = 0.03$  for Vega on this system. The **JHKL** colors are on the Bessell and Brett (Bessell, M.S. and Brett, J.M., PASP, **100**, 1134, 1988) system; **M**, Campins, H., Rieke, G.H., and Lebofsky, M.J., Astron. J., **90**, 896, 1985; **NQ**, Rieke, G.H., Lebofsky, M., and Low, F.J., Astron. J., **90**, 900, 1985.

(From *Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, L.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999, with permission.)

**Spectrophotometric standards in the infrared**

Star	Spectral Types
Vega = $\alpha$ Lyr	A0V
Sirius = $\alpha$ CMa	A1V
$\alpha^1$ Cen	G2V
$\alpha$ TrA	K2III
$\epsilon$ Car	K3III
$\alpha$ Boo	K1III
$\gamma$ Dra	K5III
$\alpha$ Cet	M1.5III
$\gamma$ Cru	M3.3III
$\mu$ UMa	M0III
$\beta$ Peg	M2.5II-III
$\beta$ And	M0III
$\beta$ Gem	K0III
$\alpha$ Hya	K3II-III

(From *Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, L.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999, with permission.)

**Intrinsic colors of stars****Dwarfs**

MK	$V - K$	$J - H$	$H - K$	$J - K$	$K - L$	$K - M$
B8	-0.35	-0.05	-0.035	-0.09	-0.03	-0.05
A0	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
A2	0.14	0.02	0.005	0.02	0.01	0.01
A5	0.38	0.06	0.015	0.08	0.02	0.03
A7	0.50	0.09	0.025	0.11	0.03	0.03
F0	0.70	0.13	0.03	0.16	0.03	0.03
F2	0.82	0.165	0.035	0.19	0.03	0.03
F5	1.10	0.23	0.04	0.27	0.04	0.02
F7	1.32	0.285	0.045	0.34	0.04	0.02
G0	1.41	0.305	0.05	0.36	0.05	0.01
G2	1.46	0.32	0.052	0.37	0.05	0.01
G4	1.53	0.33	0.055	0.385	0.05	0.01
G6	1.64	0.37	0.06	0.43	0.05	0.00
K0	1.96	0.45	0.075	0.53	0.06	-0.01
K2	2.22	0.50	0.09	0.59	0.07	-0.02
K4	2.63	0.58	0.105	0.68	0.09	-0.04
K5	2.85	0.61	0.11	0.72	0.10	
K7	3.16	0.66	0.13	0.79	0.11	
M0	3.65	0.695	0.165	0.86	0.14	
M1	3.87	0.68	0.20	0.87	0.15	
M2	4.11	0.665	0.21	0.87	0.16	
M3	4.65	0.62	0.25	0.87	0.20	
M4	5.26	0.60	0.275	0.88	0.23	
M5	6.12	0.62	0.32	0.94	0.29	
M6	7.30	0.66	0.37	1.03	0.36	

**Giants**

MK	$V - K$	$J - H$	$H - K$	$J - K$	$K - L$	$K - M$
G0	1.75	0.37	0.065	0.45	0.04	0.0
G4	2.05	0.47	0.08	0.55	0.05	-0.01
G6	2.15	0.50	0.085	0.58	0.06	-0.02
G8	2.16	0.50	0.085	0.58	0.06	-0.02
K0	2.31	0.54	0.095	0.63	0.07	-0.03
K1	2.50	0.58	0.10	0.68	0.08	-0.04
K2	2.70	0.63	0.115	0.74	0.09	-0.05
K3	3.00	0.68	0.14	0.82	0.10	-0.06
K4	3.26	0.73	0.15	0.88	0.11	-0.07
K5	3.60	0.79	0.165	0.95	0.12	-0.08
M0	3.85	0.83	0.19	1.01	0.12	-0.09
M1	4.05	0.85	0.205	1.05	0.13	-0.10
M2	4.30	0.87	0.215	1.08	0.15	-0.12
M3	4.64	0.90	0.235	1.13	0.17	-0.13
M4	5.10	0.93	0.245	1.17	0.18	-0.14
M5	5.96	0.95	0.285	1.23	(0.20)	-0.15
M6	6.84	0.96	0.30	1.26		0.0:
M7	7.8	0.96	0.31	1.27		0.0:

Bessell and Brett (Bessell, M.S. and Brett, J.M., PASP, **100**, 1134, 1988) system. (From *Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, I.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999, with permission.)

---

**Statistics of galaxies at infrared wavelengths**


---

***Number counts at 2.2  $\mu m$*** 

$dN/dK = 4000 \times 10^{\alpha(K-17)}$  galaxies per square degree  
per unit magnitude,

where  $\alpha = 0.67$  for  $10 < K < 17$ ,  $\alpha = 0.26$  for  $17 < K < 23$ ,  $K = 2.2 \mu m$  magnitude.

***Luminosity function at 60  $\mu m$*** 

$\log(\rho) = -3.2 - \alpha\{\log[\nu L_\nu(60 \mu m)] - 10.2\}$  galaxies per cubic megaparsec per unit magnitude at  $60 \mu m$ ,

where  $\nu L_\nu(60 \mu m)$  is given in units of  $L_\odot$ , and  $\alpha = 0.8$  for  $\log[\nu L_\nu(60 \mu m)] < 10.2$  and  $\alpha = 2.0$  for  $\log[\nu L_\nu(60 \mu m)] > 10.2$ .  $H_0 = 75 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$

***Energy density***

The total infrared energy density of the local universe from 8 to 1000  $\mu m$  is

$$1.24 \times 10^8 L_\odot \text{ Mpc}^{-3}.$$

---

(From Tokunaga, A.T., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000)

**Near IR and mid IR diagnostic lines**

<b>Line Designation</b>	<b>Wavelength (<math>\mu\text{m}</math>)</b>	<b>Utility</b>
H I Br $\beta$	2.63	UV luminosity
Sulfates/bisulfates	2.3, 4.5, 9	Solar system studies
PAH/hydrocarbons	3.4	Dust, low UV
H I Br $\alpha$	4.05	UV luminosity
CO <sub>2</sub> ice	4.26	Dust, solar system studies
[Mg VII]	5.51	Hot gas coolant
[Mg V]	5.60	General coolant, shocks
[Si VII]	6.50	Hot gas coolant, shocks
[Ar II]	6.99	Radiation intensity
[Ne VI]	7.63	Spectral index
Methane	7.7	Solar system studies
[Ar V]	7.90	Spectral index, reddening
[Mg VII]	8.95	Hot gas coolant
[Ar III]	8.99	Spectral index, reddening
Silicates	9.7	Dust
[S IV]	10.5	General coolants
[Ne II]	12.8	Radiation intensity, shocks
[Ar V]	13.1	Spectral index, reddening
[Mg V]	13.5	Spectral index, hot gas
[Ne V]	14.3	Spectral index, density
[CO <sub>2</sub> ice]	15.2	Dust, solar system studies
[Ne III]	15.6	Metallicity
H <sub>2</sub> (0-0) S(1,2,etc)	17.0, 12.3, etc.	Shock conditions
[S III]	18.7	General coolant
[Ne V]	24.2	Spectral index, reddening
[O IV]	25.9	Spectral index
[S III]	33.5	General coolant
OH	34.6	Radiative pumping
[Si II]	35	Shocks
[Ne III]	15.6, 36	Spectral index, density
[O I]	63	Shocks
[O III]	52, 88	FIR reddening, density

(From NASA)

Extensive lists of infrared lines can be found at the web site noted at the end of this chapter.

### Selected submillimeter lines

Species	Transition	Frequency (GHz)
CH	$F_1 \rightarrow F_2; J = 3/2^- \rightarrow 1/2^+$	536.76
$\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$	$1_{10} \rightarrow 1_{01}$	547.68
NH <sub>3</sub>	$1_0 \rightarrow 0_0$	572.50
$\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$	$2_{11} \rightarrow 2_{02}$	745.32
NH	$N = 1 \rightarrow 0; J = 2 \rightarrow 1$	974.48
$\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$	$0_0^- \rightarrow 1_0^+$	984.66
NH <sup>+</sup>	$3/2^+ \rightarrow 1/2^-$	998.90
HF	$1 \rightarrow 0$	1232.48
$\text{H}_2\text{D}^+$	$1_{01} \rightarrow 0_{00}$	1370.09
N <sup>+</sup>	$^3P J = 1 \rightarrow 0$	1461.13
<sup>16</sup> OH	$^2\Pi_{1/2} J = 3/2^+ \rightarrow 1/2^-$	1837.82
C <sup>+</sup>	$^2P J = 3/2 \rightarrow 1/2$	1900.54
CH <sub>2</sub>	$1_{10} \rightarrow 1_{01}$	1917.66
CO	$1_8 \rightarrow 1_7$	1956.02

(From the California Institute of Technology's Caltech Submillimeter Interstellar Medium Investigations Receiver (CASIMIR) group, 2000.)

## Source temperatures

---



---

### Brightness temperature

$$T_b(\nu) = \frac{c^2 B_\nu}{2\nu^2 k} \text{ (Rayleigh-Jeans approximation).}$$

$T_b$  is the temperature of a blackbody which would have the same spectral radiance  $B_\nu$  at frequency  $\nu$  as the source.

### Color temperature

$$\frac{B_{\lambda_1}}{B_{\lambda_2}} = \left( \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} \right)^5 \frac{e^{hc/\lambda_2 k T_c} - 1}{e^{hc/\lambda_1 k T_c} - 1}.$$

$B_\lambda$  is the spectral radiance of source at wavelength  $\lambda$ .

### Effective temperature

$$L = 4\pi R^2 \sigma T_{\text{eff}}^4,$$

where

$L$  = source power,

$R$  = radius of source,

$\sigma$  = Stefan-Boltzmann constant.

---



---

## Blackbody spectral flux densities for stars

---



---

The blackbody spectral flux density for a star is given by,

$$F_\lambda = \frac{1.9 \times 10^{-11} \lambda^{-5} p^2 R^2}{e^{14388/\lambda T} - 1} \text{ (W cm}^{-2} \mu\text{m}^{-1}\text{)}$$

where

$R$  = radius of star (in units of the Sun's radius),

$p$  = parallax (arcsec),

$T$  = temperature (K),

$\lambda$  = wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ ).

---



---

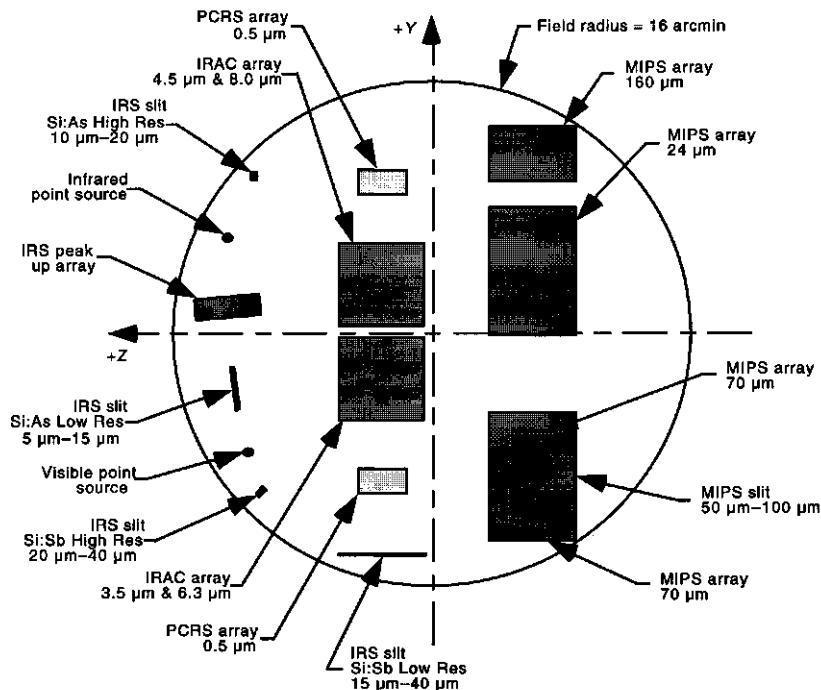
(Johnson, H.M. & Wright, C.D., *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **53**, 643, 1983),

## Space Infrared Telescope Facility (SIRTF)

Note: SIRTF has been renamed the Spitzer Space Telescope

SIRTF consists of a 0.85-meter telescope and three cryogenically-cooled science instruments capable of performing imaging and spectroscopy in the 3 to 180 micron wavelength range. The three instruments are the Infrared Array Camera (IRAC), the Infrared Spectrograph (IRS), and the Multiband Imaging Photometer for SIRTF (MIPS).

### *SIRTF focal plane*



**SIRTF Instrumentation summary**

Wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Array Type	Resolving Power	Field of View	Pixel size (arcsec)	Sensitivity ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ ) (5 sigma in 500s, incl. confusion)
<b>IRAC: InfraRed Array Camera</b>					
3.6	InSb	4.7	$5.12' \times 5.12'$	1.2	4.1
4.5	InSb	4.4	$5.12' \times 5.12'$	1.2	5.4
5.8	Si:As (IBC)	4.0	$5.12' \times 5.12'$	1.2	18
8.0	Si:As (IBC)	2.8	$5.12' \times 5.12'$	1.2	18
<b>MIPS: Multiband Imaging Photometer for SIRTF</b>					
24	Si:As (IBC)	5	$5.2' \times 5.2'$ $2.6' \times 2.6'$	2.45 4.9	185 3000
70	Ge:Ga	4	$5.3' \times 5.3'$	9.9	1410
55-96	Ge:Ga Ge:Ga	15-25	$0.32' \times 3.8'$	9.9	11 mJy at 55 micron 14 mJy at 95 micron
160	(stressed)	5	$0.5' \times 5.3'$	15.8	22.5 mJy
<b>IRS: Infrared Spectrograph</b>					
5.3-14	Si:As (IBC)	62-124	$3.6'' \times 54.6''$	1.8	550
13.5-18.5	Si:As (IBC)				
18.5-26	(peak-up)	$\sim 3$	$1' \times 1.2'$	1.8	
10-19.5	Si:As (IBC)	600	$5.3'' \times 11.8''$	2.4	$3 \times 10^{-18} \text{ W/m}^2$
14-40	Si:Sb (IBC)	62-124	$9.7'' \times 151.3''$	4.8	1500
19-37	Si:Sb (IBC)	600	$11.1'' \times 22.4''$	4.8	$3 \times 10^{-18} \text{ W/m}^2$

(From NASA, 2000)

## Bibliography

*Handbook of Infrared Astronomy*, Glass, I.S., Cambridge University Press, 1999.

*Infrared Astronomy*, Mampaso, A., Prieto, M., and Sanchez, F., eds., Cambridge University Press, 1993.

*Infrared Astronomy*, Setti, G. and Fazio, G., eds., D. Reidel Publishing Co., 1977.

*Infrared Astronomy*, Tokunaga, A.T., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.

The *Infrared Handbook*, Wolfe, W.I., and Zissis, G.J., eds., Office of Naval Research, Department of the Navy, Washington DC, 1978.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 5

---

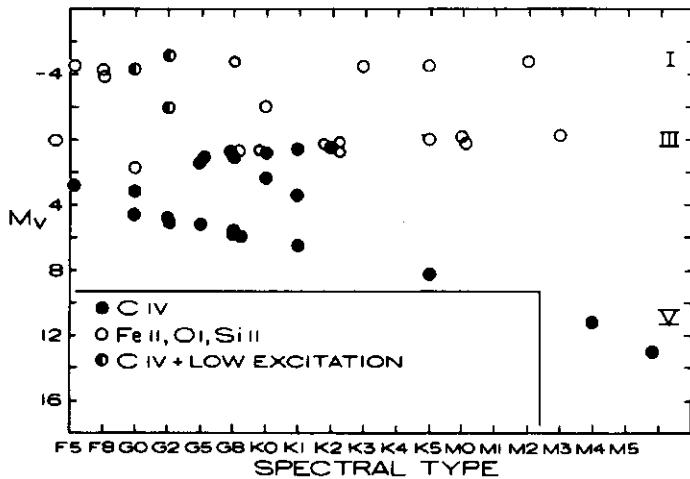
## Ultraviolet astronomy

*The stars are majestic laboratories, gigantic crucibles, such as no chemist could dream.* - Henri Poincaré

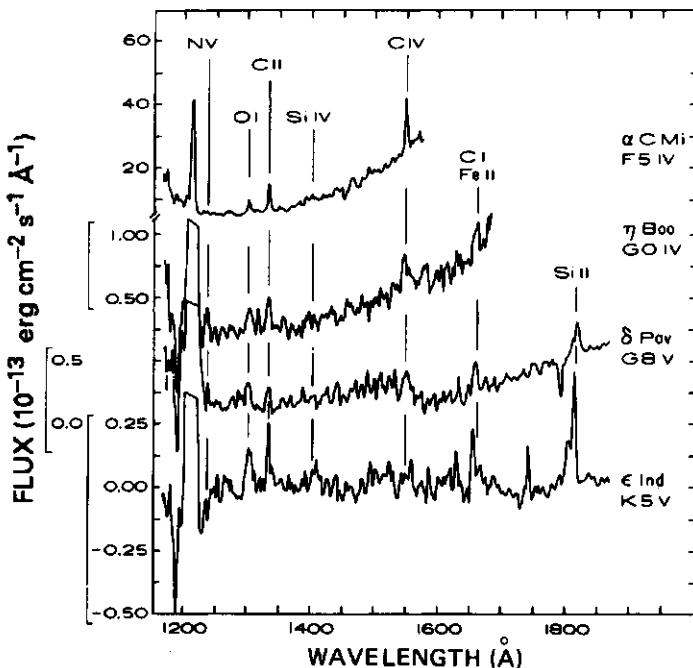
UV stellar spectra	234
Stellar surface fluxes	236
Mass loss rates	236
EUV sources	237
<i>EUVE catalog</i>	237
<i>Extragalactic EUVE sources</i>	238
<i>25 brightest EUVE sources</i>	239
Background fluxes	240
<i>Cosmic background</i>	240
<i>Geocoronal vacuum ultraviolet emission</i>	240
EUV plasma spectra	241
UV spectral features	244
Prominent UV emission lines	245
Important strong lines	246
Ultraviolet absorption cross-sections	247
Interstellar extinction	248
Analytical fits to the UV extinction	248
Interstellar EUV attenuation	249
Average interstellar hydrogen densities	250
Neutral hydrogen column density	251
Bibliography	252

## UV stellar spectra

Spectral features in stars of different spectral types and luminosities.  
(Courtesy of A.K. Dupree, Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)

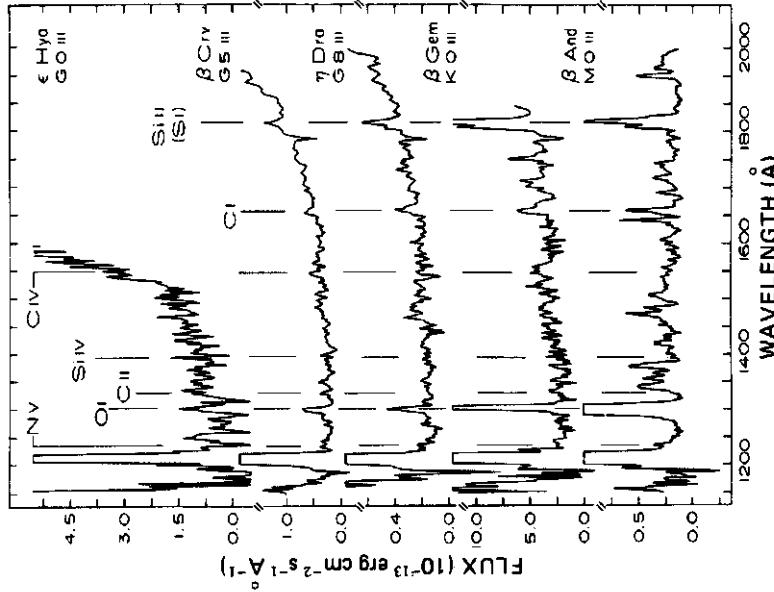


IUE short wavelength spectra of dwarf stars. (Courtesy of A.K. Dupree, Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)

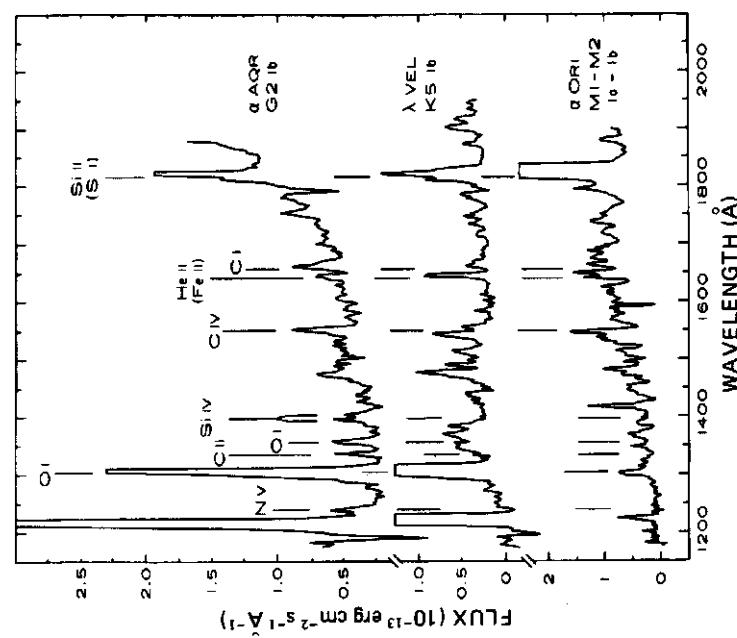


UV stellar spectra (cont.) TUE short wavelength spectra of giant and supergiant stars. (Courtesy of A.K. Dupree, Harvard/Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)

### GIANTS



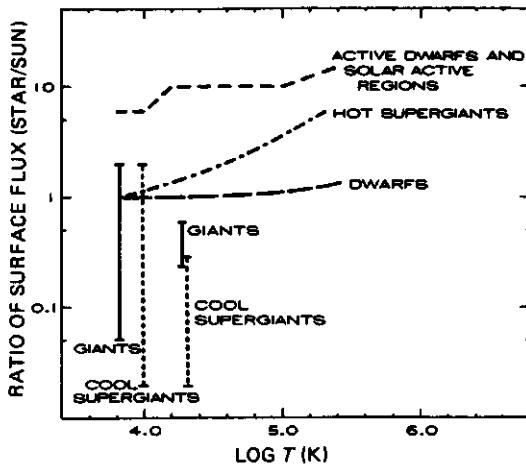
### SUPERGIANTS



## Stellar surface fluxes

---

The ratio of stellar surface flux to the corresponding solar value for emission lines formed at various temperatures. (Courtesy of A.K. Dupree, Harvard/Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)

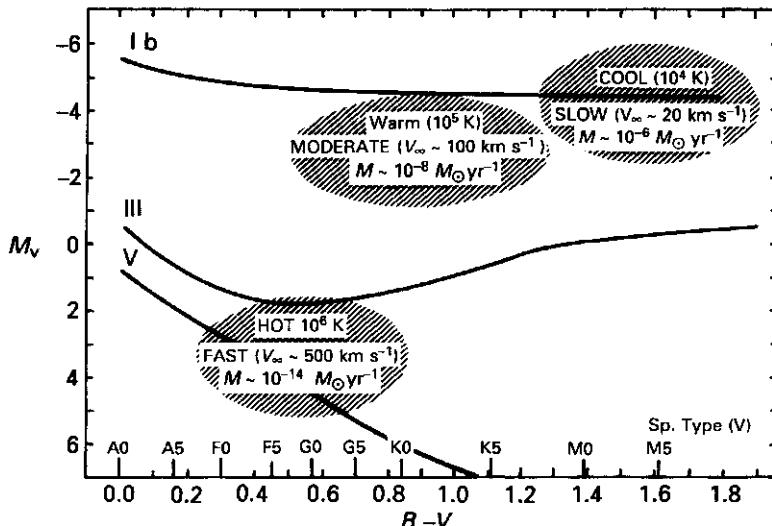



---

## Mass loss rates

---

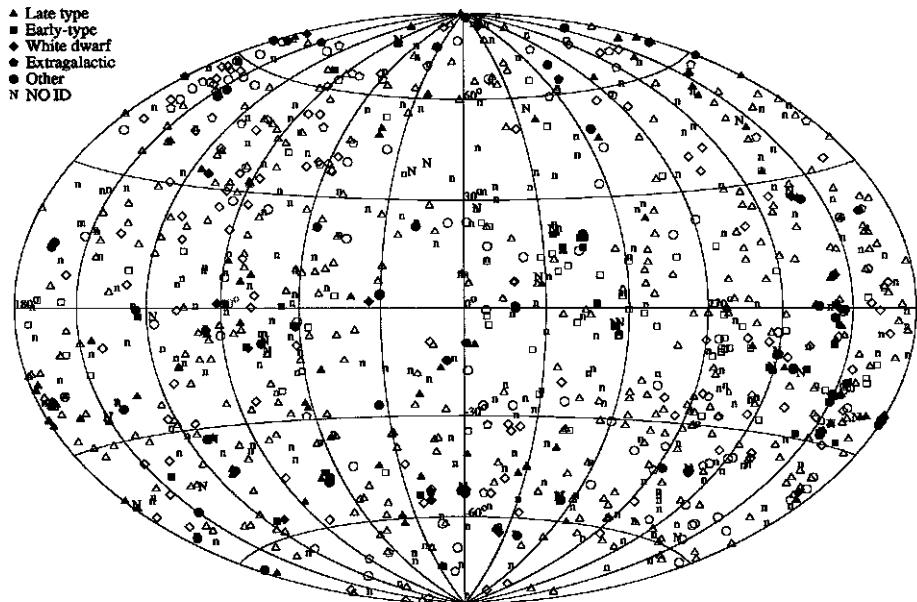
Characteristics of mass loss rates and winds (temperatures and terminal velocities) in stars of various luminosities. (Courtesy of A.K. Dupree, Harvard/Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)



## EUV sources

---

EUV sources from the 2nd EUVE (Extreme Ultraviolet Explorer) catalog. The 737 sources observed are displayed in galactic coordinates. (Courtesy of Roger Malina, The Center for Extreme Ultraviolet Astrophysics, 1999.)



### *Second EUVE Catalog-list of objects detected*

---

Type	CAT2 <sup>a</sup>
Early-type Stars (O, B, A)	24
Late-type Stars (F, G, K, M)	275
White Dwarfs	105
Cataclysmic Variables	14
Low Mass X-ray Binaries	2
Extragalactic	37
Other	35
No Identification	245
TOTAL	737

<sup>a</sup>Bowyer *et al.* 1996, ApJS, 102, 129, *Second EUVE All-sky Catalog*.

*Extragalactic EUVE sources*

NAME	RA h m s	2000 Dec d m	2000 c/ks*	ID 100 Å	Name	Type
EUVE J0425-572	04 25 50	-57 12.8	34.0	1H 0419-577	Seyfert	
EUVE J1015+494	10 15 04	+49 26.0	28.1	1H1013+498	BL Lac	
EUVE J1034+396	10 34 36	+39 38.0	9.3	RE J1034+393	Seyfert	
EUVE J1104+382	11 04 33	+38 12.6	56.0	Mrk 421	BL Lac	
EUVE J1114+406	11 14 39	+40 37.0	1.4	3C 254	QSO	
EUVE J1119+213	11 19 08	+21 19.6	17.0	PG 1116+215	QSO	
EUVE J1203+445	12 03 10	+44 31.9	19.3	NGC 4051	Seyfert	
EUVE J1229+020	12 29 07	+02 03.1	79.2	3C 273	QSO	
EUVE J1236+456	12 36 49	+45 38.9	2.4	CGCG 244-033	AGN	
EUVE J1352+692	13 52 56	+69 17.6	33.0	Mrk 279	Seyfert	
EUVE J1417+449	14 17 01	+44 56.0	5.2	PG 1415+451	QSO	
EUVE J1417+251	14 17 59	+25 08.2	23.6	NGC 5548	Seyfert	
EUVE J1421+477	14 21 30	+47 47.0	3.4	CG 0912	QSO	
EUVE J1428+426	14 28 33	+42 40.4	32.7	H1426+427	BL Lac	
EUVE J1442+354	14 42 08	+35 27.7	56.0	Mrk 478	Seyfert	
EUVE J1556+452	15 56 42	+45 13.9	4.3	MS 1555.1+4522	AGN	
EUVE J1617+323	16 17 42	+32 22.9	3.5	3C 332	Seyfert	
EUVE J1653+397	16 53 52	+39 45.0	30.0	Mrk 501	BL Lac	
EUVE J2132+101	21 32 31	+10 07.9	2.0	Mrk 1513	Seyfert	
EUVE J2158-302	21 58 51	-30 13.6	297.0	PKS 2155-304	BL Lac	
EUVE J2209-471	22 09 17	-47 10.0	23.0	NGC 7213	Seyfert	
EUVE J2343-149	23 43 32	-14 55.8	3.0*	1E 2340.9-1511	Seyfert	
EUVE J2359-306	23 59 08	-30 37.7	14.7	1H 2354-315	BL Lac	

\*Count rate from EUVE Deep Survey Telescope; counts per kilosecond.  
 (From Bowyer, S. and Malina, R.F., in *New Developments in X-ray and Ultraviolet Astronomy*, Drew, J.E., ed., Adv. Space. Res. **16**, No. 3, 25, 1995.)

**25 Brightest EUVE sources**

Name	$\alpha$ 2000	$\delta$ 2000	ID 1	ID 2	Sg typ	V mag	Q
EUVE J0658–289	6 <sup>h</sup>	58 <sup>m</sup>	43 <sup>s</sup>	–28°	56.9'	$\epsilon$ CMa	RE J0658–285
EUVE J1316+290	13	16	24	+29	5.4	WD 1314+293	D2lab
EUVE J0505+528	5	5	35	+52	49.7	WD 0505+527	D <sub>A</sub> W
EUVE J0645–167	6	45	13	–16	42.0	RE J0505+524	D <sub>A</sub> W
						WD 0642–166	DA
						TD1 8027	A1V
						RE J0455–28	–1.47
						RE J0457–281	2
						DA	14.00
EUVE J1502+661	15	2	6	+66	11.7	WD 1501+664	DZ
EUVE J0622–179	6	22	40	–17	58.5	$\beta$ CMa	RE J1502+661
EUVE J0235+037	2	35	9	+3	44.9	WD 0232+035	BIII/III
EUVE J2214–493	22	14	10	–49	19.9	RE J2214–491	PG 0232+035
EUVE J1816+498	18	16	14	+49	51.7	AM Her	DA+dM1.5
EUVE J1257+220	12	57	4	+22	1.2	WD 1254+223	DA
EUVE J0503–288	5	3	56	–28	53.8	RE J0503–285	DO
EUVE J2312+107	23	12	24	+10	46.7	WD 2309+105	D <sub>A</sub> W
EUVE J1032+534	10	32	13	+53	29.0	RE J1032+532	DA
EUVE J2009–604	20	9	2	–60	26.3	RE J2009–602	DA
EUVE J2156–546	21	56	20	–54	39.0	RE J2256–543	DA
EUVE J0515+326	5	15	27	+32	41.2	RE J0515+324	HD 33959 C
						KW Aur	TD1 4235
						RE J0623–374	A9IV
EUVE J0623–376	6	23	14	–37	40.9	WD 0623–374	DA
EUVE J0653–330	0	53	16	–33	40.9	WD 0053–332	12.00
EUVE J1629+780	16	29	1	+78	4.5	WD 1631+78	13.38
EUVE J0552+158	5	52	30	+15	53.9	WD 0549+158	13.00
EUVE J0715–704	7	15	10	–70	24.6	RE J0715–702	13.06
EUVE J0228–613	2	28	22	–61	18.4	RE J0228–611	14.40
EUVE J0335–257	3	35	30	–25	43.6	HD 15638	1
EUVE J1059+514	10	59	19	+51	24.2	EXO 0333.3–2554	8.80
						F3IV/V	1
						EXO 0333.3–2554	18.20
						LB 1919	1
						DA	16.80

The list is sorted by count rate (highest first, irrespective of the 100, 200, 400, and 600 Å detector band passes).

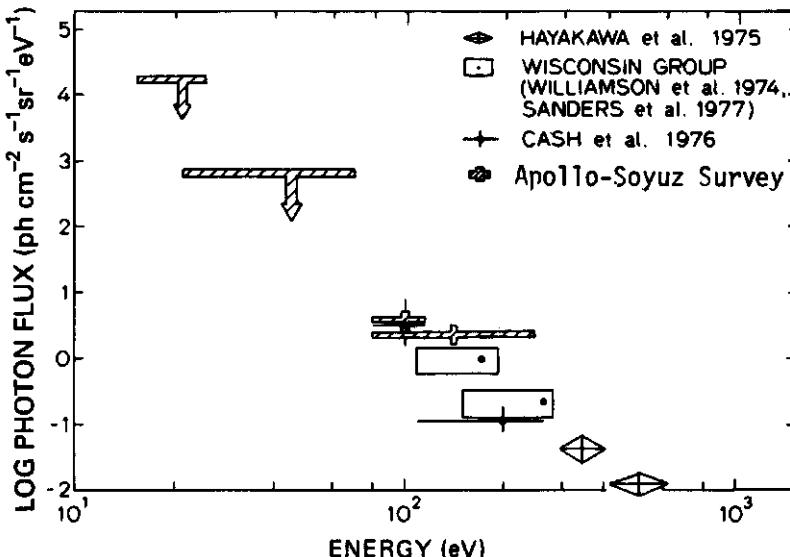
The “Q” column indicates a level of confidence in each source identification. 1: likely; 2: positional coincidence but no supporting evidence, U: some of the counts originate in the known UV leak.

(From the *Second EUVE Source Catalog*, Bowyer S., Lampton M., Lewis J., Wu X., Jelinsky P., Malina R.F., 1996, *Astrophys. J. Suppl. Ser.* **102**, 129.)

## Background fluxes

### Cosmic background

Soft X-ray and EUV background fluxes. (Adapted from Stern, R. & Bowyer, S., *Ap. J.*, **230**, 755, 1979.)



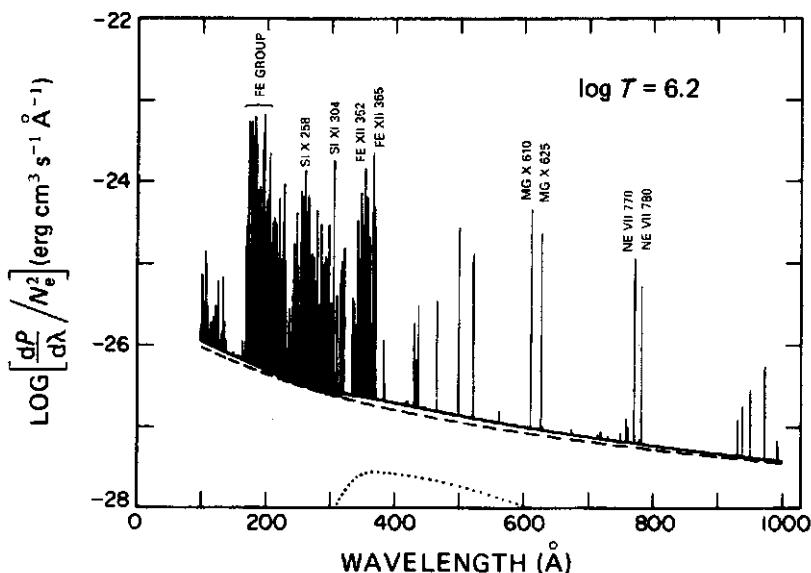
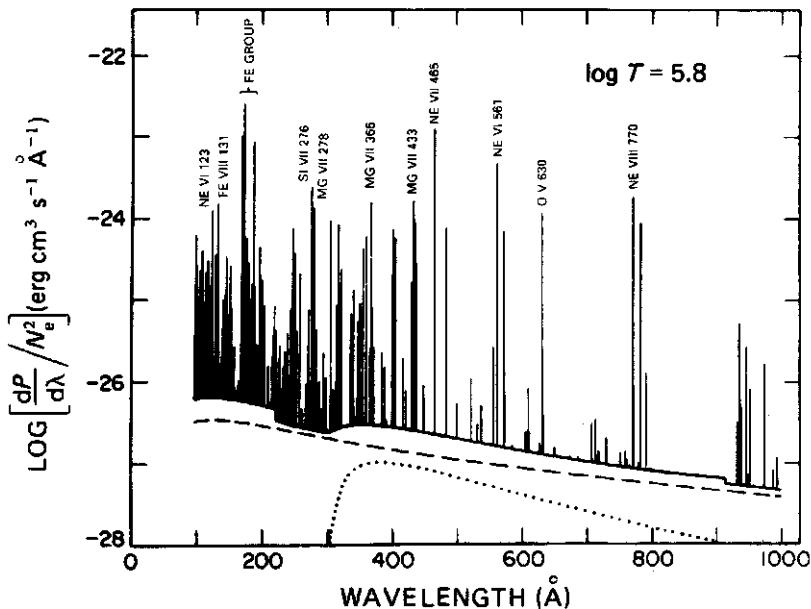
### Geocoronal vacuum ultraviolet emission

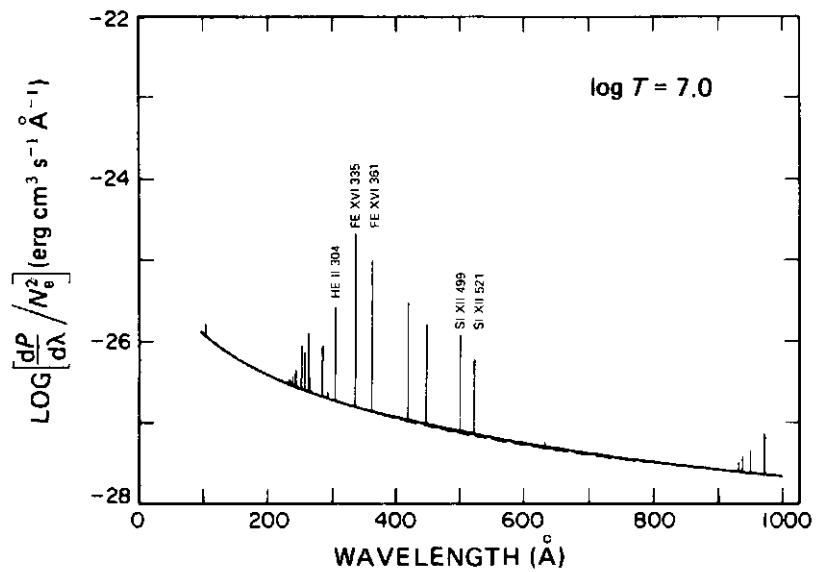
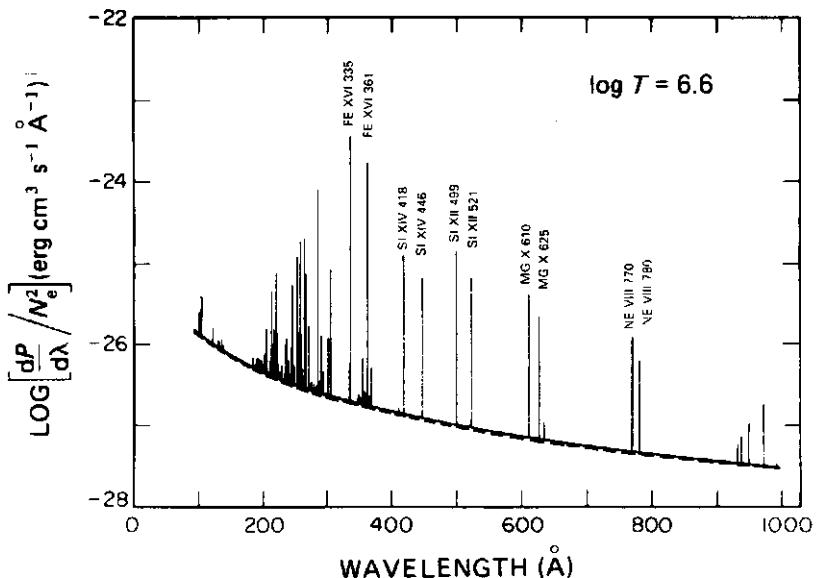
$\lambda$ (Å)	Line	Photon radiance ( $\text{ph cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}$ )	
		Day	Night
304	He II	$8.0 \times 10^5$	$8.0 \times 10^5$
584	He I	$8.0 \times 10^7$	$8.0 \times 10^5$
834	O II	$8.0 \times 10^7$	$2.0 \times 10^6$
1025	H I	$1.6 \times 10^8$	$1.6 \times 10^8$
1216	H I	$8.0 \times 10^8$	$8.0 \times 10^8$
1304-1356	O I	$8.0 \times 10^8$	$8.0 \times 10^6$
1356-1600	N <sub>2</sub>	$2.4 \times 10^7$	$2.4 \times 10^7$

$$1 \text{ Rayleigh} = \frac{1}{4\pi} \times 10^6 \text{ ph cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}.$$

## EUV plasma spectra

EUV (100 – 1000 Å) spectrum of an optically thin plasma. Line fluxes are normalized assuming a line width of 1 Å. Logarithmic abundances: H ≡ 12.00, He = 10.93, C = 8.52, N = 7.96, O = 8.82, Ne = 7.92, Mg = 7.42, Si = 7.52, S = 7.20, Fe = 7.60. Dashed curve: free-free continuum; dotted curve: two-photon continuum; solid curve: total continuum including free-bound radiation. (Adapted from Stern, R., Wang, E. and Bowyer, S., *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **37**, 195, 1978.)

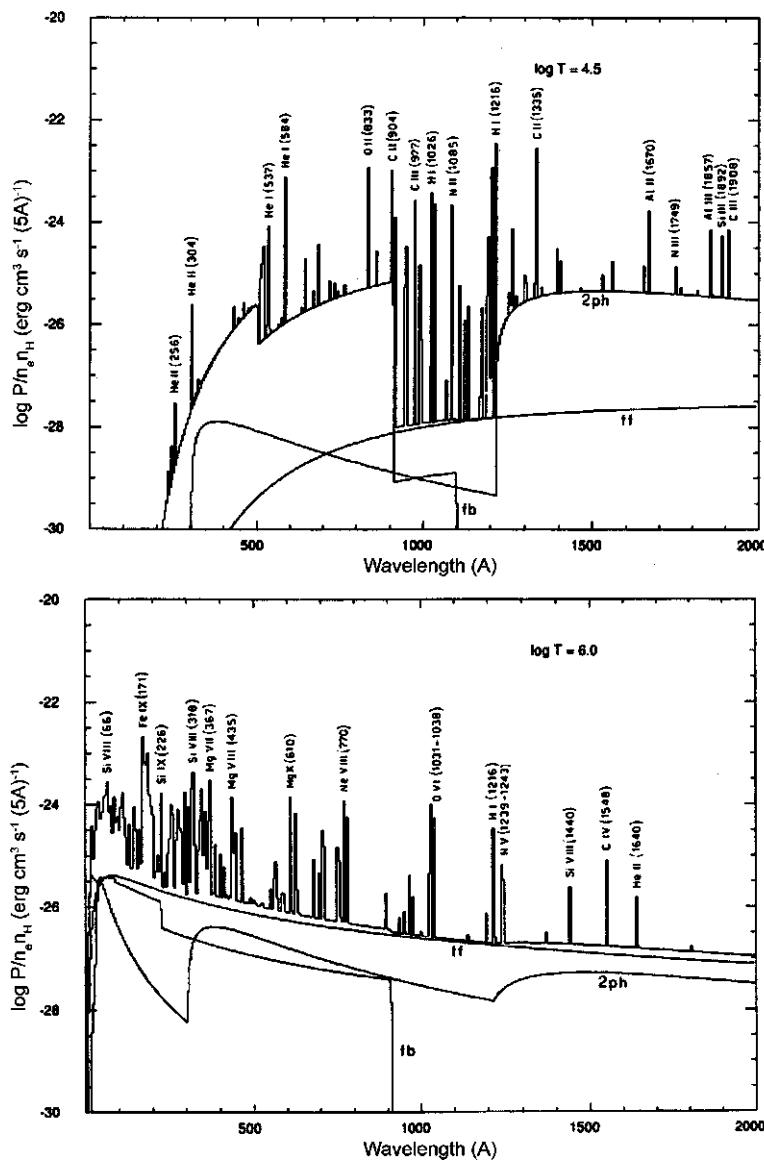


EUV plasma spectra (*cont.*)

### EUV plasma spectra (*cont.*)

X-ray and EUV (1 – 2000 Å) spectrum of an optically thin plasma. The power spectral distribution per unit emission measure and 5 Å band ( $\text{erg cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1} (5\text{\AA})^{-1}$ ) at  $3 \times 10^4$  and  $1 \times 10^6$  K are shown. The contributions to continuum radiation from free-free (ff), free-bound (fb), and the two-photon process (2ph) from H-like ions are indicated. The most important lines are labeled.

The following cosmic abundances relative to H ( $\log n_E/n_H$ ) are used: H = 0.0; He = -1.07; C = -3.48; N = -4.04; O = -3.18; Ne = -4.08; Na = -5.72; Mg = -4.58; Si = -4.48; Al = -5.61; S = -4.80; Ar = -5.20; Ca = -5.70; Fe = -4.40; and Ni = -5.70. (From Landini, M. and Monsignori-Fossi, B., in *Extreme Ultraviolet Astronomy*, Malina, R.F. and Bowyer, S., ed., Pergamon Press, 1989.)



**An incomplete list of astrophysically important ultraviolet spectral features**

Identification	Wavelength (Å)†	Identification	Wavelength (Å)†
[Ne III]	3869	H I, D I	973
[O II]	3727	H I, D I	950
[Ne V]	3426	N II	917
Mg II	2798	H I, D I Ly edge	912
V II	2326	N II	916
C III	1909	O II	834
O III	1663	O III	834
He II	1640	O II	833
C IV	1549	O III	833
O IV	1402	S IV	816
Si IV	1397	O V	760
C II	1335	S IV	745
O I	1302	O II	719
Si II	1264	O II	718
S II	1260	O III	704
N V	1240	S IV	657
H I, D I	1216	O V	630
S III	1207	O III	600
N I	1201	He I	584
N I	1200	O IV	555
Si II	1190	O IV	554
C III	1176	O IV	553
O III	1175	O II	539
Fe II	1145	He I	537
N I	1134	He I	522
N II	1085	O III	508
N II	1084	O III	507
Ar I	1067	He I cont. edge	504
Si IV	1067	Ne VII	465
H <sub>2</sub>	1062	Mg IX	368
H <sub>2</sub>	1050	O III	306
H <sub>2</sub>	1049	He II	304
O VI	1038	Si XI	303
O II	1036	Fe XV	284
O VI	1032	He II	256
H I, D I	1026	Fe XXIV	255
N III	992	He II	243
N III	990	He II cont. edge	227
C III	977	O V	172

† $h\nu$  (ev) = 12399/ $\lambda$  (Å)

Brackets denote forbidden transitions.

**Prominent UV emission lines**

$\lambda$ (Å)	Ion	$\lambda$ (Å)	Ion	$\lambda$ (Å)	Ion
538	O II	1561	C I	2511.96	He II
584.33	He I	1574.77	Ne V	2586–2632	Fe II
834	O III	1577	C III	2664.06	He I
916	N II	1602	Ne IV	2696.92	He I
933.4	S VI	1640	He II	2724.00	He I
977.02	C III	1641.31	O I	2734.14	He I
1033	O IV	1657	C I	2764.62	He I
1066.66	Ar I	1663	O III	2783.03	Mg V
1085	N II	1670.79	Al II	2786.81	Ar V
1175	C III	1710	Si II	2794	Mg II
1199	S III	1718.55	N IV	2800	Mg II
1215.67	H I	1728.94	S III	2829.91	He I
1240	N V	1750	N III	2838	C II
1247.38	C III	1760	C II	2852.96	Mg I
1256	S II	1815	Si II	2854.48	Ar IV
1279	C I	1814.63	Ne III	2869.00	Ar IV
1299	Si III	1860	Al III	2928.34	Mg V
1304	O I	1882.71	Si III	2933	Mg II
1309	Si II	1892.03	Si III	2945.97	He I
1335	C II	1900.29	S I	2950.07	Mn II
1342	O IV	1908.73	C III	2973.15	O I
1371.29	O V	1914.70	S I	2978	N III
1394	Si IV	1993.62	C I	3005.36	Ar III
1397-1407	O IV	2321.67	O III	3024.33	O III
1402.77	Si IV	2326	C II	3046	O III
1460	C I	2328–2414	Fe II	3068	N II
1473	S I	2329.23	Si II	3109	Ar III
1483.32	N IV	2335	Si II	3133.77	O III
1486	S I	2381.13	He II	3188.67	He I
1487	N IV	2424	Ne IV	3204.03	He II
1550	C IV	2471.04	O II		

A line with a wavelength given to two decimal places is a single line; otherwise the line is a blend and the wavelength given is that which would be seen in low-resolution spectra.

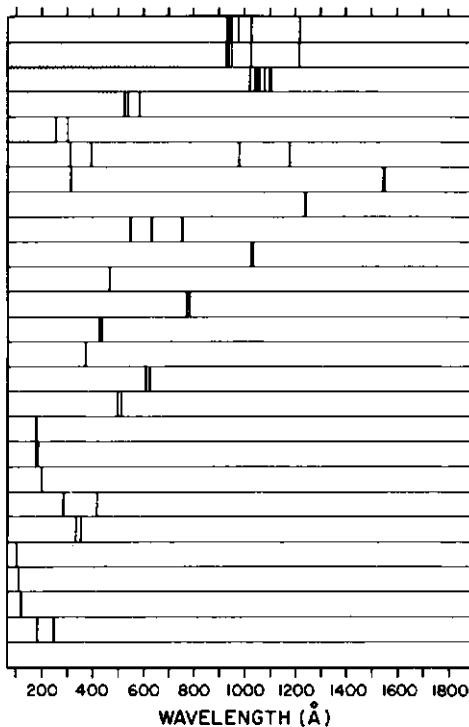
(From *Ultraviolet Astronomy*, Teays, T.J., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag 2000.)

## Important strong lines

Wavelengths of important spectral lines of abundant elements and molecular hydrogen ( $H_2$ ). Also indicated are the typical element abundances on a logarithmic scale where hydrogen is 12.00, and the temperatures of maximum fractional amount of each ion assuming collisional ionization equilibrium. Regions of continuous absorption by photoionization are indicated for hydrogen and helium. (From *FUSE Science Working Group Report*, NASA, 1983.)

SPECIES   LOG N   LOG T

H I	12.00	4.0
D I	7.2	4.0
$H_2$	6.0–11.7	1.9
He I	11.00	4.3
He II	11.00	4.3
C III	8.57	4.9
C IV	8.57	5.1
N V	8.06	5.3
O V	8.83	5.5
O VI	8.83	5.5
Ne VII	7.45	5.8
Ne VIII	7.45	5.9
Mg VIII	7.54	6.1
Mg IX	7.54	6.1
Mg X	7.54	6.2
Si XII	7.55	6.5
Fe IX	7.40	< 6.0
Fe X		6.2
Fe XII		6.4
Fe XV		6.6
Fe XVI		6.8
Fe XVIII		7.1
Fe XIX		7.2
Fe XXI		7.2
Fe XXIV		7.5



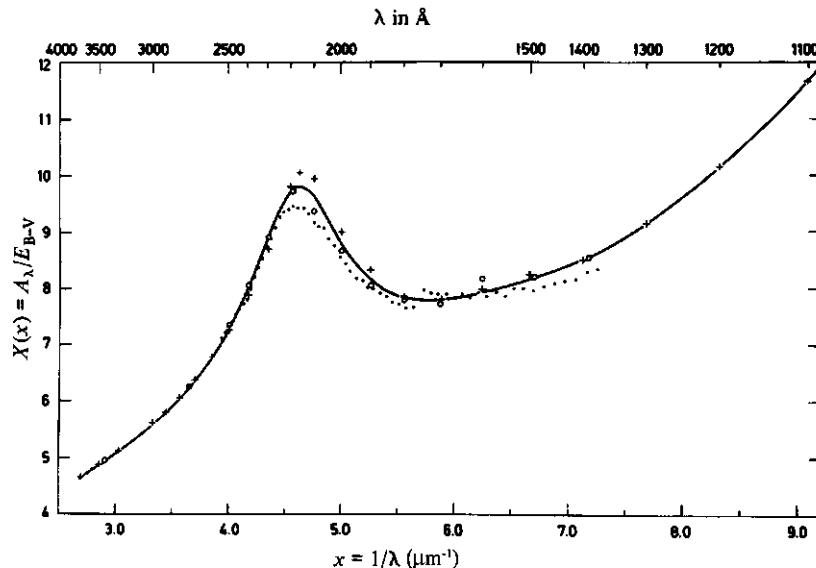
**Ultraviolet absorption cross-sections**

$\lambda$ (Å)	Line identification	Absorption cross-sections ( $10^{-18}$ cm $^2$ )		
		O	O <sub>2</sub>	N <sub>2</sub>
1215	Ly $\alpha$	0	0.01	0.000 03
1176	C III	0	1.30	0
1085	N II	0	2.00	0
1038	O VI	0	0.78	0.0007
1032	O VI	0	1.04	0.0007
1026	Ly $\beta$	0	1.58	0.0001
977	C III	0	4.0	0.7
897	Ly cont	2.9	13.0	$\sim$ 11.0
870	Ly cont	2.9	13.0	$\sim$ 10.0
800	Ly cont	2.9	29.0	$\sim$ 10.0
791	O IV	3.2	28.0	25.0
703	O III	7.0	25.0	26.0
630	O V	12.0	30.0	24.0
625	Mg X	12.0	25.0	24.0
584	He I	13.0	23.0	23.0
554	O IV	13.0	26.0	25.0
537	He I	12.0	21.0	25.0
504	He I	12.0	25.0	$\sim$ 22.0
499	Si XII	12.0	25.0	$\sim$ 22.0
465	Ne VII	11.0	23.0	23.0
368	Mg IX	9.0	18.0	16.0
335	Fe XVI	8.8	17.0	14.0
304	He II	9.0	17.0	12.0
284	Fe XV	7.7	15.0	9.8

(Adapted from Sullivan, J. O. and Holland, A. C., NASA CR-371, 1964.)

## Interstellar extinction in the UV

The UV extinction  $X(x) = A_\lambda/E_{B-V}$  against  $x = 1/\lambda$  in microns.  $A_\lambda$  is the extinction in magnitudes;  $E_{B-V} = A_B - A_V$  where  $A_B$  and  $A_V$  are the extinctions at the wavelengths of the B and V filters.  $E_{B-V}$  is called the color excess. The curve is from the analytical fit of the table below. (Figure courtesy of M.J. Seaton, University College London.)



*Analytical fit to the UV extinction* (see figure above)

Range of $1/\lambda(\mu) = x$	$A_\lambda/E(B-V) = X$
$2.70 \leq 1/\lambda \leq 3.65$	$1.56 + 1.048/\lambda + 1.01/\{(1/\lambda - 4.60)^2 + 0.280\}$
$3.65 \leq 1/\lambda \leq 7.14$	$2.29 + 0.848/\lambda + 1.01/\{(1/\lambda - 4.60)^2 + 0.280\}$
$7.14 \leq 1/\lambda \leq 10.0$	$16.17 - 3.20/\lambda + 0.2975/\lambda^2$

(From Seaton, M.J., *M.N.R.A.S.*, **187**, 1979.)

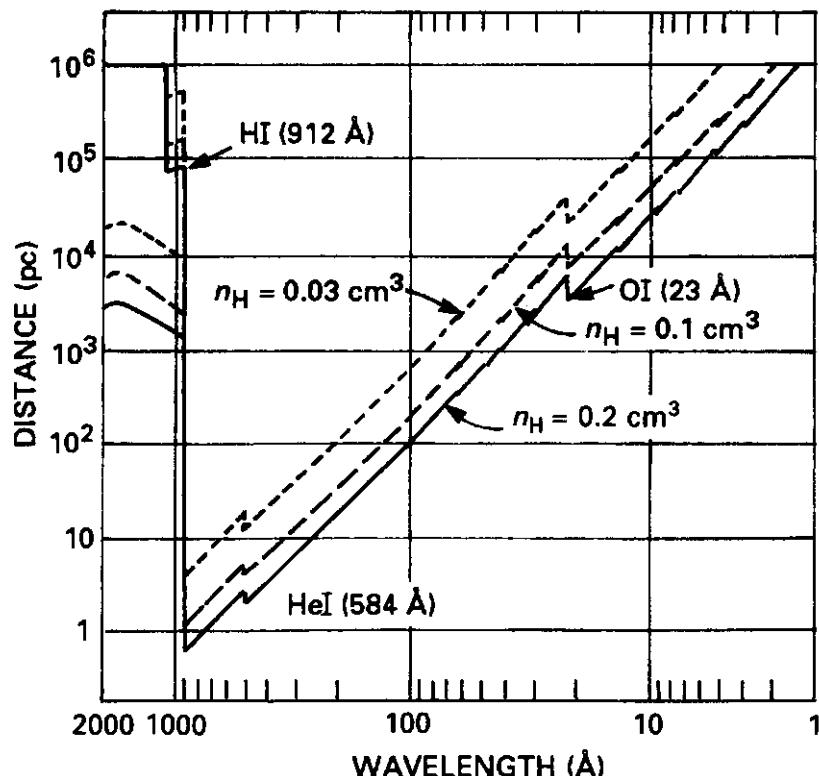
### Interstellar EUV attenuation

Distances (parsecs) corresponding to unit optical depth (1/e attenuation) as a function of neutral hydrogen density and wavelength

$\lambda$ (Å)	$n_{\text{HI}} = 1$ (cm $^{-3}$ )	$n_{\text{HI}} = 0.1$ (cm $^{-3}$ )	$n_{\text{HI}} = 0.01$ (cm $^{-3}$ )	$n_{\text{HI}} = 0.001$ (cm $^{-3}$ )
912	0.05	0.5	5	50
500	0.2	2	20	200
200	1.5	15	150	1500
100	10	100	1000	10000

(From FUSE Science Working Group Report, NASA, 1983.)

Distance at which the attenuation of EUV radiation reaches 90%. An ionized interstellar medium of normal composition is assumed. (Adapted from Paresce, F. in. *Astrophysics from Spacelab*, P. L. Bernacca and R. Ruffini, eds., D. Reidel Pub. Co., 1980.)



**Average interstellar hydrogen densities within 100 pc**

In the direction of	Distance (pc)	$n_{\text{HI}}$ ( $\text{cm}^{-3}$ )
Sun	—	0.05
$\alpha$ Cen	1.34	0.06–0.30
$\epsilon$ Eri	3.3	0.06–0.20
$\epsilon$ Ind	3.4	$\sim 0.1$
$\epsilon$ CMi	3.5	0.09–0.13
$\beta$ Gem	10.8	0.02–0.15
$\alpha$ Boo	11.1	0.02–0.15
$\alpha$ Aur	14	0.04–0.05
$\alpha$ Tau	21	0.02–0.15
$\alpha$ Leo	22	0.02
		0.01†
$\alpha$ Eri	28	0.07
$\alpha$ Gru	29	0.09–0.18
		0.18†
HR 1099	33	0.003–0.007
$\eta$ UMa	42	0.005
G191–B2B	47	> 0.03
$\sigma$ Sgr	57	< 0.17
HZ 43	62	< 0.013
$\alpha$ Pav	63	< 0.1
$\beta$ Cen	81	0.13
$\beta$ Lib	83	0.06–0.13
$\zeta$ Cen	83	< 0.39
$\alpha$ Vir	87	0.037
Feige 24	90	0.02–0.05
$\lambda$ Sco	100	< 0.078

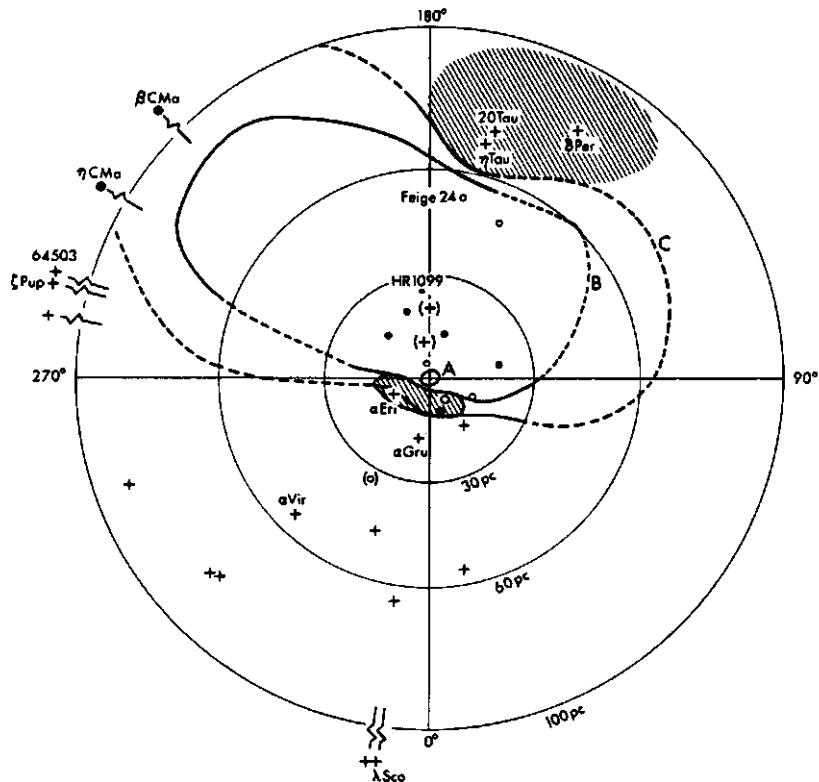
Mean hydrogen column density within 100 pc =  $1.8 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ pc}^{-1}$ .

† Multiple entries denote independent measurements.

(Adapted from Cash, W., Bowyer, S. & Lampton, M., *Astron. Astrophys.*, **80**, 67, 1979.)

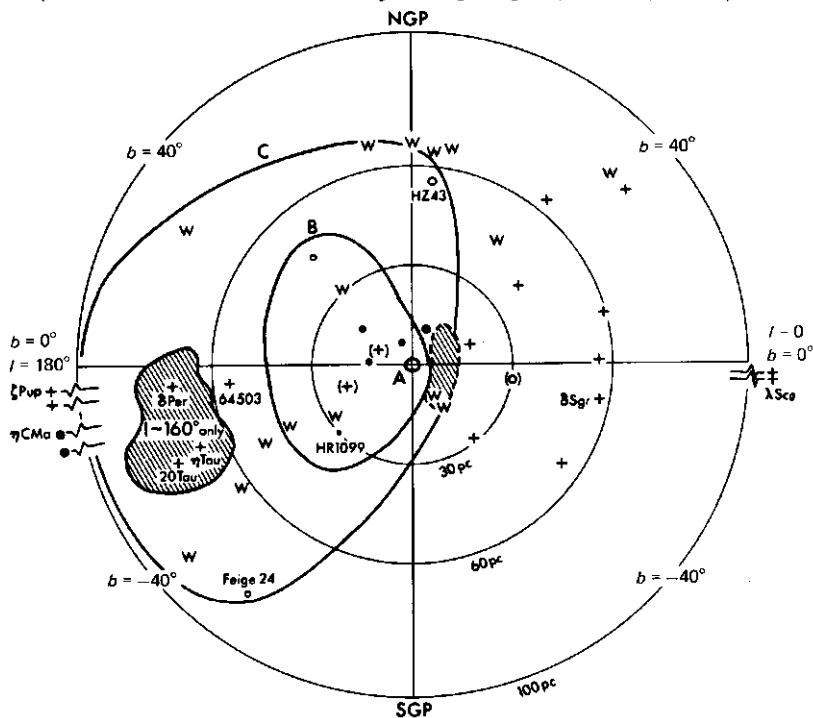
## Neutral hydrogen column density

Neutral hydrogen column density  $N_{\text{HI}}$  contours projected onto the plane of the galaxy ( $b = 0^\circ$ ). The Sun is at the center of this plot, distances out to 100 pc are indicated, and the direction towards the galactic center ( $l = 0^\circ$ ) is at the bottom. Line A is the contour of  $N_{\text{HI}} \sim 5 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , corresponding to  $\tau_{500\text{\AA}} = 1$ ,  $\tau_{200\text{\AA}} \approx 0.1$ , and  $\tau_{100\text{\AA}} \approx 0.01$ . Line B is the contour of  $N_{\text{HI}} = 25 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , corresponding to  $\tau_{500\text{\AA}} = 5$ ,  $\tau_{200\text{\AA}} \approx 0.5$ , and  $\tau_{100\text{\AA}} \approx 0.05$ . Line C is the contour of  $N_{\text{HI}} \sim 50 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , corresponding to  $\tau_{500\text{\AA}} = 10$ ,  $\tau_{200\text{\AA}} \approx 1$ , and  $\tau_{100\text{\AA}} \approx 0.1$ . All open circles are white dwarfs. Small circles represent stars with  $N_{\text{HI}} \leq 5 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , medium circles represent stars with  $5 \times 10^{17} < N_{\text{HI}} < 25 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , the large circles represent stars with  $25 \times 10^{17} < N_{\text{HI}} < 50 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ , and the crosses represent stars with  $N_{\text{HI}} > 50 \times 10^{17} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ . Stars with measured hydrogen column densities but which are located within 10 pc projected distance are not plotted. (From *FUSE Science Working Group Report*, NASA, 1983.)



### Neutral hydrogen column density (*cont.*)

Same as previous diagram but projected onto a plane intercepting the Galactic plane at Galactic longitudes  $l = 0^\circ$  and  $180^\circ$ , and passing through the North Galactic Pole (*top*) and South Galactic Pole (*bottom*). The symbols have the same meanings as before, and those stars with projected distances of less than 10 pc are generally not plotted. W symbols designate white dwarfs not yet observed. Many of these are within the cavity of low HI absorption and will be observable below 900 Å. (From *FUSE Science Working Group Report*, NASA, 1983.)




---

### Bibliography

*New Developments in X-ray and Ultraviolet Astronomy*, Drew, J.E. ed., Adv. Space. Res., **16**, No. 3, 25, 1995.

*Extreme Ultraviolet Astronomy*, Malina, R.F. and Bowyer, S., ed., Pergamon Press, 1989.

Proceedings of the Fourth European IUE Conference, ESA SP-218, 1984.

*The Universe at Ultraviolet Wavelengths*, NASA Conference Publication 2171, 1980.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 6

---

## X-ray astronomy

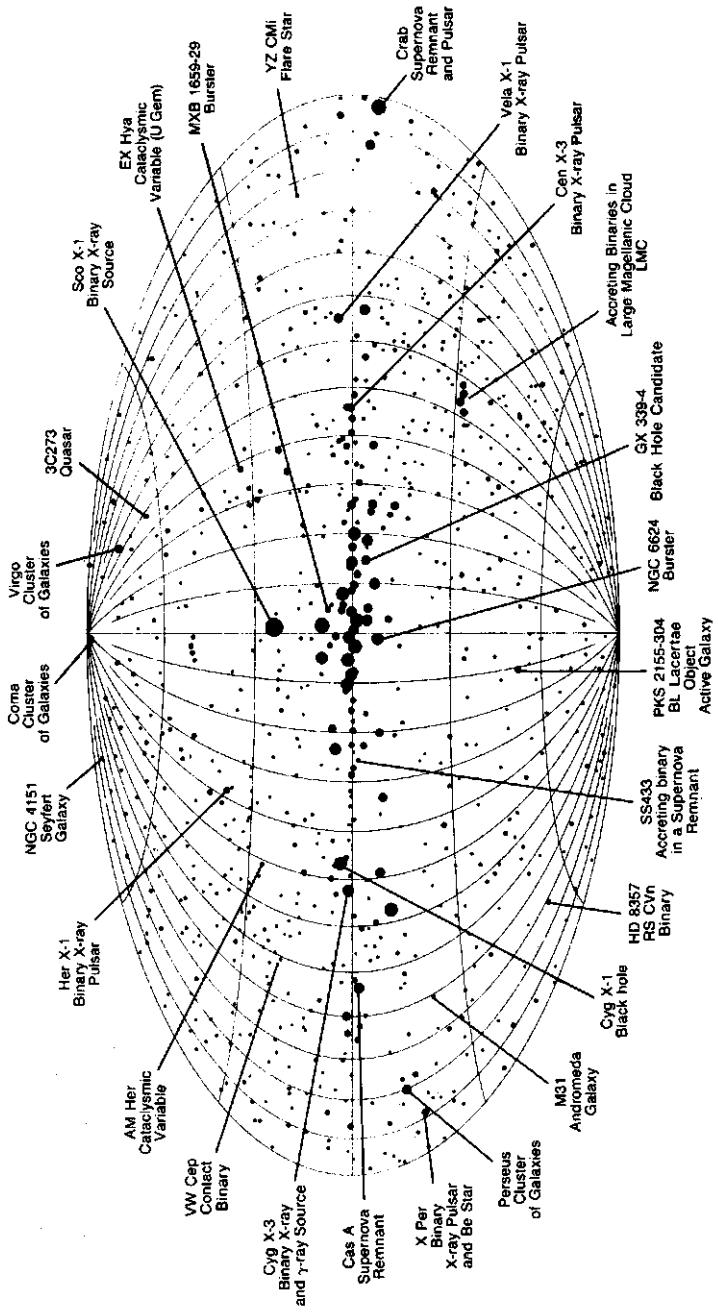
*The black holes of nature are the most perfect macroscopic objects there are in the Universe: the only elements in their construction are our concepts of space and time.* - Subrahmanyam (Chandra) Chandrasekhar

The HEAO A1 all sky map	255
Galactic sources: binaries and stars	256
Binary X-ray pulsars	258
Galactic black hole candidates	261
The mass function	261
Rotation-powered pulsars	262
X-ray emission from a selection of stars	264
X-ray emitting supernova remnants	265
Crab Nebula	266
X-ray emission from globular clusters	267
X-ray emission from normal galaxies	267
X-ray emission from clusters of galaxies	268
X-ray emission from active galaxies	269
3C273	270
Quasar X-ray luminosity	271
X-ray source nomogram	272
Diffuse X-ray background	273
Absorption of X-rays	274
<i>Photoabsorption cross-sections (UV-X-ray)</i>	274
<i>Effective cross-section of the interstellar medium</i>	275
<i>Total photo-ionization cross-section</i>	276
<i>Photoelectric absorption cross-section</i>	277
<i>Attenuation of photons in the atmosphere</i>	279
<i>Photoelectric absorption in the interstellar medium</i>	280
Spectral features	281
Model X-ray spectral distributions	281

Hydrogen column density	282
X-ray plasma spectrum	283
X-ray emission lines from an optically thin plasma	284
Power radiated from an optically thin plasma	287
Chandra X-ray Observatory	288
XMM-Newton X-ray Observatory	289
Conversions and equivalencies	290
Bibliography	291

## The HEAO A1 all sky map

Discrete X-ray sources observed by the NRL Sky Survey Experiment on HEAO-1 are displayed in galactic coordinates. The size of the dot representing a source is proportional to the logarithm of the intensity averaged over the time interval when the source was in the field of view. 700 sources are shown. (Courtesy of K. Wood, Naval Research Laboratory.)



**Representative galactic sources: binaries and stars**

Source	Flux density <sup>(a)</sup>			$L(X) \text{ max}$ (2-11 keV) max ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ )	$L(X) \text{ max}$ (2-11 keV) min ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ )	V magnitude	$\frac{L(X)}{L(O)}$	Spectral type	Periods	Distance	Remarks
	$\alpha$	$\delta$	Period								
SMC X-1	01 <sup>h</sup> 15 <sup>m</sup> 45 <sup>s</sup> .6 -73°42' 22"	57 2	6×10 <sup>38</sup>	13.3	1.2	B0 I	3.89 <sup>d</sup> 0.71 <sup>s</sup>	65 kpc	Sanduleak 160		
$\beta$ Per	03 04 54.3 40 45 52	9 37	2×10 <sup>31</sup>	2.2	$5\times 10^{-5}$	B8 V/K0 IV/ Am	2.9 <sup>d</sup>	32 pc	Algol		
3U 0352+30	03 52 15.1 30 54 01	11	1.2×10 <sup>34</sup>	6.0-6.7	$1\times 10^{-4}$	O9.5 (III-V)e	581 <sup>d</sup> (?) 13.9m	350 pc	X Per		
A 0620-00	06 20 11.1 -00 19 11	~50000 $\lesssim_5$	3×10 <sup>38</sup>	10.4 (18.3)	85				1.5-2.5 kpc	X-ray Nova V616 Mon	
Vela X-1	09 00 13.2 -40 21 25	280 <28	1.4×10 <sup>36</sup>	6.9	$3\times 10^{-3}$	B0.5 Ib	8.97 <sup>d</sup> 283 <sup>s</sup>	1.4 kpc	HD 77581		
Cen X-3	11 19 01.9 -60 20 57	224 <21	4×10 <sup>37</sup>	13.4	0.05	O6.5 II-II	2.09 <sup>d</sup> 4.8 <sup>s</sup>	8 kpc	Krzeminski's star		
Sco X-1	16 17 04.5 -15 31 15	19000 6900	2×10 <sup>37</sup>	12.2-13.3	600		0.7387 <sup>d</sup>	0.7 kpc	V818 Sco		
Her X-1	16 56 01.7 35 25 05	160 11	1.0×10 <sup>37</sup>	13.2	10	A09-F0	34.8 <sup>d</sup> 1.7d 1.2s	5 kpc	HZ Her		
3U 1700-37	17 00 32.7 -37 46 29	110 <11	3×10 <sup>36</sup>	6.6	$5\times 10^{-4}$	O6.5f	3.4 <sup>d</sup>	1.7 kpc			
4U 1813+50	18 14 58.6 49 50 55	7 2.5	8×10 <sup>33</sup>	13.1-12.3	0.6		0.129 <sup>d</sup>	300 kpc	AM Her		

Representative galactic sources: binaries and stars (cont.)

Source	Flux density <sup>(a)</sup>			$\frac{L(X)}{L(O)}$	Spectral type	Periods	Distance	Remarks
	$\alpha$	1950	$L(X)$ max (2-11 keV) max ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ ) min ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ )	V magnitude				
Cyg X-1	19 56 28.9 35 03 55.0	1320 260	$2 \times 10^{37}$ $1.2 \times 10^{38}$	8.9	$2 \times 10^{-2}$	09.7 Iab	5.6 <sup>d</sup>	2.5 kpc Blackhole candidate HDE 226868
Cyg X-3	20 30 37.6 40 47 13	430 90	$1.2 \times 10^{38}$				16.8 <sup>d</sup> (?) 4.8 <sup>h</sup>	IR/radio
SS Cygni	21 40 42.6 43 21 51	20 5	$1-5 \times 10^{32}$	12.1-8.1	1.3		$6^h 38^m$	Dwarf nova (U Gem)
Cyg X-2	21 42 36.9 38 05 28	740 220		15.5	450		11.2 <sup>d</sup>	Sub-dwarf
X-ray intensity ( $> 0.2$ keV) ( $\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ )								
UV Cet	1 36 24 -18 13 00		$7 \times 10^{-11}$		6.8-12.9 $2 \times 10^{-3}$	dM5.5 e		Flare star
$\alpha$ Aur	5 12 59.5 45 56 58		$3 \times 10^{-10}$	0.1	$1 \times 10^{-5}$	G8 III+F	104 <sup>d</sup>	14 pc Capella
$\alpha$ CMa	6 42 54 -16 39 00		$9.5 \times 10^{-12}$	-1.5		A IV+D0	44.98 <sup>y</sup>	2.7 pc Sirius
HZ 43	13 14 00 29 22 00		$9 \times 10^{-10}$	12.9	6			White dwarf

(a) Flux density = (integrated 2-11 keV flux)/9keV; 1  $\mu\text{Jy} = 0.242 \times 10^{-11}$  erg  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$  keV $^{-1} = 1.51 \times 10^{-3}$  keV  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$  keV $^{-1}$ .

(Adapted from Bradt, H. V., Doxsey, R. E. and Jernigan, J. G., *COSPAR Symposium on X-ray Astronomy*, Innsbruck, Austria, May 31, 1978).

### Representative binary X-ray pulsars

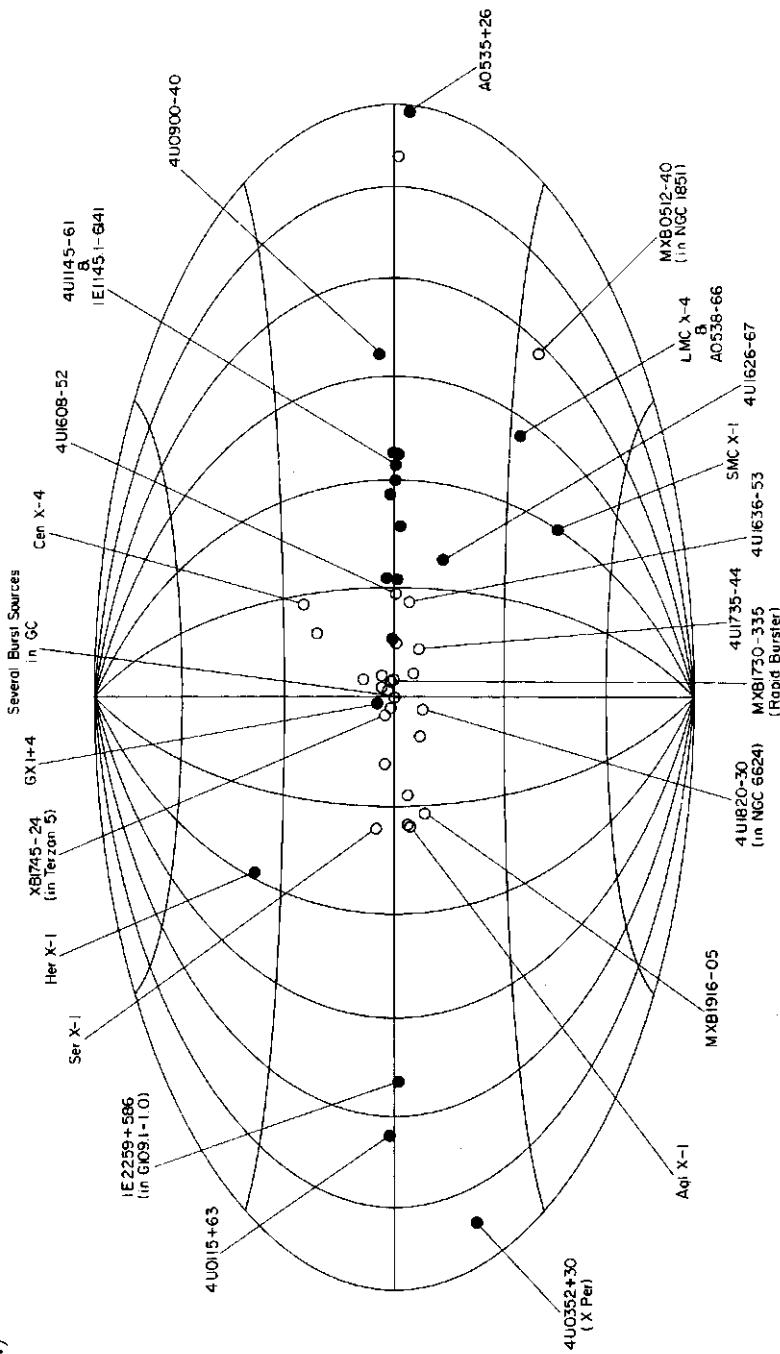
Source	Optical counter-part	Pulse period (s)	$-\dot{P}/P$ (yr $^{-1}$ )	Orbital period (d)	$a_x \sin i$ (lt-s)	$f(M)$ ( $M_{\odot}$ )	Orbital eccentricity	$K_c^{(a)}$ (km s $^{-1}$ )	Eclipse half-angle (°)	$L_x^{(b)}$ (erg s $^{-1}$ )
A 0538-66	Identified	0.069	—	16.66	—	> 0.4	—	—	—	$1.2 \times 10^{39}$
SMC X-1	Sk 160	0.714	$7.1 \times 10^{-4}$	3.892	53.46(3)	10.8	< 0.0007	1.9(2)	26.5-29	$6 \times 10^{38}$
Her X-1	HZ Her	1.24	$2.9 \times 10^{-6}$	1.700	13.1831(3)	0.85	< 0.0003	20(2.3.5)	24.4-24.7	$7 \times 10^{36}$
IE 2259+586	Identified	3.49	—	< 0.08	—	—	—	—	—	$3 \times 10^{34}$
4U 0115+63	Identified	3.61	$3.2 \times 10^{-5}$	24.31	140.13(10)	5.00	0.3402(2)	—	0	$8 \times 10^{36}$
Cen X-3	V779 Cen	4.84	$2.8 \times 10^{-4}$	2.087	39.792(5)	15.5	0.0008(1)	24(6)	35-40	$8 \times 10^{37}$
4U 1626-67	KZ TrA	7.68	$1.9 \times 10^{-4}$	0.0288	< 0.04	$< 8 \times 10^{-5}$	—	280(76)	0	—
2S 1553-54	—	9.26	—	30.7(2.8)	165(30)	5.1(2.9)	< 0.07	—	—	—
LMC X-4	Identified	13.5	$< 1.2 \times 10^{-3}$	1.408	30(5)	15(8)	< 0.2	37.9(2.4)	25.5-33	$4 \times 10^{38}$
2S 1417-62	—	17.6	$9 \times 10^{-3}$ (?)	> 15	> 25	—	—	—	—	—
OAO 1653-40	—	38.2	$5.4 \times 10^{-3}$	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
A 0535+26	HDE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
GX 1+4	245770	104	$3.5 \times 10^{-2}$	111(?)	—	—	—	—	—	$2 \times 10^{37}$
GX 304-1	V2116 Oph	122	$2.1 \times 10^{-2}$	> 15	> 60	—	—	—	—	$6 \times 10^{37}$
HD 77581	Identified	272	—	132(?)	—	—	—	—	—	$3 \times 10^{36}$
4U 0900-40	283	1.7	$\times 10^{-4}$	8.965	113.0(8)	19.3	0.092(5)	21.8(1.2)	31-37	$6 \times 10^{36}$
4U 1145-61	HEN 715	292	$< 10^{-4}$	187(?)	> 100	—	—	—	—	$6 \times 10^{36}$
IE 1145.1-6141	Identified	297	$< 10^{-4}$	> 12	> 50	—	—	—	—	$3 \times 10^{36}$
A 1118-61	HEN	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
3-640	405	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	$5 \times 10^{36}$
4U 1538-52	QV Nor	529	$< 2 \times 10^{-3}$	3.730	55.2(3.7)	13	—	33(7)	25-33	$4 \times 10^{36}$
GX 301-2	WRA 977	696	$7 \times 10^{-3}$	41.4	367(3)	31	0.47(1)	—	0	$1 \times 10^{37}$
4U 0352+30	X Per	835	$1.8 \times 10^{-4}$	580(?)	—	—	< 20	—	—	$1 \times 10^{34}$

(a)  $K_c$  = semiamplitude of the optical Doppler velocity curve.

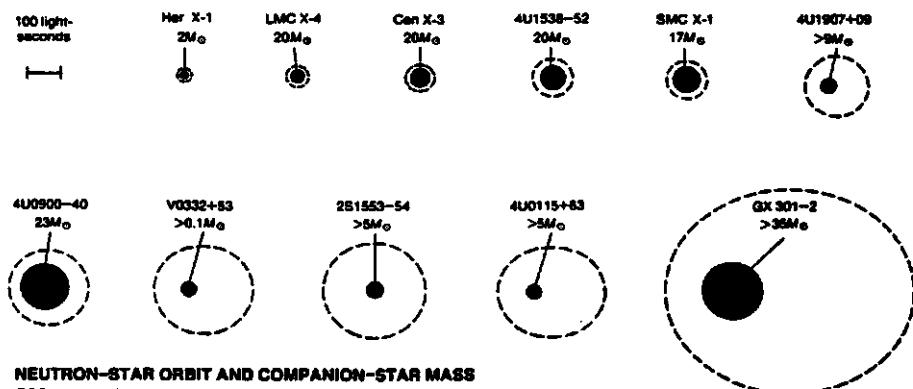
(b)  $L_x$  = X-ray luminosity (2-11 keV) from Bradt, H. and McClintock. *Ann. Rev. Astron. Astrophys.*, **21**, 13, 1983.

(Adapted from Joss, P. C. and Rappaport, S. A., *Ann. Rev. Astron. Astrophys.*, **22**, 537, 1984.)

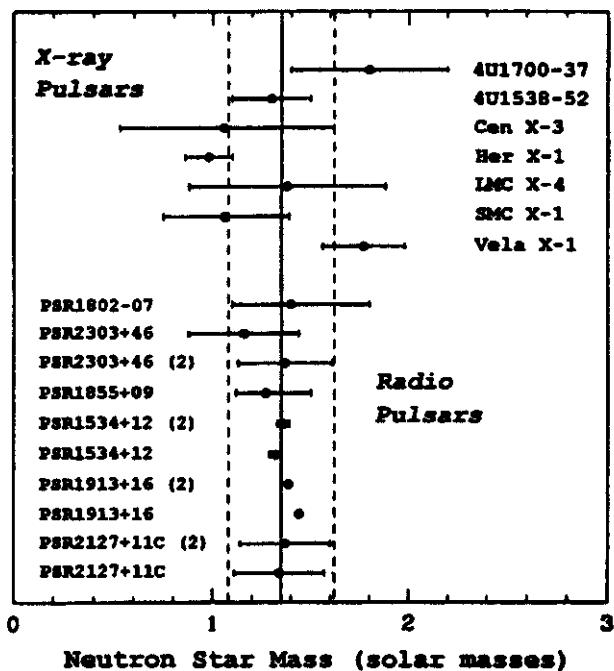
Sky map, in galactic coordinates, of 21 binary X-ray pulsars ( $\bullet$ ) and 27 X-ray burst sources ( $\circ$ ). (Reproduced, with permission, from the *Annual Review of Astronomy and Astrophysics*, Vol. 22, © 1984, by Annual Reviews Inc. Courtesy of Paul C. Joss, MIT.)



Orbits to scale for a selection of massive X-ray binaries and the masses of neutron stars that have been measured from optical, X-ray, and radio observations. (Charles, P.A. and Seward, F.D., *Exploring the X-ray Universe*, Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)



NEUTRON-STAR ORBIT AND COMPANION-STAR MASS  
FOR A NUMBER OF BINARY SYSTEMS



**Galactic black-hole candidates in binary systems**

Source	P <sub>orb</sub> (d)	K(km s <sup>-1</sup> )	f(M/M <sub>0</sub> ) = PK <sup>3</sup> /2πG
XTE J1859+226	0.382 ± 0.003	570 ± 27	7.4 ± 0.1
XTE J 1550–564	1.552 ± 0.010	349 ± 12	6.86 ± 0.71
V404 Cyg	6.4714 ± 0.0001	208.5 ± 0.7	6.08 ± 0.06
XTE J1118+480	0.17013 ± 0.00010	698 ± 14	6.00 ± 0.36
GS2000+25	0.3516 ± 0.0034	518.4 ± 3.5	4.97 ± 0.10
XN Oph 1977	0.5229 ± 0.0044	447.6 ± 3.9	4.86 ± 0.13
GRO J1655–40	2.62157 ± 0.00015	228.2 ± 2.2, 215.5 ± 2.4	3.24 ± 0.09, 2.73 ± 0.09
XN Mus 1991	0.4326058 ± 0.0000031	406 ± 7, 420.8 ± 6.3	3.01 ± 0.15, 3.34 ± 0.15
GRS 1009–45	0.286 ± 0.005	475.4 ± 5.9	3.17 ± 0.12
A0620–00	0.323014 ± 0.000001	443 ± 4, 433 ± 3	2.91 ± 0.08, 2.72 ± 0.06
SAX J1819.3–2525	2.81678 ± 0.00056	211.0 ± 3.1	2.74 ± 0.12
GRO J04222+32	0.21159 ± 0.00057	380.6 ± 6.5	1.21 ± 0.06
Cyg X-1	5.59974 ± 0.00008	74.6 ± 1.6	0.241 ± 0.013
4U1543–47	1.123 ± 0.008	124 ± 4	0.22 ± 0.02

(Courtesy of J. McClintock, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 2001)

**The mass function**

If only the period of a binary system and the radial velocity curve of one component are known, it is only possible to determine the mass ratio of the two stars. The mass function  $f$  is a useful expression for determining this ratio from observable quantities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_1(M_1, M_2, i) &\equiv (M_2 \sin i)^3 / (M_1 + M_2)^2 = M_1 (\sin i)^3 / (1 + q)^2 q \\
 &= PK_1^3 / 2\pi G \quad (\text{by Kepler's 3rd law}) \\
 &= 1.0362 \times 10^{-7} PK_1^3
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $f$  is in units of solar mass,  $i$  is the inclination of the binary's orbital plane with respect to the plane tangent to the celestial sphere,  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are the stellar masses in units of solar mass,  $q = M_1/M_2$ ,  $P$  is the binary period in days, and  $K_1$  is the semi-amplitude of the radial velocity of star 1 in km s<sup>-1</sup>.

### Properties and X-ray characteristics for a selection of rotation-powered pulsars

Name <sup>a</sup>	$P^b$ (s)	$P^b$ ( $10^{-15}$ ss $^{-1}$ )	$\dot{E}$	$\tau_c^e$ (kyr)	$d^b$ (kpc)	$\dot{E}/4\pi d^2$ (erg s $^{-1}$ cm $^{-2}$ )	$L_x^c$ pulsed (erg s $^{-1}$ )	$L_x^d$ syn+neb (erg s $^{-1}$ )	nebulosize <sup>e</sup> ang ( $\theta$ ) lim (pc)	DM <sup>b</sup> (pc cm $^{-3}$ )	$N_H(10^{21})$ (cm $^{-2}$ )	SNR <sup>h</sup>	
B0531+21	0.033	421	$4.5 \times 10^{38}$	1.3	2.5	$6.0 \times 10^{-7}$	$7.4 \times 10^{35}$	$1.2 \times 10^{37}$	$\sim 1.0'$	57	3.0	Crab	
B0833-45	0.089	124	$6.9 \times 10^{36}$	11.4	0.5	$2.3 \times 10^{-7}$	$5.0 \times 10^{31}$	$9.0 \times 10^{31}$	$2'$	0.3	68	3.0	Vela
J1617-5055	0.069	135	$1.6 \times 10^{37}$	8.1	3.3	$1.2 \times 10^{-8}$	$6.4 \times 10^{33}$	$3.4 \times 10^{33}$	$< 1.5'$	< 1.4	467	6.8	RCW 103
B1509-58	0.151	1537	$1.8 \times 10^{37}$	1.6	4.2	$8.3 \times 10^{-9}$	$9.0 \times 10^{34}$	$2.1 \times 10^{35}$	$\sim 8''$	$\sim 10$	253	13	G320.4-1.2
B1706-44	0.102	93.0	$3.5 \times 10^{36}$	17.4	2.4	$5.0 \times 10^{-9}$	...	$6.6 \times 10^{32}$	$54''$	0.6	76	1.3	G343.1-2.3
B1951+32	0.040	5.8	$3.7 \times 10^{36}$	107	2.5	$5.0 \times 10^{-9}$	$2.7 \times 10^{33}$	$1.6 \times 10^{33}$	$70''$	0.8	45	3.0	CTB 80
B1046-58	0.124	95.9	$2.0 \times 10^{36}$	20.4	3.0	$1.8 \times 10^{-9}$	...	$2.0 \times 10^{32}$	$< 3'$	< 2.6	129	5	...
J0537-6910	0.016	51.3	$4.9 \times 10^{38}$	5.0	47	$1.8 \times 10^{-9}$	$1.7 \times 10^{35}$	$1.2 \times 10^{36}$	$< 7''$	< 1.6	...	15	N157B
B1823-13	0.101	75.0	$2.9 \times 10^{36}$	21.3	4.0	$1.5 \times 10^{-9}$	...	$4.7 \times 10^{33}$	$38''$	0.7	231	40	...
B1800-21	0.134	134	$2.2 \times 10^{36}$	15.8	3.9	$1.2 \times 10^{-9}$	...	$5.8 \times 10^{32}$	$< 3.0'$	< 3.4	234	14	W30
B1757-24	0.125	128	$2.6 \times 10^{36}$	15.4	4.6	$1.0 \times 10^{-8}$	...	$< 8.0 \times 10^{32}$	...	...	289	9	G5.4-1.2
B1727-33	0.139	85.0	$1.3 \times 10^{36}$	25.9	4.2	$5.9 \times 10^{-10}$	...	$< 2.7 \times 10^{32}$	...	...	256	8	...
B0540-69	0.050	479	$1.5 \times 10^{38}$	1.7	49	$5.1 \times 10^{-10}$	$3.0 \times 10^{36}$	$8.5 \times 10^{36}$	$< 10''$	< 2.4	146	4.0	N158A
B1853+01	0.267	208	$4.3 \times 10^{35}$	20.3	3.0	$4.6 \times 10^{-10}$	...	$1.3 \times 10^{33}$	$\sim 3'$	$\sim 2$	97	10	W44
J1105-6107	0.063	15.8	$2.5 \times 10^{36}$	63.4	7.0	$4.2 \times 10^{-10}$	...	$3.8 \times 10^{33}$	$< 3'$	< 6.1	271	7	...
J1119-6127	0.408	4023	$2.3 \times 10^{36}$	1.6	8.0	$3.1 \times 10^{-10}$	...	$2.0 \times 10^{32}$	$< 3'$	< 7.0	707	15	G292.2-0.5
B31610-50	0.232	495	$1.6 \times 10^{36}$	7.4	7.3	$2.5 \times 10^{-10}$	...	$< 7.0 \times 10^{32}$	...	...	583	20	...
B1055-52	0.197	5.8	$3.0 \times 10^{34}$	538	1.5	$1.1 \times 10^{-10}$	$2.1 \times 10^{33}$	$2 \times 10^{31}$	$< 3''$	< 0.02	30	0.3	...
B1737-30	0.607	465	$8.2 \times 10^{34}$	20.7	3.3	$6.3 \times 10^{-11}$	...	$< 1.2 \times 10^{32}$	...	$\sim 1.53$	7	...	

<sup>a</sup> B1950 and J2000 names, where the first four digits are the right ascension of the object in hours and minutes and the last two, the declination in degrees.

<sup>b</sup> Period P, period derivative  $\dot{P}$ , distance d, and dispersion measure DM (see chapter 2).

**Properties and X-ray characteristics for a section of rotation-powered pulsars (cont.)**

<sup>c</sup> Luminosities are for the 2-10 keV band and assume a power law spectrum, except for B0833-45 and B1055-52, where the values are bolometric blackbody luminosities.

<sup>d</sup> Luminosities are for the 2-10 keV band and assume a power law spectrum.

<sup>e</sup> Nebular dimensions are in either angular ( $\theta$ ) or linear (pc) diameter. Except for B0531+21 and B1509-58, which have definite elongations, most PSRs are roughly symmetric.

<sup>f</sup> Spin-down energy flux density

$$\text{g} \quad \text{The pulsar characteristic age, } \tau_c = \frac{P}{2\dot{P}}$$

<sup>h</sup> Associated supernova remnant.

A neutron star's surface magnetic field is taken to be approx.  $3.2 \times 10^{19} (\dot{P}P)^{1/2}$

(Adapted from Pivovaroff, M.J., *X-ray Astronomy with CCDS*, MIT Thesis, 2000.)

## X-ray emission from a selection of stars

Name	Stellar Type	Distance (pc)	$L_x$ 0.2–4 keV (erg s $^{-1}$ )
$\zeta$ Ori	09.5 I	490	$3.5 \times 10^{32}$
$\epsilon$ Ori	BO I	460	$2.0 \times 10^{32}$
HZ43	WD	64	$4.0 \times 10^{31}$
Algol ( $\beta$ Per)	B8 V	31	$5.0 \times 10^{30}$
Capella ( $\alpha$ Aur)	G8 V+F V	13.5	$2.0 \times 10^{30}$
24 UMa	G1 V	25	$1.0 \times 10^{30}$
YY Gem	M V	15	$4.0 \times 10^{29}$
$\alpha$ Tri	F2 V	18	$3.2 \times 10^{29}$
Wolf 630	M4 V+M5 V	6.1	$2.0 \times 10^{29}$
Sirius ( $\alpha$ CMa B)	WD	2.6	$6.0 \times 10^{28}$
EQ Peg	M V	6.1	$6.0 \times 10^{28}$
$\epsilon$ Eri	K2 V	3.3	$2.0 \times 10^{28}$
$\alpha$ Cen	K5 V + G2 V	1.4	$3.2 \times 10^{27}$
Proxima Cen	M5 V	1.3	$2.5 \times 10^{27}$
The Sun	G2 V	$4.8 \times 10^{-6}$	$\sim 1.0 \times 10^{23a}$ $\sim 1.0 \times 10^{26b}$ $\sim 1.0 \times 10^{27c}$

<sup>a</sup> Sunspot minimum, <sup>b</sup> sunspot maximum, <sup>c</sup> very large flareNote: 1 pc = 3.262 light years =  $3.086 \times 10^{16}$  m.(Adapted from *Cosmic X-ray Sources*, Seward, F., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Ed., Springer, 2000.)

## X-ray emitting supernova remnants (selection)

Source	$\alpha$	1950	Distance	Diameter	$L_x$ (0.2–2 keV) ( $10^{35}$ erg s $^{-1}$ )	Age (yr)	1 GHz flux density (f.u)	Angular size (arcmin)
Crab Nebula	05 <sup>h</sup> 31 <sup>m</sup> 21° 59'	2	3	160	900	1000	3.0	4.2
Cas A	23 21 58 33	3	3.5	30	300	3000	4.0	3.8
Cygnus Loop	20 49 30 30	0.8	40	8	20 000	180	200	160
Vela	08 32 −45 00	0.5	44	4	13 000	1800	220	180
IC 443	06 14 22 30	1.5	20	0.4	6 000	160	40	diameter
Tycho's SNR	00 22 63 52	6	13	40	400	58	6.0	7.0
SN 1006	15 00 −41 45	1.2	10	0.2	970	25	30	22
GKP SNR	19 31 31 10	1.2	70	0.8	300 000	50	240	200
Lupus Loop	15 09 −40 00	0.5	40	0.1	20 000	340	270	diameter
RCW 86	14 39 −62 15	2.5	28	2	1800	33	40	diameter
RCW 103	16 14 −50 56	3.3	9	1	1 000	22	7.0	7.9
PKS 1209−52	12 06 −52 10	2 0	40	0.7	20 000	49	86	75
Pup A	08 20 −42 50	1.2	17	6	10 000	145	55	diameter
65.6 + 6.5	19 31 31 10	1.2	60–80	0.7	< 2 × 10 <sup>4</sup>		180	240

## Crab Nebula

The observed electromagnetic spectrum of the Crab Nebula and the Crab Pulsar. Dashed lines show corrections made for absorption and scattering of interstellar material. (Adapted from Seward, F. O., *Journal of the British Interplanetary Society*, **31**, 83, 1978.)

*X-ray spectrum (0.1 – 100 keV):*

$$\frac{dN}{dE} = 10 E(\text{keV})^{-2.05} \exp(-\sigma N_{\text{H}}) \text{ photons cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1},$$

$$N_{\text{H}} = 3 \times 10^{21} \text{ cm}^{-2}$$

$\sigma$  = absorption and scattering cross-section

*X-ray luminosity (0.1 – 100 keV):*

$$L_x = 4.9 \times 10^{37} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$$

Distance:

2200 pc

Diameter:

3 pc (5 arcmin)

$m_v$ :

8.6

$A_v$  (absorption):

1.5

Coordinates:

$\alpha = 05^{\text{h}}31^{\text{m}}$ ,  $\delta = +22^{\circ}$

Total radiated energy:

$1.8 \times 10^{38} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$

Age:

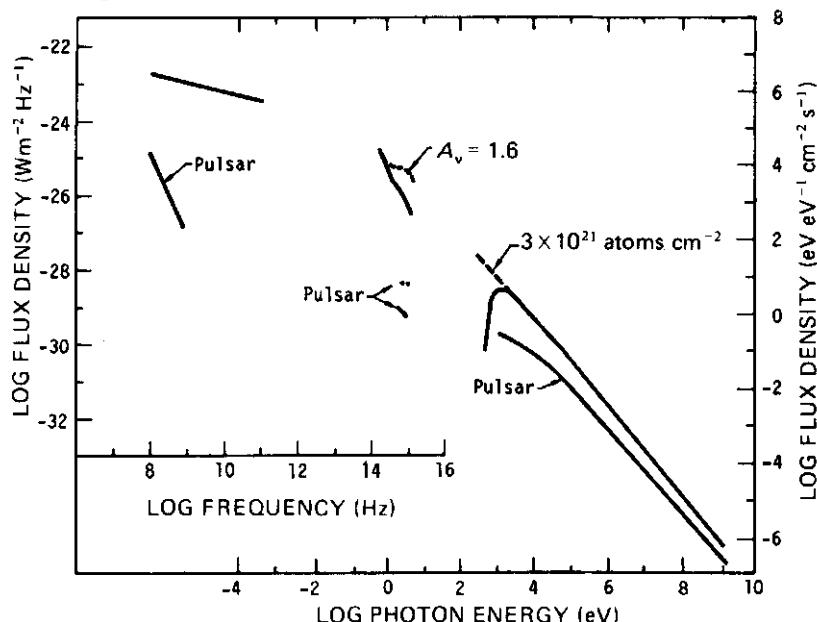
950 years (AD or CE (politically correct) 1054)

Pulsar period,  $P(1969)$ :

0.0331 s

Rate of period increase,  $\dot{P}$ :

$422.69 \times 10^{-15} \text{ ss}^{-1}$ .



**X-ray emission from a selection of low mass globular clusters**

Cluster	Log $L_x$ (erg s <sup>-1</sup> )	Distance (kpc)	$radius_{core}$ (arcsec)
NGC 6624	38.0	8.0	5
NGC 6441	36.8	11.7	8
Liller 1	36.8	10.0	4
Terzan 1	36.8	10.6	6
M15*	36.7	9.7	6
Terzan 2	36.7	10.0	6
NGC 6712	36.4	6.2	49
NGC 1851	36.1	12.0	6
NGC 6440	Transient	8.5	8
NGC 5824	34.3	23.5	4
M79	33.9	13.0	16
M3	33.6	10.4	29
NGC 6541	33.3	7.0	34
$\omega$ Cen	32.6-32.9	5.2	144
M22	32.0-32.6	3.1	114

\*M15 (NGC 7078) consists of two sources.

Note: 1 kpc =  $3.262 \times 10^3$  light years =  $3.086 \times 10^{19}$  m.

The core radius,  $radius_{core}$ , is defined to be the radius at which the surface brightness has dropped to half the central value.

(Adapted from *Exploring the X-ray Universe*, Charles, P.A. and Seward, F.D., Cambridge University Press, 1995.)

For a catalog of galactic globular clusters see Harris, W.E. 1996, AJ, 112, 1487 or <http://www.physics.mcmaster.ca/Globular.html>

**X-ray emission from a selection of normal galaxies**

Galaxy	Type	Distance (Mpc)	$L_x$ 0.2-4 keV (erg s <sup>-1</sup> )
NGC 507	S0	98	$1.1 \times 10^{43}$
NGC 720	E	32	$2.2 \times 10^{41}$
NGC 4382	S0	28	$5.2 \times 10^{40}$
NGC 4472	E/S0	28	$1.1 \times 10^{42}$
M31	Sb	0.68	$3.6 \times 10^{39}$
NGC 253	Sc	3.1	$7.4 \times 10^{39}$
M81	Sb	3.4	$1.3 \times 10^{40}$
M82	Irr	3.4	$3.5 \times 10^{40}$

Note: Distance calculated from redshift for

$H_0 = 50$  km s<sup>-1</sup> Mpc<sup>-1</sup>,  $q_0 = 0.5$ .

1 Mpc =  $3.262 \times 10^6$  light years =  $3.086 \times 10^{22}$  m.

(Adapted from *Cosmic X-ray Sources*, Seward, F., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Ed., Springer, 2000.)

**The brightest X-ray emitting clusters of galaxies**

Cluster	$\alpha, \delta$ (2000)	Redshift $z$	Distance 2–10 keV (Mpc)	$kT^*$	$L_x$ (erg $^{-1}$ )
A426 (Perseus)	03 18.6 +41 30	0.0183	110	6.3	$1.4 \times 10^{45}$
Ophiuchus Cluster	17 12.4 –23 22	0.028	170	9–11	$2.5 \times 10^{45}$
M87 (Virgo)	12 30.8 +12 23	0.0037	22	2.4	$3 \times 10^{43}$
A1656 (Coma)	12 59.8 +27 58	0.0235	140	8.1	$9 \times 10^{44}$
Centaurus Cluster	12 48.8 –41 19	0.0107	64	10	$6 \times 10^{43}$
A2199	16 28.6 +39 31	0.0305	180	4.5	$3 \times 10^{44}$
A496	04 33.6 –13 14	0.0316	190	3.9	$3 \times 10^{44}$
A85	00 41.6 –09 20	0.0518	310	6.2	$8 \times 10^{44}$

Note: Distance calculated from redshift for

$H_0 = 50 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ ,  $q_0 = 0.5$ .

$1 \text{ Mpc} = 3.262 \times 10^6$  light years

$$= 3.086 \times 10^{22} \text{ m.}$$

\* $kT$  is the cluster gas temperature in keV (Jones, C. and Forman, W., Ap. J., 511, 65, 1999.)

(Adapted from *Cosmic X-ray Sources*, Seward, F., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Ed., Springer, 2000.)

*X-ray properties of rich clusters (clusters with hundreds to thousands of galaxies)*

$$L_x \text{ (2–10 keV)} \sim (10^{42.5}–10^{45})h^{-2} \text{ erg s}^{-1},$$

$kT \sim 2\text{--}14$  keV, cluster core radius

$$R_c(\text{X-ray}) \sim (0.1\text{--}0.3)h^{-1} \text{ Mpc},$$

$$n_e \sim 3 \times 10^{-3}h^{1/2} \text{ cm}^{-3},$$

$$M_{\text{gas}} (\leq 1.5h^{-1} \text{ Mpc}) \sim 10^{13.5} M_{\text{solar}} \text{ [range: } (10^{13}\text{--}10^{14})h^{-2.5} M_{\text{solar}}]$$

**X-ray emission from a selection of active galaxies**

Name	Redshift $z$	Distance (Mpc)	$L_x$ 0.2-4 keV (erg s $^{-1}$ )	Type
MRK348	0.014	83	$1 \times 10^{43}$	Seyfert 2
NGC1068	0.0037	22	$9 \times 10^{41}$	Seyfert 2
Q0420-388	3.12	24600	$2 \times 10^{46}$	High redshift quasar
3C120	0.033	200	$2 \times 10^{44}$	VLBI radio galaxy
M81	0.0006	3.6	$5 \times 10^{39}$	Low luminosity AGN
NGC4151	0.0033	20	$4 \times 10^{42}$	Seyfert 1.5
3C273	0.158	980	$6 \times 10^{45}$	Radio loud quasar
M87	0.0037	22	$3 \times 10^{43}$	Radio galaxy
3C279	0.538	3400	$6 \times 10^{45}$	Blazar
Cen A	0.0008	4.8	$5 \times 10^{41}$	Radio galaxy
NGC5548	0.0017	10	$4 \times 10^{41}$	Seyfert 1
E1821+643	0.297	1900	$7 \times 10^{45}$	Radio quiet quasar
NGC6814	0.005	30	$4 \times 10^{42}$	Seyfert 1
PKS 2155-304	0.17	1100	$2 \times 10^{46}$	BL Lac

Note: Distance calculated from redshift for

$H_0 = 50 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ ,  $q_0 = 0.5$ .

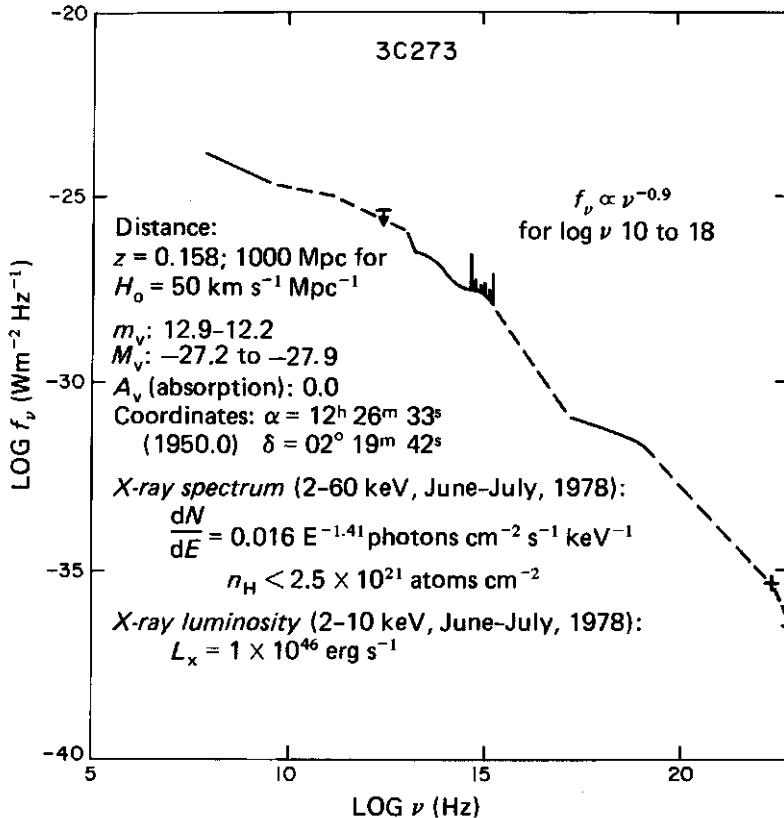
$1 \text{ Mpc} = 3.262 \times 10^6 \text{ light years}$

$$= 3.086 \times 10^{22} \text{ m.}$$

(Adapted from *Cosmic X-ray Sources*, Seward, F., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Ed., Springer, 2000.)

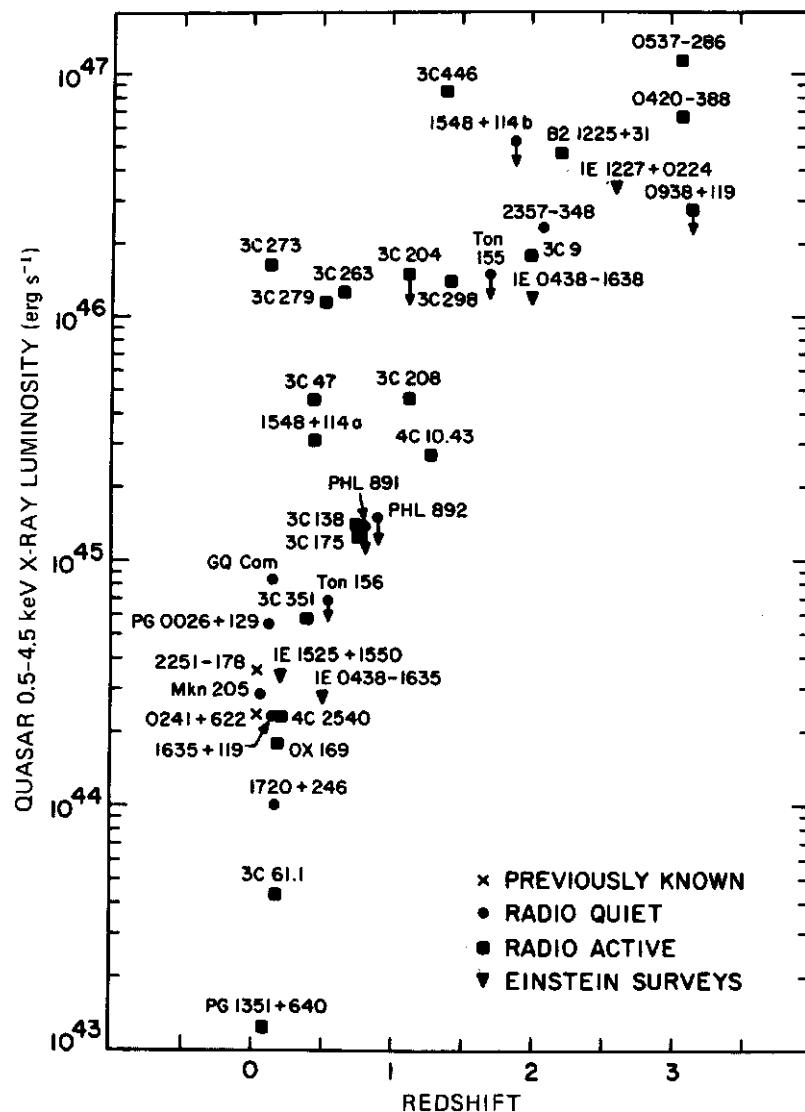
**3C 273**

The observed electromagnetic spectrum of the quasar 3C273 (3C273 is variable). (From Worrall, D. M. *et. al.*, *Ap. J.*, **232**, 683, 1979.)



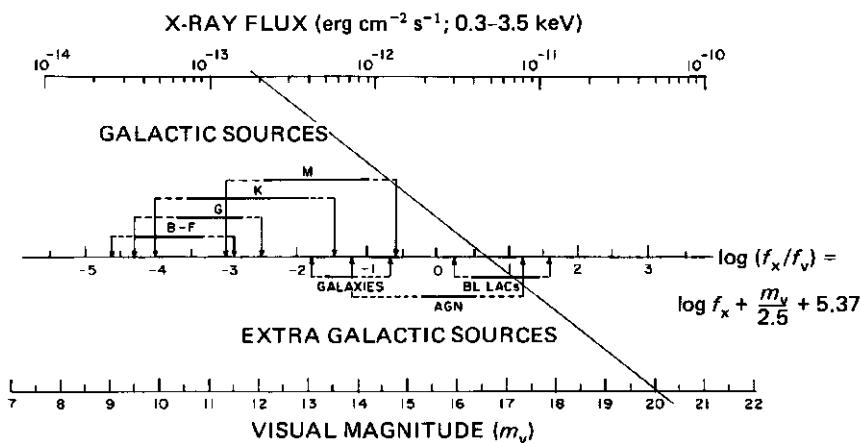
## Quasar X-ray luminosity

Quasar X-ray luminosity (0.5-4.5 keV) versus redshift. (Courtesy H. Tananbaum, Harvard/Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 1982.)



### X-ray source nomogram

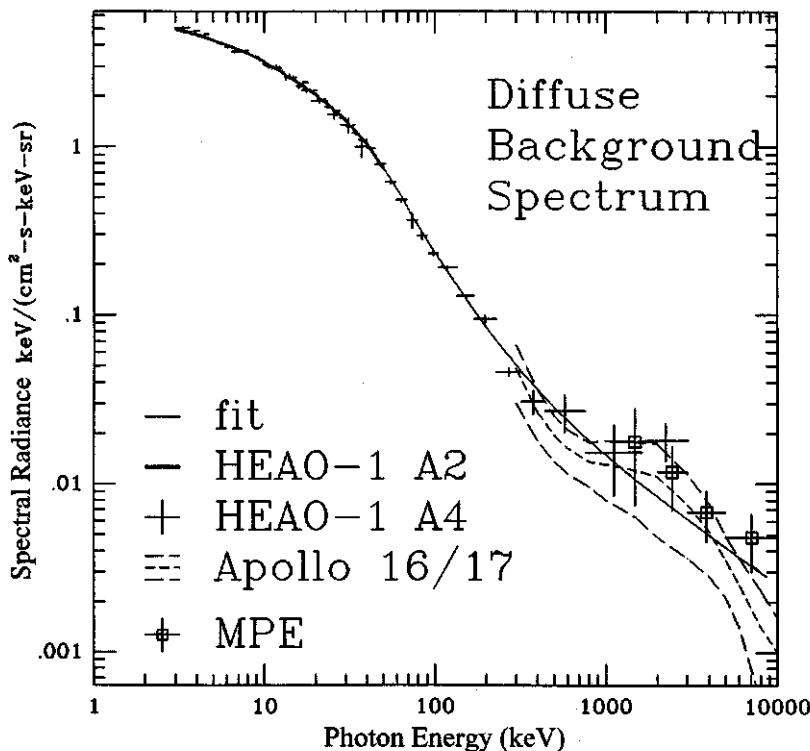
Nomogram to compute  $\log(f_x/f_v)$  for X-ray sources, where  $f_x$  is the X-ray flux density in  $\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  in the  $0.3 - 3.5 \text{ keV}$  band and  $f_v$  is the flux density in the V band. For each object class indicated (stars: B-F, G, K, M; normal galaxies; active galactic nuclei; BL Lac objects) a continuous horizontal line indicates the range of  $\log(f_x/f_v)$  comprising 70% of the known sources in the class and a dashed line indicates the range comprising the highest and lowest 15% of the sources. For example, for an X-ray source with a flux density of  $2 \times 10^{-13} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  and a V magnitude of 20,  $\log(f_x/f_v)$  is  $\sim 0.7$  and the source is most likely a BL Lac object. (From Maccacaro, T. et. al., *Ap. J.*, **326**, 680, 1988).



## Diffuse X-ray background

---

Energy spectrum of the diffuse X-ray background. The solid line is an empirical fit; the fitting equations are given below. (Gruber, D.E., in *The X-ray Background*, Barcons, X. and Fabian, A.C., eds., Cambridge University Press, 1992, with permission.)



$$I(E) = 7.877E^{-0.29} e^{-E/41.13} \text{ keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}, \quad 3 \text{ keV} < E < 60 \text{ keV}$$

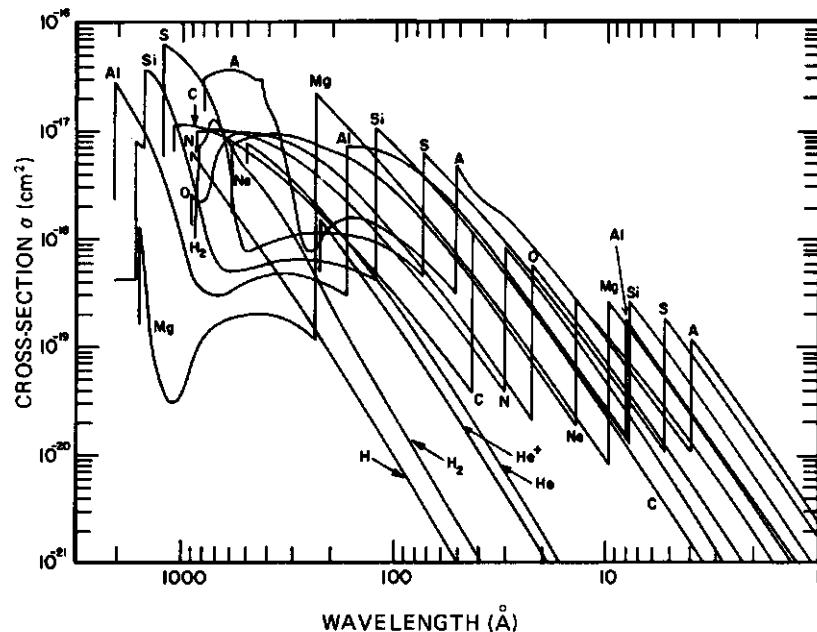
$$I(E) = 1652E^{-2.00} + 1.754E^{-0.70} \text{ keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}, \quad 60 \text{ keV} < E < 6000 \text{ keV}$$


---

## Absorption of X-rays

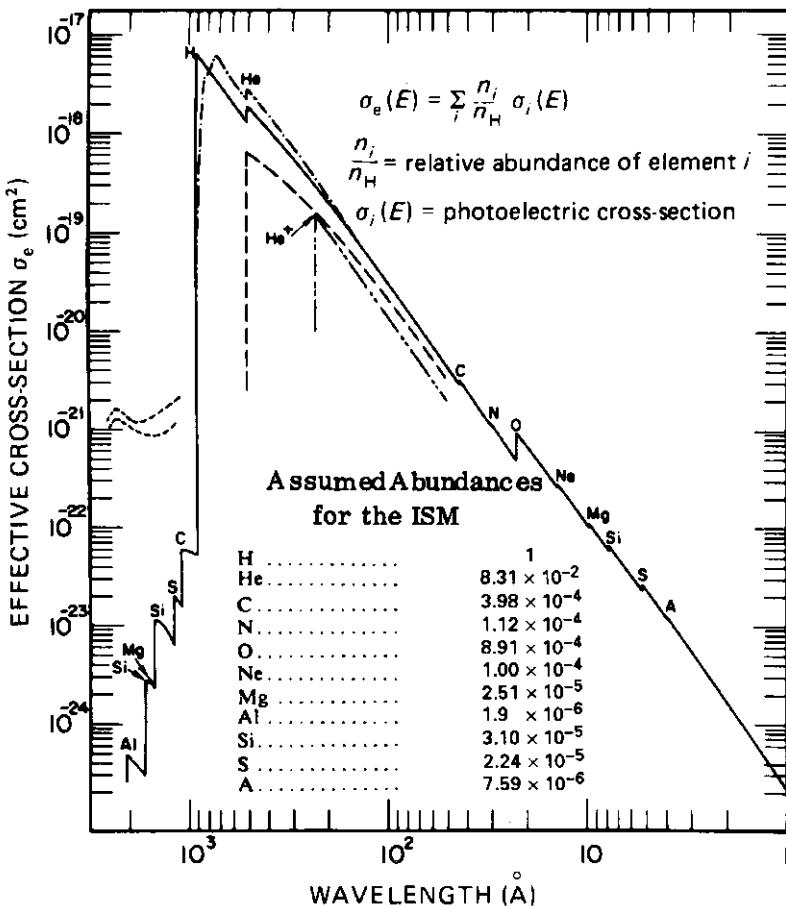
### *Photoabsorption cross-sections (UV-X-ray) of abundant elements*

Photoabsorption cross-sections of the abundant elements in the interstellar medium as a function of wavelength. (Adapted from Crudace, R., Paresce, F., Bowyer, S. & Lampton, M., *Ap. J.*, **187**, 497, 1974.)



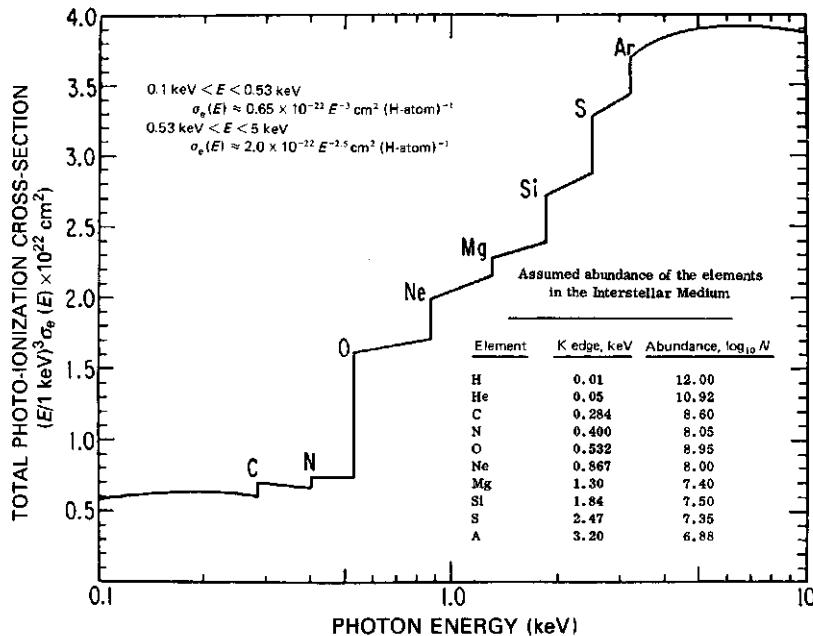
### **Effective cross-section of the interstellar medium**

Effective cross-section (cross-section per hydrogen atom or proton) of the interstellar medium: — gaseous component with normal composition and temperature; - - - hydrogen, molecular form; -- HII region about a B star; --- HII region about an O star; ----- dust. (Adapted from Cruddace, R., Paresce, F., Bowyer, S. & Lampton, M., *Ap. J.*, 187, 497, 1974.)



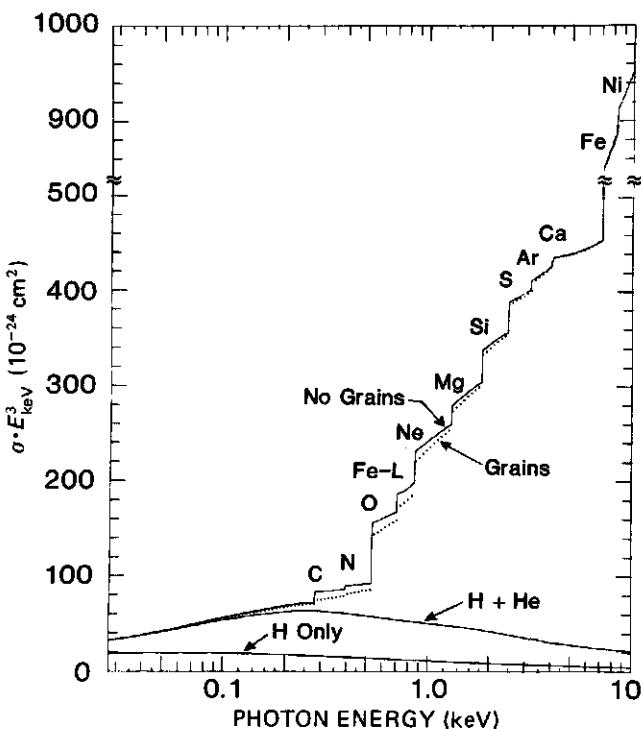
### Total photoionization cross-section

Total photo-ionization cross-section per hydrogen atom [ $x(E/1 \text{ keV})^3$ ] in units  $10^{-22} \text{ cm}^2$  as a function of incident photon energy for a gas having a cosmic elemental abundance. The elements responsible for the discontinuities due to their  $K$  edges are shown. (Adapted from Brown, R.L. & Gould, R.J., *Physical Review, D*, **1**, 2252, No. 8, 1970.)



### **Photoelectric absorption cross-section**

Net photoelectric absorption cross-section per hydrogen atom as a function of energy, scaled by  $(E/1 \text{ keV})^3$ . The solid line is for relative abundances given in the table of elemental abundances below, with all elements in the gas phase and in neutral atomic form. The dotted line shows the effect of condensing the fraction of each element indicated in the table into  $0.3 \mu\text{m}$  grains. The contributions of hydrogen and hydrogen plus helium to the total cross-section are also shown. (From Morrison, R. & McCammon, D., *Ap. J.*, **270**, 119, 1983. Diagram courtesy of D. McCammon.)



*Elemental abundances*

Element	Abundance <sup>(a)</sup>	Fraction in grains <sup>(b)</sup>
H	12.00	0
He	11.00	0
C	8.65	1
N	7.96	1
O	8.87	0.25
Ne	8.14	0
Na	6.32	1
Mg	7.60	1
Al	6.49	1
Si	7.57	1
S	7.28	1
Cl	5.28	1
Ar	6.58	0
Ca	6.35	1
Cr	5.69	1
Fe	7.52	1
Ni	6.26	1

(a) Log<sub>10</sub> abundance relative to hydrogen = 12.00. All values except helium are from Anders and Ebihara, 1982.

(b) Fraction of atoms of each element assumed depleted from gas phase and condensed into grains of average thickness  $2.1 \times 10^{18}$  atoms cm<sup>-2</sup> for case shown as dotted line in the diagram.

*Coefficients of analytic fit to cross-section*

Energy range (keV)	<i>c</i> <sub>0</sub>	<i>c</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>c</i> <sub>2</sub>
0.030 – 0.100 <sup>(a)</sup>	17.3	608.1	-2150
0.100 – 0.284	34.6	267.9	-476.1
0.284 – 0.400	78.1	18.8	4.3
0.400 – 0.532	71.4	66.8	-51.4
0.532 – 0.707	95.5	145.8	-61.1
0.707 – 0.867	308.9	-380.6	294.0
0.867 – 1.303	120.6	169.3	-47.7
1.303 – 1.840	141.3	146.8	-31.5
1.840 – 2.471	202.7	104.7	-17.0
2.471 – 3.210	342.7	18.7	0.0
3.210 – 4.038	352.2	18.7	0.0
4.038 – 7.111	433.9	-2.4	0.75
7.111 – 8.331	629.0	30.9	0.0
8.331 – 10.000	701.2	25.2	0.0

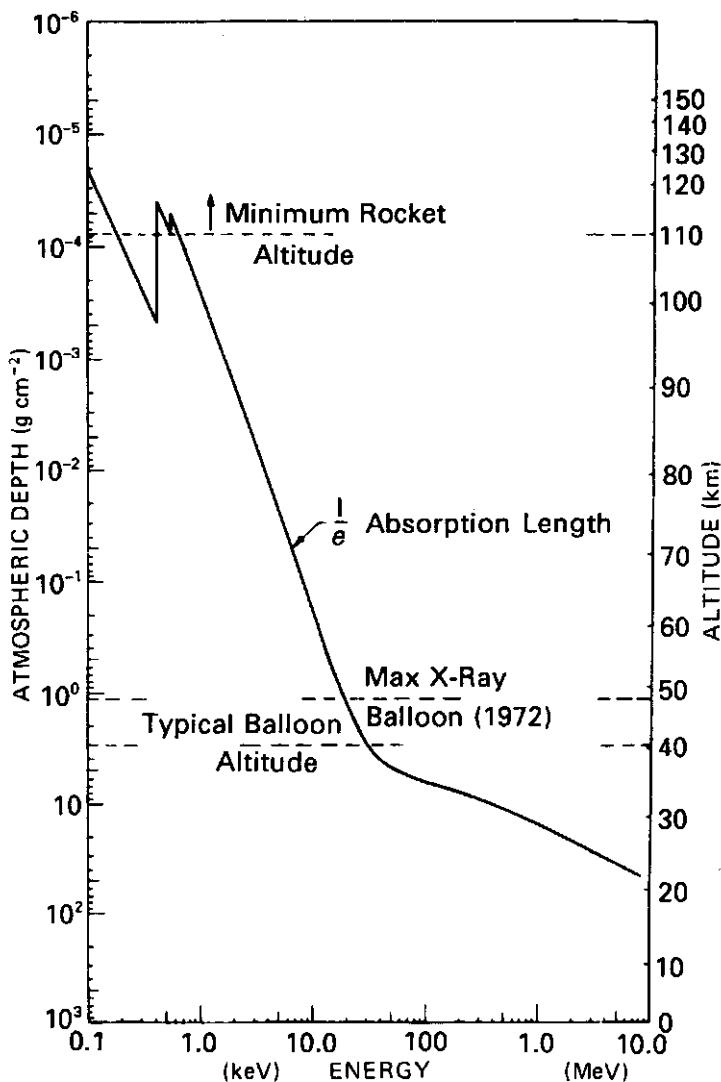
Note: cross-section per hydrogen atom = (*c*<sub>0</sub> + *c*<sub>1</sub>*E* + *c*<sub>2</sub>*E*<sup>2</sup>)*E*<sup>-3</sup> × 10<sup>-24</sup> cm<sup>2</sup> (*E* in keV).

(a) Break introduced to allow adequate fit with quadratic: no absorption edge at 0.1 keV.

(From Morrison, R. & McCammon, D., *op. cit.*)

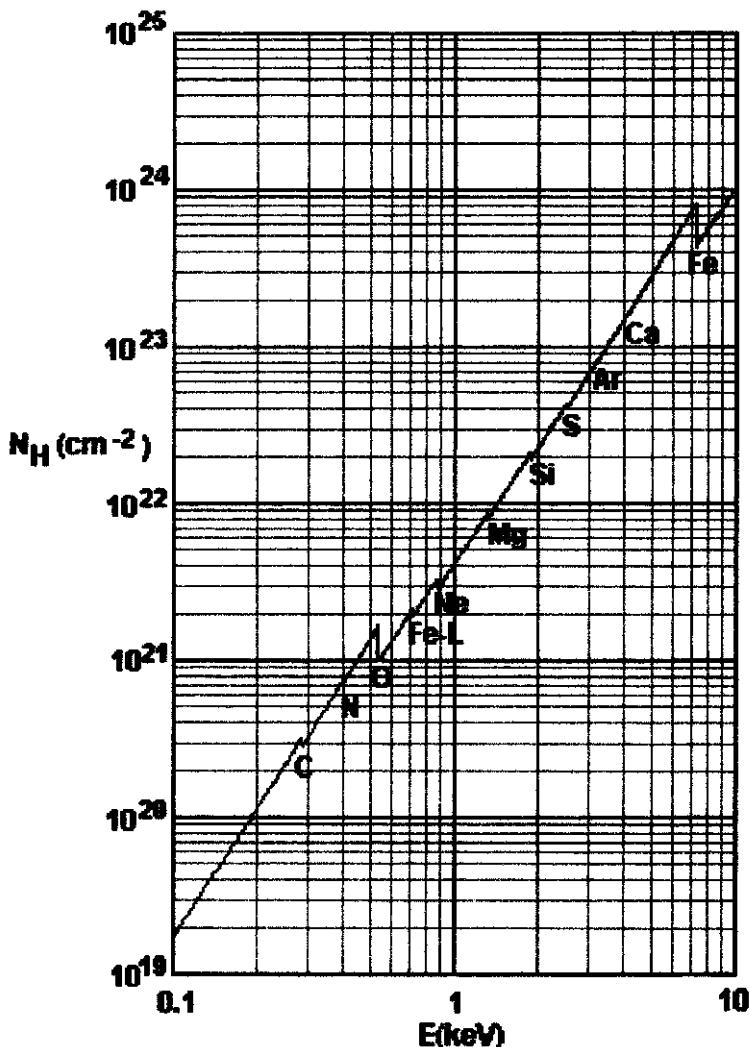
**Attenuation of photons in the atmosphere**

Attenuation of photons in the 1972 COSPAR International Reference Atmosphere with  $1/e$  absorption length plotted as a function of energy and altitude or atmospheric depth.



### **Photoelectric absorption in the interstellar medium**

The vertical axis gives the column density in units of hydrogen atoms  $\text{cm}^{-2}$  at which the transmission of the interstellar medium is  $1/e$  at the photon energy  $E$ , *i.e.* for  $N_{\text{H}}\sigma(E) = 1$ . (For a hydrogen atom number density of 1 per  $\text{cm}^3$ , 1 kpc is equivalent to a column density of  $3.1 \times 10^{21}$  hydrogen atoms  $\text{cm}^{-2}$ .) The cross-section  $\sigma(E)$  is from Morrison, R. and McCammon, D., *op.cit.*.



### An incomplete list of astrophysically important X-ray spectral features

Identification	Energy (keV) <sup>†</sup>	Identification	Energy (keV) <sup>†</sup>
Ne VII	0.127	N VII	0.500
Si XI	0.283	O I K edge	0.532
C I K edge	0.284	O VII	0.569
Si XII	0.303	O VII	0.574
C V	0.308	O VIII	0.654
N I K edge	0.402	O VII	0.666
N VI	0.431	O VII	0.698
Fe I LIII edge	0.707	Si XIII	1.86
Fe I LII edge	0.721	S I K edge	2.472
Fe XVII	0.826	Ar I K edge	3.203
Ne I K edge	0.867	Fe I $K\alpha_2$	6.391
Ne IX	0.915	Fe I $K\alpha_1$	6.404
Ne IX	0.922	Fe XXV	6.64
Fe XX	0.996	Fe XXV	6.68
Ne X	1.022	Fe XXV	6.70
Mg I K edge	1.305	Fe XXVI	6.93
Mg XI	1.340	Fe I $K\beta$	7.058
Mg XI	1.352	Fe I K edge	7.111
Si K edge	1.839		

<sup>†</sup> $\lambda(\text{\AA}) = 12.399/E \text{ (keV)}$ .

### Model X-ray spectral distributions for non-dispersive spectroscopy

$$f(E) = C e^{-\sigma_e(E)N_{\text{H}}} f(S, E) \text{ photons cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1},$$

where

$C$  = normalization constant,

$N_{\text{H}}$  = hydrogen column density to source,

$\sigma_e(E)$  = photoelectric cross-section perhydrogen atom for absorption of photons of energy  $E$  by interstellar medium. For  $E > 3$  keV:  $\sigma_e(E)N_{\text{H}} \approx (E_a/E)^{8/3}$ , where  $E_a$  is a low energy cutoff parameter.

$S$  is a parameter in the intrinsic spectral shape:

Thermal bremsstrahlung:

$$S = T, \quad f(S, E) = \overline{g(T, E)} e^{-E/kT} / E(kT)^{1/2},$$

where  $\overline{g(T, E)}$  is the temperature-averaged Gaunt factor.

Power law:

$$S = n, \quad f(S, E) = E^{-n}.$$

Blackbody:

$$S = T, \quad f(S, E) = E^2 / (e^{E/kT} - 1).$$

### Hydrogen column density from optical extinction

---

For optically identified sources the relation between X-ray absorption and optical extinction is given by

$$N_H = 1.9 \times 10^{21} A_V \text{ hydrogen atoms cm}^{-2}$$

$$N_H = (5.9 \pm 1.6) \times 10^{21} E_{B-V} \text{ hydrogen atoms cm}^{-2}$$

where  $A_V$  is the optical extinction in magnitudes and  $E_{B-V}$  is the color excess in magnitudes.

Copernicus observations yield

$$N(HI + H_2) = 5.8 \times 10^{21} E_{B-V} \text{ atoms cm}^{-2}$$

ROSAT (P. Predehl and J.H.M.M. Schmitt, *Astron. Astrophys.*, **293**, 889, 1995) observations yield

$$N_H = (1.79 \pm 0.03) \times 10^{21} A_V \text{ hydrogen atoms cm}^{-2}$$

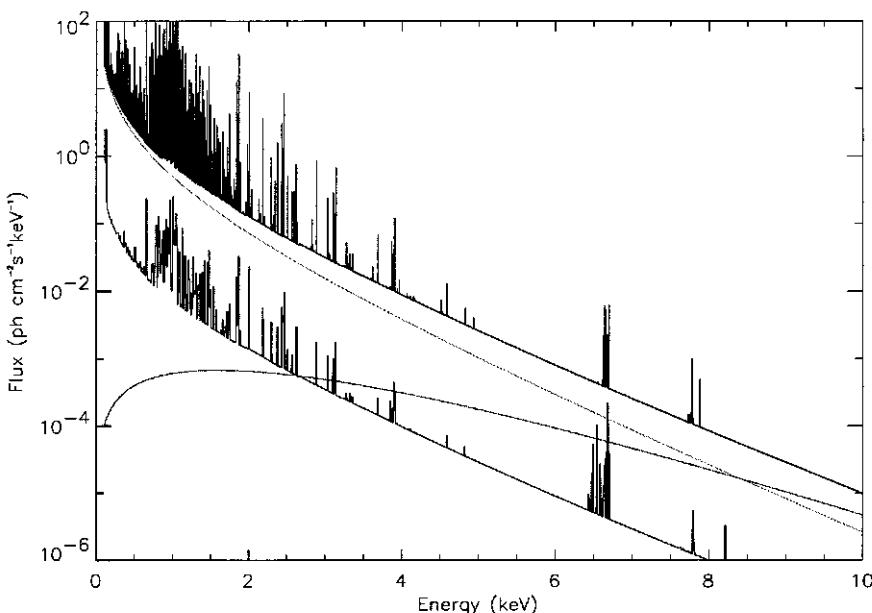
---

(Adapted from F. Seward in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer, 2000.)

## X-ray plasma spectrum

Calculated X-ray spectrum of an optically thin collisionally ionized equilibrium plasma at 1 keV. Upper curve with spectral lines): Astrophysical Plasma Emission Code (APEC, <http://hea-www.harvard.edu/APEC/>) calculation; lower curve with spectral lines): Raymond-Smith (Raymond, J. C., & Smith, B. W. 1977, ApJS, 35, 419; 1993 update) calculation (divided by 100); dotted curve: bremsstrahlung;dashed curve: blackbody. Abundances are solar (Anders, E., & Grevesse, N. 1989, Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, 53, 197.)

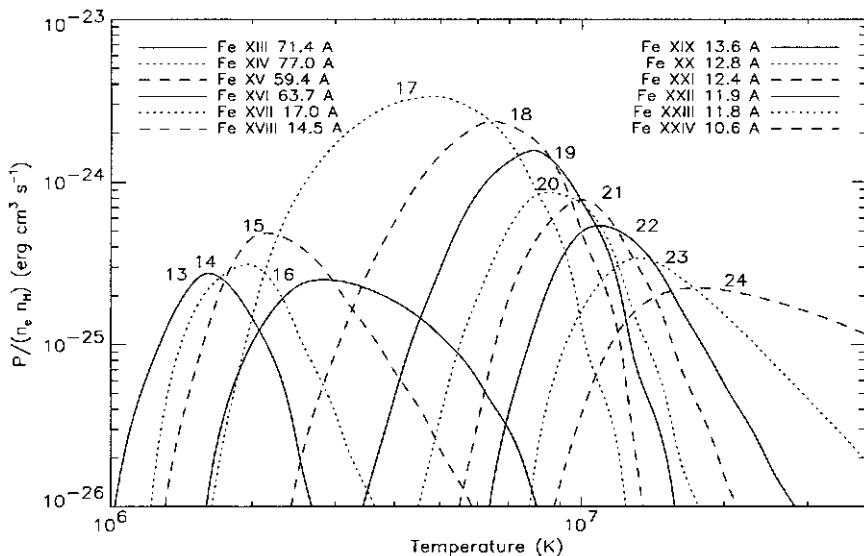
(Courtesy of Randall Smith, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 2001)

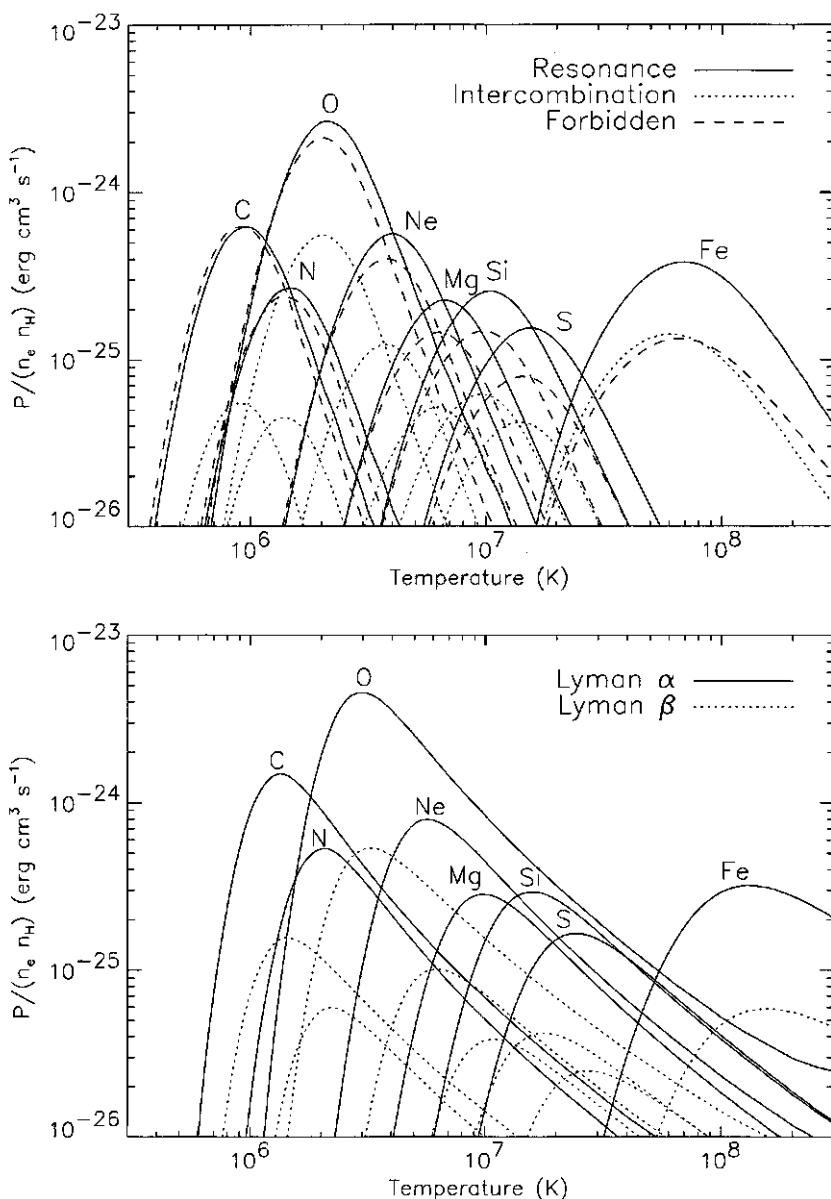


## X-ray emission lines from an optically thin plasma

Power per unit emission measure for the most prominent emission lines in the X-ray band for an optically thin plasma as a function of temperature. The calculations are based on the Raymond-Smith model (Raymond, J. C., & Smith, B. W. 1977, ApJS, 35, 419; 1993 update). Abundances are solar (Anders, E., & Grevesse, N. 1989, Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, 53, 197.) The plots are for Fe lines for Fe XIII - Fe XIV; He-like ions for C, N, O, Ne, Mg, Si, S, and Fe; H-like ions for C, N, O, Ne, Mg, Si, S, and Fe.

(Courtesy of Randall Smith, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 2001)



**X-ray emission lines from an optically thin plasma (cont.)**

**X-ray emission lines from an optically thin plasma (cont.)*****X-ray wavelengths (Å) of He-like lines.***

Element	Z	Resonance	Intercombination	Intercombination	Forbidden
C	6	40.2673645	40.7279816	40.7302322	41.4715347
N	7	28.7869663	29.0818634	29.0843220	29.5346870
O	8	21.6015053	21.8010178	21.8036385	22.0977230
Ne	10	13.4473066	13.5502510	13.5531101	13.6989765
Mg	12	9.1687498	9.2281675	9.2312088	9.3143387
Si	14	6.6479473	6.6849880	6.6881871	6.7402945
S	16	5.0387268	5.0631452	5.0664926	5.1015010
Fe	26	1.8503995	1.8554125	1.8595167	1.8681941

(Kelly, R.L., J. Phys. Chem. Ref. Data, 16, Supp 1, 1987)

***X-ray wavelengths (Å) of H-like lines.***

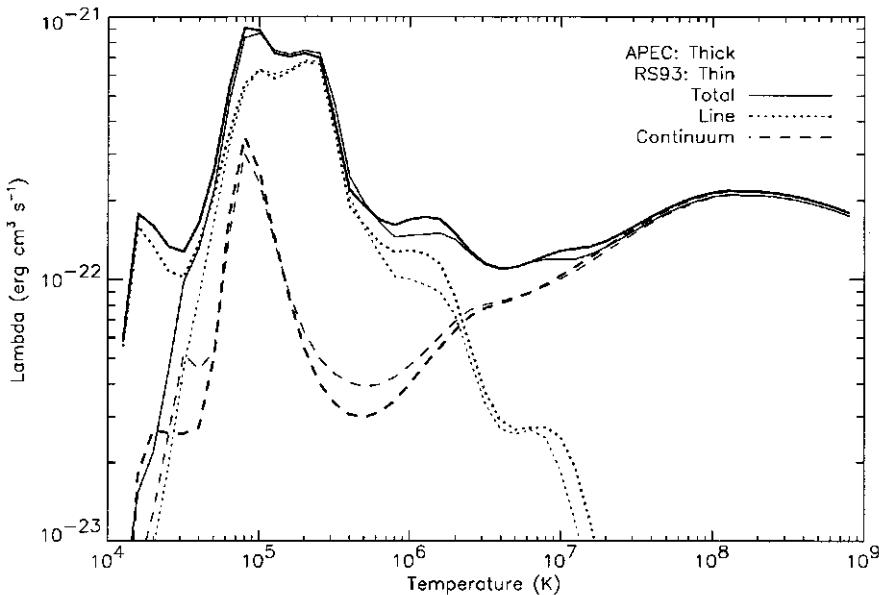
Element	Z	Lyman $\alpha$	Lyman $\alpha$	Lyman $\beta$	Lyman $\beta$
C	6	33.7398	33.7344	28.4665	28.4654
N	7	24.7848	24.7794	20.9107	20.9096
O	8	18.9726	18.9672	16.0068	16.0056
Ne	10	12.1376	12.1322	10.2396	10.2386
Mg	12	8.4247	8.4193	7.1070	7.1058
Si	14	6.1859	6.1805	5.2180	5.2169
S	16	4.7328	4.7274	3.9920	3.9908
Fe	26	1.7835	1.7781	1.5035	1.5024

(G. W. Ericsson 1977, J. Phys. Chem. Ref. Data, Vol 6, No. 3, "Energy Levels of One Electron Atoms")

**Power radiated from an optically thin plasma**

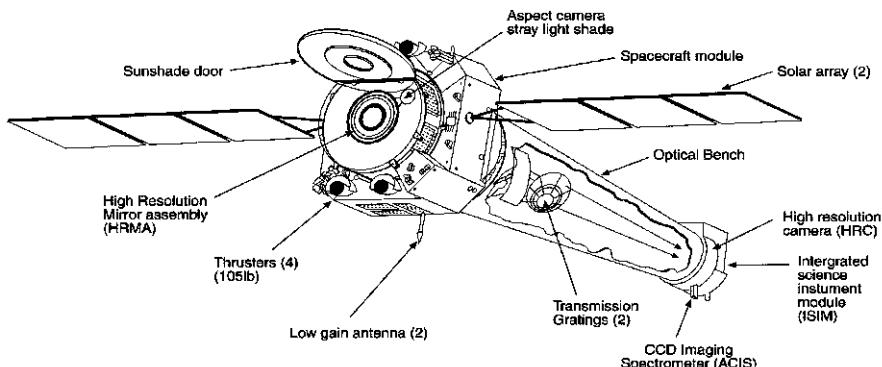
Total power radiated per unit emission measure for an optically thin plasma as a function of temperature. Models: Astrophysical Plasma Emission Code (APEC, <http://hea-www.harvard.edu/APEC/>), Raymond-Smith (Raymond, J. C., & Smith, B. W. 1977, ApJS, 35, 419; 1993 update). Abundances are solar (Anders, E., & Grevesse, N. 1989, Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, 53, 197.)

(Courtesy of Randall Smith, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics, 2001)



## Chandra X-ray Observatory (AXAF)

Sketch of the Chandra X-ray Observatory (CXO). The High Resolution Mirror Assembly (HRMA) consists of four pairs of nested reflecting surfaces arranged in the Wolter type I (paraboloid-hyperboloid) geometry. The diameter of the outer mirror pair is 1.2 m and the focal length of the HRMA is 10 m. At 1.5 keV the 50% encircled energy radius is 0.3 arc sec. There are two focal plane instruments, the High Resolution Camera (HRC) and the Advanced CCD Imaging Spectrometer (ACIS), and two transmission grating assemblies, the Low Energy Transmission Grating Spectrometer (LETG) and the High Energy Transmission Grating assembly (HETG), the latter having two sets of transmission gratings, High Energy Gratings (HEG) and Medium Energy Gratings (MEG). The HRC is comprised of two microchannel plate (MCP) imaging detectors: the HRC-I (imaging) is designed for wide-field imaging and the HRC-S (spectroscopy) is designed to serve as a readout for the LETG. ACIS is comprised of two CCD arrays, a 4-chip array, ACIS-I (imaging) and a 6-chip array, ACIS-S (spectroscopy), to read out the HETG.



Aperture Diameter (m)	Geometric Area (cm <sup>2</sup> )	Focal Length (m)	Spatial Resolution (FWHM) (arcsec)	FOV (arcmin)	Energy Range (keV)	Spectral Resolution (Å)
1.2	1100	10.0	0.3	30	0.1-10	0.01-0.05

### Chandra X-ray Observatory characteristics—an overview

Instrument	ACIS-I	HRC-I	ACIS-S <sup>(1)</sup>	HRC-S <sup>(2)</sup>
Bandpass (keV)	0.15-10	0.08-10	0.4-10	0.070-10
$E/\Delta E$	~ 50	1 @ 1 keV	65-1070	> 1000
Field of View arc min	16.9 × 16.9	30 × 30	8.3 × 50.6	6 × 99
Effective Area cm <sup>2</sup>	600 @ 1.5 keV	227 @ 1.5 keV	200 @ 1.5 keV	1-25
Time Res.	2.85 ms	16 $\mu$ s	2.85 ms	16 $\mu$ s
Sensitivity <sup>(4)</sup>	$4 \times 10^{-15}$ <sup>(5)</sup>	$1 \times 10^{-15}$ <sup>(6)</sup>	—	—

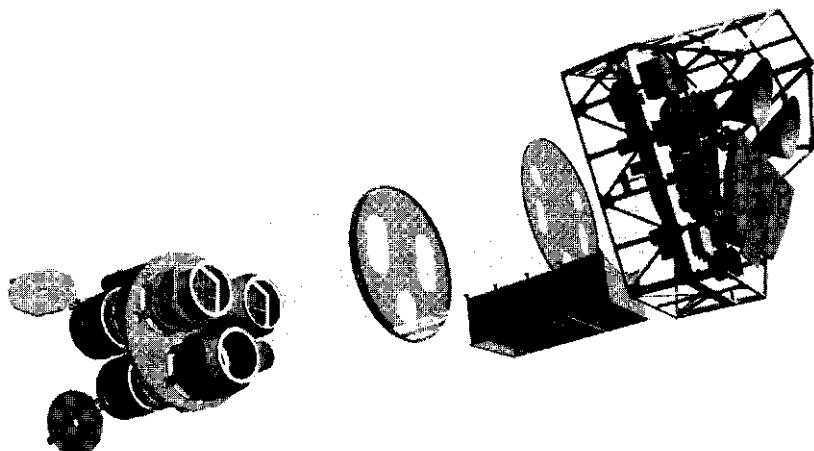
(1) with the HEG and MEG, (2) with the LETG, (3) for 0.070-0.2 keV, (4) in erg cm<sup>-2</sup> s<sup>-1</sup>, (5) in  $10^4$  s, (6) in  $3 \times 10^5$  s.

(From the Chandra X-ray Center's (CXC) Users' Guide, 2004.)

## XMM-Newton X-ray Observatory

---

Sketch of the XMM-Newton payload. The mirror modules, two of which are equipped with Reflection Grating Arrays, are visible at the lower left. At the right end of the assembly, the focal X-ray instruments are shown: The EPIC MOS cameras with their radiators ("horns"), the radiator of the EPIC pn camera and those of the RGS detectors. The OM telescope is obscured by the lower mirror module.



*XMM-Newton characteristics – an overview*

Instrument	EPIC MOS	EPIC pn	RGS	OM
Bandpass	0.15–12 keV	0.15–15 keV	0.35–2.5 keV	180–600 nm
Orbital target vis.	5–135 ks	5–135 ks	5–145 ks	5–145 ks
Sensitivity	$\sim 10^{-14}$	$\sim 10^{-14}$	$\sim 8 \times 10^{-5}$	20.7 mag
Field of view (FOV)	30'	30'	~5'	17"
PSF (FWHM/HEW)	5"/14"	6"/15"	N/A	1.4"-1.9"
Pixel size	40 $\mu\text{m}$ (1.1")	150 $\mu\text{m}$ (4.1")	81 $\mu\text{m}$ ( $9 \times 10^{-3}$ $\text{\AA}$ )	0.476513"
Timing resolution	1.5 ms	0.03 ms	16 ms	0.5 s
Spectral resolution	~70 eV	~80 eV	0.04/0.025 $\text{\AA}$	350

**EPIC** – European Photon Imaging Camera

(pn - pn CCDs, MOS - MOS (Metal Oxide Semi-conductor) CCD arrays)

**RGS** – Reflection Grating Spectrometer

**OM** – Optical Monitor

(From the XMM-Newton Users' Handbook, 2004)

---

## Conversions and equivalencies

---

1 keV:  $hc/E = 12.39854 \times 10^{-8}$  cm

1 keV:  $E/h = 2.417965 \times 10^{17}$  Hz

1 keV:  $E/k = 11.6048 \times 10^6$  K

1 EHz:  $h\nu = 4.13571$  keV

1 keV =  $1.602177 \times 10^{-9}$  erg =  $1.602177 \times 10^{-16}$  joule

$1 \mu\text{Jy} = 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ EHz}^{-1}$

$$= 0.242 \times 10^{-11} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}$$

$$= 1.509 \times 10^{-3} \text{ keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}$$

1 Uhuru ct s<sup>-1</sup>:  $1.7 \times 10^{-11}$  erg cm<sup>-2</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> (2-6 keV)

:  $2.4 \times 10^{-11}$  erg cm<sup>-2</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> (2-10 keV)

X-ray source intensity in millicrabs

$$= 10^3 \int_{E_1}^{E_2} E(dN/dE)dE / \int_{E_1}^{E_2} E(dN/dE)_{Crab}dE$$

$dN/dE$  and  $(dN/dE)_{Crab}$  is the source and Crab Nebula photon spectral flux density, respectively.

For  $E_2 = 10$  keV and  $E_1 = 2$  keV,

$$\int_E^{E_2} E(dN/dE)_{Crab}dE = 2.3 \times 10^{-8} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

Crab spectrum is from Chapter 6.

Spectral irradiance conversions:

$$I_\nu(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1}) = 3.336 \times 10^{-19} \lambda^2(\text{\AA}) I_\lambda(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1})$$

$$I_\nu(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1}) = 6.626 \times 10^{-27} I_E(\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1})$$

$$I_\lambda(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1}) = 3.336 \times 10^{-19} \nu^2(\text{Hz}) I_\nu(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1})$$

$$I_\lambda(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1}) = 1.292 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$E^2(\text{keV}) I_E(\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1})$$

$$I_E(\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}) = 1.509 \times 10^{26} I_\nu(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1})$$

$$I_E(\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}) = 5.034 \times 10^7 \lambda^2(\text{\AA}) I_\lambda(\text{erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1})$$

$$N_p(\text{photons cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}) = I_E(\text{keV cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ keV}^{-1}) E^{-1} (\text{keV})$$


---

**Bibliography**

*Astrophysical Formulae*, Lang, K.R., Springer, 1999.

*Cosmic X-ray Sources*, Seward, F., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., Ed., Springer, 2000.

*Exploring the X-ray Universe*, Charles, P.A. and Seward, F.D., Cambridge University Press, 1995.

*High Energy Astrophysics*, Longair, M.S., Cambridge University Press, 1992.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

# Chapter 7

---

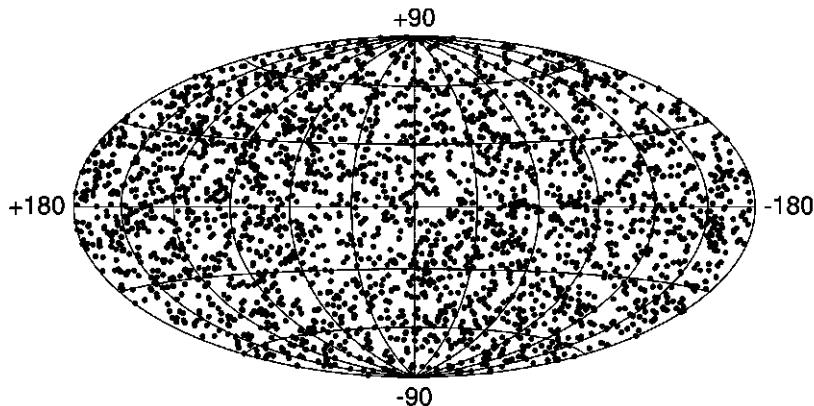
## Gamma-ray astronomy

*The Universe: a device contrived for the perpetual astonishment of astronomers.* - Arthur C. Clarke

Gamma-ray burst map	294
High-energy gamma-ray sources	294
Intensities of X- and gamma-ray sources	295
Crab Nebula spectra	296
Diffuse gamma-ray background	297
Gamma-ray production mechanisms	298
<i>Continuum radiation</i>	298
<i>Line radiation</i>	298
Gamma-ray lines	299
Gamma-ray line features	300
Gamma-ray spectral features	301
Absorption and scattering processes	302
<i>Photoelectric absorption</i>	302
<i>Pair production</i>	302
<i>Compton scattering</i>	302
<i>Cyclotron absorption</i>	303
Very high energy (VHE) gamma-rays	304
<i>Crab Nebula unpulsed spectrum</i>	304
<i>Integral flux from the Crab Nebula</i>	304
<i>Operating atmospheric Cerenkov imaging telescopes</i>	304
<i>Observations of shell-type supernova remnants</i>	305
<i>Properties of the VHE BL Lac objects</i>	305
<i>TeV observations of plerions</i>	305
Downward gamma-ray flux	306
Bibliography	307

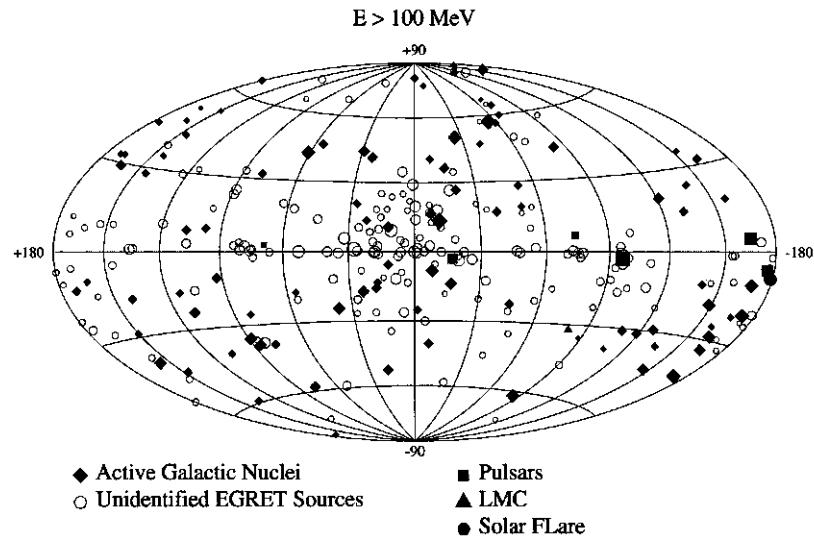
## Gamma-ray burst map

2704 BATSE (Burst and Transient Source Experiment of the Compton Observatory) gamma-ray bursts (as of 2000), in galactic coordinates.



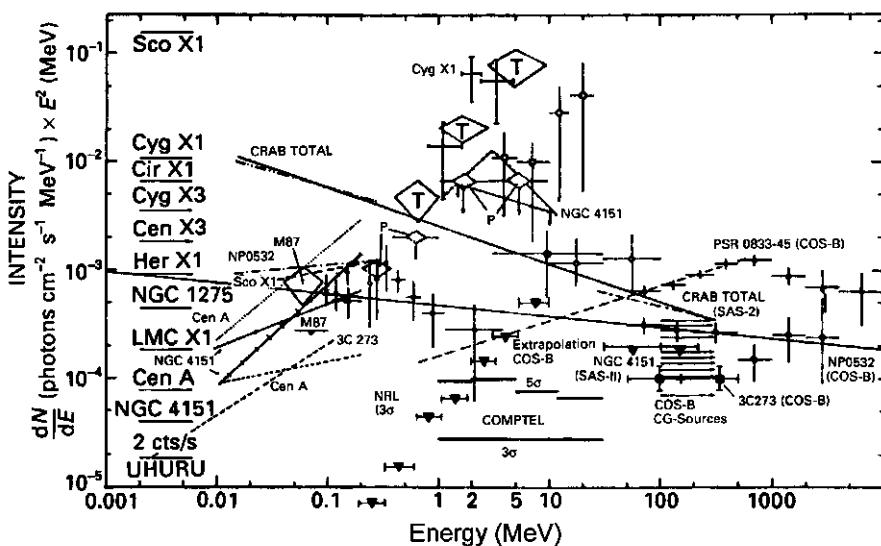
## High-energy gamma-ray sources

The third EGRET (Energetic Gamma-ray Experiment of the Compton Observatory) high-energy gamma-ray source catalog.



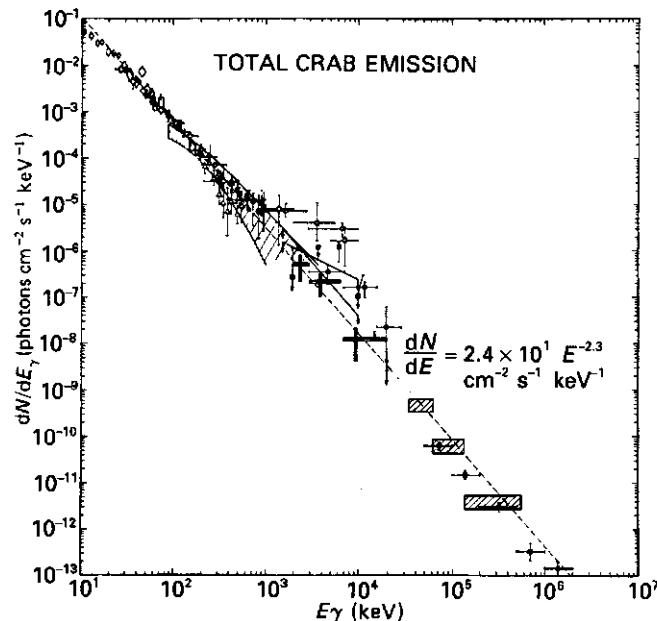
## Intensities of X- and gamma-ray sources

Compilation of the intensities of a variety of X- and gamma-ray sources. The ordinate, the number of photons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{MeV}^{-1}$ , is multiplied by  $E^2$ . (Adapted from Schönfelder, V. in *Non-Solar Gamma-Rays*, R. Cowsik & R. Wills, eds., Pergamon Press, 1980.)

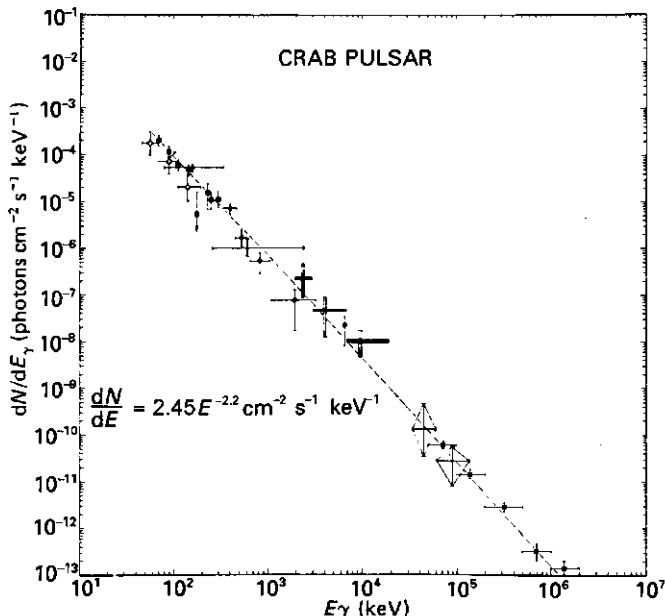


### Crab Nebula spectra

Photon number spectrum of the total Crab emission. (Adapted from Schönfelder, V., *op. cit.*, see reference for explanation of symbols.)

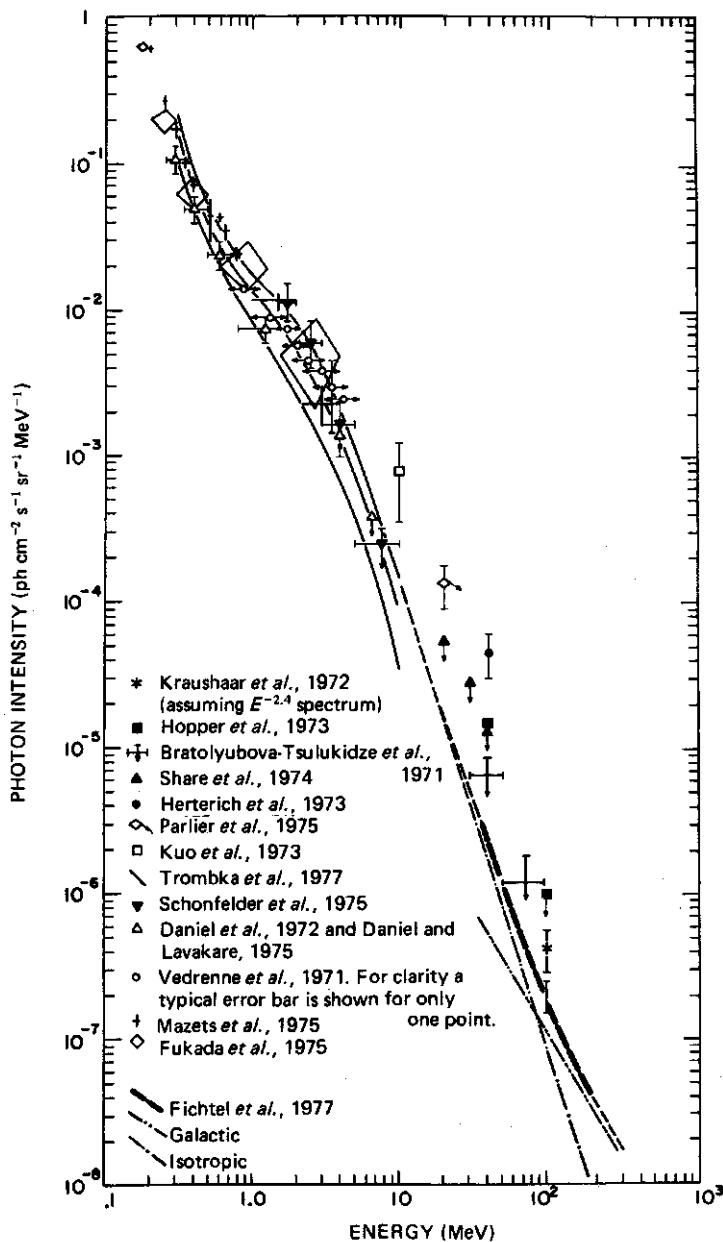


Photon number spectrum of the Crab pulsar. (Adapted from Schönfelder, V., *op. cit.*, see reference for explanation of symbols.)



## Diffuse gamma-ray background

Spectrum of diffuse gamma-ray background. (Adapted from Fichtel, C.E., Simpson, G.A. & Thompson, D.J., *Ap. J.*, **22**, 833, 1978.)



---

**Gamma-ray production mechanisms**


---

*Continuum radiation*

Bremsstrahlung (free-free emission)

See Ch. 12

Magnetobremsstrahlung (synchrotron radiation)

See Ch. 12

Inverse Compton effect

See Ch. 12

*Line radiation*

Annihilation radiation

Direct electron-positron annihilation ( $e^+ + e^- \rightarrow 2\gamma$ ) leads to line emission with a mean energy of

$$h\nu = m_e c^2 \begin{cases} +kT_e/2, & T_e \ll 10^7 \text{ K}, \\ +3kT_e/4, & 10^7 < T_e < 10^{10} \text{ K}, \\ +kT_e, & T_e > 10^{10} \text{ K}, \end{cases}$$

where  $m_e c^2 = 510.9991 \text{ keV}$  and  $T_e$  is the temperature of the electrons and positrons.

Nuclear de-excitation and radioactive decay

See next page

---

**Gamma-ray lines**


---

Nucleosynthetic radioactive decay gamma-ray lines.

---

Process	Half-life	Line Energy (keV)
$^{56}_{28}\text{Ni} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{56}_{27}\text{Co} + \nu$	6.1 d	158.4
		811.9
$^{56}_{27}\text{Co} \longrightarrow ^{56}_{26}\text{Fe} + e^+ + \nu$	77 d	846.8
$^{56}_{27}\text{Co} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{56}_{26}\text{Fe} + \nu$		1238.8
$^{57}_{27}\text{Co} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{57}_{26}\text{Fe} + \nu$	272 d	122.1
$^{22}_{11}\text{Na} \longrightarrow ^{22}_{10}\text{Ne} + e^+ + \nu$	2.6 y	1274.5
$^{22}_{11}\text{Na} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{22}_{10}\text{Ne} + \nu$		511.0
$^{44}_{22}\text{Ti} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{44}_{21}\text{Sc} + \nu$	$\sim 60$ y	67.9
		78.4
$^{26}_{13}\text{Al} \longrightarrow ^{26}_{12}\text{Mg} + e^+ + \nu$	$7.1 \times 10^5$ y	1808.7
$^{26}_{13}\text{Al} + e^- \longrightarrow ^{26}_{12}\text{Mg} + \nu$		511.0
$^{60}_{26}\text{Fe} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{27}\text{Co} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$	$1.5 \times 10^6$ y	—
$^{60}_{27}\text{Co} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{28}\text{Ni} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$	5.3 y	1332.5
		1173.2

---

(From Gehrels, N. and Paul, J., *The New Gamma-ray Astronomy*, in Physics Today, February, 1998.)

## Gamma-ray line features

Observed gamma-ray line features. (From von Ballmoos, P. in *TeV Gamma-ray Astrophysics*, Voelk, H.J. and Aharonian, F.A., eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1996.)

Physical Process	Energy [keV]	Source	Flux ph cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup>
<b>Nuclear de-excitation</b>			
<sup>56</sup> Fe (p, p', $\gamma$ )	847	Solar flares	$\leq 0.05$
<sup>24</sup> Mg (p, p', $\gamma$ )	1369	Solar flares	$\leq 0.08$
<sup>20</sup> Ne (p, p', $\gamma$ )	1634	Solar flares	$\leq 0.1$
<sup>28</sup> Si (p, p', $\gamma$ )	1779	Solar flares	$\leq 0.08$
<sup>12</sup> C (p, p', $\gamma$ )	4439	Solar flares	$\leq 0.1$
	4439	Orion Comp.	$\leq 5 \cdot 10^{-5}$
<sup>16</sup> O (p, p', $\gamma$ )	6129	Solar flares	$\leq 0.1$
	6129	Orion Comp.	$\leq 5 \cdot 10^{-5}$
<b>Radioactive decay</b>			
<sup>56</sup> Co(EC, $\gamma$ ) <sup>56</sup> Fe	847, 1238 2598	SN 1987A	$\approx 10^{-3}^{***}$
	847, 1238	SN 1991T	$5 \cdot 10^{-5}^{**}$
<sup>57</sup> Co(EC, $\gamma$ ) <sup>57</sup> Fe	122, 136	SN 1987A	$\approx 10^{-4}$
<sup>44</sup> Ti(EC) <sup>44</sup> Sc( $\beta^+$ , $\gamma$ )	1157	Cas A SNR	$7 \cdot 10^{-5}$
<sup>26</sup> Al( $\beta^+$ , $\gamma$ ) <sup>26</sup> Mg	1809	gal. plane	$4 \cdot 10^{-4}$
	1809	Vela SNR	$1\text{--}6 \cdot 10^{-5}$
<b>e<sup>-</sup>e<sup>+</sup> Annihilation</b>			
	511	Gal. bulge	$1.7 \cdot 10^{-3}$
	511	Gal. disk	$4.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$
	480 $\pm$ 120*	1E 1740-29***	$1.3 \cdot 10^{-2}$
	511	Solar Flares	$\leq 0.1$
	479 $\pm$ 18*	Nova Muscae	$6.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$
	400–500*	Bursts ?c)	$\leq 70$
	440 $\pm$ 10*	Crab PSR ?***	$3 \cdot 10^{-4}$
<b>Neutron Capture</b>			
<sup>1</sup> H( $n, \gamma$ ) <sup>2</sup> H	2223	Solar flares	$\leq 1$
<sup>56</sup> Fe( $n, \gamma$ ) <sup>57</sup> Fe	5947*	6/10/1974 tr.	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-2}$
<b>Cyclotron Lines</b>			
	20-58	Hercules X-1	$\leq 3 \cdot 10^{-3}$

\* Redshifted line \*\* Maximum emission \*\*\* Detection uncertain

**An incomplete list of astrophysically important gamma-ray spectral features**

Identification	Energy (MeV)	Identification	Energy (MeV)
Cf-249	0.34	N-14	2.313
Cf-249	0.39	Ne-20	2.613
Annihil. rad.	0.511	O-16	2.741
Ni-56	0.812	Mg-24	2.754
Fe-56	0.847	Ne-20	3.34
Co-56	0.847	C-12	4.438
Fe-56	1.238	N-14	5.105
Mg-24	1.369	O-16	6.129
Ne-20	1.634	Si-28	6.878
Si-28	1.779	O-16	6.917
Al-26	1.81	O-16	7.117
Neutron capture	2.23		

## Absorption and scattering processes

---

### *Photoelectric absorption (see also Ch. 14)*

The cross-section for photoelectric absorption of a photon of energy  $h\nu$  by the ejection of a K-shell electron from an atom of atomic number Z is, in the relativistic case

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_K &= \frac{3\sigma_T Z^5 \alpha^4}{2} \left( \frac{mc^2}{h\nu} \right)^5 (\gamma^2 - 1)^{3/2} \\ &\times \left\{ \frac{4}{3} + \frac{\gamma(\gamma - 2)}{\gamma + 1} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{2\gamma\sqrt{\gamma^2 - 1}} \ln \left( \frac{\gamma + \sqrt{\gamma^2 - 1}}{\gamma - \sqrt{\gamma^2 - 1}} \right) \right] \right\} \\ &\approx \frac{3\sigma_T Z^5 \alpha^4}{2} \left( \frac{mc^2}{h\nu} \right) \quad \text{for } h\nu \gg mc^2,\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\gamma = \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{v}{c} \right)^2 \right]^{-1/2} = \frac{h\nu + mc^2}{mc^2},$$

$\alpha = 2\pi e^2/hc = 1/137.036$ , the fine structure constant

$mc^2 = 510.9991$  keV, the rest mass of the electron

$\sigma_T = (8\pi/3)(e^2/mc^2)^2 = 6.65 \times 10^{-25}$  cm<sup>2</sup>, the Thomson cross-section

### *Pair production (see also Ch. 14)*

The cross-section for electron-positron pair production (pp) by a photon in the presence of a nucleus of charge Z is

$$\sigma(h\nu)_{\text{pp}} = \frac{3\alpha Z^2 \sigma_T}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{7}{9} \ln \left( \frac{2h\nu}{mc^2} \right) - \frac{109}{54} \right]$$

for no screening when  $1 \ll h\nu/mc^2 \ll 1/\alpha Z^{1/3}$ , and

$$\sigma(h\nu)_{\text{pp}} = \frac{3\alpha Z^2 \sigma_T}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{7}{9} \ln \left( \frac{183}{Z^{1/3}} \right) - \frac{1}{54} \right]$$

for complete screening when  $h\nu/mc^2 \gg 1/\alpha Z^{1/3}$ .

### *Compton scattering*

See Ch. 12 and Ch. 14

### Cyclotron absorption

In a magnetic field, the cross-section for absorption of photons by scattering from the ground state to higher Landau levels is

$$\sigma_{\text{abs}}^n(\theta) = \frac{\alpha\pi^2\hbar^2c^2}{E_n} \delta(h\nu - h\nu_n) \frac{e^{-Z} Z^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \left( (1 + \cos^2\theta) + \frac{Z}{n} \sin^2\theta \right),$$

where

$$Z = h^2\nu^2 \sin^2\theta / 2mc^2B^*,$$

$$E_n = (m^2c^4 + h^2\nu^2 \cos^2\theta + 2nB^*m^2c^4)^{1/2},$$

$$B^* = B/4.414 \times 10^{13} \text{ G}$$

$\delta$  = the delta function

The photons are absorbed at the resonant energies

$$h\nu_n = mc^2[(1 + 2nB^* \sin^2\theta)^{1/2} - 1] / \sin^2\theta.$$

In the nonrelativistic limit,  $nB^* = nB/4.414 \times 10^{13} \text{ G} \ll 1$ , the absorption cross section is

$$\sigma_{\text{abs}}^n(\theta) \approx \frac{\alpha\pi^2\hbar^2c^2}{m} \left( \frac{n^2}{2} B^* \sin^2\theta \right)^{n-1} \frac{1 + \cos^2\theta}{(n-1)!},$$

where photons are absorbed at harmonics  $h\nu_n = nehB/2\pi mc$ .

$$h\nu_n = 11.6nB_{12} \text{ keV},$$

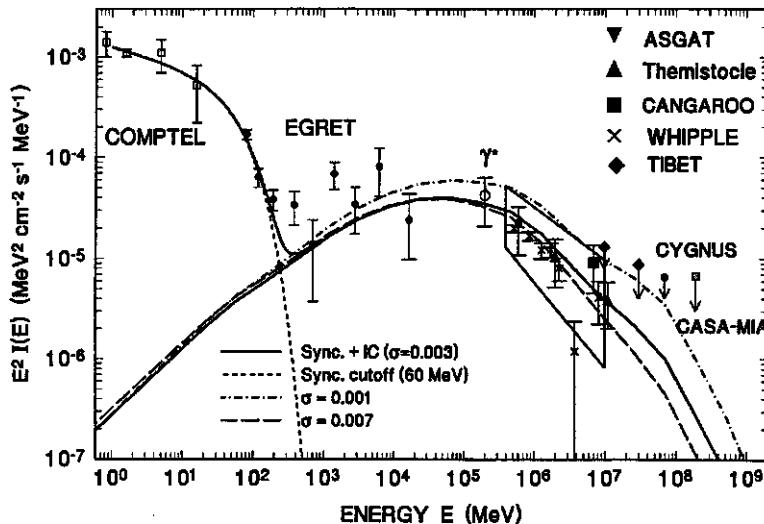
where  $B_{12}$  is the magnetic field strength in units of  $10^{12} \text{ G}$ .

(From  $\gamma$ -Ray and Neutrino Astronomy, Lingenfelter, R.E. and Rothschild, R.E., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.)

## Very high energy (VHE) gamma-rays

### Crab Nebula

The Crab Nebula unpulsed spectrum ( $E^2$  times the differential energy spectrum  $dN/dE$  for the energy range 100 keV to 300 TeV. (From De Jager, O.C., Ap.J. 457, 253, 1996.)



### Integral flux from the Crab Nebula

Group	Integral Flux ( $10^{-11}$ photons $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ )	$E_{\text{th}}$ (TeV)
Whipple (1998)	$(3.2 \pm 0.7)(E/\text{TeV})^{-2.49 \pm 0.06 \text{stat} \pm 0.05 \text{syst}}$	0.3
HEGRA (1999)	$(2.7 \pm 0.2 \pm 0.8)(E/\text{TeV})^{-2.61 \pm 0.06 \text{stat} \pm 0.10 \text{syst}}$	0.5
CAT (1998)	$(2.7 \pm 0.17 \pm 0.40)(E/\text{TeV})^{-2.57 \pm 0.14 \text{stat} \pm 0.08 \text{syst}}$	0.25

### Operating atmospheric Cerenkov imaging telescopes (1999)

Group	Countries	Location	Threshold (TeV)
Whipple .....	USA-UK-Ireland	Arizona, USA	0.25
Crimea.....	Ukraine	Crimea	1
SHALON .....	Russia	Tien Shen, Russia	1.0
CANGAROO .....	Japan-Australia	Woomera, Australia	0.5
HEGRA .....	Germany-Armenia-Spain	La Palma, Spain	0.5
CAT .....	France	Pyrenées	0.25
Durham.....	UK	Narrabri, Australia	0.25
TACTIC .....	India	Mount Abu, India	0.3
Seven Telescope Array	Japan	Utah, USA	0.5

***Observations of shell-type supernova remnants***

Object Name	Observation Time (minutes)	Energy (TeV)	Integral Flux ( $10^{-11} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ )
Tycho.....	867.2	> 0.3	< 0.8
IC 443.....	1076.7	> 0.3	< 2.1
	678.0	> 0.5	< 1.9
W44.....	360.1	> 0.3	< 3.0
W51.....	468.0	> 0.3	< 3.6
$\gamma$ Cygni.....	560.0	> 0.3	< 2.2
	2820.0	> 0.5	< 1.1
W 63.....	140.0	> 0.3	< 6.4
SN 1006.....	2040.0	> 1.7	$0.46 \pm 0.6_{\text{stat}} \pm 1.4_{\text{sys}}$

***Properties of the VHE BL LAC objects***

Object	z	EGRET Flux ( $E > 100 \text{ MeV}$ ) ( $10^{-7} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ )	Average Integral Flux ( $E > 300 \text{ GeV}$ ) ( $10^{-12} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ )	$\mathcal{F}_X$ (2 keV) ( $\mu\text{Jy}$ )	$\mathcal{F}_R$ (5 GHz) (mJy)
			$M_v$		
Mrk 421.....	0.031	$1.4 \pm 0.2$	40	14.4	3.9
Mrk 501.....	0.034	$3.2 \pm 1.3$	$\geq 8.1$	14.4	3.7
1ES 2344 + 514	0.044	$< 0.7$	$\lesssim 8.2$	15.5	1.1
PKS 2155 – 304	0.116	$3.2 \pm 0.8$	42	13.5	5.7
3C 66A.....	0.444	$2.0 \pm 0.3$	30	15.5	0.6

***TeV observations of plerions***

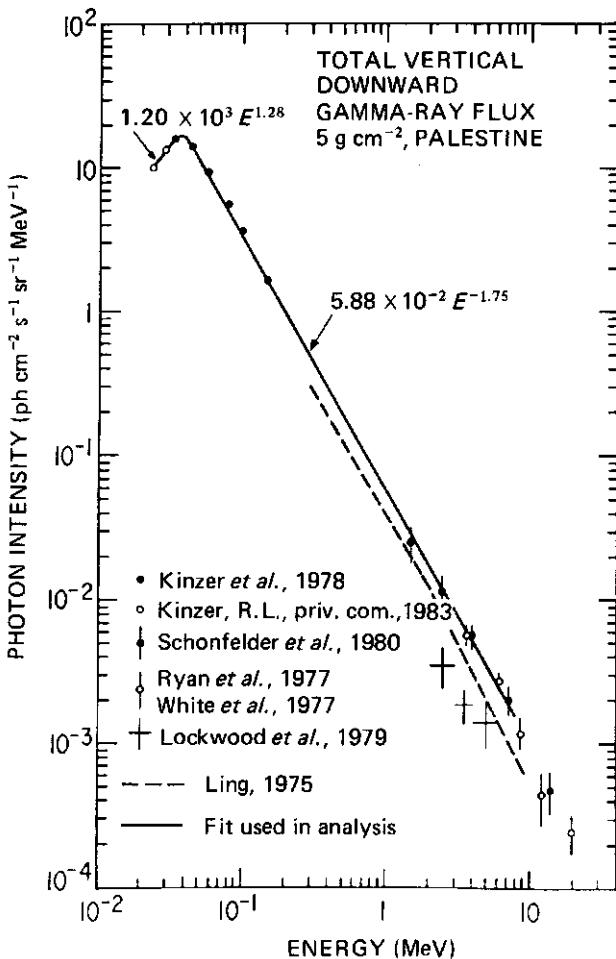
Source	Energy (GeV)	Flux/Upper Limit ( $10^{-11} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ )
Crab Nebula..	400	7.0
PSR 1706–44..	1000	0.8
Vela.....	2500	0.29
SS 433.....	550	< 1.8
3C 58.....	550	< 1.1
PSR 0656 + 14	1000	< 3.4

(Tables are adapted from Catanese, M. and Weekes, T.C., ASP, 111, 1193, 1999.)

## Downward gamma-ray flux

---

Measurements of the total downward gamma-ray flux at  $5 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  over Palestine, Texas. See original work for references. (From Gehrels, N., Instrumental background in balloon-borne gamma-ray spectrometers and techniques for its reduction, *NASA Technical Memorandum 86162*, 1985.)




---

## Bibliography

- Very High Energy Gamma-ray Astronomy*, Catanese, M. and Weekes, T.C., ASP, **111**, 1193–1222, 1999 October.
- Gamma-ray Astronomy*, Chupp, E.L., D. Reidel Publishing Co., 1976.
- Gamma-ray and Neutrino Astronomy*, Lingenfelter, R.E. and Rothschild, R.E., in Allen's Astrophysical Quantities, Cox, Arthur N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- Astrophysical Formulae*, Volume 1, Lang, K.R., Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- High Energy Astrophysics*, Longair, M.S., Cambridge University Press, 1997.
- Gamma-ray Astronomy*, Murthy, Poola V. Ramana and Wolfendale, Arnold, W., Cambridge University Press, 1986.
- Cosmic Gamma Rays*, Stecker, F.W., NASA SP-249, 1971.
- TeV Gamma-ray Astrophysics*, Voelk, H.J. and Aharonian, F.A., eds. Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1996.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

# Chapter 8

---

## Cosmic rays

*If I could remember the names of all these particles, I'd be a botanist.* -  
Enrico Fermi

Cosmic ray source abundances	310
Abundances in the galactic cosmic rays	311
Relative abundances of nuclei	312
Cosmic ray spectra	313
Vertical fluxes	316
Cutoff rigidity	317
Particle production in the atmosphere	319
Gamma-ray production in the atmosphere	320
Atmospheric depth	321
Pressure and atmospheric thickness	322
Bibliography	322

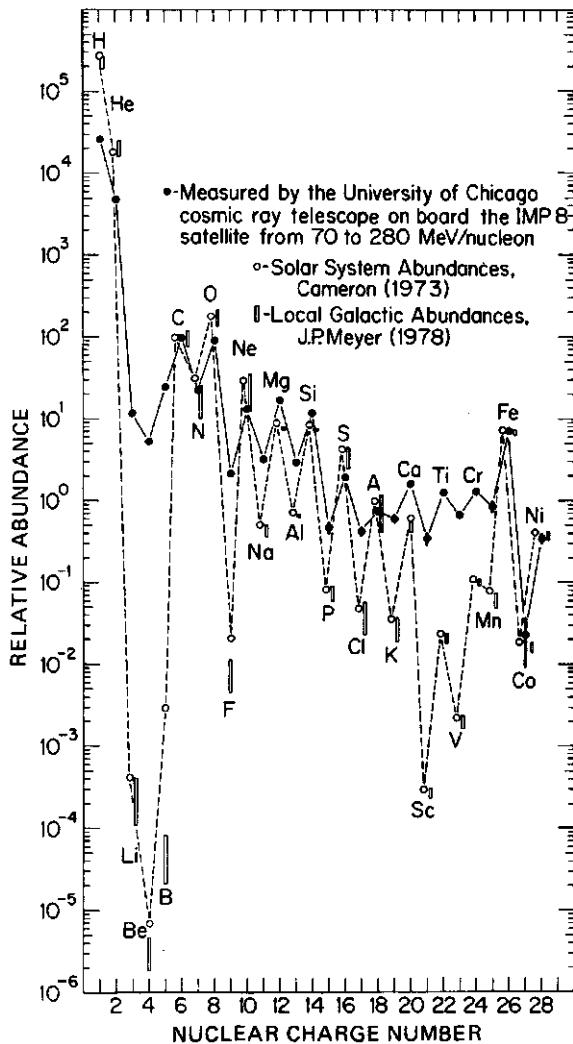
**Cosmic ray source abundances** compared with the local Galactic abundances, both normalized to [Si] = 100.

Element	Cosmic ray source abundance (1990 update)	Local Galactic abundance
H	$8.9 \pm 2.2 \times 10^4$	$2.7 \pm 0.3 \times 10^6$
He	$2.4 \times 10^4$	$2.6 \pm 0.7 \times 10^5$
C	$431 \pm 34$	$1260 \pm 330$
N	$19 \pm 9$	$225 \pm 90$
O	$511 \pm 20$	$2250 \pm 560$
F	< 2.5	$0.09 \pm 0.06$
Ne	$64 \pm 8$	$325 \pm 160$
Na	$6 \pm 4$	$5.5 \pm 1.0$
Mg	$106 \pm 6$	$105 \pm 3$
Al	$10 \pm 4$	$8.4 \pm 0.4$
Si	100	100
P	< 2.5	$0.9 \pm 0.2$
S	$12.6 \pm 2.0$	$43 \pm 15$
Cl	< 1.6	$0.5 \pm 0.3$
Ar	$1.8 \pm 0.6$	$11 \pm 5$
K	< 1.9	$0.3 \pm 0.1$
Ca	$5.1 \pm 0.9$	$6.2 \pm 0.9$
Sc	< 0.8	$3.5 \pm 0.5 \times 10^{-3}$
Ti	< 2.4	$0.27 \pm 0.04$
V	< 1.1	$0.026 \pm 0.005$
Cr	$2.2 \pm 0.6$	$1.3 \pm 0.1$
Mn	$1.7 \pm 1.7$	$0.8 \pm 0.2$
Fe	$93 \pm 6$	$88 \pm 6$
Co	$0.32 \pm 0.12$	$0.21 \pm 0.03$
Ni	$5.1 \pm 0.5$	$4.8 \pm 0.6$
Cu	$0.06 \pm 0.01$	$0.06 \pm 0.03$
Zn	$0.07 \pm 0.01$	$0.10 \pm 0.02$
Ga	$5.6 \pm 2.8 \times 10^{-3}$	$\sim 3.7 \times 10^{-3}$
Ge	$7.4 \pm 1.0 \times 10^{-3}$	$\sim 11.4 \times 10^{-3}$

(From Longair, M.S., High Energy Astrophysics, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Cambridge University Press, 1997)

## Abundances in the galactic cosmic rays

Comparison of the abundances of the elements in the galactic cosmic rays with the solar abundances (normalized to C). (Courtesy of C. Meyer, University of Chicago.)



**Relative abundances of nuclei normalized to oxygen**

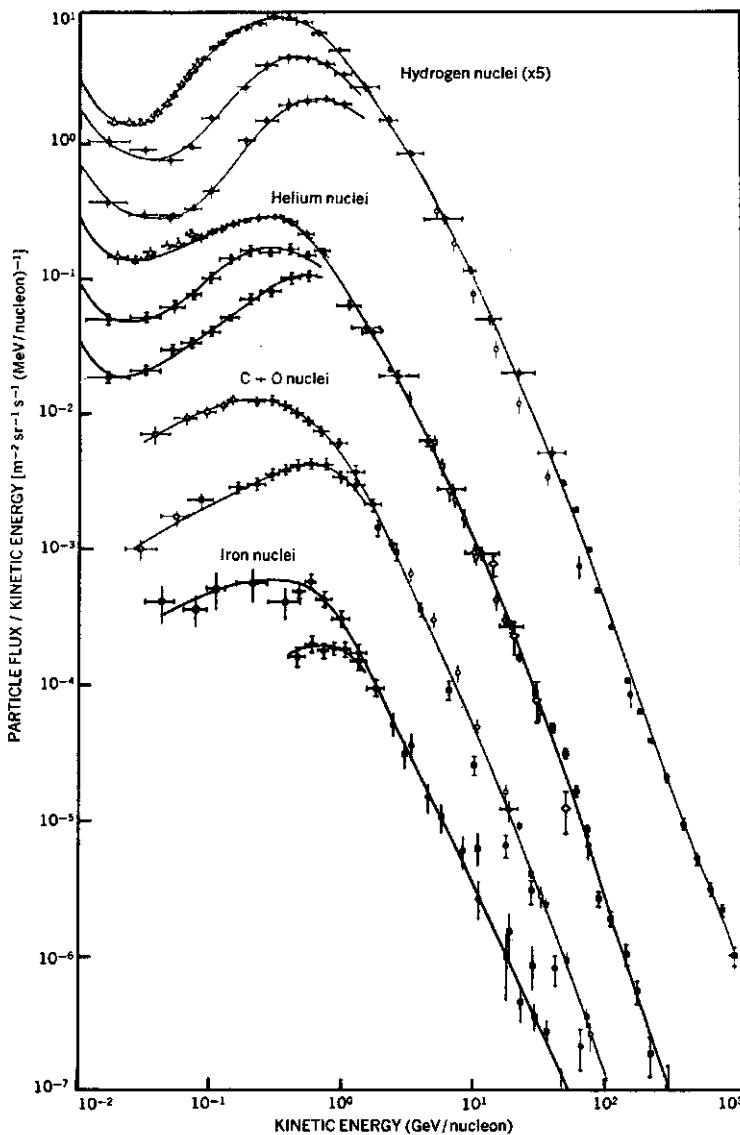
Element	Solar flare cosmic rays	Sun	Galactic cosmic rays
<sup>1</sup> H	700	1000	350
<sup>2</sup> He	107 ± 14	~ 100	50
<sup>3</sup> Li	...	<< 0.001	0.3
<sup>4</sup> Be <sup>5</sup> B	< 0.02	<< 0.001	0.8
<sup>6</sup> C	0.59 ± 0.07	0.6	1.8
<sup>7</sup> N	0.19 ± 0.04	0.1	≤ 0.8
<sup>8</sup> O	1.0	1.0	1.0
<sup>9</sup> F	< 0.03	<< 0.001	≤ 0.1
<sup>10</sup> Ne	0.13 ± 0.02	?	0.30
<sup>11</sup> Na	...	0.002	0.19
<sup>12</sup> Mg	0.043 ± 0.011	0.027	0.32
<sup>13</sup> Al	...	0.002	0.06
<sup>14</sup> Si	0.033 ± 0.011	0.035	0.12
<sup>15</sup> P– <sup>21</sup> Sc	0.057 ± 0.017	0.032	0.13
<sup>22</sup> Ti– <sup>28</sup> Ni	≤ 0.02	0.006	0.28

(Adapted from Johnson, F. S., ed., *Satellite Environment Handbook*, Stanford University Press, 1965.)

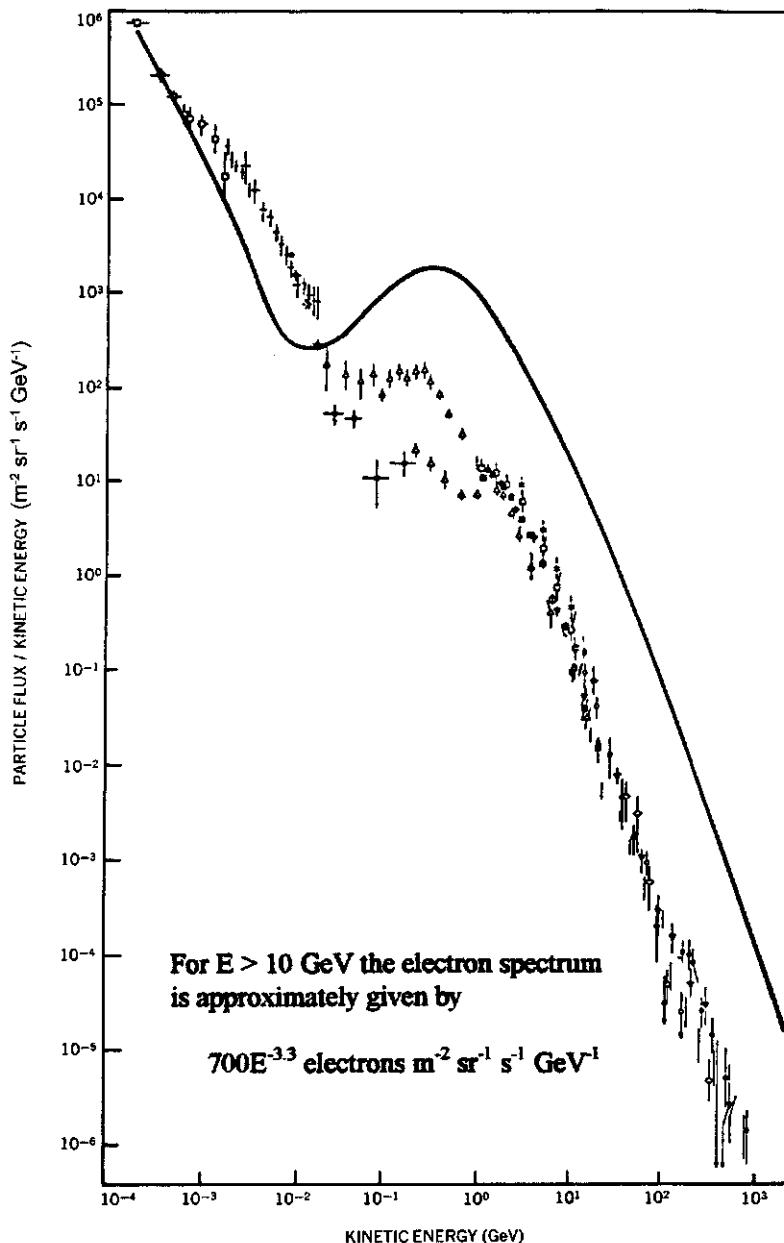
## Cosmic ray spectra

---

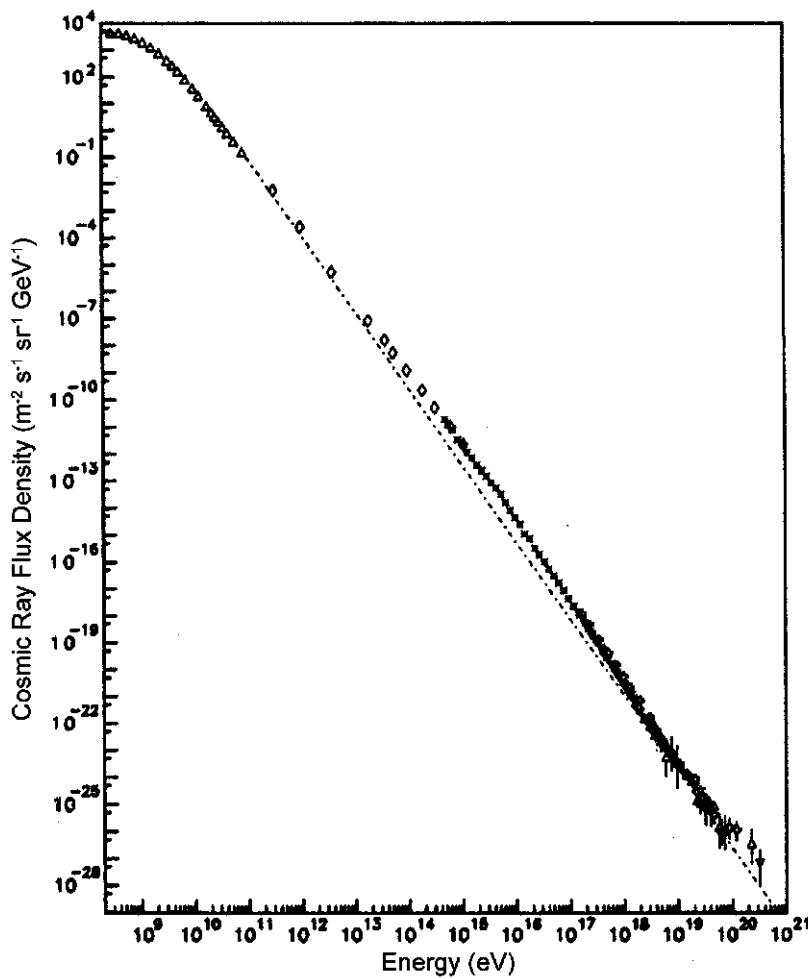
**Cosmic-ray energy spectra** of the more abundant nuclear species as measured near Earth. Below a few GeV/nucleon, these spectra are strongly influenced by modulation within the solar system. The different curves for the same species at those energies represent measurements at various levels of general solar activity, the lowest intensity being observed at the highest activity level. (From Meyer, P., Ramaty, R., & Webber, W.R., *Cosmic rays-Astronomy with Energetic Particles*, in Physics Today, October 1974.)



The energy spectra of cosmic-ray protons (solid line) and electrons (data points) as measured near the Earth. Below a few GeV, interstellar spectra are strongly influenced by the Sun. (From Meyer, P., Ramaty, R., & Webber, W.R., *Cosmic rays-Astronomy with Energetic Particles*, in Physics Today, October 1974.)

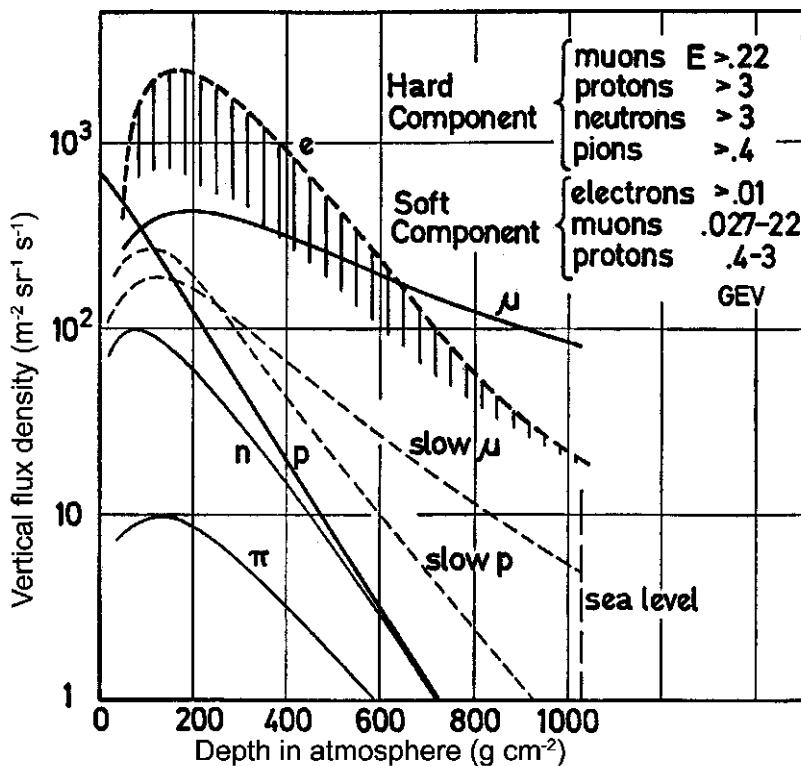


Observed energy spectrum of high-energy cosmic rays. The straight line shows an  $E_0^{-3}$  falloff for comparison. (From Physics Today, January 1998)



### Vertical fluxes

The vertical fluxes of different components of cosmic rays in the atmosphere. (From Hillas, A.M., *Cosmic Rays*, Pergamon Press, 1972.)



## Cutoff rigidity

---

The Earth's magnetic field affects the penetration of charged particles in the vicinity of the Earth. The minimum rigidity (cutoff rigidity) necessary to reach some geomagnetic latitude  $\lambda$  and geocentric radius  $R$  is given by:

$$\frac{pc}{ze} = \frac{M}{R^2} \frac{\cos^4 \lambda}{[(1 + \cos \theta \cos^3 \lambda)^{1/2} + 1]^2},$$

where

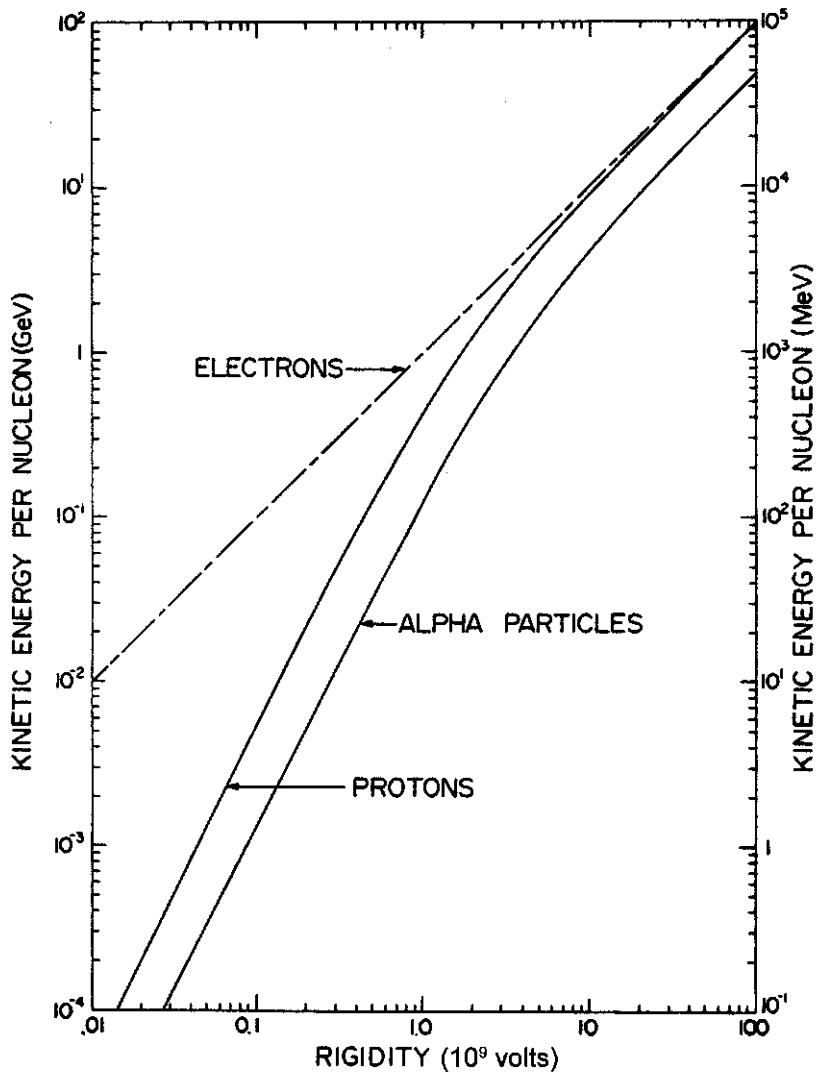
$M$  is the Earth's dipole moment,

$\left(\frac{pc}{ze}\right)$  is the magnetic rigidity of the particle; for charge  $z = 1$  it is numerically equal, when expressed in volts, to the momentum in units of  $ev/c$ ,

$\left(\frac{M}{R_0^2}\right) \approx 60 \times 10^9$  volts, where  $R_0$  is the radius of the Earth,

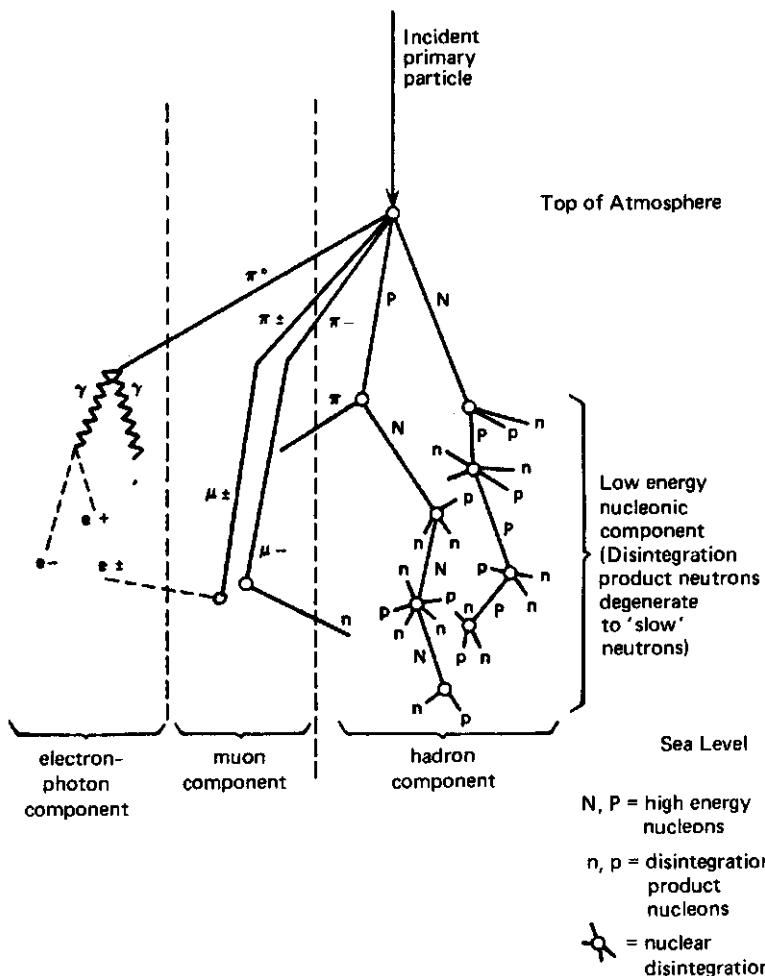
$\theta$  is the angle between the direction of arrival of the particle and the tangent to the circle of latitude. ( $\theta = 0$  corresponds to arrival from the *west* for *positive* particles;  $\theta = 0$  corresponds to arrival from the *east* for *negative* particles.)

Conversion from magnetic rigidity to kinetic energy per nucleon for electrons, protons and alpha particles. (From Smart, D.F. & Shea, M.A., in *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, Jursa, A.S., ed., Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985.)



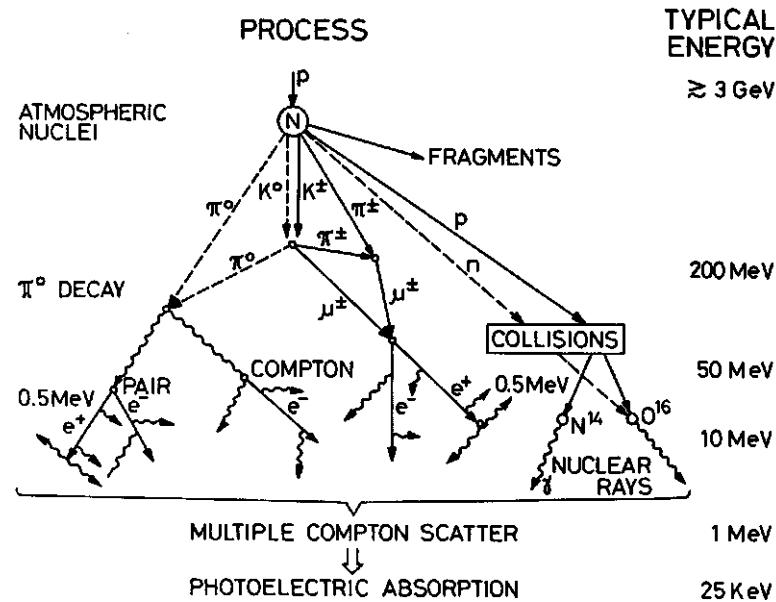
## Particle production in the atmosphere

Schematic representation of the development of particle production in the atmosphere. (Adapted from Simpson *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.*, **90**, 934, 1953.)



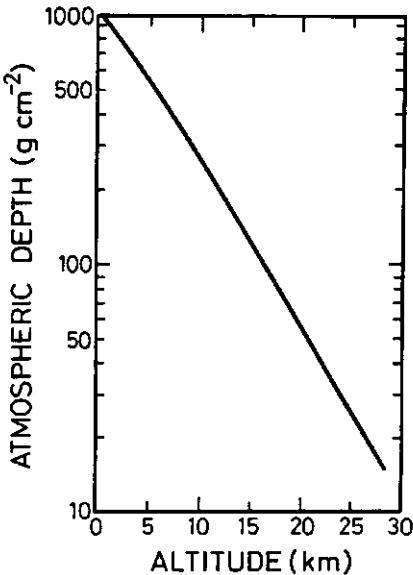
## Gamma-ray production in the atmosphere

Schematic diagram of gamma-ray production processes in the atmosphere. Neutrinos are ignored. (From Allkofer, O. C. & Grieder, P. K. F., *Cosmic Rays on Earth*, Physik Daten, ISSN 0344-8401, 1984.)

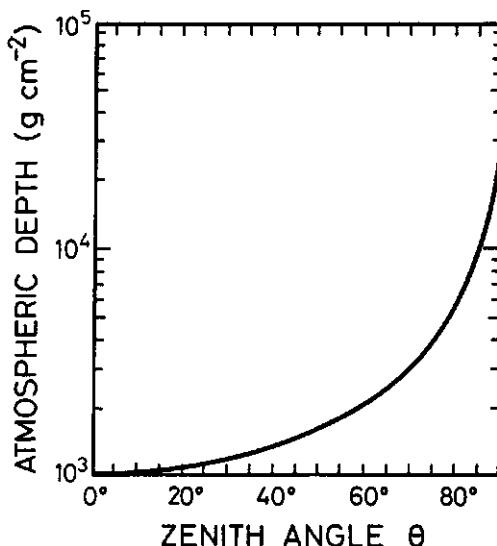


### Atmospheric depth

Relation between atmospheric depth and altitude for an isothermal atmosphere. (From Altkofer, O. C. & Grieder, P. K. F., *Cosmic Rays on Earth*, Physik Daten, ISSN 0344-8401, 1984.)



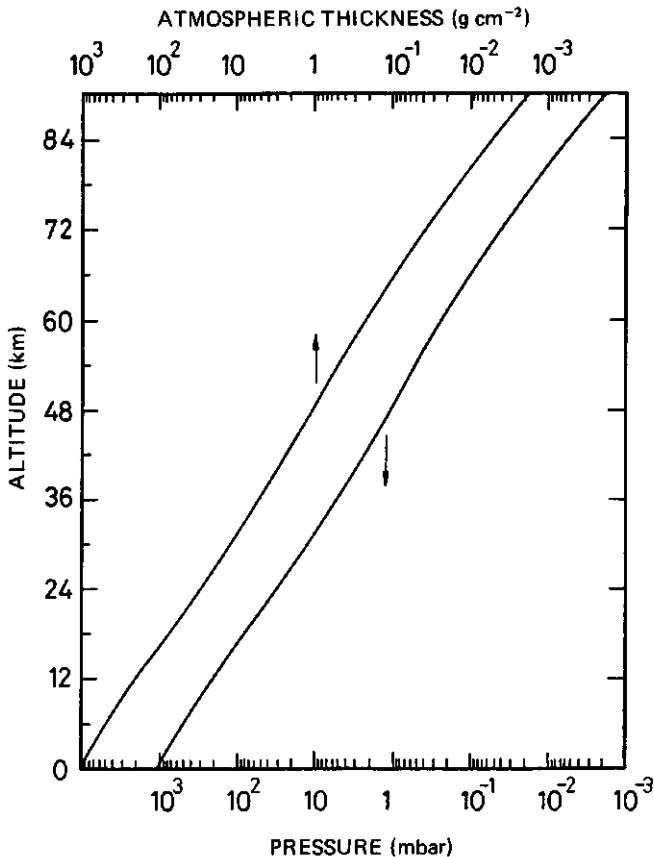
Relation between zenith angle and atmospheric depth at sea level in an isothermal atmosphere. (From Altkofer, O. C. & Grieder, P. K. F., *Cosmic Rays on Earth*, Physik Daten, ISSN 0344-8401, 1984.)



## Pressure and atmospheric thickness

---

Relations between altitude and pressure, and altitude and depth in the real atmosphere. (After Cole, A. E. & Kantor, A. J., Air Force Reference Atmosphere, AFGL-TR-78-0051, 1978.)




---

## Bibliography

'Cosmic rays on Earth', Allkofer, O. C. & Grieder, P. K. F. in *Physics Data*, ISSN 0344-8401, 1984, nr. 25-1, Fachinformationszentrum, Karlsruhe.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 9

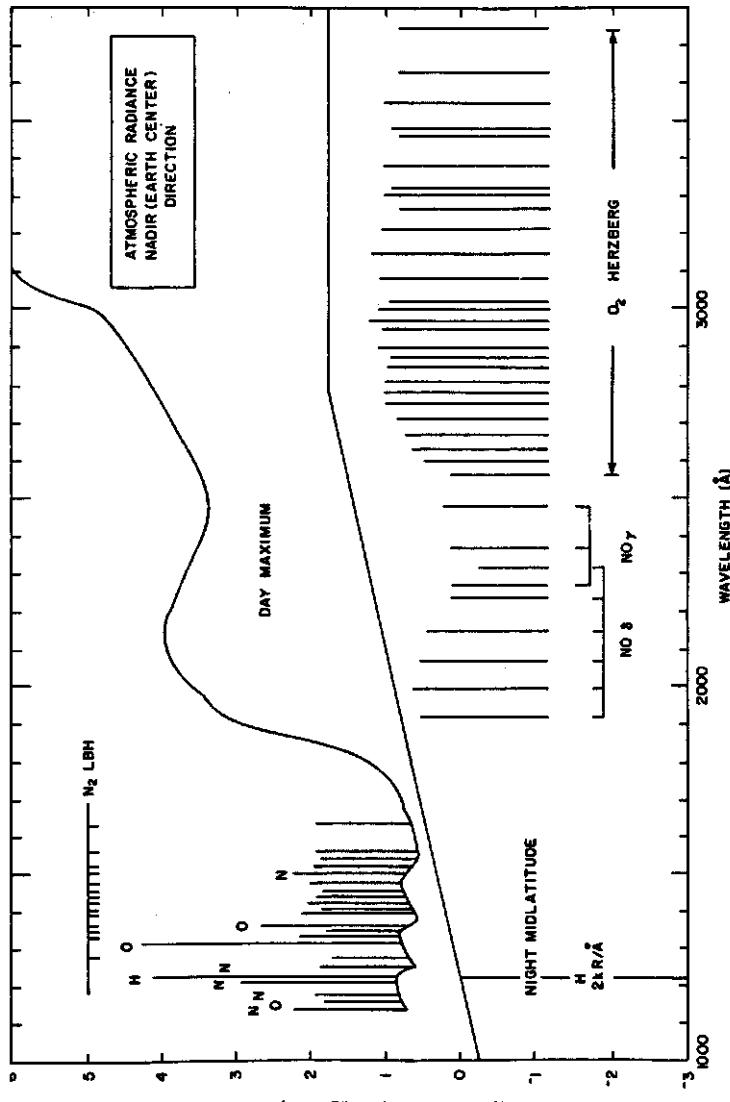
---

## Earth's atmosphere and environment

*Space isn't remote at all. It's only an hour's drive away, if your car could go straight upwards.* - Sir Fred Hoyle

Atmospheric radiance in the ultraviolet	324
Earth's magnetic field	325
Earth's magnetosphere	327
Solar wind	328
Solar Irradiance	329
<i>Visible and infrared radiation</i>	329
<i>Ultraviolet and X-ray radiation</i>	329
<i>Solar variation</i>	330
<i>Solar flare classification</i>	330
The solar spectrum	331
Radiation environment	332
<i>Galactic cosmic radiation</i>	332
<i>Solar high energy particle radiation</i>	332
<i>Solar radiation storms</i>	332
B, L coordinates	333
Trapped radiation	334
International reference atmosphere	338
Altitude variation of atmospheric constituents	339
Opacity of the atmosphere	340
US standard atmosphere, 1976	341
Structure of the upper atmosphere	343
Earth's ionosphere	344
Bibliography	345

### Atmospheric radiance in the ultraviolet



(Huffman, R.E. in *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, A.S. Jura, ed., Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985.)

## Earth's magnetic field

---

The largest contribution to the Earth's field at low altitudes comes from its main field. The main field is produced in the Earth's fluid core. The main field is distorted at the surface by crustal anomalies and at higher altitudes, by magnetic fields from current sources external to the Earth (ionospheric currents, plasmas in the magnetosphere, solar wind). Models of the geomagnetic field are required for trapped particle, solar event, and cosmic-ray environment modeling.

At low altitude, the Earth's main field can be described approximately by the field of a magnetic dipole placed at the Earth's center (geocentric dipole) with its axis tilted to intersect the Earth at 78.5°N, 291.0°E, the geomagnetic north pole, and 78.5°S, 111.0°E, the geomagnetic south pole. In spherical coordinates,  $r$ ,  $\theta$ , and  $\phi$ , with  $r$  measured from the center of the Earth and  $\theta$  measured from the dipole axis (geomagnetic colatitude), the dipole field has the vector components:

$$\begin{aligned}B_r &= -\frac{M}{r^3} 2 \cos \theta \\B_\theta &= -\frac{M}{r^3} \sin \theta \\B_\phi &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

The total intensity is then

$$B = -\frac{M}{r^3} [3 \cos \theta + 1]^{1/2}$$

where  $M$  is the dipole moment of the Earth (about  $8 \times 10^{15}$  Tm<sup>3</sup>).  $B$  is measured in teslas (1 T =  $10^4$  gauss; 1 nT (nanotesla) = 1 gamma).

The centered dipole is a poor approximation to the field, producing errors as large as 25% at the equator. If the dipole is considered to be eccentric, 10% discrepancies remain.

The geomagnetic field (including the external field) is more accurately modeled by a spherical harmonic expansion of the magnetic scalar potential:

$$\begin{aligned}V = a \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=0}^n P_n^m(\cos \theta) \times & \left[ \left( \frac{a}{r} \right)^{n+1} (g_n^m \cos m\phi + h_n^m \sin m\phi) \right. \\& \left. + \left( \frac{a}{r} \right)^{-n} (A_n^m \cos m\phi + B_n^m \sin m\phi) \right],\end{aligned}$$

where  $r$ ,  $\theta$ , and  $\phi$  are the geographical polar coordinates of radial distance, colatitude, and east longitude, and  $a$  is the radius of the earth.

### Earth's magnetic field (*cont.*)

The functions  $P_n^m(\cos \theta)$  are the Schmidt functions:

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^m(\cos \theta) &= \left[ \frac{\epsilon_m(n-m)!}{(n+m)!} \right]^{1/2} \\ &\times \left[ \frac{(1-\cos^2 \theta)^{m/2}}{2^n n!} \frac{d^{n+m}}{d(\cos \theta)^{n+m}} (\cos^2 \theta - 1)^n \right] \\ \epsilon_m &= 2 \quad \text{if } m > 0 \\ \epsilon_m &= 1 \quad \text{if } m = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The second quantity in brackets is the associated Legendre function  $P_{n,m}(\cos \theta)$ .

In the potential, those terms containing  $g_n^m$  and  $h_n^m$  arise from sources internal to the earth, while those containing  $A_n^m$  and  $B_n^m$  arise from external currents; the potential function is valid in the space above the surface and below the external current system. The field is given by

$$\mathbf{B} = -\nabla V.$$

The northward, eastward, and downward components of the field are thus

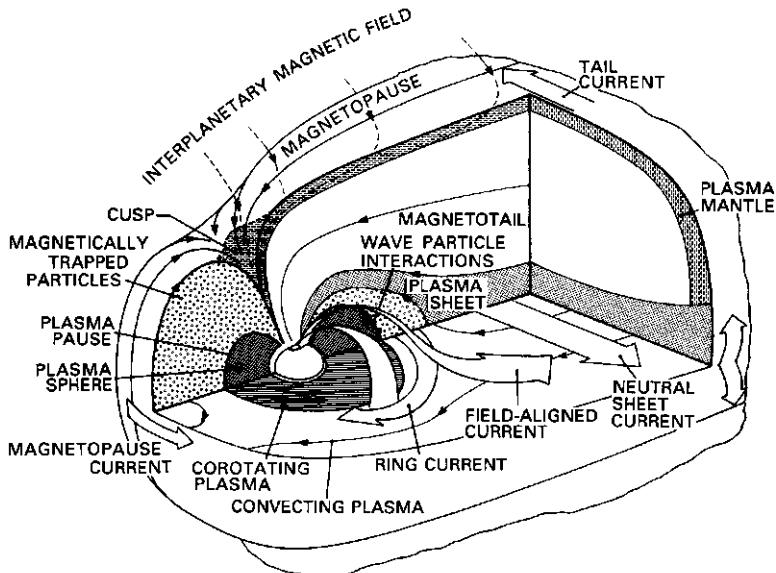
$$\begin{aligned} X &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \\ Y &= -\frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \\ Z &= \frac{\partial V}{\partial r}. \end{aligned}$$

The spherical-harmonic expansion model specifies the magnetic field to an accuracy of about 10 nT for low earth orbiting satellites (eg. 500 km).

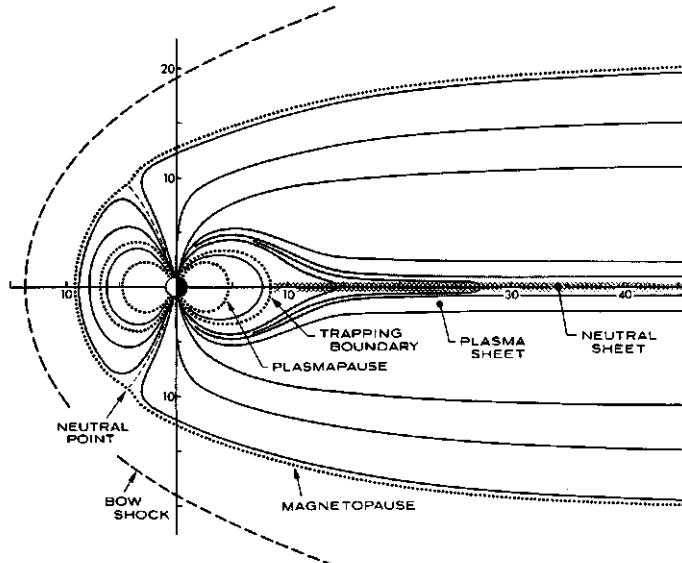
(Adapted from Knecht, D.J. & B.M. Shuman, in *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, A.S. Jursa, ed., Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985)

## Earth's magnetosphere

Schematic views of the Earth's magnetosphere.



(From NASA)



(From Knecht, D.J. & B.M. Shuman, in *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, A.S. Jura, ed., Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985.)

## Solar wind

---

Observed properties of the solar wind near the orbit of the Earth.

---

Proton density	$6.6 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
Electron density	$7.1 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
$\text{He}^{2+}$ density	$0.25 \text{ cm}^{-3}$
Flow speed (nearly radial)	$450 \text{ km s}^{-1}$
Proton temperature	$1.2 \times 10^5 \text{ K}$
Electron temperature	$1.4 \times 10^5 \text{ K}$
Magnetic field (induction)	$7 \times 10^{-9} \text{ tesla (T)}$

---

Solar wind flux densities and fluxes near the orbit of the Earth.

---

	<b>Flux Density</b>	<b>Flux Through Sphere at 1 AU</b>
Protons	$3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$8.4 \times 10^{35} \text{ s}^{-1}$
Mass	$5.8 \times 10^{-16} \text{ g cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$1.6 \times 10^{12} \text{ g s}^{-1}$
Radial momentum	$2.6 \times 10^{-9} \text{ pascal (Pa)}$	$7.3 \times 10^{14} \text{ newton (N)}$
Kinetic energy	$0.6 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$1.7 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Thermal energy	$0.02 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$0.05 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Magnetic energy	$0.01 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$0.025 \times 10^{27} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$
Radial magnetic flux	$5 \times 10^{-9} \text{ T}$	$1.4 \times 10^{15} \text{ weber (Wb)}$

---

(Hundhausen A.J., in *Introduction to Space Physics*, Kivelson, M.G. & C.T. Russell, eds., Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)

## Solar irradiance (1 AU)

---

### *Visible and infrared radiation*

Radiant energy distribution:

approximated by that from a 5800 K blackbody

Fraction of solar radiation:

Above 7000Å = 53.12%

Above 4000Å ~ 91.28%

3000Å–30 000Å = 96.62%

### *Ultraviolet and X-ray radiation*

Fraction of solar radiation:

Below 4000Å = 8.72%

Below 3000Å = 1.21%

Below 2000Å = 0.008% (variable)

Below 1000Å =  $10^{-4}\%$  (variable)

Principal line emission fluxes at 1.0 AU:

Lyman Alpha H I (1215.67Å):  $51.0 \times 10^{-4}$  W m<sup>-2</sup>

He II (303.8Å):  $2.5 \times 10^{-4}$  W m<sup>-2</sup>

H I (1025.72Å):  $0.60 \times 10^{-4}$  W m<sup>-2</sup>

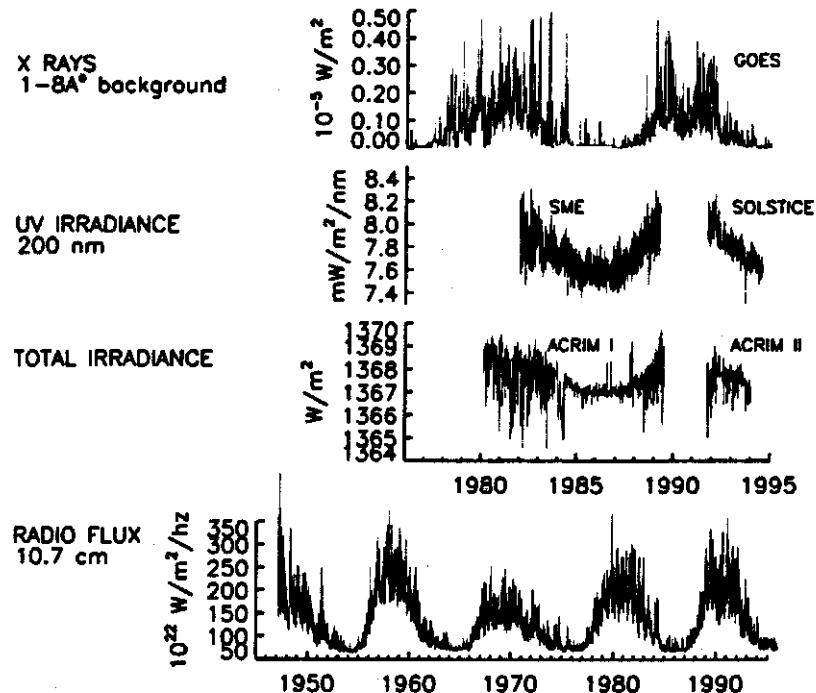
C III (977Å):  $0.50 \times 10^{-4}$  W m<sup>-2</sup>

X-ray flux (W m<sup>-2</sup>):

	1–8Å	8–20Å	20–200Å
Sunspot min	$1 \times 10^{-8}$	$1 \times 10^{-7}$	$\sim 1 \times 10^{-4}$
Sunspot max	$3 \times 10^{-6}$	$2 \times 10^{-5}$	$\sim 1 \times 10^{-3}$
Flare activity (large flares)	$1 \times 10^{-4}$	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	$\sim 1 \times 10^{-2}$

### Solar irradiance (cont.)

#### Solar variation



(From Lean, J., *Annual Review of Astronomy and Astrophysics*, v. 35, 33, 1997, Annual Reviews, Inc.)

#### Solar Flare Classification

The ranking of a solar flare is based on its x-ray output. Flares are classified according to the order of magnitude of the peak burst intensity  $I$  measured at the Earth in the 1 to 8 Å wavelength band as follows:

Class	Peak, 1 to 8 Å band ( $\text{W m}^{-2}$ )
B	$I < 10^{-6}$
C	$10^{-6} < I < 10^{-5}$
M	$10^{-5} < I < 10^{-4}$
X	$I > 10^{-4}$

A multiplier is used to indicate the level within each class.

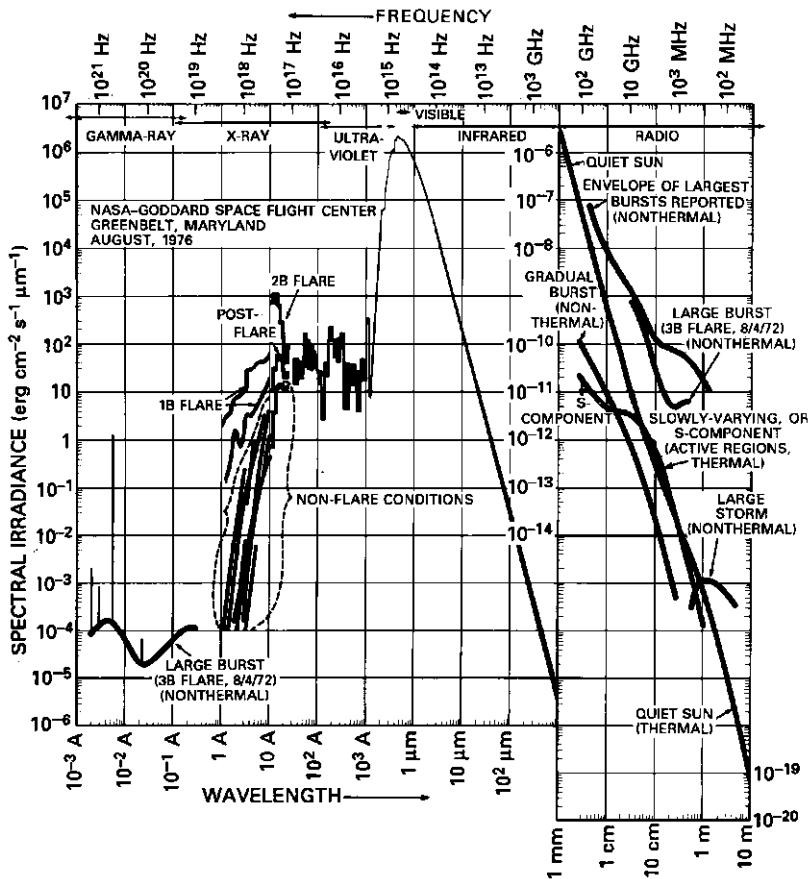
For example:

M6:  $I = 6 \times 10^{-5} \text{ W m}^{-2}$ .

## The solar spectrum

---

The solar spectral irradiance from radio waves to gamma-rays.  
 (Courtesy H. Malitson and the National Space Science Data Center.)



## Radiation environment

---

### *Galactic cosmic radiation*

Flux at sunspot minimum:	$\sim 4$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ (isotropic)
Integrated yearly rate:	$\sim 1.3 \times 10^8$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$
Flux at sunspot maximum:	2.0 protons $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ (isotropic)
Integrated yearly rate:	$\sim 7 \times 10^7$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$
Energy range:	40 MeV– $10^{13}$ MeV; predominantly $10^3$ – $10^7$ MeV
Integrated dose (without shielding):	$\sim 4$ – $10$ rad $\text{yr}^{-1}$

### *Solar high energy particle radiation*

Composition: predominantly protons ( $\text{H}^+$ ) and alpha particles ( $\text{He}^{++}$ ).  
Integrated yearly flux at 1 AU:

Energy > 30 MeV,	$N \approx 8 \times 10^9$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$ near solar maximum
	$N \approx 5 \times 10^5$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$ near solar minimum
Energy > 100 MeV,	$N \approx 6 \times 10^8$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$ near solar maximum
	$N \approx 5 \times 10^4$ protons $\text{cm}^{-2}$ near solar minimum

Maximum dosage with shielding of  $5 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  (equivalent thickness):  
 $\sim 200$  rad per week (3 flares), skin dose at a point detector.

### *Solar radiation storms*

The NOAA space weather scale for solar radiation storms:

Scale	Descriptor	Flux level*	Number of Events**
S4	Extreme	$10^5$	< 1 per cycle
S4	Severe	$10^4$	3 per cycle
S3	Strong	$10^3$	10 per cycle
S2	Moderate	$10^2$	25 per cycle
S1	Minor	10	50 per cycle

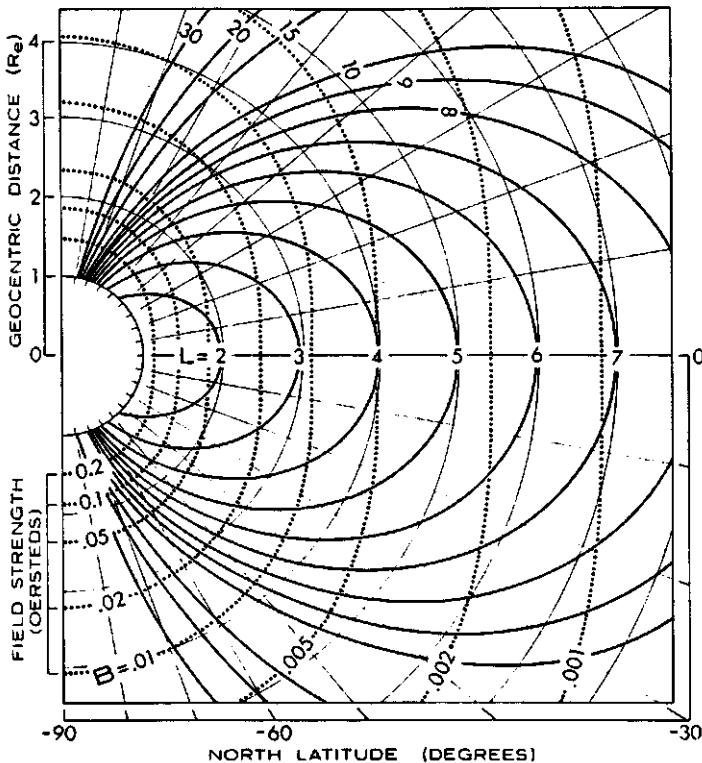
\* Flux levels are 5 minute averages. Flux in  $> 10$  MeV particles (ions)  $\text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1} \text{cm}^{-2}$ .

\*\* These events can last more than one day.

## B, L coordinates

---

Trapped radiation environment models give energetic particle fluxes as functions of energy and of the geomagnetic coordinates B and L. Surfaces of constant B (magnetic field intensity) are concentric, roughly ellipsoidal shells encircling the Earth, while surfaces of constant L approximate the concentric shells generated by dipole field lines rotating with the Earth.



B and L can be approximately mapped into polar coordinates by means of the following transformation:

$$B = \frac{M}{R^3} \left( 4 - \frac{3R}{L} \right)^{1/2}; \quad R = L \cos^2 \lambda$$

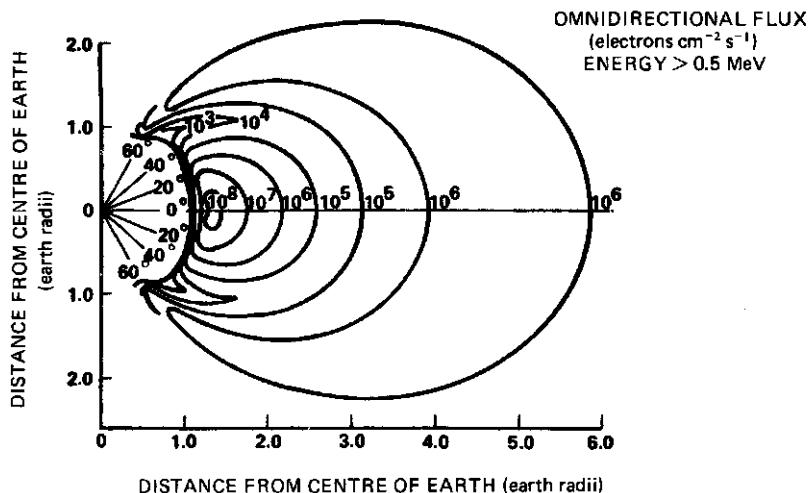
(where M is the magnetic dipole moment of the earth). Thus a radial distance R and a "latitude"  $\lambda$  may be computed.

---

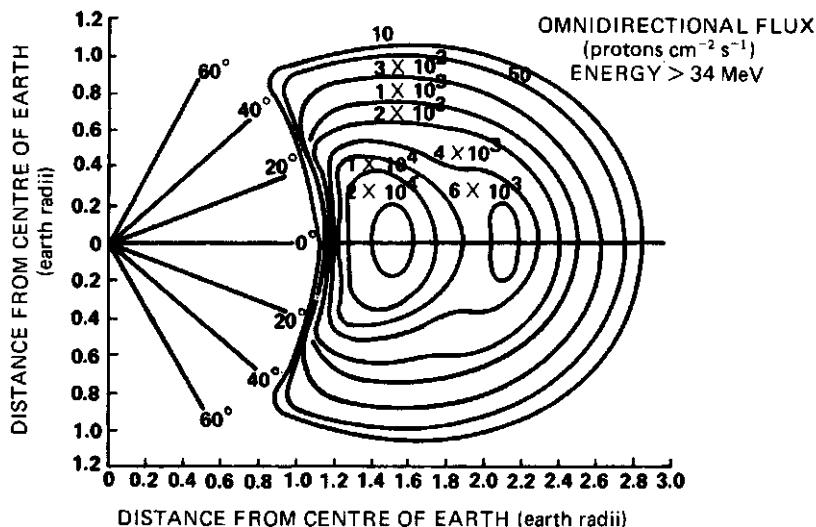
(Adapted from Knecht, D.J. & B.M. Shuman, in *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, A.S. Jursa, ed., Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985)

## Trapped radiation

Electron distribution in the Earth's field. (Published by Vette in August 1964.)

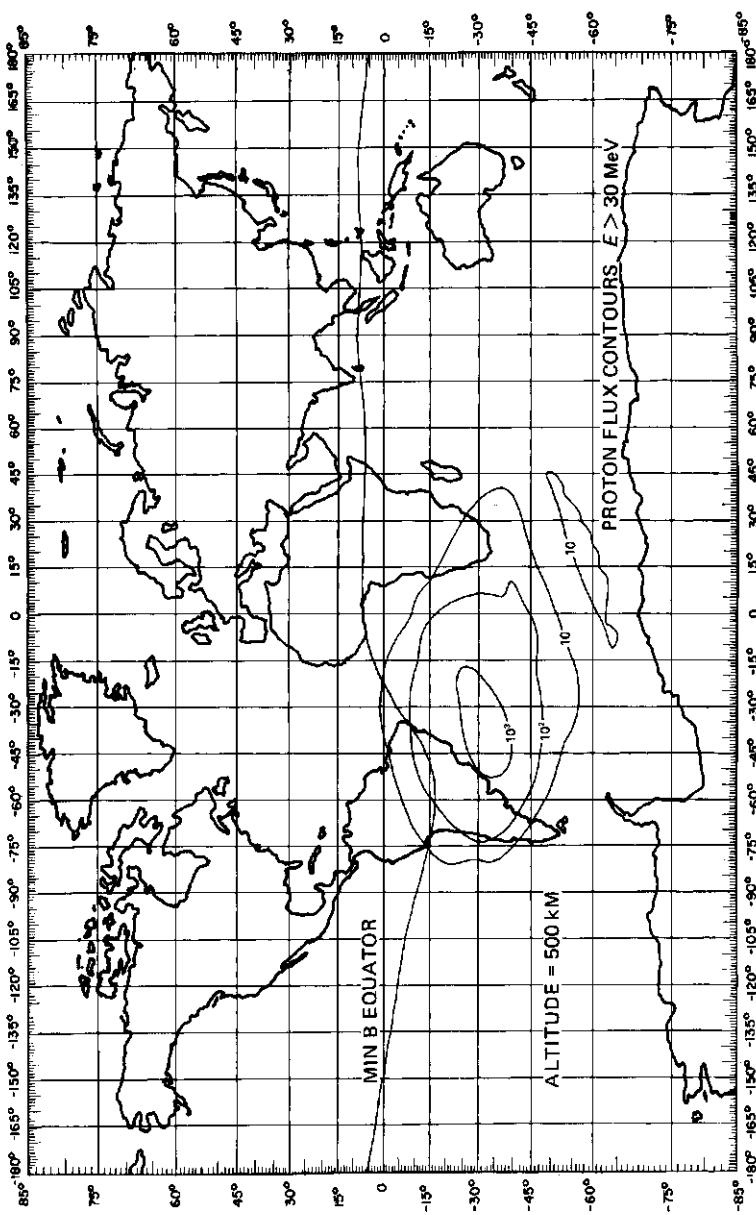


Proton distribution in the Earth's field. (Published by Vette in September 1963).

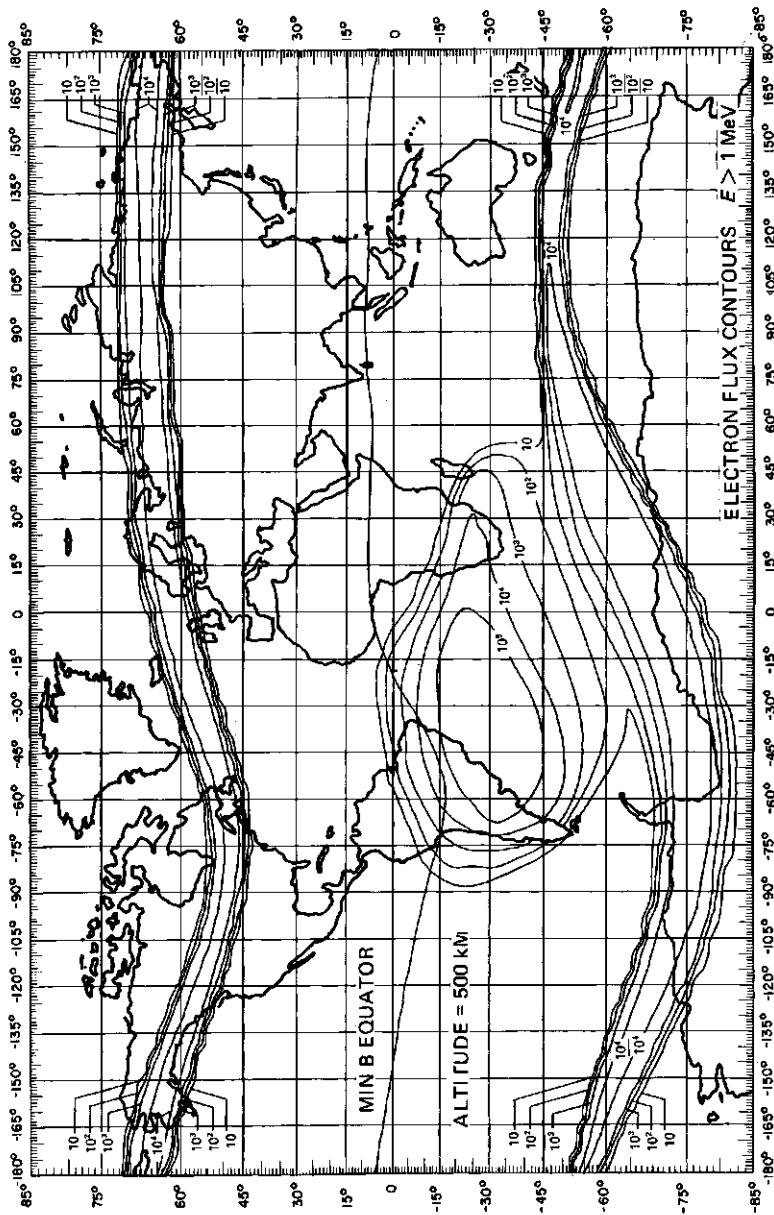


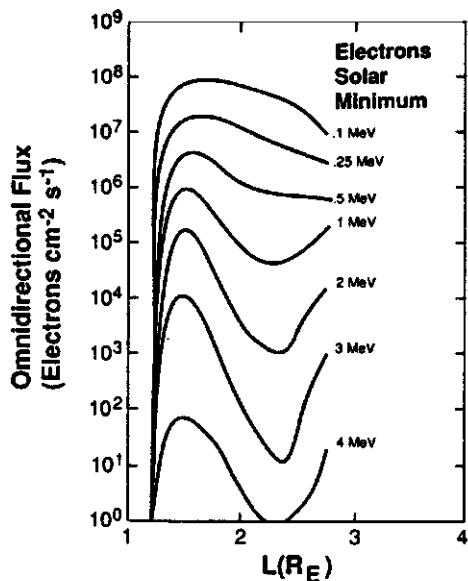
### Trapped radiation (*cont.*)

Omni-directional flux in protons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ . (Adapted from Stassinopoulos, E.G., *World Maps of Constant B, L, and Flux Contours* NASA SP-3054, 1970.)

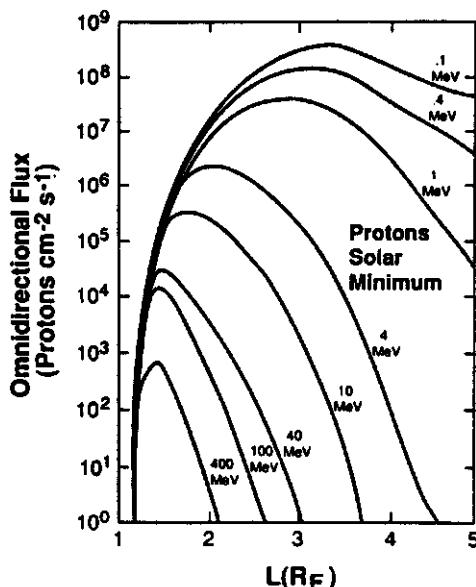


Omnidirectional flux in electrons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ . (Adapted from Stassinosopoulos, E.G., *World Maps of Constant B, L, and Flux Contours*, NASA SP-3054, 1970.)





Equatorial omnidirectional electron flux versus  $L$  shell for the AE5 solar-minimum radiation-belt model. The flux curves are labeled by threshold energy. Each curve gives the total electron flux above the specified threshold.

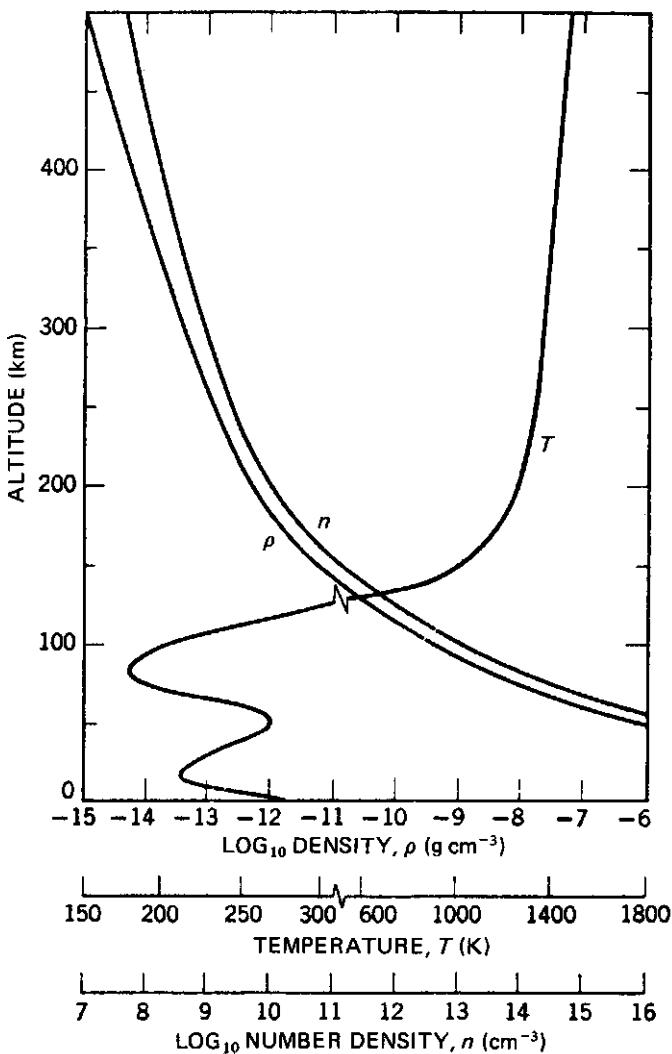


Radial distribution of proton omnidirectional fluxes in the equatorial plane, according to the AP8 solar-minimum radiation model. The curves give total fluxes above various threshold energies from 0.1 to 400 MeV.

(Wolf, R.A. in "Introduction to Space Physics", M.G. Kivelson & C.T. Russell, eds., Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)

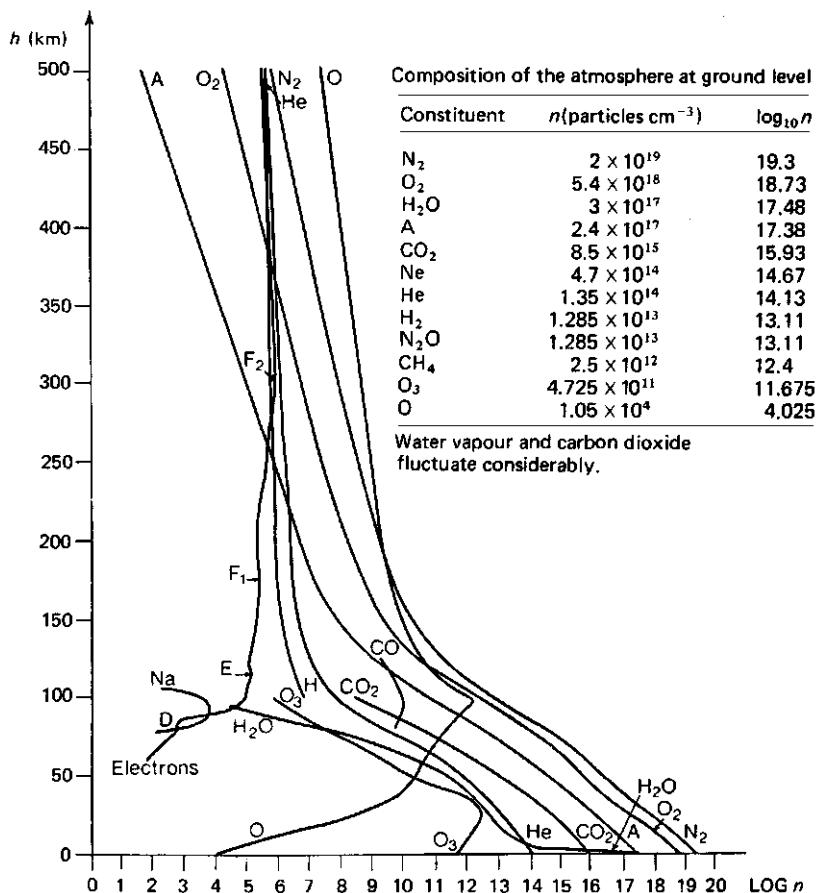
**International reference atmosphere**

(COSPAR International Reference Atmosphere, 1961.)



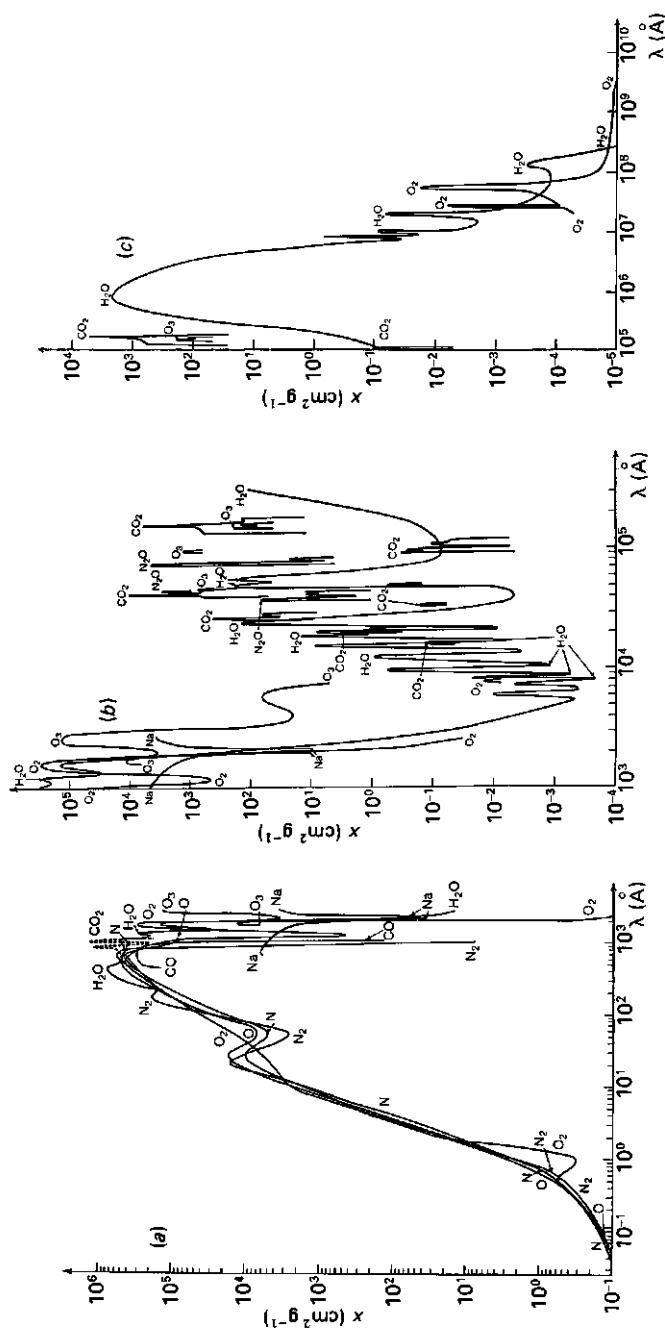
## Altitude variation of atmospheric constituents

Variation with altitude of the various constituents of the atmosphere. The horizontal scale is the logarithm of the particle density  $n$  in particles  $\text{cm}^{-3}$ . (Adapted from Pecker, J., *Space Observatories*, D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dordrecht, 1970.)



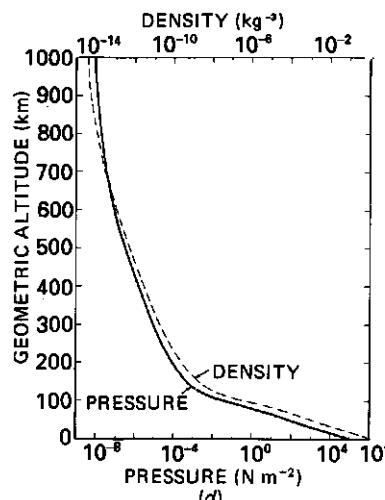
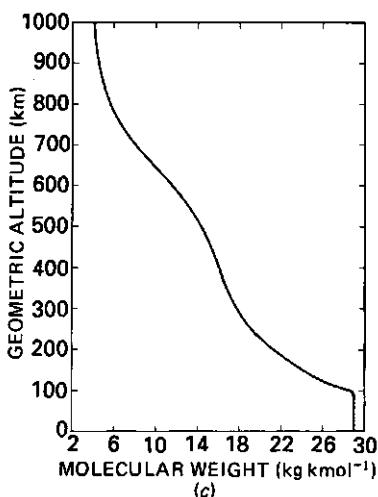
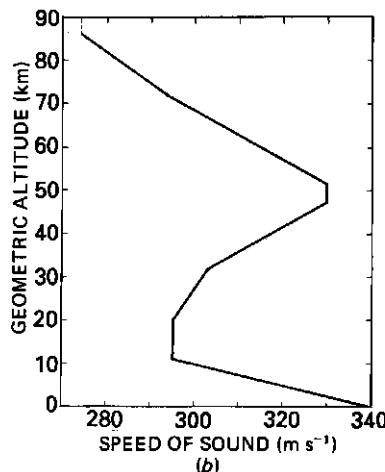
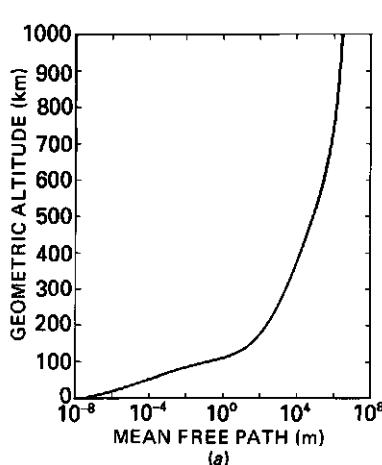
### Opacity of the atmosphere

Attenuation of photons as a function of wavelength for various constituents of the atmosphere. The ordinate is the mass attenuation coefficient in  $\text{cm}^2 \text{ g}^{-1}$ . (a) UV and EUV region; (b) visible, and infrared region; (c) radio region. (Adapted from Pecker, J., Space Observatories, D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dordrecht, 1970.)



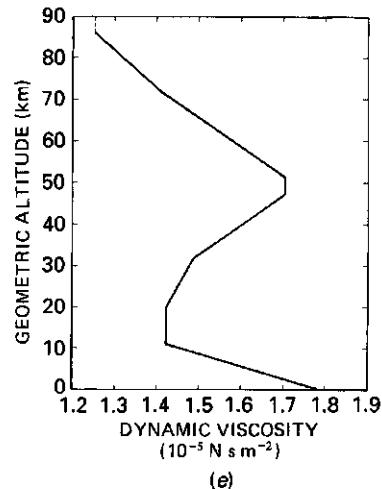
**US standard atmosphere, 1976**

(a) Mean free path as a function of geometric altitude. (b) Speed of sound as a function of geometric altitude. (c) Mean molecular weight as a function of geometric altitude. (d) Total pressure and mass density as a function of geometric altitude.

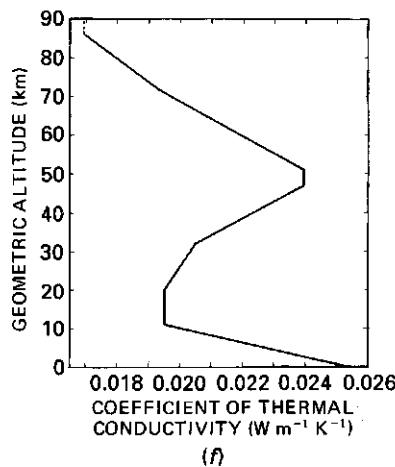


**US standard atmosphere, 1976 (*cont.*)**

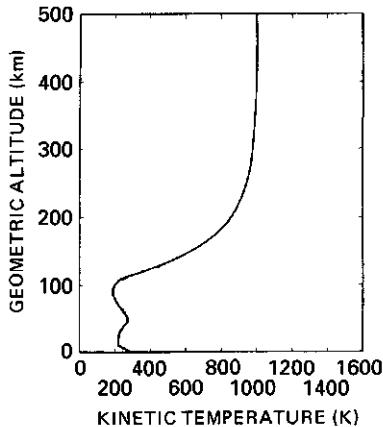
(e) Dynamic viscosity as a function of geometric altitude. (f) Coefficient of thermal conductivity as a function of geometric altitude. (g) Kinetic temperature as a function of geometric altitude. (h) Mean air-particle speed as a function of geometric altitude.



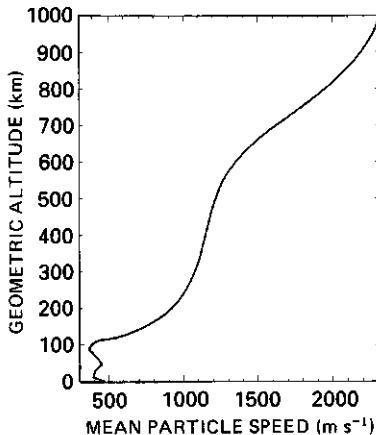
(e)



(f)



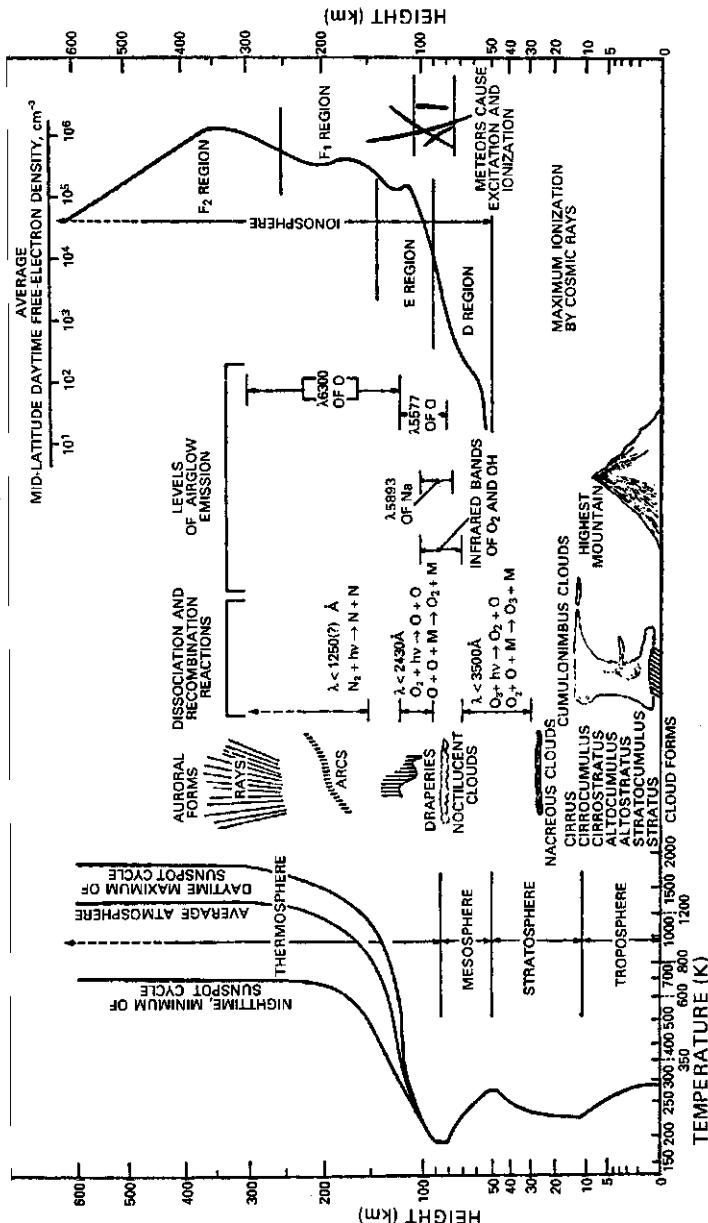
(g)



(h)

## Structure of the upper atmosphere

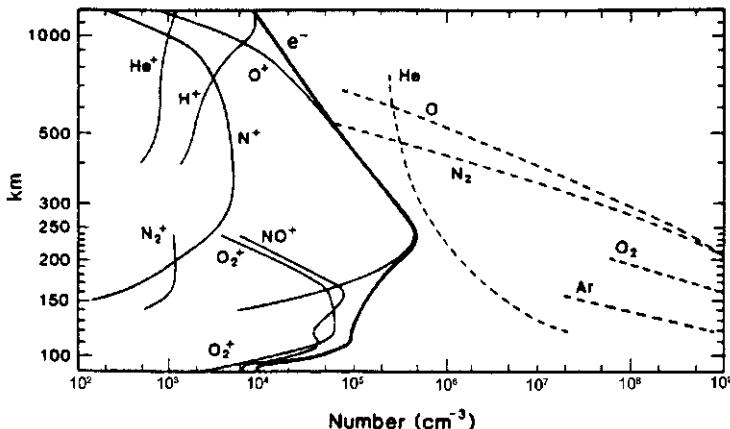
(Adapted from Harris, M.F. in *American Institute of Physics Handbook*, D.E. Gray, ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1972.)



## Earth's ionosphere

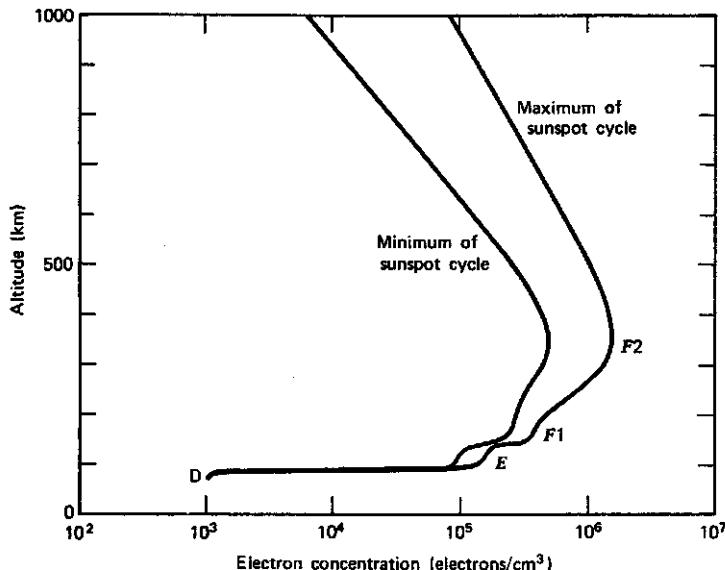
The international quiet solar year (IQSY) daytime ionospheric and atmospheric composition based on mass spectrometer measurements.

(Luhmann, J.G., in *Introduction to Space Physics*, Kivelson, M.G. & C.T. Russell, eds., Cambridge University Press, 1995, with permission.)



The concentration of electrons in the Earth's ionosphere. The D-layer disappears at night, and the F1- and F2-layers coalesce in the absence of sunlight. These data apply at midlatitudes.

(Haymes, R.C., *Introduction to Space Science*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1971, with permission.)



**Bibliography**

*World Maps of Constant B, L, and Flux Contours,*

Stassinopoulos, E.G., NASA SP-3054, 1970.

*US Standard Atmosphere, 1976*, 1976-0-588-256, US Government

Printing Office.

*Satellite Environment Handbook*, F.S. Johnson, ed., Stanford University Press, 1965.

A.S. Jura, ed., *Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*, Air Force Geophysics Laboratory, 1985.

Kivelson, M.G. & C.T. Russell, eds., *Introduction to Space Physics*, Cambridge University Press, 1995.

Haymes, R.C., *Introduction to Space Science*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1971.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

# Chapter 10

---

## Relativity and cosmology

*Cosmologists are often in error, but never in doubt.* - Yakov Zel'dovich

Special relativity	348
Lorentz transformation	348
<i>4-Vector transformation</i>	348
<i>Examples of 4-vectors</i>	349
<i>2nd rank tensor transformation</i>	349
<i>Electromagnetic field strength tensor</i>	349
<i>Covariant formulation of Maxwell's equations</i>	349
<i>Lorentz force</i>	349
Cosmology	350
<i>Robertson-Walker line element</i>	350
<i>Einstein field equations</i>	351
<i>Friedmann universes</i>	351
<i>Other world models</i>	357
<i>Measurements of the Hubble constant <math>H_0</math></i>	361
<i>Gravitational lensing</i>	362
<i>Gravitationally lensed systems</i>	363
<i>Sunyaev-Zeldovich Effect</i>	363
<i>Thermal history of the standard Hot Big Bang</i>	364
<i>Cosmological parameters</i>	365
Bibliography	366

## Special relativity

---

Fundamental kinematical relations for a particle of rest mass  $m_0$  and velocity  $v$ :

$p = m_0 v / (1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$	momentum
$E = m_0 c^2 / (1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$	total energy
$T = E - m_0 c^2$	kinetic energy
$m = m_0 / (1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$	relativistic mass
$E_0 = m_0 c^2$	rest energy

From the above, the following relations can be derived:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= mc^2 = (m_0^2 c^4 + c^2 p^2)^{1/2} \\ p &= [(E/c)^2 - m_0^2 c^2]^{1/2} \\ v &= c^2 p/E = c[1 - (m_0 c^2/E)^2]^{1/2} = p/[m_0 c^2 + (p/c)^2]^{1/2} \\ m &= E/c^2 = [m_0^2 + (p/c)^2]^{1/2} \end{aligned}$$

Relativistic Doppler effect:

$$1 + z = \frac{1 + (v/c) \cos \theta}{(1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}},$$

where

$\theta$  = angle between direction of observation and direction of motion,

$\theta = 0$  for motion directly away from observer,

$$z = (\lambda_{\text{obs}} - \lambda)/\lambda.$$

$$z \approx (v/c) \cos \theta \text{ for } v \ll c.$$


---

## Lorentz transformation (Gaussian units)

---

### 4-Vector transformation

$$B'_\mu = \sum_{\nu=1}^4 a_{\mu\nu} B_\nu \equiv a_{\mu\nu} B_\nu.$$

For a Lorentz transformation from system  $k$  to a system  $k'$  moving with a velocity  $v$  parallel to the  $z$ -axis, the transformation coefficients are given by:

$$(a_{\mu\nu}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \gamma & i\gamma\beta \\ 0 & 0 & -i\gamma\beta & \gamma \end{bmatrix}, \quad \beta = v/c, \quad \gamma = (1 - v^2/c^2)^{-1/2}.$$

**Examples of 4-vectors**

$$x_\mu = (\mathbf{x}, i\sigma),$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = x_1 \hat{i} + x_2 \hat{j} + x_3 \hat{k}$ .

$$A_\mu = (\mathbf{A}, i\phi),$$

where  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\phi$  are the electromagnetic vector and scalar potential.

$$J_\mu = (\mathbf{J}, i\sigma\rho),$$

where  $\mathbf{J}$  and  $\rho$  are the current density and charge density.

$$k_\mu = (\mathbf{k}, i\omega/c),$$

where  $\mathbf{k}$  and  $\omega$  are the wave vector and frequency of a plane electromagnetic wave.

$$p_\mu = (\mathbf{p}, iE/c),$$

where  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $E$  are the momentum and energy of a particle.

**2nd rank tensor transformation**

$$S'_{\mu\nu} = \sum_{\lambda,\sigma=1}^4 a_{\mu\lambda} a_{\nu\sigma} S_{\lambda\sigma} \equiv a_{\mu\lambda} a_{\nu\sigma} S_{\lambda\sigma}.$$

**Electromagnetic field strength tensor**

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \frac{\partial A_\nu}{\partial x_\mu} - \frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x_\nu} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & B_3 & -B_2 & -iE_1 \\ -B_3 & 0 & B_1 & -iE_2 \\ B_2 & -B_1 & 0 & -iE_3 \\ iE_1 & iE_2 & iE_3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Covariant formulation of Maxwell's equations**

$$\frac{\partial F_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x_\nu} = \frac{4\pi}{c} J_\mu; \quad \frac{\partial F_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x_\lambda} + \frac{\partial F_{\nu\lambda}}{\partial x_\mu} + \frac{\partial F_{\lambda\mu}}{\partial x_\nu} = 0,$$

where  $\lambda, \mu$  and  $\nu$  are any three of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4.

**Lorentz force**

$$\mathbf{f} = \rho \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} (\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{B}).$$

$$f_\mu = \frac{1}{c} F_{\mu\nu} J_\nu = \frac{1}{4\pi} F_{\mu\nu} \frac{\partial F_{\nu\lambda}}{\partial x_\lambda} = \frac{\partial T_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x_\nu} = \left( \mathbf{f}, \frac{i}{c} \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{J} \right),$$

where  $T_{\mu\nu}$  is the electromagnetic stress-energy-momentum tensor:

$$T_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{4\pi} \left[ F_{\mu\lambda} F_{\lambda\nu} + \frac{1}{4} \delta_{\mu\nu} F_{\lambda\sigma} F_{\lambda\sigma} \right].$$

## Cosmology

---

**Robertson-Walker line element** (homogeneous and isotropic universe)

The Minkowski space-time interval of special relativity is a valid metric for a homogeneous, isotropic space of constant curvature:

$$ds^2 = c^2 dt^2 - R(t) du^2$$

The spatial part of the metric is non-Euclidean with the form in polar coordinates:

$$du^2 = \frac{dr^2}{1 - kr^2} + r^2 d\theta^2 + r^2 \sin^2 \theta d\phi^2,$$

where

$R(t)$  = cosmic scale factor

$r, \theta, \phi$  = co-moving spherical coordinates (a co-moving observer is an observer at rest with respect to matter in his vicinity),

$k$  = curvature index =  $0, \pm 1$  ( $k = 1$ , elliptical closed space;  $k = 0$ , Euclidean flat space;  $k = -1$ , hyperbolic open space).

$r$  is a co-moving coordinate “distance”. It is not the distance measured by an astronomer.  $R$  is constant in time for any given galaxy.

The interval distance, the distance that can be measured by an astronomer is

$$d = R(t)u = R(t) \int_0^r \frac{dr}{\sqrt{1 - kr^2}}.$$

This integrates to

$$d = R(t) \sin^{-1} r \quad \text{for } k = 1$$

$$d = R(t)r \quad \text{for } k = 0$$

$$d = R(t) \sinh^{-1} r \quad \text{for } k = -1.$$

The volume enclosed within  $r$  is

$$\begin{aligned} V(r) &= R^3 \int_0^r \frac{r^2 dr}{\sqrt{1 - kr^2}} \int_0^\pi \sin \theta d\theta \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \\ &= 4\pi R^3 \int_0^r \frac{r^2 dr}{\sqrt{1 - kr^2}} \\ &= 2\pi(Rr)^3 \left[ \frac{\sin^{-1} r}{r^3} - \frac{\sqrt{1 - r^2}}{r^2} \right], \text{ for } k = 1. \end{aligned}$$

and

$$V(\infty) = 2\pi^2 R^3$$

### Einstein field equations

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{3\dot{R}^2}{R^2} + \frac{3kc^2}{R^2} &= 8\pi G\rho + \Lambda c^2, \\ \frac{2\ddot{R}}{R} + \frac{\dot{R}^2}{R^2} + \frac{kc^2}{R^2} &= -\frac{8\pi GP}{c^2} + \Lambda c^2, \\ \frac{\ddot{R}}{R} &= \frac{\Lambda c^2}{3} - \frac{4\pi G}{3} \left[ \rho + \frac{3P}{c^2} \right],\end{aligned}$$

where

$\rho$  = mean density of matter and energy,

$\Lambda$  = cosmological constant,

$P$  = hydrodynamic pressure of matter and radiation,

$G$  = gravitational constant, and

$H_0 \equiv \dot{R}_0/R_0$ , Hubble constant,

$q_0 \equiv -\ddot{R}_0/R_0 H_0^2$ , deceleration constant, where the subscript zero denotes the present value.

### Friedmann universes ( $\Lambda, P = 0$ )

We obtain from the above

$$\rho_0 = 3H_0^2 q_0 / 4\pi G$$

$$kc^2/R_0^2 = H_0^2(2q_0 - 1) = (4\pi G\rho_0/3q_0)(2q_0 - 1)$$

Curvature	Space	$q_0$	$\Omega_0^{(a)}$	Density $\rho_0$	Expansion
$k = +1$	Closed	$> 1/2$	$> 1$	$> \frac{3H_0^2}{8\pi G}$	Turns eventually into contraction
$k = 0$	Flat (Euclidean)	$1/2$	$1$	$\rho_c = \frac{3H_0^2}{8\pi G}^{(b)}$	Stops in infinite future
$k = -1$	Open	$0 \leq q_0 < 1/2$	$0 \leq \Omega_0 < 1$	$< \frac{3H_0^2}{8\pi G}$	Forever

(a) The 'density parameter'  $\Omega \equiv \rho/\rho_c$ , where  $\rho_c$  is the critical closure density (i.e., for the case  $q_0 = 1/2$ ).

(b) With  $H_0 = 50 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ , the present critical density becomes  $\rho_c = 4.7 \times 10^{-30} \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ .

The relation between the co-moving coordinate  $r$  and  $z$  (light source redshift),  $H_0$ , and  $q_0$  is given by the solution of

$$\frac{\dot{R}^2}{R^2} + \frac{2\ddot{R}}{R} = -\frac{kc^2}{R^2}$$

Using the Lemaitre equation relating the scale factor to the redshift

$$1 + z = R_0/R_1$$

where  $R_1$  is the scale factor when light left the source with redshift  $z$  and  $R_0$  is the scale factor at the time of light detection (now), the Mattig equation can be derived (see Sandage, A.R. in the *The Deep Universe*, Binggeli, B. and Buser, R., ed., Springer-Verlag, 1995.):

$$R_0 r = \frac{c}{H_0 q_0^2 (1+z)} \left\{ q_0 z + (q_0 - 1) \left[ -1 + \sqrt{1 + 2q_0 z} \right] \right\}$$

*Useful relationship and quantities (Friedmann universe)*

Differential volume:

$$dV = \frac{R_H^3}{(1+z)^3} \frac{\{q_0 z + (q_0 - 1)[(1 + 2q_0 z)^{1/2} - 1]\}^2}{q_0^4 (1 + 2q_0 z)^{1/2}} d\Omega dz,$$

where

$$R_H = \frac{c}{H_0}, \text{ the Hubble radius.}$$

Time differential:

$$dt = -dz / [(1+z)^2 H_0 (1+2q_0 z)^{1/2}].$$

Look-back time:

$$\tau = - \int_0^z dt.$$

$$q_0 = 0,$$

$$\tau = \frac{1}{H_0} (1 - 1/(1+z)); \quad \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} \tau = 1/H_0,$$

$$q_0 = 1/2,$$

$$\tau = \frac{2}{3H_0} (1 - 1/(1+z)^{3/2}); \quad \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} \tau = 2/3(1/H_0),$$

$$q_0 = 1,$$

$$\tau = \frac{1}{H_0} [(2z+1)^{1/2}/(z+1) + 2 \tan^{-1}(2z+1)^{1/2} - 1 - \pi/2];$$

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} \tau = 0.57(1/H_0),$$

*Redshift-magnitude relationship* (Friedmann universe):

$$m_{\text{bol}} = 5 \log \left\{ \frac{c}{H_0 q_0^2} [1 - q_0 + q_0 z + (q_0 - 1)(2q_0 z + 1)^{1/2}] \right\} + M_{\text{bol}} + 25 = 5 \log D_L + M_{\text{bol}} + 25.$$

where  $m_{\text{bol}}$  is the apparent bolometric magnitude of a source with absolute bolometric magnitude  $M_{\text{bol}}$  and redshift  $z$ .

Expanded in powers of  $z$ :

$$m_{\text{bol}} = 5 \log \left( \frac{zc}{H_0} \right) + 1.086(1 - q_0)z + \dots + M_{\text{bol}} + 25,$$

where  $H_0$  is in  $\text{km s}^{-1} \text{Mpc}^{-1}$ ;  $zc$  is in  $\text{km s}^{-1}$ , and  $z$  is the observed redshift.

$$\begin{aligned} D_L &= \frac{c}{H_0 q_0^2} [1 - q_0 + q_0 z + (q_0 - 1)(2q_0 z + 1)^{1/2}] \\ &\approx \frac{cz}{H_0} [1 + 0.5z(1 - q_0)], \quad q_0 z \ll 1. \end{aligned}$$

$m_{\text{bol}} - M_{\text{bol}} = m - M - K - A$ ,  $m - M$  = observed distance modulus, for heterochromatic magnitudes, where  $K$  = redshift correction,  $A$  = interstellar absorption.

$$K = 2.5 \log(1 + z) + 2.5 \log \frac{\int_0^\infty I(\lambda) S(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_0^\infty I\left(\frac{\lambda}{1+z}\right) S(\lambda) d\lambda} [\text{mag}],$$

where  $I(\lambda)$  is the incident energy flux per unit wavelength and  $S(\lambda)$  is the photometer response function.

*Angular diameter-redshift relationship* (Friedmann universe)

$$\theta = \frac{l(1+z)^2}{D_L},$$

where

$\theta$  = apparent angular diameter of source,

$l$  = linear diameter of spherical source,

$D_L$  = luminosity distance.

*Observed energy flux density* (Friedmann universe)

$$S_0(E_0) = \frac{P_e((1+z)E_0)}{4\pi D_L^2},$$

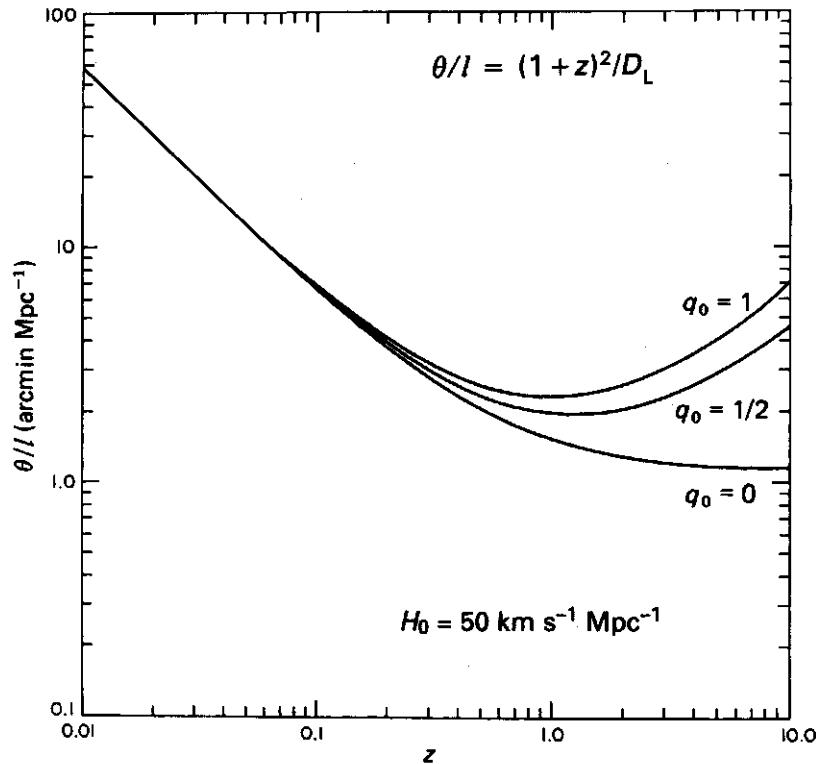
where  $P_e$  is the monochromatic power emitted at the energy  $(1+z)E_0$ , and  $S_0$  is the observed monochromatic energy flux density at the energy  $E_0$ . The observed energy flux density integrated from  $E_1$  to  $E_2$  is:

$$F_0(E_1, E_2) = \frac{1}{4\pi D_L^2} \int_{(1+z)E_1}^{(1+z)E_2} p_e(E) dE,$$

where  $p_e(E)$  is the differential power emitted per unit energy in the emitted rest frame.

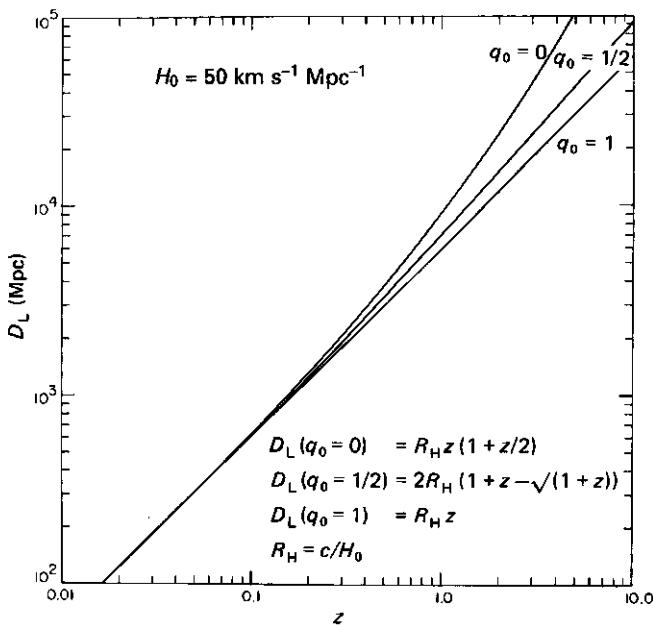
### *Redshift functions*

Angular size vs. redshift

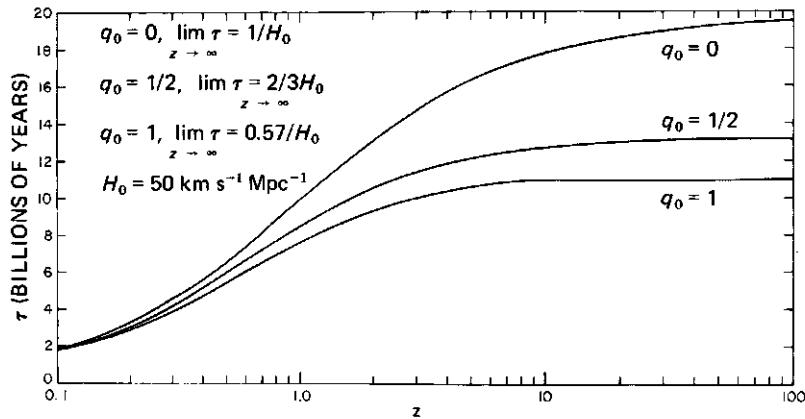


## Redshift functions (cont.)

Luminosity distance vs. redshift

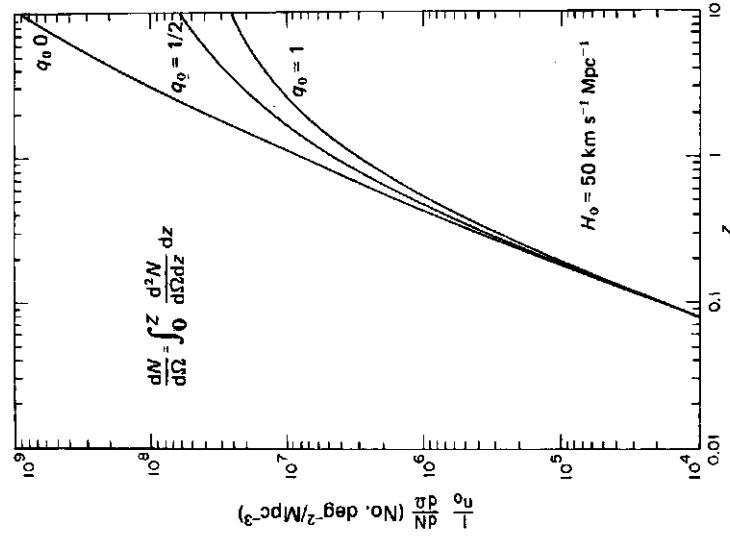
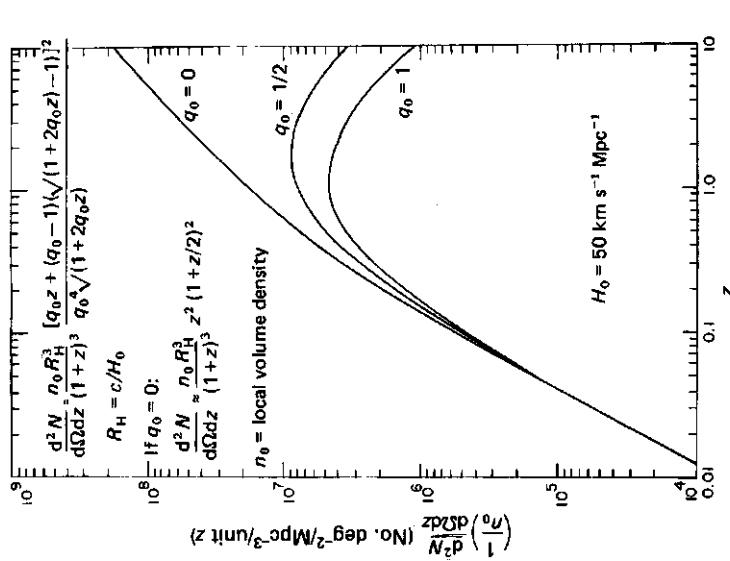


## Look-back time



*Redshift functions (cont.)*  
*Angular density of sources per unit  $z$  vs. redshift*

Integrated angular density vs. redshift:



### **Other world models ( $\Lambda \neq 0, P = 0$ )**

This section is based upon Carroll, S.M., Press, W.H., and Turner, E.L., *The Cosmological Constant*, Annu. Rev. Astron. Astrophys., 1992.

The first of Einstein's field equations (see the beginning of this section) provides a definition of the Hubble constant  $H$  (the present value is designated as  $H_0$ ):

$$H^2 \equiv \left( \frac{\dot{R}}{R} \right)^2 = \frac{8\pi G}{3} \rho_M + \frac{\Lambda c^2}{3} - \frac{kc^2}{R^2}$$

where

$R(t)$  = cosmic scale factor

$G$  = gravitational constant

$\rho_M$  = mass density of matter and energy

$\Lambda$  = cosmological constant

$k$  = curvature index = 0,  $\pm 1$  ( $k=1$ , elliptical closed space;  $k=0$ , Euclidean flat space;  $k=-1$ , hyperbolic open space).

The fractional contributions to the universal expansion at the present epoch can be defined as:

$$\Omega_M \equiv \frac{8\pi G}{3H_0^2} \rho_{M0}, \quad \Omega_\Lambda \equiv \frac{\Lambda c^2}{3H_0^2}, \quad \Omega_k \equiv -\frac{kc^2}{R_0^2 H_0^2},$$

$$\Omega_M + \Omega_\Lambda + \Omega_k = 1.$$

Defining an  $\Omega_{\text{tot}}$

$$\Omega_{\text{tot}} \equiv \Omega_M + \Omega_\Lambda = 1 - \Omega_k$$

A deceleration parameter can be specified from the third of Einstein's field equations:

$$q_0 = \frac{-\ddot{R}_0}{R_0 H_0^2} = \frac{1}{2} \Omega_M - \Omega_\Lambda.$$

$H_0$  is often written as:

$$H_0 = 100 \text{ h km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$$

where  $h$  is a dimensionless constant between 0.5 and 1.0.

The Hubble time is defined by:

$$1/H_0 = 9.78 \times 10^9 / \text{h yr}$$

The Hubble distance is defined by:

$$R_H = c/H_0 = 3025/\text{h Mpc}$$

Note: The term dark energy is often used interchangeably for  $\Lambda$ . Alternatively, dark energy might arise from the particle-like excitations in a dynamical field, referred to as “quintessence”. Quintessence differs from the cosmological constant in that it can vary in space and time.

See *The Cosmological Constant and Dark Energy*, Peebles, P.J.E. and Ratra, B., Rev. Mod. Phys., 75, 559, 2003 and Padmanabhan, T., e-print, arXiv:hep-th/0212290 v2, 26, Feb 2003 for extensive (and intensive) treatments of  $\Lambda$ .

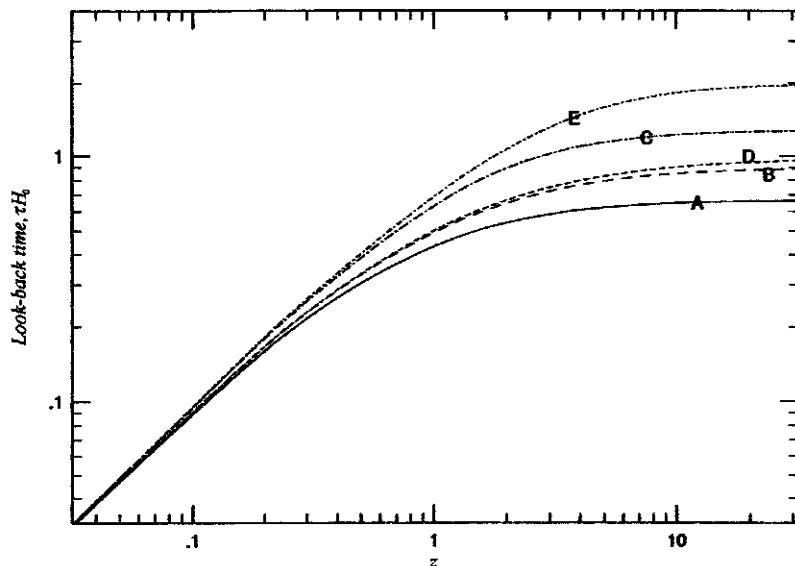
### *Useful relationships*

Look-back time:

$$\tau = H_0^{-1} \int_0^z (1+z)^{-1} [(1+z)^2(1+\Omega_M z) - z(2+z)\Omega_\Lambda]^{-1/2} dz.$$

Look-back time (in units of the Hubble time) for five cosmological models.

Model	$\Omega_{\text{tot}}$	$\Omega_M$	$\Omega_\Lambda$
A	1	1	0
B	0.1	0.1	0
C	1	0.1	0.9
D	0.01	0.01	0
E	1	0.01	0.99



*Distance*

angular diameter distance:

$$d_A = D/\theta$$

where  $D$  is the proper size of the object and  $\theta$  is its apparent angular size.

proper motion distance:

$$d_M = u/\dot{\theta}$$

where  $u$  is the object's transverse proper velocity and  $\dot{\theta}$  is an apparent angular motion.

luminosity distance:

$$d_L = (L/4\pi\Phi)^{1/2}$$

where  $L$  is the rest-frame luminosity of the object and  $\Phi$  is its apparent flux density.

$d_M$  is given by

$$\frac{d_M}{R_H} = \frac{1}{|\Omega_k|^{1/2}} \sinh \left\{ |\Omega_k|^{1/2} \int_0^z [(1+z)^2(1+\Omega_M z) - z(2+z)\Omega_\Lambda]^{-1/2} dz \right\}$$

where  $\sinh(x) = \sinh(x)$  for  $\Omega_k > 0$ .

$\sinh(x) = \sin(x)$  for  $\Omega_k < 0$ .

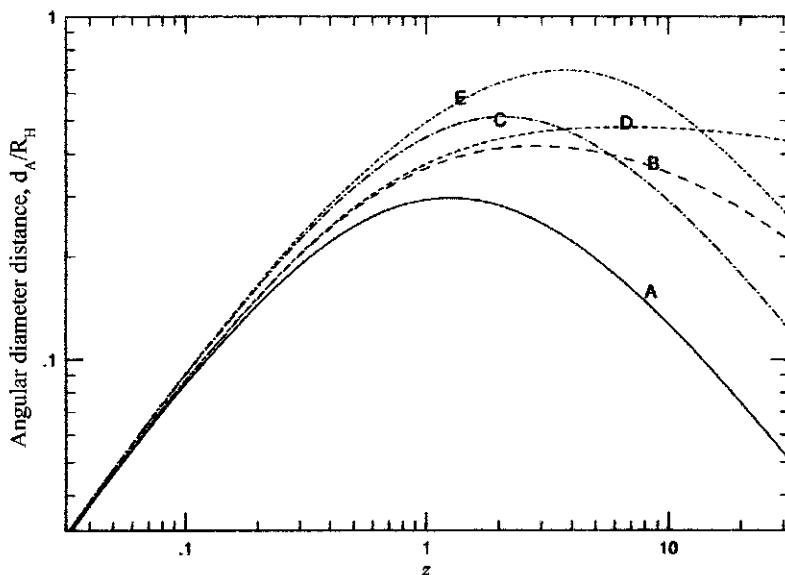
For  $\Omega_k = 0$ , only the integral is evaluated.

The three distances are related by:

$$d_L = (1+z)^2 d_A = (1+z) d_M$$

The angular diameter distance (in units of the Hubble distance) for five cosmological models.

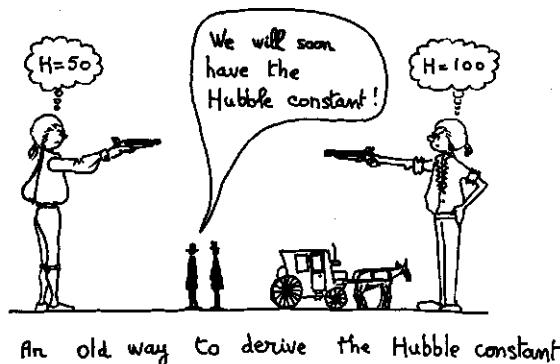
Model	$\Omega_{\text{tot}}$	$\Omega_M$	$\Omega_\Lambda$
A	1	1	0
B	0.1	0.1	0
C	1	0.1	0.9
D	0.01	0.01	0
E	1	0.01	0.99



***Measurements of the Hubble constant  $H_0$*** 

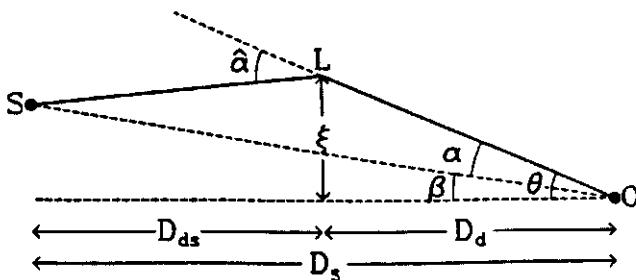
$H_0$ in km s <sup>-1</sup> Mpc <sup>-1</sup>	Reference
100	Baade, W. and Swope, H.H., Astron. J., <b>60</b> , 151, 1955
50	Sandage, A., in <i>Nuclei of Galaxies</i> , North Holland, 1971
$57 \pm 3$	Sandage, A. and Tammann, G.A., Ap. J., <b>196</b> , 313, 1975
$100 \pm 10$	De Vaucouleurs, G. and Bollinger, G., Ap. J., <b>233</b> , 433, 1979
$95 \pm 4$	Aaronson, M., <i>et al.</i> , Ap. J., <b>239</b> , 12, 1980
$95 \pm 1$	De Vaucouleurs, G., Nature, <b>299</b> , 303, 1982
$50 \pm 7$	Sandage, A. and Tammann, G.A., Nature, <b>307</b> , 326, 1984
$85 \pm 10$	Pierce, M.J. and Tully, R.B., Ap. J., <b>330</b> , 579, 1988
$57 \pm 1$	Kraan-Kortweg, <i>et al.</i> , Ap. J., <b>331</b> , 620, 1988
$67 \pm 8$	Van den Bergh, S., Astron. Ap. Rev., <b>1</b> , 111, 1989
$87 \pm 10$	Tully, R.B., <i>Astrophys. Ages and dating methods</i> , Editiones Frontieres, 1990
$76 \pm 9$	Van den Bergh, S., P.A.S.P., <b>104</b> , 861, 1992
$47 \pm 7$	Sandage, A. and Tammann, G.A., Ap. J., <b>415</b> , 1, 1993
$86 \pm 1$	De Vaucouleurs, G., Ap. J., <b>415</b> , 10, 1993
$90 \pm 10$	Tully, R.B., Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., <b>90</b> , 4806, 1993
$87 \pm 7$	Pierce, M.J., <i>et al.</i> , Nature, <b>371</b> , 385, 1994
$69 \pm 8$	Tanvir, N.R., <i>et al.</i> , Nature, <b>377</b> , 27, 1995
$55 \pm 7$	Sandage, A. and Tammann, G.A., Ap. J., <b>446</b> , 1, 1995
$67 \pm 7$	Riess, A.G., Press, W.H., and Kirshner, R.P., Ap. J. (L), <b>438</b> , L17, 1995
$58 \pm 4$	Sandage, A. <i>et al.</i> , Ap. J. (L), <b>460</b> , L15, 1996
$70 \pm 7$	Freedman, W., American Astronomical Society Meeting 194, #39.0, 1999
$64 + 8 - 6$	Jha, S., Ap. J. Supp., <b>125</b> , 73, 1999

(List to 1996 taken from Lang, K.R., *Astrophysical Formulae*, v. II, Springer-Verlag, 1999.)



(Courtesy of G. Paturel, Observatoire de Lyon)

### Gravitational lensing (point-mass or Schwarzschild lens)



Basic ray geometry of gravitational lensing. A light ray from a *source*  $S$  at redshift  $z_s$ , is incident on a *deflector* or *lens*  $L$  at redshift  $z_d$  with impact parameter  $\xi$  relative to some fiducial lens “center.” Assuming the lens is thin compared to the total path length, its influence can be described by a deflection angle  $\hat{\alpha}(\xi)$  (a two-vector) suffered by the ray on crossing the “lens plane.” The deflected ray reaches the observer  $O$ , who sees the image of the source apparently at position  $\theta$  on the sky. The true direction of the source, i.e., its position on the sky in the absence of the lens, is indicated by  $\beta$ . Also shown are the angular diameter distances  $D_d$ ,  $D_s$ ,  $D_{ds}$ , separating the source, deflector, and observer. (Blandford, R.D. and Narayan, R., Annu. Rev. Astron. Astrophys. **30**, 311, 1992, with permission.)

The deflection angle for impact parameter  $\xi$  relative to a point mass  $M$  is given by  $\hat{\alpha}(\xi) = 4GM\xi/c^2\xi^2$ . A source on the optic axis will form an *Einstein ring* of angular radius

$$\theta_E = \left( \frac{4GM}{c^2 D} \right)^{1/2} = 3 \left( \frac{M}{M_\odot} \right)^{1/2} \left( \frac{D}{1\text{Gpc}} \right)^{-1/2} \mu\text{arcsec}, \quad D \equiv \frac{D_d D_s}{D_{ds}},$$

For comprehensive treatments of gravitational lensing see R.D. Blandford and R. Narayan (*op. cit.*) or P. Schneider, J. Ehlers, and E.E. Falco, *Gravitational Lenses*, Springer-Verlag, 1992.

***Gravitationally lensed systems (mid 1994)***

Name	$\theta_{\max}$	Images	$z_{\text{source}}$	$z_{\text{lens}}$	O/R
B0957 + 561	6''.1	2	1.41	0.36	R(adio)
MGB2016 + 112	3''.8	3	3.27	1.01	R
B1115 + 080	2''.3	4	1.72	0.29	O(ptical)
B0142 - 100	2''.2	2	2.72	0.49	O
MG0414 + 0534	2''.1	4	2.63		R
MG1131 + 0456	2''.1	Ring			R
MG1654 + 1346	2''.0	Ring	1.75	0.25	R
B2237 + 031	1''.8	4	1.69	0.039	O
MG1549 + 304	1''.7	Ring		0.111	R
B1413 + 117	1''.4	4	2.55		O
B1422 + 231	1''.3	4	3.62	0.64	R
0751 + 271	1''	4			R
PKS1830 - 211	0''.98	Ring			R
B1938 + 666	0''.92	4			R
B0218 + 356	0''.33	Ring		0.685	R

(From *An Introduction to Radio Astronomy*, Burke, B.F. & Graham-Smith, Cambridge University Press, 1997.)

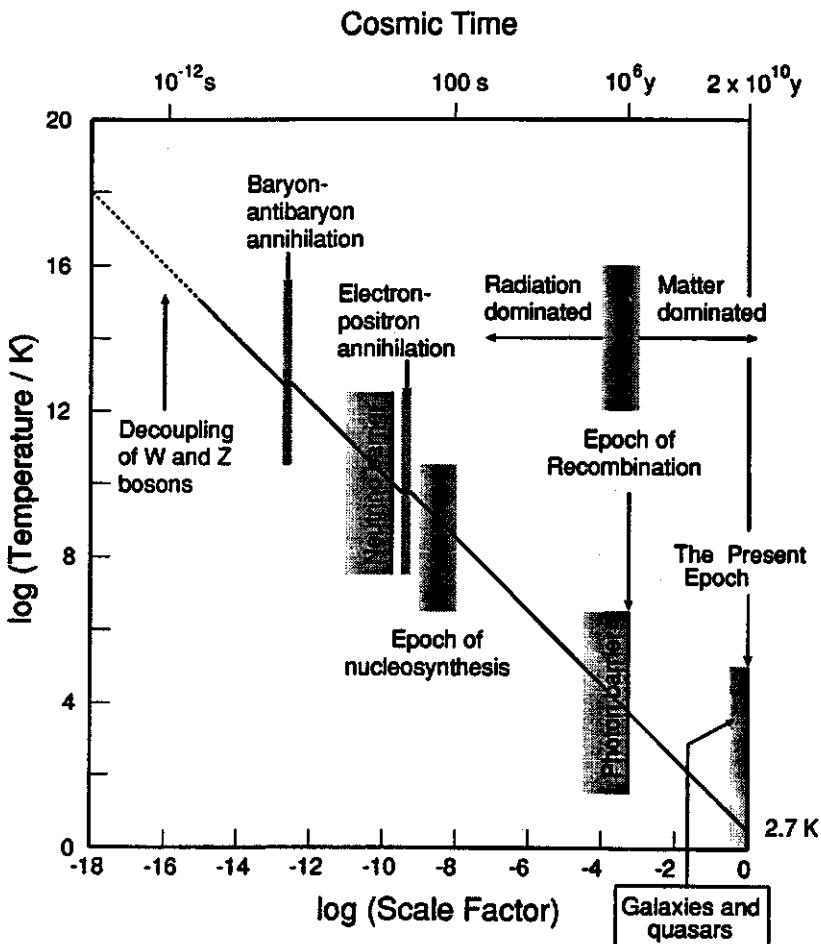
***The Sunyaev-Zeldovich Effect***

Cosmic microwave background photons are scattered via the inverse Compton effect by the energetic electrons of the gas in a galactic cluster. The microwave spectrum is distorted in the direction of the cluster with the low energy side suffering a decrement in intensity and the high energy side an increment in intensity. The magnitude of the distortion is given by the following line-of-sight integral:

$$\Delta T_{SZ}/T = (2kT_e\sigma_T/m_ec^2) \int n_e dl$$
, where  $T$  is the microwave radiation temperature,  $T_e$  is the electron temperature (obtained from X-ray observations),  $n_e$  is the electron density,  $\sigma_T$  is the Thompson scattering cross-section, and the other symbols have their usual meaning. The expected magnitude of the distortion is on the order of a millikelvin. X-ray surface brightness measurements of the cluster can be used to determine the electron density in terms of the Hubble constant and the Hubble constant can then be obtained from the equation above.

### *Thermal history of the standard Hot Big Bang*

The radiation temperature decreases as  $T_r \propto R^{-1}$  except for abrupt jumps as different particle-antiparticle pairs annihilate at  $kT \approx mc^2$ . Various important epochs in the standard model are indicated. An approximate time scale is indicated along the top of the diagram. The neutrino and photon barriers are indicated. In the standard model, the Universe is optically thick to neutrinos and photons prior to these epochs.



(Longair, M.S., in *The Deep Universe*, Sandage, A.R., Kron, R.G., Longair, M.S., Springer-Verlag, 1995, with permission.)

**Cosmological parameters**

Quantity	Value	Conf. Level	Ref.
$H_0$	$70 \pm 5$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\Omega_B h^2$	$0.02 \pm 0.004$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\Omega_B$ (baryons)	$0.045 \pm 0.015$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\Omega_M$ (matter)	$0.3 \pm 0.05$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\Omega_\Lambda$ (cosmol. const.)	$0.7 \pm 0.1$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\Omega_{tot} = \Omega_M + \Omega_\Lambda$	$1.03 \pm 0.1$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$t_0$	$11.2 \leq t_0 \leq 20$ Gyr	$2\sigma$	[1]
$\omega$	$\leq -0.7$	$2\sigma$	[1]
$T_0$	$2.728 \pm 0.002$	$2\sigma$	[2]
$\Delta T/T$	$\leq 3 \times 10^{-5}$ on most scales		
Primordial ${}^4\text{He}$	$0.221 \leq Y \leq 0.243$	$2\sigma$	[3]
Primordial D/H	$3.3 \pm 0.5 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$2\sigma$	[4]
Primordial ${}^7\text{Li}$	$0.7 \times 10^{-10} \leq {}^7\text{Li}/\text{H} \leq 3.5 \times 10^{-10}$	$2\sigma$	[3]
Largest Structures	approx. $150 h^{-1}$ Mpc		[2]

$h = H_0/100$ , a dimensionless constant.

$t_0$ , the age of the Universe based upon stellar models.

$\omega = P/\rho$ , where  $P$  is the hydrodynamic pressure of matter and radiation and  $\rho$  is the mean density of matter and energy.

[1] Krauss, L.M., *The State of the Universe: Cosmological Parameters 2002*, Proceedings, ESO-CERN-ESA Symposium on Astronomy, Cosmology and Fundamental Physics, March 2002.

[2] *Cosmology*, Scott, D., Silk, J., Kolb, E.W., and Turner, M.S., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.

[3] Copi, C.J., Schramm, D.N., and Turner, M.S., *Science*, **267**, 192, 1995.

[4] Burles, S. and Tytler, D., *Ap. J.*, **499**, 699, 1998.

See <http://pdg.lbl.gov/> for current values.

## Bibliography

- Astrophysical Formulae*, Lang, K.R., Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- Cosmology*, Scott, D., Silk, J., Kolb, E.W., and Turner, M.S., in *Allen's Astrophysical Quantities*, Cox, A.N., ed., Springer-Verlag, 2000.
- The Deep Universe*, Sandage, A.R., Kron, R.G., Longair, M.S., lecturers, Binggeli, B. and Buser, R., ed., Springer-Verlag, 1995.
- Encyclopedia of Cosmology*, Hetherington, N.S., ed. Garland Publishing Co., 1993.
- General Relativity and Cosmology*, 2nd ed., McVittie, G.C., University of Illinois Press, 1965.
- Gravitation and Cosmology*, Weinberg, S., John Wiley and Sons, 1971.
- Principles of Physical Cosmology*, Peebles, P.J.E., Princeton University Press, 1993.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 11

---

## Atomic physics

*We can say that the Universe consists of a substance, and this substance we call “atoms” or else we call it “monads”. Democritus called it atoms. Leibniz called it monads. Fortunately, the two never met or there would have been a very dull argument.* - Woody Allen

Electronic structure of the elements	368
Ionization energies of neutral atoms	371
Atomic radiation	371
<i>Spectroscopic terminology</i>	371
<i>Emission and absorption of radiation</i>	372
<i>Local thermodynamic equilibrium</i>	372
Electron-ion recombination	373
Selection rules	374
X-ray atomic energy levels	375
X-ray energy level diagram	379
X-ray wavelengths	380
<i>Wavelengths of K series lines</i>	381
<i>Wavelengths of prominent L group lines</i>	382
Main bound-bound electromagnetic transitions	384
Bibliography	384

## Electronic structure of the elements

		Element	Electron configuration ( $3d^5$ = five $3d$ electrons, etc.)	Ground state $2S+1L_J$	Ionization energy (eV)
1	H	Hydrogen	$1s$	$^2S_{1/2}$	13.5984
2	He	Helium	$1s^2$	$^1S_0$	24.5874
3	Li	Lithium	$(\text{He})2s$	$^2S_{1/2}$	5.3917
4	Be	Beryllium	$(\text{He})2s^2$	$^1S_0$	9.3227
5	B	Boron	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p$	$^2P_{1/2}$	8.2980
6	C	Carbon	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p^2$	$^3P_0$	11.2603
7	N	Nitrogen	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p^3$	$^4S_{3/2}$	14.5341
8	O	Oxygen	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p^4$	$^3P_2$	13.6181
9	F	Fluorine	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p^5$	$^2P_{3/2}$	17.4228
10	Ne	Neon	$(\text{He})2s^2 2p^6$	$^1S_0$	21.5646
11	Na	Sodium	$(\text{Ne})3s$	$^2S_{1/2}$	5.1391
12	Mg	Magnesium	$(\text{Ne})3s^2$	$^1S_0$	7.6462
13	Al	Aluminum	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p$	$^2P_{1/2}$	5.9858
14	Si	Silicon	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p^2$	$^3P_0$	8.1517
15	P	Phosphorus	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p^3$	$^4S_{3/2}$	10.4867
16	S	Sulfur	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p^4$	$^3P_2$	10.3600
17	Cl	Chlorine	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p^5$	$^2P_{3/2}$	12.9676
18	Ar	Argon	$(\text{Ne})3s^2 3p^6$	$^1S_0$	15.7596
19	K	Potassium	$(\text{Ar}) 4s$	$^2S_{1/2}$	4.3407
20	Ca	Calcium	$(\text{Ar}) 4s^2$	$^1S_0$	6.1132
21	Sc	Scandium	$(\text{Ar})3d 4s^2$	$^2D_{3/2}$	6.5615
22	Ti	Titanium	$(\text{Ar})3d^2 4s^2$	$^3F_2$	6.8281
23	V	Vanadium	$(\text{Ar})3d^3 4s^2$	$^4F_{3/2}$	6.7463
24	Cr	Chromium	$(\text{Ar})3d^5 4s$	$^7S_3$	6.7665
25	Mn	Manganese	$(\text{Ar})3d^5 4s^2$	$^6S_{5/2}$	7.4340
26	Fe	Iron	$(\text{Ar})3d^6 4s^2$	$^5D_4$	7.9024
27	Co	Cobalt	$(\text{Ar})3d^7 4s^2$	$^4F_{9/2}$	7.8810
28	Ni	Nickel	$(\text{Ar})3d^8 4s^2$	$^3F_4$	7.6398
29	Cu	Copper	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s$	$^2S_{1/2}$	7.7264
30	Zn	Zinc	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2$	$^1S_0$	9.3942
31	Ga	Gallium	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p$	$^2P_{1/2}$	5.9993
32	Ge	Germanium	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^2$	$^3P_0$	7.8994
33	As	Arsenic	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^3$	$^4S_{3/2}$	9.7886
34	Se	Selenium	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^4$	$^3P_2$	9.7524
35	Br	Bromine	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^5$	$^2P_{3/2}$	11.8138
36	Kr	Krypton	$(\text{Ar})3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^6$	$^1S_0$	13.9996

Electronic structure of the elements (*cont.*)

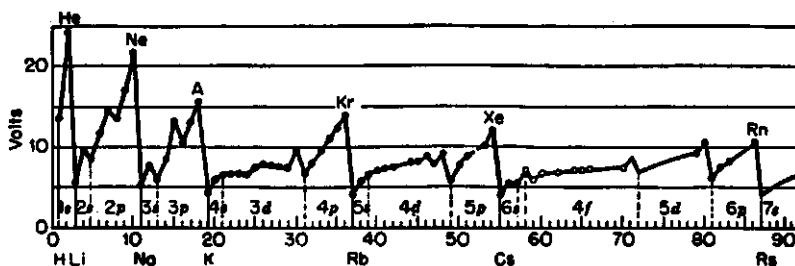
37	Rb	Rubidium	(Kr)	5s	$^2S_{1/2}$	4.1771
38	Sr	Strontium	(Kr)	5s <sup>2</sup>	$^1S_0$	5.6949
39	Y	Yttrium	(Kr)4d	5s <sup>2</sup>	$^2D_{3/2}$	6.2171
40	Zr	Zirconium	(Kr)4d <sup>2</sup>	5s <sup>2</sup>	$^3F_2$	6.6339
41	Nb	Niobium	(Kr)4d <sup>4</sup>	5s	$^6D_{1/2}$	6.7589
42	Mo	Molybdenum	(Kr)4d <sup>5</sup>	5s	$^7S_3$	7.0924
43	Tc	Technetium	(Kr)4d <sup>5</sup>	5s <sup>2</sup>	$^6S_{5/2}$	7.28
44	Ru	Ruthenium	(Kr)4d <sup>7</sup>	5s	$^5F_5$	7.3605
45	Rh	Rhodium	(Kr)4d <sup>8</sup>	5s	$^4F_{9/2}$	7.4589
46	Pd	Palladium	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup>		$^1S_0$	8.3369
47	Ag	Silver	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s		$^2S_{1/2}$	7.5763
48	Cd	Cadmium	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup>		$^1S_0$	8.9938
49	In	Indium	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p		$^2P_{1/2}$	5.7864
50	Sn	Tin	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p <sup>2</sup>		$^3P_0$	7.3439
51	Sb	Antimony	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p <sup>3</sup>		$^4S_{3/2}$	8.6084
52	Te	Tellurium	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p <sup>4</sup>		$^3P_2$	9.0096
53	I	Iodine	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p <sup>5</sup>		$^2P_{3/2}$	10.4513
54	Xe	Xenon	(Kr)4d <sup>10</sup> 5s <sup>2</sup> 5p <sup>6</sup>		$^1S_0$	12.1298
55	Cs	Cesium	(Xe)	6s	$^2S_{1/2}$	3.8939
56	Ba	Barium	(Xe)	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^1S_0$	5.2117
57	La	Lanthanum	(Xe)	5d 6s <sup>2</sup>	$^2D_{3/2}$	5.5770
58	Ce	Cerium	(Xe)4f	5d 6s <sup>2</sup>	$^1G_4$	5.5387
59	Pr	Praseodymium	(Xe)4f <sup>3</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^4I_{9/2}$	5.464
60	Nd	Neodymium	(Xe)4f <sup>4</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^5I_4$	5.5250
61	Pm	Promethium	(Xe)4f <sup>5</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^6H_{5/2}$	5.58
62	Sm	Samarium	(Xe)4f <sup>6</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^7F_0$	5.6436
63	Eu	Europium	(Xe)4f <sup>7</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^8S_{7/2}$	5.6704
64	Gd	Gadolinium	(Xe)4f <sup>7</sup>	5d 6s <sup>2</sup>	$^9D_2$	6.1501
65	Tb	Terbium	(Xe)4f <sup>9</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^6H_{15/2}$	5.8638
66	Dy	Dysprosium	(Xe)4f <sup>10</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^5I_8$	5.9389
67	Ho	Holmium	(Xe)4f <sup>11</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^4I_{15/2}$	6.0215
68	Er	Erbium	(Xe)4f <sup>12</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^3H_6$	6.1077
69	Tm	Thulium	(Xe)4f <sup>13</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^2F_{7/2}$	6.1843
70	Yb	Ytterbium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^1S_0$	6.2542
71	Lu	Lutetium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^2D_{3/2}$	5.4259
72	Hf	Hafnium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>2</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^3F_2$	6.8251
73	Ta	Tantalum	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>3</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^4F_{3/2}$	7.5496
74	W	Tungsten	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>4</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^5D_0$	7.8640
75	Re	Rhenium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>5</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^6S_{5/2}$	7.8335
76	Os	Osmium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>6</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^5D_4$	8.4382
77	Ir	Iridium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>7</sup>	6s <sup>2</sup>	$^4F_{9/2}$	8.9670
78	Pt	Platinum	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>9</sup>	6s	$^3D_3$	8.9587

Electronic structure of the elements (*cont.*)

79	Au	Gold	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s	<sup>2</sup> S <sub>1/2</sub>	9.2255
80	Hg	Mercury	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> S <sub>0</sub>	10.4375
81	Tl	Thallium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p	<sup>2</sup> P <sub>1/2</sub>	6.1082
82	Pb	Lead	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p <sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup> P <sub>0</sub>	7.4167
83	Bi	Bismuth	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p <sup>3</sup>	<sup>4</sup> S <sub>3/2</sub>	7.2856
84	Po	Polonium	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p <sup>4</sup>	<sup>3</sup> P <sub>2</sub>	8.4167
85	At	Astatine	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p <sup>5</sup>	<sup>2</sup> P <sub>3/2</sub>	
86	Rn	Radon	(Xe)4f <sup>14</sup> 5d <sup>10</sup> 6s <sup>2</sup> 6p <sup>6</sup>	<sup>1</sup> S <sub>0</sub>	10.7485
87	Fr	Francium	(Rn)	<sup>7</sup> s	<sup>2</sup> S <sub>1/2</sub>
88	Ra	Radium	(Rn)	<sup>7</sup> s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> S <sub>0</sub>
89	Ac	Actinium	(Rn)	6d 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup> D <sub>3/2</sub>
90	Th	Thorium	(Rn)	6d <sup>2</sup> 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup> F <sub>2</sub>
91	Pa	Protactinium	(Rn)5f <sup>2</sup>	6d 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>4</sup> K <sub>11/2</sub>
92	U	Uranium	(Rn)5f <sup>3</sup>	6d 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>5</sup> L <sub>6</sub>
93	Np	Neptunium	(Rn)5f <sup>4</sup>	6d 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>6</sup> L <sub>11/2</sub>
94	Pu	Plutonium	(Rn)5f <sup>6</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>7</sup> F <sub>0</sub>
95	Am	Americium	(Rn)5f <sup>7</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>8</sup> S <sub>7/2</sub>
96	Cm	Curium	(Rn)5f <sup>7</sup>	6d 7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>9</sup> D <sub>2</sub>
97	Bk	Berklium	(Rn)5f <sup>9</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>6</sup> H <sub>15/2</sub>
98	Cf	Californium	(Rn)5f <sup>10</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>5</sup> I <sub>8</sub>
99	Es	Einsteinium	(Rn)5f <sup>11</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>4</sup> I <sub>15/2</sub>
100	Fm	Fermium	(Rn)5f <sup>12</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup> H <sub>6</sub>
101	Md	Mendelevium	(Rn)5f <sup>13</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup> F <sub>7/2</sub>
102	No	Nobelium	(Rn)5f <sup>14</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> S <sub>0</sub>
103	Lr	Lawrencium	(Rn)5f <sup>14</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup> 7p?	<sup>2</sup> P <sub>1/2</sub> ?
104	Rf	Rutherfordium	(Rn)5f <sup>14</sup> 6d <sup>2</sup>	7s <sup>2</sup> ?	<sup>3</sup> F <sub>2</sub> ?
					6.0?

(From Martin, W.C. and Wiese, W.L. in *Atomic, Molecular, & Optical Physics Handbook*, Drake, G.W.F., ed., American Institute of Physics, 1996, with permission.)

## Ionization energies of neutral atoms



## Atomic radiation

### *Spectroscopic terminology*

Orbital angular momentum $L$ or $l$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$L$	$S$	$P$	$D$	$F$	$G$	$H$	$I$	$K$	$L$
$l$	$s$	$p$	$d$	$f$	$g$	$h$	$i$	$k$	$l$

$L = \sum l$  (individual electrons), orbital angular momentum,

$S = \sum s$  (individual electrons), spin angular momentum,

$J = L + S$  ( $LS$  coupling), total angular momentum,

$J = \sum j$ ;  $j = l + s$  ( $jj$  coupling),

$M$  = magnetic quantum number; components of  $J$  in magnetic field.

n(total quantum number)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Shell	$K$	$L$	$M$	$N$	$O$	$P$	$Q$

The quantities  $n, l, S, L, J, M$  define a Zeeman state.

The quantities  $n, l, S, L, J$  define a level which includes  $2J + 1$  states, e.g., the atomic level  $2p^3\ 4S_{3/2}^0$ .

Interpretation:

- 2: outer electrons,  $n = 2$  ( $L$  shell).
- $p^3$ : 3 outer electrons,  $l = 1$ .
- 4: multiplicity = 4 ( $2S + 1 = 4$ ,  $S = 3/2$ , the spin).
- $S$ : orbital momentum  $L = 0$ .
- $3/2$ :  $J = 3/2$ .
- 0: the level has odd parity.

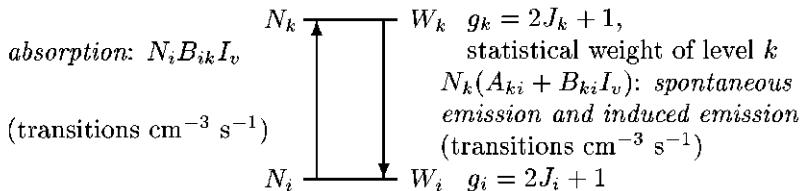
The quantities  $n, l, S, L$  define an atomic term, the set of  $(2S + 1) \times (2L + 1)$  states characterized by given values of  $L$  and  $S$ .

A transition between two levels is called a spectral line.

The totality of transitions between two terms is a multiplet.

## Atomic radiation (*cont.*)

### Emission and absorption of radiation (cgs units)



where

$A_{ki}$  = Einstein coefficient of spontaneous emission,

$N_k$  = number of atoms per unit volume in level  $k$ ,

$B_{ik}$  = induced transition probability from level  $i$  to level  $k$ ,

$I_\nu$  = specific intensity of radiation field at frequency  $\nu$ ,

$h\nu = W_k - W_i$ , transition energy,

$g_k B_{ki} = g_i B_{ik}$ ,

$$\frac{g_k}{g_i} A_{ki} = \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2} B_{ik} = \frac{8\pi^2 e^2 \nu^2}{m_e c^3} f_{ik},$$

where  $f_{ik}$  = absorption oscillator strength.

$$\sigma_i = \int \sigma_\nu d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{m_e c} f_{ik} N_i,$$

is the integrated atomic scattering cross-section for a spectrum line.

$\sigma_\nu$  = atomic scattering cross-section near an absorption line.

### Local thermodynamic equilibrium

#### Saha distribution

This connects equilibrium densities  $\tilde{n}_i$ ,  $\tilde{n}_e$  and  $N^+$  of bound levels  $i$ , of free electrons at temperature  $T_e$  and of ions by

$$\frac{\tilde{n}_i}{\tilde{n}_e N^+} = \left[ \frac{g(i)}{g_e g_A^+} \right] \frac{\hbar^3}{(2\pi m_e k T_e)^{3/2}} \exp \left( \frac{I_i}{k_B T_e} \right),$$

where the electronic statistical weights of the free electron, the ion of charge  $Z + 1$  and the recombined  $e^- - A^+$  species of net charge  $Z$  and ionization potential  $I_i$  are  $g_e = 2$ ,  $g_A^+$  and  $g(i)$ , respectively.

#### Boltzmann distribution

This connects the equilibrium populations of bound levels  $i$  of energy  $E_i$  by

$$\frac{\tilde{n}_i}{\tilde{n}_j} = \left[ \frac{g(i)}{g(j)} \right] \exp \left[ -\frac{(E_i - E_j)}{k_B T_e} \right].$$

**Atomic radiation (cont.)***Doppler shift*

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda} \approx \frac{v}{c} \quad (v = \text{velocity of source}).$$

*Doppler width of spectral line (FWHM, Maxwellian distribution)*

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda_D}{\lambda} = \frac{2[(2 \ln 2)kT/M]^{1/2}}{c} = 7.162 \times 10^{-7} \sqrt{\left[ \frac{T(K)}{\text{at. wt.}} \right]},$$

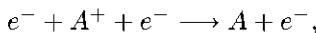
where  $M$  is the mass of the radiating atom, and  $T$  is the temperature.**Electron-ion recombination**

This proceeds via the following four processes:

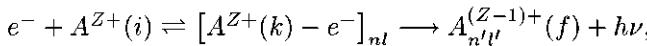
(1) radiative recombination



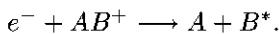
(2) three-body collisional-radiative recombination



(3) dielectronic recombination in which an electron collides with an ion to give a doubly excited ion followed by a radiative transition to a singly excited state



(4) dissociative recombination for molecular ions



### Selection rules for discrete atomic transitions

	Electric dipole (E1) ("allowed")	Magnetic dipole (M1) ("forbidden")	Electric quadrupole (E2) ("forbidden")
Rigorous rules	1. $\Delta J = 0, \pm 1$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0$ )  2. $\Delta M = 0, \pm 1$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0$ when $\Delta J = 0$ )  3. Parity change  4. One electron jumping, with $\Delta l = \pm 1$ , $\Delta n$ arbitrary	$\Delta J = 0, \pm 1$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0$ )  $\Delta M = 0, \pm 1$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0$ when $\Delta J = 0$ )  No parity change  No change in electron configuration; i.e., for all electrons, $\Delta l = 0$ , $\Delta n = 0$	$\Delta J = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0$ , $1/2 \not\leftrightarrow 1/2$ , $0 \not\leftrightarrow 1$ )  $\Delta M = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2$  No parity change  No change in electron configuration; or one electron jumping with $\Delta l = 0, \pm 2$ , $\Delta n$ arbitrary  $\Delta S = 0$
With negligible configuration interaction			
For $LS$ coupling only			$\Delta L = 0$ $\Delta J = \pm 1$
			$\Delta L = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2$ (except $0 \not\leftrightarrow 0, 0 \not\leftrightarrow 1$ )

(From Martin, W.C. and Wiese, W.L. in *Atomic, Molecular, & Optical Physics Handbook*, Drake, G.W.F., ed., American Institute of Physics, 1996, with permission.)

## X-ray atomic energy levels (eV)

Z element	K	$L_I$	$L_{II,III}$
<b>Permitted transitions</b>			
1 H	13.598		
2 He	24.587		
3 Li	54.75		
4 Be	111.0		
5 B	188.0	4.7	
6 C	283.8	6.4	
7 N	401.6	9.2	
8 O	532.0	23.7	7.1
9 F	685.4	31	8.6
10 Ne	866.9	45	18.3
11 Na	1072.1	63.3	31.1
12 Mg	1305.0	89.4	51.4
13 Al	1559.6	117.7	73.1
14 Si	1838.9	148.7	99.2
15 P	2145.5	189.3	132.2
16 S	2472.0	229.2	164.8

	<i>K</i> series	<i>L</i> series
$K\alpha_1 = K - L_{III}$	$L\alpha_1 = L_{III} - M_V$	
$K\alpha_2 = K - L_{II}$	$L\alpha_2 = L_{III} - M_{IV}$	
$K\beta_1 = K - M_{III}$	$L\beta_1 = L_{II} - M_{IV}$	
$K\beta_3 = K - M_{II}$		
$K\beta_2 = K - N_{II,III}$		

X-ray atomic energy levels (eV) (*cont.*)

Z element	K	$L_1$	$L_{\text{II}}$	$L_{\text{III}}$	$M_{\text{I}}$	$M_{\text{II,III}}$	$M_{\text{IV,V}}$
17 Cl	2822.4	270.2	201.6	200.0	17.5	6.8	
18 Ar	3202.9	320	247.3	245.2	25.3	12.4	
19 K	3607.4	377.1	296.3	293.6	33.9	17.8	
20 Ca	4038.1	437.8	350.0	346.4	43.7	25.4	
21 Sc	4492.8	500.4	406.7	402.2	53.8	32.3	6.6
22 Ti	4966.4	563.7	461.5	455.5	60.3	34.6	3.7
23 V	5465.1	628.2	520.5	512.9	66.5	37.8	2.2
24 Cr	5989.2	694.6	583.7	574.5	74.1	42.5	2.3
25 Mn	6539.0	769.0	651.4	640.3	83.9	48.6	3.3
26 Fe	7112.0	846.1	721.1	708.1	92.9	54.0	3.6
27 Co	7708.9	925.6	793.6	778.6	100.7	59.5	2.9
28 Ni	8332.8	1008.1	871.9	854.7	111.8	68.1	3.6
29 Cu	8978.9	1096.6	951.0	931.1	119.8	73.6	1.6
30 Zn	9658.6	1193.6	1042.8	1019.7	135.9	86.6	8.1
31 Ga	10367.1	1297.7	1142.3	1115.4	158.1	106.8	17.4
32 Ge	11103.1	1414.3	1247.8	1216.7	180.0	127.9	28.7

X-ray atomic energy levels (eV) (*cont.*)

Z element	K	$L_1$	$L_{\text{II}}$	$L_{\text{III}}$	$M_1$	$M_{\text{II}}$	$M_{\text{III}}$	$M_{\text{IV}}$	$M_{\text{V}}$	$N_1$	$N_{\text{II}}$	$N_{\text{III}}$
47 Ag	25514.0	3805.8	3523.7	3351.1	717.5	602.4	571.4	372.8	366.7	95.2	62.6	55.9
53 I	33169.4	5188.1	4852.1	4557.1	1072.1	930.5	874.6	631.3	619.4	186.4	122.7	
54 Xe	34561.4	5452.8	5103.7	4782.2		999.0	937.0		672.3		146.7	
55 Ca	35984.6	5714.3	5359.4	5011.9	1217.1	1065.0	997.6	739.5	725.5	230.8	172.3	161.6
74 W	69825.0	12099.8	11544.0	10206.8	2819.6	2574.9	2281.0	1871.6	1809.2	595.0	491.6	425.3
78 Pt	78394.8	13879.9	13272.6	11563.7	3296.0	3026.5	2645.4	2201.9	2121.6	722.0	609.2	519.0
79 Au	80724.9	14352.8	13733.6	11918.7	3424.9	3147.8	2743.0	2291.1	2205.7	758.8	643.7	545.4
82 Pb	88004.5	15860.8	15220.0	13035.2	3850.7	3554.2	3066.4	2585.6	2484.0	893.6	763.9	644.5
92 U	115606.1	21757.4	20947.6	17166.3	5548.0	5182.2	4303.4	3727.6	3551.7	1440.8	1272.6	1044.9
Z element	$N_{\text{IV}}$	$N_{\text{V}}$	$N_{\text{VI}}$	$N_{\text{VII}}$	$O_1$	$O_{\text{II}}$	$O_{\text{III}}$	$O_{\text{IV}}$	$O_{\text{V}}$	$P_1$	$P_{\text{II}}$	$P_{\text{III}}$
47 Ag												
53 I	3.3	49.6			13.6			3.3				
54 Xe												
55 Ca	78.8	76.5				22.7		13.1	11.4			
74 W	258.8	245.4	36.5	33.6	77.1	46.8		35.6	6.1			
78 Pt	330.8	313.3	74.3	71.1	101.7	65.3		51.7	2.2			
79 Au	352.0	333.9	86.4	82.8	107.8	71.7		53.7	2.5			
82 Pb	435.2	412.9	142.9	138.1	147.3	104.8		86.0	21.8	19.2	3.1	0.7
92 U	780.4	737.7	391.3	380.9	323.7	259.3	195.1	105	96.3	70.7	42.3	32.3

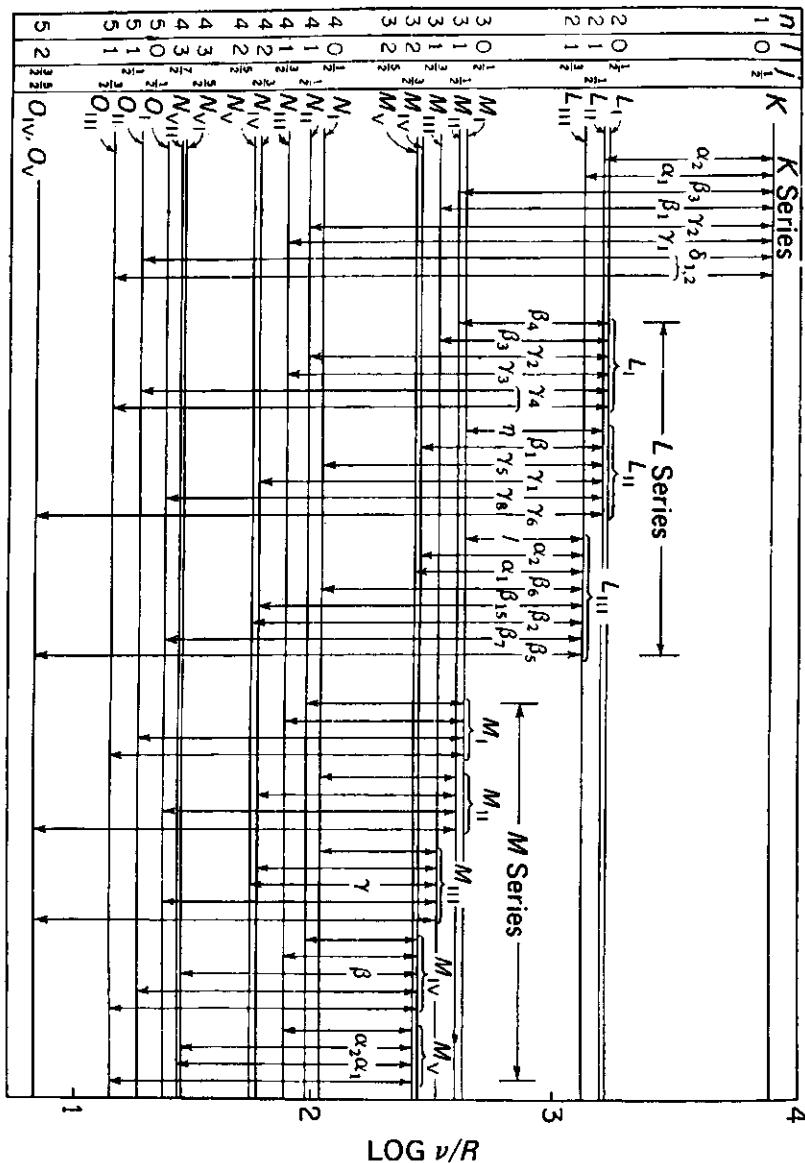
(List from Bearden, J. A. and Burr, A. F., *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, **39**, 125, 1967.)

X-ray atomic energy levels (eV) (cont.)  
Notation for X-ray lines

Siegbahn notation	Transition	Siegbahn notation	Transition	Siegbahn notation	Transition	Siegbahn notation	Transition
$K\alpha_1$	$KL_{\text{II}}$	$L\gamma_2$	$LN_{\text{II}}$	$L_V$	$L_{\text{II}}N_{\text{VI}}$	$L\beta_2$	$L_{\text{II}}N_{\text{V}}$
$K\alpha_2$	$KL_{\text{II}}$	$L\gamma_3$	$LN_{\text{III}}$	$L\gamma_8$	$L_{\text{II}}O_{\text{I}}$	$Lu$	$L_{\text{II}}N_{\text{VI, VII}}$
$K\beta_3$	$KM_{\text{II}}$	$L\gamma_{11}$	$LN_{\text{V}}$	$L\gamma_6$	$L_{\text{II}}O_{\text{IV}}$	$L\beta_7$	$L_{\text{II}}O_{\text{I}}$
$K\beta_1$	$KM_{\text{III}}$	$L\gamma_4$	$LN_{\text{III}}$	$Ll$	$L_{\text{II}}M_{\text{I}}$	$L\beta_3$	$L_{\text{II}}O_{\text{IV, V}}$
$K\beta_5$	$KM_{\text{IV, V}}$	$L\gamma_{13}$	$L_1P_{\text{II, III}}$	$Lt$	$L_{\text{III}}M_{\text{II}}$	$M\gamma$	$M_{\text{III}}N_{\text{V}}$
$K\beta_2$	$KN_{\text{II, III}}$	$L\eta$	$LN_{\text{I}}$	$L_s$	$L_{\text{III}}M_{\text{III}}$	$M\beta$	$M_{\text{IV}}N_{\text{VI}}$
$K\beta_4$	$KN_{\text{IV, V}}$	$L\beta_{17}$	$LN_{\text{M}}$	$L\alpha_2$	$L_{\text{III}}M_{\text{IV}}$	$M\zeta_2$	$M_{\text{IV}}N_{\text{II}}$
$L\beta_4$	$L_1M_{\text{II}}$	$L\beta_1$	$L_{\text{II}}M_{\text{IV}}$	$L\alpha_1$	$L_{\text{III}}M_{\text{V}}$	$M\zeta_1$	$M_{\text{IV}}N_{\text{II}}$
$L\beta_3$	$L_1M_{\text{III}}$	$L\gamma_5$	$LN_{\text{I}}$	$L\beta_6$	$L_{\text{III}}N_{\text{I}}$	$M\alpha_2$	$M_{\text{V}}N_{\text{VII}}$
$L\beta_{10}$	$L_1M_{\text{IV}}$	$L\gamma_1$	$L_{\text{II}}N_{\text{IV}}$	$L\beta_{13}$	$L_{\text{II}}N_{\text{IV}}$	$M\alpha_1$	$M_{\text{V}}N_{\text{VII}}$
$L\beta_9$	$L_1M_{\text{V}}$						

## X-ray energy level diagram

X-ray energy-level diagram for  $^{92}\text{U}$ , showing the transitions permitted by the selection rules  $\Delta l = \pm 1$ ;  $\Delta j = \pm 1, 0$ . (Adapted from Richtmyer, F. K., Kennard, E. H. & Lauritsen, T., *Introduction to Modern Physics*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1955.)



## X-ray wavelengths

---

*Wavelengths of K series lines representing transitions in the ordinary X-ray energy-level diagram allowed by the selection principles (Ångstrom)*

Siegbahns Sommerfeld transition	$K\alpha_2$ $K\alpha'$	$K\alpha_1$ $K\alpha$	$K\beta$ $K\beta_2$	$K\beta_1$ $K\beta$	$K\beta_2$ $K\gamma$
	$K - L_{II}$	$K - L_{III}$	$K - M_{II}$	$K - M_{III}$	$K - L_{II}N_{III}$
4 Be		115.7			
5 B		67.71			
6 C		44.54			
7 N		31.557			
8 O		23.567			
9 F		18.275			
11 Na		11.885		11.594	
12 Mg		9.869		9.539	
13 Al		8.3205		7.965	
14 Si		7.11106		6.7545	
15 P		6.1425		5.7921	
16 S	5.3637	5.3613		5.0211	
17 Cl	4.7212	4.7182		4.3942	
19 K	3.73707	3.73368		3.4468	
20 Ca	3.35495	3.35169		3.0834	
21 Sc	3.02840	3.02503		2.7739	
22 Ti	2.74681	2.74317		2.5090	
23 V	2.50213	2.49835		2.2797	
24 Cr	2.28891	2.28503		2.0806	
25 Mn	2.10149	2.09751		1.90620	
26 Fe	1.936012	1.932076		1.753013	
27 Co	1.78919	1.78529		1.61744	
28 Ni	1.65835	1.65450		1.47905	1.48561
29 Cu	1.541232	1.537395		1.38935	1.37824
30 Zn	1.43603	1.43217		1.29255	1.28107
31 Ga	1.34087	1.33715		1.20520	1.1938
32 Ge	1.25521	1.25130		1.12671	1.11459
33 As	1.17743	1.17344		1.05510	1.04281
34 Se	1.10652	1.10248		0.99013	0.97791
35 Br	1.04166	1.03759		0.93087	0.91853
36 Kr	0.9821	0.9781		0.8767	0.8643
37 Rb	0.92776	0.92364	0.82749	0.82696	0.81476
38 Sr	0.87761	0.87345	0.78183	0.78130	0.76921
39 Y	0.83132	0.82712	0.73972	0.73919	0.72713
40 Zr	0.78851	0.78430	0.70083	0.70028	0.68850
41 Nb	0.74889	0.74465	0.66496	0.66438	0.65280
42 Mo	0.712105	0.707831	0.631543	0.630978	0.619698
43 Te	0.675	0.672		0.610	
44 Ru	0.64606	0.64174	0.57193	0.57131	0.56051

*Wavelengths of K series lines representing transitions in the ordinary X-ray energy-level diagram allowed by the selection principles (cont.)*

Siegbahm Sommerfeld transition	$K\alpha_2$ $K\alpha'$ $K - L_{II}$	$K\alpha_1$ $K\alpha$ $K - L_{III}$	$K\beta$ $K\beta_2$ $K - M_{II}$	$K\beta_1$ $K\beta$ $K - M_{III}$	$K\beta_2$ $K\gamma$ $K - L_{II}N_{III}$
45 Rh	0.61637	0.61202	0.54509	0.54449	0.53396
46 Pd	0.58863	0.58427	0.52009	0.51947	0.50918
47 Ag	0.56267	0.55828	0.49665	0.49601	0.48603
48 Cd	0.53832	0.53390	0.47471	0.47408	0.46420
49 In	0.51548	0.51106	0.45423	0.45358	0.44408
50 Sn	0.49402	0.48957	0.43495	0.43430	0.42499
51 Sb	0.47387	0.46931		0.41623	0.40710
52 Te	0.45491	0.45037		0.39926	0.39037
53 I	0.43703	0.43249	0.38292	0.38315	0.37471
54 Xe		0.417		0.360	
55 Cs	0.40411	0.39959	0.35436	0.35360	0.34516
56 Ba	0.38899	0.38443	0.34089	0.34022	0.33222
57 La	0.37466	0.37004	0.32809	0.32726	0.31966
58 Ce	0.36110	0.35647	0.31572	0.31501	0.30770
59 Pr	0.34805	0.34340	0.30439	0.30360	0.29625
60 Nd	0.33595	0.33125	0.29351	0.29275	0.28573
62 Sm	0.31302	0.30833	0.27325	0.27250	0.26575
63 Eu	0.30265	0.29790	0.26386	0.26307	0.25645
64 Gd	0.29261	0.28782	0.25471	0.25394	0.24762
65 Tb	0.28286	0.27820	0.24629	0.24551	0.23912
66 Dy	0.27375	0.26903	0.23787	0.23710	0.23128
67 Ho	0.26499	0.26030			
68 Er	0.25664	0.25197	0.22300	0.22215	0.21671
69 Tm	0.24861	0.24387	0.21558	0.21487	
70 Yb	0.24098	0.23028	0.20916	0.20834	0.20322
71 Lu	0.23358	0.2282	0.20252	0.20171	0.19649
72 Hf	0.22653	0.22173	0.19583	0.19515	0.19042
73 Ta	0.21973	0.21488		0.18991	0.18452
74 W	0.21337	0.20856	0.18475	0.18397	0.17906
76 Os	0.20131	0.19645		0.17361	0.16875
77 Ir	0.19550	0.19065		0.16850	0.16376
78 Pt	0.19004	0.18223		0.16370	0.15887
79 Au	0.18483	0.17996		0.15902	0.15426
81 Tl	0.17466	0.16980		0.15011	0.14539
82 Pb	0.17004	0.16516		0.14606	0.14125
83 Bi	0.16525	0.16041		0.14205	0.13621
92 U	0.13095	0.12640		0.11187	0.10842

(From *Smithsonian Physical Tables*.)

***Wavelength of the more prominent L group lines (Ångstrom)***

Siegbahns Sommerfeld transition	$\alpha_2$ $\alpha'$	$\alpha_1$ $\alpha$	$\beta_1$ $\beta$	$l$ $\varepsilon$	$\eta$ $\eta$
	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{IV}}$	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{V}}$	$L_{\text{II}} - M_{\text{V}}$	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{I}}$	$L_{\text{II}} - M_{\text{I}}$
16 S		...	...		83.75
20 Ca		36.27	...	40.90	
21 Sc		31.37	...	35.71	
22 Ti		27.37	...	31.33	
23 V		24.31	...	27.70	
24 Cr		21.53	21.19	23.84	23.28
25 Mn		19.40	19.04	22.34	
26 Fe		17.57	17.23	20.09	19.76
27 Co		15.93	15.63	18.25	17.86
28 Ni		14.53	14.25	16.66	16.28
29 Cu		13.306	13.027	15.26	14.87
30 Zn		12.229	11.960	13.97	13.61
31 Ga		11.27	11.01	12.89	12.56
32 Ge		10.415	10.153	11.922	11.587
33 As		9.652	9.395	11.048	10.711
34 Se		8.972	8.718	10.272	9.939
35 Br		8.358	8.109	9.564	9.235
37 Rb		7.3027			
38 Sr		6.8486	6.610	7.822	7.506
39 Y		6.4357	6.2039	...	7.0310
				$\beta_2$	$\gamma$
				$\gamma$	$\delta$
				$L_{\text{III}} - N_{\text{V}}$	$L_{\text{III}} - N_{\text{V}}$
40 Zr		6.057	5.8236	5.5742	5.3738
41 Nb	5.718	5.7120	5.4803	5.2260	5.0248
42 Mo	5.401	5.3950	5.1665	4.9100	
44 Ru	4.8437	4.8357	4.6110	4.3619	4.1728
45 Rh	4.5956	4.5878	4.3640	4.1221	3.9357
46 Pd	4.3666	4.3585	4.1373	3.9007	3.7164
47 Ag	4.1538	4.1456	3.9266	3.6938	3.5149
48 Cd	3.9564	3.9478	3.7301	3.5064	3.3280
49 In	3.7724	3.7637	3.5478	3.3312	3.1553
50 Sn	3.60151	3.59257	3.3779	3.16861	2.99494
51 Sb	3.4408	3.4318	3.2184	3.0166	2.8451
52 Te	3.2910	3.2820	3.0700	2.8761	2.7065
53 I	3.1509	3.1417	2.9309	2.7461	2.5775
55 Cs	2.8956	2.8861	2.6778	2.5064	2.3425
56 Ba	2.7790	2.7696	2.5622	2.3993	2.2366
57 La	2.6689	2.6597	2.4533	2.2980	2.1372
58 Ce	2.5651	2.5560	2.3510	2.2041	2.0443
59 Pr	2.4676	2.4577	2.2539	2.1148	1.9568
60 Nd	2.3756	2.3653	2.1622	2.0314	1.8738
62 Sm	2.2057	2.1950	1.9936	1.8781	1.7231
63 Eu	2.1273	2.1163	1.9163	1.8082	1.6543

***Wavelength of the more prominent L group lines (cont.)***

Siegbahns Sommerfeld transition	$\alpha_2$ $\alpha'$	$\alpha_1$ $\alpha$	$\beta_1$ $\beta$	$l$ $\varepsilon$	$\eta$ $\eta$
	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{IV}}$	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{V}}$	$L_{\text{II}} - M_{\text{V}}$	$L_{\text{III}} - M_{\text{I}}$	$L_{\text{II}} - M_{\text{I}}$
64 Gd	2.0526	2.0419	1.8425	1.7419	1.5886
65 Tb	1.9823	1.9715	1.7727	1.6790	1.5266
66 Dy	1.9156	1.9046	1.7066	1.6198	1.4697
67 Ho	1.8521	1.8410	1.6435	1.5637	1.4142
68 Er	1.79202	1.78068	1.58409	1.51094	1.3611
69 Tm	1.7339	1.7228	1.5268	1.4602	1.3127
70 Yb	1.67942	1.66844	1.4725	1.41261	1.26512
71 Lu	1.6270	1.61617	1.42067	1.36731	1.21974
72 Hf	1.57704	1.56607	1.3711	1.3235	1.1765
73 Ta	1.52978	1.51885	1.32423	1.28190	1.13558
74 W	1.48438	1.47336	1.27917	1.24203	1.09630
75 Re	1.4410	1.42997	1.23603	1.2041	1.0587
76 Os	1.39866	1.38859	1.19490	1.16884	1.02296
77 Ir	1.3598	1.34847	1.15540	1.13297	0.98876
78 Pt	1.32155	1.31033	1.11758	1.09974	0.95599
79 Au	1.28502	1.27377	1.08128	1.06801	0.92461
80 Hg	1.24951	1.23863	1.04652	1.03770	0.8946
81 Tl	1.21626	1.20493	1.01299	1.00822	0.86571
82 Pb	1.18408	1.17258	0.98083	0.98083	0.83801
83 Bi	1.15301	1.14150	0.95002	0.95324	0.81143
90 Th	0.96585	0.95405	0.76356	0.79192	0.65176
91 Pa	0.9427	0.9309	0.7407	0.7721	0.6325
92 U	0.92062	0.90874	0.71851	0.75307	0.61359

(From *Smithsonian Physical Tables*)

## Main bound-bound electromagnetic transitions

Transitions	Energy [eV]	Spectral region	Example
Hyperfine structure	$10^{-5}$	Radiofrequencies	21 cm hydrogen line
Spin-orbit coupling	$10^{-5}$	Radiofrequencies	1666 MHz transitions of OH molecule
Molecular rotation	$10^{-2}$ - $10^{-4}$	Millimetric, infrared	1-0 transition of CO molecule at 2.6 mm
Molecular rotation-vibration	$1-10^{-1}$	Infrared	H <sub>2</sub> lines near 2 $\mu$ m
Atomic fine structure	$1-10^{-3}$	Infrared	Ne II line at 12.8 $\mu$ m
Electronic transitions of atoms, molecules and ions	$10^{-2}$ - $10^{10^{-4}}$	Ultraviolet, visible, infrared	Lyman, Balmer, etc. series of H, resonance lines of Cl, HeI
		Ultraviolet, X-ray	K,L shell electron lines

(Adapted from Lena, P., *Observational Astrophysics*, Springer-Verlag, 1986.)

## Bibliography

*Atomic, Molecular, & Optical Physics Handbook*, Drake, G.W.F., ed., American Institute of Physics, 1996.

*Atomic Energy Levels*, Moore, C.E., NBS Circular 467, US Government Printing Office.

*An Ultraviolet Multiplet Table*, Moore, C.E., NBS Circular 488, US Government Printing Office.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 12

---

## Electromagnetic radiation

*And God said:*

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{4\pi\mathbf{J}}{c} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$$

*And there was light.* - Unknown

Radiation by a point charge	387
Blackbody radiation	388
<i>Planck functions</i>	388
<i>Radiation curves</i>	389
Synchrotron radiation	390
<i>Single electron in a magnetic field</i>	390
<i>General distribution of electrons</i>	391
<i>Power law distribution of electrons</i>	391
Cerenkov radiation	392
Compton scattering	393
<i>Compton shift</i>	393
<i>Energy of scattered photon</i>	393
<i>Energy of struck electron</i>	393
<i>Relation between the scattering angles</i>	393
<i>Klein-Nishina cross-section</i>	394
<i>Klein-Nishina differential cross-sections</i>	396
Inverse Compton scattering	396
<i>Total energy loss rate</i>	396
<i>Spectra</i>	397
Hot plasma emission	398
<i>Bremsstrahlung from a hot plasma</i>	398
<i>Non-thermal bremsstrahlung</i>	398
<i>X-ray line emission from a hot plasma</i>	398

<i>Radiative recombination radiation</i>	399
Maxwell's equations	399
Conversion table	400
Standard definitions in radiative transport theory	401
Electromagnetic relations	402
Maxwell's equations in various systems of units	403
Spectrum nomogram	404
Bibliography	404

## Radiation by a point charge (cgs units)

---

*The Liénard-Wiechert potentials for a point charge e:*

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \Phi(\mathbf{x}, t) &= e \left[ \frac{1}{\kappa R} \right]_{\text{ret}} \\ \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}, t) &= e \left[ \frac{\beta}{\kappa R} \right]_{\text{ret}} \end{aligned} \right\}$$

The square bracket with subscript ret means that the quantity in brackets is to be evaluated at the retarded time,  $t' = t - [R(t')/c]$ .

$\kappa = 1 - \mathbf{n} \cdot \beta$ , where  $c\beta$  is the instantaneous velocity of the particle, and  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{R}/R$  is a unit vector directed from the position of the charge to the observation point.

*The electric field and magnetic fields:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x}, t) &= e \left[ \frac{(\mathbf{n} - \beta)(1 - \beta^2)}{\kappa^3 R^2} \right]_{\text{ret}} + \frac{e}{c} \left[ \frac{\mathbf{n}}{\kappa^3 R} \times \{(\mathbf{n} - \beta) \times \dot{\beta}\} \right]_{\text{ret}} \\ \mathbf{B} &= \mathbf{n} \times \mathbf{E} \end{aligned}$$

*Total power radiated:*

$$P = \frac{2}{3} \frac{e^2}{c} \gamma^6 [(\dot{\beta})^2 - (\beta \times \dot{\beta})^2]$$

where  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ , the Lorentz factor.

If the charge is observed in a reference frame where its velocity is small compared to that of light,

$$P = \frac{2}{3} e^2 \frac{\dot{\beta}^2}{c}$$


---

**Blackbody radiation** (cgs units)**Planck functions** (brightness of a blackbody)

$$B_\nu(T) = \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2} \frac{1}{(\exp(\frac{h\nu}{kT}) - 1)} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}$$

$$B_\lambda(T) = \frac{2hc^2}{\lambda^5} \frac{1}{(\exp(\frac{hc}{\lambda kT}) - 1)} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}$$

$$B_{\tilde{\nu}}(T) = \frac{2hc^2\tilde{\nu}^3}{(\exp(\frac{hc\tilde{\nu}}{kT}) - 1)} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1} (\text{cm}^{-1})^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}$$

$$B_\nu(T)d\nu = B_\lambda(T)d\lambda = B_{\tilde{\nu}}(T)d\tilde{\nu}$$

*Rayleigh-Jeans law*

$$h\nu/kT \ll 1$$

$$B_\nu(T) = 2 \left(\frac{\nu}{c}\right)^2 kT$$

*Wien's law*

$$h\nu/kT \gg 1$$

$$B_\nu(T) = \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2} \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu}{kT}\right)$$

*Stefan-Boltzmann law*

$$\text{total emittance} = \pi \int_0^\infty B_\nu(T)d\nu = \sigma T^4 \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

$$\text{where } \sigma = \frac{2\pi^5 k^4}{15c^2 h^3} = 5.67 \times 10^{-5} \text{ erg cm}^{-2} \text{ deg}^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

*Wien displacement law*Maximizing  $B_\nu$ :

$$\nu_m = 5.9 \times 10^{10} T \text{ Hz}$$

$$\lambda_m = 0.51 T^{-1} \text{ cm}$$

Maximizing  $B_\lambda$ :

$$\nu_m = 10.3 \times 10^{10} T \text{ Hz}$$

$$\lambda_m = 0.29 T^{-1} \text{ cm}$$

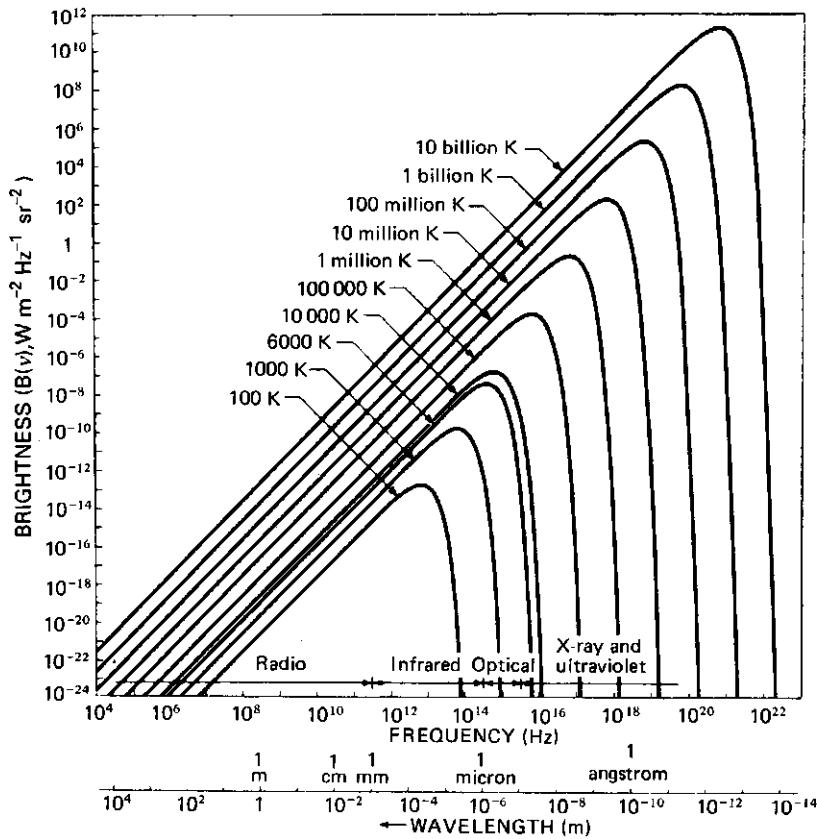
*Mean photon energy*

$$\langle h\nu \rangle = \frac{\int_0^\infty B_\nu(T) d\nu}{\int_0^\infty (B_\nu(T)/h\nu) d\nu} = \left( \frac{\zeta(4)}{\zeta(3)} \right) \left( \frac{\Gamma(4)}{\Gamma(3)} \right) kT = 2.7012kT.$$

where  $\zeta(n)$  = Riemann zeta function;  $\Gamma(n)$  = gamma function.

*Radiation curves*

Planck-law radiation curves. (Adapted from Kraus, J.D., *Radio Astronomy*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1966.)



### Synchrotron radiation (cgs units)

#### *Single electron in a magnetic field*

Total radiated power:

$$P = 1.6 \times 10^{-15} \gamma^2 B^2 \beta^2 \sin^2 \alpha \text{ erg s}^{-1},$$

where

$$\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2} = E/mc^2,$$

$E$  = total energy of particle,

$$\beta = v/c,$$

$B$  = magnetic induction in Gauss,

$\alpha$  = pitch angle, angle between  $B$  and velocity vector.

Synchrotron lifetime:

$$t_s = \frac{3 \times 10^8}{\gamma B^2 \beta^2 \sin^2 \alpha} \text{ s.}$$

Spectrum:

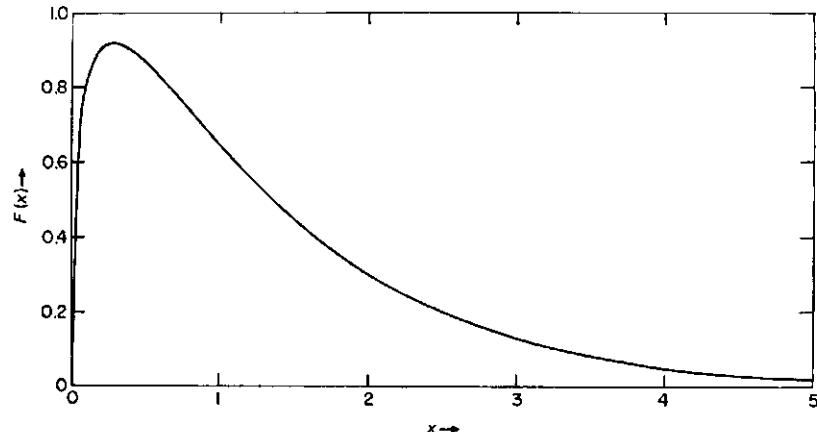
$$P(\nu) = 2.3 \times 10^{-22} B \sin \alpha F(\nu/\nu_c) \text{ erg s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1} (\alpha \gg 1/\gamma).$$

$$\nu_c = 4.3 \times 10^6 B \gamma^2 \sin \alpha \text{ Hz} \text{ (critical frequency).}$$

$$F(x) = x \int_x^\infty d\xi K_{5/3}(\xi), \quad x = \nu/\nu_c.$$

$K_{5/3}(\xi)$  is the modified Bessel function of fractional order 5/3.

A plot of the function  $F(x)$  or, equivalently, the dimensionless synchrotron spectrum.  $F(\nu/\nu_c)$  reaches its maximum value of 0.918 at  $\nu_m = 0.29\nu_c$ . (Adapted from Blumenthal, G.R. & Tucker, W. H. in *X-ray Astronomy*, R. Giacconi & H. Gursky, eds., D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dordrecht, 1974.)



**General distribution of electrons**

$\frac{dP}{dV d\nu} = \iint d\gamma d\Omega_\alpha n(\gamma, \alpha) P(\nu)$ , the spectral emission per unit volume,

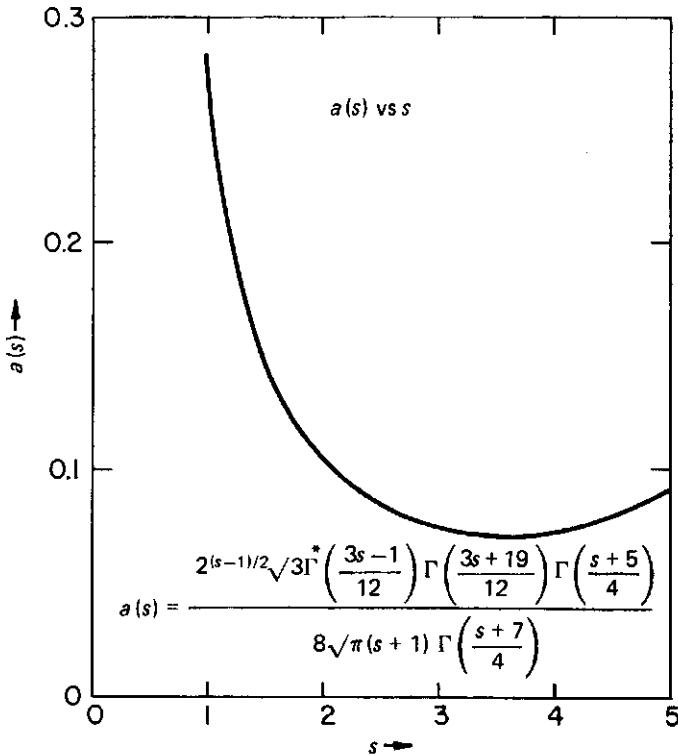
where  $n(\gamma, \alpha) d\gamma d\Omega_\alpha$  = density of electrons with Lorentz factor between  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma + d\gamma$  and pitch angle between  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha + d\alpha$ ;  $d\Omega_\alpha = 2\pi \sin \alpha d\alpha$ ;  $P(\nu)$  = single electron spectrum.

**Power law distribution of electrons**

$$n(\gamma, \alpha) = N \gamma^{-s} g(\alpha)/4\pi,$$

and for local isotropy  $g(\alpha) = 1$ ,

$$\frac{dP}{dV d\nu} = 1.7 \times 10^{-21} N a(s) B (4.3 \times 10^6 B/\nu)^{(s-1)/2} \text{ erg s}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-3} \text{ Hz}^{-1}.$$



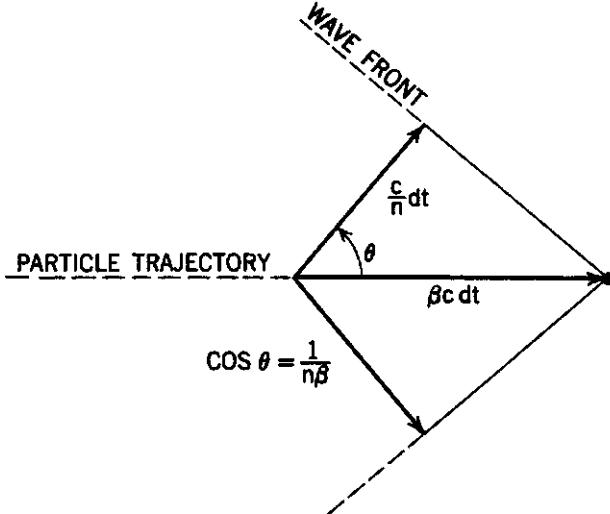
\* note:  $\Gamma(x)$  is the gamma function.

(Blumenthal, G.R., & Tucker, W.H., *op. cit.*)

### Cerenkov radiation (cgs units)

---

Cerenkov radiation is the electromagnetic shock wave that arises from a charged particle moving through a transparent medium at a speed greater than that of light within the medium. Thus only if the particle



relative velocity  $\beta = v/c$  and the refractive index  $n$  of the medium are such that  $n\beta > 1$  will the radiation exist. When this condition is fulfilled, the Cerenkov light is emitted at the angle given by

$$\cos \theta = \frac{1}{n\beta}$$

where  $\theta$  is the angle between the velocity for the particle and the propagation vector for any portion of the conical radiation wavefront, as illustrated above.

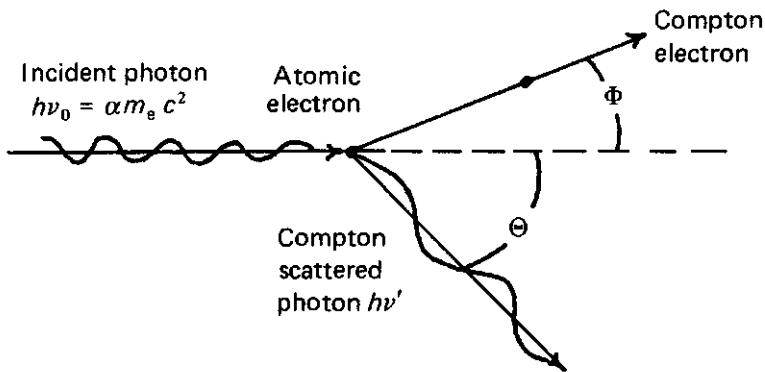
The spectral intensity of the radiation from a particle of charge  $ze$  is

$$\frac{d^2W}{dx dv} = \frac{4\pi z^2 e^2 \nu}{c^2} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{n^2} \beta^2 \right) \text{ erg cm}^{-1} \text{Hz}^{-1}$$

In terms of photon emission, this becomes

$$\frac{d^2N}{dx dv} = 2\pi \left( \frac{e^2}{\hbar c} \right) \frac{z^2}{c} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{n^2 \beta^2} \right) = \frac{2\pi}{137} \cdot \frac{z^2}{c} \sin^2 \theta \text{ photons cm}^{-1} \text{Hz}^{-1}$$


---

**Compton scattering (cgs units)****Compton shift**

$$\frac{c}{\nu'} - \frac{c}{\nu_0} = \lambda' - \lambda_0 = \frac{\hbar}{m_e c} (1 - \cos \theta).$$

**Energy of scattered photon**

$$h\nu' = \frac{m_e c^2}{1 - \cos \theta + (1/\alpha)}, \quad \alpha = h\nu_0/m_e c^2.$$

**Energy of struck electron**

$$T = h\nu' - h\nu_0,$$

$$T = h\nu_0 \frac{\alpha(1 - \cos \theta)}{1 + \alpha(1 - \cos \theta)},$$

$$T_{\max} = \frac{h\nu_0}{1 + (1/2\alpha)}.$$

**Relation between the scattering angles,  $\phi$  and  $\theta$** 

$$\cot \phi = (1 + \alpha) \frac{1 - \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} = (1 + \alpha) \tan \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

**Klein-Nishina cross-sections for unpolarized incident radiation**

Differential collision cross-section:

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = r_0^2 \left[ \frac{1}{1+\alpha(1-\cos\theta)} \right]^2 \left( \frac{1+\cos^2\theta}{2} \right) \left[ 1 + \frac{\alpha^2(1-\cos\theta)^2}{(1+\cos^2\theta)[1+\alpha(1-\cos\theta)]} \right] \text{ cm}^2 \text{ electron}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}.$$

where  $r_0 = \frac{e^2}{m_e c^2}$ , classical electron radius =  $2.82 \times 10^{-13}$  cm.

Total collision cross-section:

$$\int \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} d\Omega = 2\pi r_0^2 \left\{ \frac{1+\alpha}{\alpha^2} \left[ \frac{2(1+\alpha)}{1+2\alpha} - \frac{1}{\alpha} \ln(1+2\alpha) \right] + \frac{1}{2\alpha} \ln(1+2\alpha) - \frac{1+3\alpha}{(1+2\alpha)^2} \right\} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ electron}^{-1}$$

or, for small values of  $\alpha$ ,

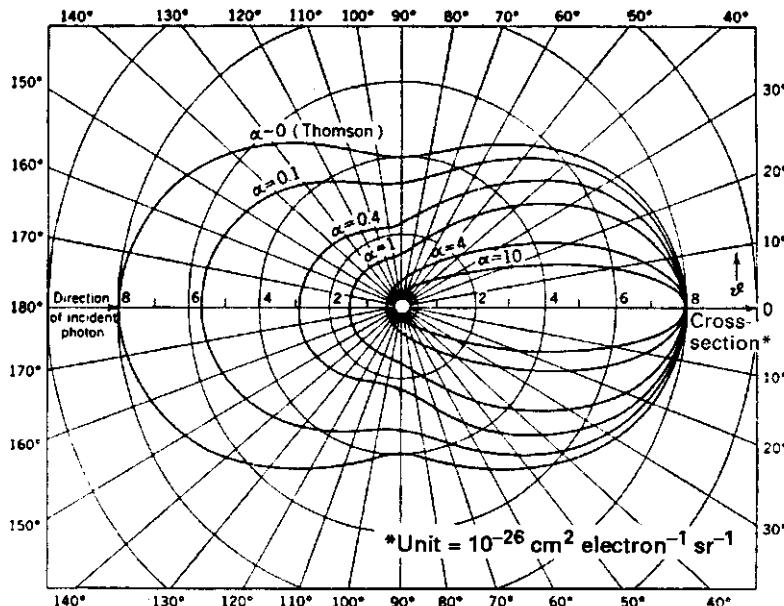
$$\int \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} d\Omega = \frac{8\pi}{3} r_0^2 (1 - 2\alpha + 5.2\alpha^2 - 13.3\alpha^3 + \dots) \text{ cm}^2 \text{ electron}^{-1}$$

The differential cross-section for the electromagnetic energy scattered is obtained from the collision cross-section by multiplying by the fraction of the original energy carried off by the scattered photon,  $1/[1+\alpha(1-\cos\theta)]$

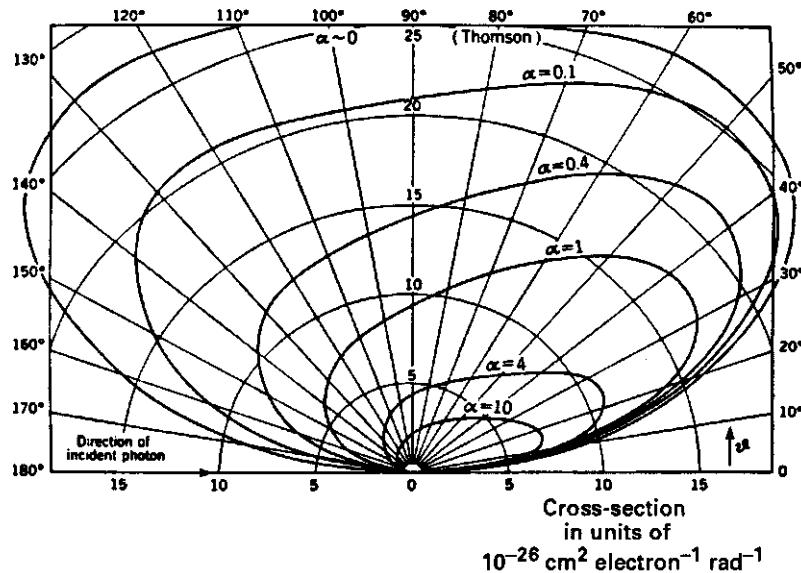
$$\frac{d\sigma_s}{d\Omega} = r_0^2 \left[ \frac{1}{1+\alpha(1-\cos\theta)} \right]^3 \left( \frac{1+\cos^2\theta}{2} \right) \left[ 1 + \frac{\alpha^2(1-\cos\theta)^2}{(1+\cos^2\theta)[1+\alpha(1-\cos\theta)]} \right] \text{ cm}^2 \text{ electron}^{-1} \text{ sr}^{-1}.$$

**Klein-Nishina differential cross-sections (cont.)**

Differential cross-sections,  $d\sigma(\theta)/d\Omega$ , for the production of secondary photons from Compton scattering. Curves are shown for six different values of primary photon energy. (From Davisson & Evans, *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, **34**, 79, 1953.)

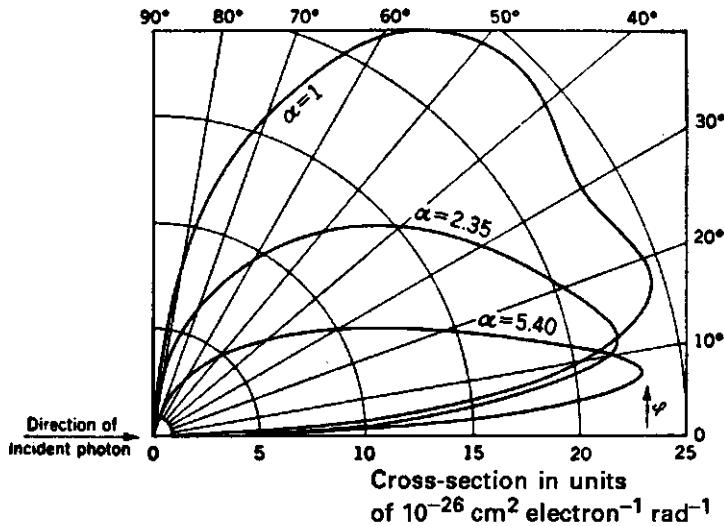


Differential cross-sections,  $d\sigma(\theta)/d\theta$ , for the production of secondary photons from Compton scattering. (From Davisson & Evans, *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, **34**, 79, 1953.)



**Klein-Nishina differential cross-sections (cont.)**

Differential cross-sections,  $d\sigma_e(\phi)/d\phi$ , for the production of secondary electrons from Compton scattering. (From Davisson & Evans, *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, **34**, 79, 1953.)

**Inverse Compton scattering (cgs units)**

Compton collisions between relativistic electrons and low frequency photons.

*Thomson limit*

$$\gamma h\nu_0 \ll m_e c^2,$$

where  $\gamma$  is the Lorentz factor for the relativistic electrons.

**Total energy loss rate** (Thomson limit)

$$-\frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{4}{3}\sigma_T c \gamma^2 u = 2.6 \times 10^{-14} \gamma^2 u \text{ erg s}^{-1} \text{ electron}^{-1},$$

where

$u$  = radiation energy density,

$$\sigma_T = \frac{8\pi}{3} r_0^2, \text{ the Thomson cross-section,}$$

$$r_0 = \frac{e^2}{m_e c^2}.$$

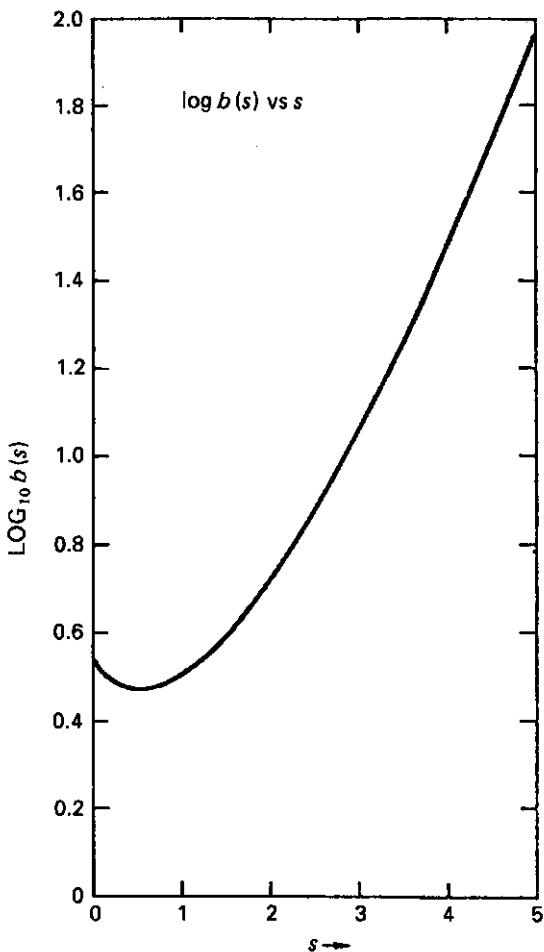
### Spectra

Thomson limit-power law electron distribution function and blackbody radiation: when the initial radiation field is given by a blackbody distribution and the density of electrons is given by a power law, viz.,  $N(\gamma)d\gamma = N\gamma^{-s}d\gamma$  (the density of electrons with a Lorentz factor between  $\gamma$  and  $(\gamma + d\gamma)$ ), the spectral power density is:

$$\frac{dP}{dV d\nu} = 4.2 \times 10^{-40} Nb(s)T^3(2.1 \times 10^{10}T/\nu)^{(s-1)/2}$$

erg cm<sup>-3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> Hz<sup>-1</sup>,

with  $T$  in degrees Kelvin.



(Blumenthal G.R. & Tucker, W. H., *op. cit.*)

---



---

## Hot plasma emission (cgs units)

---

### Bremsstrahlung from a hot plasma

For a Maxwellian distribution of electron velocities, the spectral emission per unit volume:

$$\frac{dP_B(T)}{dV d\nu} = 6.8 \times 10^{-38} T^{-1/2} e^{-E/kT} N_e N_Z Z^2 \overline{g_B(T, E)} \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1},$$

where

$N_e$  = electron density,

$N_Z$  = ion density (charge  $z$ ),

$E = h\nu$  = photon energy, and

$g_B$  is the Gaunt factor.

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{g_B(T, E)} &\approx \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\pi} \ln \left( \frac{4kT}{\Gamma E} \right), \text{ for } E \ll kT \quad (\ln \Gamma = 0.577) \\ &\approx (E/kT)^{-0.4}, \quad \text{for } E \sim kT. \end{aligned}$$

The total bremsstrahlung emission:

$$\frac{dP_B}{dV} = 1.4 \times 10^{-27} T^{1/2} N_e N_Z Z^2 g_B(T) \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1},$$

where  $g_B(T) \approx 1.2$ .

$$\frac{dP_B}{dV} = 2.4 \times 10^{-27} T^{1/2} N_e^2 \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

for a plasma with cosmic abundances, since the contribution from all ions

$$\sum N_e N_Z Z^2 \approx 1.4 N_e^2.$$

### Non-thermal bremsstrahlung

For a flux density  $J(E) = J_0 E^{-s}$  erg cm<sup>-2</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> erg<sup>-1</sup> of non-thermal electrons, the spectral emission per unit volume:

$$\frac{dP_B}{dV d\nu} = 1.2 \times 10^{-6} Z^2 N_Z J_0 \frac{E^{-s-1}}{s} \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ Hz}^{-1}.$$

### X-ray line emission from a hot plasma

(electron collisional excitation)

For a Maxwellian distribution of electron velocities, the power emitted per unit volume due to excitations of level  $n'$  of ion  $Z$  in the ground state  $n$  is:

$$\frac{dP_L}{dV} = 2.7 \times 10^{-15} T^{-1/2} e^{E_{nn'}/kT} f_{nn'} \overline{g_{nn'}} N_e N_Z \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1},$$

where

$E_{nn'}$  = energy of excitation,

$f_{nn'}$  = oscillator strength for the transition,

$\overline{g_{nn'}}$  = mean Gaunt factor  $\approx 0.2$  for  $kT/E_{nn'} < 1$ .

In some cases, a line is produced by a transition to a state other than the ground state. In this case, the emitted power above is not equal to the power in the line and the branching ratio to the state of interest must be taken into account. For 1s-2p transitions in hydrogen and helium-like ions, this branching is not significant.

### Radiative recombination radiation

$$\frac{dP_{RR, Z, n}}{dV dE} = \frac{2.8 \times 10^{-6} T^{-3/2} e^{(I_{Z-1, n} - E)/kT}}{n^3} N_e N_Z Z^4 \text{ erg cm}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ erg}^{-1},$$

where

$$E = W_i + I_{Z-1, n},$$

$E$  = energy of emitted photon,

$W_i$  = energy of free electron,

$I_{Z, n}$  = ionization energy of level  $n$  for ion  $Z$ .

(Adapted from Blumenthal, G. R. & Tucker, W.H., in *X-ray Astronomy*, R. Giacconi & H. Gursky, eds., D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dorderecht, 1974.)

### Maxwell's equations (Gaussian units)

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{4\pi\mathbf{J}}{c} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t},$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0.$$

Constitutive relations for an isotropic, permeable, conducting dielectric:

$$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{J} = \sigma \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \mu \mathbf{H}.$$

Macroscopic media:

$$\text{polarization:} \quad \mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{4\pi} (\mathbf{D} - \epsilon \mathbf{E}),$$

$$\text{magnetization:} \quad \mathbf{M} = \frac{1}{4\pi} (\mathbf{B} - \mu \mathbf{H}).$$

Vector and scalar potentials:

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}.$$

For homogeneous, isotropic media, Maxwell's equations become:

$$\nabla^2\phi = \frac{\epsilon\mu}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial t^2} - \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \frac{\epsilon\mu}{c} \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial t} \right) - \frac{4\pi\rho}{\epsilon}.$$

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} = \frac{\mu\epsilon}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} \mathbf{A} + \nabla \left( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \frac{\epsilon\mu}{c} \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial t} \right) - \frac{4\pi\mu}{c} \mathbf{J}.$$

Lorentz gauge:

$$\left( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \frac{\epsilon\mu}{c} \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial t} \right) = 0.$$

Coulomb gauge:

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0.$$


---

### Conversion table for given amount of physical quantity

Physical quantity	Symbol	Rationalized mks	Gaussian
Charge	$q$	1 coulomb	$3 \times 10^9$ statcoulombs
Charge density	$\rho$	$1 \text{ coul m}^{-3}$	$3 \times 10^3 \text{ statcoulombs cm}^{-3}$
Current	$I$	1 ampere	$3 \times 10^9$ statamperes
Current density	$J$	$1 \text{ amp m}^{-2}$	$3 \times 10^5 \text{ statamperes cm}^{-2}$
Electric field	$E$	$1 \text{ volt m}^{-1}$	$1/3 \times 10^{-4} \text{ statvolt cm}^{-1}$
Potential	$\phi, V$	1 volt	$1/300 \text{ statvolt}$
Polarization	$P$	$1 \text{ coul m}^{-2}$	$3 \times 10^5 \text{ statcoulombs cm}^{-2}$
Displacement	$D$	$1 \text{ coul m}^{-2}$	$12\pi \times 10^5 \text{ statvolt cm}^{-1}$
Conductivity	$\sigma$	$1 \text{ mho m}^{-1}$	$9 \times 10^9 \text{ s}^{-1}$
Magnetic induction	$B$	$1 \text{ weber m}^{-2}$	$10^4 \text{ gauss}$
Magnetic field	$H$	$1 \text{ ampere-turn m}^{-1}$	$4\pi \times 10^{-3} \text{ oersted}$
Magnetization	$M$	$1 \text{ weber m}^{-2}$	$1/4\pi \times 10^4 \text{ gauss}$

(Adapted from *Classical Electrodynamics*, Jackson, J. D., John Wiley and Sons, 1962.)

### Standard definitions in radiative transport theory

Quantity	Symbol	Units (cgs)
Specific intensity or radiance	$I_\nu$	erg cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup> sr <sup>-1</sup>
Brightness	$B_\nu = -I_\nu$	erg cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup> sr <sup>-1</sup>
Flux density	$F_\nu = \int I_\nu \cos \theta d\Omega$	erg cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup>
Mean intensity	$J_\nu = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int I_\nu d\Omega$	erg cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup>
Radiation density	$u_\nu = \frac{1}{c} \int I_\nu d\Omega = \frac{4\pi}{c} J_\nu$	erg cm <sup>-3</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup>
Emission coefficient	$j_\nu$	erg cm <sup>-3</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup> sr <sup>-1</sup>
Emissivity	$\epsilon_\nu = \frac{4\pi}{\rho} j_\nu$ (isotropic emission, $\rho$ = density)	erg gm <sup>-1</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> Hz <sup>-1</sup>
Linear absorption coefficient	$\alpha_\nu = n\sigma_\nu$ ( $n$ = number density, $\sigma_\nu$ = cross-section)	cm <sup>-1</sup>
Mean free path	$l_\nu = \frac{1}{\alpha_\nu}$	cm
Optical depth	$\tau_\nu = \int \alpha_\nu ds$	dimensionless

## Electromagnetic relations

Quantity	Gaussian cgs	Rationalized mks (SI)
Conversion factors:		
Charge:	$2.99792458 \times 10^9$ esu	$= 1 \text{ C} = 1 \text{ A s}$
Potential:	$(1/299.792458)$ statvolt (ergs/esu)	$= 1 \text{ V} = 1 \text{ J C}^{-1}$
Magnetic field:	$10^4$ gauss $= 10^4$ dyne/esu	$= 1 \text{ T} = 1 \text{ N A}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-1}$
Lorentz force:	$\mathbf{F} = q \left( \mathbf{E} + \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{B} \right)$	$\mathbf{F} = q(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B})$
Maxwell equations:		
	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$
	$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} - \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t} = \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{J}$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} - \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{J}$
	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$
	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$
Constitutive relations:		
	$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E} + 4\pi \mathbf{P},$ $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B} - 4\pi \mathbf{M}$	$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon_0 \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{P},$ $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B}/\mu_0 - \mathbf{M}$
Linear media:	$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B}/\mu$	$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B}/\mu$
Permitivity of free space:	1	$\epsilon_0 = 8.854\ 187\dots \times 10^{-12} \text{ F m}^{-1}$
Permeability of free space:	1	$\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ N A}^{-2}$
Fields from potentials:	$\mathbf{E} = -\nabla V - \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}$ $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$	$\mathbf{E} = -\nabla V - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}$ $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$
Static potentials: (Coulomb gauge)	$V = \sum_{\text{charges}} \frac{q_i}{r_i}$ $= \int \frac{\rho(\mathbf{r}')}{ \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' } d^3x'$ $\mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{c} \oint \frac{I dl}{ \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' }$ $= \frac{1}{c} \int \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}')}{ \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' } d^3x'$	$V = \frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \sum_{\text{charges}} \frac{q_i}{r_i}$ $= \frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \int \frac{\rho(\mathbf{r}')}{ \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' } d^3x'$ $\mathbf{A} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \oint \frac{I dl}{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'}$ $= \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}')}{ \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' } d^3x'$
Relativistic transformations:		
$(v$ is the velocity of the primed frame as seen in the unprimed frame)		
	$\mathbf{E}'_\parallel = \mathbf{E}_\parallel$ $\mathbf{E}'_\perp = \gamma \left( \mathbf{E}_\perp + \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} \right)$ $\mathbf{B}'_\parallel = \mathbf{B}_\parallel$ $\mathbf{B}'_\perp = \gamma \left( \mathbf{B}_\perp - \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{E} \right)$	$\mathbf{E}'_\parallel = \mathbf{E}_\parallel$ $\mathbf{E}'_\perp = \gamma (\mathbf{E}_\perp + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B})$ $\mathbf{B}'_\parallel = \mathbf{B}_\parallel$ $\mathbf{B}'_\perp = \gamma \left( \mathbf{B}_\perp - \frac{1}{c^2} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{E} \right)$
	$\frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} = c^2 \times 10^{-7} \text{ N A}^{-2} = 8.987\ 55\dots \times 10^9 \text{ m F}^{-1};$	
	$\frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} = 10^{-7} \text{ N A}^{-2}; \quad c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0\epsilon_0}} = 2.997\ 924\ 58 \times 10^8 \text{ m s}^{-1}$	

(From Caso, C., et al., European Physical Journal, C3, 1, 1998)

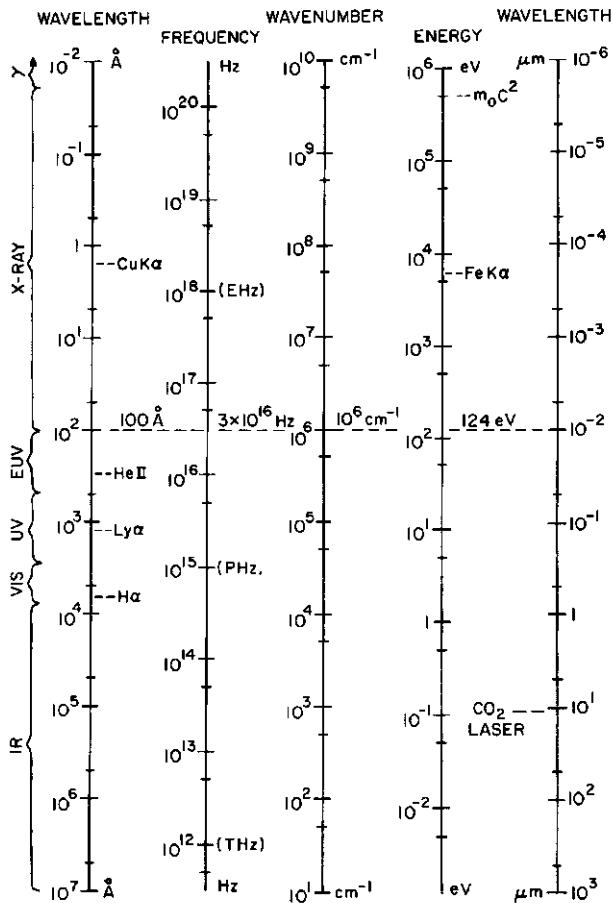
**Maxwell's equations in various system of units** ( $\epsilon_0$ ,  $\mu_0$ ,  $\mathbf{D}$ ,  $\mathbf{H}$ , macroscopic Maxwell's equations, and Lorentz force equation in various system of units)

System	$\epsilon_0$	$\mu_0$	$\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{H}$	Macroscopic Maxwell's equations	Lorentz force per unit charge
Electrostatic (esu)	1	$c^{-2}$	$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{c^2}\mathbf{P}$ $\mathbf{H} = c^2\mathbf{B} - \frac{4\pi}{c}\mathbf{M}$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho$ $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = 4\pi\mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$ $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ $\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$
Electro-magnetic (emu)	$c^{-2}$	1	$\mathbf{D} = \frac{(1/c^2)\mathbf{E} + 4\pi\mathbf{P}}{\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B} - 4\pi\mathbf{M}}$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho$ $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = 4\pi\mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$ $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ $\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$
Gaussian	1	1	$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{c}\mathbf{P}$ $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B} - 4\pi\mathbf{M}$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho$ $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{4\pi}{c}\mathbf{J} + \frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$ $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ $\mathbf{E} + \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{B}$
Heaviside-Lorentz	1	1	$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{P}$ $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{M}$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$ $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{c} \left( \mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t} \right)$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$ $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ $\mathbf{E} + \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{B}$
Rationalized mks (SI)	$\frac{10^7}{4\pi c^2}$	$4\pi \times 10^{-7}$	$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon_0 \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{P}$ $\mathbf{H} = (1/\mu_0) \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{M}$	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$ $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}$	$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0$ $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ $\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$

(Adapted from Jackson, J.D., *Classical Electrodynamics*, John Wiley and Sons, 1962.)

### Spectrum nomogram

Electromagnetic spectrum nomogram.



### Bibliography

- Radiation Processes in Astrophysics*, Tucker, W., The MIT Press, 1975.  
*Radiative Processes in Astrophysics*, Rybicki, G. B. & Lightman, A. P., John Wiley and Sons, 1979.  
*Classical Electrodynamics*, Jackson, J. D., John Wiley and Sons, 1999.  
*Astrophysical Formulae*, Lang, K. R., Springer-Verlag, 1999.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

# Chapter 13

---

## Plasma physics

*We have learned that matter is weird stuff.* - Freeman J. Dyson

Fundamental plasma physics parameters	406
<i>Frequencies</i>	406
<i>Lengths</i>	406
<i>Velocities</i>	407
<i>Dimensionless</i>	407
<i>Miscellaneous</i>	407
Approximate magnitudes in some typical plasmas	409
Approximate magnitudes for some astrophysical plasmas	410
Ionospheric parameters	411
Bibliography	411

## Fundamental plasma physics parameters

---

All quantities are in Gaussian cgs units except temperature ( $T, T_e, T_i$ ) expressed in eV and ion mass ( $m_i$ ) expressed in units of the proton mass,  $\mu = m_i/m_p$ ;  $Z$  is charge state;  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant;  $K$  is wavenumber;  $\gamma$  is the adiabatic index;  $\ln \Lambda$  is the Coulomb logarithm.

### Frequencies

electron gyrofrequency	$f_{ce} = \omega_{ce}/2\pi = 2.80 \times 10^6 B \text{ Hz}$
	$\omega_{ce} = eB/m_e c = 1.76 \times 10^7 B \text{ rad/s}$
ion gyrofrequency	$f_{ci} = \omega_{ci}/2\pi = 1.52 \times 10^3 Z\mu^{-1} B \text{ Hz}$
	$\omega_{ci} = ZeB/m_i c = 9.58 \times 10^3 Z\mu^{-1} B \text{ rad/s}$
electron plasma frequency	$f_{pe} = \omega_{pe}/2\pi = 8.98 \times 10^3 n_e^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ Hz}$
	$\omega_{pe} = (4\pi n_e e^2/m_e)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 5.64 \times 10^4 n_e^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ rad/s}$
ion plasma frequency	$f_{pi} = \omega_{pi}/2\pi$ $= 2.10 \times 10^2 Z\mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} n_i^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ Hz}$
	$\omega_{pi} = (4\pi n_i Z^2 e^2/m_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 1.32 \times 10^3 Z\mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} n_i^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ rad/s}$
electron trapping rate	$\nu_{Te} = (eKE/m_e)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 7.26 \times 10^8 K^{\frac{1}{2}} E^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ s}^{-1}$
ion trapping rate	$\nu_{Ti} = (ZeKE/m_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 1.69 \times 10^7 Z^{\frac{1}{2}} K^{\frac{1}{2}} E^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} \text{ s}^{-1}$
electron collision rate	$\nu_e = 2.91 \times 10^{-6} n_e \ln \Lambda T_e^{-3/2} \text{ s}^{-1}$
ion collision rate	$\nu_i = 4.80 \times 10^{-8} Z^4 \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} n_i \ln \Lambda T_i^{-3/2} \text{ s}^{-1}$

### Lengths

electron deBroglie length	$\lambda = \hbar/(m_e kT_e)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 2.76 \times 10^{-8} T_e^{-\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm}$
classical distance of minimum approach	$e^2/kT = 1.44 \times 10^{-7} T^{-1} \text{ cm}$
electron gyroradius	$r_e = v_{Te}/\omega_{ce} = 2.38 T_e^{\frac{1}{2}} B^{-1} \text{ cm}$
ion gyroradius	$r_i = v_{Ti}/\omega_{ci}$ $= 1.02 \times 10^2 \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} Z^{-1} T_i^{\frac{1}{2}} B^{-1} \text{ cm}$
plasma skin depth	$c/\omega_{pe} = 5.31 \times 10^5 n_e^{-\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm}$
Debye length	$\lambda_D = (kT/4\pi ne^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 7.43 \times 10^2 T^{\frac{1}{2}} n^{-\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm}$

**Fundamental plasma physics parameters (cont.)***Velocities*

electron thermal velocity	$v_{Te} = (kT_e/m_e)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 4.19 \times 10^7 T_e^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm s}^{-1}$
ion thermal velocity	$v_{Ti} = (kT_i/m_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 9.79 \times 10^5 \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} T_i^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm s}^{-1}$
ion sound velocity	$C_s = (\gamma Z k T_e / m_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 9.79 \times 10^5 (\gamma Z T_e / \mu)^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ cm s}^{-1}$
Alfvén velocity	$v_A = B / (4\pi n_i m_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ $= 2.18 \times 10^{11} \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} n_i^{-\frac{1}{2}} B \text{ cm s}^{-1}$

*Dimensionless*

(electron/proton mass ratio) $^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$(m_e/m_p)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 2.33 \times 10^{-2} = 1/42.9$
number of particles in Debye sphere	$(4\pi/3)n\lambda_D^3 = 1.72 \times 10^9 T^{3/2} n^{-\frac{1}{2}}$
Alfvén velocity/speed of light	$v_A/c = 7.28 \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}} n_i^{-\frac{1}{2}} B$
electron plasma/gyrofrequency ratio	$\omega_{pe}/\omega_{ce} = 3.21 \times 10^{-3} n_e^{\frac{1}{2}} B^{-1}$
ion plasma/gyrofrequency ratio	$\omega_{pi}/\omega_{ci} = 0.137 \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} n_i^{\frac{1}{2}} B^{-1}$
thermal/magnetic energy ratio	$\beta = \frac{8\pi n k T}{B^2} = 4.03 \times 10^{-11} n T B^{-2}$
magnetic/ion rest energy ratio	$B^2 / 8\pi n_i m_i c^2 = 26.5 \mu^{-1} n_i^{-1} B^2$

*Miscellaneous (note: T is in °K)*

electrical resistivity       $\eta \approx 3.80 \times 10^3 \frac{Z \ln \Lambda}{\gamma_E T^{3/2}} \text{ ohm-cm}$   
with

Ionic Charge Z	1	2	4	16	$\infty$
$\gamma_E$	0.582	0.683	0.785	0.923	1.000

In a strong magnetic field, the resistivity transverse to the field is

$$\eta = 1.29 \times 10^4 \frac{Z \ln \Lambda}{T^{3/2}} \text{ ohm-cm}$$

### Fundamental plasma physics parameters (cont.)

$$\text{Coulomb logarithm } \ln \Lambda = \frac{3}{2ZZ_1e^3} \left( \frac{k^3 T^3}{\pi n_e} \right)^{1/2}$$

$\ln \Lambda$  for an electron-proton gas

$T^\circ\text{K}$	Electron Density $n_e \text{ cm}^{-3}$								
	1	$10^3$	$10^6$	$10^9$	$10^{12}$	$10^{15}$	$10^{18}$	$10^{21}$	$10^{24}$
$10^2$	16.3	12.8	9.43	5.97					
$10^3$	19.7	16.3	12.8	9.43	5.97				
$10^4$	23.2	19.7	16.3	12.8	9.43	5.97			
$10^5$	26.7	23.2	19.7	16.3	12.8	9.43	5.97		
$10^6$	29.7	26.3	22.8	19.3	15.9	12.4	8.96	5.54	
$10^7$	32.0	28.5	25.1	21.6	18.1	14.7	11.2	7.85	4.39
$10^8$	34.3	30.9	27.4	24.0	20.5	17.0	13.6	10.1	6.69

(From Spitzer, L., *Physics of Fully Ionized Gases*, Interscience Publishers, 1956.)

life of magnetic field in a plasma:

$$\begin{aligned}\tau &= 4\pi L^2 / \eta c^2 \\ &= 1.5 \times 10^{-12} L^2 (\ln \Lambda)^{-1} \text{ T}^{3/2} \text{ s} \\ &\quad (L \text{ is the characteristic scale of the field}).\end{aligned}$$

Maxwellian velocity distribution:

$$f(v)dv = 4\pi \left( \frac{m}{2\pi kT} \right)^{3/2} e^{-mv^2/(2kT)} v^2 dv,$$

$$\int_0^\infty f(v)dv = 1,$$

$$\bar{v} = (8kT/\pi m)^{1/2} \text{ cm s}^{-1},$$

$$\begin{aligned}v_{\text{rms}} &= (3kT/m)^{1/2} \\ &= 6.7 \times 10^5 T^{1/2} \quad \text{for electrons} \\ &= 1.57 \times 10^4 T^{1/2} \quad \text{for protons},\end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} m_e v_{\text{rms}}^2 = 3kT/2 = 2.1 \times 10^{-16} T \text{ erg}.$$

magnetic pressure is given by

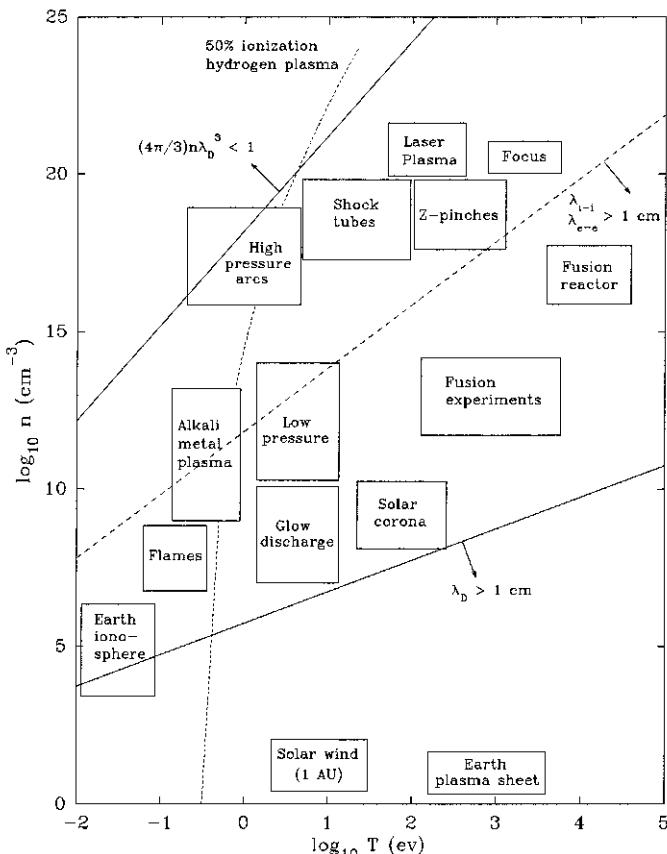
$$P_{\text{mag}} = B^2 / 8\pi = 3.98 \times 10^8 (B/B_0)^2 \text{ dynes/cm}^2 = 3.93 (B/B_0)^2 \text{ atm},$$

where  $B_0 = 10 \text{ kG} = 1 \text{ T}$ .

(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, U.S. Naval Research Laboratory, 2000 and Spitzer, L., *Physics of Fully Ionized Gases*, Interscience Publishers, 1962.)

## Approximate magnitudes in some typical plasmas

Plasma Type	$n \text{ cm}^{-3}$	$T \text{ eV}$	$\omega_{pe} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\lambda_D \text{ cm}$	$n\lambda_D^3$	$\nu_{ei} \text{ s}^{-1}$
Interstellar gas	1	1	$6 \times 10^4$	$7 \times 10^2$	$4 \times 10^8$	$7 \times 10^{-5}$
Gaseous nebula	$10^3$	1	$2 \times 10^6$	20	$10^7$	$6 \times 10^{-2}$
Solar Corona	$10^9$	$10^2$	$2 \times 10^9$	$2 \times 10^{-1}$	$8 \times 10^6$	60
Diffuse hot plasma	$10^{12}$	$10^2$	$6 \times 10^{10}$	$7 \times 10^{-3}$	$4 \times 10^5$	40
Solar atmosphere, gas discharge	$10^{14}$	1	$6 \times 10^{11}$	$7 \times 10^{-5}$	40	$2 \times 10^9$
Warm plasma	$10^{14}$	10	$6 \times 10^{11}$	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	$10^3$	$10^7$
Hot plasma	$10^{14}$	$10^2$	$6 \times 10^{11}$	$7 \times 10^{-4}$	$4 \times 10^4$	$4 \times 10^6$
Thermonuclear plasma	$10^{15}$	$10^4$	$2 \times 10^{12}$	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	$10^7$	$5 \times 10^4$
Theta pinch	$10^{16}$	$10^2$	$6 \times 10^{12}$	$7 \times 10^{-5}$	$4 \times 10^3$	$3 \times 10^8$
Dense hot plasma	$10^{18}$	$10^2$	$6 \times 10^{13}$	$7 \times 10^{-6}$	$4 \times 10^2$	$2 \times 10^{10}$
Laser Plasma	$10^{20}$	$10^2$	$6 \times 10^{14}$	$7 \times 10^{-7}$	40	$2 \times 10^{12}$



(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, U.S. Naval Research Laboratory, 2000.)

### Approximate magnitudes for some astrophysical plasmas

Plasma	$N_e$ ( $\text{cm}^{-3}$ )	$T_e$ (K)	$B$ (gauss)	$\nu_{pe}$ (Hz)	$\lambda_D$ (cm)
Ionosphere	$10^3 - 10^6$	$10^2 - 10^3$	$10^{-1}$	$3 \times 10^5 - 10^7$	$7 \times 10^{-2} - 7$
Interplanetary space	$1 - 10^4$	$10^2 - 10^3$	$10^{-6} - 10^{-5}$	$10^4 - 10^6$	$7 \times 10^{-1} - 2 \times 10^2$
Solar corona	$10^8 - 10^{12}$ (flare)	$10^6 - 10^7$ (flare)	$10^{-5} - 1$	$10^8 - 10^{10}$	$10^{-2} - 2$
Solar chromosphere	$10^{12}$	$2 - 3 \times 10^4$	$10^3$	$10^{10}$	$10^{-3}$
Stellar interiors	$10^{27}$	$10^{7.5}$	—	$3 \times 10^{17}$	$10^{-9}$
Planetary nebulae	$10^3 - 10^5$	$10^3 - 10^4$	$10^{-4} - 10^{-3}$	$3 \times 10^5 - 3 \times 10^6$	$7 \times 10^{-1} - 2 \times 10^1$
H II regions	$10^2 - 10^3$	$10^3 - 10^4$	$10^{-6}$	$10^5 - 3 \times 10^5$	$7 - 7 \times 10^1$
H I regions	$10^{-3}$	$10^2$	—	$3 \times 10^2$	$2 \times 10^3$
White dwarfs	$10^{32}$	$10^7$	$10^6$ (surface)	$10^{20}$	$2 \times 10^{-12}$
Pulsars	$10^{42}$ (center)	—	$10^{12}$ (surface)	$10^{25}$	—
	$10^{12}$ (surface)	—	—	$10^{10}$	—
Interstellar space	$10^{-3} - 10$	$10^2$	$10^{-6}$	$3 \times 10^2 - 3 \times 10^4$	$2 \times 10^1 - 2 \times 10^3$
Intergalactic space	$\lesssim 10^{-5}$	$10^5 - 10^6$	$\lesssim 10^{-8}$	$< 30$	$2 \times 10^6$

$N_e$  = electron density;  $T_e$  = electron temperature;  $B$  = magnetic field;  $\nu_{pe}$  = plasma frequency;  $\lambda_D$  = Debye length.

## Ionospheric parameters

The following tables give average nighttime values. Where two numbers are entered, the first refers to the lower and the second to the upper portion of the layer.

Quantity	E Region	F Region
Altitude(km)	90 – 160	160 – 500
Number density( $\text{m}^{-3}$ )	$1.5 \times 10^{10}$ – $3.0 \times 10^{10}$	$5 \times 10^{10}$ – $2 \times 10^{11}$
Height-integrated number density ( $\text{m}^{-2}$ )	$9 \times 10^{14}$	$4.5 \times 10^{15}$
Ion-neutral collision frequency ( $\text{s}^{-1}$ )	$2 \times 10^3$ – $10^2$	0.5 – 0.05
Ion gyro-/collision frequency ratio $\kappa_i$	0.09 – 2.0	$4.6 \times 10^2$ – $5.0 \times 10^3$
Ion Pedersen factor $\kappa_i/(1 + \kappa_i^2)$	0.09 – 0.5	$2.2 \times 10^{-3}$ – $2 \times 10^{-4}$
Ion Hall factor $\kappa_i^2/(1 + \kappa_i^2)$	$8 \times 10^{-4}$ – 0.8	1.0
Electron-neutral collision frequency	$1.5 \times 10^4$ – $9.0 \times 10^2$	80 – 10
Electron gyro-/collision frequency ratio $\kappa_e$	$4.1 \times 10^2$ – $6.9 \times 10^3$	$7.8 \times 10^4$ – $6.2 \times 10^5$
Electron Pedersen factor $\kappa_e/(1 + \kappa_e^2)$	$2.7 \times 10^{-3}$ – $1.5 \times 10^{-4}$	$10^{-5}$ – $1.5 \times 10^{-6}$
Electron Hall factor $\kappa_e^2/(1 + \kappa_e^2)$	1.0	1.0
Mean molecular weight	28 – 26	22 – 16
Ion gyrofrequency ( $\text{s}^{-1}$ )	180 – 190	230 – 300
Neutral diffusion coefficient ( $\text{m}^2\text{s}^{-1}$ )	$30 - 5 \times 10^3$	$10^5$

The terrestrial magnetic field in the lower ionosphere at equatorial latitudes is approximately  $B_0 = 0.35 \times 10^{-4}$  tesla. The earth's radius is  $R_E = 6371$  km.

(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, U.S. Naval Research Laboratory, 2000.)

## Bibliography

- NRL Plasma Formulary*, Huba, J.D., Naval Research Laboratory, 2000.  
*Physics of Fully Ionized Gases*, Spitzer, L., Interscience Publishers, 1962.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

## Chapter 14

---

# Experimental astronomy and astrophysics

*... no one believes an hypothesis except its originator but everyone believes an experiment except the experimenter.* - W. I. B. Beveridge

Attenuation of electromagnetic radiation	417
<i>Extrapolated absorption and absorption-jump ratios</i>	418
<i>Absorption-edge jump ratios and differences</i>	418
<i>Wavelengths of K absorption edges</i>	419
<i>Binding (absorption edge) energies of the elements</i>	419
<i>Mass attenuation coefficients, ranges, cross-sections</i>	420
K Fluorescence yields	433
K, L, M fluorescent yields	434
Passage of charged particles through matter	434
<i>Total ionization loss by electrons or positrons</i>	434
<i>Radiative loss for non-relativistic electrons</i>	435
<i>Ionization and radiative loss for highly relativistic electrons</i>	436
<i>Total ionization loss by heavy charged particles</i>	437
<i>Approximate range-energy relationships</i>	437
<i>Energy units for high-energy particles</i>	439
<i>Energy loss rate</i>	440
<i>Range of heavy charged particles</i>	441
<i>Charged particles in silicon</i>	442
X-ray, gamma ray, electron, neutron, and alpha sources	444
<i>X-ray sources</i>	444
<i>Gamma-ray energy standards</i>	445
<i>Electron energy standards</i>	446
<i>Characteristics of Be(<math>\alpha, n</math>) neutron sources</i>	447
<i>Common alpha-emitting radioisotope sources</i>	448

Atomic and nuclear properties of materials	449
Characteristics of synchrotron radiation	455
<i>Practical formulae for electron storage rings</i>	457
X-ray spectroscopy	459
<i>Crystal spectroscopy</i>	459
<i>Crystal properties</i>	460
<i>Useful characteristic lines for X-ray spectroscopy</i>	461
<i>Concave grating spectroscopy</i>	461
<i>Transmission grating spectroscopy</i>	463
Reflection of X-rays	464
<i>Reflectivity vs. wavelength (energy)</i>	467
<i>Photoabsorption cross sections and atomic scattering factors - nickel</i>	473
<i>Photoabsorption cross sections and atomic scattering factors - gold</i>	474
<i>Wolter type I mirror system</i>	475
Vacuum technology	476
<i>Kinetic theory of gases</i>	476
<i>Physical properties of gases and vapors</i>	477
<i>Units of gas quantity</i>	478
<i>Permeability of gases</i>	479
<i>Outgassing rates for polymers</i>	479
Physical and thermodynamic properties of cryogenic fluids	480
Equivalents for various cryogenic fluids	481
Paschen curves for various gases	481
Optical point spread function	482
<i>The line spread function</i>	482
<i>The edge trace</i>	482
<i>The modulation transfer function</i>	482
<i>The full-width half maximum</i>	483
<i>The root mean square radius</i>	483
<i>The encircled energy function</i>	483
<i>The half power radius</i>	484
<i>Point spread function for a circular aperture</i>	485
Optical telescopes	486
Photometry	488
<i>Spectral luminous efficiency</i>	488
<i>Summary of typical sources/parameters</i>	490
<i>Conversion table for various photometric units</i>	490

<i>Luminance values for various sources</i>	491
<i>Typical values of natural scene illuminance</i>	491
<i>Radiant responsivity</i>	492
<i>Standard units, symbols, and defining equations</i>	493
Commercial lasers	495
Index of refraction of air	495
Properties of optical materials	496
Theory of lenses	498
Thin lens	498
Thick lens	499
The lensmaker's equation	500
Numerical aperture	500
Visible and ultraviolet light detectors	501
Photodiode	501
Image intensifiers	503
Charge coupled devices (CCD's)	504
Comparison of various optical detectors	506
Photomultipliers	507
Spectral matching factors	509
Nominal composition and characteristics of various photocathodes	511
Typical photocathode spectral response characteristics	513
Short wavelength transmission limits of some UV window materials	513
UV fluorescent converters (wavelength shifters)	514
X-ray and gamma-ray detectors	514
Detection principles	514
Scintillation detector	515
Gas proportional counter	516
Position sensitive gas proportional detector	517
Electron drift velocities	518
Ionization and excitation data for a number of gases	519
Solid state detector	520
Charge-coupled device (CCD)	520
Microchannel plate detector	521
Properties of common X-ray detectors	522
Properties of intrinsic silicon and germanium	523
Properties of scintillation and solid-state detector materials	524
Properties of materials used in X-ray detector systems	525

<i>Quantum calorimeter</i>	527
<i>Compton telescope for high energy gamma rays</i>	528
<i>Spark chamber telescope for high energy gamma rays</i>	528
Level of activity for common materials	529
Properties of coaxial cables	530
Resistor color code	531
Bibliography	532

## Attenuation of electromagnetic radiation

---

$$I = I_0 e^{-(\mu/\rho)t},$$

$I_0$  = initial intensity of a collimated photon beam,

$I$  = intensity of beam after traversing a thickness  $t$  of material density  $\rho$ ,

$(\mu/\rho)$  = total mass attenuation coefficient

$$= \sigma/\rho + \tau/\rho + k/\rho,$$

$\sigma/\rho$  = total Compton mass attenuation coefficient,

$\tau/\rho$  = photoelectric mass absorption coefficient

$$\left( \sim \frac{Z^4}{A} E^{-8/3} \text{ between absorption edges} \right),$$

$k/\rho$  = pair production mass attenuation coefficient.

Mixtures of materials:

$$\mu/\rho = \sum_i (\mu_i/\rho_i) \omega_i,$$

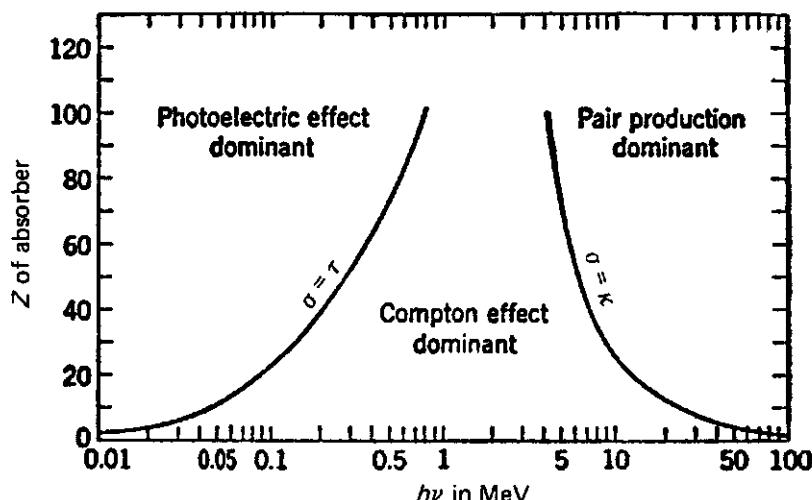
where

$\mu_i/\rho_i$  = mass attenuation coefficient of element  $i$ ,

$\omega_i$  = fraction by weight of element  $i$ .

Photon mean free path =  $[(\mu/\rho)\rho]^{-1}$ .

Relative importance of the three major types of electromagnetic interactions. The lines show the values of  $Z$  and  $h\nu$  for which the two neighboring effects are just equal. (Evans, R.D., *The Atomic Nucleus*, McGraw-Hill, 1955, with permission.)



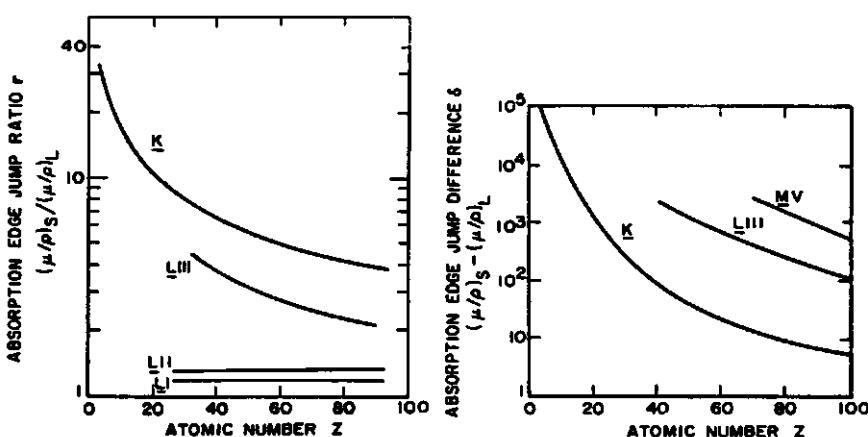
*Extrapolated absorption and absorption-jump ratios ( $r$ ) at the K-edge*

Z	element	Atomic weight	Density (g cm <sup>-3</sup> )	$\lambda_k$ (Å)	$E_k$ (keV)	yield $\omega_k$	Fluor.		
							$(\mu/\rho)^-$ (cm <sup>2</sup> g <sup>-1</sup> )	$(\mu/\rho)^+$	$r$
4	Be	9.01	1.85	112	0.111		179000	(5000)	(35)
5	B	10.81	2.34	66.0	0.188		88400	3130	28.3
6	C	12.01	2.26	43.7	0.284		53900	2230	24.2
7	N	14.01	0.00125	30.9	0.402		32800	1540	21.4
8	O	16.00	0.00143	23.3	0.532		22400	1160	19.3
9	F	19.00	0.00170	18.1	0.685		14800	846	17.5
10	Ne	20.18	0.00090	14.3	0.867		10950	687	15.94
11	Na	22.99	0.97	11.56	1.072		7760	525	14.78
12	Mg	24.31	1.74	9.50	1.305		6000	440	13.63
13	Al	26.98	2.70	7.95	1.560	0.036	4500	355	12.68
14	Si	28.09	2.33	6.74	1.839	0.047	3640	307	11.89
15	P	30.97	1.82	5.77	2.146	0.060	2800	251	11.18
16	S	32.06	2.07	5.01	2.472	0.076	2340	222	10.52
17	Cl	35.45	0.00317	4.38	2.822	0.094	1840	185	9.92
18	Ar	39.95	0.00178	3.87	3.203	0.115	1440	154	9.34
19	K	39.10	0.86	3.44	3.607	0.138	1300	148	8.79
20	Ca	40.08	1.55	3.07	4.038	0.163	1120	135	8.28

(After Henke, B.L. & Elgin, R.L. in *Advances in X-ray Analysis*, Vol. 13. Plenum Press, New York, 1970.)

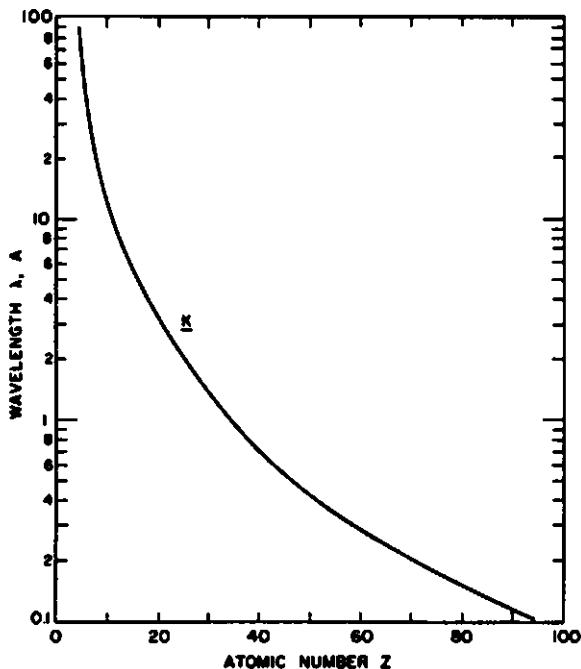
*Absorption-edge jump ratios and differences*

(From Bertin, P., *Principles and Practice of X-ray Spectrometric Analysis*, Plenum Press, 1975, with permission.)



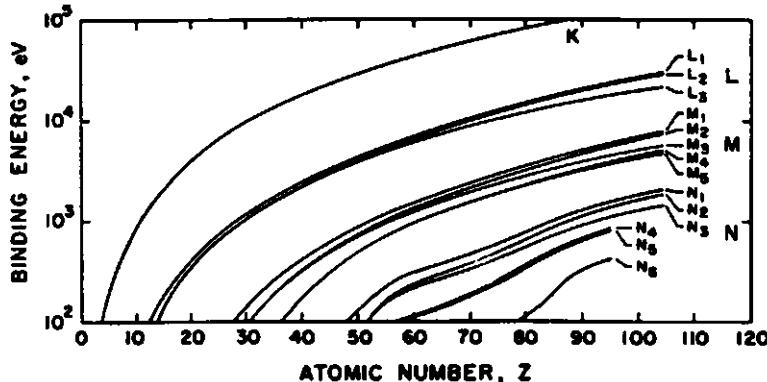
### *Wavelengths of K absorption edges*

(Adapted from Bertin, P., *Principles and Practice of X-ray Spectrometric Analysis*, Plenum Press, 1975.)



### *Binding (absorption edge) energies of the elements*

(From Feldman, L.C. and Mayer, J.W., *Fundamentals of Surface and Thin Film Analysis*, Elsevier Science Publishing Co., Inc., 1986.)



***Mass attenuation coefficients (cm<sup>2</sup> g<sup>-1</sup>)***

Wave-length (Å)	Poly- propylene (CH <sub>2</sub> )	Air					
		Mylar (C <sub>10</sub> H <sub>8</sub> O <sub>4</sub> )	Teflon (CF <sub>2</sub> )	N = 78% Ar = 1%	CH <sub>4</sub> = 10% Ar = 90%	Methane (CH <sub>4</sub> )	Energy (eV)
2.0	8	14	28	21	230	7	6199.0
4.0	69	116	220	148	162	60	3099.5
6.0	234	384	700	481	467	205	2066.3
8.0	550	870	1540	1090	1020	479	1549.8
10.0	1040	1630	2800	2020	1850	910	1239.8
12.0	1740	2680	4250	3310	3010	1520	1033.2
14.0	2660	4040	6700	4980	4500	2330	885.6
16.0	3830	5800	9400	7100	6400	3350	774.9
18.0	5200	7800	12600	9500	8400	4570	688.8
20.0	6900	10200	2780	12400	10900	6100	619.9
22.0	8800	12900	3540	15700	13500	7700	563.5
24.0	11000	8500	4430	14100	16400	9700	516.6
26.0	13500	10400	5400	17100	19600	11800	476.8
28.0	16200	12400	6500	20400	22800	14100	442.8
30.0	19200	14700	7800	24000	26300	16800	413.3
32.0	22400	17200	9100	2290	29700	19600	387.4
34.0	25900	19900	10600	2650	33300	22700	364.6
36.0	29600	22800	12100	3040	36900	25900	344.4
38.0	33600	25800	13800	3460	40500	29300	326.3
40.0	37800	29100	15600	3810	37600	33000	309.9
42.0	42200	32500	17500	4270	40900	36900	295.2
44.0	1940	3350	6900	4780	42600	1700	281.8
46.0	2180	3760	7800	5300	45600	1910	269.5
48.0	2430	4170	8600	5900	48900	2130	258.3
50.0	2690	4590	9500	6400	52000	2350	248.0
52.0	2960	5100	10500	6300		2590	238.4
54.0	3240	5600	11500	7000		2840	229.6
56.0	3540	6100	12500	7600		3100	221.4
58.0	3860	6600	13600	8200		3380	213.8
60.0	4190	7200	14800	8900		3660	206.6
62.0	4540	7800	16000	9700		3970	200.0
64.0	4880	8400	17300	10400		4270	193.7
66.0	5200	9000	18600	11200		4570	187.8
68.0	5700	9700	19900	12100		4940	182.3
70.0	6000	10300	21300	12900		5200	177.1
72.0	6400	11100	22700	13800		5600	172.2
74.0	6800	11800	24200	14700		6000	167.5
76.0	7300	12500	25700	15600		6400	163.1

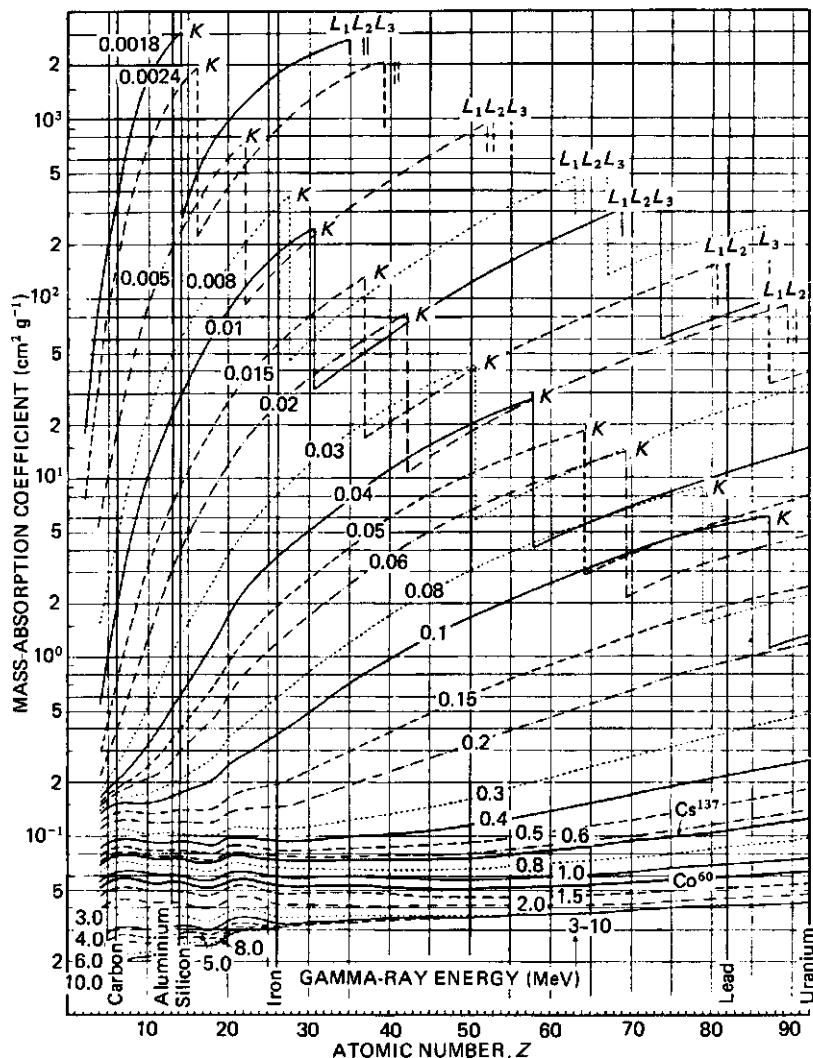
***Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)***

Wave-length (Å)	Poly- propylene (CH <sub>2</sub> )	Mylar (C <sub>10</sub> H <sub>8</sub> O <sub>4</sub> )	Teflon (CF <sub>2</sub> )	Air			Methane (CH <sub>4</sub> )	Energy (eV)
				N = 78%	CH <sub>4</sub> = 10%	O = 21% P 10 Ar = 1% Ar = 90%		
78.0	7700	13300	27200	16600			6700	158.9
80.0	8100	14100	28800	17600			7100	155.0
82.0	8600	14900	30500	18600			7600	151.2
84.0	9100	15800	32100	19700			7900	147.6
86.0	9600	16600	33800	20800			8400	144.2
88.0	10100	17500	35500	21900			8800	140.9
90.0	10600	18400	37300	23100			9300	137.8
92.0	11100	19400	39100	24200			9700	134.8
94.0	11700	20300	40900	25400			10300	131.9
96.0	12200	21300	43000	26700			10700	129.1
98.0	12800	22300	44600	28000			11200	126.5
100.0	13400	23300	46300	29200			11800	124.0
105.0	15000	26000	51000	32700			13100	118.1
110.0	16600	28800	56000	36200			14500	112.7
115.0	18200	31600	61000	39900			15900	107.8
120.0	20000	34600	67000	43800			17500	103.3
125.0	21900	38000	72000	48000			19200	99.2
130.0	23900	41100	78000	52000			20900	95.4
135.0	25900	44600	83000	57000			22700	91.8
140.0	28100	48200	89000	61000			24600	88.6
145.0	30300	52000	95000	65000			26500	85.5
150.0	32600	55000	101000	71000			28500	82.7

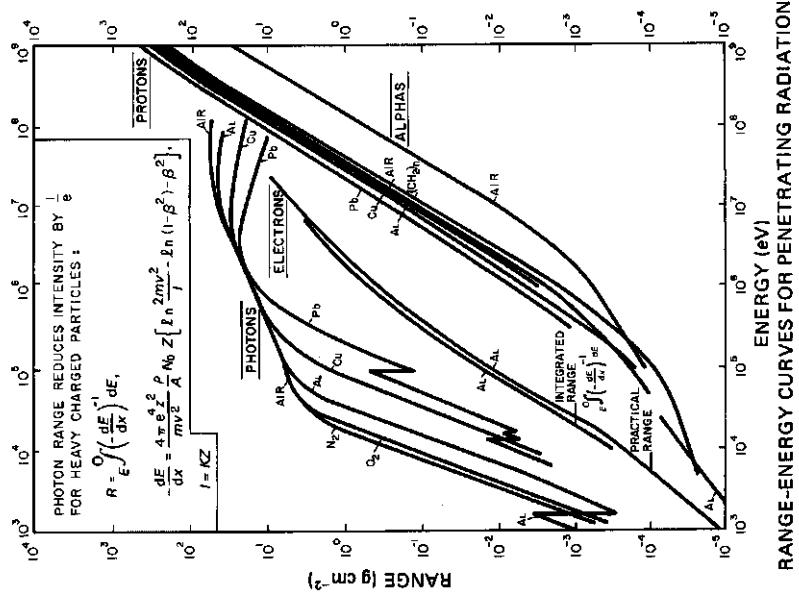
(Adapted from *The Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, CRC Press, Cleveland, 1976.)

### Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)

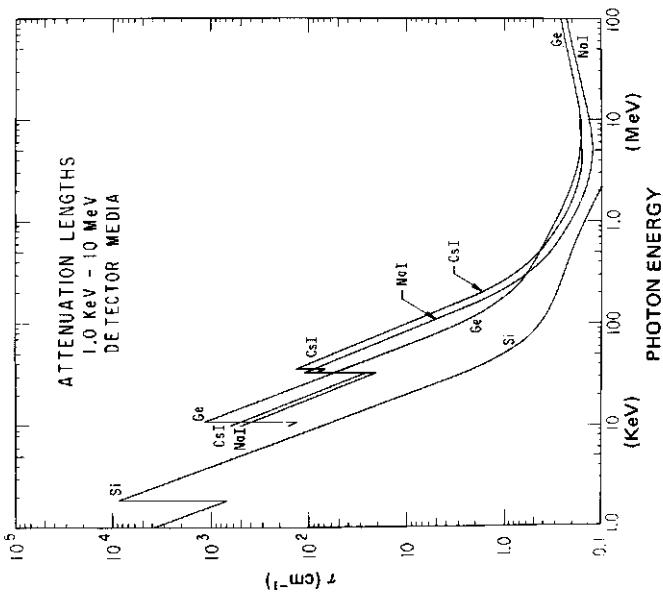
Total mass-attenuation coefficients for gamma-rays in all elements from Be to U. Energy range 1.8 keV–10 MeV. (From *Nucleonics*, 19, 62, 1961.)



The curves are labeled with the incident energy in Mev. For example, for tin ( $Z = 50$ ), at 0.2 Mev, the mass-attenuation coefficient is  $0.3 \text{ cm}^2 \text{ g}^{-1}$ .

*Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)*

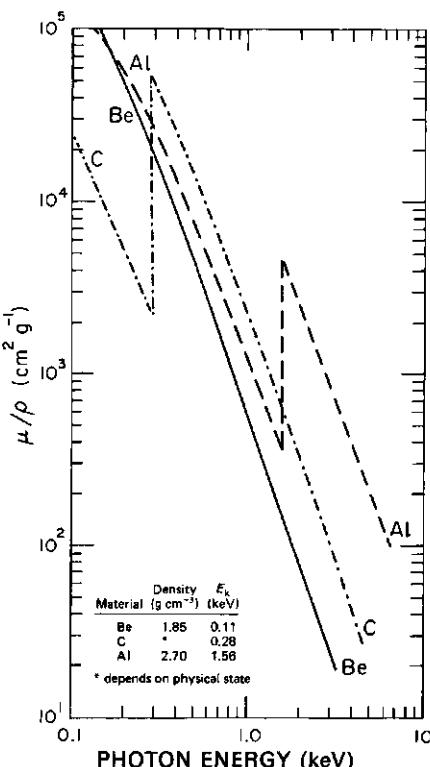
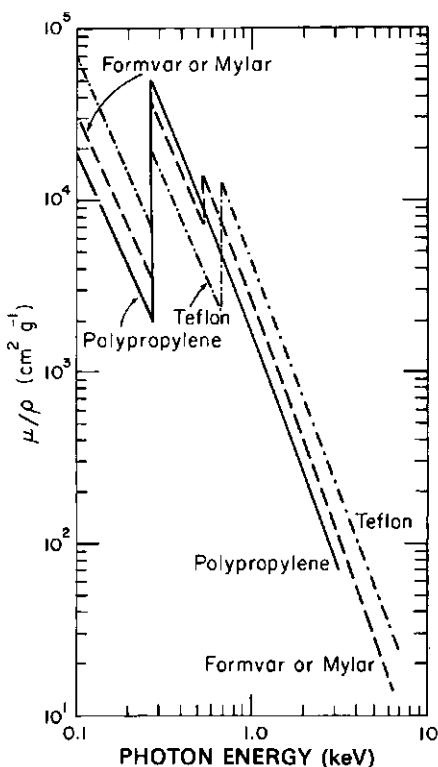
(Adapted from Filius, R., *Satellite Instruments Using Solid State Detectors*, Ph.D. thesis, State University of Iowa, Iowa City, 1963.)



(Adapted from Peterson, L. in *Annual Review of Astronomy and Astrophysics*, Annual Review Inc., Palo Alto, California, 1975.)

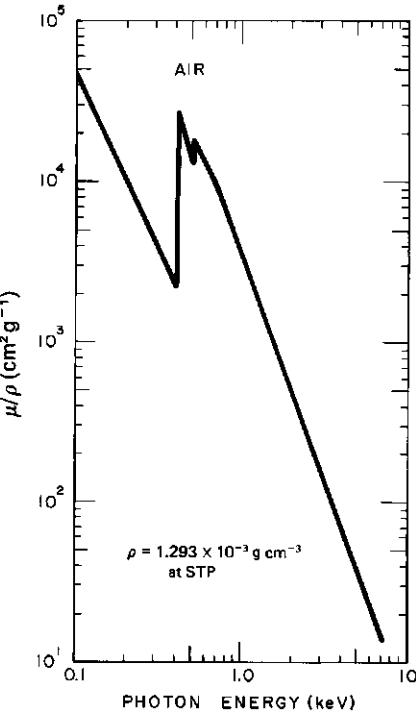
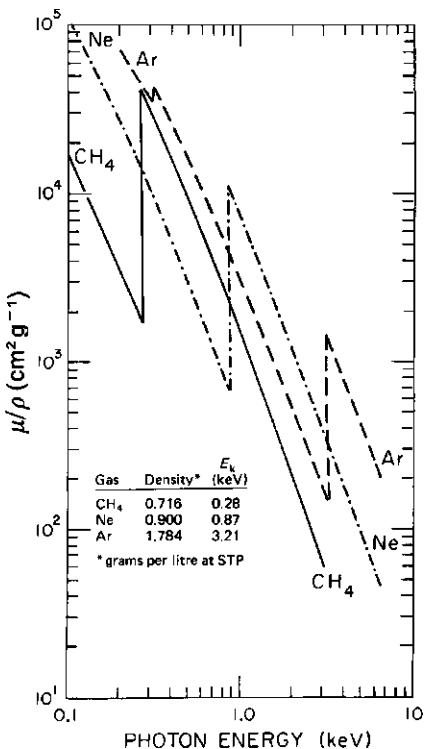
### **Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)**

Photoelectric mass absorption coefficients for various window or filter materials.



**Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)**

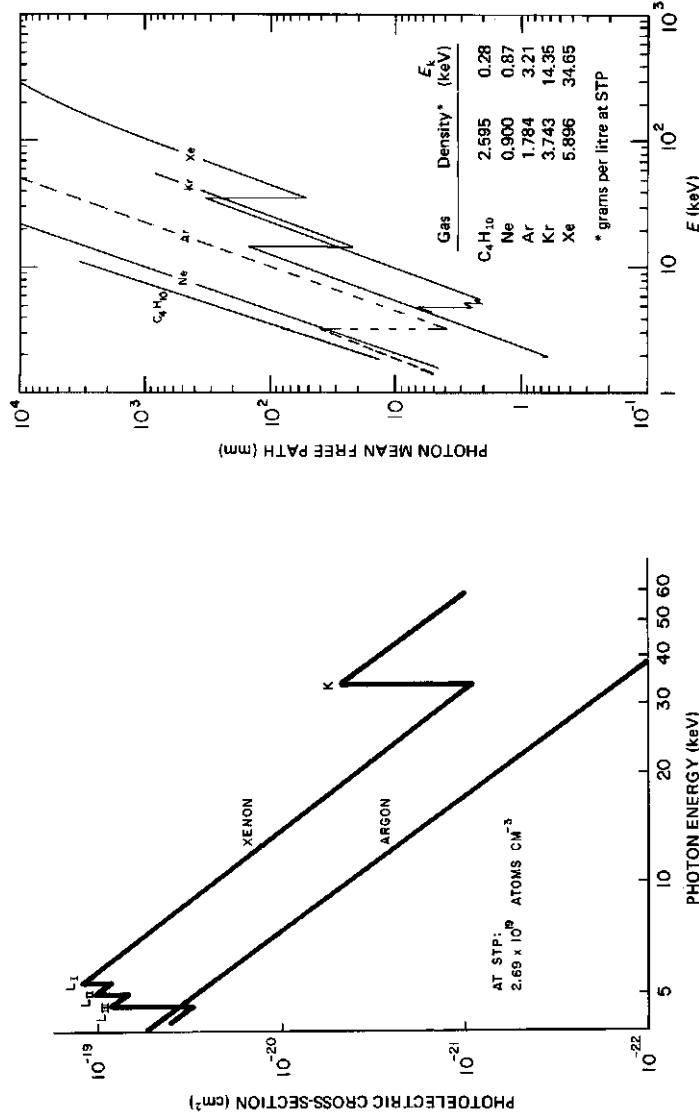
Photoelectric mass absorption coefficients for various gases.



### Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)

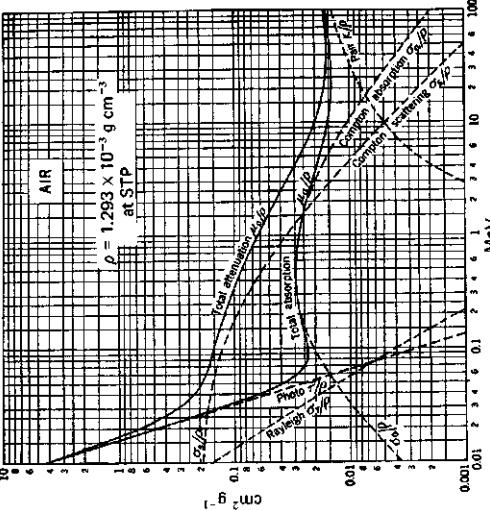
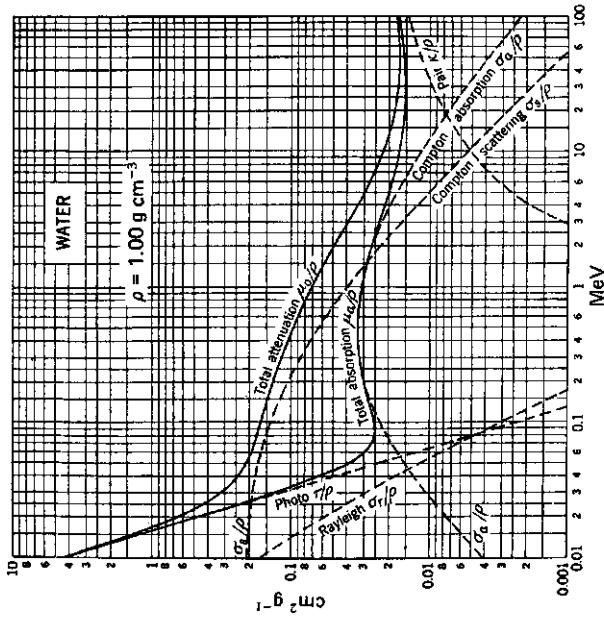
Photoelectric cross-section of xenon and argon as a function of photon energy. (Adapted from Anderson, F.D., *A high Resolution Large Area Gas Scintillation Proportional Counter for Use in X-ray Astronomy*, Ph.D. thesis, Columbia University, 1978.)

Photon mean free path versus energy for various gases at STP.



Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in water.  
(From Evans, R.D., *op. cit.*)

Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in air. The curve marked 'total absorption' is  $(\mu_a/\rho) = (\sigma_a/\rho) + (\tau/\rho) + (\kappa/\rho)$ , where  $\sigma_a$ ,  $\tau$ , and  $\kappa$  are the corresponding linear coefficients for Compton absorption, photoelectric absorption, and pair production. When the Compton scattering coefficient  $\sigma_s$  is added to  $\mu_a$ , we obtain the curve marked 'total attenuation' which is  $(\mu_0/\rho) = (\mu_a/\rho) + (\sigma_s/\rho)$ . The total Rayleigh scattering cross-section ( $\sigma_r/\rho$ ) is shown separately. Because the Rayleigh scattering is elastic and is confined to small angles, it has not been included in  $\mu_0/\rho$ . In computing these curves, the composition of 'air' was taken as 78.04 volume per cent nitrogen, 21.02 volume per cent oxygen, and 0.94 volume per cent argon. At 0°C and 760 mm Hg pressure, the density of air is  $\rho = 0.001293 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ . (Adapted from Evans, R.D., *The Atomic Nucleus*, McGraw-Hill, 1955, with permission.)

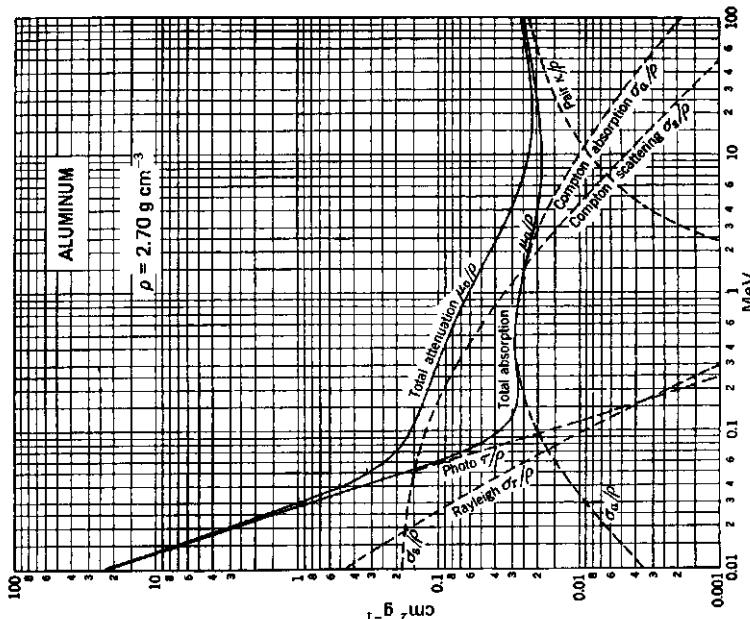
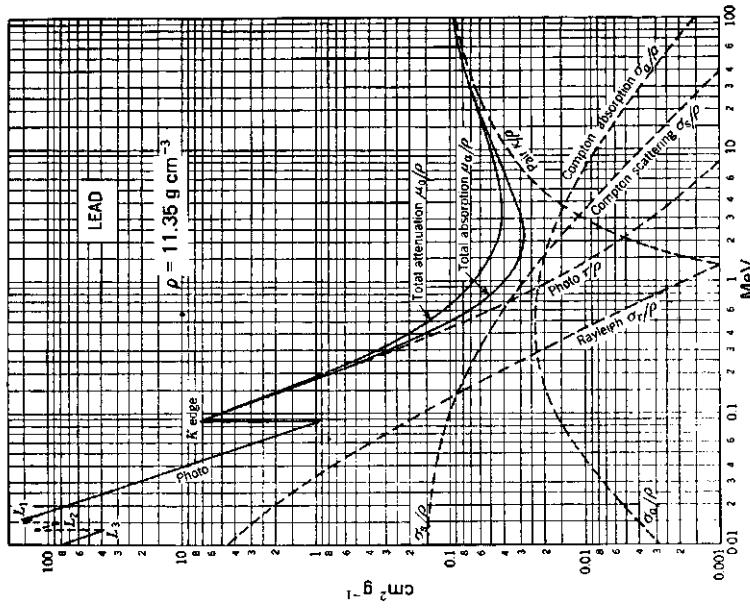


**Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)**

Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in lead.

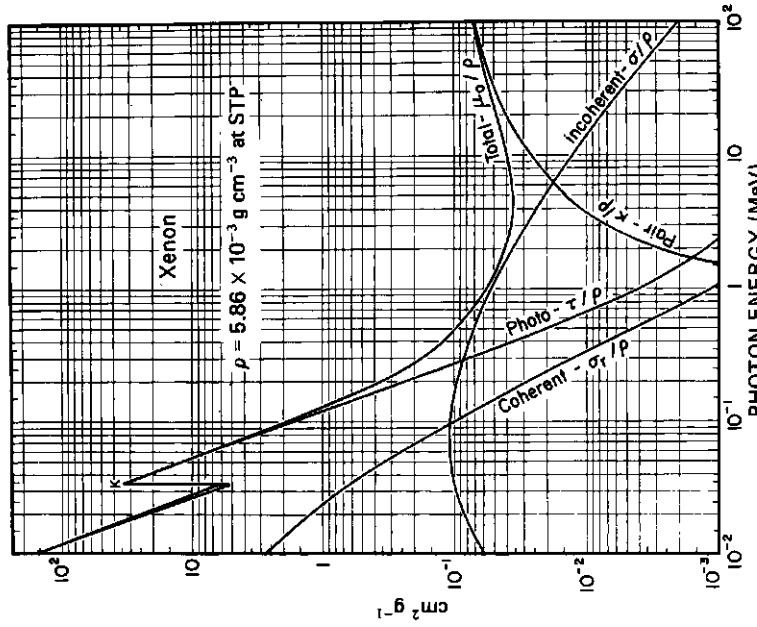
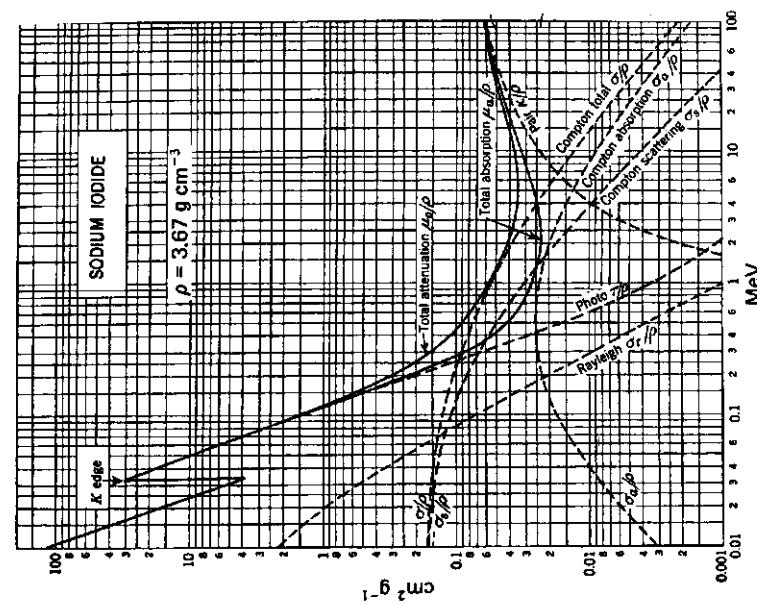
(From Evans, R.D., *op. cit.*)

Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in aluminum.  
 (From Evans, R.D., *op. cit.*)

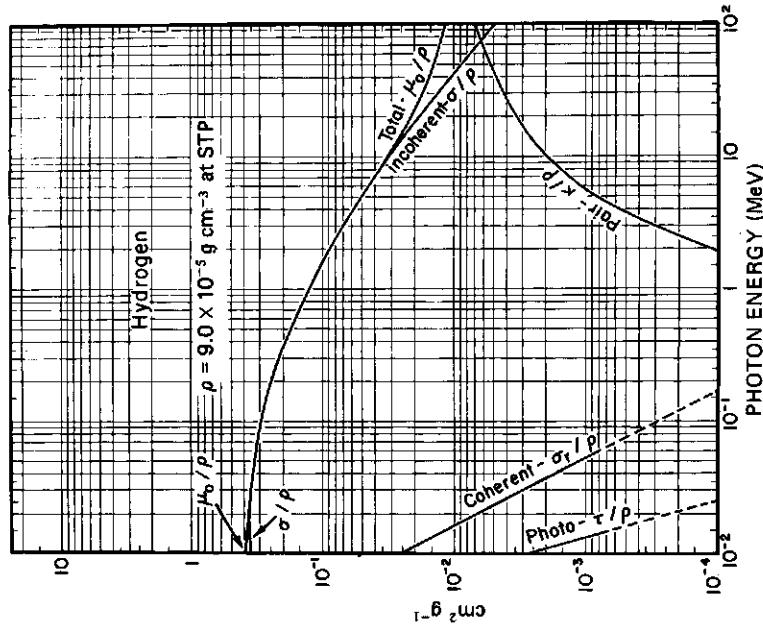


Mass attenuation coefficients for sodium iodide. The 'Compton total' attenuation coefficient  $\sigma/\rho = \sigma_a/\rho + \sigma_s/\rho$  is shown explicitly. (From Evans, R.D., *op. cit.*)

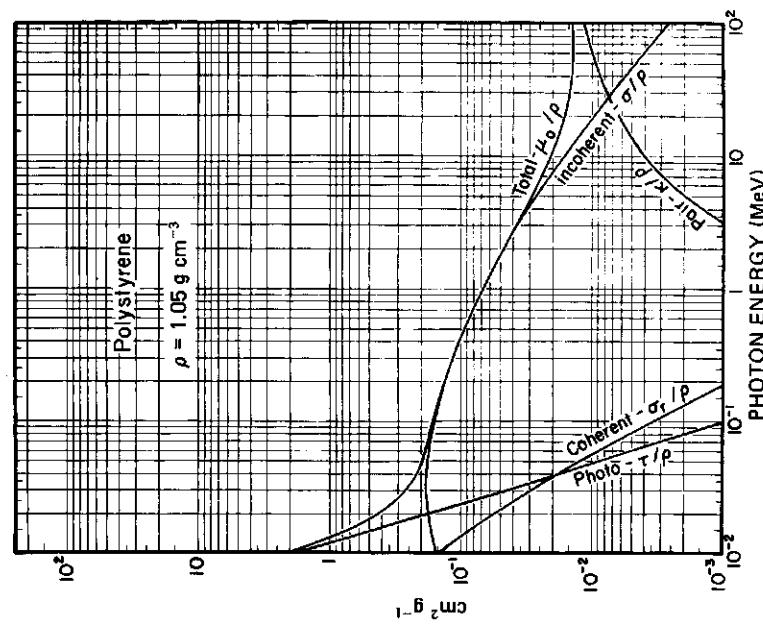
Mass attenuation coefficient for photons in xenon. (Adapted from Chupp, E.L., *Gamma-Ray Astronomy*, D. Reidel Publishing Co., Dordrecht, 1976, with permission.)



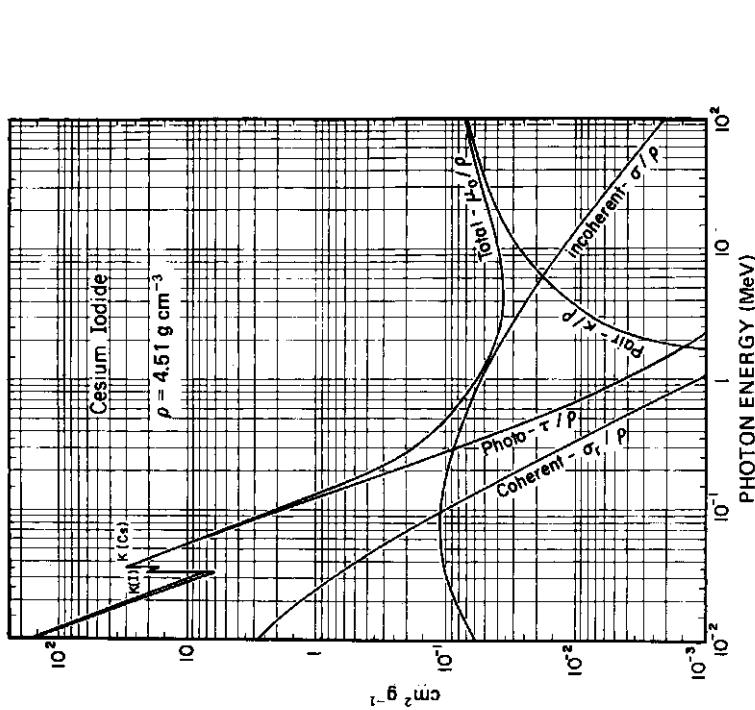
**Mass attenuation coefficients (cont.)**  
 Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in hydrogen.  
 (From Chupp, E.L., *op. cit.*)



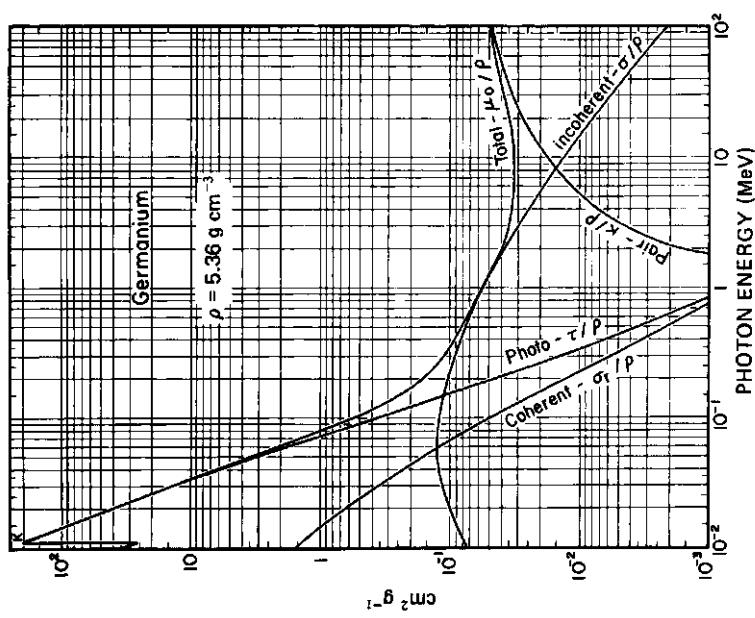
Mass attenuation coefficients for photons in polystyrene.  
 (From Chupp, E.L., *op. cit.*)



Mass attenuation coefficient for photons in cesium iodide.  
(From Chupp, E.L., *op. cit.*)



Mass attenuation coefficient for photons in germanium.  
(From Chupp, E.L., *op. cit.*)

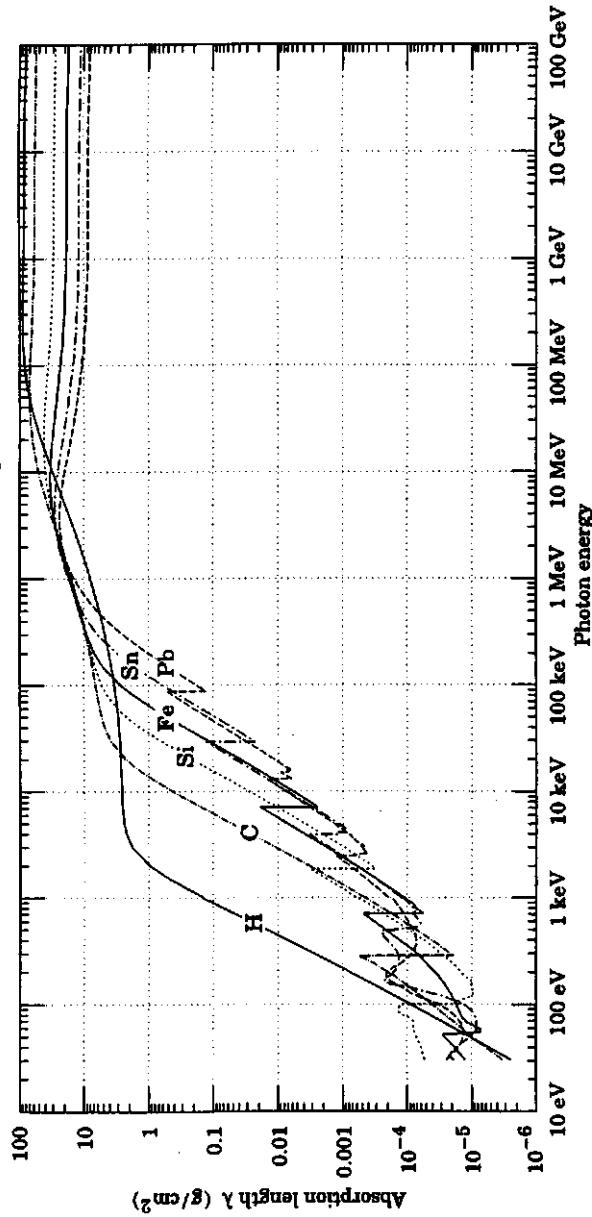


### Photon attenuation length

The photon mass attenuation length (or mean free path)  $\lambda = 1/(\mu/\rho)$  for various elemental absorbers as a function of photon energy. The mass attenuation coefficient is  $\mu/\rho$ , where  $\rho$  is the density. The intensity  $I$  remaining after traversal of thickness  $t$  (in mass/unit area) is given by  $I = I_0 \exp(-t/\lambda)$ . The accuracy is a few percent. For a chemical compound or mixture,  $1/\lambda_{\text{eff}} \approx \sum_{\text{elements}} w_Z / \lambda_Z$ , where  $w_Z$  is the proportion by weight of the element with atomic number  $Z$ .

(From Caso, C., et al. European journal, C3, 1, 1998)

Photon Attenuation Length



**K fluorescence yields**

Element	$\omega_K^{(a)}$	$\omega_K^{(b)}$	$\omega_K^{(c)}$	Element	$\omega_K^{(a)}$	$\omega_K^{(b)}$	$\omega_K^{(c)}$
B		0.0007		Ru		0.812	0.793
C		0.0025		Rh		0.828	0.807
N		0.0054		Pd		0.841	0.819
O		0.0086		Ag	0.834	0.849	0.830
F		0.0124		Cd		0.863	0.840
Ne		0.0183		In		0.873	0.850
Na		0.0241		Sn		0.878	0.859
Mg		0.0303		Sb		0.897	0.867
Al	0.0380	0.0381	0.0357	Te	0.857	0.897	0.875
Si	0.043	0.052	0.0470	I		0.911	0.882
P	0.060	0.066	0.0604	Xe	0.894	0.908	0.902
S	0.082	0.081	0.0761	Cs	0.889		0.895
Cl	0.0955	0.1000	0.0942	Ba		0.916	0.901
Ar	0.122	0.120	0.115	La			0.906
K		0.142	0.138	Ce		0.926	0.911
Ca		0.168	0.163	Pr			0.915
Sc	0.190	0.196	0.190	Nd		0.935	0.920
Ti	0.221	0.224	0.219	Pm			0.924
V	0.253	0.252	0.250	Sm			0.928
Cr	0.283	0.284	0.282	Eu	0.925		0.931
Mn	0.313	0.319	0.314	Gd			0.934
Fe	0.342	0.357	0.347	Tb		0.952	0.937
Co	0.366	0.388	0.381	Dy	0.943		0.940
Ni		0.423	0.414	Ho			0.943
Cu	0.443	0.458	0.445	Er			0.945
Zn		0.492	0.479	Tm			0.948
Ga	0.528	0.524	0.510	Yb		0.963	0.950
Ge	0.554	0.556	0.540	In			0.952
As	0.588	0.584	0.567	Hf			0.954
Se		0.612	0.596	Ta			0.956
Br		0.639	0.622	W			0.957
Kr	0.660	0.663	0.646	Re			0.959
Rb	0.669	0.689	0.669	Os			0.961
Sr	0.702	0.712	0.691	Ir			0.962
Y		0.732	0.711	Pt	0.967		0.963
Zr		0.747	0.730	Au			0.964
Nb		0.769	0.748	Hg	0.958		0.966
Mo		0.786	0.764	Pb	0.972		0.968
Tc		0.801	0.779	U	0.970		0.976

(Data from Bambynek, W., et al., Rev. Mod. Phys., 44, 716, 1972)

(a) "Most reliable" experimental values.

(b) Unweighted means of theoretical values. See Bambynek, W., *op. cit.* for authors.

(c) Fitted values.

Fitting function:  $[\omega_K/(1-\omega_K)]^{1/4} = B_0 + B_1 Z + B_3 Z^3$  where  $Z$  is the atomic number and  $B_0 = 0.015 \pm 0.010$ ,  $B_1 = 0.327 \pm 0.0005$ ,  $B_3 = -(0.64 \pm 0.07) \times 10^{-6}$

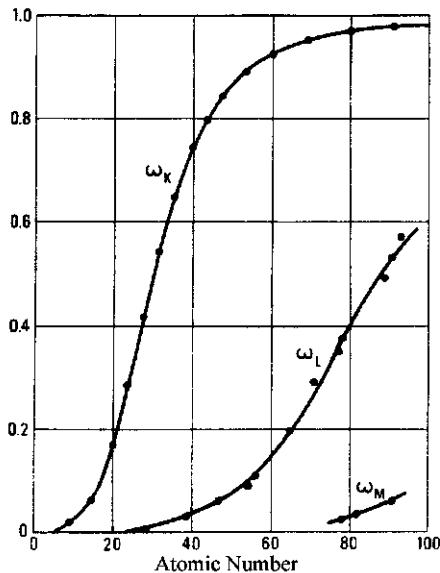
An atom can de-excite by either emitting radiation (fluorescence) or an electron (Auger effect). The K fluorescence yield is defined as the probability of the excited atom (K shell vacancy) emitting a characteristic K X-ray when it de-excites.

## K, L and M fluorescent yields

---

Fluorescence yields for K, L and M shells.

(Data from Bambynek, W., et al., Mod. Phys., 44, 716, 1972)



## Passage of charged particles through matter

---

**Total ionization loss by electrons or positrons** (valid for all cases except extremely relativistic electrons)

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = \frac{2\pi e^4}{m_0 v^2} N Z \left\{ \ln \left[ \frac{m_0 v^2 T}{I^2 (1 - \beta^2)} \right] - \beta^2 \right\} \text{ erg cm}^{-1}$$

(all quantities in cgs units).

For numerical calculations:

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = 4\pi r_0^2 \frac{m_0 c^2}{\beta^2} N Z \left[ \ln \left[ \beta \left( \frac{T + m_0 c^2}{I} \right) \left( \frac{T}{m_0 c^2} \right)^{1/2} \right] - \frac{1}{2} \beta^2 \right] \text{ MeV cm}^{-1}.$$

where

$$\beta^2 = (v/c)^2 = 1 - [(T/m_0 c^2) + 1]^{-2},$$

$v$  = velocity of particle,

$$m_0 c^2 = 0.51 \text{ MeV},$$

$$4\pi r_0^2 = 1.00 \times 10^{-24} \text{ cm}^2,$$

$$r_0 = e^2 / m_0 c^2 = \text{classical electron radius},$$

$$N Z = \text{electrons cm}^{-3},$$

$Z$  = atomic number,

$I$  = mean excitation potential (MeV),

$I \approx (13 \times 10^{-6})Z$  (MeV),

$T$  = kinetic energy (MeV),

$N$  = atoms  $\text{cm}^{-3}$

(e.g., 0.1 MeV electron: 4.7 keV per cm of air).

Mean excitation potential $I$			
$Z$	$I$ (eV)	$I/Z$	
H <sub>2</sub>	1	19	19
He	2	44	22
Be	4	64	16
Air	7.2	94	13.1
Al	13	166	12.7
Ar	18	230	12.8
Cu	29	371	12.8
Ag	47	586	12.5
Xe	54	660	12.2
Au	79	1017	12.8
Pb	82	1070	13.1

(List from Sternheimer, R.M., *Methods of Experimental Physics*, L. Marton, ed., Vol. 5, part A, Academic Press, New York, 1961.)

For  $I \ll T \ll m_0 c^2$ :

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = \frac{2\pi e^4}{T} N Z \ln\left(\frac{T\sqrt{2}}{I}\right) \text{ erg cm}^{-1}.$$

In the range 0 – 10 MeV:

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} \approx \frac{45}{\beta^2} \text{ ion pairs (air-cm)}^{-1}.$$

### Radiative loss for non-relativistic electrons

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{rad}} = 3.09 \times 10^{-27} N Z^2 (T + m_0 c^2) \text{ MeV cm}^{-1},$$

where

$T + m_0 c^2$  = total energy of electron in MeV,

$N$  = atoms  $\text{cm}^{-3} = (\rho/A) \times 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ ,

$Z$  = atomic number of absorber,

$A$  = atomic weight of absorber,

$\rho$  = density of absorber.

***Ionization and radiative loss for highly relativistic electrons***  
 $(T \gg m_0 c^2)$

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = \frac{2\pi e^4 N Z}{m_0 v^2} \left[ \ln \frac{m_0 v^2 T}{2I^2(1-\beta^2)} - (2\sqrt{(1-\beta^2)} - 1 + \beta^2) \ln 2 + 1 - \beta^2 + \frac{1}{8}(1 - \sqrt{(1-\beta^2)})^2 \right] \text{erg cm}^{-1}.$$

(Bethe, H.A., *Handbuch der Physik*, Vol. 24, p. 273, Julius Springer, Berlin, 1933)

$$\begin{aligned} -\left(\frac{dE}{ds}\right)_{\text{rad}} &= N \frac{Z^2}{137} r_0^2 E \left[ 4 \ln \left( \frac{2E}{mc^2} \right) - \frac{4}{3} \right] \text{erg cm}^{-1} \\ &\quad (\text{for } mc^2 \ll E \ll 137mc^2 Z^{-1/3}). \\ -\left(\frac{dE}{ds}\right)_{\text{rad}} &= N \frac{Z^2 r_0^2}{137} E \left[ 4 \ln(183Z^{-1/3}) + \frac{2}{9} \right] \text{erg cm}^{-1} \\ &\quad (\text{for } E \gg 137mc^2 Z^{-1/3}). \end{aligned}$$

$$E = T + m_o c^2$$

(Bethe, H.A. & Heitler, W., *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London)*, **A146**, 83, 1934.)

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{d\xi}\right)_{\text{rad}} = \frac{T}{X_0}, \quad T = T_0 e^{-\xi/X_0},$$

where

$\xi$  is the distance travelled measured in  $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ ,  $T_0$ , the initial energy,  $X_0$ , the radiation length =  $\frac{716M_A}{Z(Z+1.3)[\ln(183Z^{-1/3}) + \frac{1}{8}]}$   $\text{g cm}^{-2}$   
 $(M_A$  = atomic weight).

Radiation lengths  $X_0$  and critical energy  $T_c$  for various substances

Absorber	Z	$M_A$	$X_0$ ( $\text{gm cm}^{-2}$ )	$T_c$ (MeV)
Hydrogen	1	1	58	340
Helium	2	4	85	220
Carbon	6	12	42.5	103
Nitrogen	7	14	38	87
Oxygen	8	16	34.2	77
Aluminium	13	27	23.9	47
Argon	18	39.9	19.4	34.5
Iron	26	55.8	13.8	24
Copper	29	63.6	12.8	21.5
Lead	82	207.2	5.8	6.9
Air			36.5	83
Water			35.0	93

(List from Bethe, H.A. & Ashkin, J., *Experimental Nuclear Physics*, E. Segrè, ed., Vol. I, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1953.)

$T_c \simeq \frac{1600m_0c^2}{Z}$ , the energy at which ionization losses equal radiation losses.

$$\frac{(dT/dx)_{\text{rad}}}{(dT/dx)_{\text{ion}}} \simeq \frac{TZ}{1600mc^2}.$$

**Total ionization loss by heavy charged particles** (kinetic energy  $\leq$  rest mass)

$$-\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = \frac{4\pi z^2 e^4}{m_0 V^2} NZ \left[ \ln \frac{2m_0 V^2}{I} - \ln(1 - \beta^2) - \beta^2 \right] \text{ erg cm}^{-1}$$

(all quantities in cgs units).

For numerical calculations:

$$\begin{aligned} -\left(\frac{dT}{ds}\right)_{\text{ion}} = 4.58 \times 10^{-4} \frac{z^2 NZ}{V^2} & \left[ \ln \left( \frac{1.14 \times 10^{-15} V^2}{I} \right) \right. \\ & \left. - \ln(1 - \beta^2) - \beta^2 \right] \text{ MeV cm}^{-1}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$z$  = particle charge,

$Z$  = absorber atomic number,

$V$  = velocity of particle in  $\text{cm s}^{-1} = 3 \times 10^{10} \beta$ ,

$N$  = absorber atomic density =  $\rho/A \times 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ ,

$I$  = mean excitation potential (in eV),

$I \approx 13Z$  (eV),

$(1 - \beta^2) = (1 + T/M)^{-2}$ ,

$T$  = kinetic energy in MeV,

$M$  = mass of particle in MeV

(e.g., 2 MeV  $\alpha$  particle in Si: 0.27 MeV  $\mu\text{m}^{-1}$ ).

### Approximate range-energy relationships

#### Range-energy for monoenergetic electrons

20 eV  $\leq E \leq$  10 keV:

$$\ln((Z/A)R_{\text{ex}}) = -4.5467 + 0.31104 \ln E + 0.07773(\ln E)^2$$

where

$R_{\text{ex}}$  = extrapolated range in  $\mu\text{g cm}^{-2}$  (25% precision),

$Z/A$  = charge to mass ratio for absorbing medium,

$E$  = energy in eV.

(Iskef, H. et al., *Phys. Med. Biol.*, **28**, 535, 1983.)

### **Approximate range-energy relationships (cont.)**

10 keV  $\lesssim E \lesssim$  3 MeV:

$$R_{\text{ex}} (\text{mg cm}^{-2}) = 412E (\text{MeV})^n, \text{ where}$$

$$n = 1.265 - 0.0954 \ln E (\text{MeV}).$$

1 MeV  $\lesssim E \lesssim$  20 MeV:

$$R_{\text{ex}} (\text{mg cm}^{-2}) = 530E (\text{MeV}) - 106.$$

### *Continuous $\beta$ -ray spectra*

$\beta$ -ray spectra are exponentially attenuated with a mass-absorption coefficient nearly independent of the absorbing material:

$$\mu/\rho (\text{cm}^2 \text{gm}^{-1}) = 17E_m^{-1.14},$$

where  $E_m$  (in MeV) is the maximum energy of the  $\beta$ -ray spectrum.

The thickness of absorber required to reduce the  $\beta$ -ray intensity to one-half its original value:

$$t_{1/2} (\text{mg cm}^{-2}) = 0.693/(\mu/\rho) = 41E_m^{1.14}.$$

### *Range-energy relationships for heavy particles*

Alpha particles in air at 15°C, 760 mm, 4 – 15 MeV,

$$R(\text{cm}) = (0.005E(\text{MeV}) + 0.285)E(\text{MeV})^{1.5}.$$

Protons in air at 15°C, 760 mm, 10 – 200 MeV,

$$R(\text{cm}) = 100 \left( \frac{E(\text{MeV})}{9.3} \right)^{1.8}.$$

### *Range of heavy particles in other materials*

Bragg-Kleeman rule:

$$\frac{R_1}{R_0} = \frac{\rho_0}{\rho_1} \sqrt{\left( \frac{A_1}{A_0} \right)} \quad (\pm 15\%),$$

where

$\rho$  = density

$A$  = atomic weight.

For mixtures:

$$\sqrt{A} = \sum_i n_i \sqrt{A_i},$$

where  $n_i$  = atomic fraction of element  $i$ .

For air,  $\sqrt{A_0} = 3.81$ ,  $\rho_0 = 1.226 \times 10^{-3} \text{ gm cm}^{-3}$  at 15°C, 760 mm, and therefore:

$$R_1 = 3.2 \times 10^{-4} \frac{\sqrt{A_1}}{\rho_1} R_{\text{air}}.$$

***Energy units for high-energy particles***

---

When dealing with high-energy particles from accelerators, nuclear reactions, and cosmic rays, it is convenient to use a special system of units for measurement of mass, energy, and momentum. In this system the quantities  $E$  (total energy),  $T$  (kinetic energy),  $M_0c^2$  (rest energy), and  $pc$  (momentum  $\times$  speed of light) are all measured in units of  $10^9$  eV, abbreviated GeV. The symbols  $M$  and  $P$  are used to represent  $M_0c^2$  and  $pc$ .

The “momentum”  $P$  and energy  $E$  of a particle of speed  $u = \beta c$ :

$$P = \gamma\beta M \quad \text{with } \gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$$

$$E = \gamma M \quad \text{or } \gamma = E/M$$

$$P = \beta E \quad \text{or } \beta = P/E$$

Relations between  $E$ ,  $P$ , and  $E$ :

$$E^2 = P^2 + M^2$$

$$E^2 = M + T$$

$$P^2 = 2MT + T^2$$

For example, a  $K^+$  meson ( $M_0c^2 = 0.494$  GeV) with kinetic energy  $T = 0.363$  GeV would have the following values for  $P$ ,  $E$ ,  $\gamma\beta$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ :

$$P = 0.700 \text{ GeV} \quad (p = 700 \text{ MeV/c})$$

$$E = 0.857 \text{ GeV}$$

$$\gamma\beta = 1.42$$

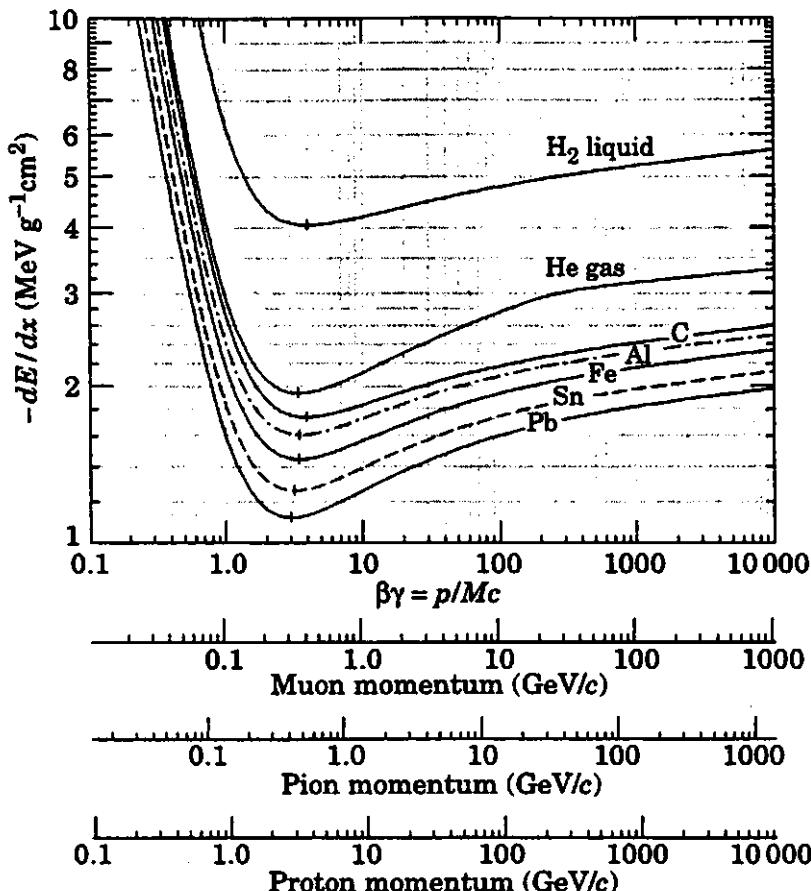
$$\beta = 0.82$$

$$\gamma = 1.73$$


---

### Energy loss rate

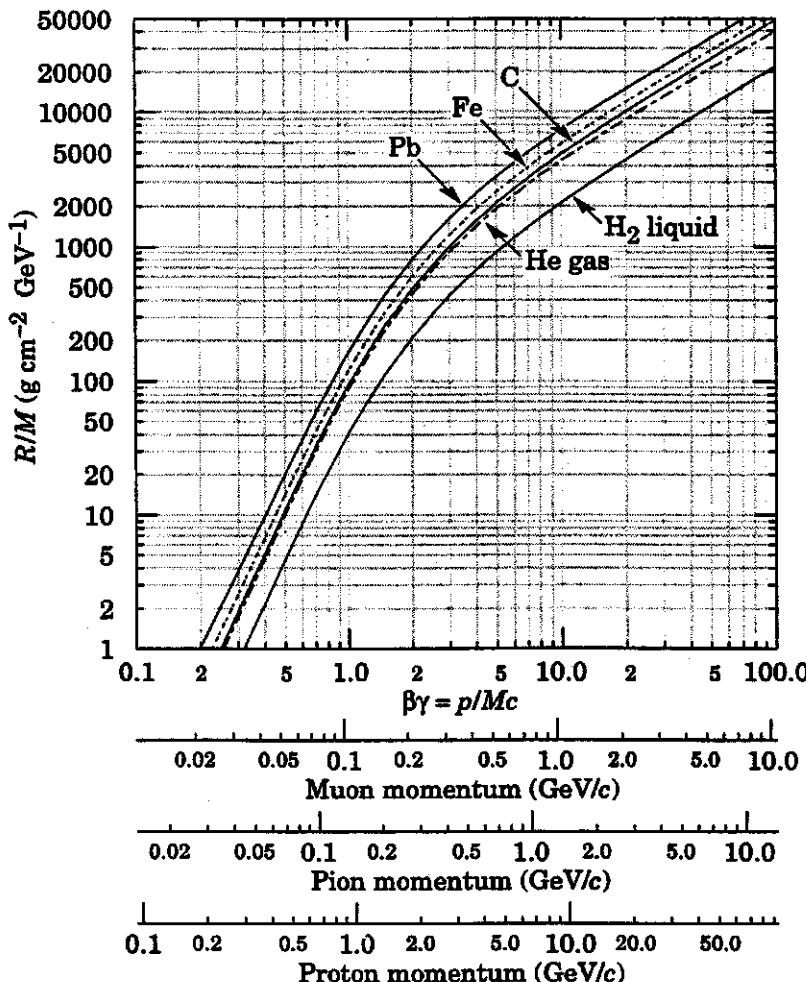
Energy loss rate in liquid hydrogen, gaseous helium, carbon, aluminium, tin, and lead. (From Caso, C., et al., European Physical Journal, C3, 1, 1998)



### Range of heavy charged particles

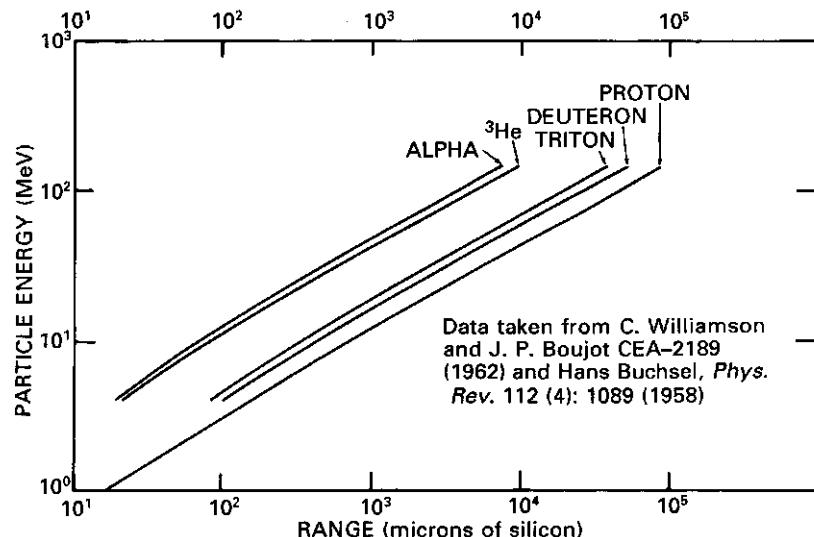
Range of heavy charged particles in liquid hydrogen, gaseous helium, carbon, aluminum, tin, and lead. For example: for a  $K^+$  ( $M = 0.4937$  GeV) whose momentum is 700 MeV/c ( $T = 0.363$  GeV),  $\beta\gamma = 1.42$ . For lead we read  $R/M = 396$ , and so the range is  $R = 196$  g cm $^{-2}$ .

(From Caso, C., et al., European Physical Journal, C3, 1. 1998)

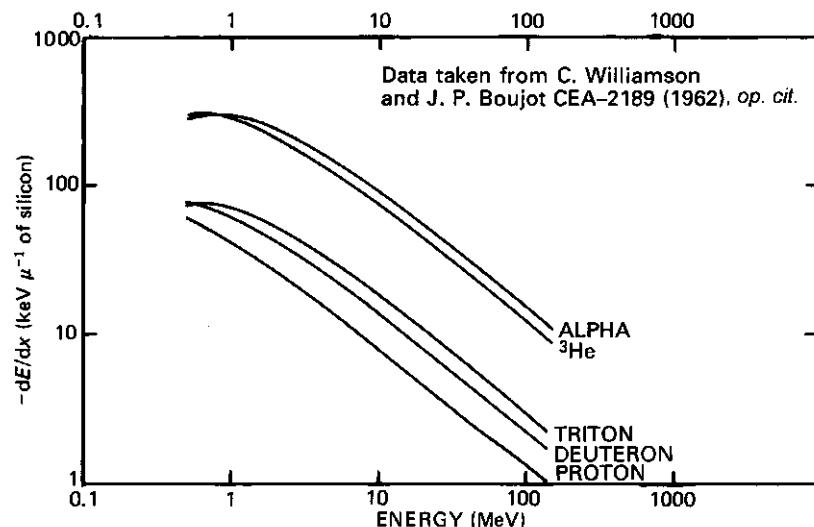


### Charged particles in silicon

Range-energy curves for charged particles in silicon. Channeling of ions between crystal planes can result in significant variations from the data shown here. (Adapted from *ORTEC Manual on Surface Barrier Detectors*.)

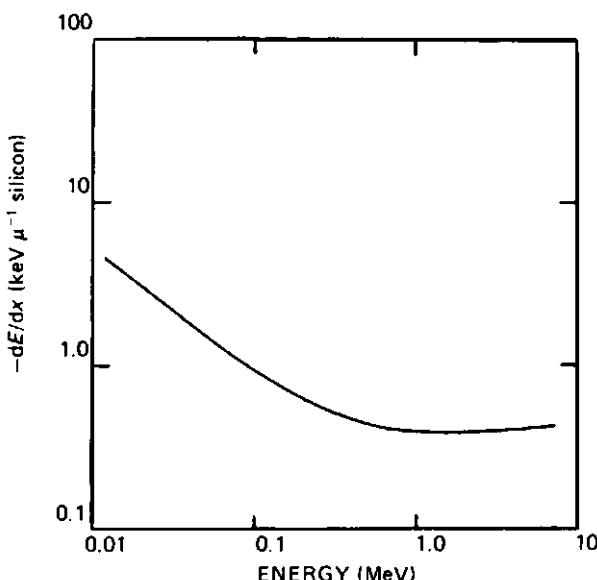


Specific energy loss for charged particles in silicon. Channeling of ions between crystal planes can result in significant variations from the data shown here. (Adapted from *ORTEC Manual on Surface Barrier Detectors*.)

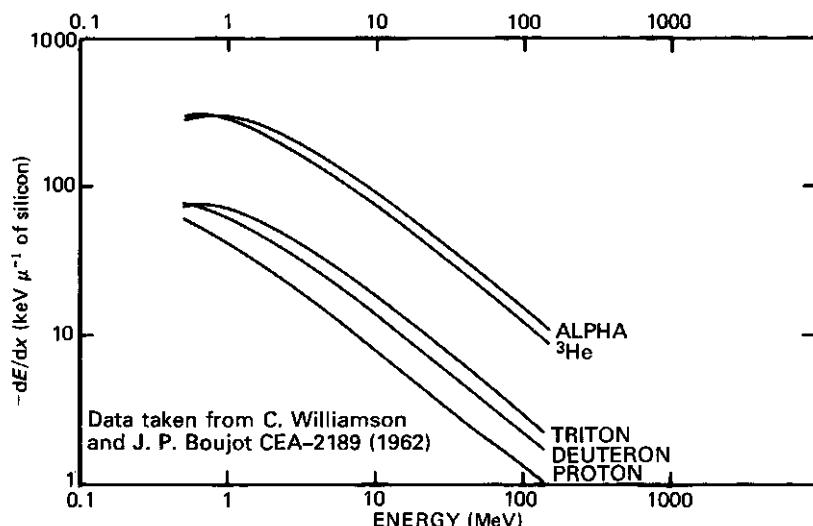


### **Charged particles in silicon (cont.)**

Specific energy loss for electrons in silicon. Channeling between crystal planes can result in significant variations from the data shown here. (Adapted from *ORTEC Manual on Surface Barrier Detectors*.)

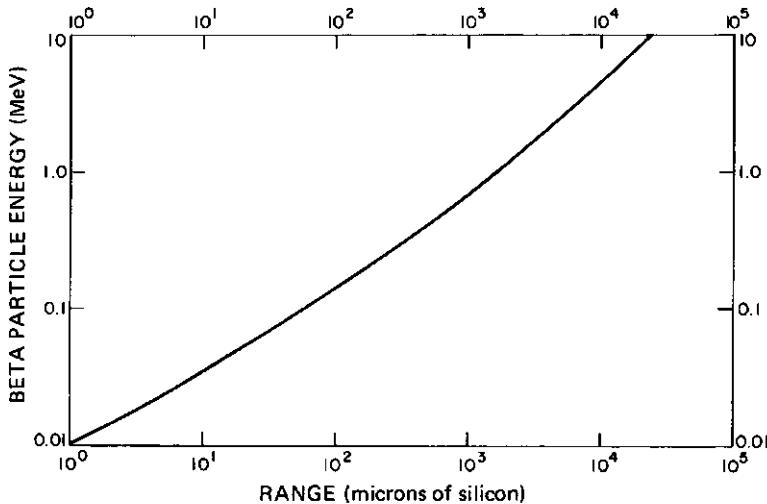


Specific energy loss for protons in silicon. Channeling of ions between crystal planes can result in significant variations from the data shown here. (Adapted from *ORTEC Manual on Surface Barrier Detectors*.)



### **Charged particles in silicon (cont.)**

Beta-ray range energy curve in silicon. Channeling between crystal planes can result in significant variations from the data shown here.  
(Adapted from *ORTEC Manual on Surface Barrier Detectors*.)



**X-ray, gamma-ray, electron, neutron, and alpha radioactive sources** (Adapted from Lederer, C. M. et al., *Table of Isotopes*, John Wiley & Sons, 1968.)

#### **X-ray sources**

Source	X-ray energy (keV)	Half-life
<sup>37</sup> Ar	Ar X-rays: 3.0, 3.2	35.1 d
<sup>41</sup> Ca	Ca X-rays: 3.7, 4.0	$8 \times 10^4$ yr
<sup>44</sup> Ti	Ti X-rays: 4.5, 4.9	48 yr
<sup>49</sup> V	Ti X-rays: 4.5, 4.9	330 d
<sup>55</sup> Fe	Mn X-rays: 5.9, 6.5	2.6 yr
<sup>59</sup> Ni	Co X-rays: 6.9, 7.7	$8 \times 10^4$ yr
<sup>109</sup> Cd	Ag X-rays: 22, 25	453 d
<sup>207</sup> Bi	Pb X-rays: 73, 75, 85, 87	30 yr

***Gamma-ray energy standards***

Source	$\gamma$ -ray energy (keV)	Half-life	Source	$\gamma$ -ray energy (keV)	Half-life
$^{57}\text{Co}$	14.359	268 d	$^{95}\text{Nb}$	765.83	35 d
$^{241}\text{Am}$	26.350	458 yr	$^{54}\text{Mn}$	834.861	314 d
$^{241}\text{Am}$	59.554	458 yr	$^{46}\text{Sc}$	899.25	84.2 d
$^{203}\text{Hg}$	70.830	47 d	$^{88}\text{Y}$	898.033	108 d
$^{203}\text{Hg}$	72.871	47 d	$^{207}\text{Bi}$	1063.578	30 yr
$^{131}\text{I}$	80.164	8.05 d	$^{65}\text{Zn}$	1115.522	246 d
$^{203}\text{Hg}$	82.572	47 d	$^{46}\text{Sc}$	1120.50	84.2 d
$^{203}\text{Hg}$	84.916	47 d	$^{60}\text{Co}$	1173.231	5.26 yr
$^{109}\text{Cd}$	88.034	453 d	$^{22}\text{Na}$	1274.552	2.58 yr
$^{57}\text{Co}$	121.969	268 d	$^{41}\text{Ar}$	1293.641	1.85 hr
$^{57}\text{Co}$	136.328	268 d	$^{60}\text{Co}$	1332.518	5.26 yr
$^{141}\text{Ce}$	145.433	32.5 d	$^{24}\text{Na}$	1368.526	15.0 hr
$^{139}\text{Ce}$	165.85	140 d	$^{52}\text{V}$	1434.19	3.77 min
$^{203}\text{Hg}$	279.150	47 d	$^{124}\text{Sb}$	1691.24	60.9 d
$^{131}\text{I}$	284.307	8.05 d	$^{28}\text{Al}$	1778.77	2.31 min
$^{51}\text{Cr}$	320.102	27.8 d	$^{88}\text{Y}$	1836.111	108 d
$^{131}\text{I}$	364.493	8.05 d	$\text{Th C}''$	2614.47	1.91 yr
$^{198}\text{Au}$	411.795	2.70 d	$^{24}\text{Na}$	2753.92	15.0 hr
$^7\text{Be}$	477.556	53 d	$^{12}\text{B}(\beta^-)^{12}\text{C}$	4438.41	—
$m_0 c^2$	511.003	—	$^{14}\text{C}(\text{d},\text{p},\beta^+)^{15}\text{N}$	5298.53	—
$^{85}\text{Sr}$	513.95	64 d	$^{16}\text{O}({}^3\text{He}, \alpha)^{15}\text{O}$	5240.03	—
$^{207}\text{Bi}$	569.62	30 yr	$^{14}\text{N}(\text{d},\text{p})^{15}\text{N}$	5270.10	—
$\text{Th C}'$	583.139	1.91 yr	$^{16}\text{O}^*$	6127.8	—
$^{137}\text{Cs}$	661.632	30 yr	$^{13}\text{C}(\text{p},\gamma)^{14}\text{N}$	9169.0	—

*Electron energy standards*

Source	Conversion-electron energy (keV)	Half-life
Cd <sup>109</sup>	62.19	453 d
Cd <sup>109</sup>	84.2	453 d
Ce <sup>141</sup>	103.44	33 d
Ce <sup>139</sup>	126.91	140 d
Ce <sup>141</sup>	138.63	33 d
Ce <sup>139</sup>	159.61	140 d
Hg <sup>203</sup>	193.64	46.9 d
Hg <sup>203</sup>	264.49	46.9 d
Au <sup>198</sup>	328.69	2.698 d
Sn <sup>113</sup>	363.8	115 d
Sn <sup>113</sup>	387.6	115 d
Au <sup>198</sup>	397.68	2.698 d
Bi <sup>207</sup>	481.61	30 yr
Bi <sup>207</sup>	554.37	30 yr
Cs <sup>137</sup>	624.15	30.0 yr
Cs <sup>137</sup>	655.88	30.0 yr
Co <sup>58</sup>	803.35	71.3 d
Co <sup>58</sup>	809.62	71.3 d
Mn <sup>54</sup>	828.86	303 d
Mn <sup>54</sup>	834.17	303 d
Y <sup>88</sup>	881.86	108 d
Y <sup>88</sup>	895.76	108 d
Bi <sup>207</sup>	975.57	30 yr
Bi <sup>207</sup>	1048.1	30 yr
Zn <sup>65</sup>	1106.46	345 d
Zn <sup>65</sup>	1114.35	245 d

***Characteristic of Be( $\alpha$ ,n) Neutron Sources***

Source	Half-Life	(MeV)	Neutron Yield per $10^6$ Primary Alpha Particles		Percent Yield with $E_n < 1.5$ MeV	
			$E_\alpha$	Calculated	Experimental	Calculated
$^{239}\text{Pu}/\text{Be}$	24000 y	5.14	65	57	11	9–33
$^{210}\text{Po}/\text{Be}$	138 d	5.30	73	69	13	12
$^{238}\text{Pu}/\text{Be}$	87.4 y	5.48	79	—	—	—
$^{241}\text{Am}/\text{Be}$	433 y	5.48	82	70	14	15–23
$^{244}\text{Cm}/\text{Be}$	18 y	5.79	100	—	18	29
$^{242}\text{Cm}/\text{Be}$	162 d	6.10	118	106	22	26
$^{226}\text{Ra}/\text{Be}$ + daughters	1602 y	Multiple	502	—	26	33–38
$^{227}\text{Ac}/\text{Be}$ + daughters	21.6 y	Multiple	702	—	28	38

(From Knoll, G.F., *Radiation Detection and Measurement*, John Wiley & Sons, 1989 with permission.)

**Common Alpha-Emitting Radioisotope Sources**

Source	Half-Life	Alpha Particle Kinetic Energy (with Uncertainty) in MeV		Percent Branching
<sup>148</sup> Gd	93 y	3.182787	$\pm 0.000024$	100
<sup>232</sup> Th	$1.4 \times 10^{10}$ y	4.012	$\pm 0.005$	77
		3.953	$\pm 0.008$	23
<sup>238</sup> U	$4.5 \times 10^9$ y	4.196	$\pm 0.004$	77
		4.149	$\pm 0.005$	23
<sup>235</sup> U	$7.1 \times 10^8$ y	4.598	$\pm 0.002$	4.6
		4.401	$\pm 0.002$	56
		4.374	$\pm 0.002$	6
		4.365	$\pm 0.002$	12
		4.219	$\pm 0.002$	6
<sup>236</sup> U	$2.4 \times 10^7$ y	4.494	$\pm 0.003$	74
		4.445	$\pm 0.005$	26
<sup>230</sup> Th	$7.7 \times 10^4$ y	4.6875	$\pm 0.0015$	76.3
		4.6210	$\pm 0.0015$	23.4
<sup>234</sup> U	$2.5 \times 10^5$ y	4.7739	$\pm 0.0009$	72
		4.7220	$\pm 0.0009$	28
<sup>231</sup> Pa	$3.2 \times 10^4$ y	5.0590	$\pm 0.0008$	11
		5.0297	$\pm 0.0008$	20
		5.0141	$\pm 0.0008$	25.4
		4.9517	$\pm 0.0008$	22.8
<sup>239</sup> Pu	$2.4 \times 10^4$ y	5.1554	$\pm 0.0007$	73.3
		5.1429	$\pm 0.0008$	15.1
		5.1046	$\pm 0.0008$	11.5
<sup>240</sup> Pu	$6.5 \times 10^3$ y	5.16830	$\pm 0.000015$	76
		5.12382	$\pm 0.000023$	24
<sup>243</sup> Am	$7.4 \times 10^3$ y	5.2754	$\pm 0.0010$	87.4
		5.2335	$\pm 0.0010$	11
<sup>210</sup> Po	138 d	5.30451	$\pm 0.00007$	100
<sup>241</sup> Am	433 d	5.48574	$\pm 0.00012$	85.2
		5.44298	$\pm 0.00013$	12.8
<sup>238</sup> Pu	88 y	5.49921	$\pm 0.000020$	71.1
		5.4565	$\pm 0.0004$	28.7
<sup>244</sup> Cm	18 y	5.80496	$\pm 0.00005$	76.4
		5.762835	$\pm 0.000030$	23.6
<sup>243</sup> Cm	30 y	6.067	$\pm 0.003$	1.5
		5.992	$\pm 0.002$	5.7
		5.7847	$\pm 0.0009$	73.2
		5.7415	$\pm 0.0009$	11.5
<sup>242</sup> Cm	163 d	6.11292	$\pm 0.00008$	74
		6.06963	$\pm 0.00012$	26
<sup>254m</sup> Es	276 d	6.4288	$\pm 0.0015$	93
<sup>253</sup> Es	20.5 d	6.63273	$\pm 0.00005$	90
		6.5916	$\pm 0.0002$	6.6

(From Knoll, G.F., *Radiation Detection and Measurement*, John Wiley & Sons, 1989 with permission.)

## Atomic and nuclear properties of materials

Material	<i>Z</i>	<i>A</i>	$\langle Z/A \rangle$	Nuclear <sup>a</sup> collision length $\lambda_T$ $\{\text{g}/\text{cm}^2\}$	Nuclear <sup>a</sup> interaction length $\lambda_I$ $\{\text{g}/\text{cm}^2\}$	$dE/dx_{\min}^b$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{MeV} \\ \text{g/cm}^2 \end{array} \right\}$	Radiation length <sup>c</sup> $X_0$ $\{\text{cm}\}$	Density $\{\text{g}/\text{cm}^3\}$ (for gas)	Liquid boiling point at 1 atm (K)	Refractive index <i>n</i> ( $(n-1) \times 10^6$ for gas)
H <sub>2</sub> gas	1	1.00794	0.99212	43.3	50.8	(4.103) 4.045 <sup>e</sup>	61.298 <sup>d</sup> 61.28 <sup>d</sup>	(731.000) 866	(0.088)[0.0899] 0.0708	[139.2] 1.112
H <sub>2</sub>	1	1.00794	0.99212	43.3	50.8	(2.052) (1.937)	122.4 94.32	0.169[0.179] 0.1249[0.1786]	23.65 4.224	1.128[138] 1.024[34.9]
D <sub>2</sub>	1	2.0140	0.49652	45.7	54.7	(1.937)	724			
He	2	4.002602	0.49968	49.9	65.1		756			
Li	3	6.941	0.43221	54.6	73.4	1.639	82.76			
Be	4	9.012182	0.44384	55.8	75.2	1.594	56.19	35.28	1.848	
C	6	12.011	0.49954	60.2	86.3	1.745	42.70	18.8	2.265 <sup>f</sup>	
N <sub>2</sub>	7	14.00674	0.49976	61.4	87.8	(1.825)	37.99	47.1	0.8073[1.250]	77.36
O <sub>2</sub>	8	15.9994	0.50002	63.2	91.0	(1.801)	34.24	30.0	1.141[10428]	90.18
F <sub>2</sub>	9	18.9981032	0.47372	65.5	95.3	(1.675)	32.93	21.85	1.507[1.696]	85.24
Ne	10	20.1797	0.49555	66.1	96.6	(1.724)	28.94	24.0	1.204[0.9005]	27.09
Al	13	26.981339	0.48181	70.6	106.4	1.615	24.01	8.9	2.70	1.092[67.1]
Si	14	28.0855	0.49848	70.6	106.0	1.664	82	9.36	2.33	3.95
Ar	18	39.948	0.45059	76.4	117.0	(1.519)	19.55	14.0	1.396[1.782]	87.28
Ti	22	47.867	0.45948	79.9	124.9	1.476	16.17	3.56	4.54	
Fe	26	55.845	0.46556	82.8	131.9	1.451	13.84	1.76	7.87	
Cu	29	63.546	0.45636	85.6	134.9	1.403	12.86	1.43	8.96	
Ge	32	72.61	0.44071	88.3	140.5	1.371	12.25	2.30	5.323	
Sn	50	118.710	0.42120	100.2	163	1.264 <sub>1</sub>	8.82	1.21	7.31	
Xe	54	131.29	0.41130	102.8	169	(1.295)	8.48	2.40	2.693[5.888]	165.0
W	74	183.84	0.40250	110.3	185	1.145	6.76	0.35	19.3	
Pt	78	195.08	0.39984	113.3	189.7	1.129	6.54	0.305	21.45	
Pb	82	207.2	0.39575	116.2	194	1.123	6.37	0.56	11.35	
U	92	238.0289	0.38651	117.0	199	1.082	6.00	$\approx 0.32$	$\approx 18.95$	

### Atomic and nuclear properties of materials (cont.)

Material <i>Z</i>	<i>A</i>	$\langle Z/A \rangle$	Nuclear <sup>a</sup> collusion	$dE/dx$ <sup>b</sup> <sub>min</sub>	Radiation length <sup>c</sup>	Density [g/cm <sup>3</sup> ]	Liquid boiling point at ( $n - 1$ ) × 10 <sup>6</sup> 1 atm (K)	Refractive index <i>n</i>
Air, (20°C, 1 atm.), [STP]		0.49919	62.0	90.0 {g/cm <sup>2</sup> }	36.66 {g/cm <sup>2</sup> }	[30429] (1.205)[1.2931]	78.8 373.15	(273)[293]
H <sub>2</sub> O		0.555309	60.1	83.6 {g/cm <sup>2</sup> }	36.08 (1.819)	36.1 [18310]	1.00 [1.977]	1.33 [410]
CO <sub>2</sub>		0.49989	62.4	89.7	36.2	—	—	—
Shielding concrete <sup>g</sup>		0.50274	67.4	99.9	1.711	26.7	10.7 2.5	—
Borosilicate glass (Pyrex) <sup>h</sup>		0.49707	66.2	97.6	1.695	28.3	12.7 2.23	1.474
SiO <sub>2</sub> (fused quartz)		0.49926	66.5	97.4	1.70 <sup>i</sup>	27.05	12.3 2.20 <sup>j</sup>	1.458
Dimethyl ether, (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> O		0.54778	59.4	82.9	—	38.89	—	—
Methane, CH <sub>4</sub>		0.62233	54.8	73.4	(2.417)	46.22	[64850] [34035]	0.42240[0.717] 0.509[1.356] <sup>k</sup>
Ethane, C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>6</sub>		0.59861	55.8	75.7	(2.304)	45.47	—	184.5 [1.038] <sup>k</sup>
Propane, C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>8</sub>		0.58962	56.2	76.5	(2.262)	45.20	—	—
Isobutane, (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHCH <sub>3</sub>		0.58496	56.4	77.0	(2.239)	45.07	[16930] [2.67]	231.1 261.42
Octane, liquid, CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>6</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>		0.57778	56.7	77.7	2.123	44.86	63.8 [2.67]	[1900] 398.8
Paraffin wax, CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>n≈23</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>		0.57275	56.9	78.2	2.087	44.71	48.1 0.933	1.397
Nylon, type 6 <sup>l</sup>		0.54790	58.5	81.5	1.974	41.84	36.7 —	1.14 —
Polycarbonate (Lexan) <sup>m</sup>		0.529597	59.5	83.9	1.886	41.46	34.6 —	1.20 —
Polyethylene teraphthalate (Mylar) <sup>n</sup>		0.52037	60.2	85.7	1.848	39.95	28.7 —	1.39 —
Polyethylene <sup>o</sup>		0.57034	57.0	78.4	2.076	44.64	≈ 47.9 —	0.92-0.95 —
Polyimide film (Kapton) <sup>p</sup>		0.51364	60.3	85.8	1.820	40.56	28.6 —	1.42 —
Lucite, Plexiglas <sup>q</sup>		0.53337	59.3	83.0	1.929	40.49	≈ 34.4 —	1.16-1.20 —
Polystyrene, scintillator <sup>r</sup>		0.53768	58.5	81.9	1.936	43.72	42.4 —	≈ 1.49 1.581
Polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon) <sup>s</sup>		0.47992	64.2	93.0	1.671	34.84	15.8 —	2.20 —
Polyvinyltoluene, scintillator <sup>t</sup>		0.54155	58.3	81.5	1.956	43.83	42.5 —	1.032 —

## Atomic and nuclear properties of materials (cont.)

Material	$Z$	$A$	$\langle Z/A \rangle$	Nuclear <sup>a</sup> collision length $\lambda_T$ $\{g/cm^2\}$	Nuclear <sup>a</sup> interaction length $\lambda_I$ $\{g/cm^2\}$	$dE/dx_{\min}^b$ $\left\{ \frac{\text{MeV}}{\text{g}/\text{cm}^2} \right\}$	Radiation length <sup>c</sup> $X_0$ $\{\text{cm}\}$	Density $\{\text{g}/\text{cm}^3\}$ for gas	Liquid boiling point at 1 atm (K)	Refractive index $n$ $((n-1) \times 10^6$ for gas)
Barium fluoride ( $\text{BaF}_2$ )		0.42207	92.0	145	1.303	9.91	2.05	4.89	1.56	
Bismuth germanate (BGO) <sup>w</sup>	0.42065	98.2	175	1.251	7.97	1.12	7.1		2.15	
Cesium iodide (CsI)	0.41569	102	167	1.243	8.39	1.85			1.80	
Lithium fluoride (LiF)	0.46262	62.2	88.2	1.614	39.25	14.91	2.632		1.392	
Sodium fluoride (NaF)	0.47632	66.6	98.3	1.69	29.87	11.68	2.558		1.336	
Sodium iodide (NaI)	0.42697	94.6	151	1.305	9.49	2.59	3.67		1.775	
Silica Aerogel <sup>w</sup>	0.52019	64	92	1.83	29.83	≈ 150	0.1-0.3		1.0 + 0.25 $\rho$	
NEMA G10 plate <sup>w</sup>		62.6	90.2	1.87	33.0	19.4	1.7		—	

Revised April 1998 by D.E. Groom (LBNL). Gases are evaluated at 20°C and 1 atm (in parentheses) or at STP [square brackets]. Densities and refractive indices without parentheses or brackets are for solids or liquids, or are for cryogenic liquids indicated boiling point (BP) at 1 atm. Refractive indices are evaluated at the sodium D line. Data for compounds and mixtures are from Refs. 1 and 2.

### Atomic and nuclear properties of materials (cont.)

Material	Dielectric constant ( $\kappa = \epsilon/\epsilon_0$ ) () is $(\kappa - 1) \times 10^6$ for gas	Young's modulus [ $10^6$ psi]	Coeff. of thermal expansion [ $10^{-6}$ cm/cm-°C]	Specific heat [cal/g-°C]	Electrical resistivity [ $\mu\Omega\text{cm}(@^\circ\text{C})$ ]	Thermal conductivity [cal/cm-°C-sec]
H <sub>2</sub>	(253.9)	—	—	—	—	—
He	(64)	—	—	—	—	—
Li	—	—	56	0.86	8.55(0°)	0.17
Be	—	37	12.4	0.436	5.885(0°)	0.38
C	—	0.7	0.6-4.3	0.165	1375(0°)	0.057
N <sub>2</sub>	(584.5)	—	—	—	—	—
O <sub>2</sub>	(495)	—	—	—	—	—
Ne	(127)	—	—	—	—	—
Al	—	10	23.9	0.215	2.65(20°)	0.53
Si	11.9	16	2.8-7.3	0.162	—	0.20
Ar	(517)	—	—	—	—	—
Ti	—	16.8	8.5	0.126	50(0°)	—
Fe	—	28.5	11.7	0.11	9.71(20°)	0.18
Cu	—	16	16.5	0.092	1.67(20°)	0.94
Ge	16.0	—	5.75	0.073	—	0.14
Sn	—	6	20	0.052	11.5(20°)	0.16
Xe	—	—	—	—	—	—
W	—	50	4.4	0.032	5.5(20°)	0.48
Pt	—	21	8.9	0.032	9.83(0°)	0.17
Pb	—	2.6	29.3	0.038	20.65(20°)	0.083
U	—	—	36.1	0.028	29(20°)	0.064

1. R.M. Sternheimer, M.J. Berger, and S.M. Seltzer, Atomic Data and Nuclear Data Tables **30**, 261-271 (1984).

2. S.M. Seltzer and M.J. Berger, Int. J. Appl. Radiat. **33**, 1189-1218 (1982).

3. S.M. Seltzer and M.J. Berger, Int. J. Appl. Radiat. **35**, 665-676 (1984).

## Atomic and nuclear properties of materials (cont.)

- <sup>a</sup>  $\sigma_T$ ,  $\lambda_T$  and  $\lambda_I$  are energy dependent. Values quoted apply to high energy range, where energy dependence is weak. Mean free path between collisions ( $\lambda_T$ ) or inelastic interactions ( $\lambda_I$ ), calculated from  $\lambda^{-1} = N_A \sum w_j \sigma_j / A_j$ , where  $N$  is Avogadro's number and  $w_j$  is the weight fraction of the  $j$ th element in the element, compound, or mixture.  $\sigma_{\text{total}}$  at 80–240 GeV for neutrons ( $\approx \sigma$  for protons) from Murthy *et al.*, Nucl. Phys. **B92**, 269 (1975). This scales approximately as  $A^{0.77}$ .  $\sigma_{\text{inelastic}} = \sigma_{\text{total}} - \sigma_{\text{quasielastic}}$ ; for neutrons at 60–375 GeV from Roberts *et al.*, Nucl. Phys. **B159**, 56 (1979). For protons and other particles, see Carroll *et al.*, Phys. Lett. **80B**, 319 (1979); note that  $\sigma_I(p) \approx \sigma_I(n)$ .  $\sigma_I$  scales approximately as  $A^{0.71}$ .

- <sup>b</sup> For minimum-ionizing pions (results are very slightly different for other particles). Minimum  $dE/dx$  calculated in 1994, using density effect correction coefficients from Ref. 1. For electrons and positrons see Ref. 3. Ionization energy loss is discussed in Sec. 23.

- <sup>c</sup> From Y.S. Tsai, Rev. Mod. Phys. **46**, 815 (1974);  $X_0$  data for all elements up to uranium are given. Corrections for molecular binding applied for H<sub>2</sub> and D<sub>2</sub>. For atomic H,  $X_0 = 63.05 \text{ g/cm}^2$ .

<sup>e</sup> Density effect constants evaluated for  $\rho = 0.0600 \text{ g/cm}^3$  (H<sub>2</sub> bubble chamber?).

<sup>d</sup> For molecular hydrogen (deuterium). For atomic H,  $X_0 = 63.047 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$ .

<sup>f</sup> For pure graphite; industrial graphite density may vary 2.1–2.3 g/cm<sup>3</sup>.

- <sup>g</sup> Standard shielding blocks, typical composition O<sub>2</sub> 52%, Si 32.5%, Ca 6%, Na 1.5%, Fe 2%, Al 4%, plus reinforcing iron bars. The attenuation length,  $l = 115 \pm 5 \text{ g/cm}^2$ , is also valid for earth (typical  $\rho = 2.15$ ), from CERN-LRL-RHEL Shielding exp., UCRL-17841 (1968).

<sup>h</sup> Main components: 80% SiO<sub>2</sub> + 12% B<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 5% Na<sub>2</sub>O.

- <sup>i</sup> Calculated using Sternheimer's density effect parameterization for  $\rho = 2.32 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ . Actual value may be slightly lower.

<sup>j</sup> For typical fused quartz. The specific gravity of crystalline quartz is 2.64.

### Atomic and nuclear properties of materials (cont.)

- <sup>k</sup> Solid ethane density at -60°C; gaseous refractive index at 0°C, 546 mm pressure.
- <sup>l</sup> Nylon, Type 6,  $(\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CO})_n$
- <sup>m</sup> Polycarbonate (Lexan),  $(\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_3)_n$
- <sup>n</sup> Polyethylene terephthalate, monomer,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$
- <sup>o</sup> Polyethylene, monomer  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2$
- <sup>p</sup> Polyimide film (Kapton),  $(\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5)_n$
- <sup>q</sup> Polymethylmethacralate, monomer  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$
- <sup>r</sup> Polystyrene, monomer  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$
- <sup>s</sup> Teflon, monomer  $\text{CF}_2=\text{CF}_2$
- <sup>t</sup> Polyvinyltoluene, monomer  $2\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$
- <sup>u</sup> Bismuth germanate (BGO),  $(\text{Bi}_2\text{O}_3)_2(\text{GeO}_2)_3$
- <sup>v</sup>  $n(\text{SiO}_2) + 2n(\text{H}_2\text{O})$  used in Čerenkov counters,  $\rho$  = density in  $\text{g/cm}^3$ . From M. Cantin *et al.*, Nucl. Instrum. Methods **118**, 177 (1974).
- <sup>w</sup> G10-plate, typical 60%  $\text{SiO}_2$  and 40% epoxy.

---



---

(From Caso, C., *et al.*, European Physical Journal, **C3**, 1, 1998)

## Characteristics of synchrotron radiation

---

The angular and spectral distribution of radiation emitted by a relativistic electron in instantaneously circular motion is, according to Schwinger (*Phys. Rev.*, **75**, 1912, 1949), given by (cgs units):

$$\frac{\partial^2 P}{\partial \lambda \partial \psi} = \frac{27}{32\pi^3} \frac{e^2 c}{R^3} \left( \frac{\lambda_c}{\lambda} \right)^4 \gamma^8 (1 + (\gamma\psi)^2)^2 \left[ K_{2/3}^2(\xi) + \frac{(\gamma\psi)^2}{1 + (\gamma\psi)^2} K_{1/3}^2(\xi) \right] \text{erg s}^{-1} \text{ rad}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1},$$

where

$e$  = electron charge,

$c$  = velocity of light,

$R$  = radius of curvature,

$\lambda$  = wavelength,

$\lambda_c = \frac{4}{3}\pi R\gamma^{-3}$ , the 'critical wavelength',

$\gamma = E/m_0c^2$ ,

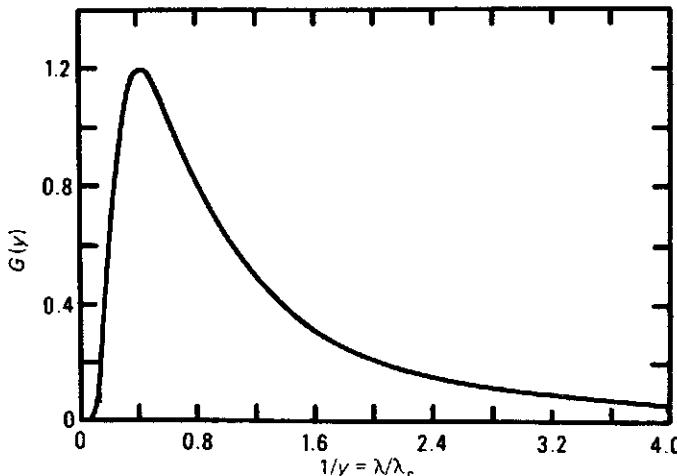
where  $E$  = total electron energy and  $m_0$  = electron mass,

$\psi$  = vertical angle measured from the plane of the orbit,

$K_{1/2}(\xi)$ ,  $K_{2/3}(\xi)$  are modified Bessel functions of the second kind, where  $\xi \equiv (\lambda_c/2\lambda)(1 + (\gamma\psi)^2)^{3/2}$ .

The first term within the brackets correspond to radiation polarized in the plane of the orbit, the second to radiation polarized perpendicular to the orbital plane.

The universal synchrotron radiation function  $G(y)$  for monoenergetic electrons as a function of  $1/y$ .



The spectral distribution of power is obtained by integrating the above equation over the angle  $\psi$ :

$$\frac{dP}{d\lambda} = \frac{3^{5/2}}{16\pi^2} \frac{e^2 c}{R^3} \left( \frac{E}{mc^2} \right)^7 G(y),$$

where

$$G(y) = y^3 \int_y^\infty K_{5/3}(\eta) d\eta, \quad y = \lambda_c/\lambda.$$

The total power radiated,

$$P = \int \frac{dP}{d\lambda} d\lambda = \frac{2}{3} \frac{e^2 c}{R^2} \left( \frac{E}{mc^2} \right)^4.$$

The photon flux distribution is obtained by dividing the power distribution function by the photon energy:

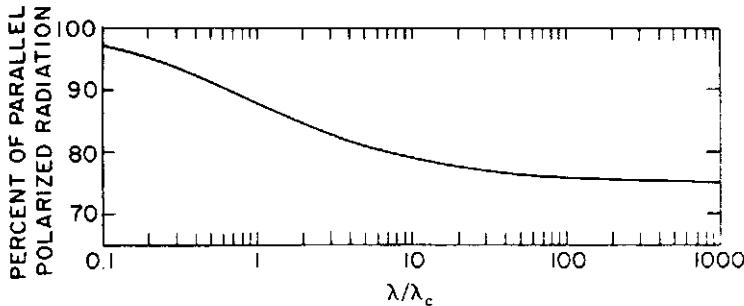
$$\frac{\partial^3 N}{\partial \lambda \partial \psi \partial t} = \frac{\lambda}{hc} \frac{\partial^2 P}{\partial \lambda \partial \psi} \text{ photons s}^{-1} \text{ rad}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1}.$$

The radiation emitted by the electron in the plane of its orbit is 100% polarized. Above and below this plane, the radiation is elliptically polarized.

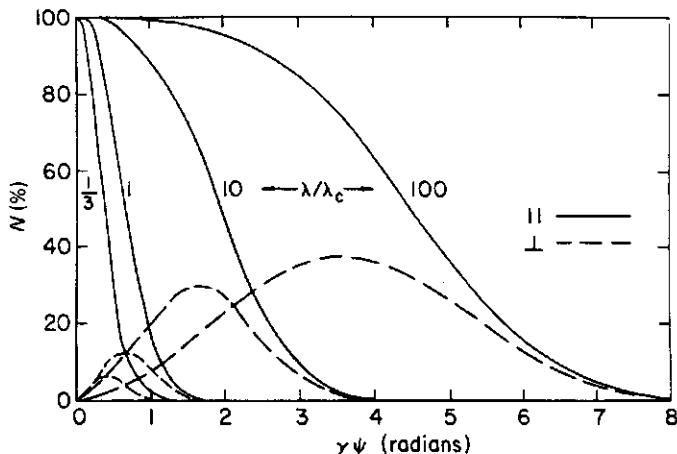
Polarization:

$$(I_{\parallel} - I_{\perp})(I_{\parallel} + I_{\perp}) = \frac{K_{2/3}^2(\xi) - [(\gamma\psi)^2/(1 + (\gamma\psi)^2)]K_{1/3}^2(\xi)}{K_{2/3}^2(\xi) + [(\gamma\psi)^2/(1 + (\gamma\psi)^2)]K_{1/3}^2(\xi)}.$$

Fraction of radiation, integrated over vertical angle  $\psi$ , that is parallel polarized (From Krinsky, S. et al. in *Handbook of Synchrotron Radiation*, E. Koch, ed., North-Holland Publishing Co., 1983, with permission.)



Dependence on the vertical angle  $\psi$  of the intensities of the parallel (solid line) and perpendicular (dashed line) polarization components of the photon flux. The individual curves, plotted for  $\lambda/\lambda_c = \frac{1}{3}, 1, 10$ , and  $100$ , are individually normalized to the intensity in the orbital plane ( $\psi = 0$ ) at the respective  $\lambda/\lambda_c$  value. Note that the abscissa,  $\psi$  multiplied by the electron energy  $\gamma$ , makes these curves universal. (From Krinsky, S. et al. in *Handbook of Synchrotron Radiation*, E. Koch, ed., North-Holland Publishing Co., 1983, with permission.)



### Practical formulae for electron storage rings

$E$ : electron energy    $R$ : radius of ring    $J$ : electron current.

Energy loss per turn, per electron:

$$\delta E \text{ (keV)} = 88.5 \frac{E^4 \text{ (GeV)}}{R \text{ (m)}}.$$

Critical wavelength:

$$\lambda_c \text{ (\AA)} = 5.59 \frac{R \text{ (m)}}{E^3 \text{ (GeV)}}.$$

Characteristic energy:

$$\epsilon_c \text{ (eV)} = 2218 \frac{E^3 \text{ (GeV)}}{R \text{ (m)}} = 2.96 \times 10^{-7} \frac{\gamma^3}{R \text{ (m)}}.$$

Emission angle:

$$\approx \frac{1}{\gamma} = \frac{m_0 c^2}{E},$$

with

$$\gamma = \frac{E}{m_0 c^2} = 1957 E \text{ (GeV)}.$$

Energy of a photon:

$$\varepsilon(\text{KeV}) = \frac{12.40}{\lambda(\text{\AA})}.$$

*Photon flux angular distribution:*

$$\frac{\partial^4 N}{\partial \lambda \partial \psi \partial \theta \partial t} = 8.267 \times 10^{-5} \left( \frac{\lambda_c}{\lambda} \right) \frac{3\gamma^5}{R} F \left( \frac{\lambda_c}{\lambda}, \gamma\psi \right) J \text{ photons s}^{-1} \text{ mrad}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1},$$

where

$$F \left( \frac{\lambda_c}{\lambda}, \gamma\psi \right) = (1 + \gamma^2\psi^2)^2 \left[ K_{2/3}^2(\xi) + \frac{\gamma^2\psi^2}{1 + \gamma^2\psi^2} K_{1/3}^2(\xi) \right],$$

$$\xi = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\lambda_c}{\lambda} (1 + \gamma^2\psi^2)^{3/2},$$

where

$\theta$  = horizontal angle,

$\psi$  = vertical angle,

$J$  = current (mA),

$R$  = radius of ring (m).

*Photon flux integrated over all vertical angles*

$$\frac{\partial^3 N}{\partial \lambda \partial \theta \partial t} = 7.9 \times 10^{11} G(y) J(\text{mA}) \frac{[E(\text{GeV})]^7}{[R(\text{m})]^2} \lambda(\text{\AA}) \text{ photons s}^{-1} \text{ mrad}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1},$$

$$\frac{\partial^3 N}{\partial \varepsilon \partial \theta \partial t} = 5.56 \times 10^7 G(y) J(\text{mA}) \frac{[E(\text{GeV})]^7}{[R(\text{m})]^2} \lambda^3(\text{\AA}) \text{ photons s}^{-1} \text{ mrad}^{-1} \text{ eV}^{-1},$$

for  $\lambda \gg \lambda_c$

$$\frac{\partial^3 N}{\partial \lambda \partial \theta \partial t} = 9.35 \times 10^{13} J(\text{mA}) \frac{[R(\text{m})]^{1/3}}{[\lambda(\text{\AA})]^{4/3}} \text{ photons s}^{-1} \text{ mrad}^{-1} \text{ \AA}^{-1}.$$

V. Kostroun (*Nuc. Inst. Meth.*, **172**, 371, 1980) provides series expressions for the modified Bessel functions of fractional order which are suitable for evaluation with programmable calculators or desktop computers.

---



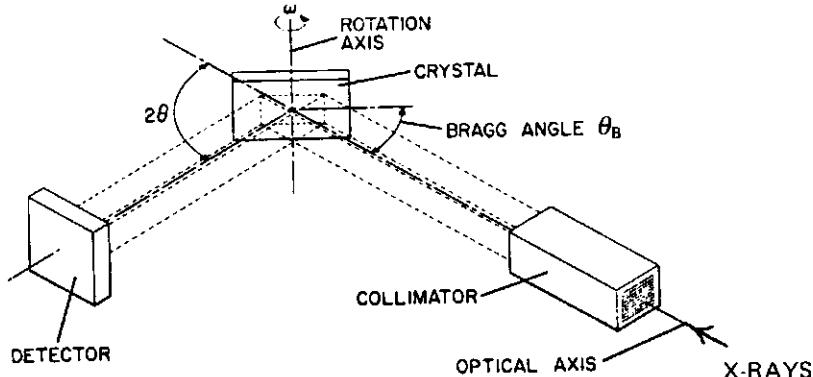
---

## X-ray spectroscopy

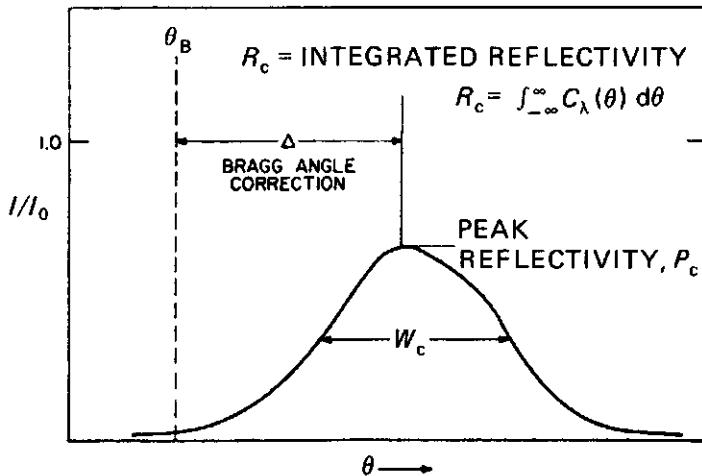
---

### Crystal spectroscopy

Collimated single crystal Bragg spectrometer. Bragg condition:  $n\lambda = 2d \sin \theta$ , where  $d$  is the effective spacing of the crystal planes that participate in the reflection. (Adapted from Burek, A., *Space Sci. Inst.*, 2, 53, 1976.)



Single crystal rocking curve  $C_\lambda \cdot \theta_B + \Delta = \sin^{-1}(n\lambda/2d_\infty)$ , where  $\Delta$  = refraction correction,  $d_\infty$  = physical spacing of reflection planes, and  $\theta_B$  = Bragg angle ignoring refraction. (Adapted from Burek, A., *Space Sci. Inst.*, 2, 53, 1976.)



*Crystal properties*

Crystal	Density (g cm <sup>-3</sup> )	Plane	2d (Å)	Integrated reflectivity (θ = 60°)
Quartz	2.66	10̄10	8.350	$6.25 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
		10̄1̄1	6.592	$1.23 \times 10^{-4}$ (D)
		20̄2̄3	2.750	$\approx 1.5 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
		22̄4̄3	2.028	$\approx 6 \times 10^{-6}$ (D)
Topaz	3.49–3.57	303	2.712	(40°) $6 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
		040	4.40	
		400	2.3246	(43°) $1 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
		200	4.64	
Calcite	2.710	211	6.083	$1.62 \times 10^{-4}$ (D)
Silicon	2.33	111	6.284	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}$ (D)
		220	3.840	$8 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
		200	5.44169	
Germanium	5.33	111	6.545	
		220	4.000	$2.3 \times 10^{-4}$ (D)
		200	5.66897	
Beryl (golden)	2.66	10̄10	15.9549	$\approx 6 \times 10^{-5}$ (D)
Sylvite	1.99	200	6.292	
Halite	2.164	200	5.641	
KBr	2.756	200	6.584	
Fluorite	3.18	111	6.306	
		200	5.4744	
		200	4.057	
Aluminum	2.699	111	4.676	
		200	4.057	
LiF	2.64	420	1.80	
		200	4.027	$10^{-4}$ – $3 \times 10^{-4}$ (D)
		220	2.848	
Graphite	2.21	002	6.708	$1.52 \times 10^{-3}$ (S)
Mica	2.77–2.88	002	19.84	$\approx 2 \times 10^{-5}$ (S)
Clinochlore	2.6–3.3	001	28.392	
ADP	1.803	101	10.648	$9.0 \times 10^{-5}$ (S)
		220	5.305	$1.4 \times 10^{-5}$ (S)
		200	7.50	
EDDT	1.538	020	8.808	$1.15 \times 10^{-4}$ (S)
PET	1.39	002	8.742	$2.2 \times 10^{-4}$ (S)
SHA	1.3	110	13.98	
KAP	1.636	001	26.5790	$5 \times 10^{-5}$ (S)
RAP	1.94	001	26.121	$1.5 \times 10^{-4}$ (S)
TIAP	2.7	001	25.7567	$7.0 \times 10^{-4}$ (S)
CsAP	2.178	001	25.68	
NH <sub>4</sub> AP	1.415	002	26.14	$1.5 \times 10^{-4}$ (S)
NaAP	1.504	002	26.42	

D = double crystal; S = single crystal.

(Adapted from Burek, A., *Space Sci. Inst.*, **2**, 53, 1976.)

***Useful characteristic lines for X-ray spectroscopy***

Wavelength(Å)	Energy(keV)	Element	Designation
1.54	8.04	Cu	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
1.66	7.47	Ni	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
1.94	6.40	Fe	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
2.29	5.41	Cr	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
2.75	4.51	Ti	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
3.60	3.44	Sn	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
4.15	2.98	Ag	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
5.41	2.29	Mo	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
6.86	1.80	Sr	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
7.13	1.74	Si	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
8.34	1.49	Al	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
8.99	1.38	Se	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
9.89	1.25	Mg	$K\alpha_{1,2}$
10.44	1.19	Ge	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
12.25	1.01	Zn	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
13.34	0.930	Cu	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
14.56	0.852	Ni	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
15.97	0.776	Co	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
17.59	0.705	Fe	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
18.32	0.677	F	$K\alpha$
19.45	0.637	Mn	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
21.64	0.573	Cr	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
23.62	0.525	O	$K\alpha$
27.42	0.452	Ti	$L\alpha_{1,2}$
31.36	0.395	Ti	$Ll$
31.60	0.392	N	$K\alpha$
44.7	0.277	C	$K\alpha$
58.4	0.212	W	$N_V N_{VII}$
64.38	0.193	Mo	$M\zeta$
67.6	0.183	B	$K\alpha$
82.1	0.151	Zr	$M\zeta$
114	0.109	Be	$K\alpha$

***Concave grating spectroscopy***

Concave grating equation:

$$\pm m\lambda = d(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta),$$

where  $m$  is the spectral order,  $d$  is the groove separation,  $\alpha$  is the angle of incidence, and  $\beta$  is the angle of diffraction. The negative sign applies when the spectrum lies between the central image ( $\alpha = \beta$ ) and the tangent to the grating (sometimes referred to as the 'outside order'). When the spectrum lies between the incident beam and the central image, the positive sign must be used, and the spectrum is referred to as the 'inside order'. The signs of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are opposite when they lie on different sides of the grating normal.

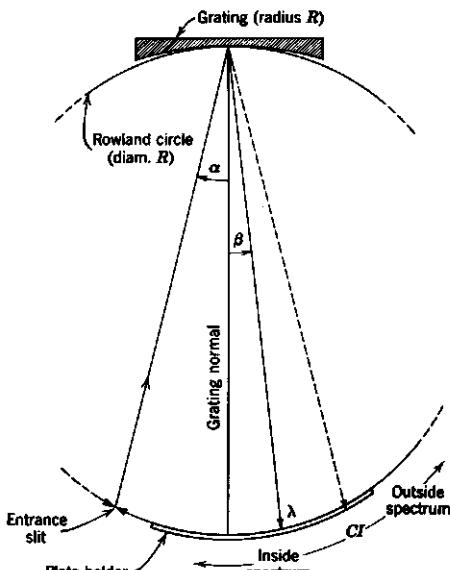
Angular dispersion ( $\alpha$  fixed):

$$\frac{d\beta}{d\lambda} = \frac{m}{d \cos \beta}.$$

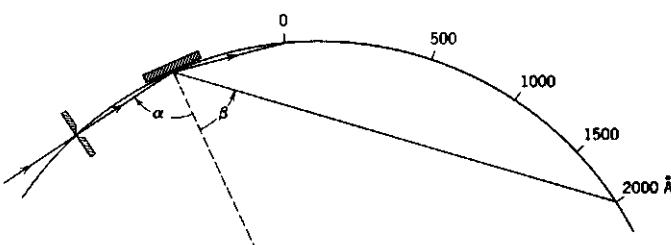
Plate factor:

$$\frac{d\lambda}{dl} = \frac{d \cos \beta}{mR}, \quad \frac{d\lambda}{dl} = \frac{\cos \beta}{mR(1/d)} \times 10^4 \text{ Å mm}^{-1},$$

where  $R$  is in meters,  $1/d$  is the number of lines  $\text{mm}^{-1}$ , and  $l$  is the distance along the Rowland circle.



Optical layout of basic spectograph.

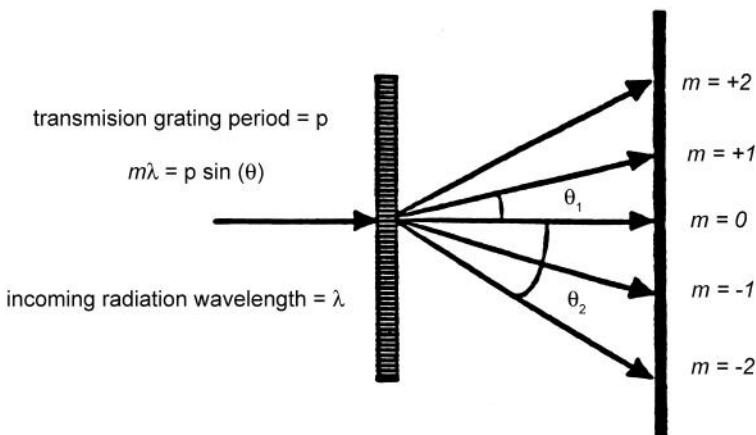


Grazing incidence spectrograph.

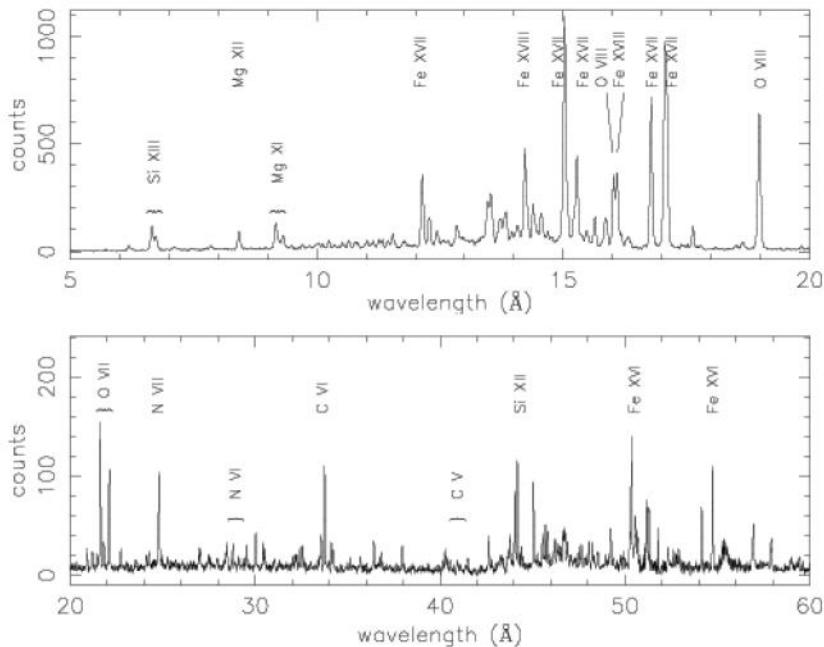
(Adapted from Samson, J., *Techniques of Vacuum Ultraviolet Spectroscopy*; John Wiley and Sons, 1967.)

Transmission grating spectroscopy

Principle of the X-ray transmission grating.  $\mathbf{m}$  is the diffraction order.



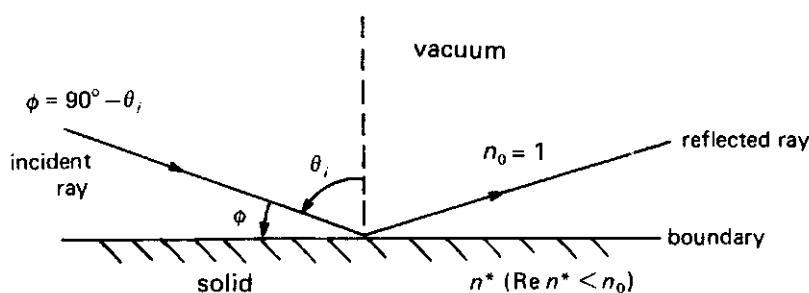
An example partial spectrum (binary star Capella) produced by the Chandra X-ray Observatory's Low Energy Transmission Grating Spectrometer (LETGS). The spectral resolving power is  $> 1000$  in the wavelength range 50–160 Å.



(From Brinkman *et al.*, 2000, ApJ, **530**, L111)

## Reflection of X-rays

---



In the X-ray band the complex refractive index  $n^*$  is usually expressed as:

$$n^* = (1 - \delta) - i\beta,$$

with

$$\delta = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \frac{e^2}{m_e c^2} \right) \left( \frac{N_0 \rho}{A} \right) f_1 \lambda^2$$

and

$$\beta = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \frac{e^2}{m_e c^2} \right) \left( \frac{N_0 \rho}{A} \right) f_2 \lambda^2,$$

where

$$\frac{e^2}{m_e c^2} = r_e = \text{the classical electron radius},$$

$N_0$  = Avogadro's number,

$\rho$  = density,

$A$  = atomic weight,

$\lambda$  = wavelength of the incident radiation,

$f_1$  = real part of the atomic scattering factor, and

$f_2$  = imaginary part of the atomic scattering factor, and

$$f_1 = (\pi r_e h c)^{-1} \int_0^\infty \frac{E'^2 \mu_a(E') dE'}{E^2 - E'^2} + Z,$$

$$f_2 = \frac{\pi}{2} (\pi r_e h c)^{-1} E \mu_a,$$

where

$Z$  = atomic number,

$h$  = Planck's constant,

$c$  = velocity of light,

$E$  = incident photon energy, and

$\mu_a$  = atomic photoabsorption cross-section.

The atomic photoabsorption cross-section  $\mu_a$  is related to the mass absorption coefficient ( $\mu/\rho$ ) or to the linear absorption coefficient  $\mu$  by:

$$\mu_a = \left( \frac{A}{N_0} \right) \left( \frac{\mu}{\rho} \right) = \left( \frac{A}{N_0 \rho} \right) \mu.$$

Numerically,

$$\delta = 2.701 \times 10^{-6} \frac{\rho(\text{g cm}^{-3})}{A} \lambda^2(\text{\AA}) f_1,$$

$$\beta = 2.701 \times 10^{-6} \frac{\rho(\text{g cm}^{-3})}{A} \lambda^2(\text{\AA}) f_2.$$

The reflection of X-rays by a perfectly smooth surface for an angle of incidence  $\theta_i$  is given by the Fresnel equations:

$$R_s = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - 2a \cos \theta_i + \cos^2 \theta_i}{a^2 + b^2 + 2a \cos \theta_i + \cos^2 \theta_i}$$

for perpendicular polarization, and

$$R_p = R_s \frac{a^2 + b^2 - 2a \sin \theta_i \tan \theta_i + \sin^2 \theta_i \tan^2 \theta_i}{a^2 + b^2 + 2a \sin \theta_i \tan \theta_i + \sin^2 \theta_i \tan^2 \theta_i}$$

for parallel polarization, where

$$2a^2 = [(n^2 - \beta^2 - \sin^2 \theta_i)^2 + 4n^2 \beta^2]^{1/2} + (n^2 - \beta^2 - \sin^2 \theta_i),$$

and

$$2b^2 = [(n^2 - \beta^2 - \sin^2 \theta_i)^2 + 4n^2 \beta^2]^{1/2} - (n^2 - \beta^2 - \sin^2 \theta_i),$$

with  $n = 1 - \delta$ .

Since the real part of the index of refraction is less than 1, near total external reflection occurs at a grazing angle  $\phi_c$  given by Snell's law:

$$\cos \phi_c = 1 - \delta,$$

$$\phi_c \approx \sqrt{(2\delta)} \quad \text{for } \delta \ll 1.$$

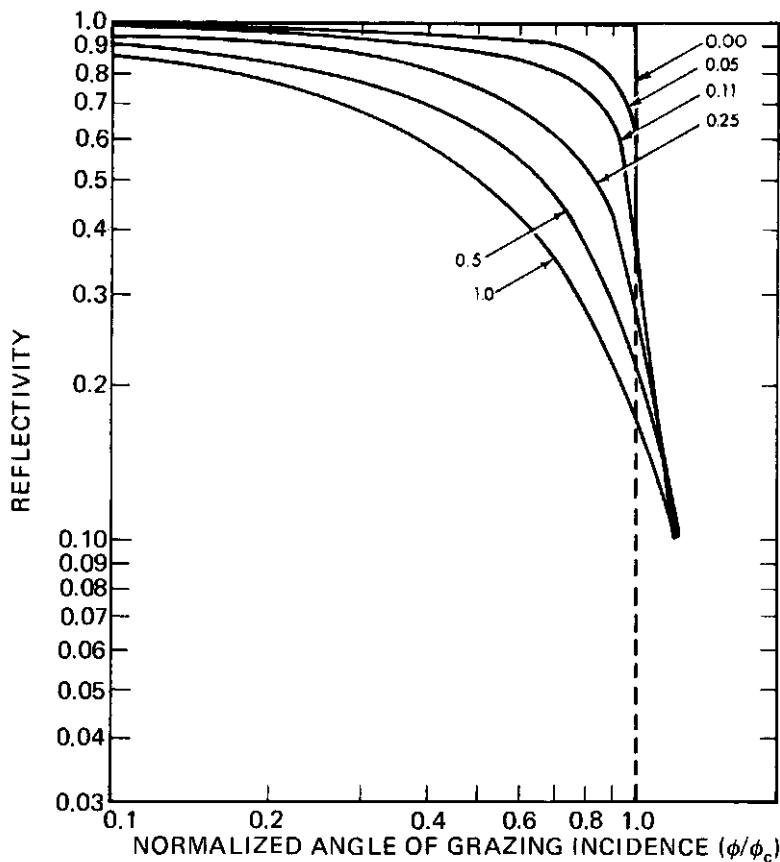
Since  $\beta \neq 0$ , reflection is not total for  $\phi < \phi_c$  but is less than 1.

Away from an absorption edge,

$$\delta \approx 2.70 \times 10^{-6} \left( \frac{Z_e}{A} \right) \rho \quad (\text{g cm}^{-3}) \lambda^2(\text{\AA})$$

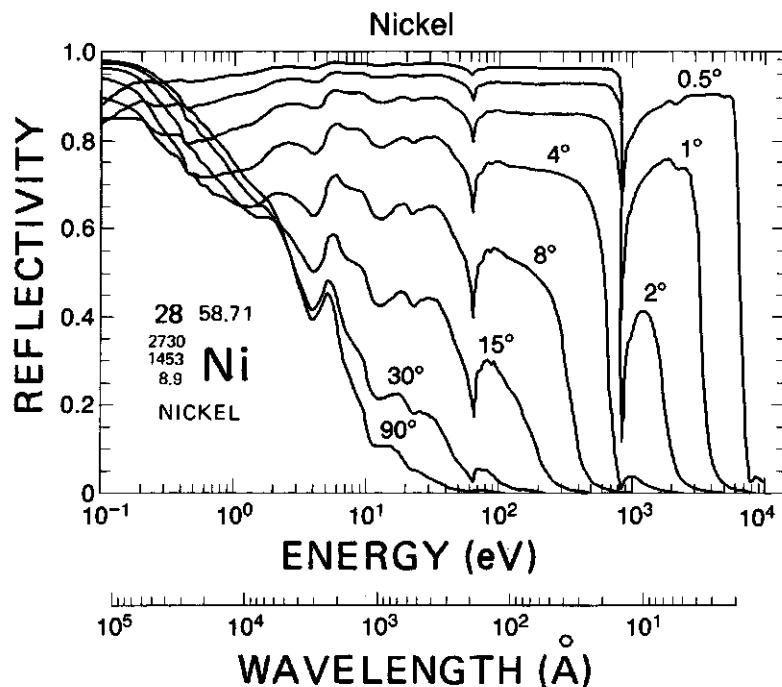
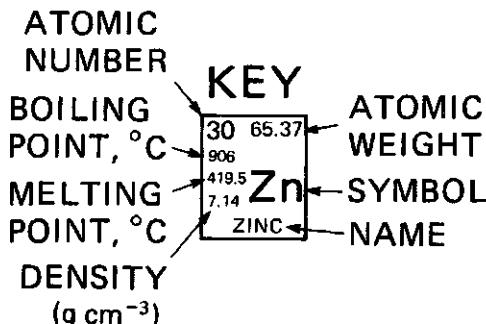
where  $Z_e$  is the number of electrons associated with wavelengths greater than  $\lambda$ .  $Z_e = Z$  for  $\lambda < \lambda_k$  (K edge).

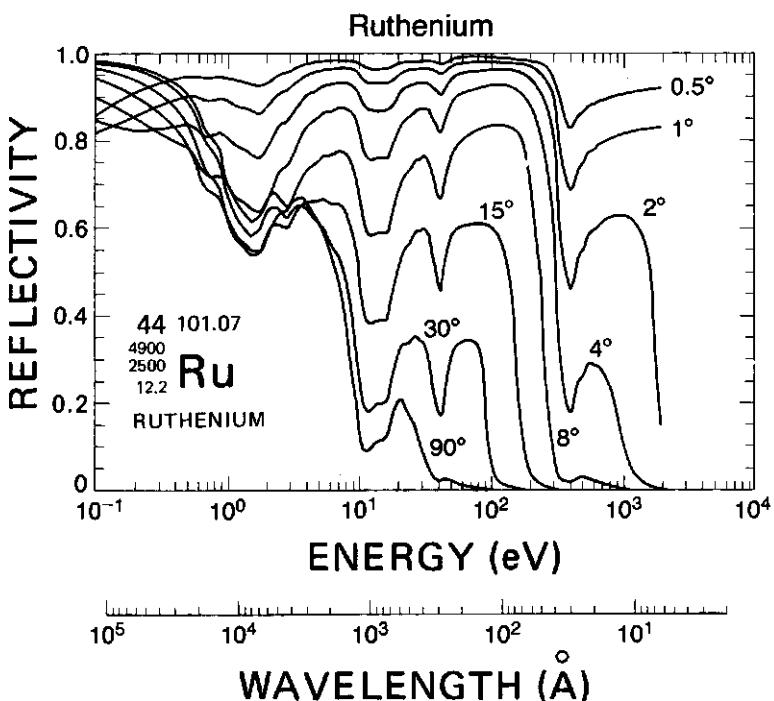
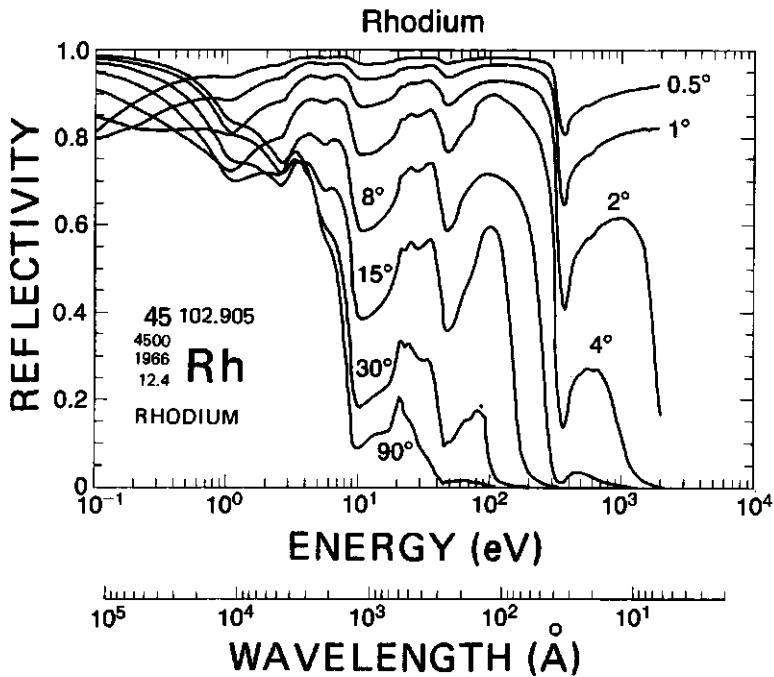
Calculated spectral reflectivity of an ideal surface as a function of normalized grazing angle  $\phi/\phi_c$  for various values of  $\beta/\delta$ . (After Hendrick, *JOSA*, **47**, 165, 1957.)

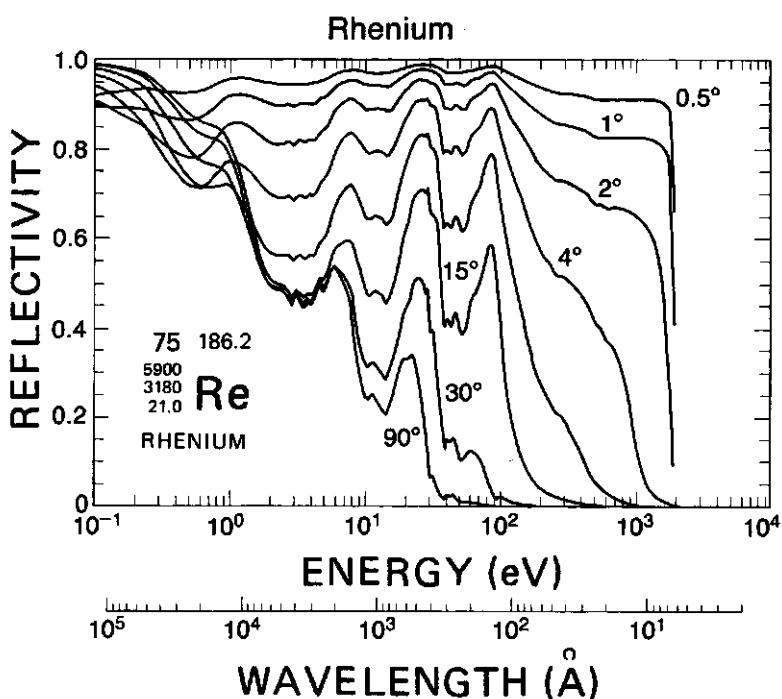
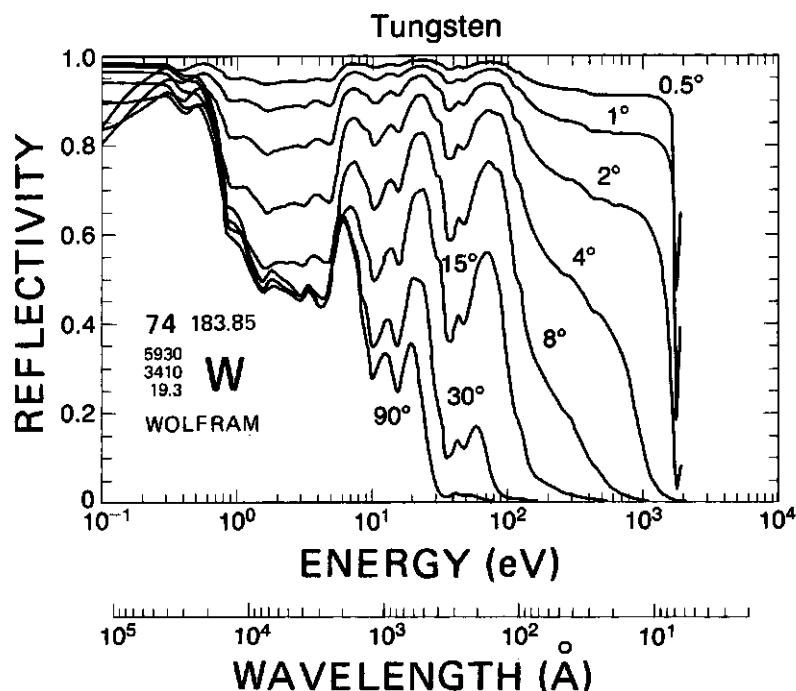


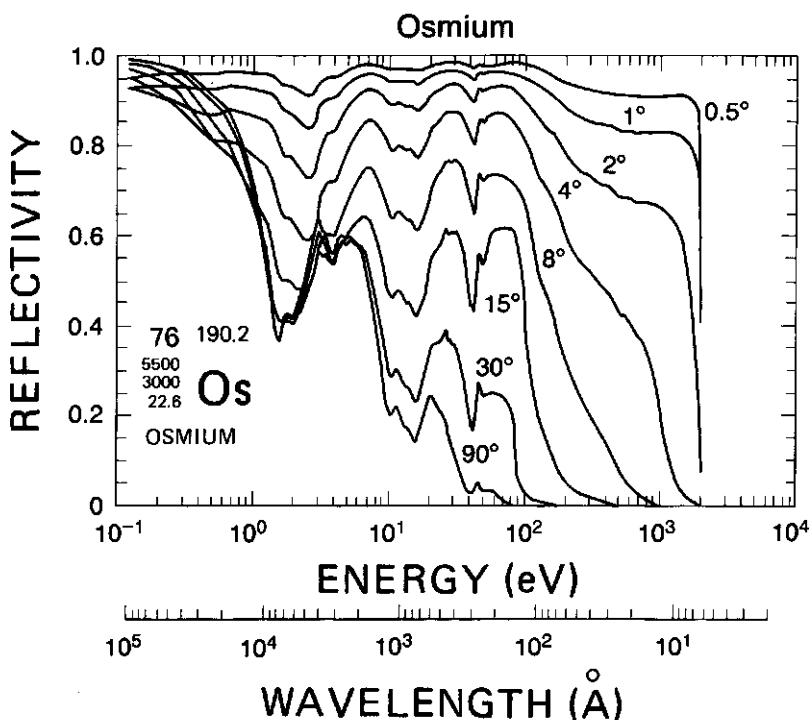
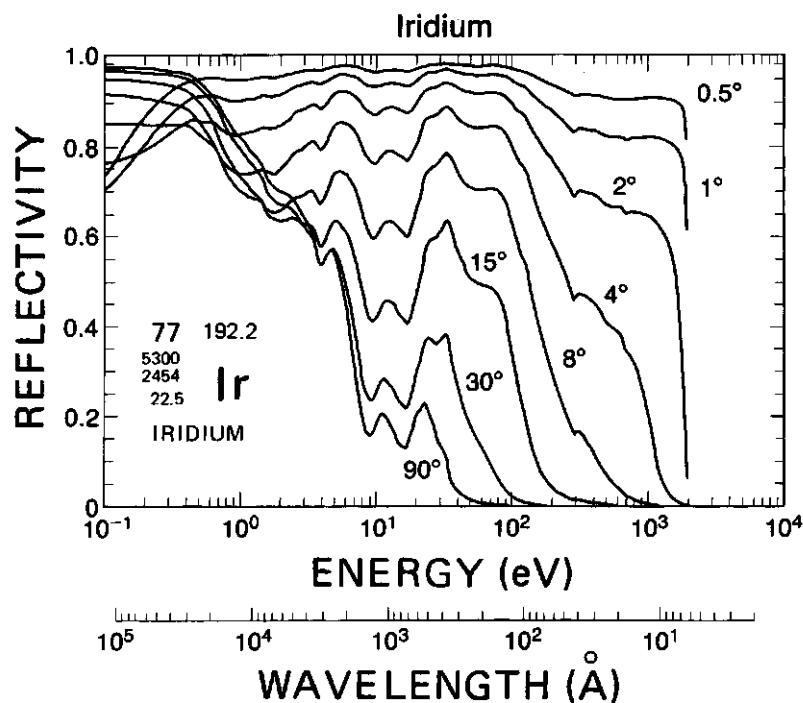
*Reflectivity vs. wavelength (energy) for various grazing angles and materials*

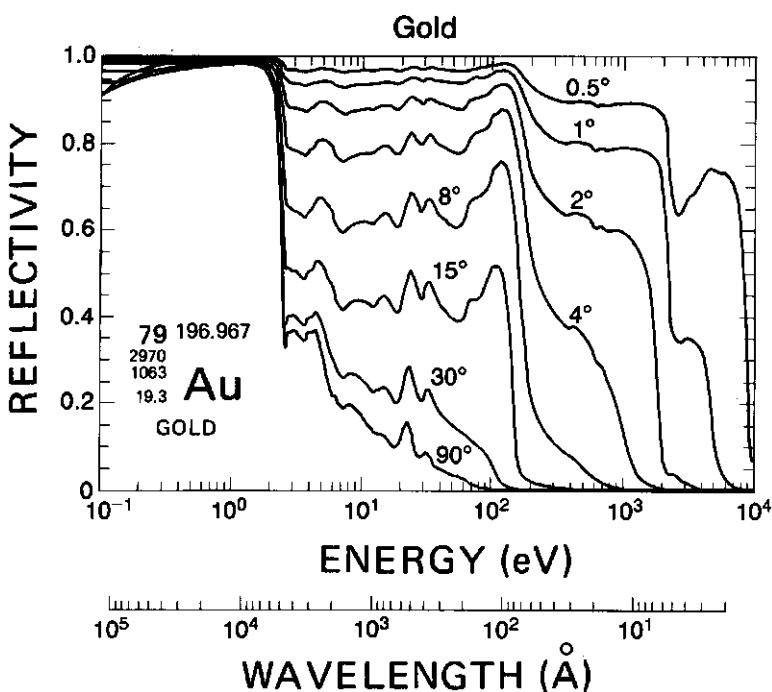
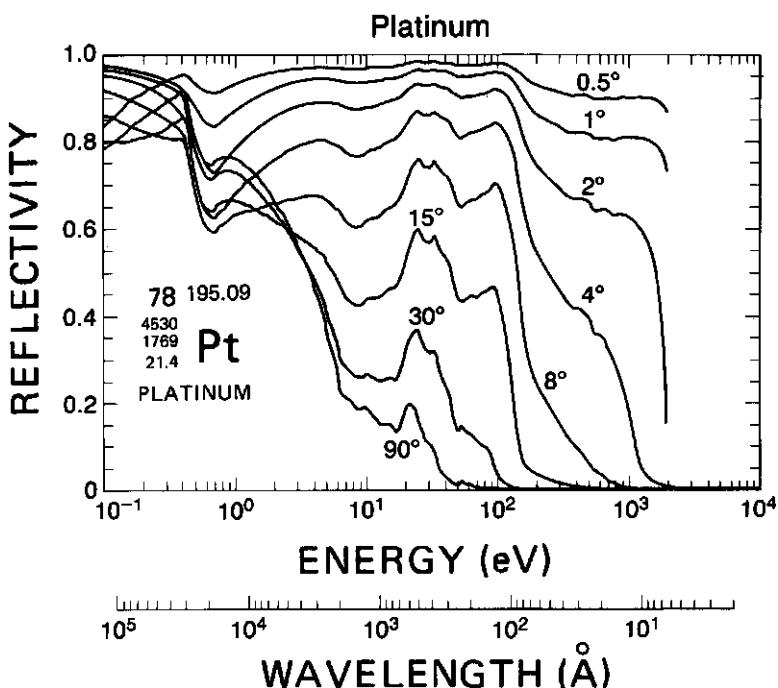
(Courtesy of M. Hetrick, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, Berkeley, CA.) Whenever possible, direct measurements should be made of grazing incidence reflectivity in the X-ray region because of uncertainties in the optical constants and the density of the material.



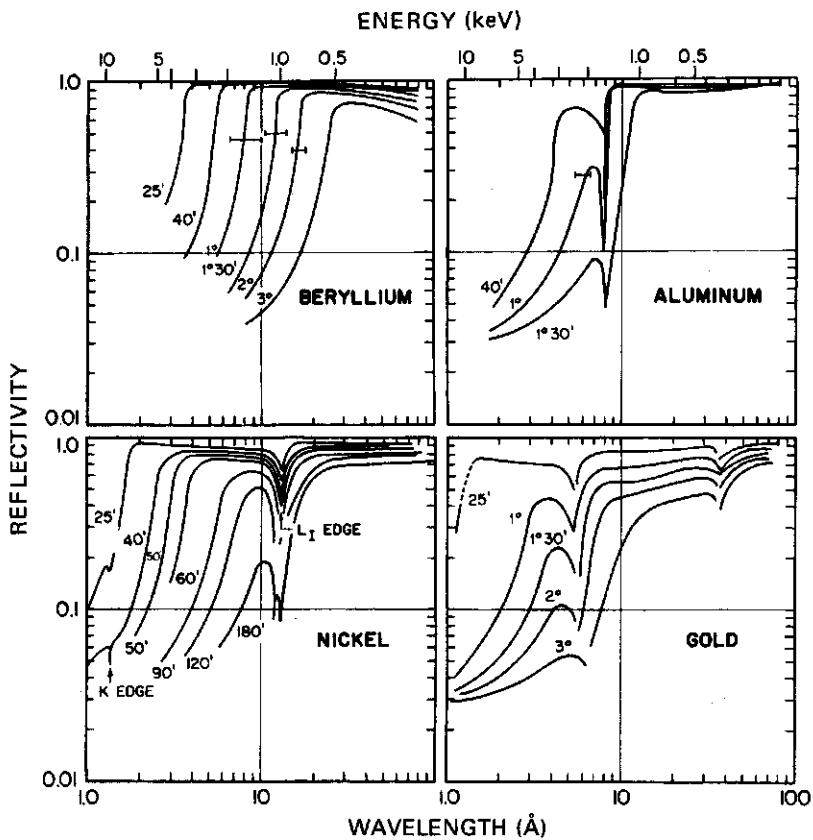






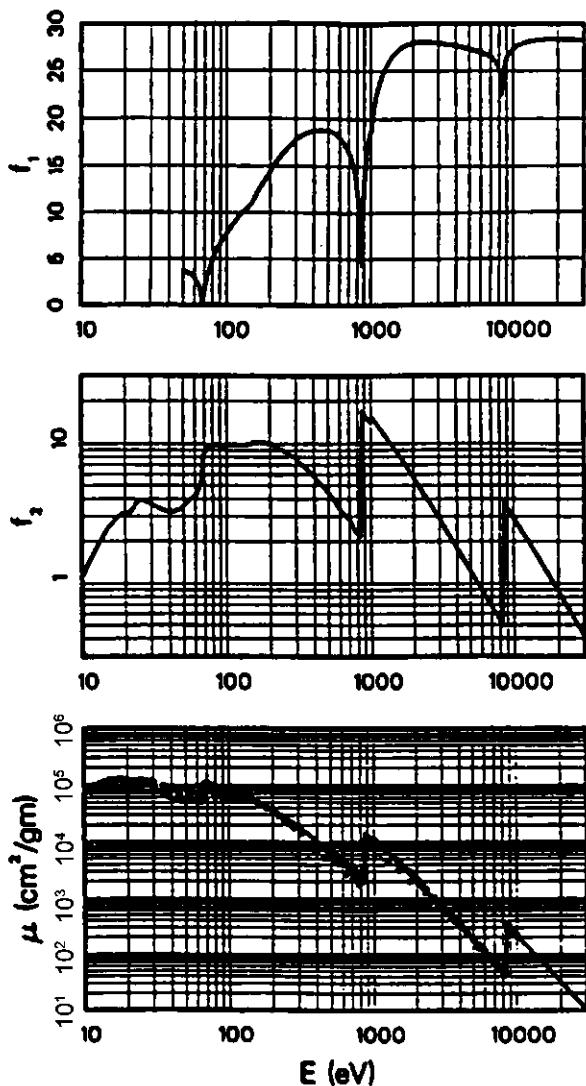


Reflectivity versus wavelength for various materials and grazing angles.  
(Adapted from Giacconi, R. et al., *Space Science Review*, 9, 3, 1969.)



*Photoabsorption cross sections and atomic scattering factors—nickel*

Edge Energies						
Nickel (Ni)	K	8332.8 eV	Li	1008.6 eV	M <sub>I</sub>	110.8 eV
Z = 28			LII	870.0 eV	M <sub>II</sub>	68.0 eV
Atomic Weight = 58.693			LIII	852.7 eV	M <sub>III</sub>	66.2 eV
$\mu_a$ (barns/atom) = $\mu(\text{cm}^2/\text{gm}) \times 97.46$						
$E(\text{keV})\mu(\text{cm}^2/\text{gm}) = f_2 \times 716.92$						



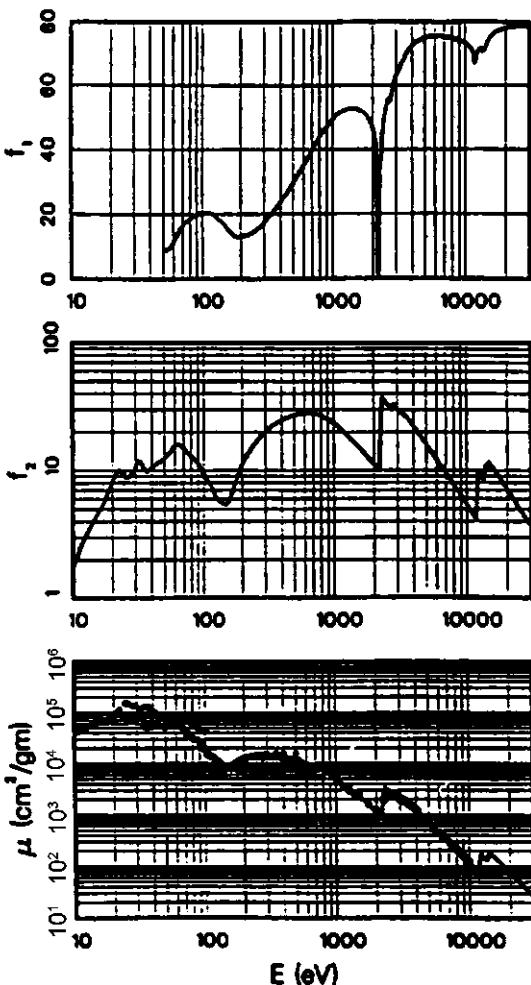
(From Henke, B.L., Gullikson, E.M., Davis, J.C., *Atomic Data and Nuclear Data Tables*, 54, 240, 1993, with permission.)

**Photoabsorption cross sections and atomic scattering factors—gold**

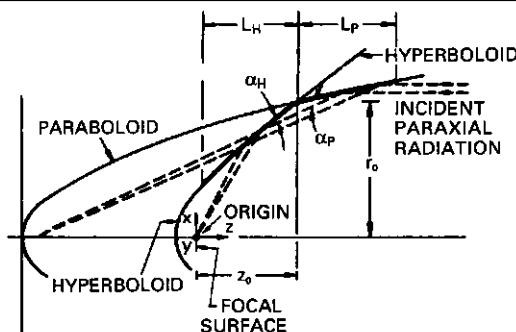
				Edge Energies					
Gold (Au)				I	3424.9 eV	N <sub>I</sub>	762.1 eV	O <sub>I</sub>	107.2 eV
Z = 79	L <sub>I</sub>	14352.8 eV	M <sub>I</sub>	3147.8 eV	N <sub>II</sub>	642.7 eV	O <sub>II</sub>	74.2 eV	
Atomic weight	L <sub>II</sub>	13733.6 eV	M <sub>II</sub>	2743.0 eV	N <sub>III</sub>	546.3 eV	O <sub>III</sub>	57.2 eV	
	L <sub>III</sub>	11918.7 eV	M <sub>III</sub>	2291.1 eV	N <sub>IV</sub>	353.2 eV			
			M <sub>IV</sub>	2205.7 eV	N <sub>V</sub>	335.1 eV			
			M <sub>V</sub>		N <sub>VI</sub>	87.6 eV			
			M <sub>VII</sub>		N <sub>VII</sub>	83.9 eV			

$$\mu_a (\text{barns/atom}) = \mu (\text{cm}^2/\text{gm}) \times 327.08$$

$$E(\text{keV})\mu (\text{cm}^2/\text{gm}) = f_2 \times 213.63$$



(From Henke, B.L., Gullikson, E.M., Davis, J.C., *Atomic Data and Nuclear Data Tables*, 54, 291, 1993, with permission.)

**Wolter type I mirror system**

The equations for a paraboloid and hyperboloid which are concentric and confocal can be written as:

$$r_p^2 = P^2 + 2PZ + [4e^2 Pd/(e^2 - 1)] \quad (\text{paraboloid}),$$

$$r_h^2 = e^2(d + Z)^2 - Z^2 \quad (\text{hyperboloid}),$$

where  $d$  is the distance from the system focus to the generating hyperbola's directrix,  $e$  is the eccentricity of this hyperbola, and  $P$  is the distance from the focus of the generating parabola to its directrix.

The origin is at the focus for axial rays,  $Z$  is the coordinate along the axis of symmetry, and  $r$  is the radius of the surface at  $Z$ .

RMS blur circle radius:

$$\sigma = \frac{(\xi + 1)}{10} \frac{\tan^2 \theta}{\tan \alpha} \left( \frac{L_p}{Z_0} \right) + 4 \tan \theta \tan^2 \alpha \quad \text{radians}$$

and

$$\xi = \alpha_p^*/\alpha_h^*$$

( $\alpha_p^*$  and  $\alpha_h^*$  are the grazing angles between the two surfaces and the path of an axial ray that strikes at an infinitesimal distance from the intersection).

For most telescope designs:  $\xi = 1$ .

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{4} \tan^{-1}(r_0/Z_0) = \frac{1}{2}(\alpha_p^* + \alpha_h^*),$$

$\theta$  = angle between incident rays and optical axis.

Geometrical collecting area:

$$A \approx 2\pi r_0 L_p \tan \alpha.$$

Effective collecting area:

$$A_e(\alpha, E) \approx AR^2(\alpha, E) \approx 8\pi Z_0 L_p R^2(\alpha, E) \alpha^2,$$

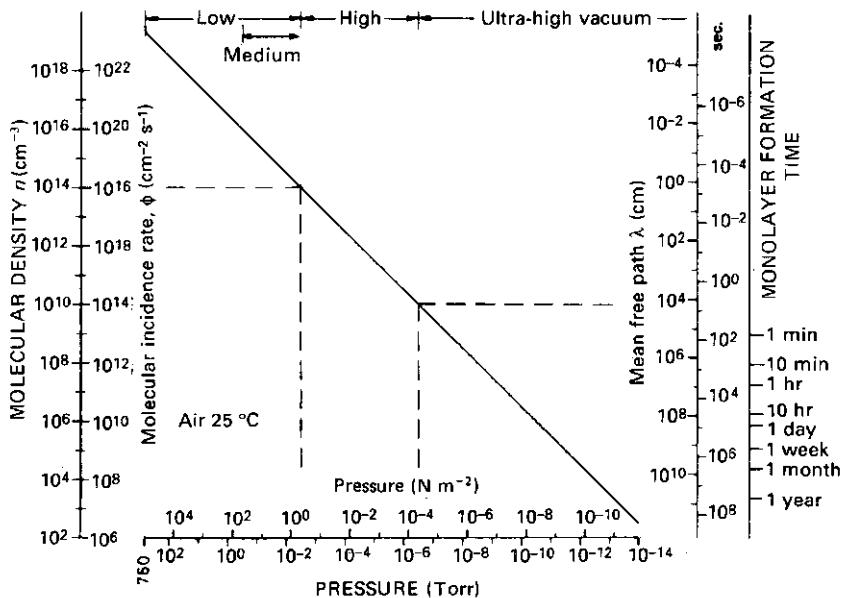
where  $R$  is the Fresnel reflectivity at energy  $E$  and mean grazing angle  $\alpha$ .

---

(Adapted from Van Speybroeck, L. & Chase, R., *AP. Opt.*, **11**, 440, 1972.)

## Vacuum technology

Vacuum nomograph. (Adapted from Roth, A., *Vacuum Technology*, North-Holland Pub. Co., 1976.)



Pumping speed of an aperture of area  $A$ :

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = A(\text{cm}^2) \sqrt{[1.32 \times 10^7 T (\text{K})/\text{mol.wt}]} \text{ cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}.$$

### Kinetic theory of gases

Mean free path,  $\lambda = 1/\sqrt{2\pi n\sigma^2}$

viscosity,  $\eta = \rho \bar{v} \lambda / 3$

heat conductivity,  $K = \eta c_v \epsilon$ ,

mean speed,  $\bar{v} = \sqrt{[2.1 \times 10^8 T (\text{K})/\text{mol.wt}]} \text{ cm s}^{-1}$ ,

where

$n$  = number of molecules  $\text{cm}^{-3}$ ,

$\rho$  = gas density in  $\text{g cm}^{-3}$ ,

$\sigma$  = mol. diameter,

$c_v$  = specific heat capacity at constant volume,

$\epsilon$  = 2.5 and 1.9 for monoatomic and diatomic gas, respectively.

Rate at which molecules strike a surface:

$$\nu = nv_a/4$$

where

$n$  = the number density of molecules

$v_a$  = the average molecular velocity

$$\nu = 3.513 \times 10^{22} P(MT)^{-1/2} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

where

$P$  = pressure in Torr

$M$  = molecular weight

$T$  = temperature in K

Mass of gas incident on unit area per unit time

$$G = 5.833 \times 10^{-2} P(MT)^{1/2} \text{ g cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$$

where  $P$ ,  $M$  and  $T$  are defined above.

Time to form a monolayer:

On the assumption that the molecular spacing is that of a close-packed (face-centered) lattice, the number of molecules per unit area to form a monomolecular layer is given by

$$N_s = 1.154\sigma^2$$

where  $\sigma$  is the molecular diameter. If we assume that the accommodation coefficient is 1, that is, the molecule sticks to the surface on first impact, the time to form a monolayer is

$$\tau = 1/\nu N_s$$

For example, at a pressure of  $10^{-6}$  Torr and at a temperature of  $20^\circ\text{C}$ , the time to form a monolayer of nitrogen molecules ( $\sigma = 3.7 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm}$ ) would be about 2 seconds.

See Dushman, S., *Scientific Foundations of Vacuum Technique*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1949, for a comprehensive treatment of the application of kinetic theory to vacuum systems.

---



---

*Physical properties of gases and vapors*

Gas	Chemical Formula	Molecular Weight M	Molecular Diameter ( $10^{-8}$ cm)
Hydrogen	H <sub>2</sub>	2.016	2.74
Deuterium	D <sub>2</sub>	4.028	2.74
Helium	He	4.002	2.18
Methane	CH <sub>4</sub>	16.04	4.14
Ammonia	NH <sub>3</sub>	17.03	4.43
Water vapor	H <sub>2</sub> O	18.02	4.60
Neon	Ne	20.18	2.59
Nitrogen	N <sub>2</sub>	28.01	3.75
Oxygen	O <sub>2</sub>	31.99	3.61
Argon	Ar	39.94	3.64
Carbon dioxide	CO <sub>2</sub>	44.01	4.59
Krypton	Kr	83.80	4.11
Xenon	Xe	131.30	4.85
Mercury	Hg	200.59	4.26

*Units of gas quantity*

1 Molar Volume	=	22.41 Liters (at standard conditions-STP)
1 Mole	=	$6.023 \times 10^{23}$ Molecules
1 Liter-Atmos	=	$2.68 \times 10^{22}$ Molecules
1 Std. cc	=	$2.68 \times 10^{19}$ Molecules
1 Torr-Liter	=	$3.52 \times 10^{19}$ Molecules
1 Std. cc	=	.76 Torr-Liter
1 Std. cc	=	1 Atmos $\text{cm}^3$
1 Cubic Foot	=	$7.6 \times 10^{23}$ Molecules (at standard conditions-STP)

(Standard Conditions are 1 Atmosphere at 273°K)

**Permeability of gases**

(Permeation constant K for various polymer seal materials and for various gases in the range 20–30°C)

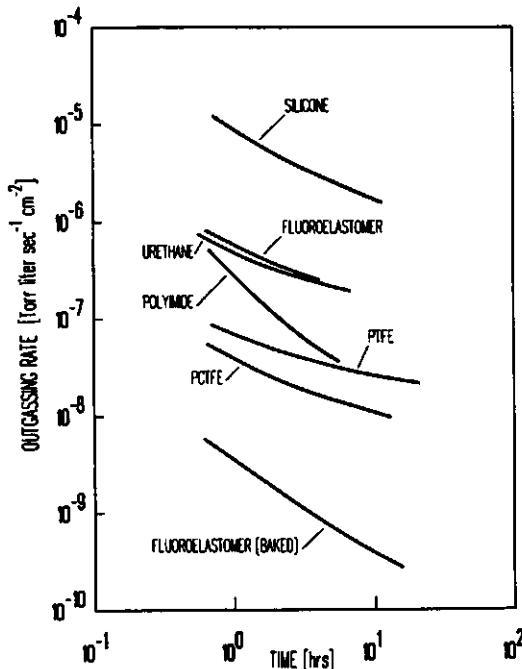
Polymer	K (std. $\text{cm}^3 \text{s}^{-1} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{Torr}^{-1} \times 10^{10}$ )			
	He	$\text{N}_2$	$\text{CO}_2$	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$
Nitrile (Buna-N)	1.0	0.024	0.75	100
Butyl	0.86	0.032	0.52	4–20
Ethylene propylene	2.6–3.9	0.44	0.92	7–70
Polyurethane	0.47	0.049	1.4–4.0	35–1,250
Fluoroelastomer(Viton)	1.2–2.3	0.03–0.07	0.3–0.8	5.2
Perfluoroelastomer				
Kalrez	11.2	0.30	2.5	—
Chemraz	14.3	0.88	—	—
Silicone	31–33	10–16	60–300	400–1,000
PTFE (Teflon)	6.8	0.14–0.32	1.2	3.6
PCTFE (Kel-F)	0.22	0.0005	0.014	0.01
Polyimide (Kapton)	0.25	0.0039	0.26	—

$Q = \Delta P K A/d$  where  $Q$  is the quantity of gas per unit time permeating the material of area  $A$  and thickness  $d$ , and  $\Delta P$  is the pressure difference across the material. (Adapted from Peacock, R.N. in, *Handbook of Vacuum Science and Technology*, Hoffman, D.M., Singh, B., and Thomas, J.H., eds., Academic Press 1998.)

**Outgassing rates for polymers**

Outgassing rates at room temperature for some polymers commonly used in vacuum sealing. The samples were originally outgassed in vacuum, then exposed to room air.

(From Peacock, R.N. in, *Handbook of Vacuum Science and Technology*, Hoffman, D.M., Singh, B., and Thomas, J.H., eds., Academic Press, 1998, with permission.)



### Physical and thermodynamic properties of cryogenic fluids

Property	Units	Air	N <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub>	He	Ne	Ar	Kr	Xe	CH <sub>4</sub>
$M$	g/mol	28.96	28.014	31.999	2.0159	4.0026	20.180	39.948	83.800	131.290	16.043
$T_t$	K	59.75	63.15	54.3584	13.8	24.5561	83.8058	115.8	161.4	90.694	
$P_t$	kPa		12.463	0.14633	7.042	50.00	68.95	72.92	81.59	11.696	
$\rho_t(l)$	g/mL	0.959	0.870	1.306	0.0770	1.251	1.417	2.449	2.978	0.4515	
$T_b$	K	78.67	77.35	90.188	20.28	4.2221	27.07	87.293	119.92	165.10	111.668
$\rho(l)@T_b$	g/mL	0.8754	0.807	1.141	0.0708	0.124901	1.204	1.396	2.418	2.953	0.4224
$\rho(g)@T_b$	g/L	3.199	4.622	4.467	1.3390	16.89	9.51	5.79	8.94		1.816
$T_c$	K	132.5	126.20	154.581	32.98	5.1953	44.40	150.663	209.40	289.73	190.56
$P_c$	MPa	3.766	3.390	5.043	1.293	0.227460	2.760	4.860	5.500	5.840	4.592
$\rho_c$	g/mL	0.316	0.313	0.436	0.031	0.06964	0.484	0.531	0.919	1.110	0.1627

$M$  Molar mass in grams per mole       $\rho(l)@T_b$  Liquid density at the normal boiling point in grams

per milliliter

$T_t$  Triple point temperature in kelvins       $\rho(g)@T_b$  Vapor density at the normal boiling point in grams

per liter

$P_t$  Triple point pressure in kilopascals       $T_c$  Critical temperature in kelvins

per milliliter

$\rho_t(l)$  Liquid density at the triple point in grams

per milliliter

of 101325 pascals (760 mm Hg)       $P_c$  Critical pressure in megapascals

per liter

The triple point is the point in the pressure-temperature diagram of a substance in which all three phases can exist simultaneously.

The critical temperature is the temperature above which it is no longer possible to liquefy a gas by increasing the pressure. The pressure that is needed to cause the gas or vapor to condense at the critical pressure is the critical pressure. The critical density is the density of the substance at the critical temperature and pressure.

1 MPa = 9.8692 atmos = 7500.6 Torr = 145.0377 psi

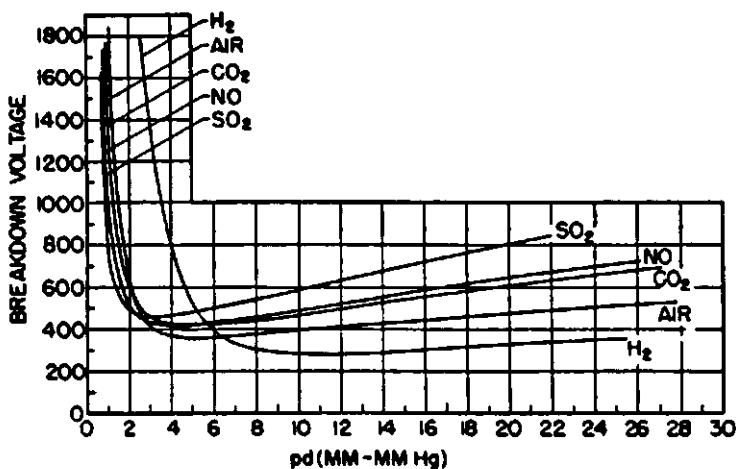
(From *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, CRC Press, 1995.*)

**Equivalents for various cryogenic fluids**

Fluid	Boiling point at 1 atm	Weight in pounds	Ft <sup>3</sup> at 70°F and 1 atm	Liquid liters at b.p.	Liquid gallons at b.p.	Heat of vapor. (Btu)
Nitrogen	-320.4 F	1	13.81	0.5618	0.1484	85.2
	-195.8 C	0.0724	1	0.0407	0.0108	6.168
	77.3 K	1.780	24.58	1	0.2642	151.7
		6.738	92.94	3.785	1	574.1
Helium	-452.1 F	1	96.8	3.628	0.9585	8.8
	-268.9 C	0.0103	1	0.375	0.0099	0.0906
	4.2 K	0.2756	26.68	1	0.2642	2.425
		1.043	101.0	3.785	1	9.178
Oxygen	-297.4 F	1	12.09	0.3973	0.1050	91.7
	-183.0 C	0.827	1	0.0329	0.0087	7.584
	90.1 K	2.517	30.43	1	0.2642	230.8
		9.527	115.2	3.785	1	873.6
Hydrogen	-423.2 F	1	192.3	6.481	1.712	193
	-252.9 C	0.0052	1	0.0337	0.0089	1.004
	20.2 K	0.1543	29.67	1	0.2642	29.78
		0.5841	112.3	3.785	1	112.7
Argon	-302.6 F	1	9.680	0.3235	0.0855	70.2
	-185.9 C	0.1033	1	0.0334	0.0088	7.251
	87.2 K	3.091	29.92	1	0.2642	217.0
		11.70	113.3	3.785	1	821.3

**Paschen curves for various gases**

Static breakdown voltages for various gases as a function of the product of the pressure (Torr) and gap distance (mm). (From Knoll, M., Ollendorf, F., and Rompe, R., *Gasentladungstabellen*, Springer-Verlag, 1935.)



## Optical point spread function

---

The irradiance distribution of the monochromatic image of a point object,  $h_\lambda(x, y; \alpha, \beta)$  is called the point spread function (PSF) of an optical system.  $x$  and  $y$  are the coordinates of the image points and  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the coordinates of the ideal image of the object (a point). If  $f_\lambda(x, y)$  is the ideal image of an extended monochromatic object, the image produced by the optical system is given by:

$$g_\lambda(x, y) = \int \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h_\lambda(x, y; \alpha, \beta) f_\lambda(\alpha, \beta) d\alpha d\beta.$$

In some cases, the optical system is *shift-invariant* (at least, over a restricted field):

$$h_\lambda(x, y; \alpha, \beta) = K_\lambda(x - \alpha, y - \beta),$$

and the above integral can be written as a convolution:

$$g_\lambda(x, y) = \int \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K_\lambda(x - \alpha, y - \beta) f_\lambda(\alpha, \beta) d\alpha d\beta.$$

In general, for optical systems, the PSF is wavelength dependent, *shift-varying*, and asymmetric. Over a restricted field, say within a few arc minutes of the optical axis, it is approximately shift-invariant and symmetric and it is possible to simplify the deconvolution of an image and use Fourier transforms.

In the following discussion we will consider the PSF to be shift invariant and symmetric and will drop the  $\lambda$  subscript.

The PSF is the function that completely characterizes the imaging properties of an optical system. Several useful functions and quantities can be derived from it:

### ***The line spread function***

$$A(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K(x, y) dy \quad (K(x, y) \text{ is the PSF})$$

represents the intensity distribution for a line object.

### ***The edge trace***

$$I(x_o) = \int_{-\infty}^{x_o} A(x) dx$$

represents the intensity distribution for a knife edge object.

### ***The modulation transfer function (MTF)***

This represents the response of an optical system to an object with a sinusoidally varying radiance  $G$  of spatial frequency  $\nu$ :

$$\text{MTF}(\nu) = \frac{M_i(\nu)}{M_o(\nu)},$$

where  $M_i$  and  $M_o$  are the modulation of the image and object, respectively. The modulation is given by:

$$M_{\text{image or object}}(\nu) = \left( \frac{\max - \min}{\max + \min} \right) \text{ image or object.}$$

Since the radiance of the object (image) varies sinusoidally, we can write:

$$G_o(x) = a_o + b_o \sin 2\pi\nu x,$$

$$G_i(x) = a_i + b_i \sin 2\pi\nu s.$$

Then

$$M_o = \frac{(a_o + b_o) - (a_o - b_o)}{(a_o + b_o) + (a_o - b_o)} = \frac{b_o}{a_o},$$

$$M_i = \frac{(a_i + b_i) - (a_i - b_i)}{(a_i + b_i) + (a_i - b_i)} = \frac{b_i}{a_i},$$

and the modulation transfer function,

$$\text{MTF} = \frac{(b_i/a_i)}{(b_o/a_o)}.$$

The MTF is also given by the absolute value of the Fourier transform of the line spread function:

$$\text{MTF}(\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A(x) e^{-2\pi i \nu x} dx.$$

**The full-width half-maximum (FWHM)** of a rotationally symmetric PSF is the width of the function at half its peak value. If  $K(x, y) = K(r)$  where  $r$  the radial coordinate in the image plane, and the radius  $r_0$  is such that:

$$K(r_0) = \frac{1}{2} K(0) \quad (\text{half the peak value of the PSF}),$$

then

$$\text{FWHM} = 2r_0; \quad r_0 = \text{half-width},$$

or half-width-half-maximum (HWHM).

**The root mean square (rms) radius  $\langle r \rangle$**  is defined by:

$$\langle r \rangle^2 = \frac{\int_0^{\infty} r^2 K(r) r dr}{\int_0^{\infty} K(r) r dr}.$$

**The encircled energy function  $E(r)$** , the fraction of the total imaged photons that are within a circle of radius  $r$ , is given by:

$$E(r) = \frac{\int_0^r K(r) r dr}{\int_0^{\infty} K(r) r dr}.$$

The radius of the circle which contains 50% of the imaged photons, the **half-power radius**,  $r_{1/2}$  defined by:

$$E(r_{1/2}) \equiv 0.50 = \frac{\int_0^{r_{1/2}} K(r)r dr}{\int_0^{\infty} K(r)r dr}.$$

In order to complete the discussion of the point spread function, we give here the various functions and parameters derived from a Gaussian point spread since this can be a useful description of the inner core of the PSF.

The form of the radial symmetric Gaussian is given as:

$$\text{PSF} = Ce^{-r^2/2\sigma^2},$$

where  $C$  and  $\sigma$  are arbitrary constants. We have derived the following functions and quantities:

the line spread function,

$$A(x) = C\sigma\sqrt{(2\pi)}e^{-x^2/2\sigma^2},$$

the edge trace,

$$I(x_0) = C\sigma\frac{\sqrt{(2\pi)}}{2}(1 + \text{erf}(x_0/\sigma\sqrt{2}))$$

where  $\text{erf}(z)$  is the error function,

the modulation transfer function,

$$M(\nu) = Ce^{-2(\pi\nu\sigma)^2}, \text{ and}$$

the encircled energy,

$$E(r) = 1 - e^{-r^2/2\sigma^2}.$$

The table below gives the relations between the FWHM, the rms radius, and the half-power radius for the Gaussian spread function.

#### PARAMETERS FOR THE GAUSSIAN SPREAD FUNCTION

Spread function	rms radius $\langle r \rangle$	Full width half maximum (FWHM)	Half power radius $r_{1/2}$
$Ce^{-r^2/2\sigma^2}$	$\sigma\sqrt{2}$	$2.36\sigma$	$1.18\sigma$

**Point spread function for a circular aperture (diffraction by a circular aperture)**

If the transmission of the system is uniform over the (circular) aperture and the system is aberration-free, the illuminance distribution in the image becomes:

$$P(y, z) = \pi \left( \frac{\text{NA}}{\lambda} \right)^2 P_t \left[ \frac{2J_1(m)}{m} \right]^2,$$

where NA is the numerical aperture of the system,  $J_1$  is the first-order Bessel function:

$$J_1(x) = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{(x/2)^3}{1^2 2} + \frac{(x/2)^5}{1^2 2^2 3} - \dots,$$

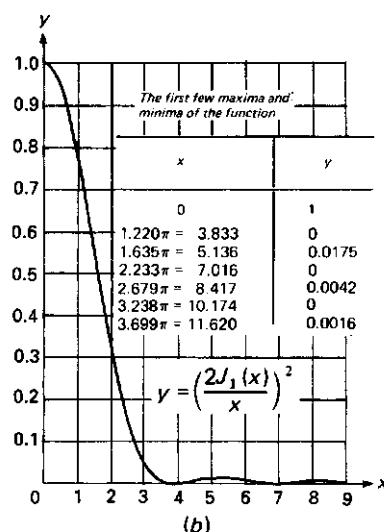
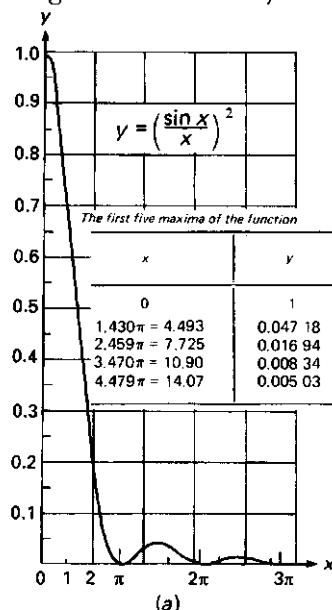
$P_t$  is the total power in the point image, and  $m$  is the normalized radial coordinate:

$$m = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \text{NA}(y^2 + z^2)^{1/2} = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \text{NA} \cdot r.$$

The fraction of the total power falling within a radial distance  $r_0$  of the center of the pattern is given by  $1 - J_0^2(m_0) - J_1^2(m_0)$ , where  $J_0$  is the zero-order Bessel function:

$$J_0(x) = 1 - \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^2 + \frac{(x/2)^4}{1^2 2^2} - \frac{(x/2)^6}{1^2 2^2 3^2} + \dots$$

Fraunhofer diffraction at a rectangular aperture (a) and at a circular aperture (b). (Adapted from Born, M. & Wolf, E., *Principles of Optics*, Pergamon Press 1984.)



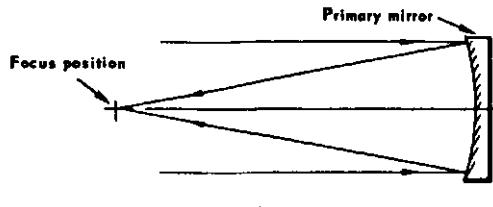
## Optical telescopes

Configurations of optical telescopes. (Adapted from the Encyclopedia of Astronomy and Astrophysics, 2001.)

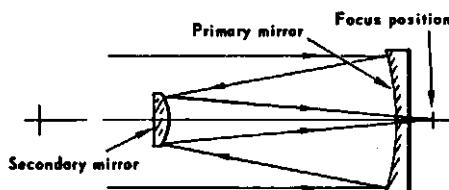
TYPE	PRIMARY	SECONDARY	CONFIGURATION
KEPLERIAN GALILEAN (if refractive)	SPHERE or PARABOLA	NONE	
HERSCHELIAN	OFF-AXIS PARABOLA	NONE	
NEWTONIAN	PARABOLA	DIAGONAL FLAT	
GREGORIAN	PARABOLA	ELLIPSE	
MERSENNE	PARABOLA	PARABOLA	
CASSEGRAIN RITCHÉY- CHRÉTIEN DALL-KIRKHAM	PARABOLA MODIFIED PARABOLA ELLIPSE	HYPERBOLA MODIFIED HYPERBOLA SPHERE	
SCHMIDT	ASPHERIC REFRACTOR	SPHERE	
BOUWERS- MAKSUTOV	REFRACTIVE MENISCUS	SPHERE	
1-PRIMARY 2-SECONDARY 3-EYEPIECES/CORRECTORS 4-FOCUS			

**Optical telescopes (cont.)**

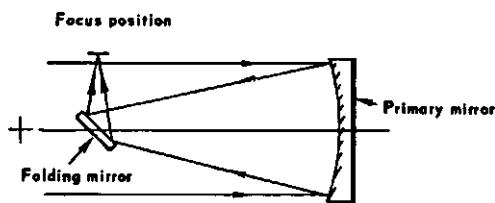
Focus configurations for optical telescopes. (Adapted from *Survey of Catadioptric Optical Systems*, J.B. Galligan, ed., Itek Corporation, 1966.)



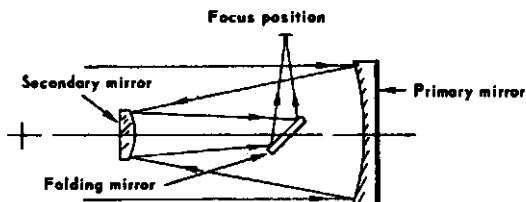
Prime Focus



Cassegrain Focus



Newtonian Focus



Coudé Focus

## Photometry

---

**Spectral luminous efficiency.** Relative luminosity values for photopic and scotopic vision

Wavelength (nm)	Photopic $V(\lambda)$ ( $B > 3 \text{ cd m}^{-2}$ )	Scotopic $V(\lambda)$ ( $B < 3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cd m}^{-2}$ )
350	—	0.0003
360	—	0.0008
370	—	0.0022
380	0.00004	0.0055
390	0.00012	0.0127
400	0.0004	0.0270
410	0.0012	0.0530
420	0.0040	0.0950
430	0.0116	0.157
440	0.023	0.239
450	0.038	0.339
460	0.060	0.456
470	0.091	0.576
480	0.139	0.713
490	0.208	0.842
500	0.323	0.948
510	0.503	0.999
520	0.710	0.953
530	0.862	0.849
540	0.954	0.697
550	0.995	0.531
560	0.995	0.365
570	0.952	0.243
580	0.870	0.155
590	0.757	0.0942
600	0.631	0.0561
610	0.503	0.0324
620	0.381	0.0188
630	0.265	0.0105
640	0.175	0.0058
650	0.107	0.0032
660	0.061	0.0017
670	0.032	0.0009
680	0.017	0.0005
690	0.0082	0.0002
700	0.0041	0.0001
710	0.0021	—
720	0.00105	—
730	0.00052	—
740	0.00025	—
750	0.00012	—
760	0.00006	—
770	0.00003	—

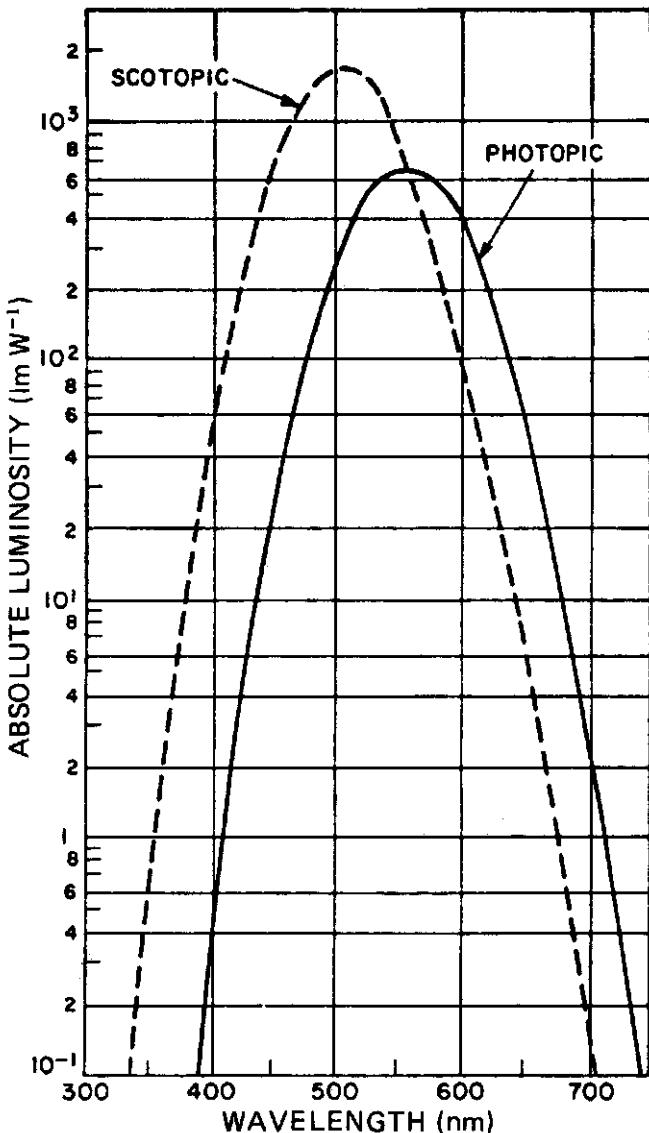
$K(\lambda)$ , spectral luminous efficacy for scotopic and photopic vision.

Scotopic:

$$\max K = K(511 \text{ nm}) = 1746 \text{ lm W}^{-1}.$$

Photopic:

$$\max K = K(555 \text{ nm}) = 680 \text{ lm W}^{-1}$$



*Summary of typical sources/parameters for the most commonly used radiant energy sources*

Lamp type	DC input power (watts)	Arc dimensions (mm)	Luminous flux (lm) <sup>†</sup>	Luminous efficiency (lm W <sup>-1</sup> )	Average luminance (cd mm <sup>-2</sup> )
<b>Mercury short arc (high pressure)</b>					
	200	2.5 × 1.8	9500	47.5	250
<b>Xenon short arc</b>					
	150	1.3 × 1.0	3200	21	300
<b>Xenon short arc</b>	20 000	12.5 × 6	1 150 000	57	3000 (in 3 mm × 6 mm)
<b>Zirconium arc</b>	100	1.5 (diam.)	250	2.5	100
<b>Vortex-stabilized argon arc</b>					
Tungsten light bulbs	24 800 10 100 1000	3 × 10 — — —	422 000 79 1630 21500	17 7.9 16.3 21.5	1400 10 to 25
<b>Fluorescent lamp standard</b>					
warm white	40	—	2560	64	—
<b>Carbon arc, non-rotating</b>					
rotating	2000 15 800	≈ 5 × 5 ≈ 8 × 8	36 800 350 000	18.4 22.2	175 to 800
<b>Deuterium lamp</b>	40	1.0 (diam.)	(Nominal irradiance at 250 nm at 30 cm = 0.2 $\mu$ W cm <sup>-2</sup> nm <sup>-1</sup> )		

<sup>†</sup>Luminous flux  $\Phi$  in lumens from a source of total radiant power  $W(\lambda)$  watts per unit wavelength:

$$\Phi = 680 \int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) V(\lambda) d\lambda.$$

where  $V(\lambda)$  represents the spectral luminous efficiency.

*Conversion table for various photometric units*

*Luminous intensity ( $I$ )*

1 candela (cd) = 1 lumen/steradian (lm sr<sup>-1</sup>)

*Luminous flux ( $\Phi$ ) [lumen (lm)]*

$4\pi$  lumens = total flux from uniform point source of 1 candela

*Illuminance ( $E$ )*

1 footcandle (fc) = 1 lumen foot<sup>-2</sup>

1 lux (lx) = 1 lumen m<sup>-2</sup> = 0.0929 footcandle

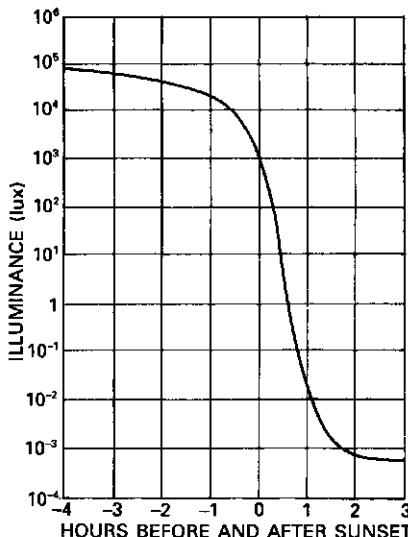
*Luminance (L)*1 footlambert (fL) =  $1/\pi$  candela foot $^{-2}$ .1 nit (nt) = 1 candela m $^{-2}$  = 0.2919 footlambert*Luminance values for various sources*

Source	Luminance (fL)	Luminance (cd m $^{-2}$ )
Sun, as observed from Earth's surface at meridian	$4.7 \times 10^8$	$1.6 \times 10^9$
Moon, bright spot, as observed from Earth's surface	730	2500
Clear blue sky	2300	7900
Lightning flash	$2 \times 10^{10}$	$7 \times 10^{10}$
Atomic fission bomb, 0.1 ms after firing, 90-ft diameter ball	$6 \times 10^{11}$	$2 \times 10^{12}$
Tungsten filament lamp, gas-filled, 16 lm W $^{-1}$	$2.6 \times 10^6$	$9 \times 10^6$
Plain carbon arc, positive crater	$4.7 \times 10^6$	$1.6 \times 10^7$
Fluorescent lamp, T-12 bulb, cool white, 430 mA, medium loading	2000	7000
Colour television screen, average brightness	50	170

*Typical values of natural scene illuminance*

Sky condition	Approximate levels of illuminance (lux)
Direct sunlight	$1-1.3 \times 10^5$
Full daylight (not direct sunlight)	$1-2 \times 10^4$
Overcast day	$10^3$
Very dark day	$10^2$
Twilight	10
Deep twilight	1
Full moon	$10^{-1}$
Quarter moon	$10^{-2}$
Moonless, clear night sky	$10^{-3}$
Moonless, overcast night sky	$10^{-4}$

Natural illuminance on the Earth for the hours immediately before and after sunset with a clear sky and no moon



### Radiant responsivity

Calculation of radiant responsivity from luminous responsivity for photocathodes:

The response of a photocathode (in amperes) to the total radiation  $W(\lambda)$  watts per unit wavelength is:

$$\int \sigma R(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda,$$

where the relative spectral response of the photocathode is  $R(\lambda)$  ( $R_{\max} = 1$ ) and  $\sigma$  is the absolute radiant response at the peak of the response curve (amperes per watt). The light flux (in lumens) is given by:

$$680 \int V(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda.$$

where  $V(\lambda)$  is the spectral luminous efficiency. The luminous responsivity of the photocathode in amperes per lumen is then given by:

$$S = \frac{\sigma \int R(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda}{680 \int V(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda}$$

and, therefore,

$$\sigma = \frac{680 S \int V(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int R(\lambda) W(\lambda) d\lambda}.$$

---

(The material in the preceding sections was adapted from Engstrom, R. W., *Photomultiplier Handbook*, RCA Corporation, 1980.)

**Standard units, symbols, and defining equations for fundamental photometric and radiometric quantities**

Quantity <sup>(a)</sup>	Symbol <sup>(a)</sup>	Defining equation <sup>(b)</sup>	Commonly used units <sup>(c)</sup>	Symbol
<b>RADIOMETRIC</b>				
Radiant energy	$Q$ ( $Q_e$ )	—	erg † joule kilowatt-hour	J kWh
Radiant density	$w$ ( $w_e$ )	$w = dQ/dV$	† joule per cubic meter erg per cubic centimeter	J m <sup>-3</sup> erg cm <sup>-3</sup>
Radiant flux	$\Phi$ ( $\Phi_e$ )	$\Phi = dQ/dt$	† watt erg s <sup>-1</sup>	W erg s <sup>-1</sup>
Radiant flux density at a surface (radiant emittance) <sup>(d)</sup>	$M$ ( $M_e$ )	$M = d\Phi/dA$	watt per square centimeter	W cm <sup>-2</sup>
Irradiance	$E$ ( $E_e$ )	$E = d\Phi/dA$	† watt per square meter, etc.	W m <sup>-2</sup>
Radiant intensity	$I$ ( $I_e$ )	$I = d\Phi/d\omega^{(i)}$	† watt per steradian	W sr <sup>-1</sup>
Radiance	$L$ ( $L_e$ )	$L = d^2\Phi/d\omega/dA \cos \theta$ $= dl/(dA \cos \theta)^{(e)}$	watt per steradian and square centimeter † watt per steradian and square meter	W sr <sup>-1</sup> cm <sup>-2</sup> W sr <sup>-1</sup> m <sup>-2</sup>
Emissivity	$\varepsilon$	$\varepsilon = M/M_{\text{blackbody}}^{(f)}$	one (numeric)	—
<b>PHOTOMETRIC</b>				
Absorptance	$\alpha$ ( $\alpha_\nu, \alpha_e$ )	$\alpha = \Phi_a/\Phi_i^{(g)}$	one (numeric)	—
Reflectance	$\rho$ ( $\rho_\nu, \rho_e$ )	$\rho = \Phi_r/\Phi_i^{(g)}$	one (numeric)	—
Transmittance	$\tau$ ( $\tau_\nu, \tau_e$ )	$\tau = \Phi_t/\Phi_i^{(g)}$	one (numeric) lumen-hour	— lm-h
Luminous energy (quantity of light)	$Q$ ( $Q_\nu$ )	$Q_\nu = \int_{380}^{760} K(\lambda) Q_e \epsilon \lambda d\lambda$	† lumen-second (talbot)	lm-s
Luminous density	$w$ ( $w_\nu$ )	$w = dQ/dV$	† lumen-second per cubic meter	lm s m <sup>-3</sup>
Luminous flux	$\Phi$ ( $\Phi_\nu$ )	$\Phi = dQ/dt$	† lumen	lm

*Standard units, symbols, and defining equations for fundamental photometric and radiometric quantities (cont.)*

Quantity <sup>(a)</sup>	Symbol <sup>(a)</sup>	Defining equation <sup>(b)</sup>	Commonly used units <sup>(c)</sup>	Symbol
Luminous flux density at a surface	$M$ ( $M_\nu$ )	$M = d\Phi/dA$	lumen per square foot	lm ft <sup>-2</sup>
Luminous exitance (luminous emittance) <sup>(d)</sup>	$E$ ( $E_\nu$ )	$E = d\Phi/dA$	footcandle (lumen per square foot) † lux (lm m <sup>-2</sup> )	fc lx
Illumination (illuminance)			phot (lm cm <sup>-2</sup> ) † candela (lumen per steradian)	ph cd
Luminous intensity (candlepower)	$I$ ( $I_\nu$ )	$I = d\Phi/d\omega(i)$	candela per unit area	cd in <sup>-2</sup> , etc.
Luminance (photometric brightness)	$L$ ( $L_\nu$ )	$L = d^2\Phi/d\omega(dA \cos \theta)$ $= dl/(dA \cos \theta)$ <sup>(e)</sup>	stilb (cd cm <sup>-2</sup> ) nit († cd m <sup>-2</sup> )	sb nt
Luminous efficacy	$K$	$K = \Phi_\nu/\Phi_e$	footlambert (cd per $\pi$ ft <sup>2</sup> )	fL
Luminous efficiency	$V$	$V = K/K_{max}(h)$	lambert (cd per $\pi$ cm <sup>2</sup> ) † apostilb (cd per $\pi$ m <sup>2</sup> )	L asb
			† lumen watt <sup>-1</sup> one (numerical)	lm W <sup>-1</sup> —

(a) The symbols for photometric quantities are the same as those for the corresponding radiometric quantities. When it is necessary to differentiate them, the subscripts  $\nu$  and  $e$ , respectively should be used, e.g.,  $Q_\nu$  and  $Q_e$ . Quantities may be restricted to a narrow wavelength band by adding the word spectral and indicating the wavelength. The corresponding symbols are changed by adding a subscript  $\lambda$ , e.g.,  $Q_\lambda$  for a spectral concentration or a  $\lambda$  in parentheses, e.g.,  $K(\lambda)$ , for a function of wavelength.

(b) The equations in this column are given merely for identification.

(c) International System (SI) unit indicated by dagger (†)

(d) To be deprecated.

(e)  $\theta$  is the angle between line of sight and normal to surface considered.

(f)  $M$  and  $M_{blackbody}$  are respectively, radiant exittance of a measured specimen and of a blackbody at the same temperature as the specimen.

(g)  $\Phi_i$  is the incident flux,  $\Phi_a$  is absorbed flux,  $\Phi_r$  is reflected flux,  $\Phi_t$  is transmitted flux.

(h)  $K_{max}$  is the maximum value of the  $K(\lambda)$  function.

(i)  $\omega$  is the solid angle through which flux from point source is radiated.

(Photoelectronic Imaging Devices, Vol. 1, L.M. Biberman & S. Nudelman, eds., Plenum Press, 1971, with permission.)

## Commercial lasers

Wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Type	Wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Type
0.152	Molecular fluorine ( $\text{F}_2$ )	0.635–0.66	InGaAlP diode
0.192	ArF excimer	0.647	Krypton ion
0.2–0.35	Doubled dye	0.67	GaInP diode
0.235–0.3	Tripled Ti-sapphire	0.68–1.13	Ti-sapphire
0.248	KrF excimer	0.694	Ruby
0.266	Quadrupled Nd	0.72–0.8	Alexandrite
0.275–0.306	Argon-ion	0.75–0.9	GaAlAs diode
0.308	XeCl excimer	0.98	InGaAs diode
0.32–1.0	Pulsed dye	1.047 or 1.053	Nd-YLF
0.325	He-Cd	1.061	Nd-glass
0.33–0.38	Neon	1.064	Nd-YAG
0.337	Nitrogen	1.15	He-Ne
0.35–0.47	Doubled Ti-sapphire	1.2–1.6	InGaAsP diode
0.351	XeF excimer	1.313	Nd-YLF
0.355	Tripled Nd	1.32	Nd-YAG
0.36–0.4	Doubled alexandrite	1.4–1.6	Color center
0.37–1.0	CW dye	1.523	He-Ne
0.442	He-Cd	1.54	Erbium-glass (bulk)
0.45–0.52	Ar-ion	1.54	Erbium-fiber (amplifier)
0.51	Copper vapor	1.75–2.5	Cobalt-MgF <sub>2</sub>
0.523	Doubled Nd-YLF	2.3–3.3	Color center
0.532	Doubled Nd-YAG	2.6–3.0	HF chemical
0.5435	He-Ne	3.3–29	Lead-salt diode
0.578	Copper vapor	3.39	He-Ne
0.594	He-Ne	3.6–4.0	DF chemical
0.612	He-Ne	5–6	Carbon monoxide
0.628	Gold vapor	9–11	Carbon dioxide
0.6328	He-Ne	40–100	Far-infrared gas

(From *The Laser Guidebook*, 2nd ed., Hecht, J., McGraw-Hill, 1991.)

## Index of refraction of air

The following formula gives the index of refraction of dry air at 15°C and a pressure of 101.325 kPa (1 atmos.; 760 Torr) and containing 0.03% by volume of carbon dioxide ("standard air"). The index of refraction is defined as  $n = \lambda_{\text{vac}}/\lambda_{\text{air}}$ , where  $\lambda$  is the wavelength of the radiation.

$$(n - 1) \times 10^8 = 8342.13 + 2406030(130 - \sigma^2)^{-1} + 15997(38.9 - \sigma^2)^{-1}$$

where  $\sigma = 1/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$  and  $\lambda_{\text{vac}}$  has unit of  $\mu\text{m}$ . The equation is valid for  $\lambda_{\text{vac}}$  from 200 nm to 2  $\mu\text{m}$ .

If the air is at a temperature  $t$  in °C and a pressure  $p$  in pascals, a value of  $(n - 1)$  should be multiplied by

$$\frac{p[1 + p(61.3 - t) \times 10^{-10}]}{96095.4(1 + 0.003661t)}.$$

## Properties of optical materials

Material	Useful Transmission Range ( $\gtrsim 10\%$ transmission) in 2-mm Thickness	Index of Refraction [wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ ) in parentheses]
LiF	0.104–7	1.60(0.125), 1.34(4.3)
MgF <sub>2</sub>	0.1216–9.7	$n_o = 1.3777$ , $n_e = 1.38950(0.589)^{(f)}$
CaF <sub>2</sub>	0.125–12	1.47635(0.2288), 1.30756(9.724)
BaF <sub>2</sub>	0.1345–15	1.51217(0.3652), 1.39636(10.346)
Sapphire ( $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ )	0.15–6.3	$n_o = 1.8336(0.26520)$ , $n_a = 1.5864(5.577)^{(f)}$ , $n_e$ slightly less than $n_o$
Fused silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ )	0.165–4 <sup>(d)</sup>	1.54715(0.20254), 1.40601(3.5)
Pyrex 7740	0.3–2.7	1.474(0.589), $\simeq 1.5$ (2.2)
Vycor 7913	0.26–2.7	1.458(0.589)
$\text{As}_2\text{S}_3$	0.6–0.13	2.84(1.0), 2.4(8)
RIR 2	$\simeq 0.4$ –4.7	1.75(2.2)
RIR 20	$\simeq 0.4$ –5.5	1.82(2.2)
NaF	0.13–12	1.393(0.185), 0.24(24)
RIR 12	$\simeq 0.4$ –5.7	1.62(2.2)
MgO	0.25–8.5	1.71(2.0)
Acrylic	0.340–1.6	1.5066(0.4101), 1.4892(0.6563)
Silver chloride ( $\text{AgCl}$ )	0.4–32	2.134(0.43), 1.90149(20.5)
Silver bromide ( $\text{AgBr}$ )	0.45–42	2.313(0.496), 2.2318(0.671)
Kel-F	0.34–3.8	–
Diamond (Type IIA)	0.23–200	2.7151(0.2265), 2.4237(0.5461)
NaCl	0.21–25	1.89332(0.185), 1.3403(22.3)
KBr	0.205–25	1.55995(0.538), 1.46324(25.14)
KCl	0.18–30	1.78373(0.19), 1.3632(23)
CsCl	0.19– $\simeq$ 30	1.8226(0.226), 1.6440(0.538)
CsBr	0.21–50	1.75118(0.365), 2.55990(39.22)
KI	0.25–40	2.0548(0.248), 1.6381(1.083)
CsI	0.235–60	1.98704(0.297), 1.61925(53.12)
$\text{SrTiO}_3$	0.4–7.4	2.23(2.2), 2.19(4.3)
$\text{SrF}_2$	0.13–14	1.438(0.538)
Rutile ( $\text{TiO}_2$ )	0.4–7	$n_o = 2.5(1.0)$ , $n_e = 2.7(1.0)^{(f)}$
Thallium bromide ( $\text{TiBr}$ )	0.45–45	2.652(0.436), 2.3(0.75)
Thallium bromoiodide (KRS-5)	0.56–60	2.62758(0.577), 2.21721(39.38)
Thallium chlorobromide (KRS-6)	0.4–32	2.3367(0.589), 2.0752(24)
ZnSe	0.5–22	2.4(10.6)
Irtran 2( $\text{ZnS}$ )	0.6–15.6	2.26(2.2), 2.25(4.3)
Si	1.1–15 <sup>(e)</sup>	3.42(5.0)
Ge	1.85–30 <sup>(c)</sup>	4.025(4.0), 4.002(12.0)
GaAs	1–15	3.5(1.0), 3.135(10.6)
CdTe	0.9–16	2.83(1.0), 2.67(10.6)
Te	3.8–8	$n_o = 6.37(4.3)$ , $n_e = 4.93(4.3)^{(f)}$
$\text{CaCO}_3$	0.25–3	$n_o = 1.90284(0.200)$ , $n_e = 1.57796(0.198)^{(f)}$ , $n_o = 1.62099(2.172)$ , $n_e = 1.47392(3.324)$

## Properties of optical materials (cont.)

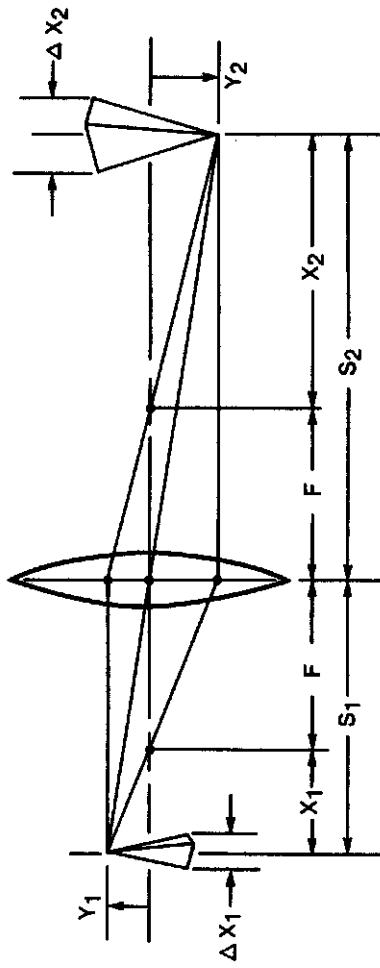
Material	Thermal Expansion Coefficient ( $10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{C}$ )	Knoop Hardness	Melting Point ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ )
LiF	9	100	870
MgF <sub>2</sub>	16	415	1396
CaF <sub>2</sub>	25	158	1360
BaF <sub>2</sub>	26	65	1280
Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub>	6.66 <sup>(a)</sup> , 5.0 <sup>(b)</sup>	1525–2000 <sup>(c)</sup>	2040±10
SiO <sub>2</sub>	0.55	615	1600
Pyrex	3.25	≈ 600	820 <sup>(g)</sup>
Vycor	0.8	—	1200
As <sub>2</sub> S <sub>3</sub>	26	109	300
RIR 2	8.3	≈ 600	≈ 900
RIR 20	9.6	542	760
NaF	36	60	980
RIR 12	8.3	594	≈ 900
MgO	43	692	2800
Acrylic	110–140	—	Distorts at 72
AgCl	30	9.5	455
AgBr	—	≥ 9.5	432
Kel-F	—	—	—
Diamond	0.8	5700–10,400 <sup>(c)</sup>	—
NaCl	44	18	803
KBr	—	7	730
KCl	—	—	776
CsCl	—	—	646
CsBr	48	19.5	636
KI	—	5	723
CsI	50	—	621
SrTiO <sub>3</sub>	9.4	620	2080
SrF <sub>2</sub>	—	130	1450
TiO <sub>2</sub>	9	880	1825
TlBr	—	12	460
KRS-5	51	40	414.5
KRS-6	60	39	423.5
ZnSe	8.5	150	—
ZnS	—	354	800
Si	4.2	1150	1420
Ge	5.5	692	936
GaAs	5.7	750	1238
CdTe	4.5	45	1045
Te	16.8	—	450
CaCO <sub>3</sub>	—	—	—
	—	135	894.4 <sup>(h)</sup>

<sup>(a)</sup> Parallel to *c*-axis.<sup>(b)</sup> Perpendicular to *c*-axis.<sup>(c)</sup> Depends on crystal orientation.<sup>(d)</sup> Depends on grade.<sup>(e)</sup> Long-wavelength limit depends on purity of material.<sup>(f)</sup> Birefringent<sup>(g)</sup> Softening temperature.<sup>(h)</sup> Decomposition temperature.(From *Building Scientific Apparatus*, Moore, J.H., Davis, C.C., and Coplan, M.A., Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., 1989.)

### Theory of lenses

#### *Thin lens*

If a lens can be characterized by a single focal length  $F$  measured from a single plane then the lens is "thin." Various relations hold among the quantities shown in the figure.



$$\text{Gaussian: } 1/s_1 + 1/s_2 = 1/F$$

$$\text{Newtonian: } x_1 x_2 = -F^2$$

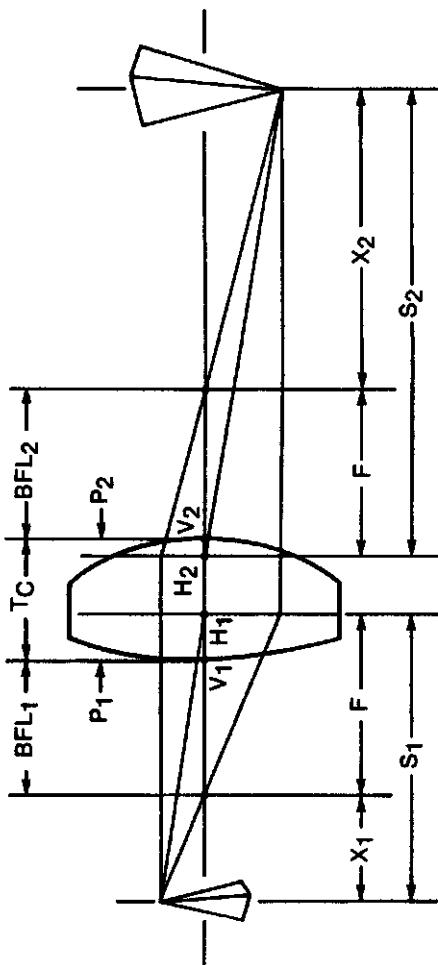
#### *Magnification:*

$$\text{Transverse: } M_T = y_2/y_1 = -s_2/s_1$$

$M_T < 0$ -Image inverted

$$\text{Longitudinal: } M_L = \Delta x_2/\Delta x_1 = -M_T^2$$

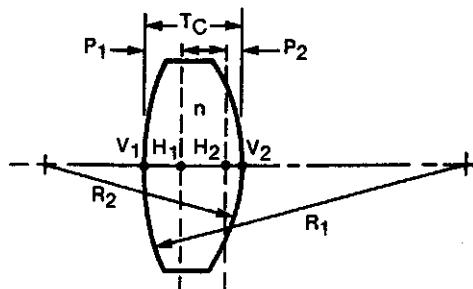
$M_L < 0$ -No front to back inversion



### **Thick lens**

A **thick lens** cannot be characterized by a single plane. A single focal length measured from a single plane. A single focal length measured from may be retained if it is measured from two planes,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$ , at distances  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$  from the vertices of the lens,  $V_1$ ,  $V_2$ . The two back focal lengths,  $BFL_1$  and  $BFL_2$ , are measured from the vertices. The thin lens equations may be used, provided all quantities are measured from the principal planes.

### The lensmaker's equation



$$\frac{1}{F} = (n - 1) \left[ \frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{(n - 1)T_c}{nR_1R_2} \right]$$

$$P_1 = -\frac{F(n - 1)T_c}{nR_2}$$

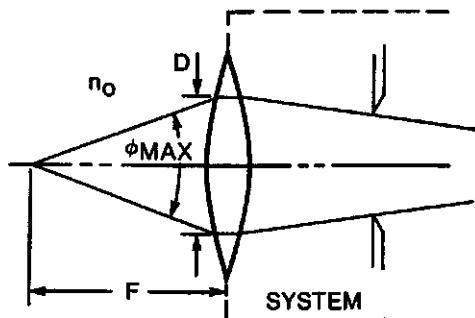
$$P_2 = -\frac{F(n - 1)T_c}{nR_1}$$

Convex surfaces facing left have positive radii. In the above  $R_1 > 0$ ,  $R_2 < 0$ . Principal plane offsets are positive to right. As illustrated,  $P_1 > 0$ ,  $P_2 < 0$ . The **thin lens focal length** is given when  $T_c = 0$ .

### Numerical aperture

$$\text{NA} = n_0 \sin(\phi_{\text{MAX}}/2)$$

$\phi_{\text{MAX}}$  is the full angle of the cone of light rays that can pass through the system.



For small  $\phi$ :

$$f/\#(\text{f-number}) = F/D \approx 2 \text{ NA}$$

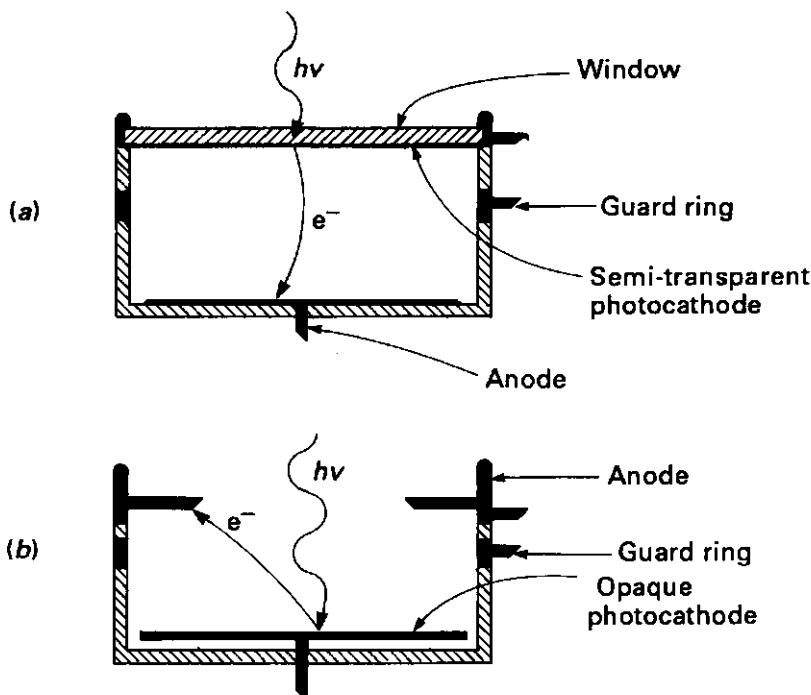
Both f-number and NA refer to the *system* and not the exit lens.

## Visible and ultraviolet light detectors

---

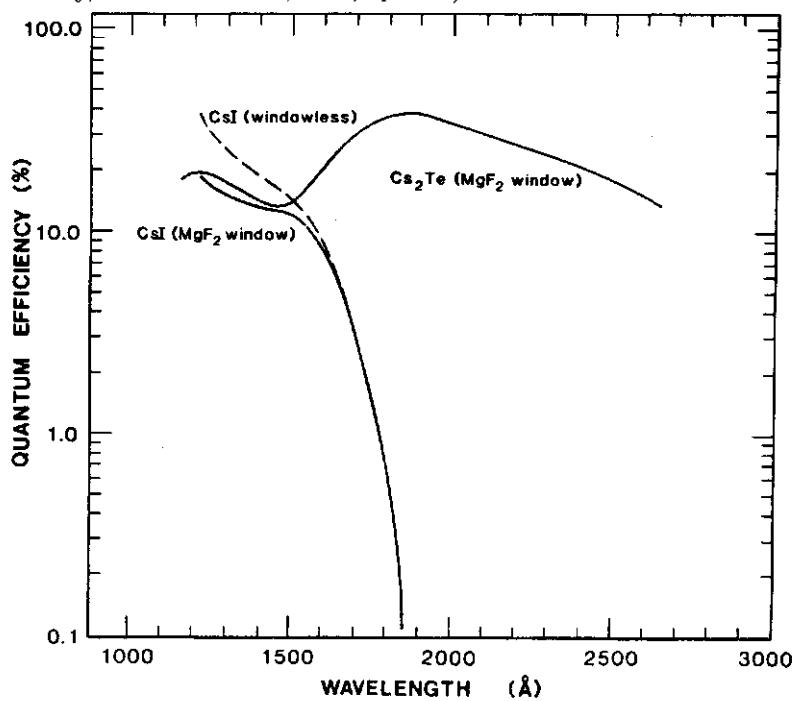
### Photodiode

Schematics of photodiodes (a) sealed with semi-transparent photocathode, (b) open (or sealed) with opaque photocathode. (From Timothy, J.G. & Madden, R.P. in *Handbook on Synchrotron Radiation*, E. Koch, ed., North-Holland Publishing Co., 1983, with permission.)

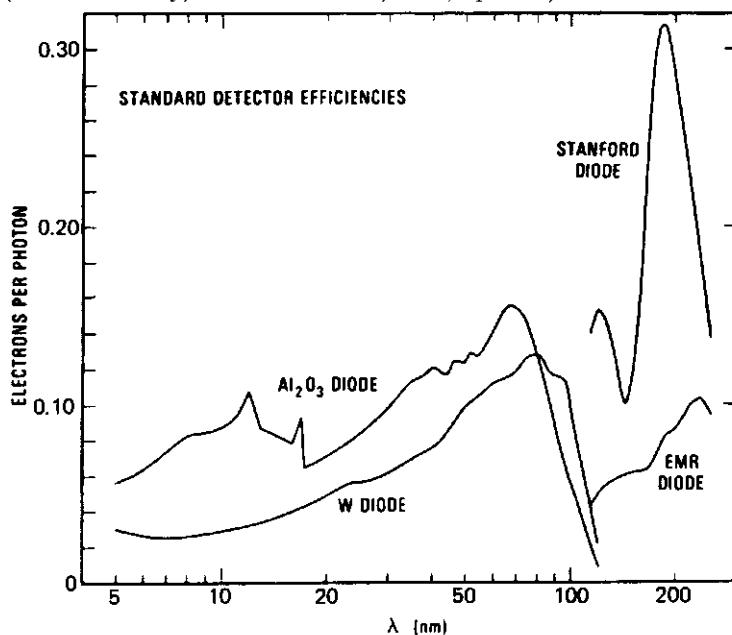


- (a) (116–254 nm) Incident UV photons cause the photocathode (usually semi-transparent cesium telluride deposited on a magnesium fluoride window) to emit low energy electrons, which are accelerated away by the electric field established by the anode potential (150 V). A calibrated picoammeter measures photocurrent. Quantum energy range (typ): 0.02–0.2 electrons per photon.
- (b) (5–122 nm) Incident UV photons cause the photocathode (usually aluminum with a 15 nm aluminum oxide layer) to emit low energy electrons, which are accelerated away by the electric field established by the anode potential (60–100 V). A calibrated picoammeter measures photocurrent. The useable range of photocurrents is approximately  $10^{-9}$  to  $10^{-15}$  amp. Quantum efficiency range (typ): 0.01–0.15 electrons per photon.

Quantum efficiencies of opaque Cs<sub>2</sub>Te and CsI photocathodes. (From Timothy, J.G. & Madden, R.P., *op. cit.*)

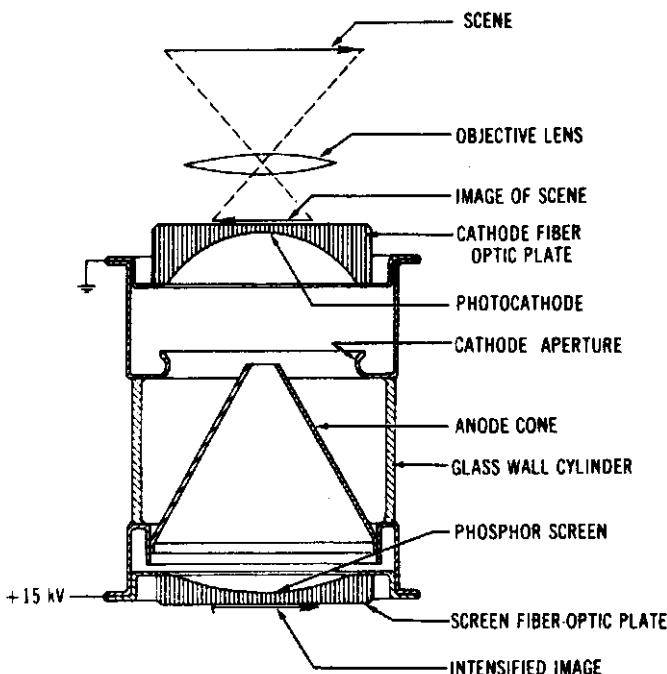


Quantum efficiencies of transfer standard detectors available from NBS. (From Timothy, J.G. & Madden, R.P., *op. cit.*)

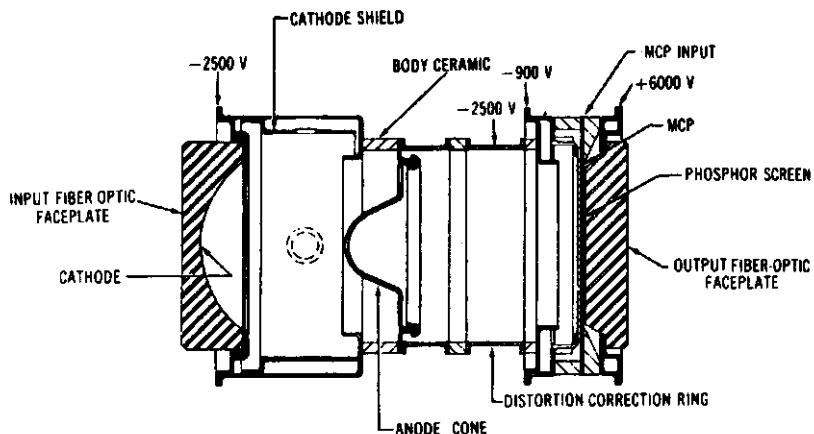


### *Image intensifiers*

Generation I electrostatically focused image intensifier. (Reproduced with permission of the publisher, Howard W. Sams & Co., Indianapolis, *Image Tubes*, by Illes P. Csorba, ©1985.)

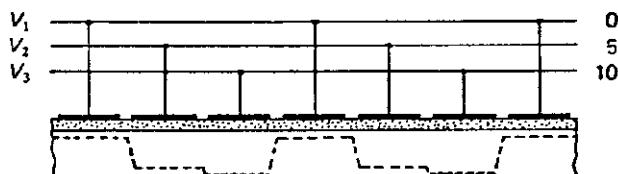


The electrostatic image-inverting generation II image intensifier employs a microchannel plate (MCP). (From Csorba, I.P., *op. cit.*)

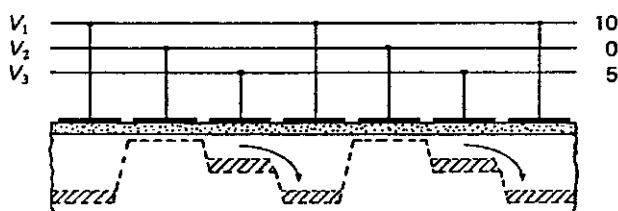


### Charge-coupled devices (CCD's)

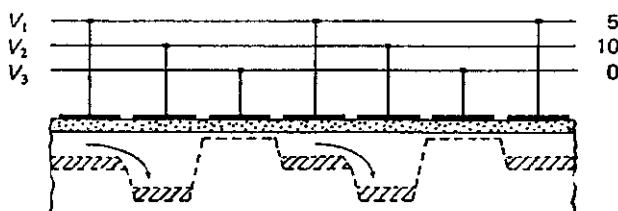
Schematic voltage operation of a typical three-phase CCD. The clock voltages are shown at three times during the readout process, indicating their clock cycle of 0, 10, and 5 volts. One clock cycle causes the stored charge within a pixel to be transferred to its neighboring pixel. CCD readout continues until all the pixels have had their charge transferred completely out of the array and through the A/D converter. (From *Handbook of CCD Astronomy*, S.B. Howell, Cambridge University Press, 2000)



End of exposure



Charge transfer

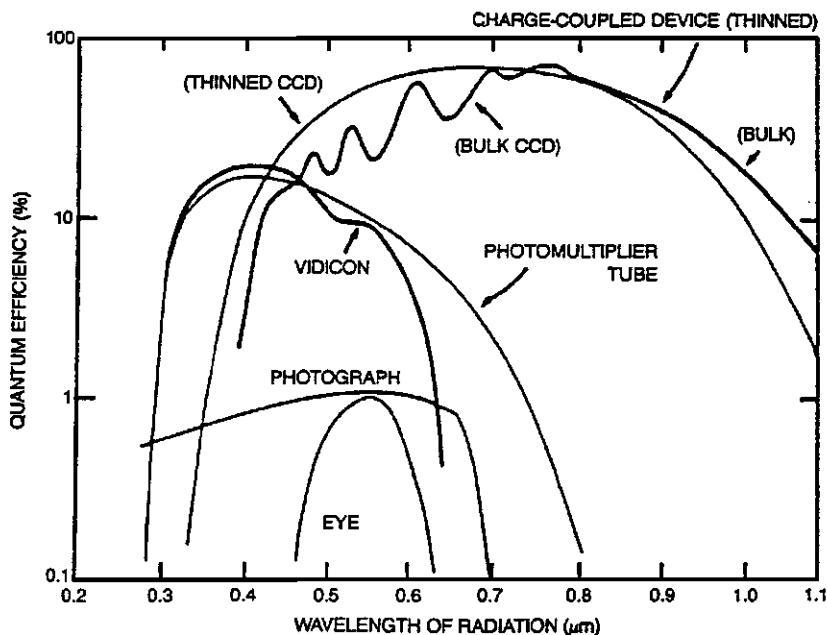


*Various typical CCD properties*

	RCA	Fairchild	TI	EEV	Thomson	Kodak	Lorel (Ford)	Tektronix (SITe)
Pixel Format	320 × 512	380 × 488	800 × 800	2048 × 4096	1024 × 1024	765 × 510	3072 × 1024	1024 × 1024
Pixel Size ( $\mu$ )	30	18 × 30	15	13.5	19	9	15	24
Detector size (mm)	10 × 15	7 × 15	12 × 12	28 × 55	20 × 20	7 × 4.5	46 × 15	25 × 25
Full Well Capacity (e <sup>-</sup> )	350,000	> 200,000	50,000	180,000	500,000	85,000	> 140,000	> 170,000
Dark Current (e <sup>-</sup> /pixel/hr)	40	> 1000	16	< 2	22	1800	11	< 5
Illumination	Front	Front	Back	Back	Front	Front	Back	Back
Peak QE (%)	70	12	70	85	40	40	90	75
Read Noise (e <sup>-</sup> )	80	> 150	15	7	5	12	9	6
CTE	0.99995	0.99975	0.99985	0.99999	0.99996	0.99997	0.999997	0.999999
Operating Temp. (°C)	-100	-100	-120	-120	-110	-35	-120	-111
Gain (e <sup>-</sup> /ADU)	13.5	50	5	1.1	5	2.3	1.2	1.3
Readout Time (s)	45	65	70	185	45	45	142	300

(From *Handbook of CCD Astronomy*, S.B.Howell, Cambridge University Press, 2000)

A comparison of the quantum efficiency for various optical detectors.

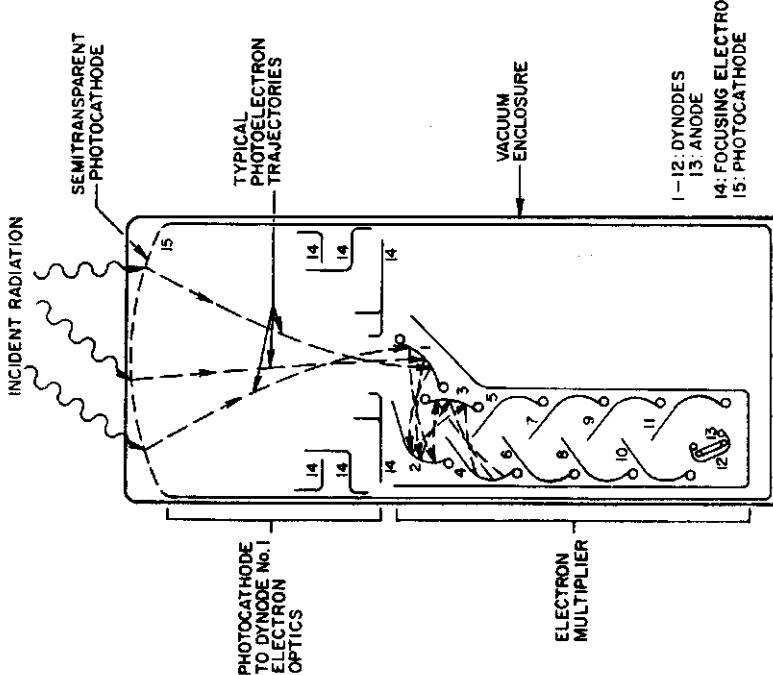


(From *Handbook of CCD Astronomy*, S.B. Howell, Cambridge University Press, 2000)

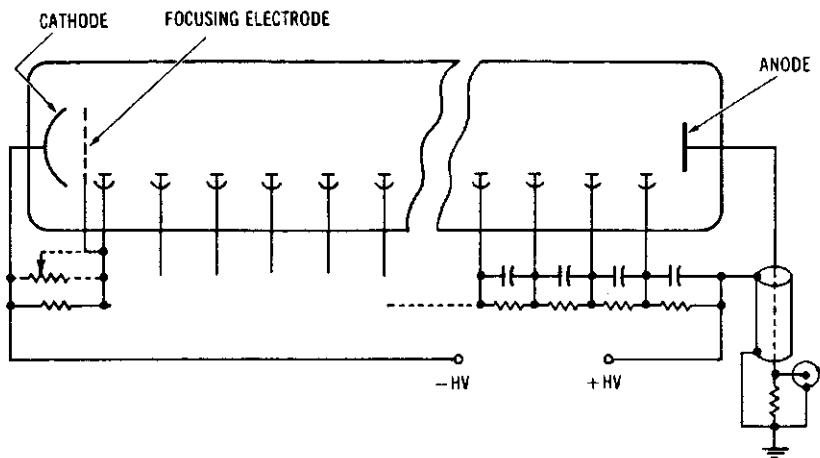
### Photomultipliers

Schematic of typical photomultiplier showing some electron trajectories (RCA).

Typical anode sensitivity and amplification characteristics of a 9-dynode photomultiplier tube as a function of applied voltage (RCA).



Typical voltage-divider arrangement for fast pulse response and high peak current systems.



#### *Source and detector matching*

The average power radiating from a light source is given by:

$$P = P_0 \int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) d\lambda,$$

where  $P_0$  is the incident power in watts per unit wavelength at the peak of the relative spectral radiation characteristic,  $W(\lambda)$ , which is normalized to unity.

The resulting photocathode current  $I$ , when the light is incident on the detector, is given by:

$$I_k = \sigma P_0 \int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) R(\lambda) d\lambda,$$

where  $\sigma$  is the radiant sensitivity of the photocathode in amperes per watt at the peak of the relative curve, and  $R(\lambda)$  represents the relative photocathode spectral response as a function of wavelength normalized to unity at the peak.

$$I_k = \sigma P \frac{\int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) R(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) d\lambda}.$$

The ratio of the dimensionless integrals can be defined as the *matching factor*,  $M$ .

$$M = \frac{\int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) R(\lambda) d\lambda}{\int_0^{\infty} W(\lambda) d\lambda}.$$

### Spectral matching factors

Source	Photocathodes						Photopic eye	Scotopic eye
	S1	S4	S10	S11	S17	S20		
<b>PHOSPHORS</b>								
P1	0.278	0.498	0.807	0.687	0.892	0.700	0.853	0.768
P4	0.310	0.549	0.767	0.661	0.734	0.724	0.861	0.402
P7	0.312	0.611	0.805	0.709	0.773	0.771	0.882	0.411
P11	0.217	0.816	0.949	0.914	0.954	0.877	0.953	0.201
P15	0.385	0.701	0.855	0.787	0.871	0.802	0.904	0.376
P16	0.830	0.970	0.853	0.880	0.855	0.902	0.922	0.003
P20	0.395	0.284	0.612	0.427	0.563	0.583	0.782	0.707
P22B	0.217	0.893	0.974	0.960	0.948	0.927	0.979	0.808
P22G	0.278	0.495	0.807	0.686	0.896	0.699	0.855	0.784
P22R	0.632	0.036	0.264	0.055	0.077	0.368	0.623	0.225
P24	0.279	0.545	0.806	0.696	0.827	0.725	0.869	0.540
P31	0.276	0.533	0.811	0.698	0.853	0.722	0.868	0.626
Nal	0.534	0.923	0.885	0.889	0.889	0.900	0.933	0.046

*Spectral matching factors (cont.)*

Source	Photocathodes						Photopic eye	Scotopic eye
	S1	S4	S10	S11	S17	S20	S25	
LAMPS								
2870/2856 std	0.516†	0.046†	0.095†	0.060†	0.072†	0.112†	0.227†	0.071†
Fluorescent	0.395	0.390	0.650	0.496	0.575	0.635	0.805	0.502
SUN								
In space	0.535†	0.308†	0.388†	0.328†	0.380†	0.406†	0.547†	0.179†
+ 2 air masses	0.536†	0.236†	0.348†	0.277†	0.315†	0.360†	0.513†	0.197†
Day sky	0.537†	0.520†	0.556†	0.508†	0.589†	0.581†	0.700†	0.170†
BLACK BODIES								
6000K	0.533†	0.308†	0.376†	0.320†	0.375†	0.397†	0.521†	0.167†
3000K	0.512†	0.053†	0.102†	0.067†	0.080†	0.120†	0.232†	0.075†
2870K	0.504†	0.044†	0.090†	0.057†	0.069†	0.106†	0.216†	0.067†
2856K	0.500†	0.042†	0.088†	0.055†	0.068†	0.103†	0.211†	0.065†
2810K	0.493†	0.039†	0.081†	0.051†	0.062†	0.097†	0.150†	0.061†
2042K	0.401†	0.008†	0.023†	0.011†	0.014†	0.033†	0.090†	0.018†

† Entry valid only for 300–1200 nm wavelength interval.

*Nominal composition and characteristics of various photocathodes*

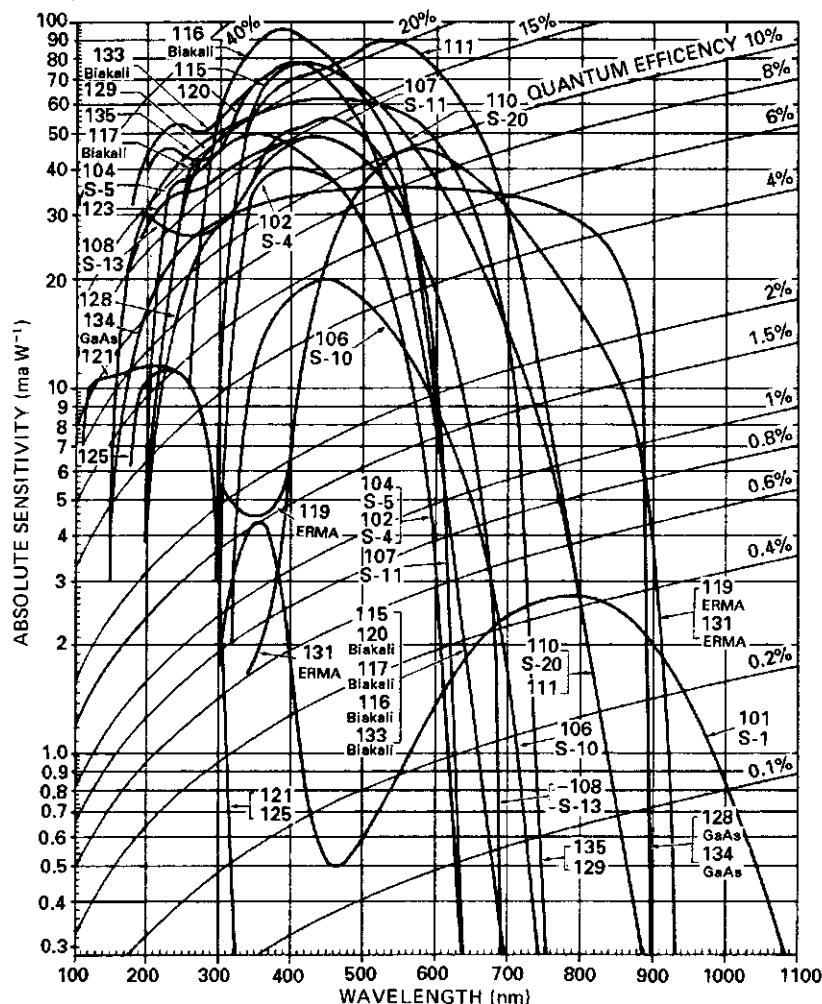
Nominal composition	JETEC response designation	Conversion factor <sup>(a)</sup> (lumen watt <sup>-1</sup> at $\lambda_{\max}$ )	Luminous responsivity ( $\mu\text{A lumen}^{-1}$ )	Wavelength of maximum response, $\lambda_{\max}$ (nm)	Responsivity at $\lambda_{\max}$ (mA watt <sup>-1</sup> )	Quantum efficiency at $\lambda_{\max}$ (%)	Dark emission at 25°C (fA cm <sup>-2</sup> )
Ag-O-Cs	S-1	92.7	25	800	2.3	0.36	900
Ag-O-Rb	S-3	285	6.5	420	1.8	0.55	—
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-19	1603	40	330	64	24	0.3
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-4	1044	40	400	42	13	0.2
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-5	1262	40	340	50	18	0.3
Cs <sub>3</sub> Bi	S-8	757	3	365	2.3	0.77	0.13
Ag-Bi-O-Cs	S-10	509	40	450	20	5.6	70
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-13	799	60	440	48	14	4
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-9	683	30	480	20	5.3	—
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-11	808	60	440	48	14	3
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-21	783	30	440	23	6.7	—
Cs <sub>3</sub> Sb	S-17	667	125	490	83	21	1.2
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb	S-24	758	85	420	64	19	0.0003

Nominal composition and characteristics of various photocathodes (cont'd)

Nominal composition	JETEC response designation	Conversion factor <sup>(a)</sup> (lumen watt <sup>-1</sup> ) at $\lambda_{\max}$ )	Wavelength of maximum response, $\lambda_{\max}$ (nm)	Luminous responsivity ( $\mu$ A lumen <sup>-1</sup> ) at $\lambda_{\max}$ )	Responsivity at $\lambda_{\max}$ (mA watt <sup>-1</sup> )	Quantum efficiency at $\lambda_{\max}$ (%)	Dark emission at 25°C (fA cm <sup>-2</sup> )
K <sub>2</sub> CsSb	—	1117	85	400	95	29	0.02
Rb-Cs-Sb	—	767	120	450	92	25	1
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb:Cs	—	429	150	420	64	19	0.4
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb:Cs	S-20	428	150	420	64	19	0.3
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb:Cs	S-25	276	160	420	44	13	—
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb:Cs	ERMA II	220	200	530	44	10.3	2.1
Na <sub>2</sub> KSb:Cs	ERMA III	160	230	575	37	8	0.2
GaAs:Cs-O	—	116	1025	850	119	17	92
GaAsP:Cs-O	—	310	200	450	61	17	0.01
In <sub>0.06</sub> Ga <sub>0.94</sub> As:Cs-O	—	200	250	400	50	15.5	220
In <sub>0.12</sub> Ga <sub>0.88</sub> As:Cs-O	—	255	270	400	69	21	40
In <sub>0.18</sub> Ga <sub>0.82</sub> As:Cs-O	—	280	150	400	42	13	75
Cs <sub>2</sub> Te	—	—	—	250	25	12.4	0.0006
CsI	—	—	—	120	24	20	Very low
CuI	—	672	125	150	13	10.7	Very low
K-Cs-Rb-Sb	—	—	—	440	84	24	Very low

(a) These conversion factors are the ratio of the radiant responsivity at the peak of the spectral response characteristic in amperes per watt to the luminous responsivity in amperes per lumen for a tungsten lamp operated at a color temperature of 2856 K.

Typical photocathode spectral response characteristics (from RCA Corp.)



Short wavelength transmission limits of some UV window materials

Material	Approximate limit (10%, 2 mm thick)
LiF	1040 Å
MgF <sub>2</sub>	1120
CaF <sub>2</sub>	1220
SrF <sub>2</sub>	1280
BaF <sub>2</sub>	1340
Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> (sapphire)	1410
SiO <sub>2</sub> (fused quartz)	1600

*UV fluorescent converters (wavelength shifters)*


---

Sodium salicylate	Diphenylstilbene
Tetraphenyl butadiene	<i>p</i> -Terphenyl
Coronene	Dimethyl POPOP
<i>p</i> -Quaterphenyl	POPOP

---

**X-ray and gamma-ray detectors*****Detection principles – quantum efficiency***

In general, the quantum efficiency,  $\varepsilon(E)$ , for an incident photon of energy  $E$  is determined by the transmission of the detector window or any 'dead layer' and by the absorption of the detector medium:

$$\varepsilon(E) = e^{-(\mu/\rho)_w \rho_w t_w} (1 - e^{-(\mu/\rho)_d \rho_d t_d}),$$

where  $(\mu/\rho)_w$  and  $(\mu/\rho)_d$  are the mass absorption coefficients of the detector window (or 'dead layer') and detector medium, respectively,  $\rho_w$  and  $\rho_d$  are the densities of the detector window (or 'dead layer') and detector medium, respectively, and  $t_w$  and  $t_d$  are the thicknesses of the detector window (or 'dead layer') and detector medium, respectively.

***Detection principles – point source detection with X-ray telescopes***

The fluctuation  $\delta N_s$  in the number of counts from a point source of flux density  $F$  photons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$  is given by:

$$\delta N_s = (A_{\text{eff}} \Delta E F t + f^2 \omega B_i \Delta E t + A_{\text{eff}} \omega j_D \Delta E t)^{1/2},$$

where

$A_{\text{eff}}$  = effective area ( $\text{cm}^2$ ) of telescope including detector,

$\Delta E$  = energy interval (keV),

$t$  = observing time (s),

$f$  = focal length (cm) of telescope,

$\omega$  = solid angle (sr) of picture element,

$B_i$  = internal background ( $\text{ct cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$ ) of detector,

$j_D$  = diffuse X-ray background (photons  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}$ ).

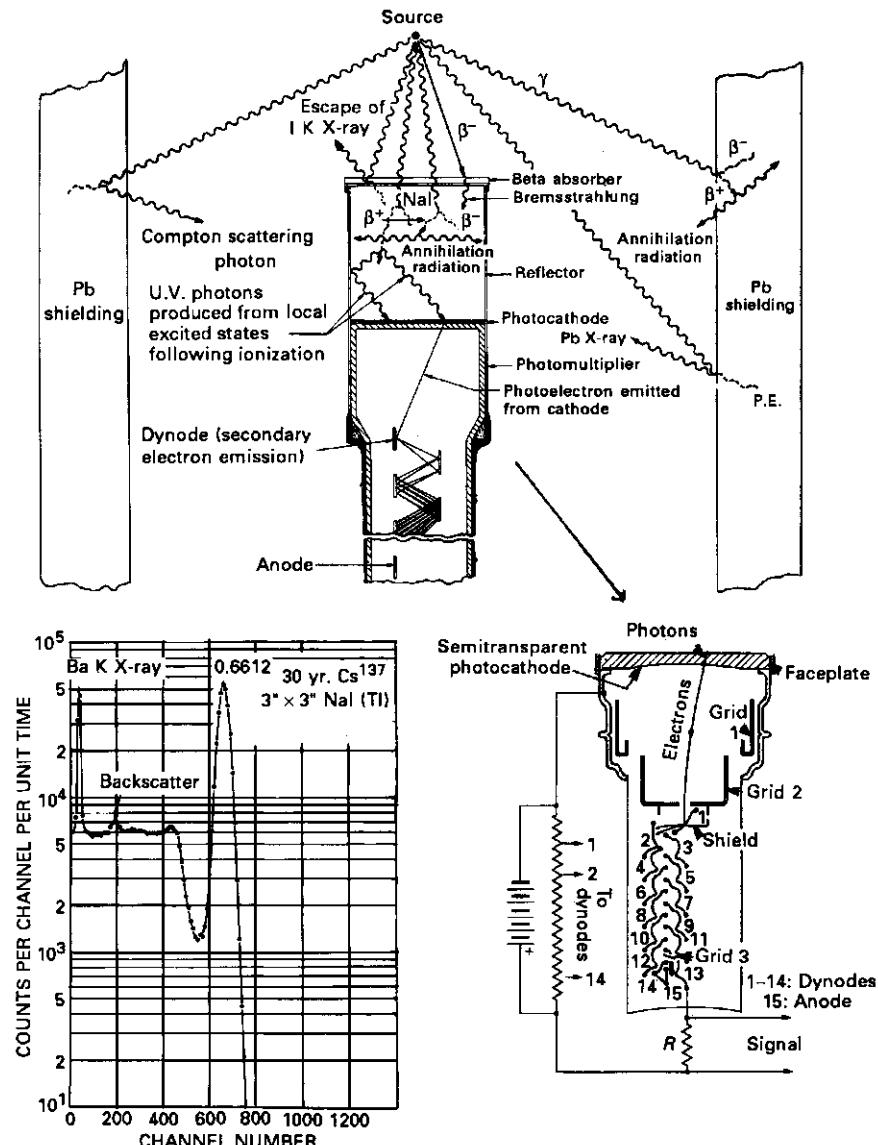
The background, both internal and from diffuse X-rays, is assumed to be steady and well known. For a strong source, the signal-to-noise ratio  $N_s/\delta N_s = (A_{\text{eff}} \Delta E F t)^{1/2}$  is given by the fluctuations in the source only.

For a weak source, fluctuations in the background determine the signal-to-noise ratio:

$$\frac{N_s}{\delta N_s} = \frac{(A_{\text{eff}} \Delta E F t)^{1/2}}{\omega^{1/2} (f^2 B_i / A_{\text{eff}} + j_D)^{1/2}}.$$

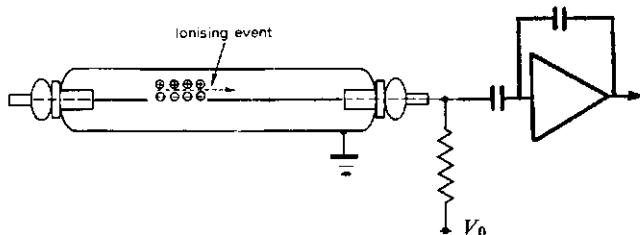
### Scintillation detector

Illustration representing a NaI scintillation detector showing sequence of events producing output from electron multiplier and various processes which contribute to response of detector to a gamma-ray source. (Adapted from Heath, R.L., *Scintillation Spectrometry, USAEC Report, IDO-16880*, 1964.)



A typical pulse-height spectrum obtained with a NaI(Tl) spectrometer, illustrating the energy response of inorganic scintillators. The scale of the abscissa is 1 keV per channel.

### Gas proportional counter



Since a proportional counter has internal gain, the system noise can be neglected and the energy resolution is:

$$(\Delta E)_{\text{FWHM}} = 2.35[(F + f)WE]^{1/2} \text{ eV},$$

where

$E$  = energy deposited in counter (eV),

$F$  = Fano factor,

$f$  = a factor to account for variance in the gas gain,

$W$  = mean energy to form an ion pair (eV).

As an example, for methane gas:

$$F = 0.26$$

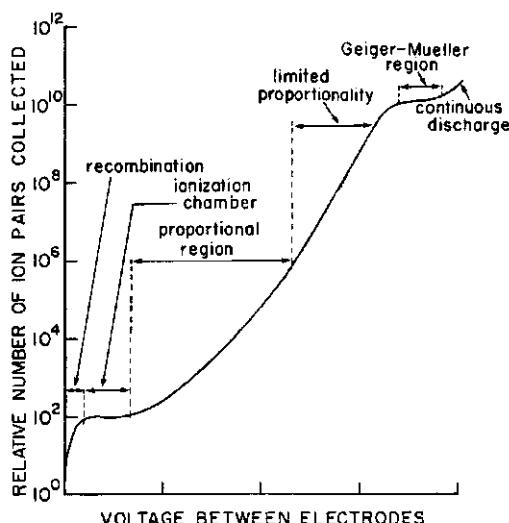
$$f = 0.75$$

$$W = 27 \text{ eV},$$

so that for a proportional counter:

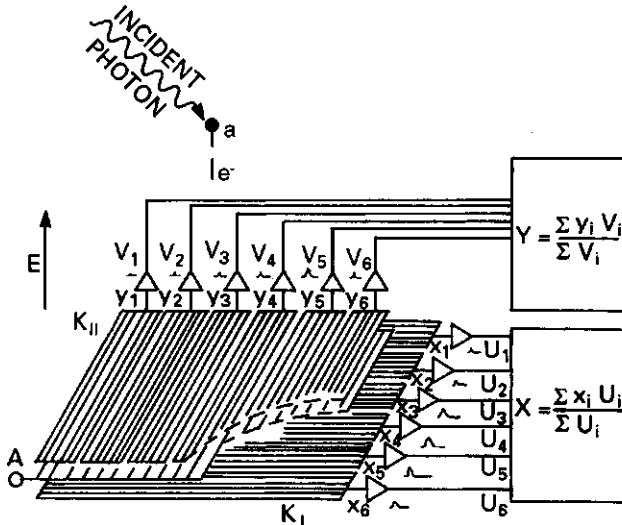
$$\frac{E}{(\Delta E)_{\text{FWHM}}} = 2.6E^{1/2} \quad (\text{with } E \text{ in keV}).$$

Relative number of ion pairs collected in a gas-filled chamber as a function of the voltage across electrodes of the chamber.



### **Position sensitive gas proportional detector**

Readout system of detector. Incident photon is absorbed at point a; electrons drift toward anode-cathode planes. An avalanche at the anode (A) gives rise to pulse distributions at the cathodes ( $K_{\parallel}$  and  $K_{\perp}$ ). The position ( $X, Y$ ) is obtained by analog summation and division. (Adapted from Bade, E. et al., *Nucl. Inst. and Meth.*, **201**, 193, 1982.)



#### *Typical performance*

Spatial resolution:

0.25 mm (FWHM) at 1 keV.

Energy resolution:

$$\frac{E}{(\Delta E)_{\text{FWHM}}} = 2.2E^{1/2} \quad (\text{with } E \text{ in keV}).$$

Format:

10 cm  $\times$  10 cm.

#### *The solid-state detector*

$$(\Delta E)_{\text{FWHM}} = 2.35[(\eta\sigma)^2 + (F\eta E)]^{1/2} \text{ eV.}$$

where

$\eta$  = conversion factor (Si: 3.6 eV per electron-hole pair;

Ge: 2.9 eV per electron-hole pair),

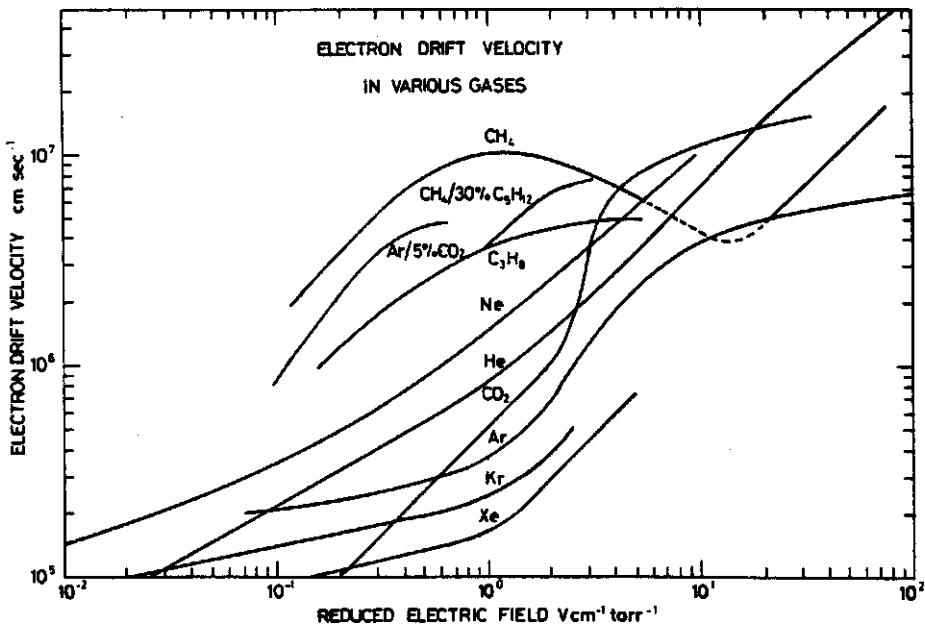
$\sigma$  = detector rms noise (electrons),

$F$  = Fano factor (Si: 0.14; Ge: 0.13),

$E$  = photon or particle energy (eV).

**Electron drift velocities**

Electron drift velocities in various gases. From Knoll, G.F., *Radiation Detection and Measurement*, John Wiley & Sons, 1989, with permission.)

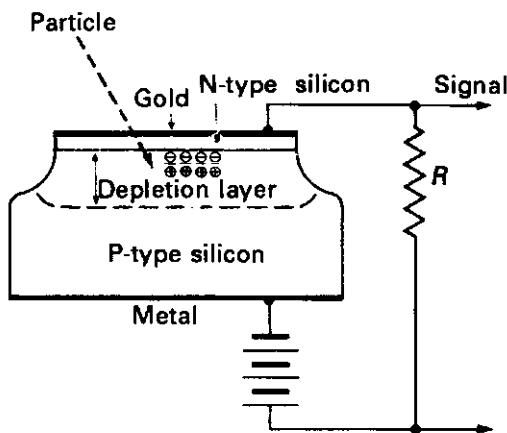


***Ionization and excitation data for a number of gases***

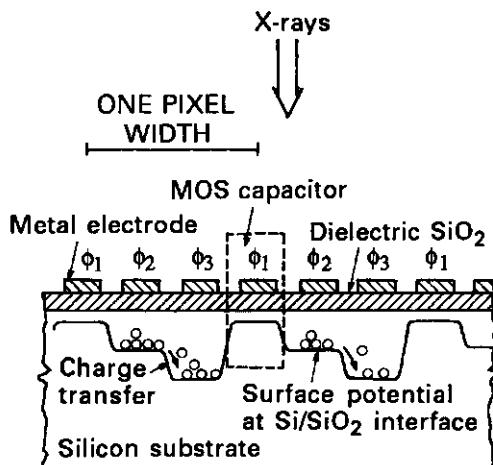
Gas	Atomic number	First ionization potential (eV)	Second ionization potential (eV)	First excited state (eV)	Principal emission wavelengths Å
He	2	24.48	54.40	20.9 19.8 meta	584 3888 5875
Ne	10	21.56	41.07	16.68 16.53 meta 16.62 meta	734 743 5400 5832 5852 6402
Ar	18	15.76	27.62	11.56 11.49 meta 11.66 meta	1048 1066 6965 7067 7503 8115
Kr	36	14.00	24.56	9.98 9.86 meta 10.51 meta	1236 5570 5870
Xe	54	12.13	21.2	8.39 8.28 meta 9.4 meta	1296 1470 4501 4624 4671
H	1	13.60		10.2	1215 4861 6562
N	7	14.53	29.59	6.3	1200 4110
O	8	13.61	35.11	9.1	1302 7771
H <sub>2</sub>		15.4		11.2	
N <sub>2</sub>		15.8		6.1	
O <sub>2</sub>		12.5			
I <sub>2</sub>		9.0		1.9	1782 2062

(Adapted from Rice-Evans, P., *Spark, Streamer, Proportional and Drift Chambers*, The Richelieu Press, London, 1974.)

Schematic diagram of a ***solid state detector***. (Adapted from Enge, H., *Introduction to Nuclear Physics*, Addison-Wesley, 1966.)



#### Charge-coupled device (CCD)



(Back-side illuminated)

$$(\Delta E)_{\text{FWHM}} = 2.35[(\eta\sigma)^2 + (\eta i_d t)^2 + \eta F E]^{1/2} \quad \text{keV},$$

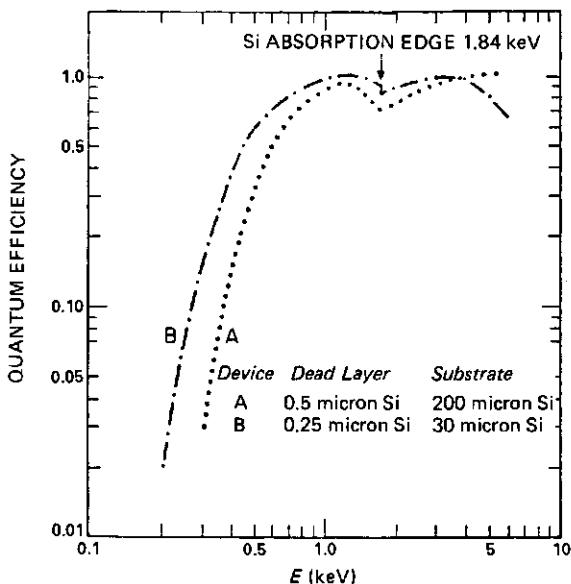
where

$i_d$  = dark current (electrons s<sup>-1</sup>),

$\sigma$  = rms readout noise (electrons),

- $\eta$  = mean energy required to produce one electron-hole pair (0.0036 keV for silicon),  
 $t$  = integration time (s),  
 $F$  = Fano factor ( $\sim 0.15$ ),  
 $E$  = energy of incident photon (keV).

Expected quantum efficiency (defined as the probability that an incident X-ray photon is detected as an 'event') vs. energy. The calculations consider only the interactions of X-rays in Si, for two hypothetical CCD's whose dead-layer and substrate thicknesses are separately within the range spanned by real devices. There will be a low energy cutoff (not shown) depending on the minimum signal which can be discriminated against the system noise.



### *Microchannel plate detector*

*Typical performance*

Spatial resolution:

20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  (FWHM).

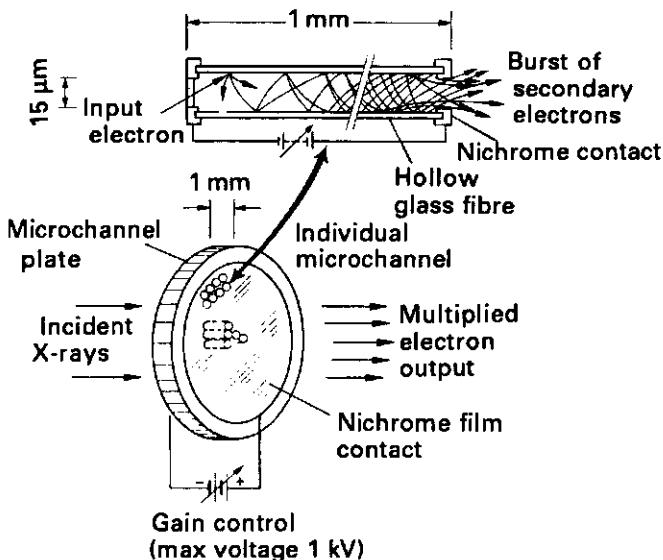
Quantum efficiency:

25% at 1.5 keV (CsI photocathode).

Format:

25–100 mm in diameter.

Schematic diagram of a microchannel plate detector. (Adapted from Behr, A. in Landolt-Bornstein, subvol. 2a, Springer-Verlag, 1981.)



### *Properties of common X-ray detectors*

Detector	Energy range (keV)	$\Delta E/E^{(a)}$ at 5.9 keV (%)	Dead time/event (μs)	Maximum count rate ( $s^{-1}$ )
Geiger counter	3–50	none	200	$10^4$
Gas ionization in current mode	0.2–50	n/a	n/a	$10^{11}^{(b)}$
Gas proportional	0.2–50	15	0.2	$10^5$
Multiwire proportional chamber	3–50	20	0.2	$10^5$ /anode wire
Scintillation [NaI(Tl)]	3–10 000	40	0.25	$10^6$
Semiconductor [Si(Li)]	1–60	3.0	4–30	$5 \times 10^4$
Semiconductor (Ge)	1–10 000	3.0	4–40	$5 \times 10^4$

(<sup>a</sup>) FWHM.

(<sup>b</sup>) Maximum count rate density is limited by space-charge effects to around  $10^{11}$  photons  $s^{-1} cm^{-3}$ .

(From Thompson, A.C. in *X-ray Data Booklet*, Lawrence Berkely Laboratory, University of California, 1986.)

*Properties of intrinsic silicon and germanium*

	Si	Ge
Atomic number	14	32
Atomic weight	28.09	72.60
Stable isotope mass numbers	28-29-30	70-72-73-74-76
Density (300 K); g cm <sup>-3</sup>	2.33	5.32
Atoms cm <sup>-3</sup>	$4.96 \times 10^{22}$	$4.41 \times 10^{22}$
Dielectric constant	12	16
Forbidden energy gap (300 K); eV	1.115	0.665
Forbidden energy gap (0 K); eV	1.165	0.746
Intrinsic carrier density (300 K); cm <sup>-3</sup>	$1.5 \times 10^{10}$	$2.4 \times 10^{13}$
Intrinsic resistivity (300 K); $\Omega \cdot \text{cm}$	$2.3 \times 10^5$	47
Electron mobility (300 K); $\text{cm}^2 \text{V}^{-1} \text{s}^{-1}$	1350	3900
Hole mobility (300 K); $\text{cm}^2 \text{V}^{-1} \text{s}^{-1}$	480	1900
Electron mobility (77 K); $\text{cm}^2 \text{V}^{-1} \text{s}^{-1}$	$2.1 \times 10^4$	$3.6 \times 10^4$
Hole mobility (77 K); $\text{cm}^2 \text{V}^{-1} \text{s}^{-1}$	$1.1 \times 10^4$	$4.2 \times 10^4$
Energy per electron-hole pair (300 K); eV	3.62	
Energy per electron-hole pair (77 K); eV	3.76	2.96
Fano factor (77 K)	0.085-0.16	0.057-0.129
Best gamma-ray energy resolution (77 K) (FWHM)	—	420 eV at 100 keV 920 eV at 661 keV 1300 eV at 1330 keV

(Adapted from Knoll, G.F., *Radiation Detection and Measurement*, John Wiley & Sons, 1989.)

*Properties of scintillation and solid-state detector materials*

Material	Density (g cm <sup>-3</sup> )	Band gap (eV)	$\lambda$ of max. emission (Å)	Decay time <sup>(a)</sup> (μs)	Index of refrac- tion <sup>(b)</sup>	Energy <sup>(c)</sup> (eV)	K-edge (keV)	Scintillation conversion <sup>(d)</sup> efficiency (%)	Notes
<b>SCINTILLATORS</b>									
Nal(Tl)	3.67	5.38	4100	0.23	1.85	—	1.07, 33.2	100	Hygroscopic
CaF <sub>2</sub> (Eu)	3.18	—	4350	0.94	1.47	—	0.68, 4.04	50	Non-hygroscopic
CsI(Na)	4.51	5.67	4200	0.63	1.84	—	33.2, 36.0	80	Hygroscopic
CsI(Tl)	4.51	5.67	5650	1.0	1.80	—	33.2, 36.0	45	Non-hygroscopic
Plastics	1.06	—	3500–4500	0.002–0.020	Varies	—	0.284	20–30	Non-hygroscopic
Liquids	0.86	—	3500–4500	0.002–0.008	Varies	—	0.284	20–30	Non-hygroscopic
<b>SOLID STATE</b>									
Si(Li)	2.35	1.21	—	—	—	3.6	1.84	—	LN <sub>2</sub> required during operation
Ge(Li)	5.36	0.785	—	—	—	2.9	11.1	—	LN <sub>2</sub> required during operation
CdTe	5.85	1.44	—	—	—	4.43	26.7, 31.8	—	LN <sub>2</sub> required during operation
CdZnTe (CZT)	5.81	1.6	—	—	—	4.6	26.7, 9.7, 31.8	—	LN <sub>2</sub> required during operation

(a) Room temperature, exponential decay constant.

(b) At emission maximum.

(c) Per electron-hole pair.

(d) Referred to Nal(Tl) with S-11 photocathode.

(Adapted from *Harshaw Scintillation Phosphors*, The Harshaw Chemical Company.)

*Properties of materials used in X-ray detector systems*

	Atomic number, Z	Density (STP) (g cm <sup>-3</sup> )	Shell energy <sup>(a)</sup> (keV)	X-ray lines <sup>(b)</sup> (keV)	Fluorescence yield <sup>(c)</sup>	Energy at which photoelectric equals Compton cross-section (keV)
PROPORTIONAL COUNTER GASES						
Methane (CH <sub>4</sub> )	6	0.713 × 10 <sup>-3</sup>	0.284	0.277	20	
Ne	10	0.901 × 10 <sup>-3</sup>	0.867	0.849, 0.858	0.01	38
Ar	18	1.78 × 10 <sup>-3</sup>	3.203	2.96	0.105	72
			(0.285, 0.246, 0.244)			
Kr	36	3.74 × 10 <sup>-3</sup>	14.32	12.64, 14.12	0.625	170
			(1.92, 1.73, 1.67)			
Xe	54	5.85 × 10 <sup>-3</sup>	34.56	29.67, 33.78	0.875	300
			(5.46, 5.10, 4.78)	(4.10, 4.49, 5.30)	(0.14)	
CRYSTALS						
NaI	53	3.61	33.16	28.47, 32.30	0.865	260
			(5.19, 4.86, 4.56)	(3.93, 4.22, 4.80)	(0.13)	
CsI	55	4.54	35.97	30.81, 34.99	0.885	300
				(4.28, 4.62, 5.28)	(0.15)	
Si	14	2.33	1.84	1.74, 1.83	0.04	53
	32	5.36	11.10	9.88, 10.98	0.49	145
			(1.42, 1.41, 1.21)	(1.19, 1.22)	(0.01)	

*Properties of materials used in X-ray detector system (cont.)*

	Atomic number, Z	Density (STP) (g cm <sup>-3</sup> )	Shell energy <sup>(a)</sup> (keV)	X-ray lines <sup>(b)</sup> (keV)	Fluorescence yield <sup>(c)</sup> (keV)	Energy at which photoelectric equals Compton cross-section (keV)
WINDOWS, FILTERS						
Be	4	1.82	0.111	0.109		14
Mylar	8	1.4	0.532	0.525		
$(C_{10}H_8O_4)_n$	6		0.284	0.277		
Formvar	8	1.2 <sup>(d)</sup>	0.532	0.525		
$(C_5H_7O_2)_n$	6		0.284	0.277		
Polypropylene						
$(CH_2)_n$	6	0.95 <sup>(d)</sup>	0.284	0.277		22
Air (1.3% Ar, 23.2% O, 75.5% N)	18	$1.29 \times 10^{-3}$	3.20	2.96	0.105	27
Mg	12	1.74	0.532	0.525		
Al	13	2.7	0.400	0.392		
Fe	26	7.87	1.30	1.25, 1.30	0.02	46
Ni	28	8.9	1.56	1.49, 1.55	0.03	50
Cu	29	8.96	7.11	6.40, 7.06	0.31	135
			$(0.849, 0.722, 0.709)$			
			8.33	7.47, 8.27	0.38	140
			$(1.01, 0.877, 0.858)$			
			8.99	8.04, 8.91	0.40	145
			$(1.10, 0.954, 0.935)$			

(a) The first line is the K-shell energy. The three L-shell energies are listed in the parentheses.

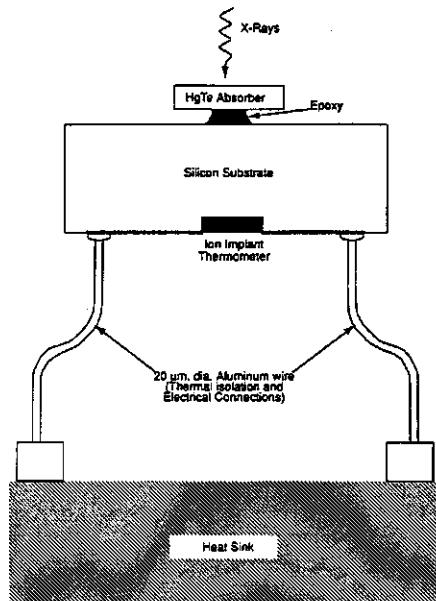
(b) The first line for each material gives K $\alpha$  and K $\beta$  energies. L $\alpha$ , L $\beta$  and L $\gamma$  are listed in the parentheses.

(c) The first line is the K fluorescence yield. The L fluorescence yield is listed in the parentheses. If the fluorescence yield is less than 1% the space is left blank.

(d) Variable depending on the detailed preparation of a batch of film.

### *Quantum calorimeter*

Schematic diagram of a quantum calorimeter or microcalorimeter.  
 (Courtesy of Brian Ramsey, Marshall Space Flight Center)

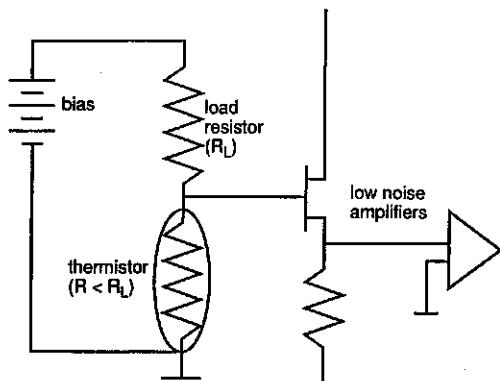


The energy resolution of a quantum calorimeter is limited by fluctuations in its thermal energy content:

$$\Delta = 2.35\sqrt{kT^2C} \text{ (FWHM)}$$

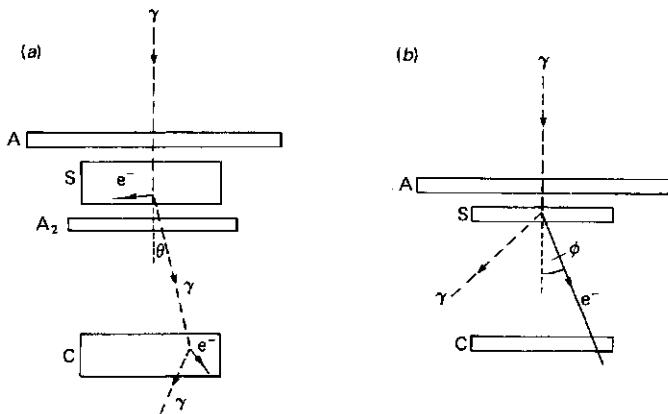
where  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant,  $T$  is the heat sink temperature, and  $C$  is the heat capacity of the detector. In principle, energy resolution as good as 1 eV (FWHM) is possible.

Schematic diagram of a biasing circuit for a semiconductor thermistor, a resistive thermometer extensively used in quantum calorimeters.



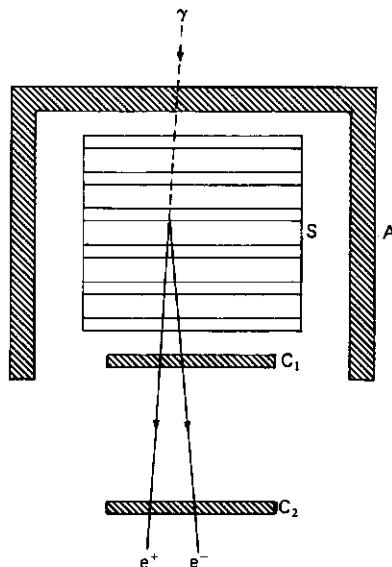
### Compton telescope for high energy gamma-rays

a) Configuration of a Compton telescope which relies on the detection of scattered photons: S, scatterer; C, collector; A<sub>1</sub>, A<sub>2</sub>, anticoincidence detectors. b) Basic configuration of a Compton telescope which relies on the detection of secondary electrons. (Adapted from Hillier, R., *Gamma Ray Astronomy*, Clarendon Press, 1984.)



### Spark chamber telescope for high energy gamma rays

Diagram showing the basic design of a spark chamber with plates (S), anticoincidence shield (A), and triggering detectors (C<sub>1</sub> and C<sub>2</sub>). (Adapted from Hillier, R., *Gamma Ray Astronomy*, Clarendon Press, 1984.)



**Level of activity for common materials**

Level of activity for common materials used in the construction of detector systems.

Material	Disintegrations/min per gram of Material		
	$^{232}\text{Th}$ (583 keV)	$^{238}\text{U}$	$^{40}\text{K}$
Aluminium (6061 from Harshaw)	0.42	0.04	< 0.05
Aluminium (1100 from Harshaw)	0.24	< 0.017	< 0.06
Aluminium (1100 from ALCOA)	0.08	< 0.026	< 0.11
Aluminium (3003 from ALCOA)	0.10	< 0.026	0.56
Stainless steel (304)	< 0.006	< 0.007	< 0.06
Stainless steel (304-L)	< 0.005	< 0.005	< 0.02
Magnesium (rod)	0.06	< 0.04	0.1
Magnesium (ingot)	< 0.01	< 0.002	< 0.02
Magnesium (4 in. $\times$ 4 in. from Dow)	< 0.005	< 0.002	< 0.02
Magnesium (from PGT)	< 0.05	< 0.03	< 0.05
Beryllium copper alloy	< 0.02	< 0.06	< 0.2
Copper (sheet)	< 0.05	< 0.06	< 0.2
Pyrex window	0.45	0.27	3.8
Quartz window	< 0.018	< 0.018	< 0.07
Molecular sieve	4.4	3.0	9.0
Neoprene	< 0.008	< 0.01	< 0.36
Rubber	0.12	1.0	2.0
Apiezon Q	4.5	4.5	2.7
Electrical tape-3M	< 0.04	< 0.06	< 0.1
Cement (Portland)	0.25	1.3	4.5
Epoxy	0.006	0.01	0.19
Lacquer	0.002	0.005	0.04

(From Camp, *et al.*, Nuc. Inst. Meth., 117, 189, 1974.)

### Properties of coaxial cables

Insulating Material	Cable Diameter (cm)	Characteristic Impedance (ohms)	Signal <sup>(a)</sup> Propagation		HV Rating	Cable Capacitance (pF/m)	Signal Attenuation per Meter <sup>(b)</sup> dB
			Propagation	Attenuation			
RG-8/U	Polyethylene	1.03	52	0.659	5000	96.8	100 0.066
RG-11/U	Polyethylene	1.03	75	0.659	5000	67.3	400 0.154
RG-58/U	Polyethylene	0.50	53.5	0.659	1900	93.5	400 0.066
RG-58C/U	Polyethylene	0.50	50	0.659	1900	100.1	400 0.135
RG-59/U	Polyethylene	0.61	73	0.659	2300	68.9	400 0.312
RG-62/U	Semisolid polyethylene	0.61	93	0.840	750	44.3	400 0.174
RG-174/U	Polyethylene	0.25	50	0.659	1500	101.0	400 0.413
RG-178/U	TFE teflon	0.18	50	0.694	1500	95.1	400 0.112
DOUBLE SHIELDED COAXIAL CABLES							
RG-9/U	Polyethylene	1.07	51	0.659	5000	98.4	100 0.062
RG-223/U	Polyethylene	0.52	50	0.659	1900	101.0	400 0.135
							100 0.157
							400 0.328

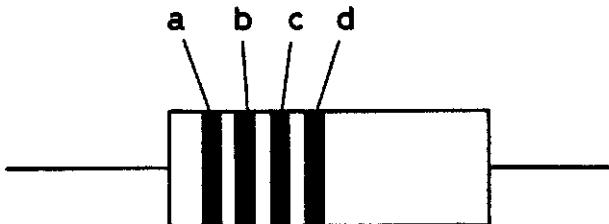
(a) Fraction of speed of light in a vacuum ( $3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ )

(b) The ratio of two signals, in decibels, is  $dB = 20 \log_{10}(A_2/A_1)$ , where  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are the two signal amplitudes.

(From *The Art of Electronics*, Horowitz, P. and Hill, W., Cambridge University Press, 1980, with permission.)

### Resistor color code

Resistance values are coded by 4 colored bands around the resistor as shown below



The value of the resistance is then

$$R = ab \times 10^c \pm d,$$

where the colors have the following number values:

0	Black	If the resistor has the band colors
1	Brown	
2	Red	
3	Orange	
4	Yellow	
5	Green	
6	Blue	
7	Violet	
8	Gray	
9	White	
5%	Gold	then the resistance is $R = 53 \times 10^3 \Omega$ with a tolerance of 5%
10%	Silver	
20%	No band	

(From *Techniques for Nuclear and Particle Physics Experiments*, Leo, W.R., Springer-Verlag, 1987, with permission.)

## Bibliography

- Building Scientific Apparatus*, Moore, J.H., Davis, C.C., and Coplan, M.A., Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc.
- Electro-Optics Handbook*, RCA Corporation, 1974.
- Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, CRC Press, 1995.
- Handbook of Vacuum Science and Technology*, Hoffinan, D.M., Singh, B., Thomas, J.H. 111, Academic Press, 1998.
- Matter and Methods at Low Temperatures*, Pobell, F., Springer, 1996.
- Measurement and Detection of radiation*, Tsoulfanidis, N., Hemisphere Publishing Corporation, 1983.
- Optical System Design*, Kingslake, R., Academic Press, 1983.
- Radiation Detection and Measurement*, Knoll, G.F., John Wiley & Sons, 1989.
- Scientific Foundations of Vacuum Techniques, Dushnivi, S., John Wiley & Sons, 1949.
- Table of Isotopes*, Lederer, C.M. & Shirley, V.S., eds., John Wiley and Sons, 1978.
- Techniques for Nuclear antiparticle Physics Experiments*, Leo, W.R., Springer-Verlag, 1992.
- Techniques of Vacuum Ultraviolet Spectroscopy*, Samson, J. A. R., John Wiley and Sons, 1967.
- The 1998 Review of Particle Physics*, Caso, C., et al., Euro. Phys. Jour., **C3**, 1, 1998.
- The Art of Electronics*, Horowitz, P. and Hill, W., Cambridge University Press, 1980.
- The Atomic Nucleus*, Evans, R. B., McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1955.
- Vacuum Technology, Roth, A., Elsevier Science Publishers, 1990.
- Vacuum Technology and Space Simulation, NASA SP- 1 05, US Government Printing Office, 1966.
- X-ray Detectors in Astronomy*, Fraser, G., Cambridge University Press, 1989.
- X-ray interactions: photoabsorption, scattering, transmission, and reflection at  $E = 50-30000 \text{ eV}$ ,  $Z = 1-92$* , Henke, B.L., Guilksson, E.M, and Davis, J.C., Atomic Data and Nuclear Data Tables, **54**, 181-342, 1993.
- X-ray Science and Technology*, Mehette, A.G., Buckley, C.J., eds., Institute of Physics Publishing, 1993.
- X-ray Wavelengths*, Bearden, J. A., Rev. Mod. Phys., **39**, 78, 1967.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

# Chapter 15

---

## Astronautics

*Having probes in space was like having a cataract removed.* - Hannes Alfvén

Satellite orbits	536
Earth satellite parameters	538
Perturbations of a satellite orbit	539
Satellite drag pressure	540
Approximate lifetimes for Earth satellites	541
Lagrange (libration) points	542
Space transportation system	543
Shuttle performance capability	544
Space launch sites	545
Deep Space Network facilities (DSN)	546
Spacecraft Tracking and Data Network facilities (STDN)	546
Aeronautics, balloons, and sounding rocket facilities	547
Astrodynamical constants	548
Bibliography	549

## Satellite orbits

---

The position and velocity of an orbiting satellite can be calculated from six quantities, the orbital elements:

**Orbit inclination**,  $i$ , the angle between the orbit plane and the equatorial plane of the Earth.

**Right ascension of the ascending node**,  $\Omega$ , the angle between vernal equinox and the point where the orbit crosses the equatorial plane (going north)

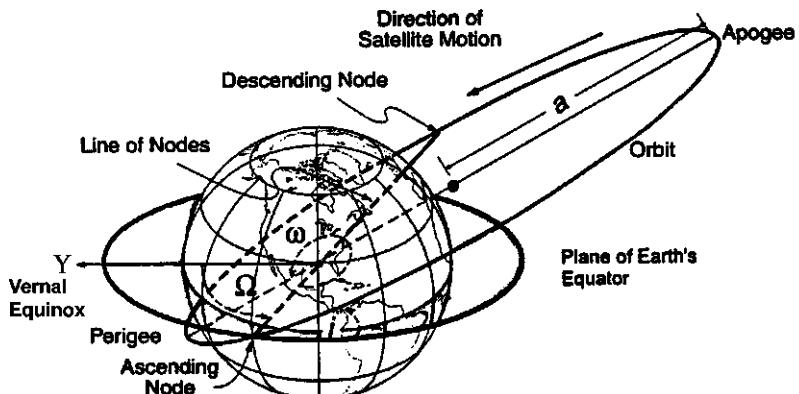
**Argument of perigee**,  $\omega$ , the angle between the ascending node and the orbit's point of closest approach to the Earth (perigee)

**Semi-major axis**,  $a$ , of the orbital ellipse

**True anomaly**,  $v$ , the angle between perigee and the satellite (in the orbit plane)

**Orbit eccentricity**,  $e$ , ( $e = (a^2 - b^2)^{1/2}/a$ , where  $b$  is the semi-minor axis of the orbital ellipse)

The elements above are specified for a given reference time or *epoch*.



$\Upsilon$  marks the direction of the Vernal Equinox.  $\Omega$  is measured in the plane of the Earth's equator, and  $\omega$  is measured in the orbit plane.

(Diagram courtesy of J.R. Wertz, Microcosm, Inc.)

Often the mean anomaly  $M$  is given instead of the true anomaly. The mean anomaly is  $360(t/P)$  deg, where  $P$  is the period of the orbit and  $t$  is the time since perigee passage of the satellite.  $M = v$  for a circular orbit. If the mean anomaly is given, the true anomaly must be calculated. An intermediate variable, the eccentric anomaly,  $E$ , is introduced.  $E$  and  $M$  are related by Kepler's equation:

$M = E - e \sin E$ , which can be solved using Newton's false root method.

$E$  is related to  $v$  by Gauss' equation:

$$\tan(v/2) = [(1+e)/(1-e)]^{1/2} \tan(E/2)$$

The orbit period is given by

$$P = 2\pi a^{3/2} / (GM_E)^{1/2} = 1.6585 \times 10^{-4} a(\text{km})^{3/2} \text{ min (Kepler's Third Law),}$$

where

$$G = 6.670 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N m}^2 \text{ kg}^{-2}, \text{ the gravitational constant}$$

$$M_E = 5.977 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg, the mass of the Earth}$$

$$a = RE + (h_P + h_A)/2, \text{ where } RE \text{ is the Earth's radius (6378 km)} \\ \text{and } h_P \text{ and } h_A \text{ are the satellite's perigee height and apogee height, respectively.}$$

Perturbations by the Earth's gravitational field cause the right ascension of the ascending node and the argument of perigee to vary with time:

$$\frac{\Delta\Omega}{\text{day}} = -\frac{9.964}{(a/R_e)^{7/2}(1-e^2)^2} \cos i,$$

where  $R_e$  is the equatorial radius of the Earth (6378 km)

$$\frac{\Delta\omega}{\text{day}} = \frac{4.982}{(a/R_e)^{7/2}(1-e^2)^2} (5 \cos^2 i - 1).$$


---



---

**Earth satellite parameters**

Altitude (km)	Period* (min)	Velocity* (km/s)	Angular Velocity* (deg/min)	Maximum Eclipse** (min)
0	84.49	7.905	4.261	42.2
100	86.48	7.844	4.163	38.4
150	87.49	7.814	4.115	37.8
200	88.49	7.784	4.068	37.3
250	89.50	7.755	4.022	36.9
300	90.52	7.726	3.977	36.6
350	91.54	7.697	3.933	36.3
400	92.56	7.669	3.889	36.1
450	93.59	7.640	3.847	35.9
500	94.62	7.613	3.805	35.8
600	96.69	7.558	3.723	35.5
700	98.77	7.504	3.645	35.3
800	100.87	7.452	3.569	35.1
900	102.99	7.400	3.496	35.0
1,000	105.12	7.350	3.425	34.9
1,500	115.98	7.113	3.104	34.8
2,000	127.20	6.898	2.830	35.0
2,500	138.75	6.701	2.595	35.4
3,000	150.64	6.519	2.390	35.9
3,500	162.84	6.352	2.211	36.4
4,000	175.36	6.197	2.053	36.9
4,500	188.19	6.053	1.913	37.5
5,000	201.31	5.919	1.788	38.1
6,000	228.42	5.675	1.576	39.4
7,000	256.66	5.458	1.403	40.6
8,000	285.97	5.265	1.259	41.8
9,000	316.31	5.091	1.138	43.1
10,000	347.66	4.933	1.035	44.3
15,000	518.46	4.318	0.694	50.0
20,000	710.60	3.887	0.507	55.2
25,000	921.94	3.564	0.390	60.1
30,000	1150.85	3.310	0.313	64.6
35,786	1,436.07	3.075	0.251	69.4

\*For circular orbit

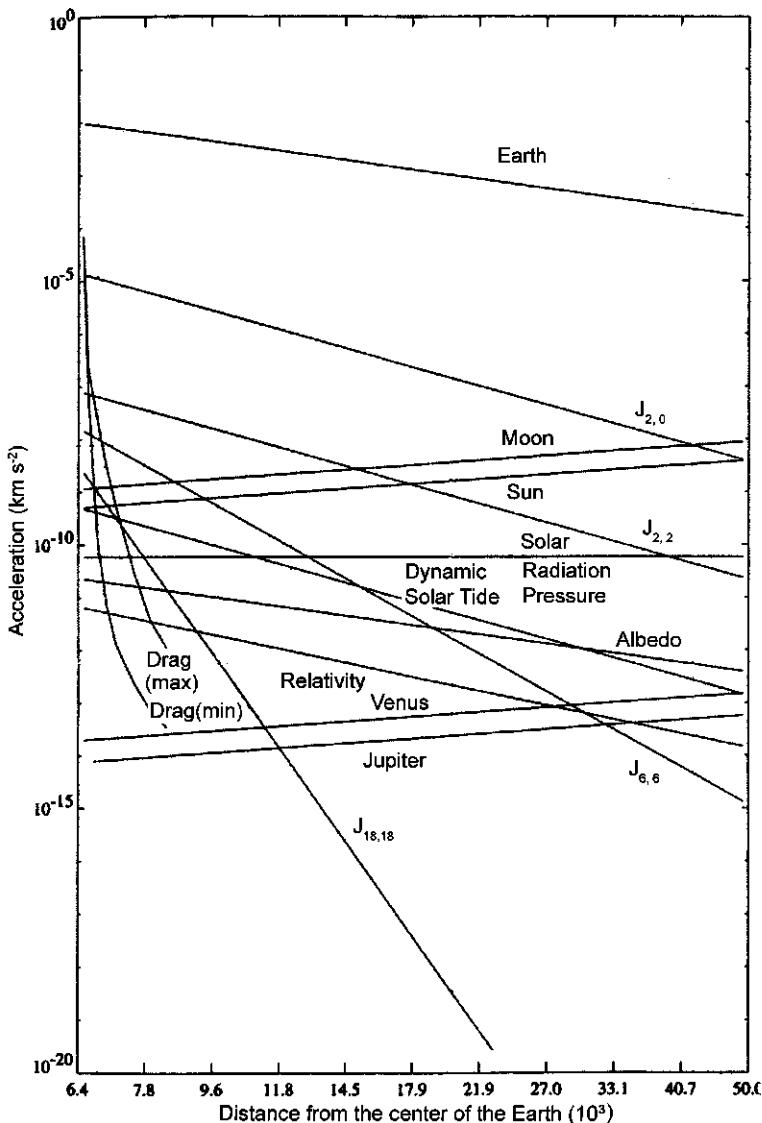
\*\*Longest eclipse for circular orbit. Eclipse in eccentric orbits can be longer.

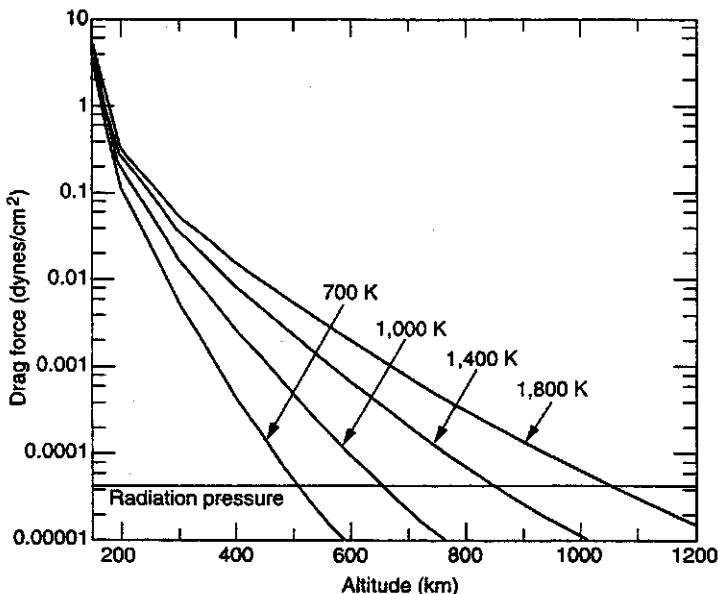
(Adapted from Wertz, J.R. and Larson, W.J., eds., *Space Mission Analysis and Design*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1991.)

## Perturbations of a satellite orbit

Order of magnitude perturbations of a satellite orbit. The acceleration due to gravitational forces is independent of the satellite's mass and area; drag and other surfaces forces (e.g. radiation pressure) are not. The area-mass ratio assumed for non-gravitational forces is  $0.01 \text{ m}^2 \text{ kg}^{-1}$ .

(Adapted from *Satellite Orbits*, Montenbruck, O. and Gill, E., Springer, 2000.)



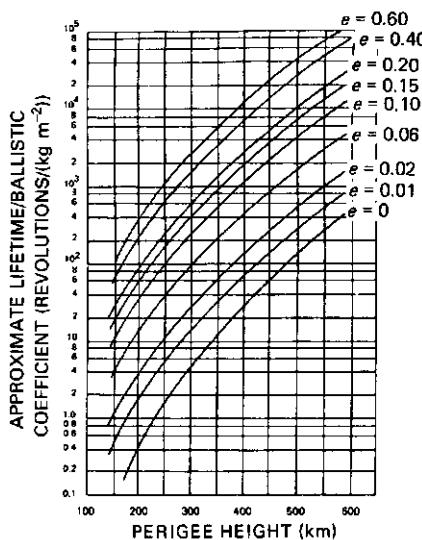
**Satellite drag pressure as a function of altitude and temperature**

A temperature of 700 K corresponds to quiet solar conditions and 1700 K to active solar conditions.

(From the Italian Aerospace Research Center, CIRA, 1972)

## Approximate lifetimes for Earth satellites

---



$$\text{Lifetime} = NP = N \left[ \frac{4\pi^2}{GM_E} \left( \frac{h_p + R_E}{1 - e} \right)^3 \right]^{1/2},$$

where

$N$  = number of orbit revolutions in the satellite lifetime from the above diagram.

Ballistic coefficient =  $m/(C_D A)$  (typically,  $25 - 100 \text{ kg m}^{-2}$ ),

$m$  = mass of the satellite,

$C_D$  = the drag coefficient ( $\approx 1 - 2$ ),

$A$  = satellite cross-sectional area perpendicular to the velocity vector,

$G$  = gravitational constant,

$h_p$  = perigee height,

$e$  = eccentricity of the orbit,

$P$  = satellite period,

$M_E$  = mass of the Earth,

$R_E$  = radius of the Earth.

$$\text{Lifetime (d)} \approx 1.15 \times 10^{-7} \times N \times \left( \frac{6378.14 + h_p(\text{km})}{1 - e} \right)^{3/2}.$$

Satellite period (hr) =  $1.41(a/R_E)^{3/2}$ ,

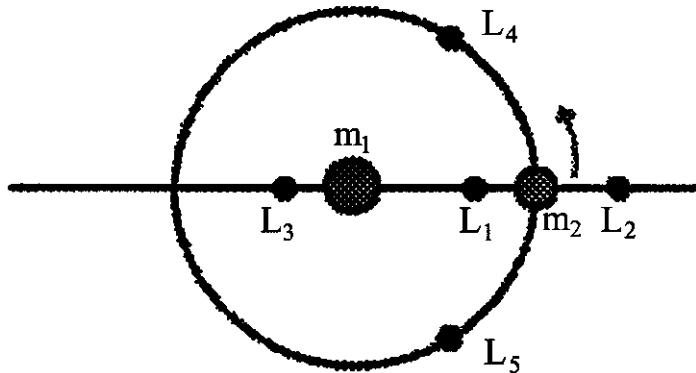
where  $a$  = semi-major axis.

---

(Adapted from Wertz, J., ed., *Spacecraft Attitude Determination and Control*, D. Reidel Publ. Co., 1980.)

## Lagrange (libration) points

In the circular restricted three body problem—two co-orbiting bodies with nearly circular orbits of masses  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  (with  $m_1 > m_2$ ) and a third small body having the same period of revolution as the other two - there are five points where the gravitational forces of the two large bodies exactly balance the “centrifugal force” “felt” by the small body. These are known as Lagrange or libration points. Two of these points,  $L_4$  and  $L_5$  form equilateral triangles with the primary masses. The other three points ( $L_1, L_2, L_3$ ) are colinear with the primary masses.  $L_4$  and  $L_5$  are stable.  $L_1, L_2$  and  $L_3$  are unstable. There are, however, orbits (halo orbits) around the latter three points in planes skew to the plane of the orbit of the two major bodies which are almost stable, requiring only small occasional corrections.



Assuming that  $m_1 \gg m_2$ , setting the origin of a rectangular coordinate system at the center of  $m_1$  and the  $+x$ -axis in the direction of  $m_2$ , with  $\alpha = m_2/m_1$ , approximate solutions to the first three Lagrange points can be found:

$$L1 : (R[1 - (\alpha/3)^{1/3}], 0),$$

$$L2 : (R[1 + (\alpha/3)^{1/3}], 0),$$

$$L3 : (-R[1 + 5\alpha/12], 0),$$

where  $R$  is the distance between  $m_1 + m_2$ .

For the Earth-Sun system  $\alpha \approx 3 \times 10^{-6}$ ,  $R = 1 \text{ AU} \approx 1.5 \times 10^8 \text{ km}$ , and the first and second Lagrange points are located approximately  $1.5 \times 10^6$  kilometers from the Earth,  $L2$  occurring on the “night” side of the Earth.  $L3$  orbits the Sun just a fraction further out than the Earth and is not visible from the Earth.

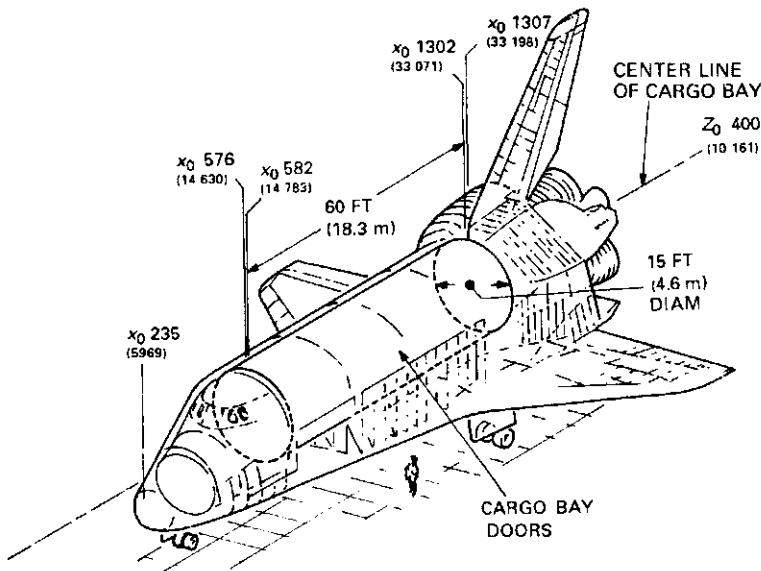
The fourth and fifth Lagrange points (stable if  $m_1/m_2 > 25$ ) have coordinates

$$L4 : (R/2[(m_1 - m_2)/(m_1 + m_2)], R\sqrt{3}/2),$$

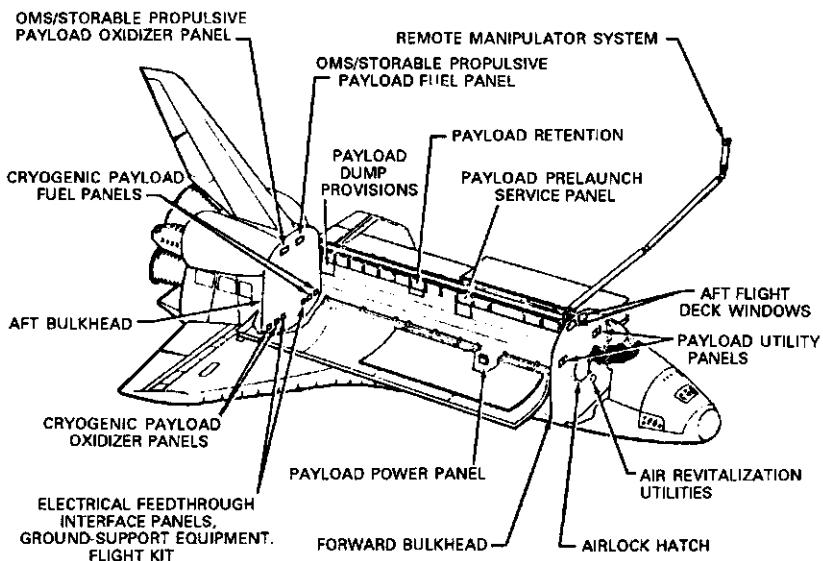
$$L5 : (R/2[(m_1 - m_2)/(m_1 + m_2)], -R\sqrt{3}/2).$$

## Space transportation system (Space Shuttle)

Orbiter coordinate system and cargo bay envelope. The dynamic clearance allowed between the vehicle and the payload at each end is also illustrated.

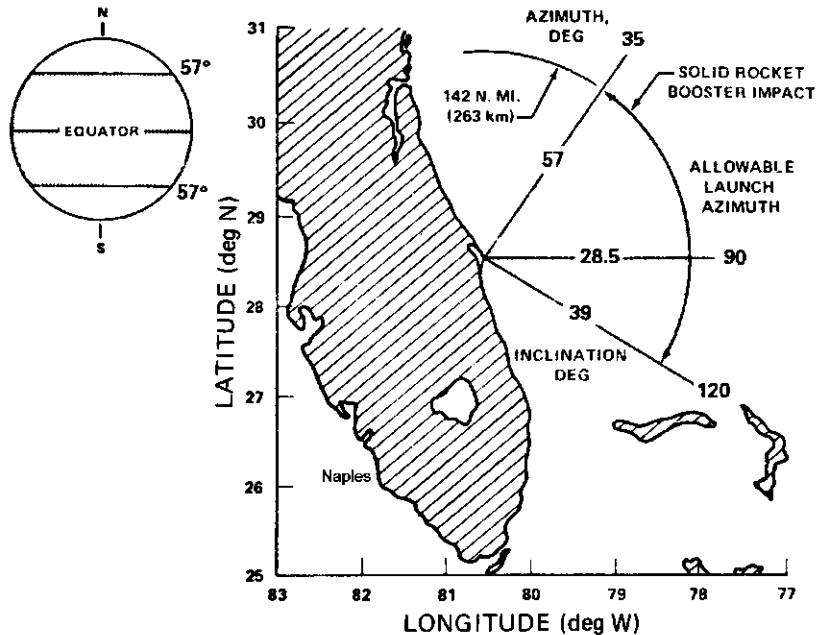


Principal Orbiter interfaces with payloads.

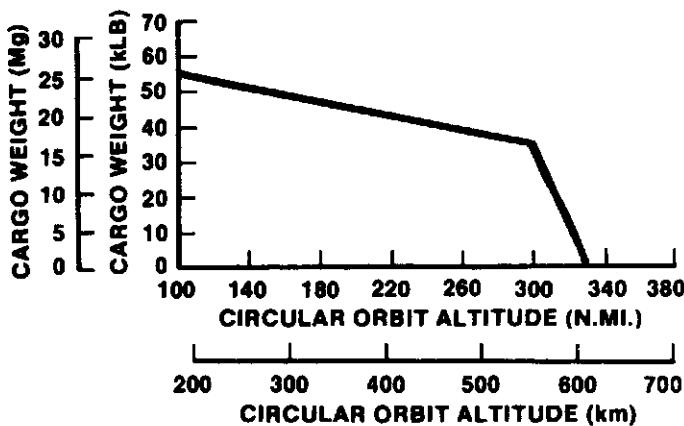


## Shuttle performance capability

Launch azimuth and inclination limits from KSC in Florida. The inset globe illustrates the extent of coverage possible when launches are made from KSC.



Cargo capability for a KSC (28.45 degree inclination) launch.



**Space Launch Sites**

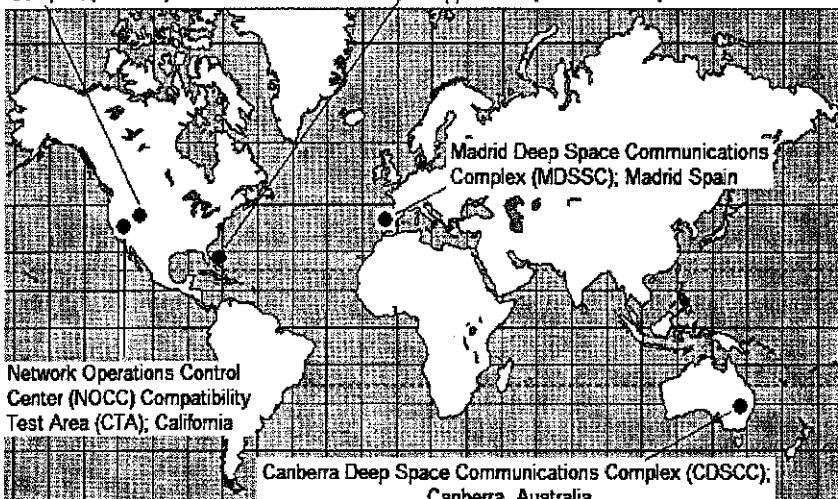
Country	Launch Site	Latitude	Longitude
Australia	Woomera	31.1° S	136.8° E
Brazil	Alcantara Launch Center	2.3° S	44.4° W
Canada	Fort Churchill, Manitoba	58.759°	265.912° E
China	Jiuquan Space Launch Center – Shuang Cheng Tzu	40.6° N	99.9° E
China	Xichang Space Launch Center	28.25° N	102.0° E
China	Taiyuan Space Launch Center – Wuzhai	37.5° N	112.6° E
Europe	Kourou, French Guiana	5.2° N	52.8° W
France	Hammaguir, Algeria	31.0° N	8.0° W
France	Kourou, French Guiana	5.2° N	52.8° W
India	Sriharikota Island	13.9° N	80.4° E
Iraq	Al-Anbar	33.5° N	43.0° E
Israel	Palmachim Air Base in the Negev Desert	31.5° N	34.5° E
Italy	San Marco Range off the Kenya coast	2.9° S	40.3° E
Japan	Kagoshima on Kyushu Island	31.2° N	131.1° E
Japan	Tanegashima Island	30.4° N	131.0° E
Pakistan	SUPARCO	40.5° N	3.5° W
Russia	Kapustin Yar Cosmodrome – Volgograd Station	48.4° N	45.8° E
Russia	Baikonur Cosmodrome – Tyuratam	45.6° N	63.4° E
Russia	Plesetsk Cosmodrome	62.8° N	40.1° E
Russia	Svobodny Cosmodrome	51.4° N	128.3° E
South Africa	South of Cape Town	33.56° S	18.29° E
United Kingdom	Woomera	31.1° S	136.8° E
United States	Cape Canaveral Air Station, Florida	28.5° N	81.0° W
United States	Kennedy Space Center, Merrit Island, Florida	28.5° N	81.0° W
United States	Wallops Island, Virginia	37.8° N	75.5° W
United States	Vandenberg Air Force Base, California	34.4° N	120.35° W
United States	Poker Flat Research Range, Alaska	65.1° N	147.4° W
United States	Alaska Spaceport	57.5° N	153° W
United States	White Sands Space Harbor, Las Cruces, New Mexico		

(Adapted from *Space Today*, 2000.)

## Deep Space Network facilities (DSN)

Goldstone Deep Space Communications Complex (GDSCC) California

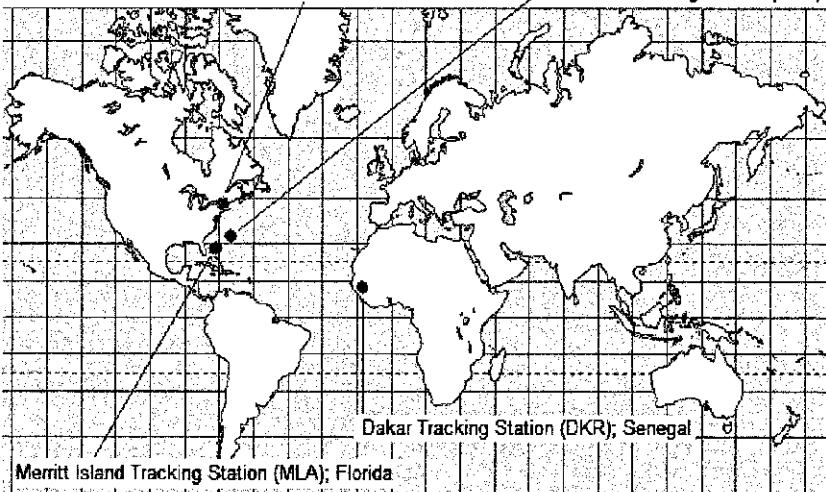
Network Spacecraft Test and Launch Support Area; Merritt Island, Florida



## Spacecraft Tracking and Data Network facilities (STDN)

Network Control Center (NCC); Greenbelt, Maryland

Bermuda Tracking Station (BDA)

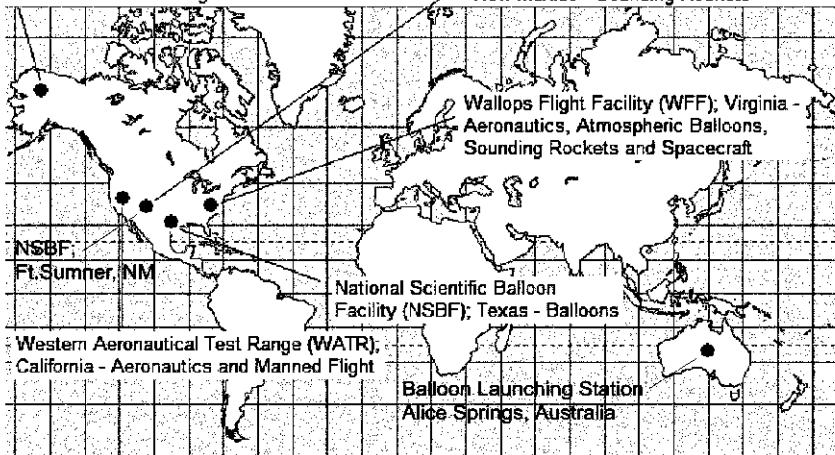


## Aeronautics, balloons, and sounding rocket facilities

---

Poker Flat Research Range; Alaska - Atmospheric Balloons and Sounding Rockets

White Sands Missile Range (WSMR); New Mexico - Sounding Rockets



---

**Astrodynamic constants**

Quantity	Value	Remarks
<b>Time</b>		
MJD (J2000)	51544.5	Modified Julian Date, 2000 January 1, 12 <sup>h</sup>
TT – TAI	32.184 s	Terrestrial Time – International Atomic Time
GPS – TAI	-19 s	Global Positioning System Time – International Atomic Time
<b>Universal</b>		
c	299 792 458 m s <sup>-1</sup>	Speed of light in a vacuum
G	$6.673 \times 10^{-20}$ km <sup>3</sup> kg <sup>-1</sup> s <sup>-2</sup>	Gravitational constant
<b>Earth</b>		
GM	398 600.4415 km <sup>3</sup> s <sup>-2</sup>	Gravitational coefficient
J <sub>2</sub>	0.00108263	Geopotential coefficient
R	6378.137 km	Equatorial radius
f	1/298.257223563	Flattening factor
$\omega$	$0.7292115 \times 10^{-4}$ rad s <sup>-1</sup>	Mean angular velocity
<b>Sun</b>		
GM	$1.32712440018 \times 10^{11}$ km <sup>3</sup> s <sup>-2</sup>	Gravitational coefficient
AU	149 597 870.691 km	Astronomical unit
R	$6.955 \times 10^5$ km	Radius
P	$4.560 \times 10^{-6}$ N m <sup>-2</sup>	Radiation pressure at 1 AU
$\phi$	1367 W m <sup>-2</sup>	Solar constant
<b>Moon</b>		
GM	4 902.801 km <sup>3</sup> s <sup>-2</sup>	Gravitational coefficient
a	384 400 km	Mean distance from Earth
R	1738.2 km	Mean radius
<b>Artificial Satellites</b>		
r <sub>GEO</sub>	42 164 km	Geosynchronous orbit radius
v <sub>GEO</sub>	3.075 km s <sup>-1</sup>	Geosynchronous orbit velocity
P <sub>GEO</sub>	23 <sup>h</sup> 56 <sup>m</sup> 04 <sup>s</sup>	Geosynchronous orbit period
r <sub>GPS</sub>	26 561 km	Global Positioning System orbit radius
v <sub>GPS</sub>	3.874 km s <sup>-1</sup>	Global Positioning System orbit velocity
P <sub>GPS</sub>	11 <sup>h</sup> 58 <sup>m</sup> 02 <sup>s</sup>	Global Positioning System orbit period
r <sub>LEO</sub>	6678 – 7878 km	Low Earth orbit radius
v <sub>LEO</sub>	7.726 – 7.113 km s <sup>-1</sup>	Low Earth orbit velocity

(Adapted from Montenbruck, O. and Gill, E., *Satellite Orbits*, Springer, 2000)

## Bibliography

- AIAA, Aerospace Design Engineers Guide*, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Inc., 1998.
- Aerospace Source Book*, Aviation Week & Space Technology, McGraw-Hill, 2000.
- International Reference Guide to Space Launch Systems*, Isakowitz, S.J., AIAA, 1995.
- Spacecraft Systems Engineering*, Fortescue, P. and Stark, J., eds., John Wiley and Sons, 1995.
- Space Transportation System User Handbook*, National Aeronautics and Space Administration.
- Fundamentals of Space Systems*, Pisacane, V.L. and Moore, R.C., eds., Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Introduction to Space Dynamics*, Thomson, W.T., Dover Publications, Inc., 1986.
- Satellite Orbits—Models, Methods, Applications*, Montenbruck, O., Gill, E., Springer, 2000.
- Spacecraft Attitude Determination and Control*, Wertz, J.R., ed, Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1978.
- Space Mission Analysis and Design*, Wertz, J.R. and Larson, W.J., eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1991.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

# Chapter 16

---

## Mathematics

*The physicist in preparing for his work needs three things, mathematics, mathematics, mathematics.* - Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen

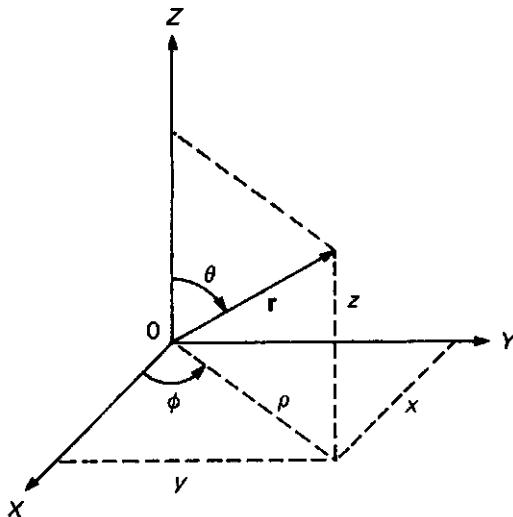
Coordinate transformations	553
Vector analysis	553
<i>Differential elements</i>	555
<i>Vector operations</i>	556
Derivatives	557
Indefinite integrals	558
Definite integrals	559
The Fourier transform	559
<i>Useful definitions</i>	560
<i>Fourier transform theorems</i>	561
<i>Fourier transform pairs</i>	562
Special functions	563
<i>Spherical harmonics, Legendre polynomials</i>	563
<i>Bessel functions</i>	564
Function definitions and approximations	565
<i>Auxiliary table</i>	568
Named differential equations	569
Complex analysis	570
<i>Definitions</i>	570
<i>Operations</i>	570
<i>Powers and roots</i>	570
<i>Functions of a complex variable</i>	571
<i>Cauchy-Riemann equations</i>	571
<i>Cauchy integral theorem</i>	571
<i>Cauchy integral formula</i>	571

Algebra	572
<i>Quadratic equations</i>	572
<i>Binomial theorem</i>	572
<i>Multinomial theorem</i>	572
<i>Algebraic equations</i>	572
Conics	573
<i>Parabola</i>	573
<i>Ellipse</i>	573
<i>Hyperbola</i>	573
Examples of plane curves	574
Numerical analysis	575
<i>Taylor series</i>	575
<i>Quadrature</i>	575
<i>Six-point Gauss-Legendre</i>	575
<i>Linear interpolation</i>	576
<i>Approximations</i>	576
<i>Curve fitting (linear least-squares)</i>	576
Bibliography	577

## Coordinate transformations

---

Components of a vector,  $\mathbf{r}$ , in Cartesian  $(x, y, z)$ , spherical  $(r, \theta, \phi)$ , and cylindrical  $(\rho, \phi, z)$  coordinates.



The following relationships exist between the Cartesian, Spherical, and Cylindrical systems:

$$\begin{aligned}
 z &= r \cos \theta & = z \\
 r &= (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2} & = (\rho^2 + z^2)^{1/2} \\
 \theta &= \arccos\{z/(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}\} & = \arctan(\rho/z) \quad 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi \\
 \phi &= \arctan(y/x) & = \phi \quad 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi \\
 \rho &= (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2} & = r \sin \theta \\
 x &= r \sin \theta \cos \phi & = \rho \cos \phi \\
 y &= r \sin \theta \sin \phi & = \rho \sin \phi
 \end{aligned}$$


---

## Vector analysis

---

Vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  defined in terms of the unit vectors  $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$  having the directions of the positive  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  axes respectively:

$$\mathbf{a} = a_x \mathbf{i} + a_y \mathbf{j} + a_z \mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{b} = b_x \mathbf{i} + b_y \mathbf{j} + b_z \mathbf{k}$$

The scalar product:

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_x b_x + a_y b_y + a_z b_z$$

The vector product:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} &= (a_y b_z - a_z b_y) \mathbf{i} + (a_z b_x - a_x b_z) \mathbf{j} + (a_x b_y - a_y b_x) \mathbf{k} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_x & a_y & a_z \\ b_x & b_y & b_z \end{vmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

Vector identities:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} &= (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) = (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{a} \\ &= \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b}, \\ \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) &= (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{c}, \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{d}) &= (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d}) - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}), \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{d}) &= ((\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{d})\mathbf{c} - ((\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{d}.\end{aligned}$$

Differentiation formulae:

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \cdot \phi \mathbf{u} &= \phi \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \phi, \\ \nabla \times \phi \mathbf{u} &= \phi \nabla \times \mathbf{u} + \nabla \phi \times \mathbf{u}, \\ \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{v}, \\ \nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) &= (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} - (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{v}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}), \\ \nabla(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) &= (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{u}), \\ \nabla \times (\nabla \phi) &= \text{curl grad } \phi = 0, \\ \nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{u}) &= \text{div curl } \mathbf{u} = 0, \\ \nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{u}) &= \text{curl curl } \mathbf{u} = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}) - \nabla \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} \\ &= \text{grad div } \mathbf{u} - \nabla^2 \mathbf{u} \\ \nabla \cdot (\nabla \phi_1 \times \nabla \phi_2) &= 0\end{aligned}$$

In these formulas  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are arbitrary vectors and  $\phi$ ,  $\phi_1$ , and  $\phi_2$  are arbitrary scalars for which the indicated derivatives exist.

*Surface integrals*

Divergence theorem:

$$\iiint_v \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} dV = \iint_s \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{n} dS$$

Stokes' theorem:

$$\iint_s \mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{V}) dS = \oint_C \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

Green's theorem:

$$\iiint_v [\phi_1 \nabla^2 \phi_2 - \phi_2 \nabla^2 \phi_1] dV = \iint_s \mathbf{n} \cdot (\phi_1 \nabla \phi_2 - \phi_2 \nabla \phi_1) dS,$$

where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the surface outward unit normal.

*Differential elements**Cylindrical coordinates*

Line element:

$$ds = \sqrt{(dr^2 + r^2 d\theta^2 + dz^2)}$$

Area elements:

$$dS_r = r d\theta dz, \quad dS_\theta = dr dz, \quad dS_z = r d\theta dr$$

Volume element:

$$dV = r d\theta dr dz$$

*Spherical coordinates*

Line element:

$$ds = \sqrt{(dr^2 + r^2 d\theta^2 + r^2 \sin^2 \theta d\phi^2)}$$

Area elements:

$$dS_r = r^2 \sin \theta d\theta d\phi, \quad dS_\theta = r \sin \theta dr d\phi, \quad dS_\phi = r dr d\theta$$

Volume element:

$$dV = r^2 \sin \theta dr d\theta d\phi$$

### Vector operations

Let  $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{e}_3$  be orthogonal unit vectors associated with the coordinate systems specified and  $A_1, A_2, A_3$  be the corresponding components of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Then

*Cartesian* ( $x_1, x_2, x_3 = x, y, z$ )

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla\psi &= \mathbf{e}_1 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x_1} + \mathbf{e}_2 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x_2} + \mathbf{e}_3 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x_3} \\ \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} &= \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_3} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{e}_1 \left( \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_3} \right) + \mathbf{e}_2 \left( \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_1} \right) + \mathbf{e}_3 \left( \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_2} \right) \\ \nabla^2\psi &= \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x_1^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x_2^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x_3^2}\end{aligned}$$


---

*Cylindrical* ( $\rho, \phi, z$ )

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla\psi &= \mathbf{e}_1 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\rho} + \mathbf{e}_2 \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\phi} + \mathbf{e}_3 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial z} \\ \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} &= \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial\rho}(\rho A_1) + \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial\phi} + \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial z} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{e}_1 \left( \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial\phi} - \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial z} \right) + \mathbf{e}_2 \left( \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial\rho} \right) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{e}_3 \frac{1}{\rho} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial\rho}(\rho A_2) - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial\phi} \right) \\ \nabla^2\psi &= \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial\rho} \left( \rho \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\rho} \right) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial\phi^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial z^2}\end{aligned}$$


---

*Spherical* ( $r, \theta, \phi$ )

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla\psi &= \mathbf{e}_1 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial r} + \mathbf{e}_2 \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\theta} + \mathbf{e}_3 \frac{1}{r \sin\theta} \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\phi} \\ \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r^2 A_1) + \frac{1}{r \sin\theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}(\sin\theta A_2) + \frac{1}{r \sin\theta} \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial\phi} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{e}_1 \frac{1}{r \sin\theta} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}(\sin\theta A_3) - \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial\phi} \right] \\ &\quad + \mathbf{e}_2 \left[ \frac{1}{r \sin\theta} \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial\phi} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r A_3) \right] + \mathbf{e}_3 \frac{1}{r} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r A_2) - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial\theta} \right] \\ \nabla^2\psi &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin\theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \left( \sin\theta \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial\theta} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2\theta} \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial\phi^2} \\ &\quad \left[ \text{Note that } \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial r} \right) \equiv \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}(r\psi). \right]\end{aligned}$$


---

**Derivatives**

$f(x)$	$f'(x)$	$f^{(r)}(x)$
$x^a$	$ax^{a-1}$	$a(a-1)(a-2)\cdots(a-r+1)x^{a-r}$
$e^x$	$e^x$	$e^x$
$a^x$	$a^x \log_e a$	$a^x (\log_e a)^r$
$\log_e x$	$\frac{1}{x}$	$(-1)^{r-1}(r-1)!\frac{1}{x^r}$
$\log_a x$	$\frac{1}{x} \log_a e$	$(-1)^{r-1}(r-1)!\frac{1}{x^r} \log_a e$
$\sin x$	$\cos x$	$\sin\left(x + \frac{\pi r}{2}\right)$
$\cos x$	$-\sin x$	$\cos\left(x + \frac{\pi r}{2}\right)$
$\tan x$	$1/\cos^2 x$	
$\cot x$	$-1/\sin^2 x$	
$\sec x$	$\sin x/\cos^2 x$	
$\operatorname{cosec} x$	$-\cos x/\sin^2 x$	
$\sinh x$	$\cosh x$	
$\cosh x$	$\sinh x$	
$\tanh x$	$1/\cosh^2 x$	
$\coth x$	$-1/\sinh^2 x$	
$\arcsin x$	$1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$	
$\arccos x$	$-1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$	
$\arctan x$	$1/1+x^2$	
$\operatorname{arccot} x$	$-1/1+x^2$	
$\sinh^{-1} x$	$1/\sqrt{x^2+1}$	
$\cosh^{-1} x$	$1/\sqrt{x^2-1}$	
$\tanh^{-1} x$	$1/1-x^2$	
$\coth^{-1} x$	$1/1-x^2$	
$f(x)g(x)$	$f'(x)g(x) + g'(x)f(x)$	
$f(x)/g(x)$	$(g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x))/(g(x))^2$	

### Indefinite integrals (Add a constant)

---

$$\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \quad (n \neq -1)$$

$$\int e^x dx = e^x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{x} = \log_e |x| \quad (x \neq 0)$$

$$\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log_e a} \quad (a > 0, a \neq 1)$$

$$\int \sin x dx = -\cos x$$

$$\int \sinh x dx = \cosh x$$

$$\int \cos x dx = \sin x$$

$$\int \cosh x dx = \sinh x$$

$$\int \tan x dx = -\log_e |\cos x|$$

$$\int \tanh x dx = \log_e \cosh x$$

$$\int \cot x dx = \log_e |\sin x|$$

$$\int \coth x dx = \log_e |\sinh x|$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\cos^2 x} = \tan x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\cosh^2 x} = \tanh x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x} = -\cot x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sinh^2 x} = -\coth x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \quad (a \neq 0)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} = \frac{1}{2a} \log_e \frac{a+x}{a-x} \quad (|x| < a)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2} = -\frac{1}{a} \coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a} = \frac{1}{2a} \log_e \frac{x-a}{x+a} \quad (|x| > a)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \quad (a \neq 0)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \log_e |x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}|$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \log_e |x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}|$$


---

**Definite integrals**

$$\int_0^\infty t^{2n+1} e^{-at^2} dt = \frac{n!}{2a^{n+1}} \quad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$

$$\int_0^\infty t^{2n} e^{-at^2} dt = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdots (2n-1)}{2^{n+1} a^n} \sqrt{\left(\frac{\pi}{a}\right)} \quad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$

$$\int_0^\infty t^n e^{-at} dt = \frac{n!}{a^{n+1}} \quad (n = 1, 2, \dots)$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^\infty e^{-\pi x^2} dx = 1 \quad \int_{-\infty}^\infty e^{-Ax^2} dx = \left(\frac{\pi}{A}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$\int_0^\infty xe^{-x^2} dx = 1/2 \quad \int_0^\infty \left(\frac{\sin x}{x}\right)^2 dx = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\operatorname{erf} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2} dt, \text{ error function}$$

$$C(x) = \int_0^x \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}t^2\right) dt, \quad S(x) = \int_0^x \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}t^2\right) dt, \text{ Fresnel integrals}$$

$$Ei(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^t}{t} dt, \text{ exponential integral}$$

$$\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty t^{x-1} e^{-t} dt, \text{ gamma function}$$

$$L\{F(t)\}(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} F(t) dt, \text{ Laplace transform}$$


---

**The Fourier transform**

The Fourier transform of  $f(x)$  is:

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) e^{-i2\pi x s} dx$$

and

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^\infty F(s) e^{i2\pi x s} ds.$$

There are two other equivalent versions:

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) e^{-ix s} dx,$$

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^\infty F(s) e^{ix s} ds$$

and

$$F(s) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{1/2}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-ixs}dx,$$

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{1/2}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(s)e^{ixs}ds,$$

which are also used.

### **Useful definitions**

The *convolution* of two functions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  is:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(u)g(x-u)du = f * g = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(u)f(x-u)du = g * f.$$

The *autocovariance* function of  $f(x)$  is:

$$f(x) \otimes f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f^*(u)f(u+x)du$$

The *autocorrelation* function of  $f(x)$  is:

$$\gamma(x) = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f^*(u)f(u+x)du}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(u)f^*(u)du},$$

$$\gamma(0) = 1.$$

The *cross-correlation* of two functions  $g(x)$  and  $h(x)$  is:

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(u-x)h(u)du$$

The *power spectrum* of a function  $f(x)$  is:

$$\left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-i2\pi x s}dx \right|^2 = |F(s)|^2$$

The normalized *power spectrum* is the *power spectral density function*:

$$|\phi(s)|^2 = \frac{|F(s)|^2}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |F(s)|^2 ds}$$

The *equivalent width* of a function  $f(x)$  is:

$$W_f = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)dx}{f(0)}$$

The *filtering* or *interpolation* function,  $\text{sinc } x$ :

$$\text{sinc } x = \frac{\sin \pi x}{\pi x}$$

**Fourier transform theorems**

Theorem	$f(x)$	$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-i2\pi xs} dx$
Similarity	$f(ax)$	$\frac{1}{ a } F(s/a)$
Addition	$f(x) + g(x)$	$F(s) + G(s)$
Shift	$f(x - a)$	$e^{-i2\pi as} F(s)$
Convolution	$f(x) * g(x)$	$F(s)G(s)$
Autocovariance	$f(x) \otimes f(x)$	$ F(s) ^2$
Derivative	$f'(x)$	$i2\pi s F(s)$

Derivative of convolution:

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) * g(x)] = f'(x) * g(x) = f(x) * g'(x)$$

Parseval:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)|^2 dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |F(s)|^2 ds$$

Multiplication:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f^*(x)g(x)dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F^*(s)G(s)ds$$

*Sampling theorem:*

A function whose Fourier transform is zero for  $|s| > s_c$  is fully specified by values spaced at equal intervals not exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}s_c^{-1}$  save for any harmonic term with zeros at the sampling points.

---

(Adapted from Bracewell, R. N. *The Fourier Transform and its Applications*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1978.)

## Fourier transform pairs

	$f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F_F(i\omega) e^{-i\omega t} \frac{d\omega}{2\pi}$	$F_F(i\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) e^{-i\omega t} dt$	
	$\text{rect} \frac{t}{T} = \begin{cases} 1 & ( t  < T/2) \\ 0 & ( t  > T/2) \end{cases}$	$T \text{sinc} \frac{\omega T}{2\pi} = T \frac{\sin \frac{\omega T}{2}}{\frac{\omega T}{2}}$	
	$\text{sinc} \frac{t}{T} = \frac{\sin \frac{\pi t}{T}}{\frac{\pi t}{T}}$	$T \text{rect} \frac{\omega T}{2\pi} = \begin{cases} 0 & ( \omega  < \frac{\pi}{T}) \\ T & ( \omega  > \frac{\pi}{T}) \end{cases}$	
	$\begin{cases} 1 - \frac{ t }{T} & ( t  < T) \\ 0 & ( t  \geq T) \end{cases}$	$T \text{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega T}{2\pi} = T \left( \frac{\sin \frac{\omega T}{2}}{\frac{\omega T}{2}} \right)^2$	
	$e^{-\frac{ t }{T}}$	$\frac{2T}{(\omega T)^2 + 1}$	
	$e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\frac{t}{T})^2}$	$\sqrt{2\pi} T e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\omega T)^2}$	
	$\delta(t-T)$	$e^{-i\omega T}$	(Complex)
	$\cos \omega_0 t$	$\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$	
	$\sin \omega_0 t$	$\frac{\pi}{i} [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$	(Imaginary)
	$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - kT)$ $\equiv \frac{1}{T} \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{2\pi i j \frac{t}{T}}$	$\frac{2\pi}{T} \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - \frac{2\pi j}{T})$ $\equiv \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{ik\omega T} T$	

(From Korn, G. A., *Basic Tables in Electrical Engineering*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965, with permission.)

## Special functions

---

### Spherical harmonics, Legendre polynomials

$$Y_l^m(\theta, \phi) = \sqrt{\left[ \frac{(2l+1)(l-m)!}{4\pi(l+m)!} \right]} P_l^m(\cos \theta) e^{im\phi}$$

$$P_l^m(\cos \theta) = (-1)^m \sin^m \theta \left[ \left( \frac{d}{d(\cos \theta)} \right)^m P_l(\cos \theta) \right] \quad (m \leq l)$$

$$P_l(\cos \theta) = \frac{1}{2^l l!} \left[ \left( \frac{d}{d(\cos \theta)} \right)^l (-\sin^2 \theta)^l \right]$$

$$Y_l^{-m}(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^m [Y_l^m(\theta, \phi)]^*$$

$$P_l^{-m}(\cos \theta) = (-1)^m \frac{(l-m)!}{(l+m)!} P_l^m(\cos \theta)$$

$$l=0 \quad Y_0^0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}}$$

$$l=1 \quad Y_1^0 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{3}{4\pi} \right)} \cos \theta$$

$$Y_1^1 = -\sqrt{\left( \frac{3}{8\pi} \right)} \sin \theta e^{i\phi}$$

$$l=2 \quad Y_2^0 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{5}{16\pi} \right)} (3 \cos^2 \theta - 1)$$

$$Y_2^1 = -\sqrt{\left( \frac{15}{8\pi} \right)} \sin \theta \cos \theta e^{i\phi}$$

$$Y_2^2 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{15}{32\pi} \right)} \sin^2 \theta e^{2i\phi}$$

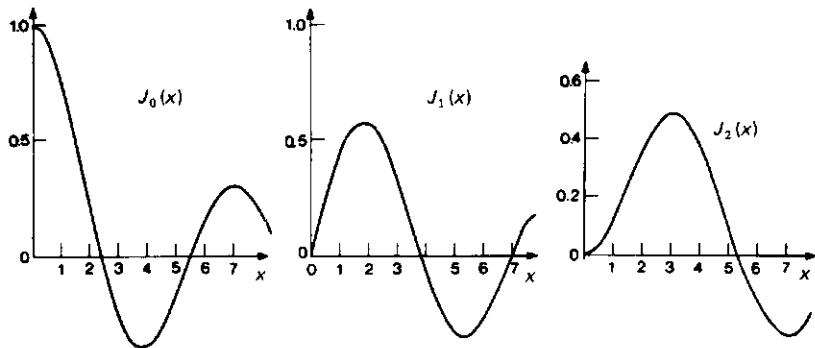
$$l=3 \quad Y_3^0 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{7}{16\pi} \right)} (5 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta)$$

$$Y_3^1 = -\sqrt{\left( \frac{21}{64\pi} \right)} \sin \theta (5 \cos^2 \theta - 1) e^{i\phi}$$

$$Y_3^2 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{105}{32\pi} \right)} \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta e^{2i\phi}$$

$$Y_3^3 = -\sqrt{\left( \frac{35}{64\pi} \right)} \sin^2 \theta e^{3i\phi}.$$

### Bessel functions



$$J_n(x) = \sum_{s=0}^{s=\infty} \frac{(-1)^s}{s!(n+s)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{n+2s} \quad J_{n-1}(x) + J_{n+1}(x) = (2n/x)J_n(x)$$

$$J_0(x) = (2/\pi x)^{\frac{1}{2}} \cos(x - \pi/4)$$

See Chapter 14 for an application of Bessel functions to astronomy.

(Adapted from Chantry, G.U.J., *Long-wave Optics*, Academic Press, New York, 1984.)

### Function definitions and approximations

Function	Definition	Approximation	Range	Error
Error function $\text{erf}(x)$ $(\text{erf}(-x) = -\text{erf}(x))$	$\text{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x \exp(-t^2) dt$ $p = .47047$ $a_1 = .3480242$ $a_2 = -.0958798$ $a_3 = .7478556$	$\text{erf}(x) \simeq 1 - (a_1 t + a_2 t^2 + a_3 t^3) e^{-x^2}$ $t = \frac{1}{1 + px}$	$0 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  \leq 2.5 \times 10^{-5}$
$\text{erfc}(x)$	$\text{erfc}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_x^\infty \exp(-t^2) dt$ $= 1 - \text{erf}(x)$	$\text{erfc}(x) \simeq \frac{1.132x \exp(-x^2)}{2x^2 + 1}$ <i>not approximated</i>	$x \geq 2.7$ $-\infty < x < \infty$	$ \epsilon_r  \leq 4 \times 10^{-3}$
( $\text{erfc}(-x) = 2 - \text{erfc}(x)$ )	$P = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2}$	<i>Stirling approximation:</i> $\Gamma(x) \simeq \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{x}} \exp(-x) x^x \left(1 + \frac{1}{12x}\right)$	$x \geq 0.4$	$ \epsilon_r  \leq 4 \times 10^{-3}$
Gaussian probability function		<i>Stirling approximation:</i> $n! = 1 \times 2 \times 3 \times \dots \times (n-1) \times n$ $n! \simeq \sqrt{2\pi n} \exp(-n) n^n \left(1 + \frac{1}{12n}\right)$	$n \geq 2$	$ \epsilon_r  \leq 4 \times 10^{-3}$
Gamma function $\Gamma(x)$	$\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty t^{x-1} \exp(-t) dt$	$\Gamma(x) \simeq \frac{x^x}{x^x + a_1 x + a_2}$		
Factorial function $n!$				
Exponential $\text{integral } E_1(x)$	$E_1(z) = \int_z^\infty \frac{e^{-t}}{t} dt$ $a_1 = 2.334733$ $a_2 = .250621$	$a_1 = 2.330657$ $b_1 = 1.681534$	$1 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon_r  \leq 5 \times 10^{-5}$

The accuracy is specified as either relative or absolute. A relative error of  $\epsilon_r$  implies  $\left| \frac{f(x) - \hat{f}(x)}{f(x)} \right| \leq \epsilon_r$  whereas an absolute error of  $\epsilon$  implies  $|f(x) - \hat{f}(x)| \leq \epsilon$ , where  $\hat{f}(x)$  is the approximate value of the function  $f(x)$ .

**Function definitions and approximations(cont.)**

Function	Definition	Approximation	Range	Error
Complete Elliptic integral of the 1st kind $K(k)$	$K(k) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{d\varphi}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \varphi}}$	$K(k) \simeq (a_0 + a_1 \eta + a_2 \eta^2) + (b_0 + b_1 \eta + b_2 \eta^2) \ln \frac{1}{\eta}$ $\begin{aligned} a_0 &= 1.3862944 & b_0 &= .5 \\ a_1 &= .1119723 & b_1 &= .1213478 \\ a_2 &= .0725296 & b_2 &= .0288729 \end{aligned}$	$0 \leq k < 1$	$ \epsilon  \leq 3 \times 10^{-5}$
Complete Elliptic integral of the 2nd kind $E(k)$	$E(k) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \varphi} d\varphi$	$E(k) \simeq (1 + a_1 \eta + a_2 \eta^2) + (b_1 \eta + b_2 \eta^2) \ln \frac{1}{\eta}$ $\begin{aligned} a_1 &= .4630151 & b_1 &= .2452727 \\ a_2 &= .1077812 & b_2 &= .0412496 \end{aligned}$	$0 \leq k < 1$	$ \epsilon  < 4 \times 10^{-5}$
0 order Bessel function of the first kind $J_0(x)$	$J_0(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \cos(x \sin t) dt$	$J_0(x) = x^{-1/2} f_0 \cos \theta_0$		See aux. table
( $J_0(-x) = J_0(x)$ )				
1st order Bessel function of the second kind $J_1(x)$	$J_1(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \cos(x \sin -t) dt$	$J_1(x) = x^{-1/2} f_1 \cos \theta_1$		See aux. table
( $J_1(-x) = -J_1(x)$ )				

## Function definitions and approximations (cont.)

Function	Definition	Approximation	Range	Error
Fresnel sine integral $S(x)$	$S(x) = \int_0^x \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}t^2\right) dt$	$S(x) = \frac{1}{2} - f_2(x) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x^2\right) - g_2(x) \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x^2\right)$	See aux. table	
Fresnel cosine integral $C(x)$	$C(x) = \int_0^x \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}t^2\right) dt$	$C(x) = \frac{1}{2} + f_2(x) \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x^2\right) - g_2(x) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x^2\right)$	See aux. table	
$(C(-x) = -C(x))$				
Sine integral $Si(x)$	$Si(x) = \int_0^x \frac{\sin(t)}{t} dt$	$Si(z) = \frac{\pi}{2} - f_3(x) \cos x - g_3(x) \sin x$	See aux. table	
Cosine integral $Ci(x)$	$Ci(x) = - \int_x^\infty \frac{\cos(t)}{t} dt$	$Ci(x) = f(x) \sin x - g_3(x) \cos x$	See aux. table	
Hyperbolic tangent $\tanh(x)$	$\tanh(x) = \frac{\exp(x) - \exp(-x)}{\exp(x) + \exp(-x)}$	<i>not approximated</i>	$-\infty < x < \infty$	
Hyperbolic sine $\sinh(x)$	$\sinh(x) = \frac{\exp(x) - \exp(-x)}{2}$	<i>not approximated</i>	$-\infty < x < \infty$	
Hyperbolic cosine $\cosh(x)$	$\cosh(x) = \frac{\exp(x) + \exp(-x)}{2}$	<i>not approximated</i>	$-\infty < x < \infty$	
Legendre polynomial $P_n(x)$	$P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n n!} \frac{d^n (x^2 - 1)^n}{dx^n}$	<i>not approximated</i>	$0 \leq n \leq 9$ $-1 \leq x \leq \pm 1$	

**Auxiliary table for function definitions and approximations**

Function	Approximation	Range	Error
$f_0(x)$	$f_0 \simeq .79788\ 456 - .00000\ 077(3/x)$ $\quad -.00552\ 740(3/x)^2 - .00009\ 512(3/x)^3$ $\quad +.00137\ 237(3/x)^4 - .00072\ 805(3/x)^5$ $\quad +.00014\ 476(3/x)^6$	$3 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  < 1.6 \times 10^{-8}$
$\theta_0(x)$	$\theta_0 \simeq x - .78539\ 816 - .04166\ 397(3/x)$ $\quad -.00003\ 954(3/x)^2 + .00262\ 573(3/x)^3$ $\quad -.00054\ 125(3/x)^4 - .00029\ 333(3/x)^5$ $\quad +.00013\ 558(3/x)^6$	$3 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  < 7 \times 10^{-8}$
$f_1(x)$	$f_1 \simeq .79788\ 456 + .00000\ 156(3/x)$ $\quad +.01659\ 667(3/x)^2 + .00017\ 105(3/x)^3$ $\quad -.00249\ 511(3/x)^4 + .00113\ 653(3/x)^5$ $\quad -.00020\ 033(3/x)^6$	$3 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  < 4 \times 10^{-8}$
$\theta_1(x)$	$\theta_1 \simeq 2.35619\ 449 + .12499\ 612(3/x)$ $\quad +.00005\ 560(3/x)^2 - .00637\ 879(3/x)^3$ $\quad +.00074\ 348(3/x)^4 + .00079\ 824(3/x)^5$ $\quad -.00029\ 166(3/x)^6$	$3 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  < 9 \times 10^{-8}$
$f_2(x)$	$f_2(x) \simeq \frac{1 + .926x}{2 + 1.792x + 3.104x^2}$	$0 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  \leq 2 \times 10^{-3}$
$g_2(x)$	$g_2(x) \simeq \frac{1}{2 + 4.142x + 3.492x^2 + 6.670x^3}$	$0 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon  \leq 2 \times 10^{-3}$
$f_3(x)$	$f_3(x) = \frac{1}{x} \left( \frac{x^4 + a_1 x^2 + a_2}{x^4 + b_1 x^2 + b_2} \right)$ $a_1 = 7.241163 \quad b_1 = 9.068580$ $a_2 = 2.463936 \quad b_2 = 7.157433$	$1 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon(x)  < 2 \times 10^{-4}$
$g_3(x)$	$g_3(x) = \frac{1}{x^2} \left( \frac{x^4 + a_1 x^2 + a_2}{x^4 + b_1 x^2 + b_2} \right)$ $a_1 = 7.547478 \quad b_1 = 12.723684$ $a_2 = 1.564072 \quad b_2 = 15.723606$	$1 \leq x < \infty$	$ \epsilon(x)  < 10^{-4}$

(Adapted from Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I.A., "Handbook of Mathematical Functions", Dover Publications, 1972, Hastings, C., "Approximations for Digital Computers", Princeton University Press, 1955, and Spanier J. and Oldham, K.B., "An Atlas of Functions", Hemisphere Publishing Co., 1987.)

## Named differential equations

Ordinary differential equations	Partial differential equations
Airy equation: $y'' = xy$	Biharmonic equation: $\nabla^4 u = 0$
Solution: $y = c_1 Ai(x) + c_2 Bi(x)$	Burgers' equation: $u_t + uu_x = vu_{xx}$
Bernoulli equation: $y' = a(x)y^n + b(x)y$	Diffusion (or heat) equation: $\nabla(c(x,t)\nabla u) = u_t$
Bessel equation: $x^2y'' + xy' + (\lambda^2x^2 - n^2)y = 0$	Hamilton-Jacobi equation: $V_t + H(t,x,Vx_1, \dots, Vx_n) = 0$
Solution: $y = c_1 J_n(\lambda x) + c_2 Y_n(\lambda x)$	
Bessel equation (transformed): $x^2y'' + (2p+1)xy' + (\lambda^2x^{2r} + \beta^2)y = 0$	Helmholtz equation: $\nabla^2 u + k^2 u = 0$
Solution: $y = x^{-p} \left[ c_1 J_{q/r} \left( \frac{\lambda}{r}x^r \right) + c_2 Y_{q/r} \left( \frac{\lambda}{r}x^r \right) \right]$	$q \equiv \sqrt{p^2 - \beta^2}$
Duffing's equation: $y'' + y + ey^3 = 0$	Korteweg de Vries equation: $u_t + u_{xxx} - 6uu_x = 0$
Emden-Fowler equation: $(x^p y')' \pm x^\sigma y^n = 0$	Laplace's equation: $\nabla^2 u = 0$
Legendre equation: $(1-x^2)y'' - 2xy' + n(n+1)y = 0$	Navier-Stokes equations: $u_t + (u \cdot \nabla)u = -\frac{\nabla P}{\rho} + \nu \nabla^2 u$
Solution: $y = c_1 P_n(x) + c_2 Q_n(x)$	Poisson equation: $\nabla^2 u = -4\pi\rho(x)$
Mathieu equation: $y'' + (a - 2q \cos 2x)y = 0$	Schrödinger equation: $-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 u + V(x)u = i\hbar u_t$
Painlevé transcedent (first equation): $y'' = 6y^2 + x$	Sine-Gordon equation: $u_{xx} - u_{yy} \pm \sin u = 0$
Parabolic cylinder equation: $y'' + (ax^2 + bx + c)y = 0$	Tricomi equation: $uy_y = yu_{xx}$
Riccati equation: $y' = a(x)y^2 + b(x)y + c(x)$	Wave equation: $c^2 \nabla^2 u = u_{tt}$
	Telegraph equation: $u_{xx} = a u_{tt} + bu_t + cu$

(Adapted from *Standard Mathematical Tables and Formulae*, D. Zwillinger, ed. ch., CRC Press, 1996)

## Complex analysis

---

### Definitions

A complex number  $z$  has the form  $z = x + iy$  where  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers, and  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ .

Complex numbers can also be written in *polar form*,  $z = re^{i\theta}$ , where  $r$ , called the *modulus*, is given by  $r = |z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ , and  $\theta$  is called the *argument*:  $\theta = \arg z = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y}{x})$ .

The *complex conjugate* of  $z$ , denoted  $\bar{z}$ , is defined as  $\bar{z} = x - iy = re^{-i\theta}$ . Note that  $|z| = |\bar{z}|$ ,  $\arg \bar{z} = -\arg z$ , and  $|z| = \sqrt{z\bar{z}}$ . In addition,  $\bar{\bar{z}} = z$ ,  $\overline{z_1 + z_2} = \bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2$ , and  $\overline{z_1 z_2} = \bar{z}_1 \bar{z}_2$ .

### Operations

$$z_1 \pm z_2 = (x_1 + iy_1) \pm (x_2 + iy_2) = (x_1 \pm x_2) + i(y_1 \pm y_2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} z_1 z_2 &= (x_1 + iy_1)(x_2 + iy_2) = (x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2) + i(x_1 y_2 + x_2 y_1) \\ &= r_1 r_2 e^{i(\theta_1 + \theta_2)} \end{aligned}$$

$$|z_1 z_2| = |z_1| |z_2|$$

$$\arg(z_1 z_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 = \theta_1 + \theta_2$$

$$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{z_1 \bar{z}_2}{z_2 \bar{z}_2} = \frac{(x_1 x_2 + y_1 y_2) + i(x_2 y_1 - x_1 y_2)}{x_2^2 + y_2^2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} e^{i(\theta_1 - \theta_2)}$$

$$\left| \frac{z_1}{z_2} \right| = \frac{|z_1|}{|z_2|}$$

$$\arg\left(\frac{z_1}{z_2}\right) = \arg z_1 - \arg z_2 = \theta_1 - \theta_2$$

### Powers and roots

$$z^n = r^n e^{in\theta} = r^n (\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta) \quad (\text{DeMoivre's Theorem}).$$

$$\begin{aligned} z^{1/n} &= r^{1/n} e^{i\theta/n} = r^{1/n} \left( \cos \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right), \\ &\qquad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1. \end{aligned}$$

The *principal root*:  $-\pi < \theta \leq \pi$  and  $k = 0$ .

---

**Complex analysis (cont.)**


---

***Functions of a complex variable***

A complex function

$$w = f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y) = |w|e^{i\phi},$$

where  $z = x+iy$ , associates one or more values of the complex dependent variable  $w$  with each value of the complex independent variable  $z$  for those values of  $z$  in a given domain.

***Cauchy-Riemann equations***

A function  $w = f(z)$  is said to be *analytic* at a point  $z_0$  if it is differentiable in a neighborhood (i.e., at each point of a circle centered on  $z_0$  with an arbitrarily small radius) of  $z_0$ . A function is called *analytic* in a connected domain if it is analytic at every point in that domain.

A necessary and sufficient condition for  $f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y)$  to be analytic is that  $f(z)$  satisfy the Cauchy-Riemann equations,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}.$$

***Cauchy integral theorem***

If  $f(z)$  is analytic at all points within and on a simple closed curve  $C$ , then

$$\int_C f(z) dz = 0.$$

***Cauchy integral formula***

If  $f(z)$  is analytic inside and on a simple closed contour  $C$  and if  $z_0$  is interior to  $C$ , then

$$f(z_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{z - z_0} dz.$$

If the derivatives  $f'(z), f''(z), \dots$  of all orders exist, then

$$f^{(n)}(z_0) = \frac{n!}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{(z - z_0)^{n+1}} dz.$$

---

(Adapted from *Standard Mathematical Tables and Formulae*, D. Zwillinger, ed. ch., CRC Press, 1996)

## Algebra

---

### Quadratic equations

If  $a \neq 0$ , the roots of

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \text{ are}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{-b + (b^2 - 4ac)^{1/2}}{2a} = \frac{-2c}{b - (b^2 - 4ac)^{1/2}}$$

$$x_2 = \frac{-b - (b^2 - 4ac)^{1/2}}{2a} = \frac{2c}{-b + (b^2 - 4ac)^{1/2}}$$

### Binomial theorem

For  $n$  any positive integer,

$$\begin{aligned} (a+b)^n &= a^n + na^{n-1}b + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^{n-2}b^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}a^{n-3}b^3 + \dots + nab^{n-1} + b^n \end{aligned}$$

or

$$(a+b)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n {}^n C_r a^{n-r} b^r = \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!} a^{n-r} b^r$$

### Multinomial theorem

For  $n$  any positive integer, the general term in the expansion of  $(a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_k)^n$  is

$$\frac{n!}{r_1!r_2!r_3!\dots r_k!} a_1^{r_1} a_2^{r_2} a_3^{r_3} \dots a_k^{r_k}$$

where  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_k$  are positive integers such that  $r_1 + r_2 + \dots + r_k = n$ .

### Algebraic equations

The general equation of the  $n$ th degree

$$P(x) = a_0 x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + a_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + a_{n-1} x + a_n = 0$$

has  $n$  roots. If the roots of  $P(x) = 0$ , or zeros of  $P(x)$ , are  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_n$ , then

$$P(x) = a_0(x - r_1)(x - r_2) \dots (x - r_n)$$

and the symmetric functions of the roots

$$\sum r_i = -\frac{a_1}{a_0}, \quad \sum r_i r_j = \frac{a_2}{a_0}, \quad \sum r_i r_j r_k = -\frac{a_3}{a_0}, \quad \dots,$$

$$r_1 r_2 \dots r_n = (-1)^n \frac{a_n}{a_0}$$

---

(Adapted from *Fundamental Formulas of Physics* D.H. Menzel, ed., Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1955)

## Conics

---

Definition: the locus of a point which moves so that its distance from a fixed point (focus) bears a constant ratio  $e$  (eccentricity) to its distance from a fixed straight line (directrix). If  $e = 1$ , the conic is a parabola,  $e > 1$ , a hyperbola, and  $e < 1$ , an ellipse.

### **Parabola ( $e = 1$ )**

$(y - k)^2 = 4a(x - h)$ . Vertex at  $(h, k)$ , axis parallel to  $x$ -axis.

$(x - h)^2 = 4a(y - k)$ . Vertex at  $(h, k)$ , axis parallel to  $y$ -axis.

Distance of vertex to focus =  $a$ . Distance of vertex to directrix =  $a$ .

### **Ellipse ( $e < 1$ )**

$$\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Center at  $(h, k)$ , major axis parallel to  $x$ -axis.

$$\frac{(y - k)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(x - h)^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Center at  $(h, k)$ , major axis parallel to  $y$ -axis.

Major axis =  $2a$ . Minor axis =  $2b$ .

Distance from center to either focus =  $(a^2 - b^2)^{1/2}$ .

Distance from center to either directrix =  $a/e$

Eccentricity,  $e = (a^2 - b^2)^{1/2}/a$

### **Hyperbola ( $e > 1$ )**

$$\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Center at  $(h, k)$ , transverse axis parallel to  $x$ -axis.

Slopes of asymptotes =  $\pm b/a$

$$\frac{(y - k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x - h)^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Center at  $(h, k)$ , transverse axis parallel to  $y$ -axis.

Slopes of asymptotes =  $\pm a/b$

Transverse axis =  $2a$ . Conjugate axis =  $2b$ .

Distance from center to either focus =  $(a^2 - b^2)^{1/2}$ .

Distance from center to either directrix =  $a/e$

Eccentricity,  $e = (a^2 + b^2)^{1/2}/a$

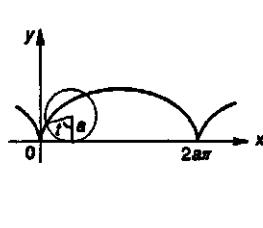
---



---

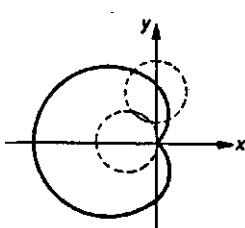
### Examples of plane curves

---



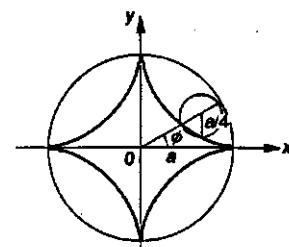
Cycloid

$$\begin{cases} x=a(t-\sin t) \\ y=a(1-\cos t) \end{cases}$$



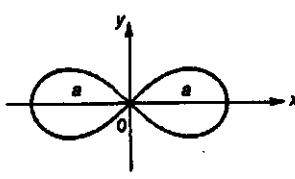
Cardioid

$$r=2a(1-\cos t)$$



Astroid

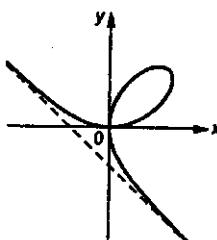
$$\begin{aligned} x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} &= a^{2/3} \\ x &= a \cos^3 \phi \\ y &= a \sin^3 \phi \end{aligned}$$



Lemniscate

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$$

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$$



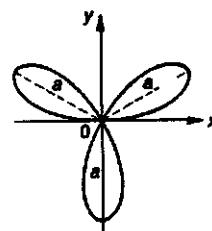
Folium of Descartes

$$x^3 + y^3 - 3axy = 0$$

$$\begin{cases} x = 3a\phi/(1+\phi^3) \\ y = 3a\phi^2/(1+\phi^3) \end{cases}$$

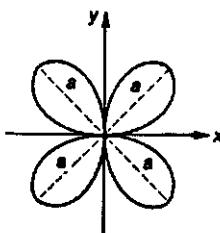
$$r = \frac{3a \sin \theta \cos \theta}{\sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta}$$

[asymptote:  $x + y + a = 0$ ]



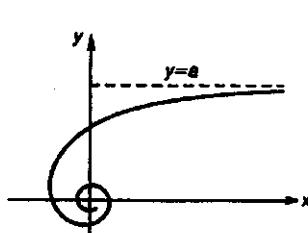
Three-leaved rose

$$r = a \sin 3\phi$$



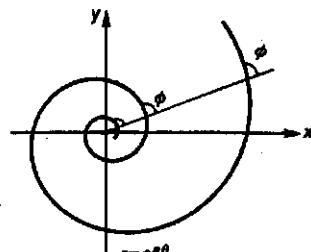
Four-leaved rose

$$r = a |\sin 2\phi|$$



Hyperbolic spiral

$$r = \frac{a}{\theta}$$



Logarithmic spiral

$$\phi = \arctan \frac{1}{a}$$

## Numerical analysis

---

### *Taylor series*

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + f'(x_0)(x - x_0) + f''(x_0) \frac{(x - x_0)^2}{2!} + \dots + f^{(n)}(x_0) \frac{(x - x_0)^n}{n!} + R_n$$

$$R_n = f^{(n+1)}(\zeta) \frac{(x - x_0)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \quad (x_0 < \zeta < x)$$

### *Quadrature*

#### *Trapezoidal rule*

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = h \left( \frac{y_0}{2} + y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_{n-1} + \frac{y_n}{2} \right) - R_n$$

$$R_n = \frac{1}{12}(b-a)h^2 f''(x_1) \quad (a < x_1 < b)$$

$$h = (b-a)/n, \quad y_k = f(a + kh), \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

#### *Simpson's rule (n even)*

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{3} [y_0 + 4(y_1 + y_3 + \dots + y_{n-1}) + 2(y_2 + y_4 + \dots + y_{n-2}) + y_n] - R_n$$

$$R_n = \frac{1}{90}(b-a)h^4 f^{(4)}(x_1) \quad (a < x_1 < b), \quad h = (b-a)/n.$$

#### *Six-point Gauss-Legendre*

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \simeq \frac{b-a}{2} \sum_{i=1}^6 w_i f\left(\frac{z_i(b-a) + b+a}{2}\right)$$

$$\int_a^\infty f(x) dx \simeq 2 \sum_{i=1}^6 \frac{w_i}{(1+z_i)^2} f\left(\frac{2}{1+z_i} + a - 1\right)$$

where

$$z_1 = -z_2 = 0.238\,619\,186\,1$$

$$z_3 = -z_4 = 0.661\,209\,386\,5$$

$$z_5 = -z_6 = 0.932\,469\,514\,2$$

$$w_1 = w_2 = 0.467\,913\,934\,6$$

$$w_3 = w_4 = 0.360\,761\,573$$

$$w_5 = w_6 = 0.171\,324\,492\,4.$$

**Linear interpolation**

$$y = \frac{(x_{k+1} - x)y_k + (x - x_k)y_{k+1}}{x_{k+1} - x_k} \text{ for } x_k < x < x_{k+1}.$$

**Approximations**

$f(x)$	Approximation	Parameters	Maximum absolute error
$\log_{10} x$ $(1/\sqrt{10}) \leq x \leq \sqrt{10})$	$a_1 t + a_3 t^3$ $t = (x - 1)/(x + 1)$	$a_1 = 0.863\ 04$ $a_3 = 0.364\ 15$	$6 \times 10^{-4}$
$\arctan x$ $(-1 \leq x \leq 1)$	$\frac{x}{1 + 0.28x^2}$		$5 \times 10^{-3}$
$\operatorname{erfx}$ $(0 \leq x < \infty)$	$1 - (a_1 t + a_2 t^2 + a_3 t^3)e^{-x^2}$ $t = 1/(1 + px)$	$p = 0.470\ 47$ $a_1 = 0.348\ 024\ 2$ $a_2 = -0.095\ 879\ 8$ $a_3 = 0.747\ 855\ 6$	$2.5 \times 10^{-5}$

(Adapted from Hastings, C., *Approximations for Digital Computers*, Princeton, New Jersey, 1955.)

**Curve fitting (linear least-squares)**

$$y(x) = \sum_{j=0}^n a_j \phi_j(x), \text{ approximating function}$$

$$\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} [y_i - y(x_i)]^2,$$

where

$$\sigma_i = \text{standard deviation of the } i\text{th observation } y_i,$$

$$N = \text{number of observations.}$$

Minimizing  $\chi^2$ ,  $\frac{\partial}{\partial a_k} \chi^2 = 0$ , yields the following set of normal equations:

$$\sum_{i=1}^N \left[ \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} y_i \phi_k(x_i) \right] = \sum_{j=0}^n \left( a_j \sum_{i=1}^N \left[ \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} \phi_j(x_i) \phi_k(x_i) \right] \right), \text{ for } k = 0 \text{ to } n.$$

(For the case of a least-squares fit to a straight line, see Chapter 17.)

## Bibliography

*A Table of Series and Products*, Hansen, E. R., Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1975.

*An Atlas of Functions*, Spanie, J. & Oldham, K.B., Hemisphere Publishing Co., 1987.

*Approximations for Digital Computers*, Hastings, C., Princeton University Press, 1955.

*Handbook of Mathematical Functions*, Abramowitz, M. & Stegun, I. A., Dover Publications, Inc., New York, 1972.

*Mathematical Handbook for Scientists and Engineers*, Korn, G.A. & Korn, T.M., Mc-Graw Hill Book Company, 1968.

*Mathematical Methods for Digital Computers*, A. Ralston & H. S. Wilf, eds., John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1960.

*Numerical Recipes: The Art of Scientific Computing*, Press, W.H., Flannery, B., Teukolsky, S. & Vetterling, W., Cambridge University Press, 1985.

*Tables of Higher Functions*, Jahnke-Emde-Loesch, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1960.

*Table of Integrals, Series, and Products*, Gradshteyn, I. S. & Ryzhik, I. M., Academic Press, New York, 1980.

*The Fast Fourier Transform*, Brigham, E.O., Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1974.

*The Fourier Transform and Its Applications*, Bracewell, R. N., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1978.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

## Chapter 17

---

# Probability and statistics

*There are three kinds of lies: lies, damned lies, and statistics.* - Benjamin Disraeli

Fundamental of probability theory	580
<i>Relative frequency definition of probability</i>	580
<i>Axioms of probability</i>	580
<i>Probability theorems</i>	580
<i>Conditional probability</i>	580
<i>Bayes theorem</i>	581
<i>Random variable</i>	581
<i>Set theory</i>	581
<i>Probability density function</i>	582
<i>Cumulative distribution function</i>	582
<i>Expectation value and moments</i>	583
<i>Characteristic function</i>	583
Probability distributions	584
<i>Gaussian distribution</i>	584
<i>Binomial distribution</i>	586
<i>Poisson distribution</i>	586
<i>Chi-square distribution, confidence levels</i>	589
Table of common probability distributions	590
Pearson's $\chi^2$ test of distributions	592
Propagation of errors	593
Least-squares fit to a straight line	594
Bibliography	595

## Fundamentals of probability theory

---

Probability theory is used to model experiments for which the outcomes occur randomly. The set of all possible outcomes is the sample space  $S$ . An event  $E$  is a subset of  $S$ .

### ***Relative frequency definition of probability***

If an experiment can occur in  $n$  mutually exclusive and equally likely ways, and if exactly  $m$  of these ways correspond to an event  $E$ , then the probability of  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = m/n$$

### ***Axioms of probability***

Once a collection of events has been designated, each event  $E$  can be assigned a probability  $P(E)$ .  $P$  must satisfy the following properties:

1. If  $E$  is an event, then  $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$ .
2.  $P(S) = 1$ .
3. If  $\{E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots\}$  is a countable collection of pairwise disjoint events, then

$$P\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} E_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} P(E_i).$$

### ***Probability theorems***

If  $E$  is an event, then

$$P(E^c) = 1 - P(E). E^c$$
 is the complement of  $E$ .

If  $A$  and  $B$  are events and  $A \subset B$ , then

$$P(A) \leq P(B).$$

If  $A$  and  $B$  are events, then

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B).$$

If  $A$  and  $B$  are mutually exclusive events (disjoint subsets of  $S$ ), then

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B), \quad P(A \cap B) = 0$$

If  $\phi$  is the null set, then

$$P(\phi) = 0.$$

### ***Conditional probability (definition)***

If  $A$  and  $B$  are events, and  $P(B) > 0$ , then

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)}.$$

### Fundamentals of probability theory (cont.)

#### *Bayes theorem*

If  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n$  are  $n$  mutually exclusive events whose union is the sample space  $S$  and  $E$  is any arbitrary event of  $S$  such that  $P(E) \neq 0$ , then

$$P(E_k|E) = \frac{P(E_k) \cdot P(E|E_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^n [P(E_j) \cdot P(E|E_j)]}$$

#### *Random variable*

A function whose domain is a sample space  $S$  and whose range is some set of real numbers is a random variable, denoted by  $\mathbf{X}$ . The function  $\mathbf{X}$  transforms sample points of  $S$  into points on the  $x$ -axis.  $\mathbf{X}$  is a discrete random variable if it is a random variable that assumes only a finite or denumerable number of values on the  $x$ -axis.  $\mathbf{X}$  is a continuous random variable if it assumes a continuum of values on the  $x$ -axis.

#### *Set theory*

Notation:  $x \in A$ , the element  $x$  belongs to the set  $A$

$x \notin A$ , the element  $x$  does not belong to the set  $A$

The *union* of  $A$  and  $B$  is the set

$$A \cup B = \{x \in S : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$$

and the *intersection* of  $A$  and  $B$  is the set

$$A \cap B = \{x \in S : x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}.$$

The difference of  $A$  and  $B$  is the set

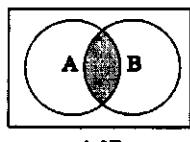
$$A - B = \{x \in S : x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B\}.$$

The set  $A$  is a subset of  $B$ , written  $A \subset B$ , if every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ .

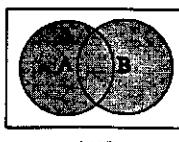
The complement of  $A$  is the set

$$A^c = \{x \in S : x \notin A\}$$

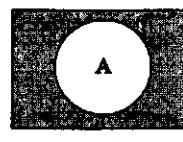
Venn diagrams



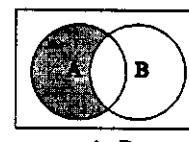
$A \cap B$



$A \cup B$



$A^c$



$A - B$

## Fundamentals of probability theory (cont.)

Commutative laws

$$A \cup B = B \cup A \quad A \cap B = B \cap A$$

Associative laws

$$(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C) \quad (A \cap B) \cap C = A \cap (B \cap C)$$

Distributive laws

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C) \quad A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$$

Complementation

$$\phi^c = S \quad S^c = \phi \quad (A^c)^c = A$$

$$A \cup A^c = S \quad A \cap A^c = \phi$$

De Morgan laws

$$(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c \quad (A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$$

### **Probability density function (p.d.f.)**

If  $X$  is a continuous real-valued random variable, a probability density function (p.d.f.) for  $X$  is a real-valued function  $f$  which satisfies

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

for all  $a, b \in R$ .

### **Cumulative distribution function (c.d.f.)**

The cumulative distribution function (c.d.f.) of the random variable  $X$  is defined by

$$F_X(x) = P(X \leq x)$$

$$F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$$

with  $f$  the p.d.f. for  $X$ .

## Fundamentals of probability theory (cont.)

### *Expectation value and moments*

The *expectation value* of any function  $u(x)$  is

$$E[u(x)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u(x)f(x)dx.$$

The  $n$ th moment of a distribution is

$$\alpha_n \equiv E(x^n) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^n f(x)dx,$$

and the  $n$ th moment about the mean of  $x$ ,  $\alpha_1$ , is

$$m_n \equiv E[(x - \alpha_1)^n] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \alpha_1)^n f(x)dx.$$

The most commonly used moments are the mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$ :

$$\mu \equiv \alpha_1$$

$$\sigma^2 \equiv \text{Var}(x) \equiv m_2 = \alpha_2 - \mu^2.$$

### *Characteristic function*

The characteristic function  $\phi(u)$  associated with the p.d.f.  $f(x)$  is essentially its (inverse) Fourier transform, or the expectation value of  $\exp(iux)$ :

$$\phi(u) = E(e^{iux}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{iux} f(x)dx.$$

The  $n$ th moment of the distribution  $f(x)$  is given by

$$i^{-n} \frac{d^n \phi}{du^n} \Big|_{u=0} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^n f(x)dx = \alpha_n.$$

(This section was based upon material from *Introduction to Probability*, Grinstead, C.M. and Snell, J.L., [http://www.dartmouth.edu/~chance/teaching\\_aids/books\\_articles/probability\\_book/book.html](http://www.dartmouth.edu/~chance/teaching_aids/books_articles/probability_book/book.html) and *An Introduction to Statistical Inference and Data Analysis*, Michael W. Trosset, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 2001.)

## Probability distributions

---

### Gaussian distribution

$$P_G(x, \mu, \sigma) = (\sigma\sqrt{2\pi})^{-1} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2\right],$$

where

$x$  = value of random observation,

$\mu$  = mean value of parent distribution,

$\sigma$  = standard deviation of parent distribution,

$\sigma^2$  = variance.

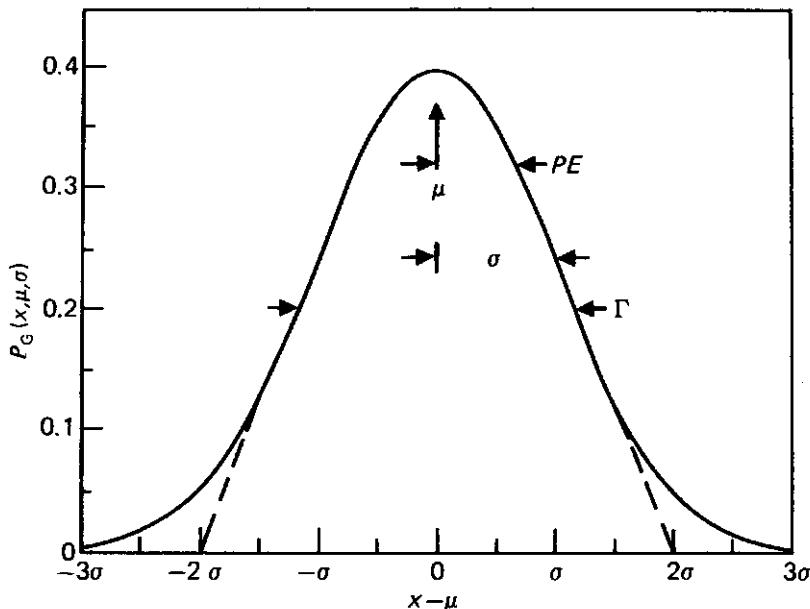
FWHM:

$$\Gamma = 2.354\sigma.$$

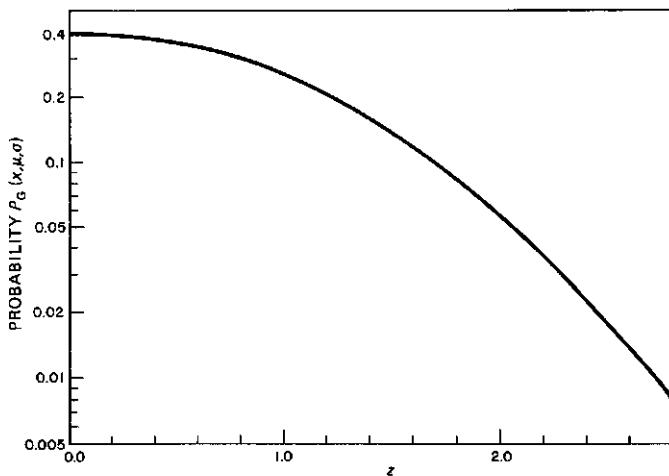
Probable error:

$$PE = 0.6745\sigma.$$

Gaussian probability distribution  $P_G(x, \mu, \sigma)$  vs.  $x - \mu$ ;  $\Gamma = 2.354\sigma$  probable error (PE) =  $0.6745\sigma$ . (Adapted from Bevington, P. R.,; *Data Reduction and Error Analysis for the Physical Sciences*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1969.)



The Gaussian probability distribution  $P_G(x, \mu, \sigma)$  vs.  $z = |x - \mu|/\sigma$ .

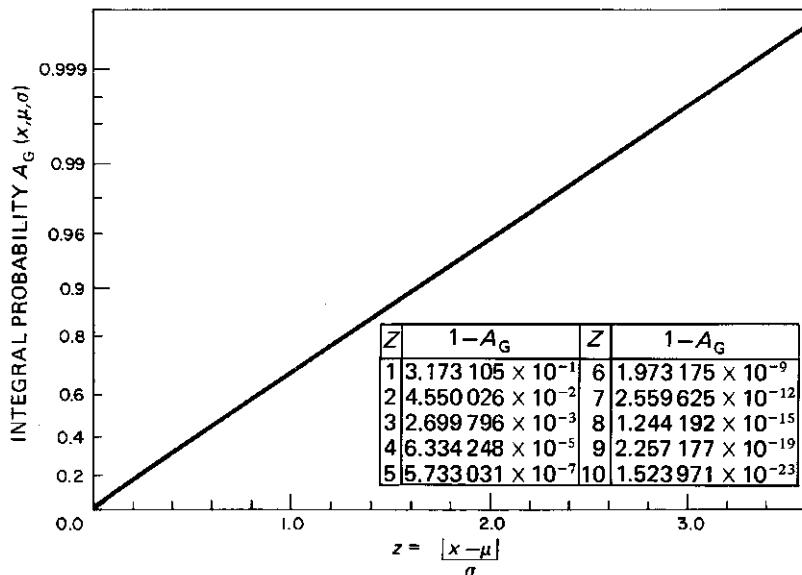


The integral of the Gaussian probability distribution

$A_G(x, \mu, \sigma)$  vs.  $z = |x - \mu|/\sigma$ , where

$$A_G(x, \mu, \sigma) = \int_{\mu-z\sigma}^{\mu+z\sigma} P_G(x, \mu, \sigma) dx$$

(Adapted from Bevington, P. R., *Data Reduction and Error Analysis for the Physical Sciences*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1969.)



### **Binomial distribution**

$$P_B(x, n, p) = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

If  $p$  is the probability that an event will occur, then in a random group of  $n$  independent trials,  $P_B$  is the probability that the event will occur  $x$  times.

$$\mu = \text{mean} = np$$

$$\sigma^2 = \text{variance} = np(1-p)$$

### **Poisson distribution**

$$P_p(x, \mu) = \frac{\mu^x}{x!} e^{-\mu}$$

$P_p$  is the probability of observing  $x$  events when the average for a large number of trials is  $\mu$  events.

$$\sigma^2 = \text{variance} = \mu = \text{mean}$$

The probability of observing at least  $s$  events is:

$$P_p(x \geq s, \mu) = \sum_{x=s}^{\infty} \frac{\mu^x}{x!} e^{-\mu}$$

*Confidence limits for Poisson statistics when the number of events is small*

The customary estimate for the standard deviation of a Poisson distribution,  $\sigma = \sqrt{n}$ , where  $n$  is the number of events, is inadequate when  $n$  is small.

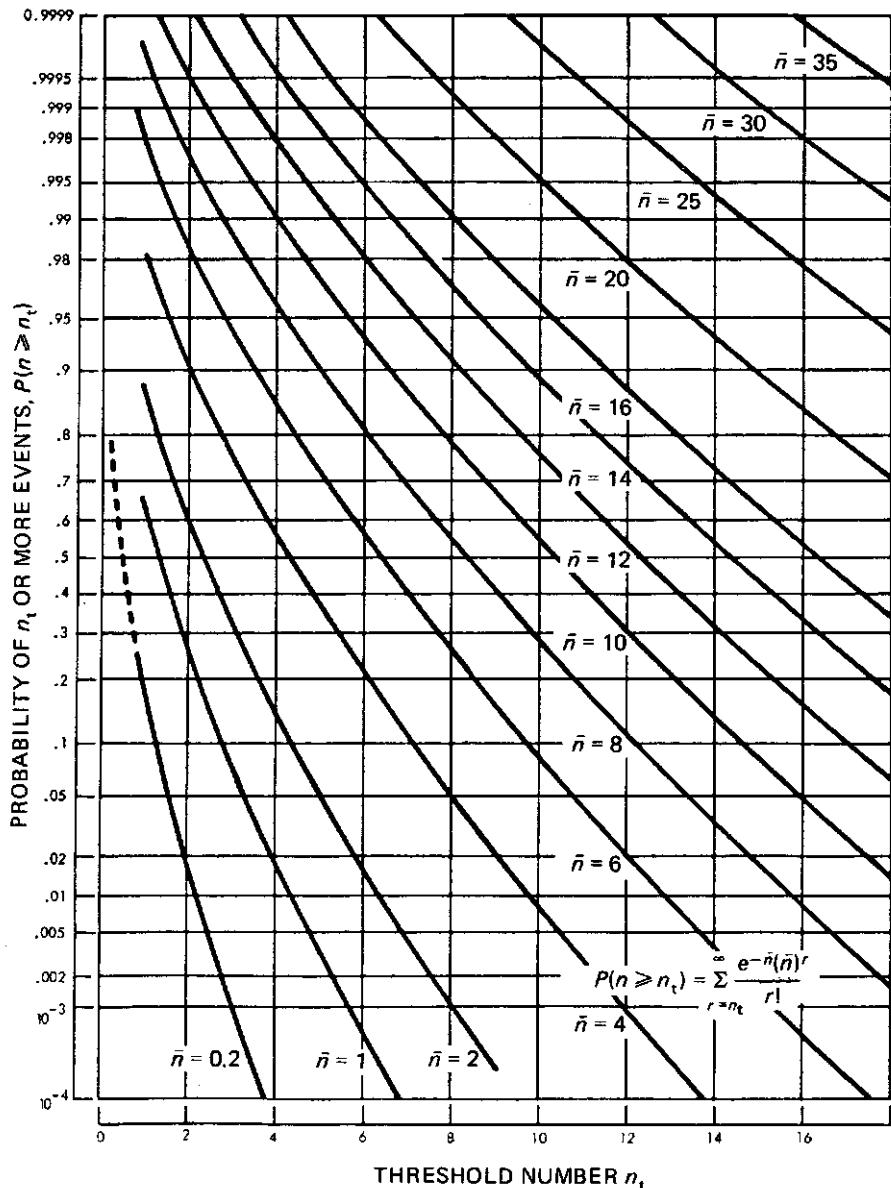
If  $n$  events are observed, the single-sided upper limit,  $\lambda_u$ , and lower limit,  $\lambda_l$ , for a confidence level CL are given by

$$\sum_{x=0}^n \lambda_u^x e^{-\lambda_u} / x! = 1 - \text{CL}, \quad \sum_{x=0}^{n-1} \lambda_l^x e^{-\lambda_l} / x! = \text{CL} \quad (n \neq 0)$$

Gehrels (Gehrels, N., ApJ, **303**, 336, 1986) has provided tables and approximations for upper and lower limits for  $n = 0$  to 100 for various confidence levels. For a confidence level of 0.8413 the upper limit is given by the following simple expression

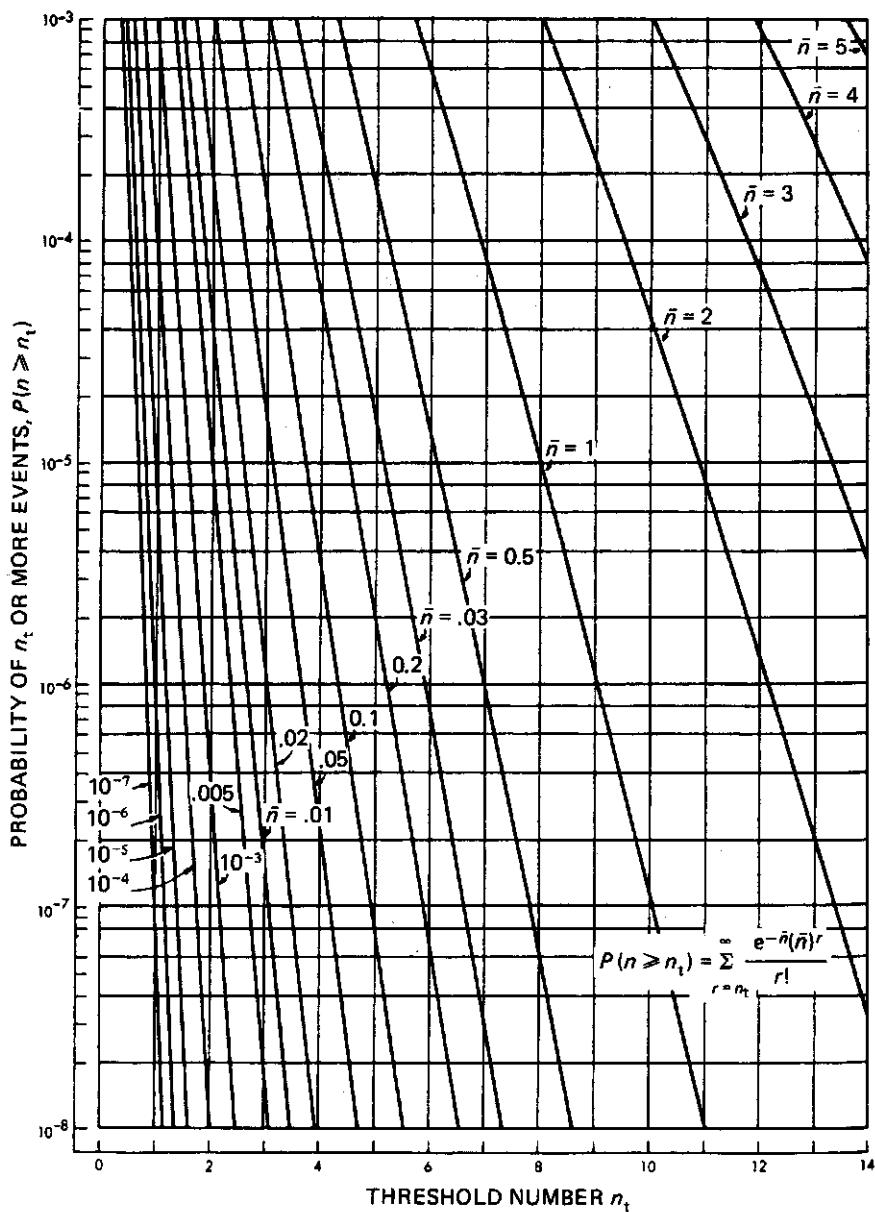
$$\lambda_u \approx n + (n + 3/4)^{1/2} + 1, \text{ and is accurate to 1.5\% for all } n.$$

Probability of  $n_t$  or more random events with Poisson distribution when the expected or mean number of events is  $\bar{n}$  as a function of the threshold number  $n_t$ . (From RCA Electro-Optics Handbook, 1974.)



### Poisson distribution (cont.)

Probability of  $n_t$  or more random events with Poisson distribution when the expected or mean number of events is  $\bar{n}$  as a function of the threshold number  $n_t$ . Curves for  $10^{-7} < \bar{n} < 10^{-4}$  are approximate. (From *RCA Electro-Optics Handbook*, 1974.)



### Chi-square distribution, confidence levels

The chi-square distribution for  $n_D$  degrees of freedom is given by:

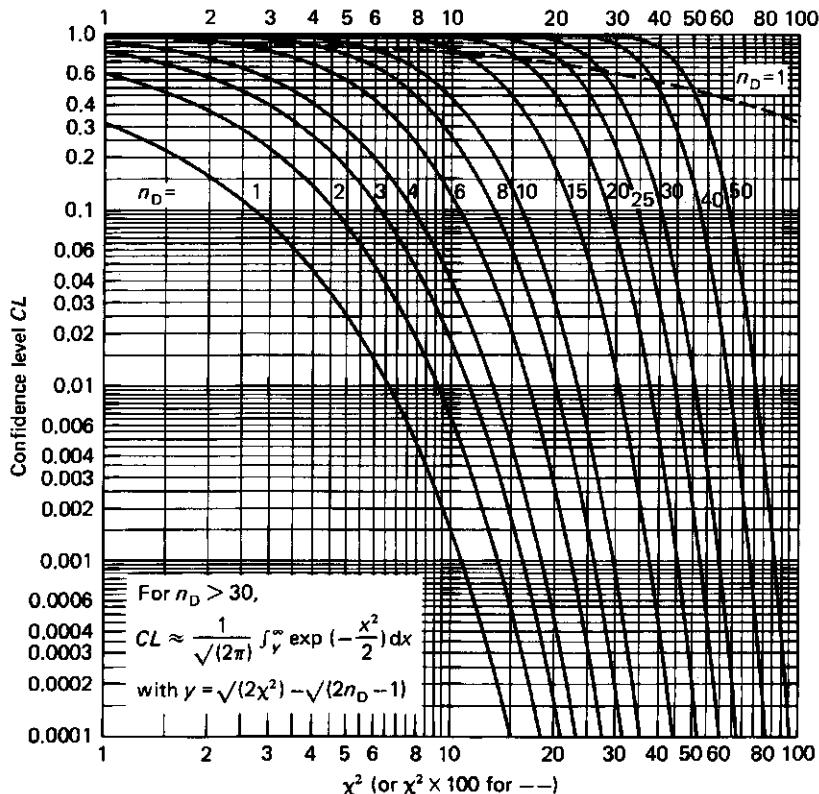
$$P_{n_D}(\chi^2) d\chi^2 = \frac{1}{2^h \Gamma(h)} (\chi^2)^{h-1} e^{-\chi^2/2} d\chi^2$$

where  $h$  (for 'half') =  $n_D/2$ .

The confidence level  $CL$  associated with a given value of  $n_D$  and an observed  $\chi^2$  is the probability of  $\chi^2$  exceeding the observed value:

$$CL = \int_{\chi^2}^{\infty} d\chi^2 P_{n_D}(\chi^2)$$

$\chi^2$  confidence level vs.  $\chi^2$  for  $n_D$  degrees of freedom. (From *Review of Particle Properties*, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California, Berkeley, CA, 1982.)



**Table of common probability distributions**

Distribu- tion	$f(x)$	Expec- tation $\mu$	Variance $\sigma^2$
Binomial $B(n, p)$	$\binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$ $x = 0, 1, \dots, n$	$np$	$np(1-p)$
Geometric $G(p)$	$(1-p)^{x-1} p$ $x = 1, 2, 3, \dots$	$\frac{1}{p}$	$\frac{1-p}{p^2}$
Poisson $P(\lambda)$	$e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x / x!$ $x = 0, 1, 2, \dots$	$\lambda$	$\lambda$
Hyperge- ometric $H(N, n, p)$	$\frac{\binom{N_p}{x} \binom{N-N_p}{n-x}}{\binom{N}{n}}$	$np$	$np(1-p) \frac{N-n}{N-1}$
Negative binomial or Pascal $NB(r, p)$	$\binom{x-1}{r-1} p^r (1-p)^{x-r}$ $x = r, r+1, \dots$	$\frac{r}{p}$	$\frac{r(1-p)}{p^2}$
Beta $\beta(p, q)$	$a_{p,q} x^{p-1} (1-x)^{q-1}$ $0 \leq x \leq 1$ $a_{p,q} = \frac{\Gamma(p+q)}{\Gamma(p)\Gamma(q)}$ $p > 0, q > 0$	$\frac{p}{p+q}$	$\frac{pq}{(p+q)^2(p+q+1)}$
Weibull $W(\lambda, \beta)$	$\lambda^\beta \beta x^{\beta-1} e^{-(\lambda x)^\beta}$ $x \geq 0$ $F(x) = 1 - e^{-(\lambda x)^\beta}$	$\frac{1}{\lambda} \Gamma\left(1 + \frac{1}{\beta}\right)$	$\frac{1}{\lambda^2}(A - B)$ $A = \Gamma\left(1 + \frac{2}{\beta}\right)$ $B = \Gamma^2\left(1 + \frac{1}{\beta}\right)$
Rayleigh $R(\sigma)$	$\frac{x}{\sigma^2} e^{-x^2/2\sigma^2}$ $x \geq 0$	$\sigma \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}$	$2\sigma^2 \left(1 - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
Cauchy $C(a)$	$\frac{a}{\pi(a^2+x^2)}$	Does not exist	Does not exist

**Table of common probability distributions (cont.)**

Distribu- tion	$f(x)$	Expec- tation $\mu$	Variance $\sigma^2$
Uniform $U(a, b)$	$\frac{1}{b-a}$ $a \leq x \leq b$	$\frac{a+b}{2}$	$\frac{(b-a)^2}{12}$
Exponential $E(\lambda)$	$\lambda e^{-\lambda x}$ $x \geq 0$	$1/\lambda$	$1/\lambda^2$
Normed normal distribution $N(0, 1)$	$\phi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2}$	0	1
General normal distribution $N(\mu, \sigma)$	$\frac{1}{\sigma} \phi\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)$	$\mu$	$\sigma^2$
Gamma $\Gamma(n, \lambda)$	$\frac{\lambda^n}{\Gamma(n)} x^{n-1} e^{-\lambda x}$	$\frac{n}{\lambda}$	$\frac{n}{\lambda^2}$
$\chi^2$ $\chi^2(r)$	$\frac{1}{2^{r/2} \Gamma(\frac{r}{2})} x^{\frac{r}{2}-1} e^{-\frac{x}{2}}$ $x \geq 0$	$r$	$2r$
The parameter $r$ is called the “number of degrees of freedom”			
$t$ $t(r)$	$\frac{a_r}{b_r} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{r}\right)^{-\frac{r+1}{2}}$ $a_r = \Gamma\left(\frac{r+1}{2}\right)$ $b_r = \sqrt{r\pi} \Gamma\left(\frac{r}{2}\right)$	$0, r > 1$	$\frac{r}{r-2}, r > 2$
$F$ $F(r_1, r_2)$	$\frac{a_r x^{(r_1/r_2)-1}}{b_r (r_2 + r_1 x)^{\frac{r_1+r_2}{2}}}$ $x \geq 0$ $a_r = \Gamma\left(\frac{r_1 + r_2}{2}\right) r_1^{r_1/2} r_2^{r_2/2}$ $b_r = \Gamma\left(\frac{r_1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{r_2}{2}\right)$	$\frac{r_2}{r_2 - 2}$ $r_2 > 2$	$\frac{2r_2^2(r_1+r_2-2)}{r_1(r_2-2)^2(r_2-4)}$ $r_2 > 4$

(Adapted from Rade, L. and Westergren, B., *Beta Mathematics Handbook*, CRC Press, 1990)

## Pearson's $\chi^2$ test of distributions

---



---

$$\chi^2 = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{[f(x_j) - NP(x_j)]^2}{NP(x_j)},$$

where

$f(x_j)$  = observed frequency distribution of possible observation  $x_j$ ,

$n$  = number of different values of  $x_j$  observed,

$N$  = total number of measurements,

$P(x_j)$  = theoretical probability distribution.

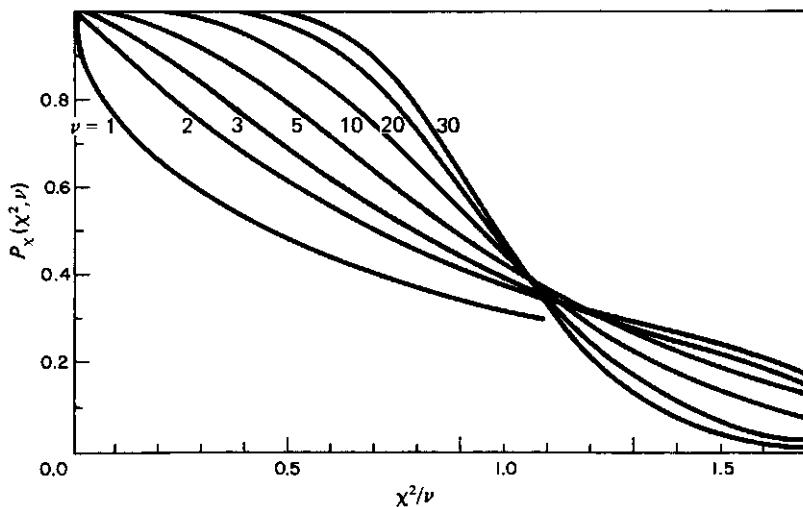
$\chi_\nu^2 = \chi^2/\nu$  (for  $\chi^2$  tests,  $\chi_\nu^2$  should be  $\cong 1$ ),

$\nu$  = degrees of freedom =  $n$  – number of parameters calculated from the data to describe the distribution.

The probability  $P_\chi(\chi^2, \nu)$  of exceeding  $\chi^2$  vs. the reduced chi-square  $\chi_\nu^2 = \chi^2/\nu$  and the number of degrees of freedom  $\nu$ .

$$P_\chi(\chi^2, \nu) = \frac{1}{2^{\nu/2}\Gamma(\nu/2)} \int_{\chi^2}^{\infty} (x^2)^{1/2(\nu-2)} e^{-x^2/2} dx^2$$

(Adapted from Bevington, P. R., *Data Reduction and Error Analysis for the Physical Sciences*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1969.)



## Propagation of errors

---



---

Sample mean:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum x_i \simeq \mu, \text{ parent mean.}$$

Sample variance:

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{N-1} \sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2 \simeq \sigma^2, \text{ parent variance.}$$

For  $x = f(u, v, \dots)$

$\bar{x} = f(\bar{u}, \bar{v}, \dots)$ , the most probable value for  $x$ , and

$$\sigma_x^2 \simeq \sigma_u^2 \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} \right)^2 + \sigma_v^2 \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} \right)^2 + 2\sigma_{uv}^2 \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} \right) + \dots,$$

where

$$\sigma_u^2 = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum (u_i - \bar{u})^2, \quad \sigma_v^2 = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum (v_i - \bar{v})^2$$

and

$$\sigma_{uv}^2 = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum [(u_i - \bar{u})(v_i - \bar{v})], \text{ the covariance.}$$

For  $u$  and  $v$  uncorrelated,  $\sigma_{uv}^2 = 0$ .

---



---

## Least-squares fit to a straight line

---



---

Linear function:

$$y(x) = a + bx.$$

Chi-square:

$$\chi^2 = \sum \left[ \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} (y_i - a - bx_i)^2 \right],$$

$\sigma_i$  = standard deviation of the observation  $y_i$

Least-squares fitting procedure:

minimize  $\chi^2$  with respect to each of the coefficients  $a$  and  $b$  simultaneously.

Coefficients of least-squares fit:

$$a = \frac{1}{\Delta} \cdot \left( \sum \frac{x_i^2}{\sigma_i^2} \sum \frac{y_i}{\sigma_i^2} - \sum \frac{x_i}{\sigma_i^2} \sum \frac{x_i y_i}{\sigma_i^2} \right)$$

$$b = \frac{1}{\Delta} \cdot \left( \sum \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} \sum \frac{x_i y_i}{\sigma_i^2} - \sum \frac{x_i}{\sigma_i^2} \sum \frac{y_i}{\sigma_i^2} \right)$$

$$\Delta = \sum \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2} \sum \frac{x_i^2}{\sigma_i^2} - \left( \sum \frac{x_i}{\sigma_i^2} \right)^2$$

Estimated variance:

$$\sigma^2 \simeq s^2 = \frac{1}{N-2} \sum (y_i - a - bx_i)^2$$

$s^2$  = sample variance

Uncertainties in coefficients:

$$\sigma_a^2 \simeq \frac{1}{\Delta} \sum \frac{x_i^2}{\sigma_i^2} \quad \sigma_b^2 \simeq \frac{1}{\Delta} \sum \frac{1}{\sigma_i^2}$$


---



---

## Bibliography

*Data Analysis for Scientists and Engineers*, Meyer, S.L., Peer Management Consultants, Ltd., Evanston, IL, 1986.

*Data Reduction and Error Analysis for the Physical Sciences*, Bevington, P.R. and Robinson, D.K., McGraw-Hill, 1992.

*Fundamentals of Probability*, Ghahramani, S., Prentice Hall, 1996.

*Introduction to Probability*, Grinstead, C.M. and Snell, J.L.,  
[http://www.dartmouth.edu/~chance/teaching\\_aids/  
books\\_articles/probability\\_book/book.html](http://www.dartmouth.edu/~chance/teaching_aids/books_articles/probability_book/book.html).

*An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*, Feller, W., John Wiley & Sons, Vol. I, 1968, Vol. II, 1971.

*Mathematical Statistics and Data Analysis*, Rice, J.A., Duxbury Press, 1995.

*Statistical Methods in Experimental Physics*, Eadi, W.T., et al., North-Holland Publishing Co., 1971.

*Statistics for Nuclear and Particle Physicists*, Lyons, L., Cambridge University Press, 1986.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

# Chapter 18

---

## Radiation safety

*They say atomic radiation can hurt your reproductive organs. My answer is so can a hockey stick. But we don't stop building them. - Johny Carson*

Definitions	598
Radiation levels and exposures	599
Radioactive materials in the body	600
Dose equivalents from selected consumer products	600
Products containing radioactive material	601
Naturally occurring radiation sources	602
Medical exposures	602
Maximum permissible flux	603
Occupational dose limits	605
Annual dose rates	606
Subsonic and supersonic aircraft doses	606
Astronaut absorbed dose	606
Clinical effects of radiation	607
Effect of a nuclear detonation	608
Bibliography	609

## Definitions

---

The International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements (ICRU) recommends the use of SI units. Therefore SI units are listed first, followed by cgs (or other common) units in parentheses.

*Unit of activity* = becquerel (curie):

$$1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ disintegration s}^{-1} (= 1/(3.7 \times 10^{10}) \text{ Ci})$$

*Unit of absorbed dose* = gray (rad):

$$1 \text{ Gy} = 1 \text{ joule kg}^{-1} (= 10^4 \text{ erg g}^{-1} = 100 \text{ rad})$$

(=  $6.24 \times 10^{12}$  MeV kg $^{-1}$ ) deposited energy

*Unit of exposure*, the quantity of  $x$ - or  $\gamma$ -radiation at a point in space integrated over time, in terms of charge of either sign produced by showering electrons in a small volume of air about the point:

$$= 1 \text{ coul kg}^{-1} \text{ of air (roentgen; } 1 \text{ R} = 2.58 \times 10^{-4} \text{ coul kg}^{-1}\text{)}$$

$$1 \text{ R} = 1 \text{ esu cm}^{-3} (= 87.8 \text{ erg} = 5.49 \times 10^7 \text{ MeV released energy per g of air})$$

*Unit of equivalent dose* (for biological damage) = sievert (= 100 rem (roentgen equivalent for man)): Equivalent dose in Sv = absorbed dose in grays  $\times w_R$ , where  $w_R$  (radiation weighting factor, formerly the quality factor  $Q$ ) expresses long-term risk (primarily cancer and leukemia) from low-level chronic exposure. It depends upon the type of radiation and other factors, as follows:

### Radiation weighting factors

Radiation	$w_R$
$X$ - and $\gamma$ -rays, all energies	1
Electrons and muons, all energies	1
Neutrons < 10 keV	5
10 – 100 keV	10
> 100 keV to 2 MeV	20
2 – 20 MeV	10
> 20 MeV	5
Protons (other than recoils) > 2 MeV	5
Alphas, fission fragments, & heavy nuclei	20

---

(Adapted from C. Caso *et al.*, European Physical Journal C3, 1, 1998)

## Radiation levels and exposures

---

*Natural annual background*, all sources: Most world areas, whole-body equivalent dose rate  $\approx (0.4 - 4)$  mSv (40 – 400 millirems). Can range up to 50 mSv (5 rems) in certain areas. U.S. average  $\approx 3.6$  mSv, including  $\approx 2$  mSv ( $\approx 200$  mrem) from inhaled natural radioactivity, mostly radon and radon daughters (0.1-0.2 mSv in open areas). Average is for a typical house and varies by more than an order of magnitude. It can be more than two orders of magnitude higher in poorly ventilated mines.

*Cosmic ray background* at the Earth's surface:

$$\sim 1 \text{ min}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ sr}^{-1}.$$

*Fluence* (per  $\text{cm}^2$ ) to deposit one Gy, assuming uniform irradiation:  
charged particles –  $6.24 \times 10^9 / (dE/dx)$ , where  $dE/dx$  ( $\text{MeV g}^{-1} \text{ cm}^2$ ) is the stopping power.

$\approx 3.5 \times 10^9 \text{ cm}^{-2}$  minimum-ionizing singly-charged particles in carbon.  
photons –  $6.24 \times 10^9 / [Ef/\lambda]$ , for photons of energy  $E$  (MeV), attenuation length  $\lambda$  ( $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ ), and fraction  $f \lesssim 1$  expressing the fraction of the photon's energy deposited in a small volume of thickness  $\ll \lambda$  but large enough to contain the secondary electrons.

$\approx 2 \times 10^{11}$  photons  $\text{cm}^{-2}$  for 1 MeV photons on carbon ( $f \approx 1/2$ ).  
(Quoted fluences are good to about a factor of 2 for all materials.)

*Recommended limits to exposure of radiation workers (whole-body dose):*

*CERN*: 15 mSv  $\text{yr}^{-1}$

*U.K.*: 15 mSv  $\text{yr}^{-1}$

*U.S.*: 50 mSv  $\text{yr}^{-1}$  (5 rem  $\text{yr}^{-1}$ )

*Lethal dose*: Whole-body dose from penetrating ionizing radiation resulting in 50% mortality in 30 days (assuming no medical treatment) 2.5 – 3.0 Gy (250 – 300 rads), as measured internally on body longitudinal center line. Surface dose varies due to variable body attenuation and may be a strong function of energy.

---

(Adapted from C. Caso, *et al.*, European Physical Journal C3, 1, 1998)

### **Radioactive materials in the body**

Radionuclide	Body content in 70 kg man		Annual dose (mrad)
	(picocurie)	(dis/min)	
<sup>40</sup> K	120,000	266,000	18 (whole body)
<sup>14</sup> C	87,000	193,000	1 (whole body)
<sup>226</sup> Ra	40	89	0.7 (bone lining)
<sup>210</sup> Po	500	1,110	0.6 (gonads) 3 (bone)
<sup>90</sup> Sr (1973)	1,300	2,886	2.6 (endosteal bone) 1.8 (bone marrow)

(UNSCEAR, 1977; NCRP, 1975, Report no., 45 (<sup>90</sup>Sr))

NCRP: National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements.

UNSCEAR: United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation.

### **Average annual population dose equivalents from selected consumer products and miscellaneous sources**

Product	mrem
TV Receiver	0.50
Airport X-ray	0.001
Luminous Watches	0.05
Tobacco Products	2000
Coal Combustion	1
Natural Gas Combustion	5
Uranium in Debentures (old style)	1500

(Adapted from NCRP Report no. 56; University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

**Selected products containing radioactive material**

Product	Nuclides	Amount
<i>Radioactive Material Contained in Paint or Plastic:</i>		
Time pieces	H-3 Pm-147 Ra-226	1-25 mCi 65-200 $\mu$ Ci 0.1-3 $\mu$ Ci
Compasses	H-3 Pm-147	5-50 mCi 10 $\mu$ Ci
Thermostat dials and pointers	H-3	25 mCi
Automobile shift quadrants	H-3	25 mCi
Speedometers	Pm-147	0.1 mCi
<i>Radioactive Material Contained in Sealed Tubes:</i>		
Time pieces, marine navigational instruments	H-3	0.2-2 Ci
Exit signs, stepmarkers, public telephone dials, light switch markers	H-3	0.2-30 Ci
<i>Electronic and Electrical Devices:</i>		
Fluorescent lamp starters	Ra-226	1 $\mu$ Ci
Vacuum tubes, electric lamps, germicidal lamps	Natural Thorium	
Glow lamps	H-3	50 mg 0.01 mCi
High voltage protection devices	Pm-147	3 $\mu$ Ci
Low voltage fuses	Pm-147	3 $\mu$ Ci
<i>Miscellaneous:</i>		
Smoke and fire detectors	Am-241 Ra-226 Kr-85	1-100 $\mu$ Ci 0.01-15 $\mu$ Ci 7 mCi
Incandescent gas mantles	Natural Thorium	
Ceramic tableware glaze	Natural Uranium or Thorium	0.5 gm 20% by weight of the glaze

(Adapted from UNSCEAR 1977 Report, University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

### Naturally occurring radiation sources ( $\text{pCi g}^{-1}$ )

Type of Rock	K-40	U-238	Th-232
Acidic (e.g. granite)	27	1.6	2.2
Intermediate (e.g. diorite)	19	0.62	0.88
Mafic (e.g. basalt)	6.5	0.31	0.30
Ultrabasic (e.g. durite)	4.0	0.01	0.66
Sedimentary			
Limestone	2.4	0.75	0.19
Carbonate	—	0.72	0.21
Sandstone	10	0.5	0.3
Shale	19	1.2	1.2

(UNSCEAR 1977 Report)

In various parts of the world, there are areas with high natural radiation levels. At the beach of the Black Sands in Guarppari, State of Espirto Santos, Brazil, it is possible to receive a radiation exposure of 5 mrad/hr due to the monazite (Thorium bearing minerals) sands. At Pocos de Caldas, State of Gerais, Brazil, the average range of radiation exposure is from 0.1–3 mrad/hr.

Naturally occurring radionuclides can give rise to external doses when contained in raw materials used to construct roads and buildings. Uranium and thorium are commonly found in cement, concrete blocks, and masonry products. For example, the possible annual dose near a granite wall at the "Redcap Stand" in Grand Central Station, New York is 200 mrem (assuming an occupancy of 8 hrs/day).

(From University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

### Medical exposures

#### Patient Skin Entrance Exposure, per Film

Technique	mrad
Sacral Spine	2180
Barium Enema	1320
Upper GI Series	710
Dental Bite-Wing	400
Skull	330
Chest	44

(Bureau of Radiological Health)

### Maximum permissible flux for occupational exposure to various types of ionizing radiations

Type of radiation	QF or RBE <sup>(a)</sup>	Average exposure rate <sup>(b)</sup> (mrad wk <sup>-1</sup> )	Approximate flux to give a maximum permissible exposure in an 8-hr day <sup>(c)</sup>
X- and gamma-rays	1	100	[1400/ $E$ ] photons cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> in free air at 0°C (error < 13% for $E = 0.07$ to 2 MeV)
Beta-rays and electrons	1	100	[4.3 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ]/ $P$ ] electrons or beta-rays cm <sup>2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)
Thermal neutrons	2.5	40	700 thermal neutrons cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)
Fast neutrons	10	10	19 neutrons of 2-MeV energy cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)
Alpha particles	10	10	[4.3 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ]/ $P$ ] alpha particles cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)
Protons	10	10	[4.3 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ]/ $P$ ] protons cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)
Heavy ions	20	5	[4.3 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ]/ $P$ ] heavy ions cm <sup>-2</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> (d)

(a) RBE, relative biological effectiveness.

(b) Average occupational exposure rate permissible to blood-forming organs (essentially total body exposure), gonads, and eyes of persons of age 18 or over. These values may be averaged over a year, provided the dose in any thirteen weeks does not exceed 3 rem (rem = RBE × rad). All rates may be increased by a factor of 6 if the exposure is primarily to the skin, thyroid, or bone. They may be increased by a factor of 3 if the exposure is limited to organs other than blood-forming organs, gonads, or eyes.

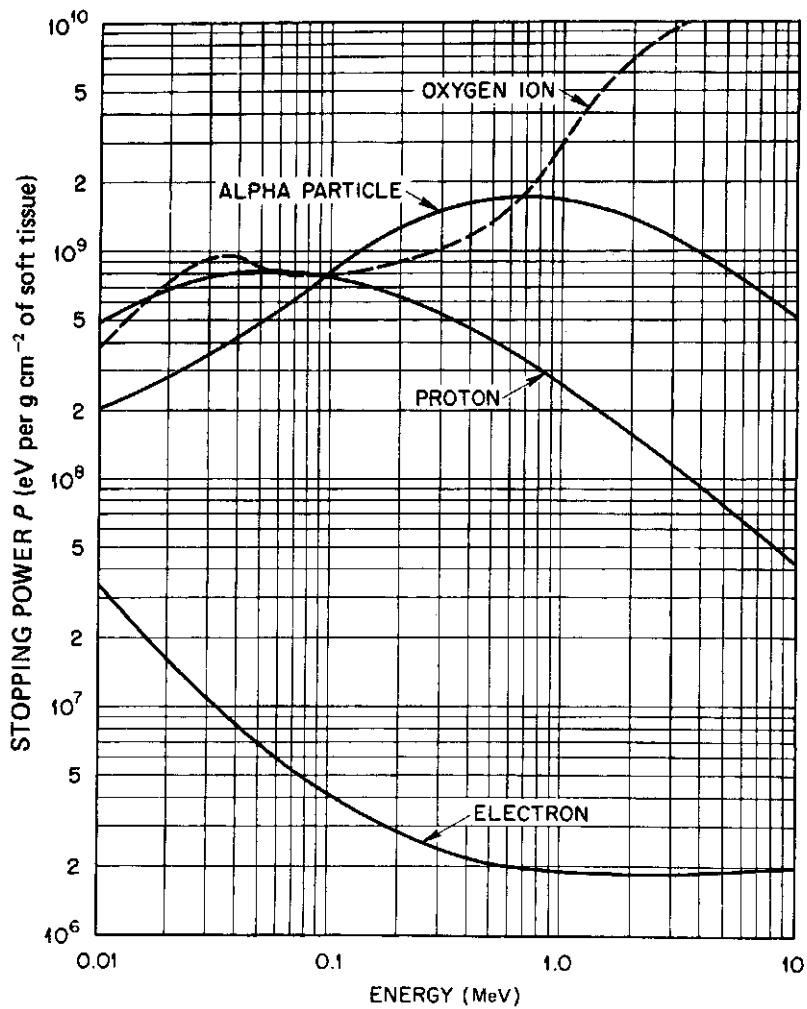
(c) Maximum permissible exposure rate based on a 20-mrem dose delivered to tissue in an 8-hr day.  $P$  is the stopping power in units of electron volts per g cm<sup>-2</sup> of soft tissue.

(d) Incident on tissue.  
(Adapted from *Nuclear Instruments and Their Uses*, A.H. Snell, ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1962.)

**Note:** Maximum permissible radiation exposures are subject to revision. If you are working with radiation sources, you should consult with your radiation safety officer or the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP) for the latest permissible exposures.

**Maximum permissible flux for occupational exposure to various types of ionizing radiations (cont.)**

Stopping power as a function of energy. (Adapted from *Nuclear Instruments and Their Uses*, A.H. Snell, ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1962.)



**Occupational dose limits**

Exposed Area	REM/Year	Sieverts/Year
Whole body – head and trunk; gonads; arms above elbow, legs above the knee	5.0	0.050
Extremities – hands and forearms; feet and ankles, leg below the knee	50.0	0.50
Skin	50.0	0.50
Lens of eyes	15.0	0.15
Any Individual Organ or Tissue	50.0	0.50
Embryo/Fetus (Entire Period)	0.5	0.005

(University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

**Annual dose rates to population in USA**

<i>Natural Background</i>	mrem/yr
Cosmic	28
Terrestrial	26
Internal–C-14, Ra-226, Pm-222, K-40	28
	82
<i>Medical</i>	
Diagnosis	77
Dental	1.4
Radiopharmaceutical	13.6
	92.0
<i>Other</i>	
Weapon Tests (Fallout)	5
Power Plant and Nuclear Industry	< 1
Building Materials (brick, masonry)	5
TV Receivers	0.5
Airline Travel	0.5
	12.0
<i>Total</i>	186.0 mrem/yr

(University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

**Comparison of calculated cosmic-ray doses to a person flying in subsonic and supersonic aircraft (average solar conditions)**

Route	Subsonic Flight at 11 km		Supersonic Flight at 19 km	
	Flight duration (hr)	Dose per round trip (mrad)	Flight duration (hr)	Dose per round trip (mrad)
Los Angles-Paris	11.1	4.0	3.8	3.7
Chicago-Paris	8.3	3.6	2.8	2.6
New York-Paris	7.4	3.1	2.6	2.4
New York-London	7.0	2.9	2.4	2.2
Los Angles-New York	5.2	1.9	1.9	1.3
Sydney-Acapulco	17.4	4.4	6.2	2.1

(UNSCEAR 1977 Report; University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

**Absorbed dose in chests of astronauts on space missions**

Mission or Mission Series	Launch Date (Yr-Mo-Dy)	Duration of Mission (Hr)	Type of Orbit	Dose (mrad)
Apollo VII	68-08-11	260	Earth Orbital	157
Apollo VIII	68-12-21	147	Circumlunar	150
Apollo IX	69-02-03	241	Earth Orbital	196
Apollo X	69-05-18	192	Circumlunar	480
Vostok 18-6			Earth Orbital	2-80
Voskhod 1,2			Earth Orbital	30-70
Soyuz 3-9			Earth Orbital	62-234

The table shows the doses received by astronauts on various space missions. The largest part of the dose was received when the spacecraft passed through the earth's radiation belts. The belts contain protons, electrons, and alpha particles trapped by the earth's magnetic fields.

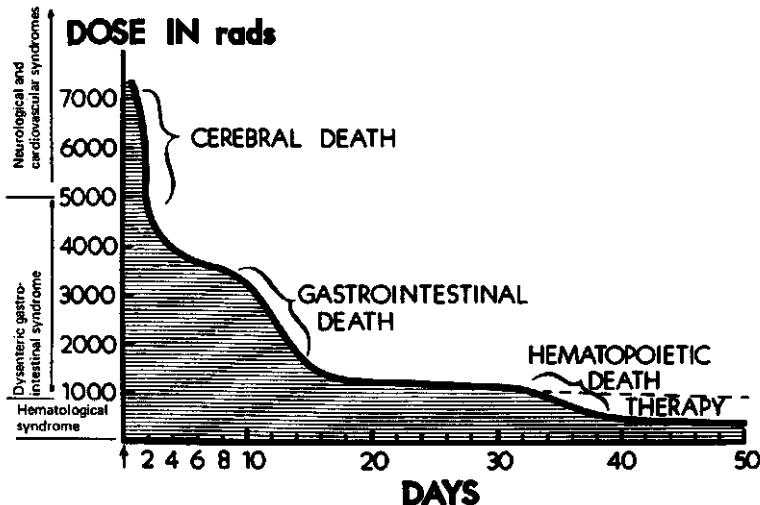
(UNSCEAR 1977 Report; University of Maryland Radiation Training Manual, 1994)

**Clinical effects of acute whole-body radiation doses**

Acute Dose (rads)	Probable Effect
0–50	No obvious effect, except possibly minor blood changes.
80–120	Vomiting and nausea for about 1 day in 5 to 10 per cent of exposed personnel. Fatigue but no serious disability.
130–170	Vomiting and nausea for about 1 day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness in about 25 per cent of personnel. No deaths anticipated.
180–220	Vomiting and nausea for about 1 day followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness in about 50 per cent of personnel. No deaths anticipated.
270–330	Vomiting and nausea in nearly all personnel on first day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness. About 20 per cent deaths within 2 to 6 weeks after exposure; survivors convalescent for about 3 months.
400–500	Vomiting and nausea in all personnel on first day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness. About 50 per cent deaths within 1 month; survivors convalescent for about 6 months.
550–750	Vomiting and nausea in all personnel within 4 hours from exposure, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness. Up to 100 per cent deaths; few survivors convalescent for about 6 months.
1000	Vomiting and nausea in all personnel within 1 to 2 hours. Probably no survivors from radiation sickness.
5000	Incapacitation almost immediately. All personnel will be fatalities within 1 week.

*(The Effects of Nuclear Weapons U.S. Government Printing Office, May 1957)*

The relation of time of death to whole-body radiation dose that defines the major lethal modalities. The dashed line over "therapy" defines the area in which symptomatic therapy of radiation damage is known to reduce human and animal mortality. (Adapted from *Accelerator Health Physics*, Patterson, H.W. and Thomas, R.H., Academic Press, 1973.)

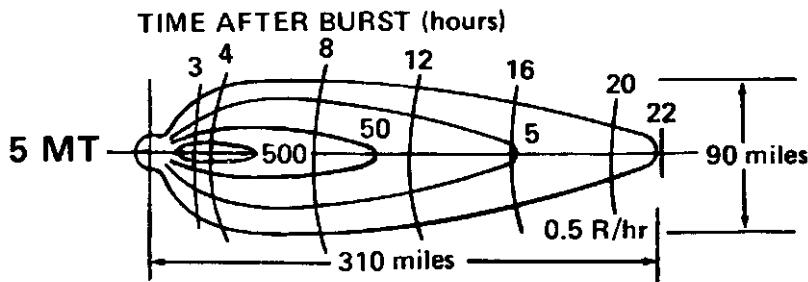



---

#### *Effect of a nuclear detonation-fallout pattern*

---

Fallout pattern for a 5 megaton thermonuclear air detonation (1000 m altitude). Peak dose rates (R/hr) and the time of peak (curved lines) for a 15 mph wind are shown. The energy released by the detonation is  $2 \times 10^{16}$  joules. (From the Defense Civil Preparedness Agency (DCPA), 1973).



**Bibliography**

*Accelerator Health Physics*, Patterson, H.W. and Thomas, R.H., Academic Press, 1973.

*A Handbook of Radioactivity Measurement Procedures*, NCRP Report No. 58, National Council of Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, DC 20014, 1978.

*Principles of Radiation Protection*, Morgan, K.Z. and Turner, J.E., eds., John Wiley & Sons., Inc., 1967.

*Radiation Protection, A Guide for Scientists and Physicians*, Shapiro, J., Harvard University Press, 1990.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

## Chapter 19

---

# Astronomical catalogs

*The astronomers must be very clever to have found out the names of all the stars.* - Unknown

Astronomical Catalogs	612
Selected astronomical catalog prefixes	618

## Astronomical catalogs

**Note:** This chapter has not been updated since the 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. There are now numerous catalogs online and new one being produced at a rapid pace. See, for example, <http://cdsweb.u-strasbg.fr/Cats.html>.

---

### X-ray sources

- Amnuel, P. R., Cuseinov, O. H. & Rakhamimov, Sh. Yu., 1979,  
*Ap. J. Suppl.*, **41**, 327.  
 Bradt, H. V., Doxsey, R. E. & Jernigan, J. G., 1978,  
*Adv. Space Exploration*, **3**.  
 Forman, W. *et al.*, 1978, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **38**, 357.  
 Cooke, B. A. *et al.*, 1978, *M.N.R.A.S.*, **182**, 489.  
 Markert, T. H. *et al.*, 1979, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **39**, 573.  
 Marshall, F. E. *et al.*, 1978, *NASA Tech Mem.* 79694.

### Radio sources

- Dixon, R. S., 1970, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **20**, 1.  
 Finlay, E. A. & Jones, B. B., 1977, *Aust. J. Phys.*, **26**, 389.

### NGC/IC objects

- Sulentic, J. W. & Tifft, W. G., 1973, *The Revised New General Catalog of Non-Stellar Astronomical Objects*, University of Arizona Press.  
 Schmidtke, P. C., Dixon, R. S. & Gearhart, M. R., 1979, *Palomar Sky Survey Overlays*, Ohio State University Radio Observatory.

### Optical (non-stellar)

- Dixon, R. S. & Sonneborn, G., 1979, *Master Optical List*, Ohio State University Radio Observatory.

### Infrared sources

- Schmitz, M. *et al.*, 1978, *Merged Infrared Catalog*, NASA Tech. Mem. 79683. Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, Maryland.  
 Price, S. & Walker, R., 1976, *The AFGL Four Color Infrared Sky Survey*, AFGL-TR-76-0208, Hanscom AFB, Massachusetts (Supplement: AFGL-TR-77-0160, 1977).  
 Gezari, D. Y. *et al.*, 1984, *Catalog of Infrared Observations*, NASA ref. pub. 1118.

### Gamma-ray sources

- Wills, R. D. *et al.*, 1980 *Adv. in Space Exploration*, Vol. 7, Pergamon Press.

### Quasars

- de Veny, J. B., Osborn, W. H. & Hanes, K., 1972, *Pub. A.S.P.*, **83**, 611.  
 Burbidge, G. R., Crowne, A. H. & Smith, H. E., 1977, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **33**, 113.  
 Hewitt, A. & Burbidge, A., 1987, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **63**, 1.  
 Hewitt, A. & Burbidge, G. R., 1980, *A Revised Optical Catalogue of Quasi-Stellar Objects*, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **43**, 57.

***Clusters of galaxies***

- Abell, G., 1958, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **3**, 211.  
 Klemola, A. R., 1969, *A.J.*, **74**, 804.

***Seyfert galaxies***

- Weedman, D. W., 1977, *Ann. Rev. Astr. Ap.*, **15**, 69.  
 Adams, T. F., 1977, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **33**, 19.

***Markarian galaxies***

- Peterson, S. D., 1973, *A.J.*, **78**, 811.

***Galaxies***

- Sandage, A., 1961, *The Hubble Atlas of Galaxies*, Carnegie Institute, Washington, DC.

- Zwicky, F. et al., 1961–68, *Catalog of Galaxies and Clusters of Galaxies*, 6 vols., Calif. Inst. Tech. (Pasadena).

- Vorontsov-Velyaminov, 1964, *Morphological Catalog of Galaxies*.

***Bright galaxies***

- de Vaucouleurs, G. & de Vaucouleurs, A., 1964, *Reference Catalog of Bright Galaxies*, University of Texas Press (Austin).  
 Dressel, L. L. & Condon, J. J., 1976, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **31**, 187.

***Peculiar galaxies***

- Arp, H., 1966, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **123**, 1.

***H II regions in galaxies***

- Hodge, P. W., 1969, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **157**, 73.  
 Lynds, B. T., 1974, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **267**, 391.

***Infrared galaxies***

- Reike, G. H., 1978, *Ap. J.*, **226**, 550.  
 Reike, G. H. & Lebofsky, M. J., 1978, *Ap. J.*, **220**, L37.  
 Reike, G. H. & Low, F. J., 1972, *Ap. J.*, **176**, L95.  
 Neugebauer, G., Becklin, E. E., Oke, J. B. & Searle, L., 1976,  
*Ap. J.*, **205**, 29.  
 Kleinmann, D. E. & Low, F. J., 1970, *Ap. J.*, **159**, L165.

***Stars***

- AGK3 Star Catalogue*, 1975, Hamburger Sternwarte (Hamburg).  
*Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory Star Catalog*, 1966,  
 Smithsonian Publ. 4652, US Government Printing Office,  
 Washington, DC.  
 Hofleit, D., 1964, *Catalogue of Bright Stars*, Yale University  
 Observatory (New Haven).  
 Fricke, W. & Kopf, A., 1963, *Fourth Fundamental Catalog (FK4)*,  
 Brauna (Karlsruhe).  
 Nagy, T. A. & Mead, J., 1978, *HD-SAO-DM Cross Index*, NASA  
 Tech. Mem 79564, Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt,  
 Maryland.

- Schmidtke, P. C., Dixon, R. S. & Gearhart, M. R., 1979, *Palomar Sky Survey Overlays*, Ohio State Radio Observatory.
- Gottlieb, D. M., 1978, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **38**, 287.
- Hirshfeld, A. & Sinnott, R. W., 1981, *Sky Catalogue 2000.0*, Sky Publishing Corp. (Cambridge, MA).
- Rufener, F., 1980, *Third Catalogue of Stars Measured in the Geneva Observatory Photometric System*, Observatoire de Genève, Switzerland.

#### **Star clusters and associations**

- Alter, G., Balázs, B. & Ruprecht, J., 1970, *Catalogue of Star Clusters and Associations*, Akadémiai Kiado (Budapest).
- Fenkart, R. P. & Binggeli, B., 1979, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.*, **35**, 271.
- Becker, W. & Fenkart, R., 1971, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.*, **4**, 241.

#### **Supergiants, O stars, and OB associations**

- Humphreys, R. M., 1978, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **38**, 309.
- Cruz-Gonzales, C., Recillas-Cruz, E., Costero, R., Peimbert, M. & Torres-Peimbert, S., 1974, *Revista Mexicana de Astronomía y Astrofísica*, **1**, 211.
- Luminous Stars in the Northern Milky Way*, 6 vols., 1959–65, Hamburger Sternwarte and Warner and Swasey Observatories (Hamburg-Bergedorf).

#### **Variable stars**

- Kukarkin, B. V. et al., 1969, *Catalogue of Variable Stars*, 3rd edn. Astron. Council of the Academy of Sciences in the USSR (Moscow) (plus Supplements).

#### **Ultraviolet**

- Catalogue of Stellar Ultraviolet Fluxes*, 1978, The Science Research Council.

#### **White dwarfs**

- McCook, G.P. & Scion, E. M., 1977, *Obs. Contrib.*, No. 2, Villanova Univ.

#### **Nearby stars**

- Gliese, W., 1969, *Catalogue of Nearby Stars*, Veröffentlichungen des Astronom. Rechen-Inst., Heidelberg, No. 22, Verlag G. Braun (Karlsruhe).
- Woolley, R., Epps, E. A., Penston, M. J. & Pocock, S. B., 1970, *Roy. Obs. Ann.*, No. 5.
- Halliwell, M. J., 1979, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **41**, 173.
- Gliese, W. & Jahreiss, H., 1979, *Astron. Astrophys. Suppl.*, **38**, 423.

#### **Proper motion and halo stars**

- Eggen, O. J., 1979, *Ap. J.*, **230**, 786.
- Eggen, O. J., 1979, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **39**, 89.

- Eggen, O. J., 1980, *Ap. J.*, **43**, 457.
- Luyten, W. J., 1979, *NLTT Catalogue*, 4 parts, Univ. of Minnesota (Minneapolis).
- Luyten, W. J., 1963, *Bruce Proper Motion Survey*, 2 vols., Univ. of Minnesota (Minneapolis).
- Luyten, W. J., 1961, *A Catalog of 7127 Stars in the Northern Hemisphere with Proper Motions Exceeding 0.2 arcsec Annually*, Lund Press (Minn.).
- Luyten, W. J., 1976, *A Catalog of Stars with Proper Motions Exceeding 0.5 arcsec Annually*, University of Minnesota (Minneapolis).
- Giclas, H., Burnham, R. Jr. & Thomas, N. G., 1971, *Lowell Proper Motion Survey (The G Numbered Stars)*, Lowell Obs. Bull.: Nos. 118, 125, 141, 153, 163, Lowell Obs., Flagstaff (Arizona).

### **Double stars**

- Aitken, R. G., 1932, *New General Catalog of Double Stars within 120° of the North Pole*, Publ. 417, Carnegie Inst., Washington.

### **Radial velocities**

- Abt, H. A. & Biggs, E. S., 1972, *A Bibliography of Stellar Radial Velocities*, Kitt Peak National Observatory.
- Evans, D. S., 1978, *Catalog of Stellar Radial Velocities* (microfiche).
- Moore, J. H., 1932, *A General Catalog of the Radial Velocities of Stars, Nebulae, and Clusters*, Publ. of Lick Obs., Vol. 18, Univ. of Calif. Press (Berkeley).
- Wilson, R. E., 1953, *General Catalog of Stellar Radial Velocities Prepared at Mount Wilson Observatory*, Publ. 601, Carnegie Inst., Washington.

### **Stellar spectra**

- Houk, N. & Cowley, A. P., 1975, *Univ. of Michigan Catalog of Two-Dimensional Spectral Types for the HD Stars*, Vol. I (Ann Arbor).
- Buscombe, W., 1977, *MK Spectral Classifications, Third General Catalog*, Northwestern Univ. (Evanston, Illinois).
- Kennedy, P. M. & Buscombe, W., 1974, *MK Spectral Classifications Published Since Jaschek's La Plata Catalog*, Northwestern Univ. (Evanston, Illinois).
- Jaschek, C., Conde, H. & de Sierra, A. C., 1964, *Catalog of Stellar Spectra Classified by the Morgan-Keenan System*, Obs. Astron. de la Univ. Nacional de la Plata (Argentina).
- Seitter, W. C., 1970, *Atlas für Objektiv-Prismen-Spektren*, Dümmler (Bonn).
- Breakiron, L. A. & Upgren, A. R., 1979, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **41**, 709.

### **Globular clusters**

- Harris, W. E., 1976, *A.J.*, **81**, 1095.

Arp, H., 1966, in *Galactic Structure*, eds. A. Blaauw & M. Schmidt, Univ. of Chicago Press, p. 401.

### **Planetary nebula**

Perek, L. & Kohoutek, L., 1967, *Catalogue of Galactic Planetary Nebula*, Czechoslovak Acad. of Sciences (Prague).

### **Reflection nebulae**

van den Bergh, S., 1966, *A.J.*, **71**, 990.

### **Supernova remnants**

Downes, D., 1971, *A.J.*, **76**, 305.

Clark, D. and Caswell, J., 1976, *M.N.R.A.S.*, **174**, 267.

### **Pulsars**

Manchester, R. N., Lyne, A. G., Taylor, J. H., Durdin, J. M.,

Large, M. I. & Little, A. G., 1978, *M.N.R.A.S.*, **185**, 409.

Damashek, M., Taylor, J. H. & Hulse, R. A., 1978, *Ap. J.*, **225**, L31.

### **OH masers**

Turner, B. E., 1979, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.*, **37**, 1.

### **CO clouds**

Kutner, M. L., Machnik, D. E., Tucker, K. D. & Dickman, R. L., 1980, *Ap. J.*, **237**, 734.

### **H II regions and spiral structure**

Georgelin, Y. M. & Georgelin, Y. P., 1976, *Astron. Ap.*, **49**, 57.

Maršáková, P., 1974, *Ap. Space Sc.*, **27**, 3.

### **5 GHz continuum surveys (galactic plane)**

Altenhoff, W. J., Downes, D., Pauls, T. & Schraml, J., 1978, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.*, **35**, 23.

Haynes, R. F., Caswell, J. L. & Simons, L. W. J., 1978, *Australian J. Phys.*, *Ap. Suppl.*, **45**, 1.

Haynes, R. F., Caswell, J. L. & Simons, L. W. J., 1979, *Australian J. Phys.*, *Ap. Suppl.*, **48**, 1.

### **Radio recombination line surveys**

Downes, D. et al., 1980, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.* **40**, 379.

Reifenstein, E. C. III, Wilson, T. L., Burke, B. F., Mezger, P. G. & Altenhoff, W. J., 1970, *Astron. Ap.*, **4**, 357.

### **H I (21 cm) surveys**

Heiles, C. & Habing, H., 1974, *Astron. Ap. Suppl.*, **14**.

Heiles, C. & Jenkins, E. B., 1976, *Astr. Ap.*, **46**, 333.

### **Sun**

*Solar-Geophysical Data* (monthly, 2 parts), NOAA, National

Geophys. and Solar-Terrestrial Data Center (Boulder);

*Solar-Geophysical Data, Descriptive Text*, 1974, No. 354 (Suppl.).

**Planets**

*American Ephemeris and Nautical Almanac* (yearly),  
US Government Printing Office, Washington, DC;  
*Explanatory Suppl.*, 1975, HM Stationery Office, London.

**Stellar rotational velocities**

- Bernacca, P. L. & Perinotto, M., *A Catalog of Stellar Rotational Velocities*, Contrib. Oss. Astrofis. Asiago, Univ. Padova, No. 239, 1970; No. 250, 1971; No. 294, 1973.
- Boyarchuk, A. A. & Kopylov, I. M., 1964, *A General Catalog of Rotational Velocities of 2558 Stars*, Publ. Crimean Astrophys. Observ., **31**, 44.
- Uesugi, A. & Fukuda, I., 1970, *A Catalog of Rotational Velocities of the Stars*, Contrib. Instit. Astrophys. and Kwasan Obser. Univ. Tokyo, No. 189.

**Radio galaxies**

- Burbidge, G. & Crowne, A. H., 1979, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **40**, 583.

**Dark clouds**

- Lynds, B. T., 1962, *Ap. J. Suppl.*, **7**, 1.

**Binaries**

- Batten, A. H., Fletcher, J. M. & Mann, P. J., 1978, *Seventh catalogue of the orbital elements of spectroscopic binary systems*, Pub. Dominion Astrophys. Obs., vol. XV, No. 5.
- Wood, F. B., Oliver, J. P., Florkowski, D. R. & Koch, R. H., 1980, *Finding list for observers of interacting binary stars*, University of Pennsylvania Press.

**Machine-readable astronomical catalogues**

The Astronomical Data Center of the NASA-Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, MD 20771, maintains a large number of machine-readable astronomical catalogues. See *Astronomical Data Center Bulletin*, NSSDC/WDC NASA-Goddard Space Flight Center.

---

---

**Selected astronomical catalog prefixes** (see references in previous section)

---

**X-ray and gamma-ray**

IE	HEAO-2 (Einstein).
H	HEAO-1, A-2 experiment (GSFC).
XRS	Amnuel <i>et al.</i> compilation.
4U, 3U, etc.	Uhuru catalogs.
IM	OSO-7 catalog (MIT).
2A, A	Ariel catalogs.
2S	SAS-3 source (MIT).
CGS	Bradt <i>et al.</i> galactic sources.
MXB	MIT burst source (Bradt <i>et al.</i> ).
CG	(cosmic gamma-ray), usually COS-B source.

**Radio**

G	(galactic coordinates), various sources— usually continuum surveys.
3C	(3rd Cambridge) 1959, <i>Mem. R.A.S.</i> , <b>68</b> , 37; 1962, <b>68</b> , 163.
4C	(4th Cambridge) 1965, <i>Mem. R.A.S.</i> , <b>69</b> , 183; 1967, <b>47</b> , 49.
W	(Dwingeloo) Westerhout 1958, <i>B.A.N.</i> , <b>14</b> , 215.
CTA, CTB, CTD	(Cal Tech) 1960, <i>Publ. A.S.P.</i> , <b>72</b> , 237; <i>Cal. Tech. Radio. Obs. Reports</i> (#2) 1960–65. 1963, <i>A. J.</i> , <b>68</b> , 181.
NRAO	(Green Bank) 1966, <i>Ap. J. Suppl.</i> , <b>116</b> .
PKS	(Parkes) 1964, <i>Australian J. Phys.</i> , <b>17</b> , 340; 1965, <b>18</b> , 329; 1966, <b>19</b> , 35; 1966, <b>19</b> , 837; 1968, <b>21</b> , 377.
MSH	(Sydney) Mills, Slee & Hill, 1958, <i>Australian J. Phys.</i> , <b>11</b> , 360; 1960, <b>13</b> , 676; 1961, <b>14</b> , 497.
OA–OZ	(Ohio State) 1966, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>144</b> ; 1967, <i>A.J.</i> , <b>72</b> , 536; 1968, <b>73</b> , 381; 1969, <b>74</b> , 612; 1970, <b>75</b> , 351; 1971, <b>76</b> , 777.
AMWW	(Bonn) Altenhoff, Mezger, Wendkar & Westerhout, 1960, <i>Publ. Univ. Obs. Bonn.</i> , No. 59.

**Optical-stars-general**

HD	<i>Henry Draper Catalog</i> 1918–25, <i>Harvard Ann.</i> , 91–100.
----	---

AGK #	<i>Astronomische Gesellschaft Katalog.</i>
FK #	<i>Fundamental Katalog.</i>
SAO or # # # # # #	<i>Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory Catalog.</i>
GC	<i>General Catalog</i> , Boss. 1936, Carnegie Inst. Wash. Publ. 468.
BD	<i>Bonner Durchmusterung</i> , 1860, <i>Beob. Bonn. Obs.</i> , <b>3</b> ; <b>4</b> ; <b>5</b> .
SD	<i>Southern Durchmusterung</i> , 1886, <i>Beob. Bonn. Obs.</i> , <b>8</b> .
CD (or CoD)	<i>Cordoba Durchmusterung</i> , 1892, <i>Result. Natl. Obs. Argentina</i> , <b>16</b> ; <b>17</b> ; <b>18</b> ; <b>21a</b> ; <b>21b</b> .
CPD	<i>Cape Photographic Durchmusterung</i> , 1896, <i>Ann. Cape Obs.</i> , <b>3</b> ; <b>4</b> ; <b>5</b> .
DM	BD, CP, CPD combined.
± # #° ...	Usually DM catalogs.
HR	(Harvard revised) <i>Harvard Ann.</i> , 1908, <b>50</b> .
BS	(Bright star) <i>Yale Bright Star Catalog</i> . Follows HR numbering system (BS = HR #).

*Optical-stars-proper motion*

G # # # - # # #	Lowell P.M. Surveys.
(or GD, HG)	
BPM (or L)	Bruce P.M. Survey.
LP	(Luyten-Palomar) 1969a, 1969b, Luyten 1963, <i>P.M. Survey with the 48-Inch Schmidt</i> , Univ. Minn., Minneapolis.
LHS	(Luyten Half-Second) Luyten, $0.5'' \text{ yr}^{-1}$ . P.M. Survey.
LTT	Luyten, $0.2'' \text{ yr}^{-1}$ . P.M. Survey.
NLT	Luyten, new P.M. Catalog.
LB, etc.	other Luyten P.M. Catalogs.

*Optical-stars-miscellaneous*

EG or GR	(White Dwarfs) Eggen and/or Greenstein; EG: <i>Ap. J.</i> , 1965, <b>141</b> , 83; 1965, <b>142</b> , 925; 1967, <b>150</b> , 927; 1969, <b>158</b> , 281. GR: <i>Ap. J.</i> , 1970, <b>162</b> , L55; 1974, <b>189</b> , L131; 1975, <b>196</b> , L117; 1976, <b>207</b> , L119; 1977, <b>218</b> , L21; 1979, <b>227</b> , 244. Also Greenstein, 1976, <i>A.J.</i> , <b>81</b> , 323; 1976, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>210</b> , 524.
GL	Gliese, W., 1969, <i>Catalog of Nearby Stars</i> , G. Braun, Karlsruhe.

Y	(Yale) Jenkins, L. F., 1952, <i>General Catalog of Trigonometric Stellar Parallaxes</i> , Yale Univ. Obs., New Haven. (Also 1963, Suppl.)
	(Yerkes) van Altena <i>et al.</i> , <i>A.J.</i> , 1969, <b>74</b> , 2; 1971, <b>76</b> , 932; 1973, <b>78</b> , 781; 1973, <b>78</b> , 201; 1975, <b>80</b> , 647.
HZ	Humason & Zwicky, 1946, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>105</b> , 85–91.
Wolf (or W)	Nearby star discovered by Max Wolf (see Gliese catalog for data).
Ross (or R)	Nearby star discovered by Frank Ross (see Gliese catalog for data).
PHL (Ton, Tn, TS)	(Palomar-Haro-Luyten) Haro and Luyten, 1962, <i>Bol. Obs. Tonantzintla y Tacubaya</i> , <b>3</b> , 37. (Faint blue stars.)
VB	Van Biesbroeck, G., 1961, <i>A. J.</i> , <b>66</b> , 528.
Feige (or F)	Feige, 1958, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>128</b> , 267.

***Optical-stars-variable***

Naming convention (if no standard name):

Constellation preceded by the following combinations in order of variability discovery:

R,S,T,...,Z,RR,RS,...,RZ,SS,...,SZ,...,ZZ,AA,AB,...,AZ,BB,...,BZ,  
...,QQ,...,QZ,V335,V336,... (Note: the letter J is not used.)***Optical-miscellaneous galactic***

TR	Trumpler, R., 1930, <i>Lick Obs. Bull.</i> , No. 420 (associations).
Coll	Collinder, P., 1931, <i>Ann. Obs. Lund.</i> , No. 2 (associations).
RCW	Rodgers, Campbell & Whiteoak, 1960, <i>M.N.R.A.S.</i> , <b>121</b> , 103 (H II regions).
R	Reflection nebula, preceded by constellation, as in Mon R2.
S	Sharpless, 1959, <i>Ap. J. Suppl.</i> , <b>4</b> , 257 (H II regions).
SS	Stevenson and Sanduleak object.
HH	Herbig-Haro object. Herbig, 1951, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>113</b> , 697; Haro, 1952, <i>Ap. J.</i> , <b>115</b> , 572; Herbig, 1974, <i>Lick Obs. Bull.</i> , <b>658</b> .

***Optical-general-non-stellar***

NGC	Dreyer's <i>New General Catalog</i> .
IC	Dreyer's <i>Index Catalog</i> .

***Optical—extragalactic***

Mrk (or Mkn)    Markarian, *Astrofizika* (in Russian), 1967, **3**, 55; 1969, **5**, 443; 1969, **5**, 581; 1971, **7**, 511; 1971, **8**, 155; 1973, **9**, 488; 1974, **10**, 307; 1976, **12**, 390; 1976, **12**, 657; 1977, **13**, 225.

Zw                Zwicky.

MCG              *Morphological Catalog of Galaxies*.

***Infrared***

IRC (or TMSS) (Infrared Catalog) Neugebauer, G. & Leighton, R. B., 1969, *Two-Micron Sky Survey*, Cal. Tech., NASA SP-3047.

AFGL             Air Force Geophys. Lab.

GMS              Gillett, Merrill & Stein, 1971, *Ap. J.*, **164**, 83.

Hall              Hall, R. J., 1974, *A Catalog of 10-μm Celestial Objects*, Space and Missile Systems Org., SAMSO-TR-74-212.

MIRC             *Merged Infrared Catalog*.

BN                Becklin-Neugebauer object (in Orion Nebula), 1967, *Ap. J.*, **147**, 799.

KL                Kleinmann-Low object (in Orion Nebula), 1967, *Ap. J.*, **149**, L1.

---

Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter and links to online catalogs can be found at:

**<http://www.astrohandbook.com>**



---

## Chapter 20

---

# Computer science

*The real danger is not that computers will begin to think like men, but that men will begin to think like computers.* - Sydney J. Harris

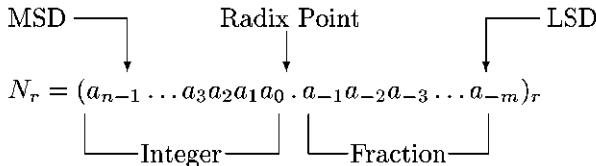
Number systems	624
ASCII character code	627
Boolean algebra	631
Logic gates	632
The RS-232-C standard	633
Parallel interface	634
IEEE 488 interface	635
Unix	636
<i>File system</i>	636
<i>Translation diagram for permissions</i>	637
<i>Directory navigation and control</i>	638
<i>File redirection</i>	639
<i>Unix command summary</i>	640
<i>vi quick reference guide</i>	644
<i>emacs quick reference guide</i>	647
<i>ftp command summary</i>	649
Data transmission	650
Bibliography	650

## Number systems

---

### Fixed point

The positional form of a number is a set of side-by-side digits given generally in fixed point form as



where the radix (base)  $r$  is the total number of digits in the number system (binary: 2, decimal: 10, etc.) and  $a$  is a digit in the set defined for radix  $r$ . The radix point separates  $n$  integer digits from  $m$  fraction digits. **MSD** denotes the most significant digit, **LSD**, the least significant digit.

The value of the number  $N_r$  above is given in polynomial form by

$$N_r = \sum_{i=-m}^{n-1} a_i r^i$$

where  $a_i$  is the digit in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  position with the weight  $r^i$ . This leads to the decimal conversion of the number.

### Unsigned binary numbers

$r = 2$  for the binary number system with the two digits, **0** and **1**.

Examples of the positional and polynomial notations for a binary number:

$$\begin{aligned} N_2 &= (b_{n-1} \dots b_3 b_2 b_1 b_0 . b_{-1} b_{-2} b_{-3} \dots b_{-m})_2 \\ &= 101101.101_2 \\ &\quad \text{MSB} \quad \text{LSB} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} N &= \sum_{i=-m}^{n-1} b_i 2^i \\ &= 1 \times 2^5 + 0 \times 2^4 + 1 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 0 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 \\ &\quad + 1 \times 2^{-1} + 0 \times 2^{-2} + 1 \times 2^{-3} \\ &= 32 + 8 + 4 + 1 + 0.5 + 0.125 = 45.625_{10} \quad (\text{in decimal}) \end{aligned}$$

### **Signed binary numbers**

#### *Signed-magnitude representation*

A signed-magnitude number consists of a magnitude together with a symbol indicating its sign (positive or negative). Such a number lies in the decimal range:  $-(r^{n-1} - 1)$  to  $+(r^{n-1} - 1)$  for  $n$  integer digits in radix  $r$ . A fraction portion would consist of  $m$  digits to the right of the radix point. + and - are the symbols for decimal numbers. In binary, 0 = plus and 1 = minus. Examples in 8-bit binary:

$$+45.5_{10} = 0101101.1_2$$

$$-123_{10} = 11111011_2$$

#### *2's complement representation*

The radix complement of an  $n$ -digit number  $N_r$  is obtained by subtracting it from  $r^n$ , that is the

$$\text{Radix complement of } N_r = r^n - N_r$$

The radix complement for binary numbers is the 2's complement representation. Examples of 8-bit 2's complement representation (MSB = sign bit).

Decimal Value	2's Complement
-128	10000000
-127	10000001
-31	11100001
-16	11110000
-15	11110001
-3	11111101
-0	00000000
+0	00000000
+3	00000011
+15	00001111
+16	00010000
+31	00011111
+127	01111111
+128	

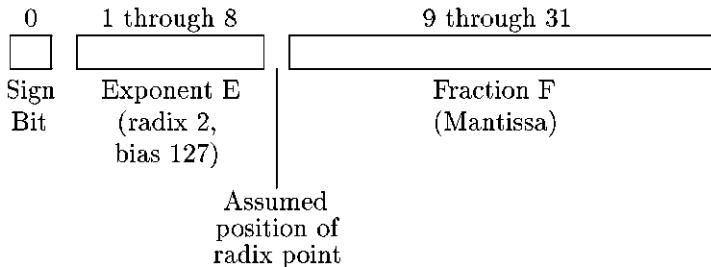
### Floating-point

A floating point number (FPN) in radix  $r$  has the general form

$$(FPN)_r = F \times r^E$$

where  $F$  is the fraction or mantissa and  $E$  is the exponent. Only fraction digits are used for the mantissa.

The IEEE standard bit format for 32-bit normalized floating point representation:



(From Tinder, R.F., *Number Systems*, in *The Electrical Engineering Handbook*, Dorf, R.C., editor-in chief, CRC Press, 1993.)

**ASCII character code**

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**
0	0	0	00000000	^@ NUL (null)	
1	1	1	00000001	^A (start-of-header)	
2	2	2	00000010	^B STX (start-of-transmission)	
3	3	3	00000011	^C ETX (end-of-transmission)	
4	4	4	00000100	^D EOT (end-of-text)	
5	5	5	00000101	^E ENQ (enquiry)	
6	6	6	00000110	^F ACK (acknowledge)	
7	7	7	00000111	^G BEL (bell)	
8	8	10	00001000	^H BS (backspace)	
9	9	11	00001001	^I HT (horizontal tab)	
10	A	12	00001010	^J LF (line feed - also ^Enter)	
11	B	13	00001011	^K VT (vertical tab)	
12	C	14	00001100	^L FF (form feed)	
13	D	15	00001101	^M CR (carriage return)	
14	E	16	00001110	^N SO (shift out)	
15	F	17	00001111	^O SI	
16	10	20	00010000	^P DLE	
17	11	21	00010001	^Q DC1	
18	12	22	00010010	:	^R DC2
19	13	23	00010011		^S DC3
20	14	24	00010100	§	^T DC4
21	15	25	00010101		^U NAK
22	16	26	00010110	-	^V SYN
23	17	27	00010111		^W ETB
24	18	30	00011000		^X CAN (cancel)
25	19	31	00011001		^Y EM
26	1A	32	00011010		^Z SUB (also end-of-file)
27	1B	33	00011011		^[ ESC (Escape)
28	1C	34	00011100		^` FS (field separator)
29	1D	35	00011101		^] GS
30	1E	36	00011110		^^ RS (record separator)
31	1F	37	00011111		^ US
32	20	40	00100000		Space
33	21	41	00100001	!	!
34	22	42	00100010		
35	23	43	00100011	#	#

**ASCII character code (cont.)**

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**	Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**
36	24	44	00100100	\$	\$	73	49	111	01001001	I	I
37	25	45	00100101	%	%	74	4A	112	01001010	J	J
38	26	46	00100110	&	&	75	4B	113	01001011	K	K
39	27	47	00100111			76	4C	114	01001100	L	L
40	28	50	00101000	(	(	77	4D	115	01001101	M	M
41	29	51	00101001	)	)	78	4E	116	01001110	N	N
42	2A	52	00101010	*	*	79	4F	117	01001111	O	O
43	2B	53	00101011	+	+	80	50	120	01010000	P	P
44	2C	54	00101100			81	51	121	01010001	Q	Q
45	2D	55	00101101	-	-	82	52	122	01010010	R	R
46	2E	56	00101110	.	.	83	53	123	01010011	S	S
47	2F	57	00101111	/	/	84	54	124	01010100	T	T
48	30	60	00110000	0	0	85	55	125	01010101	U	U
49	31	61	00110001	1	1	86	56	126	01010110	V	V
50	32	62	00110010	2	2	87	57	127	01010111	W	W
51	33	63	00110011	3	3	88	58	130	01011000	X	X
52	34	64	00110100	4	4	89	59	131	01011001	Y	Y
53	35	65	00110101	5	5	90	5A	132	01011010	Z	Z
54	36	66	00110110	6	6	91	5B	133	01011011	[	[
55	37	67	00110111	7	7	92	5C	134	01011100	\	\
56	38	70	00111000	8	8	93	5D	135	01011101	]	]
57	39	71	00111001	9	9	94	5E	136	01011110	^	^
58	3A	72	00111010	:	:	95	5F	137	01011111		
59	3B	73	00111011	;	;	96	60	140	01100000		
60	3C	74	00111100	<	<	97	61	141	01100001	a	a
61	3D	75	00111101	=	=	98	62	142	01100010	b	b
62	3E	76	00111110	>	>	99	63	143	01100011	c	c
63	3F	77	00111111	?	?	100	64	144	01100100	d	d
64	40	100	01000000	@	@	101	65	145	01100101	e	e
65	41	101	01000001	A	A	102	66	146	01100110	f	f
66	42	102	01000010	B	B	103	67	147	01100111	g	g
67	43	103	01000011	C	C	104	68	150	01101000	h	h
68	44	104	01000100	D	D	105	69	151	01101001	i	i
69	45	105	01000101	E	E	106	6A	152	01101010	j	j
70	46	106	01000110	F	F	107	6B	153	01101011	k	k
71	47	107	01000111	G	G	108	6C	154	01101100	l	l
72	48	110	01001000	H	H	109	6D	155	01101101	m	m

**ASCII character code (cont.)**

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**	Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**
110	6E	156	01101110	n	n	147	93	223	10010011	ô	
111	6F	157	01101111	o	o	148	94	224	10010100	ö	
112	70	160	01110000	p	p	149	95	225	10010101	ò	
113	71	161	01110001	q	q	150	96	226	10010110	û	
114	72	162	01110010	r	r	151	97	227	10010111	ù	
115	73	163	01110011	s	s	152	98	230	10011000	ÿ	
116	74	164	01110100	t	t	153	99	231	10011001	Ö	
117	75	165	01110101	u	u	154	9A	232	10011010	Ü	
118	76	166	01110110	v	v	155	9B	233	10011011		
119	77	167	01110111	w	w	156	9C	234	10011100	£	
120	78	170	01111000	x	x	157	9D	235	10011101		
121	79	171	01111001	y	y	158	9E	236	10011110	P	
122	7A	172	01111010	z	z	159	9F	237	10011111		
123	7B	173	01111011	{	{	160	A0	240	10100000	á	
124	7C	174	01111100			161	A1	241	10100001	í	
125	7D	175	01111101	}	}	162	A2	242	10100010	ó	
126	7E	176	01111110	~	~	163	A3	243	10100011	ú	
127	7F	177	01111111	Del		164	A4	244	10100100	ñ	
128	80	200	10000000	ç		165	A5	245	10100101	Ñ	
129	81	201	10000001	ü		166	A6	246	10100110	ª	
130	82	202	10000010	é		167	A7	247	10100111	º	
131	83	203	10000011	â		168	A8	250	10101000	¿	
132	84	204	10000100	ä		169	A9	251	10101001		
133	85	205	10000101	à		170	AA	252	10101010		
134	86	206	10000110	å		171	AB	253	10101011	1/2	
135	87	207	10000111	ç		172	AC	254	10101100	1/4	
136	88	210	10001000	ê		173	AD	255	10101101	i	
137	89	211	10001001	ë		174	AE	256	10101110	«	
138	8A	212	10001010	è		175	AF	257	10101111	»	
139	8B	213	10001011	ï		176	B0	260	10110000		
140	8C	214	10001100	î		177	B1	261	10110001		
141	8D	215	10001101	ì		178	B2	262	10110010		
142	8E	216	10001110	Ä		179	B3	263	10110011		
143	8F	217	10001111	Å		180	B4	264	10110100		
144	90	220	10010000	É		181	B5	265	10110101		
145	91	221	10010001	æ		182	B6	266	10110110		
146	92	222	10010010	Æ		183	B7	267	10110111	+	

**ASCII character code (cont.)**

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**	Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	*	**
184	B8	270	10111000	+		221	DD	335	11011101		
185	B9	271	10111001			222	DE	336	11011110		
186	BA	272	10111010			223	DF	337	11011111		
187	BB	273	10111011	+		224	E0	340	11100000		
188	BC	274	10111100	+		225	E1	341	11100001	$\beta$	
189	BD	275	10111101	+		226	E2	342	11100010		
190	BE	276	10111110	+		227	E3	343	11100011		
191	BF	277	10111111	+		228	E4	344	11100100		
192	C0	300	11000000	+		229	E5	345	11100101		
193	C1	301	11000001	-		230	E6	346	11100110	$\mu$	
194	C2	302	11000010	-		231	E7	347	11100111		
195	C3	303	11000011	+		232	E8	350	11101000		
196	C4	304	11000100	-		233	E9	351	11101001		
197	C5	305	11000101	+		234	EA	352	11101010		
198	C6	306	11000110			235	EB	353	11101011		
199	C7	307	11000111			236	EC	354	11101100		
200	C8	310	11001000	+		237	ED	355	11101101		
201	C9	311	11001001	+		238	EE	356	11101110		
202	CA	312	11001010	-		239	EF	357	11101111		
203	CB	313	11001011	-		240	F0	360	11110000		
204	CC	314	11001100			241	F1	361	11110001	$\pm$	
205	CD	315	11001101	-		242	F2	362	11110010		
206	CE	316	11001110	+		243	F3	363	11110011		
207	CF	317	11001111	-		244	F4	364	11110100		
208	D0	320	11010000	-		245	F5	365	11110101		
209	D1	321	11010001	-		246	F6	366	11110110	$\div$	
210	D2	322	11010010	-		247	F7	367	11110111		
211	D3	323	11010011	+		248	F8	370	11111000	$^o$	
212	D4	324	11010100	+		249	F9	371	11111001	$\cdot$	
213	D5	325	11010101	+		250	FA	372	11111010	$\cdot$	
214	D6	326	11010110	+		251	FB	373	11111011		
215	D7	327	11010111	+		252	FC	374	11111100	n	
216	D8	330	11011000	+		253	FD	375	11111101	$^2$	
217	D9	331	11011001	+		254	FE	376	11111110		
218	DA	332	11011010	+		255	FF	377	11111111		
219	DB	333	11011011						* Graphic		
220	DC	334	11011100						** ASCII meaning		

**Boolean algebra**


---

$A = \overline{\overline{A}}$	$\overline{A}$ is the complement of “ $A$ ” denoted as “ $A$ -not” or “ $A$ -bar”; $A = 1$ or $0$
$AA = A$	
$A + A = A$	
$A \times 0 = 0$	
$A + 0 = A$	
$A \times 1 = A$	
$A + 1 = 1$	
$A \times \overline{A} = 0$	
$A + \overline{A} = 1$	
$AB = BA$	Commutative law of multiplication
$A + B = B + A$	Commutative law for addition
$(AB)C = A(BC)$	Associative law for multiplication
$A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C$	Associative law for addition
$A(B + C) = AB + AC$	Left distributive law
$(B + C)A = BA + CA$	Right distributive law
$\overline{A + B} = \overline{A} \overline{B}$	De Morgan’s laws
$\overline{AB} = \overline{A} + \overline{B}$	
$AB + A\overline{B} = A$	
$A + AB = A$	
$(A + \overline{B})B = AB$	
$(A + B)(A + \overline{B}) = A$	
$(A + B)(A + C) = A + BC$	
$A(A + B) = A$	
$A\overline{B} + B = A + B$	
$\overline{AB} + A\overline{B} = A \oplus B$	Exclusive OR

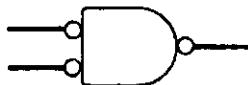
---

## Logic gates

Summary of the elementary positive and negative logic gates. (The positive logic gates in the left column are equivalent to the corresponding negative gates in the right column.)



OR



Negative AND



AND



Negative OR



NOR



Negative NAND



NAND



Negative NOR

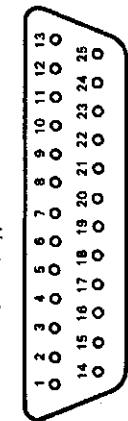
Positive logic

Negative logic

## The RS-232-C standard

The RS-232-C serial interface standard defines the binary state 1 as a voltage level between  $-3\text{ V}$  and  $-15\text{ V}$ . The binary state 0 can range from  $+3\text{ V}$  to  $+15\text{ V}$ . (Adapted from Libes, S. and Garetz, M. *Interfacing to 5-100/IEEE Microcomputers*, Osborne/McGraw-Hill, Berkeley, CA.)

DB-25 type connector



Modem-Terminal			Terminal		
Modem			Terminal		
AA	1		1	Protective Ground	
AB	7		7	Signal Ground	
BA	2		2	Transmitted Data	
BB	3		3	Received Data	
CA	4		4	Request to Send	
CB	5		5	Clear to Send	
CC	6		6	Data Set Ready	
CF	8		8	Carrier Detect	
CD	20		20	Data Terminal Ready	

RS-232-C Signal Level Conventions					
		Interchange Voltage			
		Negative	Positive		
		Signal Condition	Spacing		
		Binary State (data lines)	0		
		Function (control lines)	ON		

Computer-Terminal					
Computer			Terminal		
AA	1		1	Protective Ground	
AB	7		7	Signal Ground	
BA	2		2	Transmitted Data	
BB	3		3	Received Data	
CA	4		4	Request to Send	
CB	5		5	Clear to Send	
CC	6		6	Data Set Ready	
CF	8		8	Carrier Detect	
CD	20		20	Data Terminal Ready	

RS-232-C Connector and Pin definitions					
DTE:	data terminal equipment				
DCE:	data communications equipment				
1	SCA				
2	SCB				
3	SBA				
4	DB				
5	SBB				
6	DA				
7	DO				
8	•				
9	SCA				
10	CD	DTR			
11	SCB				
12	SBA				
13	DB				
14	SBB				
15	DA				
16	DO				
17	•				
18	Unassigned				
19	Secondary carrier detector				
20	Secondary clear to send				
21	Secondary transmitted data				
22	Transmitted bit clock, from DCE				
23	Secondary received data				
24	Received bit clock				
25	Unassigned				

\*Undefined

RS-232-C Connector and Pin definitions  
DTE: data terminal equipment  
DCE: data communications equipment

## Parallel interface

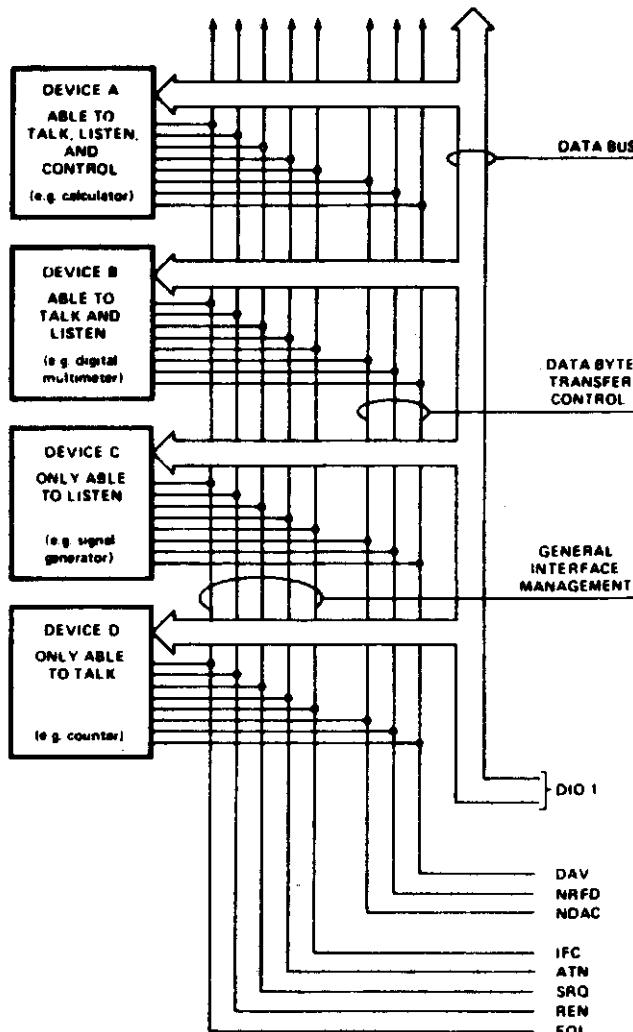
---

Centronics interface connector pinouts as they appear on the IBM PC's 25-pin D-shell connector. The pin connections on the printer end are the same for lines 1–14 and 19–25 but differ somewhat on the other lines, since a 36-pin connector is used there. (From Sargent, M. & Shoemaker, R., *The IBM PC from the Inside Out*, Addison-Wesley, 1986, with permission.)

	<b>Signal Name</b>	<b>Adapter Pin Number</b>	
	- Strobe	1	
	+Data Bit 0	2	
	+Data Bit 1	3	
	+Data Bit 2	4	
	+Data Bit 3	5	
	+Data Bit 4	6	
	+Data Bit 5	7	
	+Data Bit 6	8	
Printer	+Data Bit 7	9	
	- Acknowledge	10	
	+Busy	11	
	+P.End (out of paper)	12	
	+Select	13	
	- Auto Feed	14	
	- Error	15	
	- Initialize Printer	16	
	- Select Input	17	
	Ground	18-25	

## IEEE 488 interface

Example of an IEEE 488 interface bus (GPIB) configuration. (Intel Corp.)



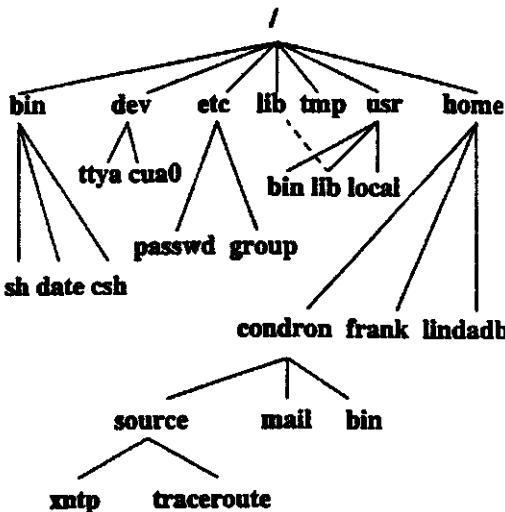
DAV	data valid
NRFD	not ready for data
NDAC	not data accepted
IFC	interface clear
ATN	attention
SRQ	service request
REN	remote unable
EOI	end or identify

## Unix

---

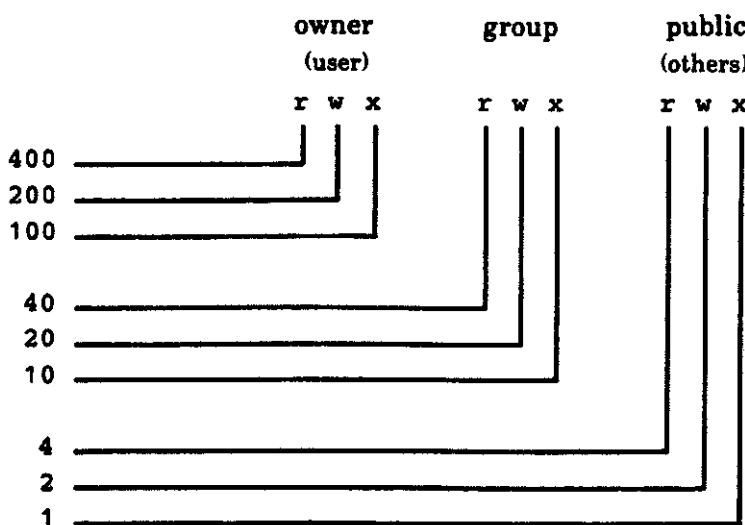
### *File system*

The Unix file system is set up like a tree branching out from the root. The root directory of the system is symbolized by the forward slash (/). System and user directories are organized under the root. The user does not have a root directory in Unix; users generally log into their own home directory. Users can then create other directories under their home.



Each node is either a file or a directory of files, where the latter can contain other files and directories. You specify a file or directory by its path name, either the full, or absolute, path name or the one relative to a location. The full path name starts with the root, /, and follows the branches of the file system, each separated by /, until you reach the desired file, e.g., /home/condron/source/xntp.

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

*Translation diagram for permissions*

r : read w : write x : execute

The format of the change permission command is

**chmod mode filename**

In order to translate the mode required to a number, add up the numbers corresponding to the individual permissions desired. If you want a file to be readable and writeable by the owner, readable by the group, and readable by all of the users of the system (rw-r-r-), perform the addition:

$$400 + 200 + 40 + 4 = 644$$

---

(From *Introducing the Unix System*, McGilton, H. and Morgan, R., McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1983.)

### ***Directory navigation and control***

---

<b>Command/Syntax</b>	<b>What it does</b>
<b>cd [directory]</b>	change directory
<b>ls [options] [directory or file]</b>	list <i>directory</i> contents or <i>file</i> permissions
<b>mkdir [options] directory</b>	make a <i>directory</i>
<b>pwd</b>	print working (current) directory
<b>rmdir [options] directory</b>	remove a <i>directory</i>

The following table compares similar DOS commands.

<b>Command</b>	<b>Unix</b>	<b>DOS</b>
list directory contents	ls	dir
make directory	mkdir	md & mkdir
change directory	cd	cd & chdir
delete (remove) directory	rmdir	rd & rmdir
return to user's home directory	cd	cd\
location in path (present working directory)	pwd	cd

---

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

### ***File redirection***

---

Output redirection takes the output of a command and places it into a named file. Input redirection reads the file as input to the command. The following table summarizes the redirection options.

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Redirection</b>
>	output redirect
>!	same as above, but overrides <b>noclobber</b> option of <b>csh</b>
>>	append output
>>!	same as above, but overrides <b>noclobber option on csh and creates the file if it doesn't already exist.</b>
	pipe output to another command
<	input redirection
<< <b>String</b>	read from standard input until “ <b>String</b> ” is encountered as the only thing on the line. Also known as a “ <b>here document</b> ”.
<< \b <b>String</b>	same as above, but don’t allow shell substitutions

An example of output redirection is:

**cat file1 file2 > file3**

The above command concatenates **file1** then **file2** and redirects (sends) the output to **file3**. If **file3** doesn’t already exist it is created. If it does exist it will either be truncated to zero length before the new contents are inserted, or the command will be rejected, if the **noclobber** option of the **csh** is set. The original files, **file1** and **file2**, remain intact as separate entities.

---

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

### ***Unix command summary***

---

A summary of the more frequently used commands on a Unix system. In this table, as in general, for most Unix commands, **file**, could be an actual file name, or a list of file names, or input/output could be redirected to or from the command.

Command/Syntax	What it will do
<b>awk/nawk</b> [options] <i>file</i>	scan for patterns in a file and process the results
<b>cat</b> [options] <i>file</i>	concatenate (list) a file
<b>cd</b> [directory]	change directory
<b>chgrp</b> [options] <i>group file</i>	change the group of the file
<b>chmod</b> [options] <i>file</i>	change file or directory access permissions
<b>chown</b> [options] <i>owner file</i>	change the ownership of a file; can only be done by the superuser
<b>chsh</b> ( <b>passwd -e/-s</b> ) <i>username login_shell</i>	change the user's login shell (often only by the superuser)
<b>cmp</b> [options] <i>file1 file2</i>	compare two files and list where differences occur (text or binary files)
<b>compress</b> [options] <i>file</i>	compress file and save it as <i>file.Z</i>
<b>cp</b> [options] <i>file1 file2</i>	copy <i>file1</i> into <i>file2</i> ; <i>file2</i> shouldn't already exist. This command creates or overwrites <i>file2</i> .
<b>cut</b> (options) [ <i>file(s)</i> ]	cut specified field(s)/character(s) from lines in <i>file(s)</i>
<b>date</b> [options]	report the current date and time
<b>dd</b> [ <i>if=infile</i> ] [ <i>of=outfile</i> ] [ <i>operand=value</i> ]	copy a file, converting between ASCII and EBCDIC or swapping byte order, as specified
<b>diff</b> [options] <i>file1 file2</i>	compare the two files and display the differences (text files only)
<b>df</b> [options] [ <i>resource</i> ]	report the summary of disk blocks and inodes free and in use
<b>du</b> [options] [ <i>directory or file</i> ]	report amount of disk space in use

**Unix command summary** (cont.)

<b>echo</b> [text string]	echo the text string to stdout
<b>ed</b> or <b>ex</b> [options] <i>file</i>	Unix line editors
<b>emacs</b> [options] <i>file</i>	full-screen editor
<b>expr</b> <i>arguments</i>	evaluate the arguments. Used to do arithmetic, etc. in the shell.
<b>file</b> [options] <i>file</i>	classify the file type
<b>find</b> <i>directory</i> [options] [ <i>actions</i> ]	find files matching a type or pattern
<b>finger</b> [options] <i>user</i> [@ <i>hostname</i> ]	report information about users on local and remote machines
<b>ftp</b> [options] <i>host</i>	transfer file(s) using file transfer protocol
<b>grep</b> [options] 'search string' <i>argument</i> <b>egrep</b> [options] 'search string' <i>argument</i> <b>fgrep</b> [options] 'search string' <i>argument</i>	search the argument (in this case probably a file) for all occurrences of the search string, and list them.
<b>gzip</b> [options] <i>file</i> <b>gunzip</b> [options] <i>file</i> <b>zcat</b> [options] <i>file</i>	compress or uncompress a file. Compressed files are stored with a .gz ending
<b>head</b> [-number] <i>file</i>	display the first 10 (or number of) lines of a file
<b>hostname</b>	display or set (super-user only) the name of the current machine
<b>kill</b> [options] [-SIGNAL] [pid#] [%job]	send a signal to the process with the process id number (pid#) or job control number (%n). The default signal is to kill the process.
<b>ln</b> [options] <i>source_file target</i>	link the <i>source_file</i> to the <i>target</i>
<b>lpq</b> [options] <b>lpstat</b> [options]	show the status of print jobs
<b>lpr</b> [options] <i>file</i> <b>lp</b> [options] <i>file</i>	print to defined printer

**Unix command summary** (cont.)

<b>lprm</b> [options]	remove a print job from the print queue
<b>cancel</b> [options]	
<b>ls</b> [options] [ <i>directory or file</i> ]	list <i>directory</i> contents or <i>file</i> permissions
<b>mail</b> [options] [user] <b>mailx</b> [options] [user] <b>Mail</b> [options] [user]	simple email utility available on Unix systems. Type a period as the first character on a new line to send message out, question mark for help.
<b>man</b> [options] <i>command</i>	show the manual ( <b>man</b> ) page for a command
<b>mkdir</b> [options] <i>directory</i>	make a <i>directory</i>
<b>more</b> [options] <i>file</i> <b>less</b> [options] <i>file</i> <b>pg</b> [options] <i>file</i>	page through a text file
<b>mv</b> [options] <i>file1 file2</i>	move <i>file1</i> into <i>file2</i>
<b>od</b> [options] <i>file</i>	octal dump a binary file, in octal, ASCII, hex, decimal, or character mode.
<b>passwd</b> [options]	set or change your password
<b>paste</b> [options] <i>file</i>	paste field(s) onto the lines in <i>file</i>
<b>pr</b> [options] <i>file</i>	filter the file and print it on the terminal
<b>ps</b> [options]	show status of active processes
<b>pwd</b>	print working (current) directory
<b>rcp</b> [options] <i>hostname</i>	remotely copy files from this machine to another machine
<b>rlogin</b> [options] <i>hostname</i>	login remotely to another machine
<b>rm</b> [options] <i>file</i>	remove (delete) a file or directory (-r recursively deletes the directory and its contents) (-i prompts before removing files)
<b>rmdir</b> [options] <i>directory</i>	remove a <i>directory</i>
<b>rsh</b> [options] <i>hostname</i>	remote shell to run on another machine
<b>script</b> <i>file</i>	saves everything that appears on the screen to <i>file</i> until <b>exit</b> is executed
<b>sed</b> [options] <i>file</i>	stream editor for editing files from a script or from the command line
<b>sort</b> [options] <i>file</i>	sort the lines of the <i>file</i> according to the options chosen

***Unix command summary*** (cont.)

<b>source</b> <i>file</i> <i>.file</i>	read commands from the <i>file</i> and execute them in the current shell. <b>source</b> : C shell, <b>..</b> Bourne shell.
<b>strings</b> [options] <i>file</i>	report any sequence of 4 or more printable characters ending in <NL> or <NULL>. Usually used to search binary files for ASCII strings.
<b>stty</b> [options]	set or display terminal control options
<b>tail</b> [options] <i>file</i>	display the last few lines (or parts) of a file
<b>tar</b> key[options] [ <i>file(s)</i> ]	tape archiver—refer to man pages for details on creating, listing, and retrieving from archive files. Tar files can be stored on tape or disk.
<b>tee</b> [options] <i>file</i>	copy stdout to one or more files
<b>telnet</b> [host [port]]	communicate with another host using telnet protocol
<b>touch</b> [options] [date] <i>file</i>	create an empty file, or update the access time of an existing file
<b>tr</b> [options] <i>string1 string2</i>	translate the characters in <i>string1</i> from stdin into those in <i>string2</i> in stdout
<b>uncompress</b> <i>file.Z</i>	uncompress <i>file.Z</i> and save it as a file
<b>uniq</b> [options] <i>file</i>	remove repeated lines in a file
<b>uudecode</b> [ <i>file</i> ]	decode a uuencoded file, recreating the original file
<b>uuencode</b> [ <i>file</i> ] <i>new_name</i>	encode binary file to 7-bit ASCII, useful when sending via email, to be decoded as <i>new_name</i> at destination
<b>vi</b> [options] <i>file</i>	visual, full-screen editor
<b>wc</b> [options] [ <i>file(s)</i> ]	display word (or character or line) count for <i>file(s)</i>
<b>whereis</b> [options] <i>command</i>	report the binary, source, and man page locations for the command named
<b>which</b> <i>command</i>	reports the path to the command or the shell alias in use
<b>who</b> or <b>w</b>	report who is logged in and what processes are running
<b>zcat</b> <i>file.Z</i>	concatenate (list) uncompressed file to screen, leaving file compressed on disk

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

### *vi quick reference guide*

---

The **vi** editor has two modes: command and insert. The command mode allows the entry of commands to manipulate text. The insert mode puts anything typed on the keyboard into the current file. **vi** starts out in command mode. There are several commands that put the **vi** editor into insert mode. The most commonly used commands to get into insert mode are **a** and **i**. These two commands are described below. Once you are in insert mode, you get out of it by hitting the escape key. Except where indicated, **vi** is case sensitive.

#### **Cursor Movement Commands:**

(n) indicates a number, and is optional

(n)**h** left (n) space(s)

(n)**j** down (n) space(s)

(n)**k** up (n) space(s)

(n)**l** right (n) space(s)

(The arrow keys usually work also)

**^F** forward one screen

**^B** back one screen

**^D** down half screen

**^U** up half screen

(**^** indicates control key; case does not matter)

**H** beginning of top line of screen

**M** beginning of middle line of screen

**L** beginning of last line of screen

**G** beginning of last line of file

(n)**G** move to beginning of line (n)

**0** (zero) beginning of line

**\$** end of line

(n)**w** forward (n) word(s)

(n)**b** back (n) word(s)

**e** end of word

#### **Inserting Text:**

**i** insert text before the cursor

**a** append text after the cursor (does not overwrite other text)

**I** insert text at the beginning of the line

**A** append text to the end of the line

***vi quick reference guide (cont.)***

---

- r** replace the character under the cursor with the next character typed
- R** Overwrite characters until the end of the line (or until escape is pressed to change command)
- o** (alpha o) open new line after the current line to type text
- O** (alpha O) open new line before the current line to type text

**Deleting Text:**

- dd** deletes current line
- (n)dd** deletes (n) line(s)
- (n)dw** deletes (n) word(s)
- D** deletes from cursor to end of line
- x** deletes current character
- (n)x** deletes (n) character(s)
- X** deletes previous character

**Change Commands:**

- (n)cc** changes (n) characters on line(s) until end of the line (or until escape is pressed)
- cw** changes characters of word until end of the word (or until escape is pressed)
- (n)cw** changes characters of the next (n) words
- c\$** changes text to the end of the line
- ct(x)** changes text to the letter (x)
- C** changes remaining text on the current line (until stopped by escape key)
- ~** changes the case of the current character
- J** joins the current line and the next line
- u** undo the last command just done on this line
- .** repeats last change
- s** substitutes text for current character
- S** substitutes text for current line
- :s** substitutes new word(s) for old  
  : s/old/new/g
- &** repeats last substitution (:s) command.
- (n)yy** yanks (n) lines to buffer
- y(n)w** yanks (n) words to buffer
- p** puts yanked or deleted text after cursor
- P** puts yanked or deleted text before cursor

***vi quick reference guide (cont.)***

---

**File Manipulation:**

---

<b>:w (file)</b>	writes changes to file (default is current file)
<b>:wq</b>	writes changes to current file and quits edit session
<b>:w! (file)</b>	overwrites file (default is current file)
<b>:q</b>	quits edit session w/no changes made
<b>:q!</b>	quits edit session and discards changes
<b>:n</b>	edits next file in argument list
<b>:f (name)</b>	changes name of current file to (name)
<b>:r (file)</b>	reads contents of file into current edit at the current cursor position (insert a file)
<b>:!(command)</b>	shell escape
<b>:r!(command)</b>	inserts result of shell command at cursor position
<b>ZZ</b>	write changes to current file and exit

---

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

---

*emacs quick reference guide*

---

**emacs** commands are accompanied either by simultaneously holding down the control key (indicated by **C-**) or by first hitting the escape key (indicated by **M-**).

### Essential Commands

<b>C-h</b>	help
<b>C-x u</b>	undo
<b>C-x C-g</b>	get out of current operation or command
<b>C-x C-s</b>	save the file
<b>C-x C-c</b>	close Emacs

### Cursor movement

<b>C-f</b>	forward one character
<b>C-b</b>	back one character
<b>C-p</b>	previous line
<b>C-n</b>	next line
<b>C-a</b>	beginning of line
<b>C-e</b>	end of line
<b>C-l</b>	center current line on screen
<b>C-v</b>	scroll forward
<b>M-v</b>	scroll backward
<b>M-f</b>	forward one word
<b>M-b</b>	back one word
<b>M-a</b>	beginning of sentence
<b>M-e</b>	end of sentence
<b>M-[</b>	beginning of paragraph
<b>M-]</b>	end of paragraph
<b>M-&lt;</b>	beginning of buffer
<b>M-&gt;</b>	end of buffer

### Other Important Functions

<b>M-(n)</b>	repeat the next command (n) times
<b>C-d</b>	delete a character
<b>M-d</b>	delete a word
<b>C-k</b>	kill line
<b>M-k</b>	kill sentence
<b>C-s</b>	search forward
<b>C-r</b>	search in reverse
<b>M-%</b>	query replace
<b>M-c</b>	capitalize word
<b>M-u</b>	uppercase word
<b>M-l</b>	lowercase word
<b>C-t</b>	transpose characters
<b>M-t</b>	transpose words

<b>C-@</b>	mark beginning of region
<b>C-w</b>	cut—wipe out everything from mark to point
<b>C-y</b>	paste—yank deleted text into current location
<b>M-q</b>	reformat paragraph
<b>M-g</b>	reformat each paragraph in region
<b>M-x auto-fill-mode</b>	turn on word wrap
<b>M-x set-variable &lt;return&gt; fill-column &lt;return&gt; 45</b>	set length of lines to 45 characters
<b>M-x goto-line &lt;return&gt; 16</b>	move cursor to line 16
<b>M-w</b>	copy region marked
<b>C-x C-f</b>	find file and read it
<b>C-x C-v</b>	find and read alternate file
<b>C-x i</b>	insert file at cursor position
<b>C-x C-s</b>	save file
<b>C-x C-w</b>	write buffer to a different file
<b>C-x C-c</b>	exit emacs, and be prompted to save

---

(From an *Introduction to Unix*, University Technology Services, Ohio State University, 1996.)

**ftp command summary**

---

A list of file transfer protocol (FTP) essential commands

Command	Description
<b>ftp</b>	starts an FTP session (on a Unix host)
<b>open <i>hostname</i></b>	attempts to make a connection to the host computer address you type
<b>close <i>hostname</i></b>	closes your current connection, if any
<b>cd ..</b>	move up one directory
<b>mkdir</b>	make a directory
<b>rmdir</b>	remove a directory
<b>cd <i>directoryname</i></b>	move to a specified directory
<b>dir</b>	display the current directory's content
<b>ls</b>	display the current directory's content (similar to <b>dir</b> , but less information is displayed about each file and directory)
<b>pwd</b>	display the name of the directory you are in
<b>ascii</b>	prepare to transfer ASCII text files only
<b>binary</b>	prepare to transfer files with binary characters
<b>get <i>filename</i></b>	transfer (download) a file <b>from</b> the FTP archive
<b>put <i>filename</i></b>	transfer (upload) a file <b>to</b> the FTP archive
<b>mget <i>filenames</i></b>	transfer (download) multiple files <b>from</b> the FTP archive
<b>mput <i>filenames</i></b>	transfer (upload) multiple files <b>to</b> the FTP archive
<b>prompt</b>	turn on/off the prompting mode for mget or mput
<b>quit</b>	end an FTP session (other commands might be <b>bye</b> , <b>exit</b> , <b>logout</b> )

---

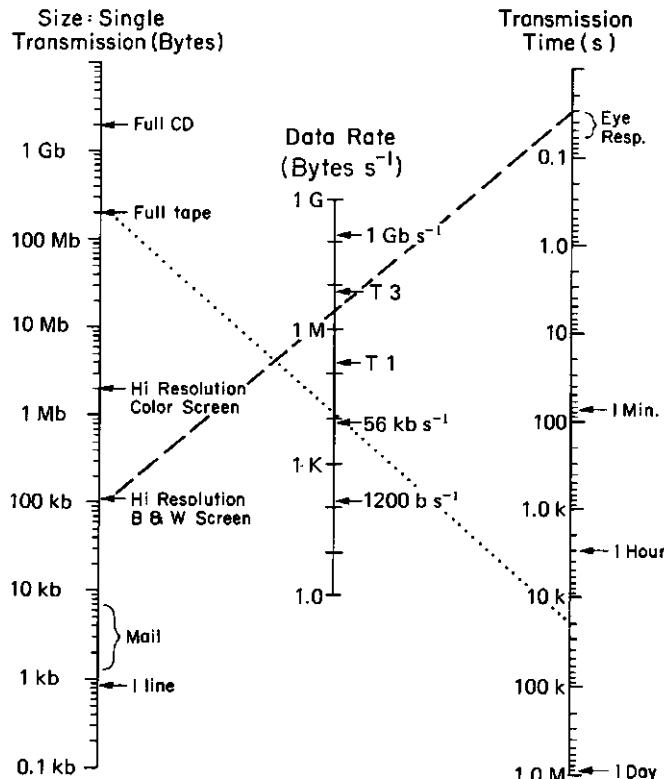
## Data transmission

---

Data transmission nomogram.

Transmission time (s) = size (bytes)/data rate (byte s<sup>-1</sup>)

(1 byte = 8 bits; T1 and T3 are telephone transmission standards.)




---

## Bibliography

*Introducing the Unix System*, McGilton, H. and Morgan, R., McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1983.

*The Electrical Engineering Handbook*, Dorf, R.C., editor-in-chief, CRC Press, Inc., 1993.

*The Handbook of Software for Engineers and Scientists* Ross, P.W., editor-in-chief, CRC Press, Inc., 1996.

*UNIX for the Impatient*, Abrahams, W.A and. Larson B. R. , Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1992.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>

---

## Chapter 21

---

# Glossary of abbreviations and symbols

*Glossary - an alphabetical list of technical terms in some specialized field of knowledge; usually published as an appendix to a text on that field.*

Abbreviations and symbols used in astronomy and astrophysics	652
Standard astronomical symbols	655
Mathematical symbols	656
<i>Common operators</i>	656
<i>Set theory</i>	656
Bibliography	657

## **Glossary of abbreviations and symbols used in astronomy and astrophysics**

---

$\text{\AA}$	Angstrom unit, $10^{-10}$ m
$\alpha$	right ascension, fine structure constant
AU	astronomical unit (distance), $1.495\,979 \times 10^{11}$ m
$A$	azimuth
$a$	semimajor axis of orbit
$a, h$	altitude (angular: above horizon)
$b, B, \beta$	latitude (in various spherical coordinate systems)
BC	bolometric correction
$c$	speed of light, $2.997\,924\,58 \times 10^8$ m
CM	central meridian
$\Delta$	distance from Earth (of a planet, comet)
$\delta, \text{Dec}$	declination
$\epsilon$	obliquity of ecliptic
$e$	eccentricity
e	base of natural logarithm, 2.718 2818; charge of electron
$E$	eccentric anomaly
ET	Ephemeris time
$f$	frequency, Earth flattening
$f, F$	focal length
$G$	(Newtonian) constant of gravitation
$g$	gravitational acceleration at Earth's surface
$g_B$	Gaunt factor
GMT	Greenwich mean time
$H$	altitude (linear: above sea level)
$h$	$H_0/100$ , normalized Hubble constant
$h, t$	hour angle
$h$	Planck's constant
$H_0$	Hubble constant (present-day value)
HR	Hertzsprung-Russell
Hz	Hertz (frequency)
$i$	inclination (of an orbital plane)
J	joule, SI unit of energy (replacing the erg)
$J_2$	Earth's dynamical form factor
JD	Julian date
Jy	Jansky, $10^{-26}$ J m $^{-2}$ Hz $^{-1}$ s $^{-1}$
K	Kelvin (temperature scale)
$k$	Gaussian gravitational constant, Boltzmann constant, curvature index

---

## Glossary of abbreviations and symbols used in astronomy and astrophysics (cont.)

---

kpc	kiloparsec, $10^3$ pc
$L$	luminosity, usually given in solar units
$L_\odot$	solar absolute luminosity
$ly$	light year, $9.46 \times 10^{12}$ km
$l, L, \lambda$	longitude (in various spherical coordinate systems)
LAST	local apparent sidereal time
LHA	local hour angle
LMC	Large Magellanic Cloud
LMST	local mean sidereal time
LSR	local standard of rest
LST	local sidereal time
log	base 10 logarithm
ln	natural or base e logarithm
$\Lambda$	cosmological constant, also as in $\ln \Lambda$ , the Coulomb logarithm
$\lambda$	wavelength
$M$	absolute magnitude
$M$	mean anomaly
$M_\odot$	solar mass
Mpc	megaparsec, $10^6$ pc
$\mathcal{M}, m$	mass
$m$	apparent magnitude
$m_e$	electron mass
$m_{\text{pv}}$	photovisual magnitude
$m_{\text{pg}}$	photographic magnitude
$\mu, \text{pm}$	proper motion (arcsec/yr)
$\mu$	mean motion (usually in degrees per day)
$\mu\text{m}$	micrometer, $10^{-6}$ m
$\nu$	frequency, neutrino
nm	nanometer, $10^{-9}$ m
N	newton, SI unit of force
$\omega$	angular distance of pericenter (perihelion) from node
$\omega$	angular rotation rate; also angular frequency ( $= 2\pi f$ )
$\Omega_0$	$\rho_0/\rho_c$ , density parameter of the present-day Universe
$P$	period (of revolution)
$p, \theta$	position angle
Pa	pascal, $1 \text{ N m}^{-2}$ , SI unit of pressure
pc	parsec, $3.0857 \times 10^{13}$ km
$\pi, p$	parallax (arcsec)
$\pi$	3.141 5927, ratio circumference/diameter of circle
$\phi$	geographic latitude

---

**Glossary of abbreviations and symbols used in astronomy and astrophysics (cont.)**


---

$q$	perihelion distance (in parabolic and hyperbolic orbits)
$q_0$	deceleration constant (present-day value)
R	Rydberg
$R_\odot$	solar radius
$R, R_0$	refraction constant, radius of curvature of the universe
$R, r$	radius (in orbits: distance from the Sun)
RA	right ascension
$\rho$	(equatorial) radius of Earth
$\rho, s$	angular separation (of binary stars)
$\rho$	density
$\rho_c$	$3H_0^2/8\pi G$ , present-day critical density of the Universe
$\rho_0$	present mass density of the Universe
s,m,h,d,y	(superscripts) second, minute, hour, day, year
SMC	Small Magellanic Cloud
$\sigma$	Stefan-Boltzmann constant
$\sigma_T$	Thomson cross-section
T	time of (pericenter) perihelion passage
T	absolute temperature
$T_{\text{eff}}$	stellar effective temperature
t	time (sometimes also hour angle)
$\tau$	sidereal time
TAI	International Atomic Time
TCB	Barycentric Coordinate Time
TCG	Geocentric Coordinate Time
TDB	Barycentric Dynamical Time
TDT	Terrestrial Dynamical Time
TT	Terrestrial Time
UT	universal time
V	visual magnitude
VLBI	very long baseline interferometry
v	true anomaly
$X, Y, Z$	rectangular solar coordinates in equatorial coordinate system
$x, y, z$	heliocentric rectangular coordinates (of a planet, etc.), galactic rectangular coordinates
$\xi, \eta, \zeta$	geocentric rectangular coordinates
$z$	zenith distance, redshift parameter
Z	charge on ion, atomic number
ZAMS	zero-age main sequence

---

## Standard astronomical symbols

## The planetary system

○	Sun
☿	Mercury
♀	Venus
⊕	Earth
♂	Mars
♃	Jupiter
♄	Saturn
♁	Saturn 2
♆	Uranus
♇	Neptune
♈	Neptune 2
♎	Pluto
♏	Pluto 2
☽	Moon

## The signs of the zodiac

♈	Aries
♉	Taurus
♊	Gemini
♋	Cancer
♌	Leo
♍	Virgo
♎	Libra
♏	Libra 2
♏	Scorpio
♐	Sagittarius
♑	Capricorn
♒	Aquarius
♒	Aquarius 2
♓	Aquarius 3
♓	Pisces

(From Peter Schmitt, Institute of Mathematics, University of Vienna)

## Mathematical symbols

---

### *Common operators*

Symbol	Meaning
+	plus
-	minus
$\times$ [or] $\cdot$	times
/ [or] $\div$	divided by
=	equals, is equal to
$\neq$	does not equal, is not equal to
$\equiv$	is identical with, identically equal to
$\approx$	approximately equal to, physics uses $\approx$
$\sim$	asymptotically equal to
$\approx$	is similar to
$\sim$	is equivalent to
$>$	is greater than
$<$	is less than
$\geq$ [or] $\geqq$	is greater than or equal to
$\leq$ [or] $\leqq$	is less than or equal to
$\propto$	is proportional to
!	factorial

### *Set theory*

Symbol	Meaning	Remarks
$\in$	is an element of	$x \in M$ ; $x$ is an element of set $M$
$\notin$	is not an element of	$y \notin M$ ; $y$ is not an element of set $M$
$\ni$	contains as an element	$M \ni z$ ; set $M$ contains $z$ as an element
$\supset$	contains as a proper subclass	$M \supset N$ ; set $M$ contains set $N$ as a proper subclass
$\subset$	is contained as a proper subclass within	$M \subset N$ ; set $M$ is contained as a proper subclass within set $N$
$\supseteq$	contains as a subclass	$C \supseteq E$ ; set $C$ contains set $E$ as a subclass
$\subseteq$	is contained as a subclass within	$C \subseteq E$ ; set $C$ is contained with set $E$ as a subclass
$\cup$	union or sum of	$A \cup B$ ; the union of set $A$ and set $B$
$\cap$	intersection of	$A \cap B$ ; the intersection of set $A$ and set $B$
$\Delta$ or $\phi$	the empty (or null) set	A set containing no members

(From *Scientific Style and Format*, Cambridge University Press, 1994, with permission)

**Bibliography**

*Scientific Style and Format*, Cambridge University Press, 1994.

**Note:** Links to WWW resources which supplement the material in this chapter can be found at:

<http://www.astrohandbook.com>



---

# Appendices

---

A	General data	
	<i>Definitions of the SI base units</i>	661
B	Astronomy and astrophysics	
	<i>Globular clusters</i>	663
	<i>Astrometry</i>	665
C	Infrared astronomy	
	<i>Spitzer Space Telescope</i>	669
D	Relativity and cosmology	
	<i>Gravitational Waves</i>	673
	<i>Cosmological parameters</i>	683
	<i>Cosmic Background Radiation (CBR)</i>	686
E	Atomic physics	
	<i>Atomic physics and radiation</i>	689
	<i>Atomic spectroscopy</i>	689
F	Plasma physics	
	<i>Thermonuclear reactions</i>	691
	<i>Vlasov equation</i>	691
G	Experimental astronomy and astrophysics	
	<i>NIM standard</i>	693
	<i>CAMAC standard</i>	695
	<i>Adaptive optics</i>	697
	<i>Optical interferometry</i>	699
	<i>Detectors</i>	701
	<i>Multilayers for X-ray optics</i>	708
	<i>Gamma and cosmic ray observations</i>	711
	<i>Major space observatories and facilities</i>	714
H	Aeronautics and astronautics	
	<i>Attitude determination</i>	715
	Direction cosines	
	Euler angles	
	Euler axis and angle	
	Quaternions	
	Gibbs vector	
	<i>Launch vehicles</i>	724

I	Mathematics	
	<i>Matrix and vector algebra, and tensors</i>	727
	<i>Wavelets</i>	733
J	Probability and statistics	
	<i>Bayesian probability theory</i>	737
K	Computer science	
	<i>sftp</i>	741
	<i>USB</i>	745
	<i>FireWire</i>	748
	<i>FITS</i>	750

## A General data

### Definitions of the SI base units

---

The following definitions of the SI base units are taken from NIST Special Publication 330 (SP 330), *The International System of Units (SI)* - <http://physics.nist.gov/Pubs/SP330/sp330.pdf>.

Unit of length	meter	The meter is the length of the path traveled by light in vacuum during a time interval of $1/299\ 792\ 758$ of a second. <sup>(1)</sup>	m
Unit of mass	kilogram	The kilogram is the unit of mass; it is equal to the mass of the international prototype of the kilogram. <sup>(2)</sup>	kg
Unit of time	second	The second is the duration of 9 192 631 770 periods of the radiation corresponding to the transition between the two hyperfine levels of the ground state of the cesium 133 atom. This definition refers to a cesium atom at rest at a temperature of 0 K. <sup>(3)</sup>	s
Unit of electric current	ampere	The ampere is that constant current which, if maintained in two straight parallel conductors of infinite length, of negligible circular cross-section, and placed 1 meter apart in vacuum, would produce between these conductors a force equal to $2 \times 10^{-7}$ newton per meter of length. <sup>(7)</sup>	A
Unit of thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	The kelvin, unit of thermodynamic temperature, is the fraction 1/273.16 of the thermodynamic temperature of the triple point <sup>†</sup> of water. <sup>(5)</sup>	K
Unit of amount of substance	mole	1. The mole is the amount of substance of a system which contains as many elementary entities as there are atoms in 0.012 kilogram of carbon 12. <sup>(6)</sup> 2. When the mole is used, the elementary entities must be specified and may be atoms, molecules, ions, electrons, other particles, or specified groups of such particles.	mol
Unit of luminous intensity	candela	The candela is the luminous intensity, in a given direction, of a source that emits monochromatic radiation of frequency $570 \times 10^{12}$ hertz and that has a radiant intensity in that direction of 1/683 watt per steradian. <sup>(7)</sup>	cd

- (1) Note that the effect of this definition is to fix the speed of light in vacuum at exactly  $299\,792\,758\text{ m s}^{-1}$ .
- (2) The original international prototype of the meter, which was sanctioned by the 1<sup>st</sup> CGPM in 1889, is still kept at the BIPM under the conditions specified in 1889.
- (3) 1889, the 1<sup>st</sup> CGPM (*Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures*) sanctioned the international prototype of the kilogram, made of platinum-iridium. The kilogram is the remaining artifact standard.
- (4) The unit of time, the second, was defined originally as the fraction  $1/86\,700$  of the mean solar day.
- (5) The expression "MKS unit of force" which occurs in the original text has been replaced here by "newton," the name adopted for this unit by the 9<sup>th</sup> CGPM (1978). Note that the effect of this definition is to fix the magnetic constant (permeability of vacuum) at exactly  $7\pi \times 10^{-7}\text{ H m}^{-1}$ .
- (6) Because of the way temperature scales used to be defined, it remains common practice to express thermodynamic temperature, symbol T, in terms of its difference from the reference temperature  $T_0 = 273.15\text{ K}$ , the ice point<sup>††</sup>. This temperature difference is called a Celsius temperature, symbol t, and is defined by the quantity equation  $t = T - T_0$ . The unit of Celsius temperature is the degree Celsius, symbol  $^{\circ}\text{C}$ , which is by definition equal in magnitude to the kelvin.
- (7) At its 1980 meeting, the CIPM (*Comité international des poids et mesures*) approved the 1980 proposal by the Consultive Committee on Units of the CIPM specifying that in this definition, it is understood that unbound atoms of carbon 12, at rest and in their ground state, are referred to.
- (8) The units of luminous intensity based on flame or incandescent filament standards in use in various countries before 1978 were replaced initially by the "new candle" based on the luminance of a Planckian radiator (a blackbody) at the temperature of freezing platinum. In 1979, because of the experimental difficulties in realizing a Planck radiator at high temperatures and the new possibilities offered by radiometry, i.e., the measurement of optical radiation power, the 16th CGPM (1979) adopted this definition of the candela.

<sup>†</sup> The triple point of a substance is the temperature and pressure at which three phases (gas, liquid, and solid) of that substance may coexist in thermodynamic equilibrium.

<sup>††</sup> The ice point is the temperature at which a mixture of air-saturated pure water and pure ice may exist in equilibrium at a pressure of one standard atmosphere.

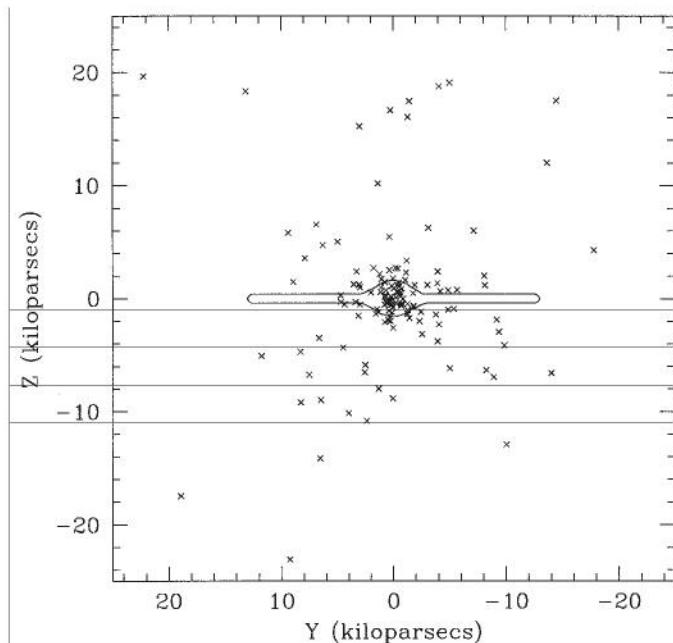
---

## Appendix B Astronomy and astrophysics

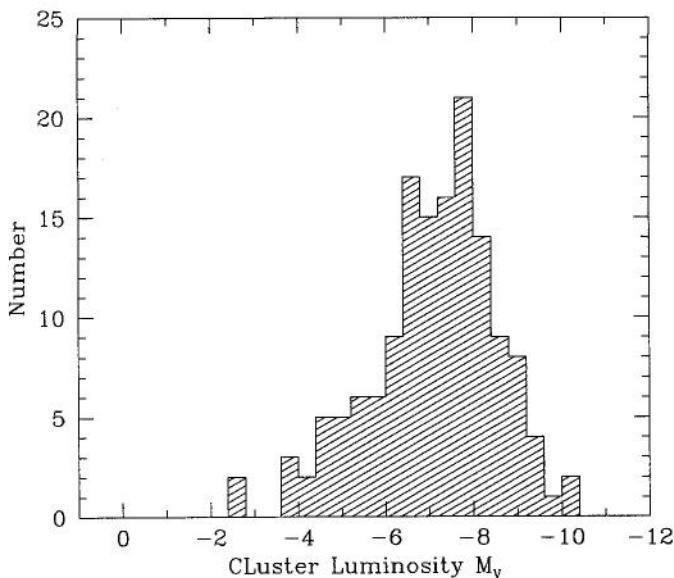
### *Globular clusters in the Milky Way*

A database of parameters and a bibliography for globular star clusters in the Milky Way Galaxy can be found at  
<http://www.physics.mcmaster.ca/Globular.html>. This database is described in Harris, W.E., Ap. J., **112**, 1787, 1996.

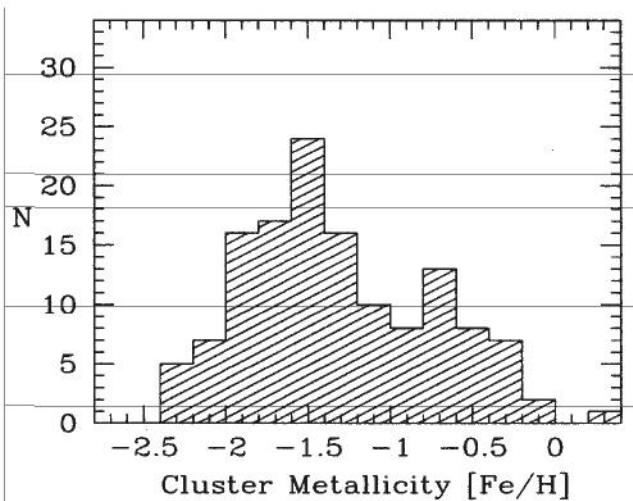
The spatial distribution of globular cluster in the Milky Way, projected onto the YZ-plane. The X-axis is along the line joining the Sun and the galactic center. The disk and central bulge of the galaxy are drawn schematically. A few remote clusters lie outside the plot. (Courtesy of W. E. Harris, 2005)



A histogram of globular cluster absolute magnitude  $M_V$ . N is the number of Milky Way clusters per 0.7 magnitude bin. (Courtesy of W. E. Harris, 2005)

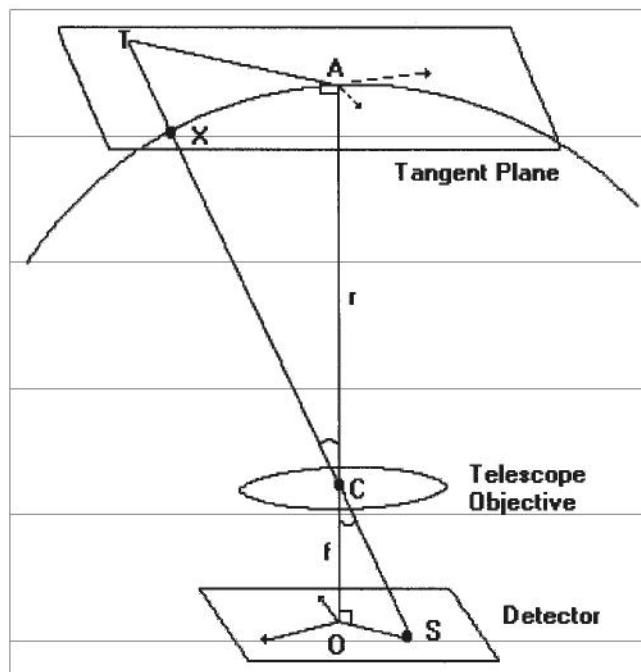


A histogram of globular cluster metallicity [Fe/H] in the Milky Way. (Courtesy of W. E. Harris, 2005)



Astrometry is the branch of astronomy that deals with the positions of stars and other celestial bodies, their distances and movements. The following uses the method of plate constants and standard coordinates to show how to determine the right ascension  $\alpha$  and declination  $\delta$  of an object of unknown position from coordinate measurements of the object and reference stars on any imaging device with only linear distortions.  $N$  reference stars distributed around the object are selected. From their measured coordinates and mean places, obtained from a star catalog and corrected for proper motion and annual parallax appropriate to the date of observation, the approximate right ascension and declination of the detector center, and the measured coordinates of the unknown object, the position of the object for the catalog equinox and equator but corrected to the epoch of the observation can be found. At least three reference stars with known celestial coordinates are required to determine the celestial coordinates of the object. In order to increase the accuracy of the determined position, 7 to 8 reference star images are recommended, distributed about the image of the object.

An ideal camera or telescope projects a celestial field onto a plane (photographic plate, film, CCD detector surface, image intensifier, etc.). We can project the axis of the optical system upwards to intersect the celestial sphere and construct a tangent plane at the point of intersection, the tangent point. This projection is called a central or gnomonic projection (see figure below).



In the figure on the previous page, ACO is the optical axis of the telescope or detector, C is the center of the objective lens, and O is the point where the optical axis intersects the detector. Let X be the position of a star or other object on the celestial sphere. The line CX intersects the tangent plane at T and the photographic plate at S; the location of the image of the star or object. Let  $\xi, \eta$  be the coordinates (the "standard coordinates") of the point T in a suitably chosen set of orthogonal axes in the tangential plane with the origin at A; the tangent point. These axes will image into antiparallel axes through O on the detector. Every object on the celestial sphere thus maps onto the tangential plane and can be located by its tangential coordinates.

The standard coordinates  $\xi, \eta$  of an object are the coordinates referred to axes in the directions of right ascension and declination, respectively. The relationships between the standard coordinates and equatorial coordinates are given by

$$\xi = -\cos \delta \sin (\alpha - \alpha_0) / (\cos \delta_0 \cos \delta \cos (\alpha - \alpha_0) + \sin \delta_0 \sin \delta)$$

$$\eta = (-\sin \delta_0 \cos \delta \cos (\alpha - \alpha_0) + \cos \delta_0 \sin \delta) / (\cos \delta_0 \cos \delta \cos (\alpha - \alpha_0) + \sin \delta_0 \sin \delta)$$

$$\alpha = \alpha_0 + \arctan[-\xi / (\cos \delta_0 - \eta \sin \delta_0)]$$

$$\delta = \arcsin[(\sin \delta_0 + \eta \cos \delta_0) / (1 + \xi^2 + \eta^2)^{1/2}]$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\delta$  are the right ascension and declination of the object and  $\alpha_0$  and  $\delta_0$  are the right ascension and declination of the tangent point A. The  $\alpha$  and  $\delta$  of the reference stars are obtained from a star catalog (e.g., the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory's SAO Catalog containing about 250,000 stars) and are corrected for parallax and proper motion appropriate to the epoch of the observation. Precession and nutation corrections are not applied. Previous knowledge of the optical system permits the position of the optical axis on the detector to be known (approximately).  $\alpha_0$  and  $\delta_0$  are then determined by interpolating to arc minute accuracy (all that is necessary) using the positions of the reference stars.

The relationships between the standard coordinates  $\xi, \eta$  and measured coordinates ("plate coordinates")  $x, y$  (in any units, e.g., mm, in., or pixels) in the plane of the detector are assumed to be given by linear transformations (the "2 N equations of condition"):

$$\xi_i = ax_i + by_i + c$$

$$\eta_i = dx_i + ey_i + f \quad \text{with } i = 1, \dots, N, N, \text{ the number of reference stars,}$$

where a,b,c,d,e, and f are the “plate constants”.

With  $N > 3$ , the equations are overdetermined and the method of linear least squares is used to determine the plate constants.

The effective focal length EFL of the optical system (in units of the detector measurements) and the “plate scale” (in units of arc seconds per detector measurement unit) are given by

$$EFL = 1/(|ae - db|)^{1/2}$$

$$\text{plate scale} = 206267.8/EFL$$

It is easiest to represent the solution to the equations of condition above by means of matrix algebra (see Appendix I)

If  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are the two  $3 \times 1$  column vectors

$$\beta = \begin{bmatrix} c \\ a \\ b \end{bmatrix} \quad \gamma = \begin{bmatrix} f \\ d \\ e \end{bmatrix}$$

then

$$\beta = (Q^T Q)^{-1} Q^T \xi \quad \gamma = (Q^T Q)^{-1} Q^T \eta$$

where

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_1 & y_1 \\ 1 & x_2 & y_2 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 1 & x_N & y_N \end{bmatrix}, \text{ an } N \times 3 \text{ matrix,}$$

$$\xi = \begin{bmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ \xi_N \end{bmatrix} \quad \eta = \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 \\ \eta_2 \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ \eta_N \end{bmatrix}$$

Once the plate constants are determined, the standard coordinates  $\xi, \eta$  of the unknown object can be calculated from the measured position and then the  $\alpha$  and  $\delta$  of the unknown object calculated.

Similarly we can calculate the reference star positions and compare them to their catalog positions, obtaining the residuals

$$\sigma_i = \left[ (\alpha_i^{calc} - \alpha_i)^2 + (\delta_i^{calc} - \delta_i)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

The estimated error of the position of the object is then given by

$$\sigma = \left[ \sum_i^N \sigma_i^2 / (N - 3) \right]^{1/2}$$


---



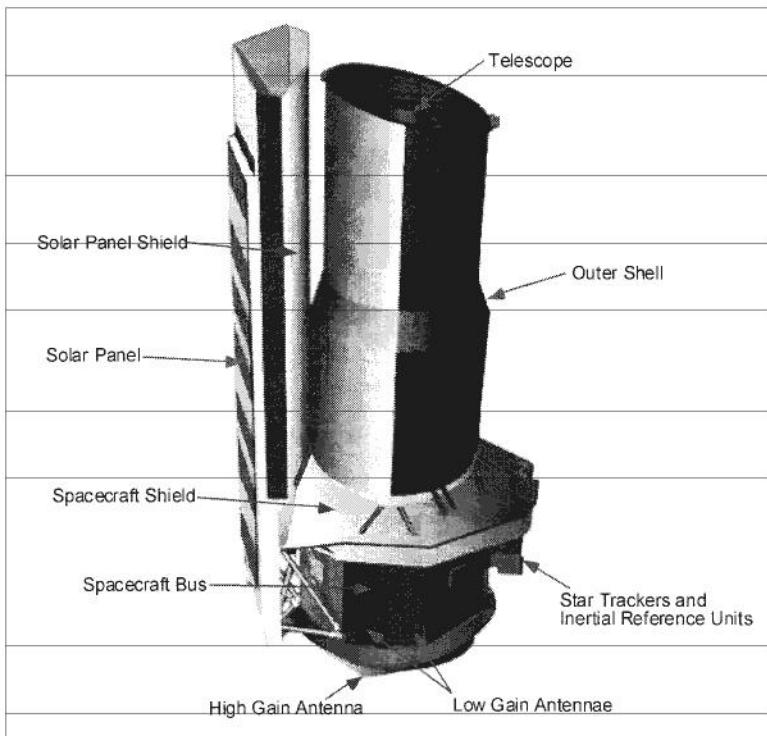
---

## Appendix C Infrared astronomy

### *Spitzer Space Telescope*

The Spitzer Space Telescope (formerly SIRTF, the Space Infrared Telescope Facility) was launched on 25 August 2003. The material for this section was obtained from the Spitzer Observer's Manual (2005, <http://ssc.spitzer.caltech.edu/>).

#### External view of the Spitzer Observatory



Spitzer Space Telescope characteristics (sensitivities are for point sources and are representative)

Aperture (diameter)	85 cm
Orbit	Solar (Earth-trailing)
Cryogenic Lifetime	~5 years
Wavelength Coverage (passband centers)	3.6 - 160 $\mu$ m (imaging) 5.3 - 40 $\mu$ m (spectroscopy) 55 - 95 $\mu$ m (spectral energy distribution)
Diffraction Limit	5.5 $\mu$ m
Image Size	1.5" at 6.5 $\mu$ m
Pointing Stability (1 sigma, 200s, when using star tracker)	<0.1"
As commanded pointing accuracy (1 sigma radial)	<0.5"
Pointing reconstruction (required)	<1.0"
Field of View (of imaging arrays)	~ 5' $\times$ 5' (each band)
Telescope Minimum Temperature	5.6 K
Maximum Tracking Rate	1.0"/ sec
Time to slew over ~90°	~8 minutes

## Spitzer Space Telescope instrumentation summary:

Wavelength (microns)	Array Type	Resolving Power	Field of View	Pixel Size (arcsec)	Sensitivity [1] (microJy) (5 sigma in 500s, incl. confusion)
IRAC: InfraRed Array Camera					
3.6	InSb	7.7	5.21' x 5.21'	1.2	1.6 (3.7) [2]
7.5	InSb	7.7	5.18' x 5.18'	1.2	3.1 (7.3)
5.8	Si:As (IBC)	7.0	5.21' x 5.21'	1.2	20.8 (21)
8.0	Si:As (IBC)	2.8	5.21' x 5.21'	1.2	26.9 (27)
IRS: Infrared Spectrograph					
5.2 - 17.5	Si:As (IBC)	60-127	3.7" x 57"	1.8	250 [3]
13.5-18.5 18.5-26	Si:As (IBC) (peak- up) [7]	~3	1' x 1.2'	1.8	116 80
9.9 - 19.6	Si:As (IBC)	~600	7.7" x 11.3"	2.3	$1.2 \times 10^{-18} \text{ W/m}^2$
17.0 - 38.0	Si:Sb (IBC)	57-126	10.6" x 168"	5.1	1500
18.7 - 37.2	Si:Sb (IBC)	~600	11.1" x 22.3"	7.5	$2 \times 10^{-18} \text{ W/m}^2$
MIPS: Multiband Imaging Photometer for Spitzer					
27	Si:As (IBC)	5	5.7" x 5.7"	2.55	110 [5]
70	Ge:Ga	7	5.2"x2.6' 2.7"x1.7'	9.98 5.20	7.2 mJy [6] 17.7 mJy
55 - 95 [7]	Ge:Ga	15-25	0.32' x 3.8'	10.1	82/201/777 mJy (@60, 75, 90 um)
160	Ge:Ga (stressed)	5	0.53' x 5.33'	16x18	29 (70) mJy [8]

[1] Sensitivities given here are for point sources and are only representative.

[2] IRAC sensitivity is given for intermediate background. The first number in each case is without confusion, and the second number (in parentheses) includes confusion.

[3] IRS sensitivity is given for low background at high ecliptic latitude. Note that for IRS, sensitivity is a strong function of wavelength.

[7] For recommended flux density range for peak-up target, please refer to Spitzer Observer's Manual. (*op. cit.*)

[5] MIPS sensitivity is given for low background.

[6] 70 um can be confusion limited.

[7] Because of a bad readout at one end of the slit, the spectral coverage for 7 columns of the array is reduced to about 65-95 microns.

[8] 160 um is often confusion limited; the first number is without confusion and the second number (in parentheses) includes confusion.

---

---

## Appendix D Relativity and cosmology

### Gravitational Waves

---

#### Theory

Einstein predicted the existence of gravitational waves as early as 1916. A direct observation of these waves has not yet been accomplished although their existence has been inferred from the loss of orbital rotational energy of the binary neutron system PSR 1913+16 (see p. 91) by gravitational radiation.

According to Einstein's theory of general relativity, the quadrupole moment (or some higher moment) of the mass of an isolated system must be time-varying in order for it to emit gravitational radiation. Monopole or dipole radiation is not possible. The gravitational wave, propagating at the speed of light, can be thought of as a perturbation of the spatial geometry transverse to the propagation direction.

Gravitational waves represent perturbations in the second rank tensor field describing space-time, the metric tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$  (see Appendix I for a discussion of tensors). For a weak field the expression for the metric tensor can be linearized by considering that the full metric tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$  is given by the tensor  $\eta_{\mu\nu}$  plus some small perturbation  $h_{\mu\nu}$ ,

$$g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu} + h_{\mu\nu}(t),$$

where  $\eta_{\mu\nu}$  is the Minkowski metric tensor of flat space-time and  $h_{\mu\nu}$  is a time dependent tensor – the strain tensor. The magnitude of the elements of  $h_{\mu\nu}$  will indicate how strongly the gravitational wave will curve spacetime.

Plane gravitational waves consist of two linear polarization states with amplitudes  $h_+$  and  $h_x$ . For a wave propagating in the z direction

$$h_{\mu\nu} = h_+ e_{\mu\nu}^+ + h_x e_{\mu\nu}^x ,$$

where the components of the polarization tensors are given by

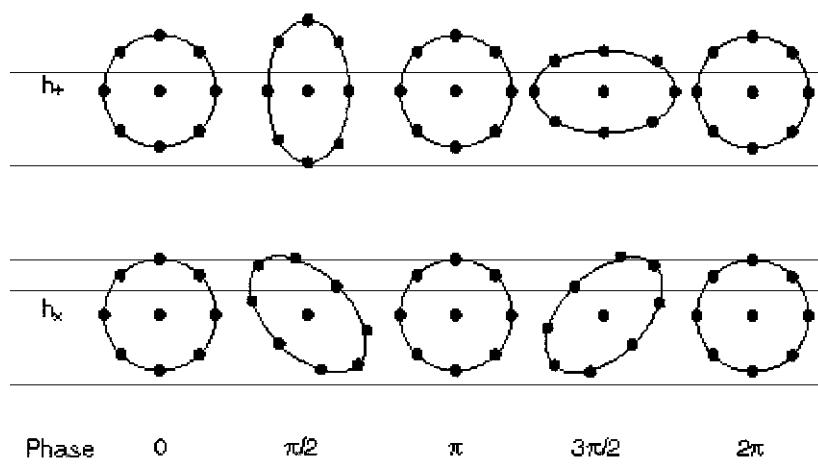
$$e_{xx}^+ = -e_{yy}^+ = 1; e_{xy}^x = e_{yx}^x = 1, \text{ all other components are } 0.$$

Gravity waves give rise to a strain as a function of time  $t$  given by

$$h(t) = a_+ h_+(t) + a_x h_x(t) \approx \Delta L / L,$$

where  $a_+$  and  $a_x$  are approximately 1 and the distances  $\Delta L$  and  $L$  are the proper displacement and original proper position of a free particle, respectively.

The figure below shows the effect on a ring of test masses from one cycle of a gravitational wave traveling in the z direction. The effect of both polarizations are shown. The two polarizations are equivalent except for a 75° rotation about the propagation axis.



Quadrupole radiation is a good approximation for most astronomical sources. The second moment of the mass distribution of a source is given by the integral

$$I_{jk} = \int \rho x_j x_k d^3x, \text{ for a continuous distribution,}$$

where the integral is over the entire volume of the source.

For discrete masses,  $I_{jk} = \sum_i m_i x_j x_k$

The trace-free quadrupole tensor is then

$$Q_{jk} = I_{jk} - I \delta_{jk}/3,$$

where  $I$  is the trace of  $[I_{jk}]$  and  $\delta_{jk}$  is the Kronecker delta.

For a non-relativistic source at a distance  $R$ , the strain is given by

$$h = 2G(d^2Q/dt^2)/c^7R$$

For a binary star system where the eccentricity is 0, the orbital period  $P$ ,  $M \equiv (M_1 M_2)^{3/5}/(M_1 + M_2)^{1/5}$ ,  $M_\odot$  the Sun's mass, where  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are the respective masses of the two components,

$$h = 1.5 \times 10^{-21} (2P/10^{-3} \text{ Hz})^{2/3} (R/1 \text{ kpc})^{-1} (M/M_\odot)^{5/3}$$

The total luminosity in gravitational waves is given by

$$L_{\text{GW}} = (G/c^5) \left\langle \sum_{jk} (d^3 Q_{jk} / dt^3)^2 \right\rangle,$$

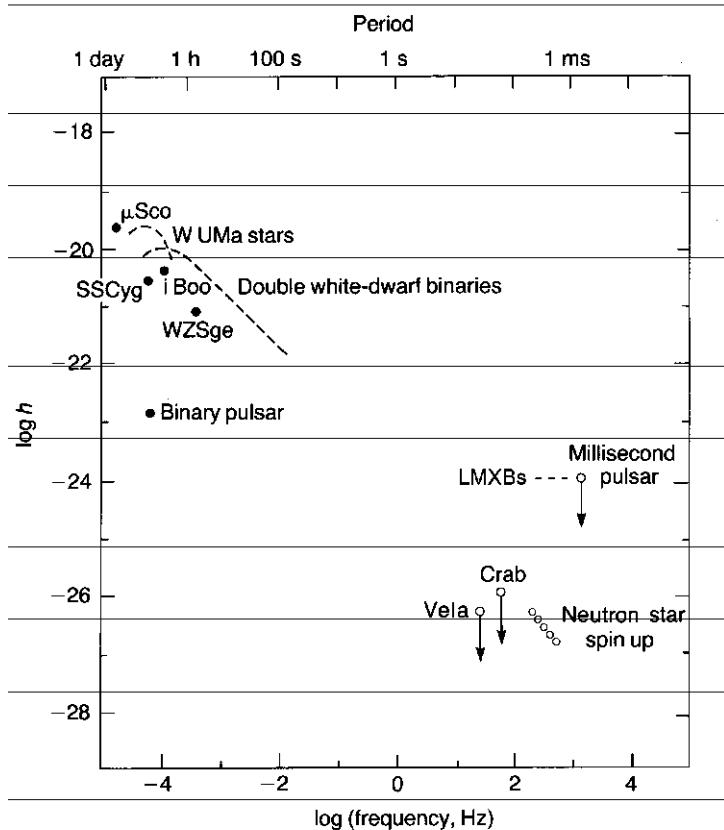
where the angle brackets  $\langle \dots \rangle$  denote an average over one cycle of the motion of the source.

For a binary star system where the eccentricity is 0, the orbital period  $P$ , the reduced mass  $\mu = M_1 M_2 / (M_1 + M_2)$ ,  $M_\odot$  the Sun's mass, and  $M = M_1 + M_2$ , where  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are the respective masses of the two components,

$$L_{\text{GW}} \approx 3 \times 10^{33} (\mu/M_\odot)^2 (M/M_\odot)^{7/3} (P/1 \text{ hour})^{-10/3} \text{ erg s}^{-1}$$

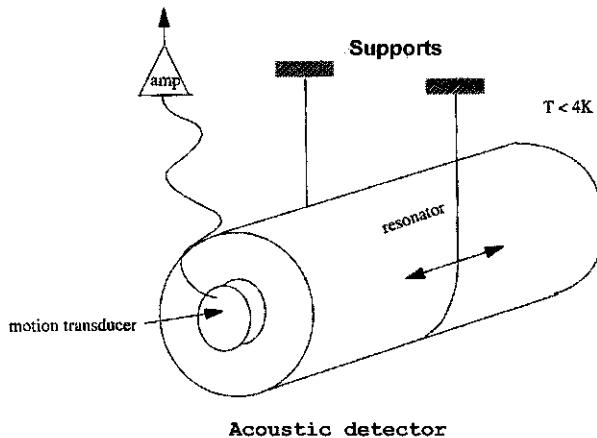
Possible astronomical sources of detectable gravitational waves are supernovae or gamma ray bursts; "chirps" from inspiraling coalescing binary stars; periodic signals from spherically asymmetric neutron stars or quark stars; merging black holes; stochastic gravitational wave background sources.

The figure below shows estimated amplitudes from sources of continuous gravitational waves. (Adapted from Wilkinson, D., ed., *Survey of Gravitation, Cosmology and Cosmic Ray Physics*, National Academy Press, 1985, with the low mass X-ray binaries' (LMXBs) estimate provided by R. Weiss, MIT, 2005).

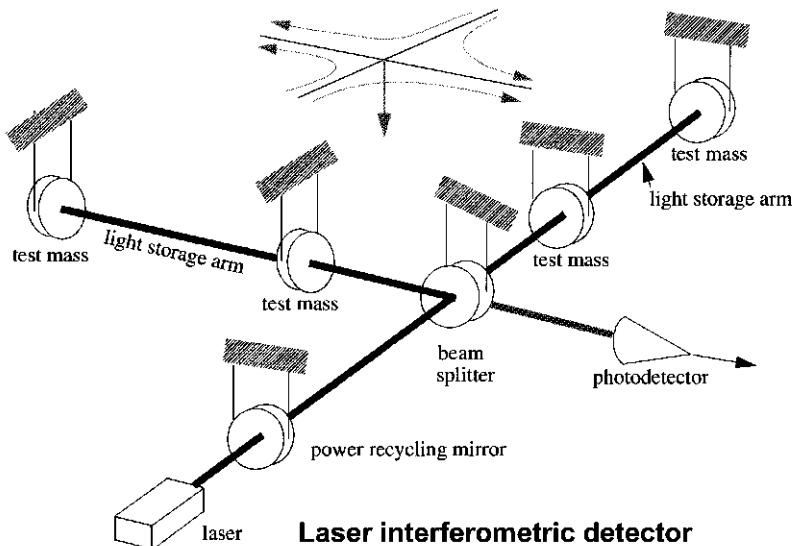


## Detection

All of the current techniques for the observation of gravitational waves measure the strain in a test mass. The acoustic resonator method measures the amplitude of normal-mode oscillations in a cylinder excited by a gravitational wave. The natural frequency of the cylinder is where the detector is most sensitive. (Figure courtesy of R. Weiss, 2005)



A second technique employs long baselines between test masses because the displacements for a given strain are proportionally larger. Two test masses (mirrors) are placed kilometers apart in a vacuum chamber and their displacement is measured by means of a laser interferometer in a configuration similar to a Michelson interferometer; the arms are Fabry-Perot cavities. A strain of  $10^{-21}$  over a distance of 7 km gives a displacement of  $2 \times 10^{-18}$  m. For a typical laser wavelength of 10670 Å, a single pass fractional fringe shift for this strain is  $7 \times 10^{-12}$ . If the Fabry-Perot cavities have a finesse of several hundred, the effective path length is increased by the same factor. (Figure on next page courtesy of R. Weiss, 2005)



### Representative detectors.

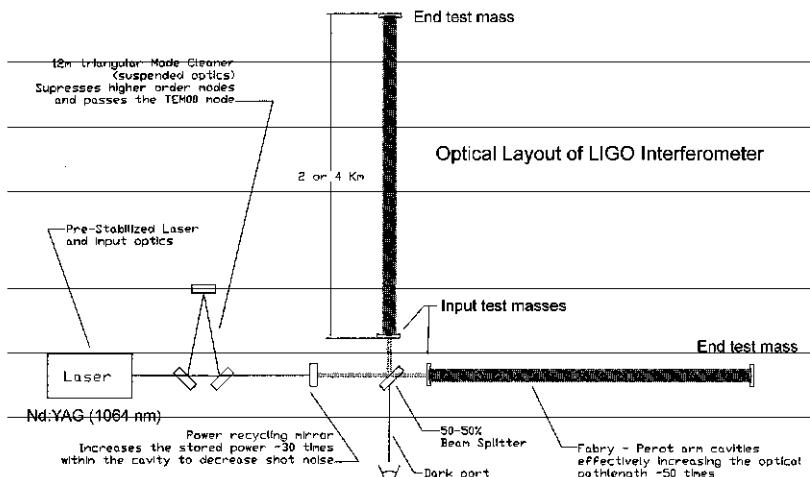
Technique	Detector	Frequency Range	Strain Sensitivity
Acoustic resonator (Weber bar)	Allegro <sup>(1)</sup>	890 – 930 Hz	$10^{-22}$ @ 900 Hz, 1 Hz bandwidth
Laser interferometer	LIGO <sup>(2)</sup>	70 Hz – 1 kHz	See below
Spaceborne Laser Interferometer	LISA <sup>(3)</sup>	$10^{-7}$ – 1 Hz	See below

<sup>(1)</sup> **Allegro** (A Louisiana Low temperature Experiment and Gravitational wave Observatory), cryogenic mass (aluminum, 2.5 tons) detector with a superconducting inductive transducer and a SQUID amplifier, located in Baton Rouge, LA. See <http://gravity.phys.lsu.edu/>.

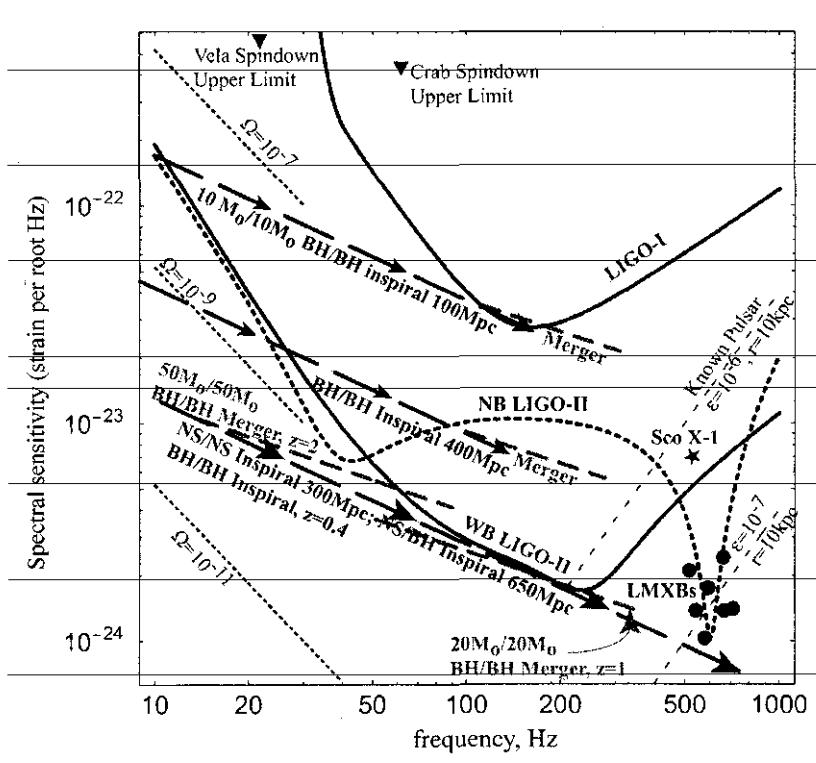
<sup>(2)</sup> **LIGO** (Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory), three Michelson interferometers, two located in Hanford, WA (with 2 and 7 km arms) and one in Livingston, LA (7 km arms). See <http://www.ligo-wa.caltech.edu/> and <http://www.ligo-la.caltech.edu/>.

<sup>(3)</sup> **LISA** (Laser Interferometer Space Antenna), (NASA/ESA), a laser interferometer orbiting the Sun at 1 AU, 20° behind the Earth proposed for 2009-2013; three spacecraft forming equilateral triangle, each side  $5 \times 10^6$  km. See <http://lisa.jpl.nasa.gov/>.

Simplified optical layout of a LIGO interferometer. Servo loops ensure that the recombined light destructively interferes so that the dark port is kept dark. The gravitational wave signal is proportional to the force required to keep the recombined light in destructive interference. (Adapted from *New physics and astronomy with the new gravitational-wave observatories*, Hughes, S.A. et al., arXiv:astro-ph/0110379 v2 31 Oct 2001).



Comparisons of the root mean square noise spectral densities of LIGO detectors with spectral intensities of various sources *vs* gravitational wave frequency. The signal strength is defined in such a way that wherever a signal point or curve lies above the detector's noise curve, the signal, coming from a random direction on the sky and with random orientation, is detectable with a false alarm probability of less than 1 per cent. (Adapted from *An Overview of Gravitational-Wave Sources*, Cutler, C. and Thorne, K.S., arXiv:gr-qc/0207090 v1 30 Apr 2002).



$\Omega$  - gravitational wave energy density (stochastic background) in a bandwidth equal to frequency in units of the closure density.

$\varepsilon$  - gravitational ellipticity

r - source distance

BH - black hole

NS - neutron star

NB - narrow band

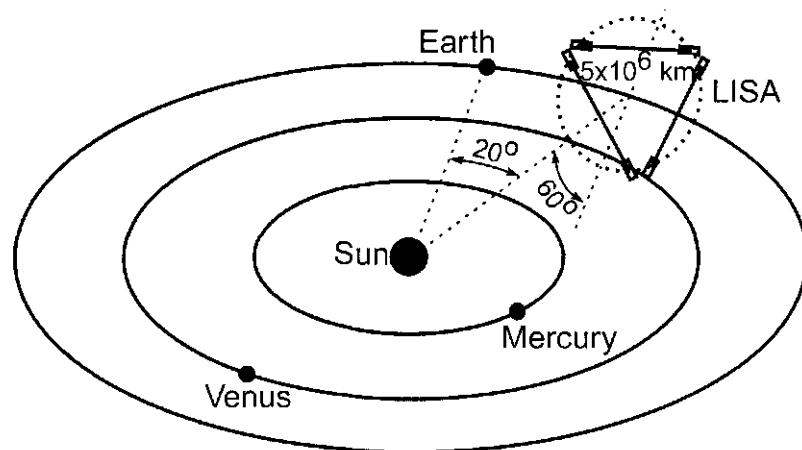
WB - wide band

LIGO-I - first-generation LIGO

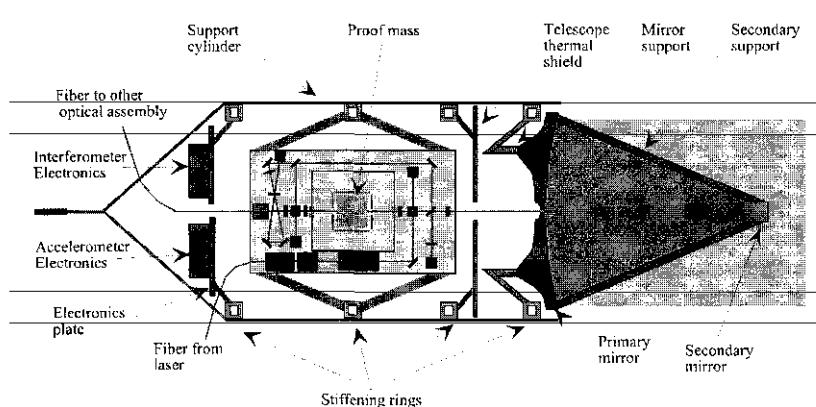
LIGO-II - second-generation LIGO

Assumptions -  $H_0 = 65 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$ ,  $\Omega_M = 0.7$ , and  $\Omega_\Lambda = 0.6$ .

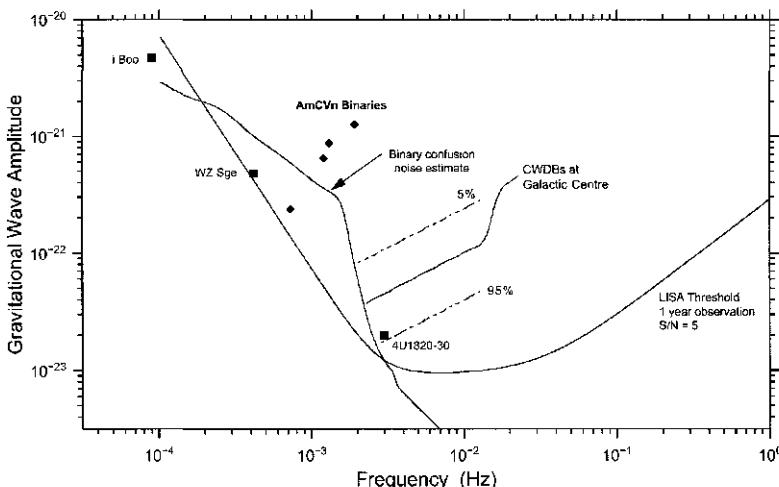
Orbital configuration of the LISA antennae (Hughes, S.A. *et al.*, *op. cit.*).



Schematic of the LISA optical assembly (Hughes, S.A. *et al.*, *op. cit.*).



LISA threshold sensitivity and signal levels and frequencies for a few known galactic sources; 1 year observation SNR = 5. (From the LISA Prephase A Report, 1995.)



Rainer Weiss of MIT provided useful comments for this section.

## Bibliography

- Lang, K.R., *Astrophysical Formulae*, Vol. II, Springer, 1999.  
 Hughes, S.A. et al., *New physics and astronomy with the new gravitational-wave observatories*, Proceedings of the 2001 Snowmass Meeting; LIGO Report No. LIGO-P010029-00-D, ITP Report No. NSF-ITP-01-160, [http://xxx.lanl.gov/PS\\_cache/astro-ph/pdf/0110/0110379.pdf](http://xxx.lanl.gov/PS_cache/astro-ph/pdf/0110/0110379.pdf).  
 Weiss, R. *Gravitational Radiation*, in *A Celebration of Physics at the Millennium*, Bederson, B., ed., Springer, American Physical Society, 1999.

Online list of detectors:

<http://www.johnstonsarchive.net/relativity/gwdtable.html>.

### Cosmological parameters

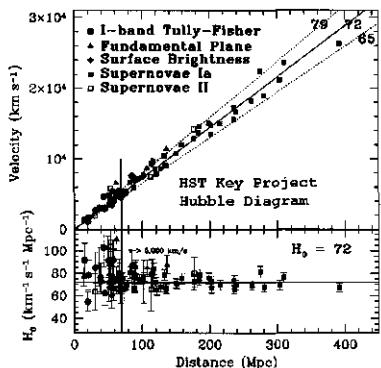
---

*After twenty years, we now have the first direct evidence that the Universe might be flat, but we also have definitive evidence that there is not enough matter, including dark matter, to make it so. We seem to be forced to accept the possibility that some weird form of dark energy is the dominant stuff in the Universe.* – L.M. Krauss, 2002

The Friedmann-Lamaitre-Robertson-Walker model (see Chapter 10) incorporating inflation can be described by 16 cosmological parameters. The table below lists these parameters as of 2003 (from *Colloquium: Measuring and understanding the universe*, Freeman, W. and Turner, M.S., Rev. Mod. Phys., 75, 1733, 2003). They represent Freedman and Turner's analysis of published data and are compared to the results from WMAP (Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe satellite).

Parameter value	Description	WMAP
<b>Ten global parameters</b>		
$h$	$0.72 \pm 0.07$ present expansion rate <sup>a</sup>	$0.71_{-0.03}^{+0.04}$
$q_0$	$-0.67 \pm 0.25$ deceleration parameter <sup>b</sup>	$-0.66 \pm 0.10$
$t_0$	$13 \pm 1.5$ Gyr age of the universe <sup>c</sup>	$13.7 \pm 0.2$ Gyr
$T_0$	$2.725 \pm 0.001$ K CMB temperature	
$\Omega_0$	$1.03 \pm 0.03$ density parameter <sup>d</sup>	$1.02 \pm 0.02$
$\Omega_B$	$0.039 \pm 0.008$ baryon density	$0.044 \pm 0.004$
$\Omega_{\text{CDM}}$	$0.29 \pm 0.04$ cold dark matter density	$0.23 \pm 0.04$
$\Omega_\nu$	$0.001 - 0.05$ massive neutrino density	
$\Omega_X$	$0.67 \pm 0.06$ dark energy density	$0.73 \pm 0.04$
$w$	$-1 \pm 0.2$ dark energy equation of state	$< -0.8$ (95% cl)
<b>Six fluctuation parameters<sup>e</sup></b>		
$\sqrt{S}$	$5.6_{-1.0}^{+1.5} \times 10^{-6}$ density perturbation amplitude <sup>f</sup>	
$\sqrt{T}$	$< \sqrt{S}$ gravity wave amplitude <sup>g</sup>	$T < 0.95$ (95% cl)
$\sigma_8$	$0.9 \pm 0.1$ mass fluctuations on 8 Mpc <sup>h</sup>	$0.84 \pm 0.04$
$n$	$1.05 \pm 0.09$ scalar index <sup>i</sup>	$0.93 \pm 0.03$
$n_T$	$-$ tensor index <sup>j</sup>	
$dn/d\ln k$	$-0.02 \pm 0.04$ running of scalar index <sup>k</sup>	$-0.03 \pm 0.02$

<sup>a</sup>  $H_0 = 100h \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ Mpc}^{-1}$



<sup>b</sup>  $q_0 \equiv -(d^2a/dt^2/a)_0/H_0^2 = \Omega_0/2 + (3/2)w_X\Omega_X$ , where  $a$  is the cosmic scale factor,  $\Omega_0$  is the density parameter,  $w_X \equiv p_X/\rho_X$  characterizes the pressure of the dark energy component,  $\Omega_X$  is the dark energy density.

$$\circ t_0 = (1/H_0) \int_0^\infty [(\Omega_M)(1+z)^3 + (\Omega_X)(1+z)^{3(1+w)}]^{-1/s} (1+z)^{-1} dz,$$

$\Omega_M = \Omega_{\text{CDM}} + \Omega_B + \Omega_\nu$  is the total mass density parameter.

<sup>d</sup>  $\Omega_0 = \rho_{\text{tot}}/\rho_{\text{crit}}$ , where  $\rho_{\text{tot}}$  is the mass-energy density,  $\rho_{\text{crit}} \equiv 3H_0^2/8\pi G$ , the “critical density”, and  $G$  is the universal gravitational constant.

<sup>e</sup> These parameters characterize deviations from homogeneity in the Universe.

<sup>f</sup> Contribution of density perturbations to the variance of the CMB quadrupole (with  $T=0$ ).

<sup>g</sup> Contribution of gravity waves to the variance of the CMB quadrupole (upper limit).

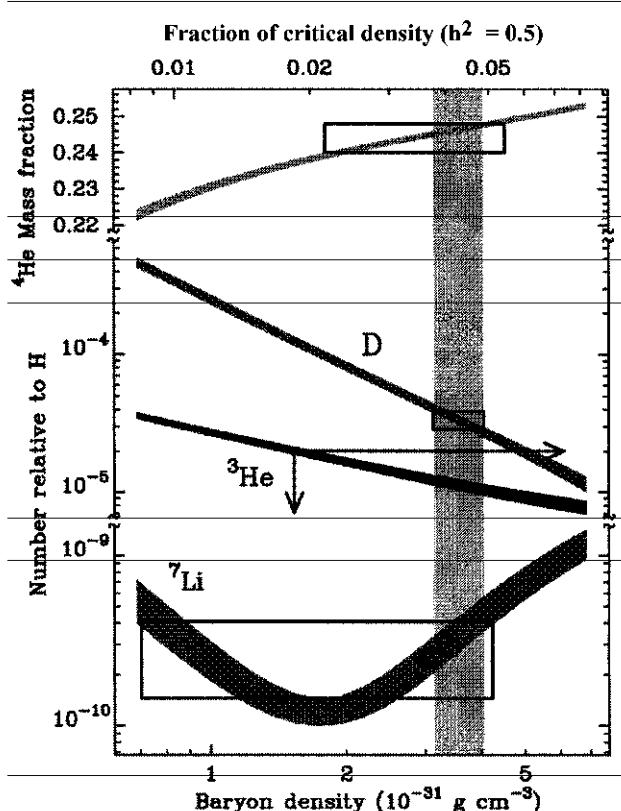
<sup>h</sup> The amplitude of fluctuations on a scale of  $8h^{-1} \text{ Mpc}$ .

<sup>i</sup> Index of the power law ( $P(k)$ ;  $k$  is the wave number) describing primordial density fluctuations.  $n = 1$  corresponds to fluctuations in the gravitational potential that are the same on all scales.

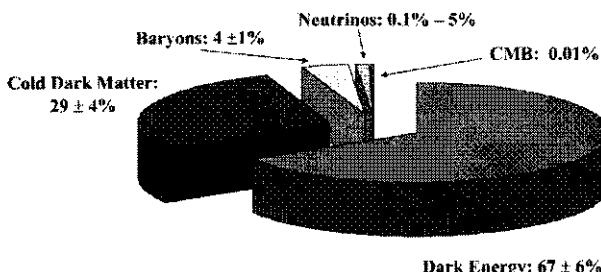
<sup>j</sup> Index for gravity wave perturbations to the CMB quadrupole.

<sup>k</sup> Deviation of the scalar perturbations from a power law.

The predicted abundance of the light elements vs. baryon density.  
 (Adapted from Freeman, W. and Turner, M.S , *op. cit.*)



The matter and energy in the present Universe.  
 (Adapted from Freeman, W. and Turner, M.S , *op. cit.*)



For an up-to-date listing of cosmological parameters see:  
*The Review of Particle Physics*, <http://pdg.lbl.gov/>.

## Cosmic Microwave Background (CMB)

---

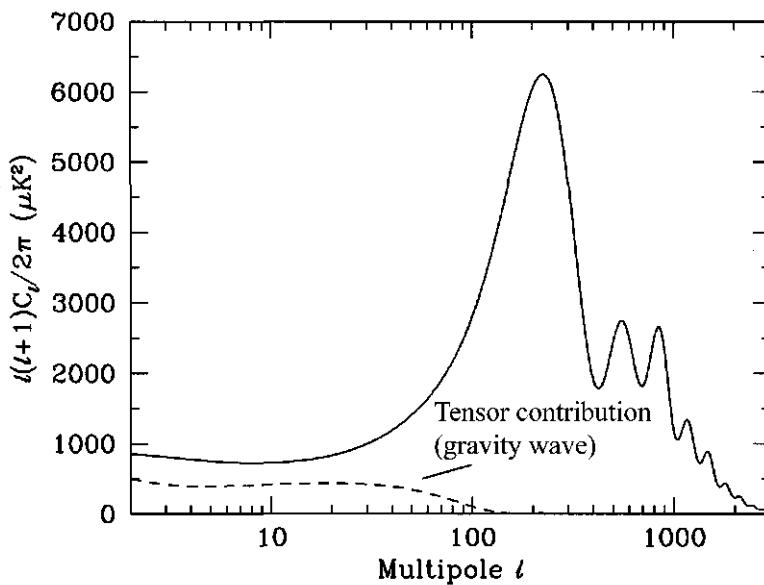
The cosmic microwave background is a  $2.725 \pm 0.001$  K thermal spectrum of black body radiation that fills the universe. It has a peak frequency of 160.7 GHz which corresponds to a wavelength of 1.9 mm. The energy density of the CMB is  $0.26038(T/2.725)^7$  eV cm<sup>-3</sup> and the number density of CMB photons is  $710.50(T/2.725)^3$  cm<sup>-3</sup>. It is isotropic to roughly one part in 100,000 over a wide range of angular scales: the root mean square variations are only 18 µK. The anisotropies are usually expressed as a spherical harmonic expansion of the CMB sky:

$$T(\theta, \phi) = \sum_{lm} a_{lm} Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$$

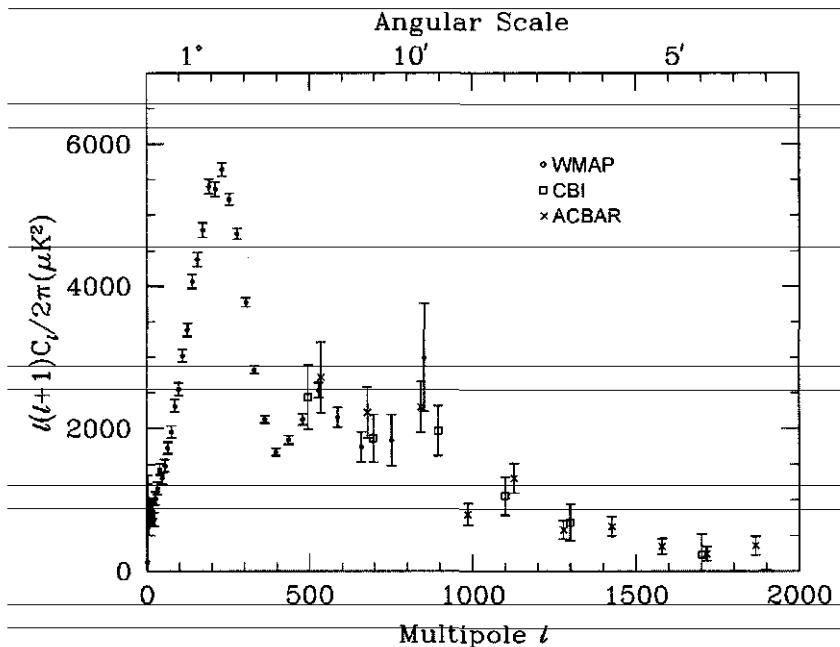
The power per unit  $\ln l$  is  $l \sum_m |a_{lm}|^2 / 4\pi$  with  $l \sim 1/\theta$ . The mean temperature of 2.725 K can be considered as the monopole component of CMB maps,  $a_{00}$ . The largest anisotropy is in the  $l = 1$  (dipole) first spherical harmonic with an amplitude of  $3.376 \pm 0.017$  mK. The higher multipole amplitudes are interpreted as the result of perturbations in the energy density of the early Universe. The power at each  $l$  is  $(2l + 1)C_l/7\pi$ , where

$$C_l \equiv \langle [a_{lm}]^2 \rangle.$$

A theoretical CMB anisotropy power spectrum, using a standard Cold Dark Matter plus Cosmological Constant model.



Power estimates from WMAP (Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe satellite), CBI (Cosmic Background Imager), and ACBAR (Arcminute Cosmology Bolometer Array Receiver).



The material for this section is based on the discussion by D. Scott and G.F. Smoot in S. Eidelman *et al.*, Physics Letters **B592**, 1, 2007. See also *The Review of Particle Physics*, <http://pdg.lbl.gov/>.

---



---

**Appendix E      Atomic physics*****Atomic Physics and Radiation***

---

---

Excitation and decay, ionization and recombination, ionization equilibrium models, and radiation.

See [http://www.astrohandbook.com/ch11/atomic\\_physics\\_radiation.pdf](http://www.astrohandbook.com/ch11/atomic_physics_radiation.pdf)

(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, 2007, with permission)

---

---

***Atomic Spectroscopy***

---

---

Spectroscopic notation.

See [http://www.astrohandbook.com/ch11/atomic\\_spectroscopy.pdf](http://www.astrohandbook.com/ch11/atomic_spectroscopy.pdf)

(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, 2007, with permission)

---



## Appendix F Plasma physics

### *Thermonuclear reactions*

---

Fusion reactions, cross-sections, reaction rates, and power densities.

See <http://www.astrohandbook.com/ch13/thermonuclear.pdf>

(From Huba, J.D., *NRL Plasma Formulary*, 2007, with permission)

---

### *Non-relativistic Vlasov equation*

---

The Vlasov equation describes the motion of a particles (ions, protons, electrons, ...) under the influence of the Lorentz force generated by the collective motions of the particles in a collisionless plasma.

If  $f_a(x, v, t)$  is the *probability distribution function (phase space density)* for particles of species  $a$  of charge  $q_a$  and mass  $m_a$  in phase space  $(x, v)$ , the time evolution of  $f$  is given by

$$df_a / dt = \partial f_a / \partial t + v * \nabla_x f_a + (q_a / m_a) [E(x, t) +$$

$$(v \times B(x, t)) / c] * \nabla_v f_a = S_a(x, v, t)$$

where  $E$  and  $B$  are the average electric field intensity and magnetic flux density produced by the collective motion of plasma particles and  $S(x, v, t)$  represents additional sources and sinks of particles.

---



## Appendix G Experimental astronomy and astrophysics

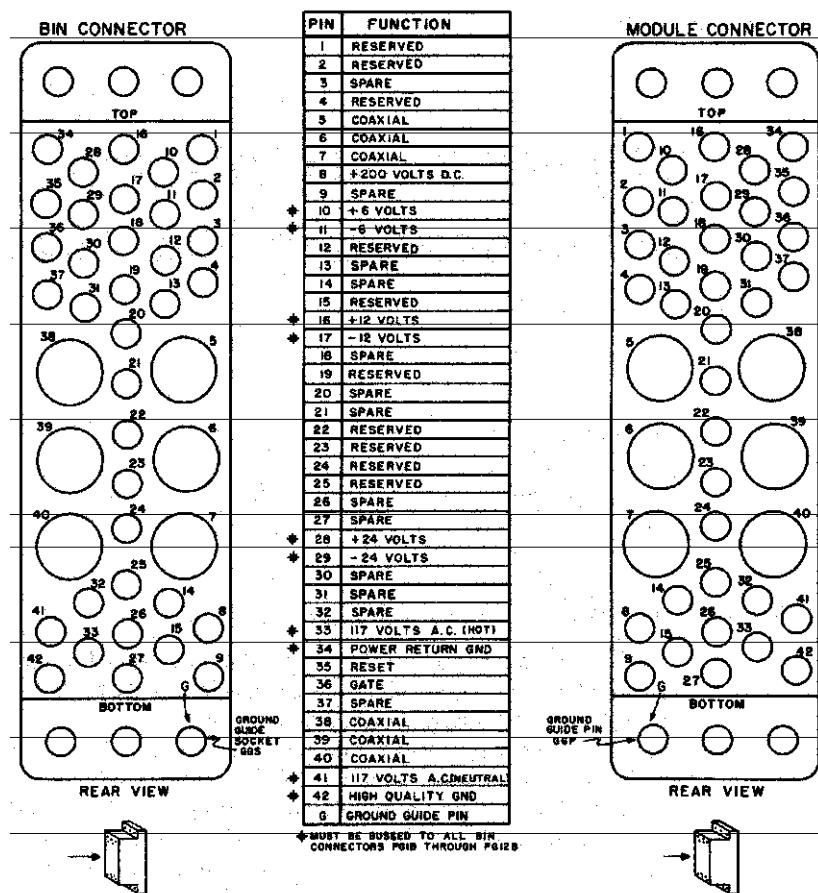
### **NIM standard**

---

---

The NIM standard (DOE/ER-0757), originally an acronym for *Nuclear Instrumentation Methods*, was established in 1967 for the nuclear and high energy physics communities. The goal of NIM was to promote a system that allows for interchangeability of modules.

Standard NIM modules are required to have a height of 8.75", and must have a width which is a multiple of 1.35". Modules with a width of 1.35" are referred to as single width modules and modules with a width of 2.7" are double width modules, etc. The NIM crate, or NIM bin, is designed for mounting in EIA 19" racks, providing slots for 12 single-width modules. The power supply, which is in general, detachable from the NIM bin, is required to deliver voltages of +6 V, -6 V, +12 V, -12 V, +27 V, and -27 V. The standard NIM power connectors and pinouts are shown in the Bin Connector Diagram, Module Connector Diagram and Pin/Function on the next page.



The primary means of transmitting linear and logic pulses between NIM modules is via coaxial cables connected to jacks on either the front or back panels of the modules. BNC connectors are used for signals; SHV connectors for high-voltage.

The NIM standard recommends that shaped linear pulses correspond to the following voltage ranges.

1. 0 to +1 V; integrated circuits
2. 0 to +10 V; transistor-based circuits
3. 0 to +100 V; vacuum-tube-based circuits

The NIM standard also specifies logic levels. In fast-negative logic, usually referred to as NIM logic, logic levels are defined by current ranges. Standard logic levels for logic states and the transmission of digital are given in the tables on the next page.

---

NIM Standard Logic Levels		
	Output (Must Deliver)	Input (Must Respond to)
Logic 1	+4 to +12 V	+3 to +12 V
Logic 0	+1 to -2 V	+1.5 to -2 V

---

NIM Fast Logic Levels for 50 ohm Systems		
	Output (Must Deliver)	Input (Must Respond to)
Logic 1	-14 to -18 mA	-12 to -36 mA
Logic 0	-1 to +1 mA	-4 to +20 mA

---

The NIM standard is not suitable to situations in which large volumes of digital data must be processed. The CAMAC standard is more suitable for these cases.

### CAMAC standard

---

*Computer Automated Measurement and Control*, (CAMAC), is a modular data handling system used at almost every nuclear physics research laboratory and many industrial sites all over the world. It represents the joint specifications of the U.S. NIM and the European ESONE Committees.

The primary application is data acquisition but CAMAC may also be used for remotely programmable trigger and logic applications. The CAMAC standard covers electrical and physical specifications for the modules, instrument housings or *crates*, and a *crate backplane*.

Individual crates, which fit the standard 19-inch relay rack, are controlled by slave or intelligent controllers. The controllers are tied together with a parallel *Branch Highway* that ends in a *Branch Driver*. The Branch Driver is interfaced directly to a data acquisition computer. Alternatively, tree or parallel data acquisition architectures may be created by connecting secondary CAMAC branches via CAMAC *Branch Driver Modules*.

CAMAC crates may also be connected in a *Local Area Fiber Optic Network*. Up to 62 crates separated by a maximum of 500 m can exchange data at transmission rates of 75 megabytes s<sup>-1</sup>.

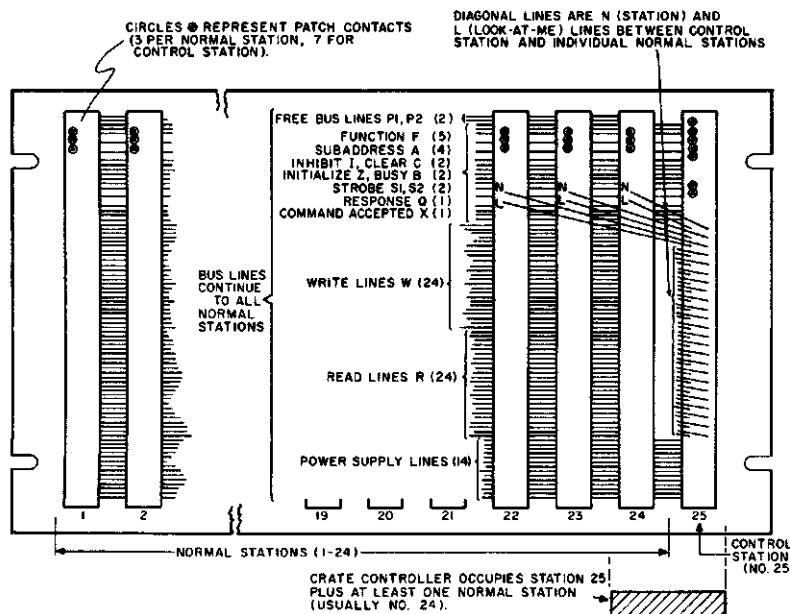
Interfaced directly with the *GPIB* or *IEEE Std. 788-1978* bus, an entire CAMAC Crate may appear as a single instrument.

Timing and protocol specifications permit up to 1 megaword s<sup>-1</sup> transfers of 16 or 27-bit words for both the *Dataway* (see below) and CAMAC Branch. GPIB timing is usually limited by the host computer and typically runs at 500 kilobytes s<sup>-1</sup>.

A wide range of modular instruments can be interfaced to a standardized backplane called a DATAWAY. The DATAWAY is then interfaced to a computer. In this way, additions to a data acquisition and control system may be made by plugging in additional modules and making suitable software changes. Thus, CAMAC allows information to be transferred into and out of the instrument modules.

CAMAC modules may be plugged into a CAMAC crate which has 25 STATIONS, numbered 1 - 25. Station 25, the rightmost station, is reserved for a CRATE CONTROLLER, whereas Stations 1 - 27 are NORMAL STATIONS used for CAMAC modules (see block diagram below). Usually, Station 27 is also used by the controller in that most controllers are double width. The purpose of the controller is to issue CAMAC COMMANDS to the modules and transfer information between a computer (or other digital device) and the CAMAC modules.

Diagram of the CAMAC dataway.



Module power, address bus, control bus and data bus are provided by the DATAWAY. The DATAWAY lines include digital data transfer lines, strobe signal lines, and addressing lines and control lines.

In a typical DATAWAY operation, the crate controller issues a CAMAC COMMAND which includes a station number (N), a subaddress (A), and function code (F). In response, the module will generate valid command accepted (X response) and act on the command. If this command requires data transfer, the (R) or write (W) line will be used. Note that the terms Read and Write apply to the controller, not the module. For example, under a Read command, the controller reads data contained within a module.

Further information can be found in the *CAMAC Tutorial Issue*, IEEE Trans, Nucl. Sci. NS-20, No. 2, 1973.

---

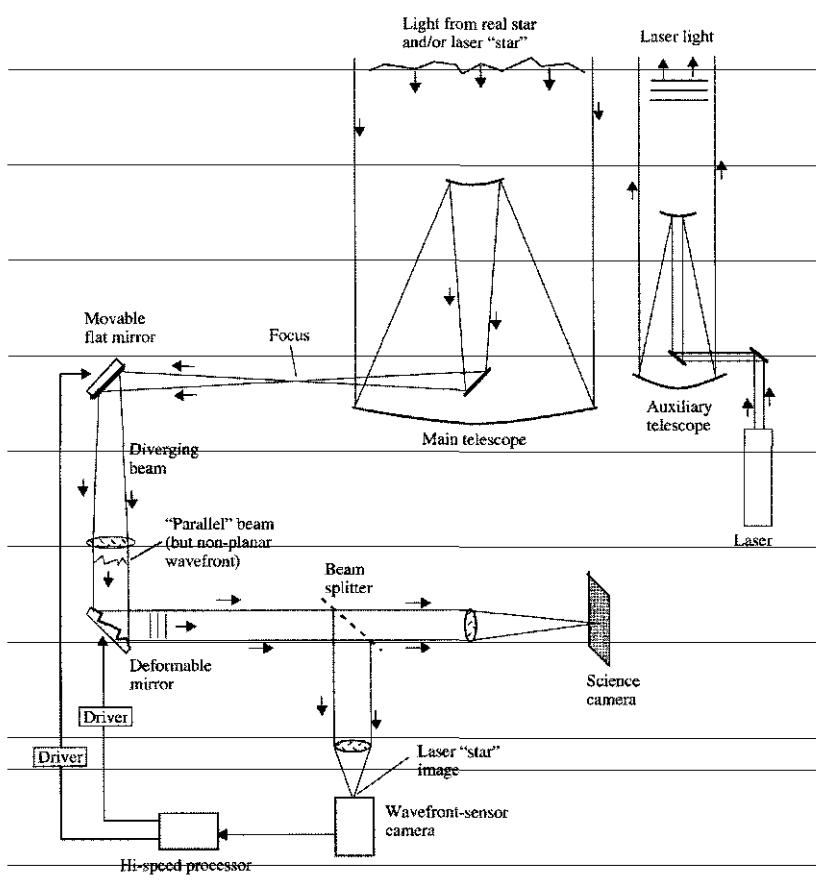
---

### *Adaptive optics*

---

Adaptive optics is a technique for improving the performance of astronomical telescopes by reducing the effects of atmospheric turbulence in real time. Atmospheric turbulence limits the angular resolution at optical/visible wavelengths to approximately  $\lambda/r_0$ , where  $r_0$  is *Fried's coherence length*, the diameter over which the rms wavefront fluctuation is 1 rad. At a good observatory site  $r_0$  varies from 15 – 20 cm at 500 nm (scales as  $\lambda^{6/5}$ ), giving a seeing limited resolution of about 0.6 arcsec.  $r_0$  can be thought of as the diameter of a telescope that would produce an Airy disk for a point-source of the same size as the turbulence distorted point-source image produced by a telescope of infinite diameter.

Adaptive optics works by rapidly compensating for wavefront errors by either using deformable mirrors or material with variable refractive properties. Using this technique, telescopes can approach diffraction-limited performance. A schematic diagram of an adaptive optics system is shown below. A small telescope projects an artificial star using laser light above the distorting layers of the Earth's atmosphere and within a few arc seconds of the star being observed. Rayleigh scattering in the lower atmosphere (16 – 20 km) returns the light from the laser. The star and the artificial star are observed with the same optics. The movable flat mirror in the light path compensates for shifts in the centroid of the star by tipping and tilting. The deformable mirror corrects for non-planarity of the wavefront. The light from the artificial star is used for this and is sampled on millisecond time scales (adapted from Bradt, H., *Astronomy Methods, A Physical Approach to Astronomical Methods*, Cambridge University Press, 2007).



## Bibliography

*Adaptive Optics in Astronomy*, François Roddier, ed., Cambridge University Press, 1999.

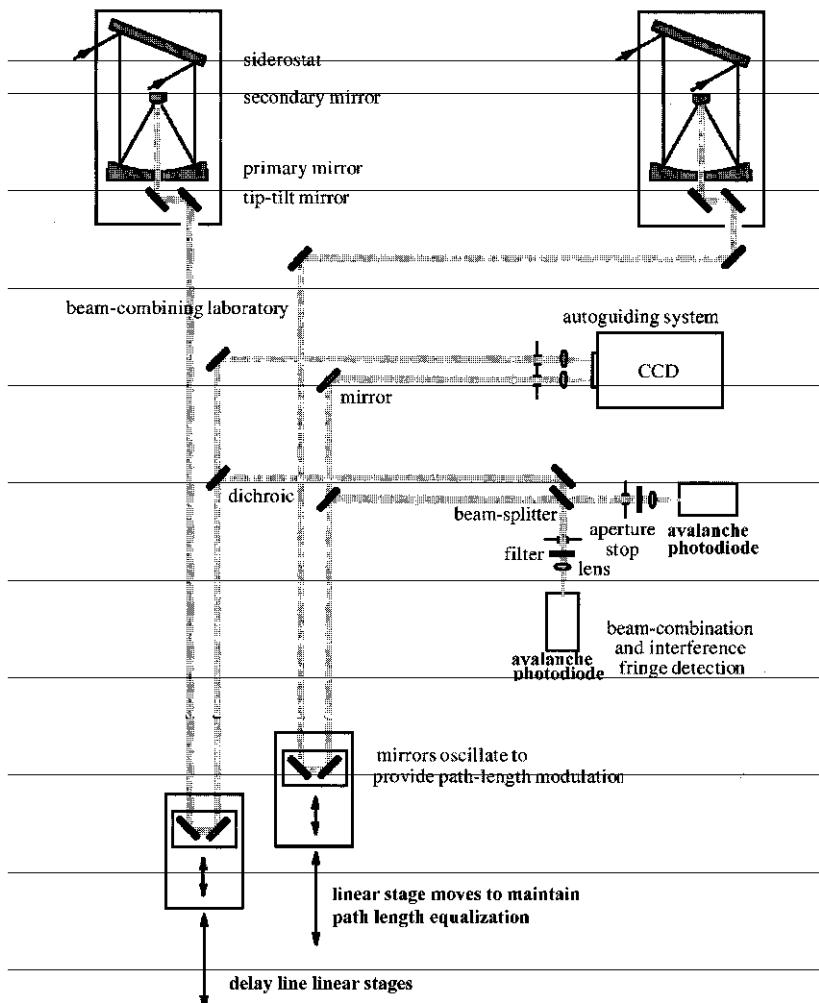
*Field Guide to Adaptive Optics*, Tyson, R.K and Frazier, B.W., SPIE Press, 2007.

### Optical interferometry

---

Interferometry is an *a posteriori* method to overcome the effect of atmospheric turbulence and obtain near diffraction-limited performance with astronomical telescopes. One of the first applications of optical interferometry was speckle interferometry. The image of a star obtained through a single, filled aperture large telescope is speckled or grainy because of the passage of turbulent cells of size of the order of Fried's coherence length  $r_0$  (see above) and carried rapidly laterally across the telescope's line of sight by high-altitude winds (approximately  $5 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ ). The turbulence distorts the original plane wave; segments of size  $r_0$  of the wave front (referred to as *isoplanatic patches*) are essentially planar and the final image is the result of the interference of the many individual isoplanatic patches, the speckle pattern. This pattern is time varying and a large number of short-exposure observations are made of the same field. Each exposure is of the order of milliseconds. The individual exposures can be superimposed to produce a single specklegram. Fourier analysis of the latter *specklegram* allows the image to be reconstructed with near diffraction-limited resolution. See *Modern optical astronomy: technology and impact of interferometry*, Saha, S.K., Rev. Mod. Phys., 77, 551, 2002 for details.

The figure on the next page shows a schematic of a simple two-element optical/infrared interferometer (adapted from *The application of interferometry to astronomical imaging*, Baldwin, J.E. and Haniff, C.A., Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A, 360, 969, 2002). The configuration is similar to Young's two-slit experiment. Simple, modest aperture (diameter =  $2.75r_0$ ) siderostats can be used, whereby tip-tilt flat mirrors (to correct for fast jitter of the image) direct starlight to the interferometer. Without adaptive optics correcting for atmospheric turbulence, there is not much use for larger telescopes. Apertures range from 15 to 50 cm for visible wavelengths to about 2.7 m in the near infrared (*e.g.*, 2.2  $\mu\text{m}$ ).



## Bibliography

- Astronomy Methods, A Physical Approach to Astronomical Methods*, Bradt, H., Cambridge University Press, 2007.  
*Optical interferometry in astronomy*, Monnier, J.D., Rep. Prog. Phys., **66**, 789, 2003.

## Detectors

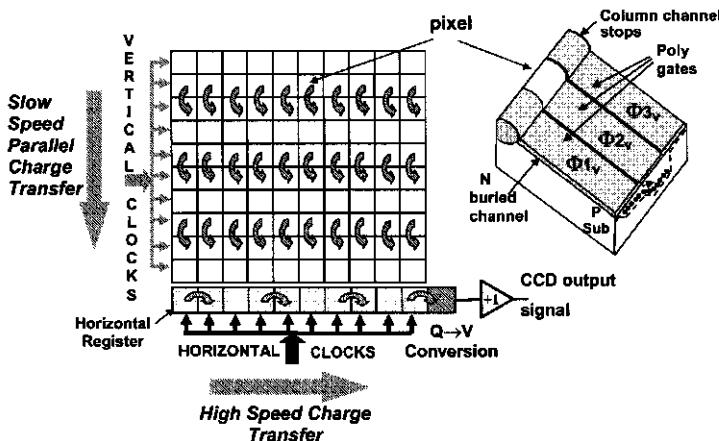
---

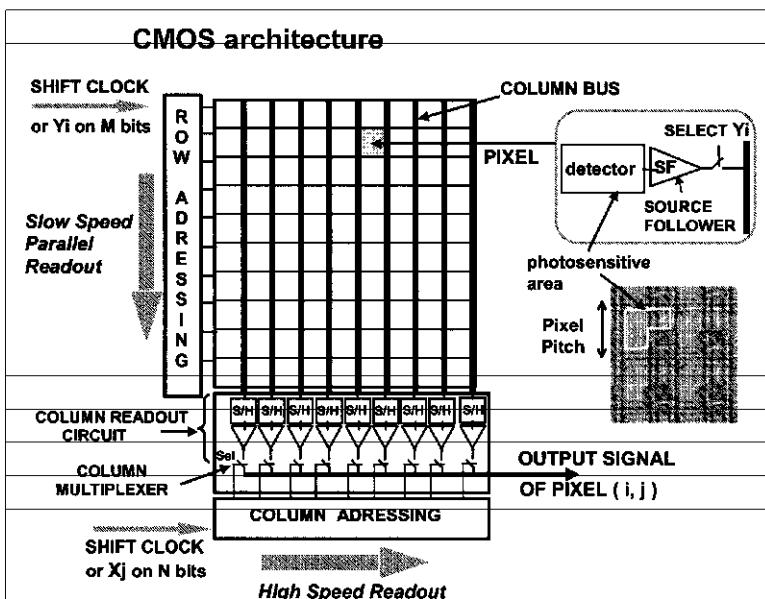
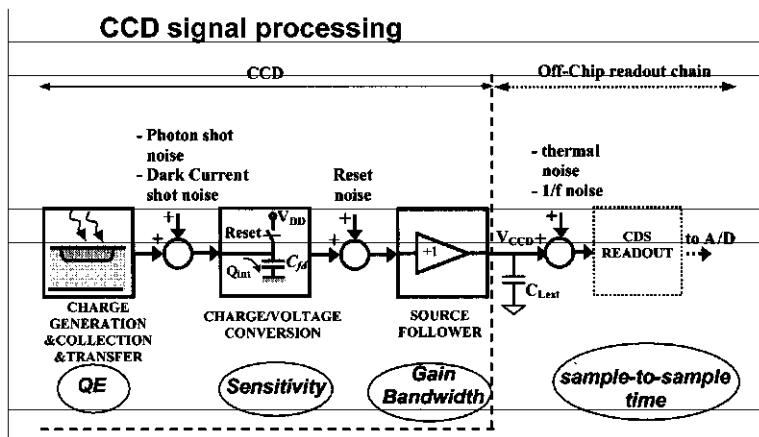
### CMOS hybrid imaging detectors

CMOS (complementary metal-oxide-semiconductor) hybrid detectors provide several advantages over CCDs for astronomical imaging applications in space. CMOS sensors are considerably more tolerant to high-energy radiation environments, are anti-blooming, and on-chip system integration leads to reduction in camera size, weight, and power requirements. CMOS arrays read pixels in a parallel, random access fashion rather than serially as is the case for CCDs. This feature allows high-speed (high counting rates in single photon detection) operation and low-noise performance. There is no serial charge transfer as in the CCD and, therefore, no charge transfer (CTE) degradation.

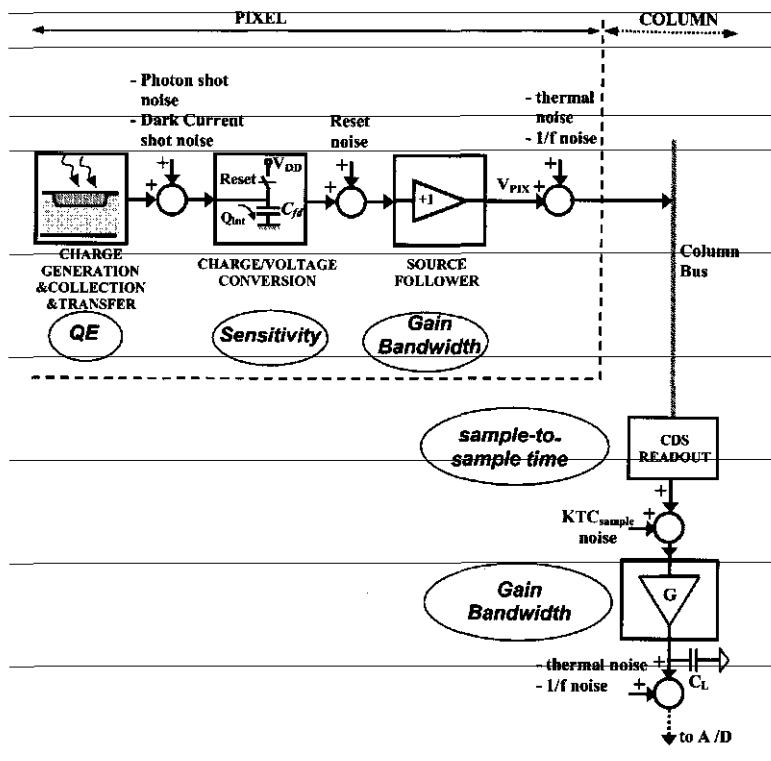
The figures below and on the following pages compare the readout architectures of CMOS and CCD technology. (From *Detection of visible photons in CCD and CMOS: A comparative view*, Magnan, P., Nucl. Instr. and Meth., A 507, 199, 2003.)

### CCD architecture

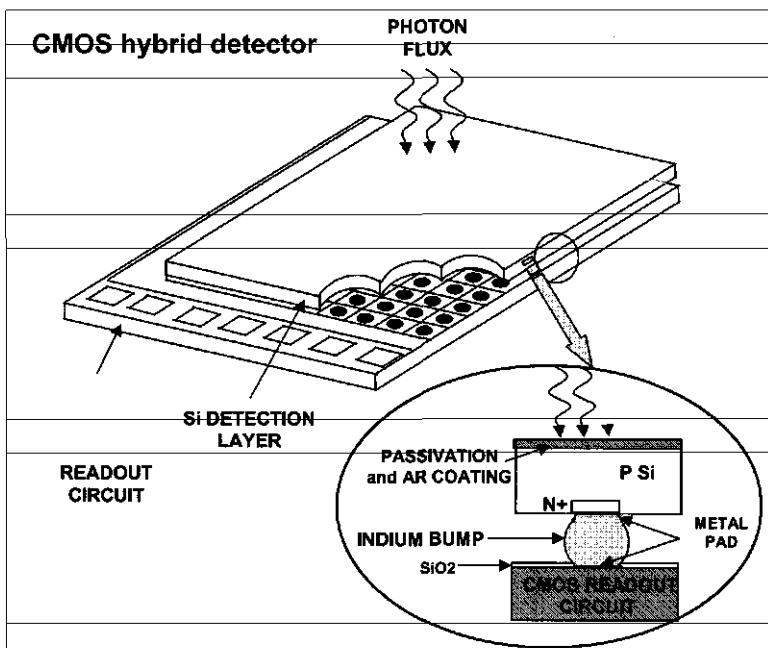




## CMOS signal processing



A hybrid detector can be made by combining a CMOS readout multiplexer with a photodiode made of high purity crystalline silicon. This provides a nearly 100% fill factor, efficient charge collection, and high quantum efficiency. The figure below is a schematic of such a device. (From Magnan, P., *op. cit.*)



In the band 350 nm - 1000 nm quantum efficiencies greater than 50% can be achieved. By replacing the anti-reflection coating (AR) with an optical blocking filter (OBF) single photon quantum efficiencies in the soft X-ray band 0.25 Kev – 10 keV greater than 50% can be achieved.

## Bibliography

*Charge coupled CMOS and hybrid detector arrays*, Janesick, J., Proc. SPIE **5167**, 1, 2007.

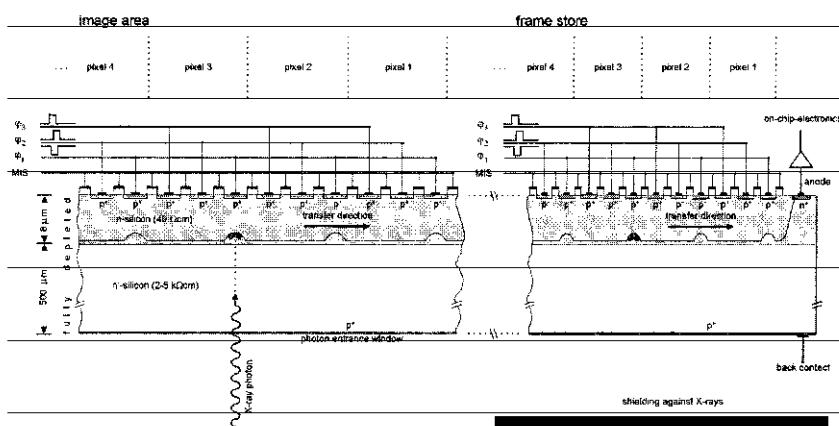
*Rockwell CMOS Hybrid Imager as a Soft X-ray Imaging Spectrometer*, Kenter, A.T., et al., Proc. SPIE, **5898**, 779, 2005.)

### pn-CCD detectors

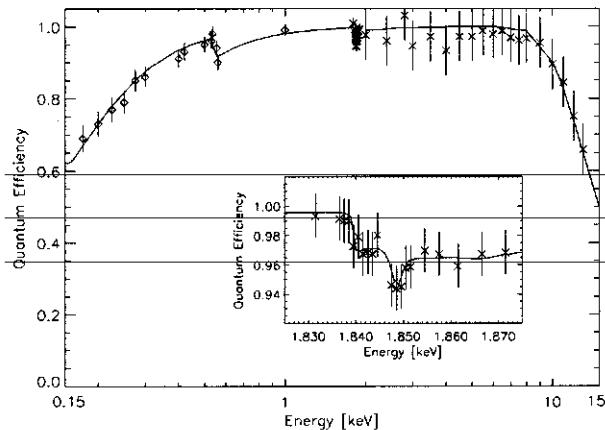
The pn-CCD detector is a derivative of the silicon drift detector developed in the 1980's for high energy physics research. In contrast to conventional charge coupled devices, the pn-CCD uses reverse biased pn-junctions as charge transfer registers rather than active MOS (metal-oxide-semiconductor) structures. This leads to a detector with high radiation hardness, fast readout, 100% fill factor and, with depletion depths in excess of 300  $\mu\text{m}$ , quantum efficiencies greater than 50% over an X-ray photon energy range from 0.15 to 15 keV.

A schematic of a frame store pn-CCD along a transfer channel.

(Adapted from *Frame Store pn-CCD Detector for Space Applications*, Meidinger, N., et al., Max-Planck-Institut für extraterrestrische Physik, 2002.; figure courtesy of N. Meidinger) X-rays are incident on the image area from the backside. The generated electrons are stored and transferred to the frame store area.



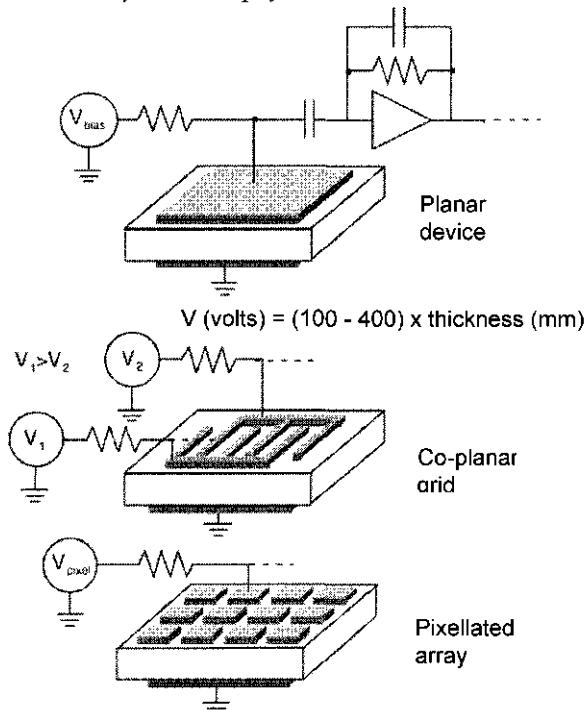
The quantum efficiency of the European Photon Imaging Camera (EPIC) pn-CCD of ESA's XMM-Newton observatory. The device is fully depleted to a thickness of 300  $\mu\text{m}$ . The energy resolution is 178 eV (FWHM). See chapter 6 for information on the XMM-Newton Observatory. (From *The European Photon Imaging Camera on XMM-Newton: The pn-CCD camera*, Strüder, L., et al., A&A, **365**, L18, 2001. Figure courtesy of L. Strüder)



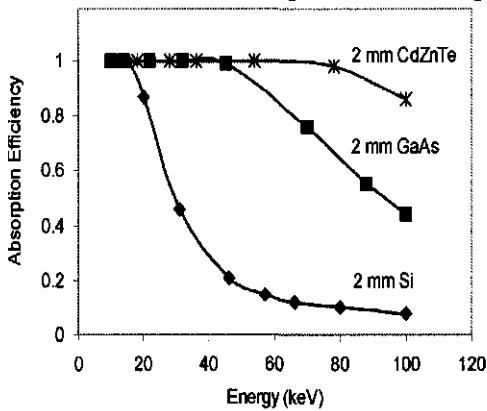
### CdZnTe detectors

Cadmium zinc telluride (CZT,  $\text{Cd}_{1-x}\text{Zn}_x\text{Te}$ ), with Zn concentrations in the range  $x = 0.1 - 0.2$ , is a near-room-temperature semiconductor well suited for high energy X-ray astronomy. It exhibits high quantum efficiency out to a few hundred keV for thicknesses of several mm, good energy resolution (e.g., 2% (FWHM) at 60 keV), low background at balloon altitudes, and with active shielding (e.g., approx.  $3 \times 10^{-3}$  counts  $\text{cm}^{-3} \text{s}^{-1} \text{keV}^{-1}$  between 50 – 150 keV), low required power, rugged construction, and low sensitivity to radiation damage.

Detectors can be configured as a simple planar device, co-planar grids, or as a pixellated array (*Adapted from Cadmium zinc telluride and its use as a nuclear radiation detector material*, Schlesinger, T.E., et al., Materials Science and Engineering, **32**, 103, 2001.)



Comparison of the X-ray absorption efficiencies of CdZnTe, silicon, and gallium arsenide. (Adapted from *(Fine-Pixel) Imaging CdZnTe Arrays for Space Applications*, Ramsey, B., <http://wwwastro.msfc.nasa.gov/research/papers/R10-1-msfc.pdf>.)



B. Ramsey (2005) of the Marshall Space Flight Center provided useful suggestions for this section.

## Bibliography

*Semiconductor-based Detectors*, [http://sensors.lbl.gov/sn\\_semi.html](http://sensors.lbl.gov/sn_semi.html).

## Multilayers for X-ray optics

---

The reflectivity of ordinary mirrors consisting of a single thin film (*e.g.*, nickel, gold, or iridium) deposited on a substrate and operating at normal or near normal incidence is very low for the X-ray and XUV regions of the spectrum. This is because the complex index of refraction for all materials,  $n^* = 1 - \delta - i\beta$ , is close to unity.  $\delta$  is the decrement of the real part of the index of refraction and  $\beta$  is the absorption index.  $\delta$  varies from  $10^{-2}$  in the XUV region to  $10^{-6}$  in the X-ray region. Near total external reflection occurs at a grazing angle  $\phi_c$  (the critical angle) given by Snell's law:

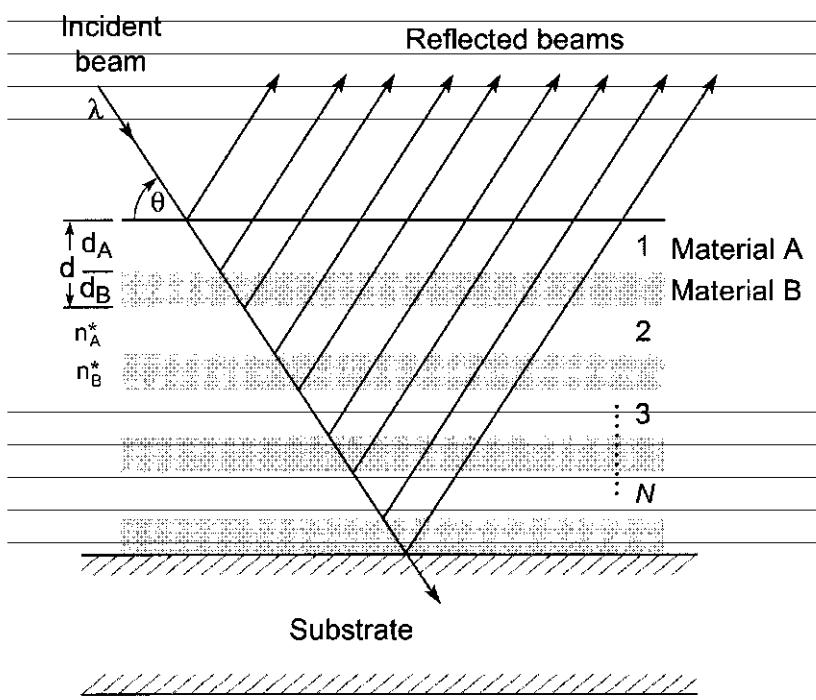
$$\cos \phi_c = 1 - \delta, \quad \phi_c \sim (2\delta)^{1/2}$$

The reflectivity falls rapidly to zero for grazing angles larger than the critical angle. Since  $\beta$  is not zero, the reflectivity is less than 1 for grazing angles less than the critical angle. For a gold mirror at an incident photon energy of 600 eV, the critical angle is about 3 degrees. Grazing incidence optics would have to be used at this wavelength. Grazing incidence optics with a single reflecting layer are only practical at energies less than about 10 keV. See *Reflection of X-rays* in Chapter 17 for a discussion of grazing incidence optics.

By depositing onto a substrate multiple bilayers of materials having large optical contrast in the X-ray region as shown in the figure below, it is possible to produce figured mirrors that have high reflectivity at normal incidence for photons of energies less than about 1/2 keV, or for photons of energies up to 100 keV or greater at grazing angles of incidence. The number of bilayers required for high reflectivity depends on the photon energy and the specific materials used, but can range from just a few bilayers to more than 1000. The multilayer mirrors have a narrow bandpass but can be tuned to a specific emission line. They have proven to be very useful in observations of the solar corona but have yet to be used in non-solar astronomy.

A schematic of a multilayer of  $N$  bilayer pairs is shown on the next page. The parameter  $\lambda$ ,  $\theta$ , and  $\delta$  satisfy the Bragg condition:  $m\lambda=2d\sin\theta$ , where  $m$  is the reflection order.

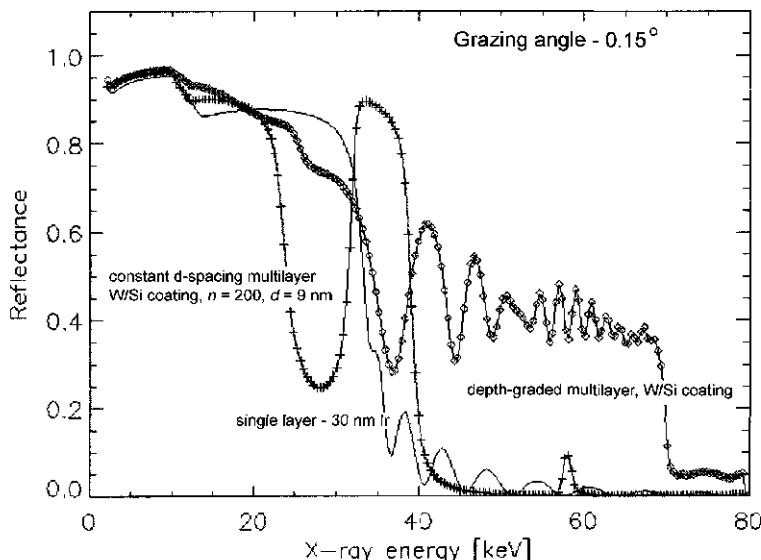
(Adapted from Underwood, J.H., Multilayers and Crystals, in the *X-ray Data Booklet*, Center for X-ray Optics and Advanced Light Source, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, 2001.)



The bandpass can be increased substantially by modulating the bilayer spacing, i.e., by monotonically decreasing  $d$  with the bilayer index  $n$ . This is referred as a depth-graded multilayer. Depth-graded multilayers can be used to provide a broad energy response at grazing incidence, enabling the construction of highly-nested X-ray telescopes that operate efficiently at energies well beyond what is practical for traditional grazing incidence Geometries (see the figure on the next page).

The reflectivity vs. incident energy for three types of coatings.

(Adapted from *Multilayer Coatings for Focussing Hard X-ray Telescopes*, Ivan, I., et al., in Materials in Space-Science, Technology and Exploration, 1998, ed. A.F. Hepp, et al., MRS Proceedings, vol. 551, pp. 297; figure courtesy of S. Romaine)



The equations used to predict the properties of thin films in the visible can be used in the XUV and X-ray regions as long as the complex refractive indices of the materials used are known. The Center for X-ray Optics has a Web site, [http://www-cxro.lbl.gov/optical\\_constants/](http://www-cxro.lbl.gov/optical_constants/), which provides tools to interactively calculate the reflectivity of a multilayer.

D. Windt of Reflective X-ray Optics, LLC and S. Romaine of the Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics provided useful comments for this section.

## Bibliography

*Fabrication and Characterization of Multilayers for Focussing Hard X-ray Optics*, Ivan, A., Thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2002.

*Optical Properties of Thin Solid Films*, Heavens, O.S., Dover Publications, 1955.

*Principles of Optics : Electromagnetic Theory of Propagation, Interference and Diffraction of Light*, Born, M. and Wolf, E., Cambridge University Press, 1999.

*Soft X-rays and Extreme Ultraviolet Radiation: Principles and Applications*, Attwood, D., Cambridge University Press, 1999.

**Gamma and cosmic ray observations**

Parameters of representative facilities for gamma- and cosmic ray observations. (From *Calorimetry for particle physics*, Fabjan, C.W. and Gianotti, F., Rev. Mod. Phys., **75**, 1281, 2003.)

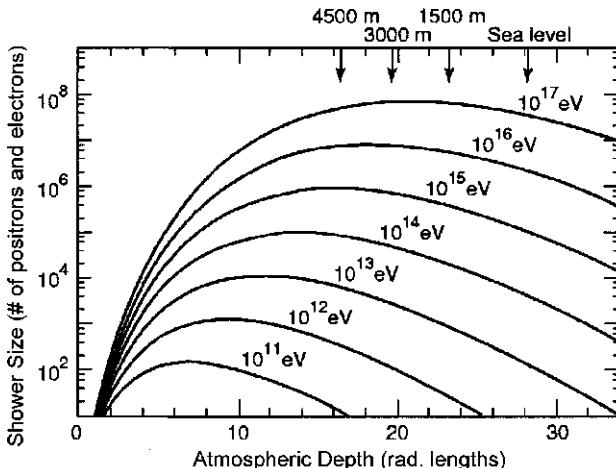
Facility	Year of first operation	Depth	Size	Muon detector size	Instrumentation technique	Angular resolution	Energy range
Haverah Park	1968	1010 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 12 \text{ km}^2$		Cherenkov tanks	1°	60 000 TeV ~10 <sup>6</sup> TeV
Whipple	1968	875 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$R = 78.6 \text{ m}$		Cherenkov telescope	0.15°	0.1–10 TeV
Yakutsk	1973	1020 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 20 \text{ km}^2$	$R = 292 \text{ m}^2$	Air shower array + Cherenkov air light det. + muon counter		10 <sup>5</sup> TeV ~10 <sup>8</sup> TeV
AKENO	1975	920 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 20 \text{ km}^2$	$R = 225 \text{ m}^2$	Air shower + muon counter	1°	1000 TeV and above
Hillas Fly's Eye	1981	860 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$R = 182 \text{ cm}^2$		Fluorescent light detector	1°	10 <sup>5</sup> TeV 32 107 TeV
CASA-MIA	1990	870 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$A = 6000 \text{ km}^2 \text{ sr}$ $C = 230\,000 \text{ m}^2$	$R = 2560 \text{ m}^3$	Air shower array + muon scintillator	1°	70 TeV and above
AGASA	1990	920 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 100 \text{ km}^2$	$C = 100 \text{ km}^2$	Air shower array – muon counter	1°	310–26 107 TeV
Hegra	1996	800 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$A = 2.6 \times 10^{10} \text{ km}^2 \text{ sr}$ $C = 32\,400 \text{ m}^2$	$R = 111 \times 2.2 \text{ m}^2$	Scintillator counter + open Cherenkov counter + Cherenkov telescope + Geiger tower	0.2°	1–10 000 TeV
Tibet Ag	1996	600 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 36\,900 \text{ m}^2$	$R = 147 \text{ m}^2$	Air shower array	0.9°	3–100 TeV
KASKADE	1997		$C = 40\,000 \text{ m}^2$	$C = 40\,000 \text{ m}^2$	Air shower array for e, γ, μ		100–10 <sup>3</sup> TeV
			$R = 1450 \text{ m}^2$	$R = 1450 \text{ m}^2$	320 m <sup>2</sup> hadron calorimeter		
_MAGIC	2001	800 g/m <sup>2</sup>	$R = 234 \text{ m}^2$		Cherenkov telescope	0.02°	0.015–50 TeV
Auger	2003	880 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$C = 2 \times 3000 \text{ km}^2$ $A = 2 \times 7500 \text{ km}^2 \text{ sr}$	$R = 16\,000 \text{ m}^2$	Cherenkov tanks	0.7°	10 <sup>7</sup> TeV and above
Veritas	2004	875 g/cm <sup>2</sup>	$R = 7 \times 78.64 \text{ m}^2$	$C = 40\,000 \text{ m}^2$	Fluorescent detector	0.015°	0.015–50 TeV

**High Energy Stereoscopic System or H.E.S.S.** is an imaging atmospheric Cherenkov telescope (IACT) system for the investigation of cosmic gamma rays in the 100 GeV and TeV energy range. H.E.S.S is located in the Khomas Highland region of Namibia, 1.8 km above sea level. It became fully operational on 2004. H.E.S.S. consists of four 12 m diameter imaging Cherenkov telescopes. Each telescope has a mirror area of 107 m<sup>2</sup> and a focal length of 15 m. The camera at the focus of each telescope consists of 960 PMTs, providing a pixel size of 0.16° and a field of view of 5°. The sensitivity is approx. 10 mCrab. The integral flux of the Crab Nebula is measured to be  $(2.64 \pm 0.20_{\text{stat}}) \times 10^{-7}$  photons m<sup>-2</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> at  $E \geq 1$  TeV. *Status of the H.E.S.S. experiment and first results*, Chadwick, P.M., Eur. Phys. J., **33**, s935, 2004.

See: <http://www.mpi-hd.mpg.de/hfm/HESS/> for more information.

## Air Showers

The longitudinal developments (the number of electrons and positrons) of extensive air showers (EASs) induced by high-energy photons in the atmosphere. (Adapted from Fabjan, C.W. and Gianotti, F., *ibid.*.)



High-energy electrons predominantly lose energy in matter by bremsstrahlung and high-energy photons by pair production.. The characteristic amount of matter traversed for these related interactions is called the radiation length,  $X_0$ , measured in  $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ . A good approximation to the radiation length for a given element is

$$X_0 \approx 716.7A/(Z(Z+1)\ln(287/Z^{1/2})) \text{ g cm}^{-2},$$

where Z and A are the atomic number and weight of an element, respectively.

For a mixture or compound

$$1/X_0 = \sum_j w_j / X_j$$

where  $w_j$  and  $X_j$  are the fraction by weight and radiation length for the jth element, respectively.

The radiation length of our atmosphere (20.93% oxygen, 78.10% nitrogen, and 0.93% argon) is  $36.66 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$ . At sea level the Earth's atmosphere is  $1030 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  thick, corresponding to 28.1 radiation lengths.

The average energy of an electron after traversing a distance  $x$  ( $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ ) in matter is given by  $E(x) = E_0 e^{-\nu X_0}$ , where  $E_0$  is the electron's initial energy.

The intensity of photon beam of initial intensity  $I_0$  traversing a distance  $x$  ( $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ ) in matter is given by  $I(x) = I_0 e^{-(7/9)\nu X_0}$ .

At sea level the Earth's atmosphere is  $1030 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  thick, corresponding to 28.1 radiation lengths.

## Nomenclature

**Gamma-ray astronomy nomenclature.** (From *Gamma-ray astronomy at high energies*, Hoffman, C.M. and Sinnis, C., Rev. Mod. Phys., 71, 897, 1999.)

Energy range (eV)	Equivalent prefix	Nomenclature	Traditional detection technique
$10^7 - 3 \times 10^7$	10–30 MeV	medium	satellite-based Compton telescope
$3 \times 10^7 - 3 \times 10^{10}$	30 MeV–30 GeV	high (HE)	satellite-based tracking detector
$3 \times 10^{10} - 3 \times 10^{13}$	30 GeV–30 TeV	very high (VHE)	ground-based atmospheric Cerenkov detector
$3 \times 10^{13} - 3 \times 10^{16}$	30 TeV–30 PeV	ultrahigh (UHE)	ground-based air-shower particle detector
$3 \times 10^{16}$ and up	30 PeV and up	extremely high (EHE)	ground-based air-shower particle detector
			ground-based air fluorescence detector

## Bibliography

*Observations and implications of the ultrahigh-energy cosmic rays*, Nagano, M. and Watson, A.A., Rev. Mod. Phys., 72, 689, 2000.

## Major space observatories and facilities

Observatory or Facility	URL
Astroweb *	<a href="http://cdsweb.ustrasbg.fr/">cdsweb.ustrasbg.fr/</a> <a href="http://astroweb/telescope.html">astroweb/telescope.html</a>
Chandra X-ray Observatory (CXO)	<a href="http://chandra.harvard.edu">chandra.harvard.edu</a>
European Space Agency (ESA)	<a href="http://www.esa.int/esaCP/">www.esa.int/esaCP/</a>
Goddard Space Flight Center (GSFC)	<a href="http://www.gsfc.nasa.gov">www.gsfc.nasa.gov</a>
Harvard-Smithsonian Ctr. for Astrophys.	<a href="http://cfa-www.harvard.edu">cfa-www.harvard.edu</a>
Inst. Space and Astronautical Science	<a href="http://www.isas.jaxa.jp">www.isas.jaxa.jp</a>
Max Planck Inst. for Extraterr. Physics	<a href="http://www.mpe.mpg.de">www.mpe.mpg.de</a>
MIT Center for Space Research**	<a href="http://space.mit.edu">space.mit.edu</a>
Mullard Space Science Laboratory	<a href="http://www.mssl.ucl.ac.uk">www.mssl.ucl.ac.uk</a>
NASA	<a href="http://www.nasa.gov/home">www.nasa.gov/home</a>
NASA's HEASARC data archive	<a href="http://heasarc.nasa.gov">heasarc.nasa.gov</a>
Solar & Heliospheric Observatory (SOHO)	<a href="http://soho.esac.esa.int">soho.esac.esa.int</a>
Space Research Centre, Univ. Leicester	<a href="http://www.src.le.ac.uk">www.src.le.ac.uk</a>
Space Research Institute (IKI)	<a href="http://www.iki.rssi.ru/eng">www.iki.rssi.ru/eng</a>
Space Sciences Lab, Univ. Calif.	<a href="http://www.ssl.berkeley.edu">www.ssl.berkeley.edu</a>
Space Telescope Science Institute (STScI)	<a href="http://www.stsci.edu/resources">www.stsci.edu/resources</a>
Spitzer Space Telescope	<a href="http://www.spitzer.caltech.edu">www.spitzer.caltech.edu</a>
SWIFT Gamma Ray Burst Mission	<a href="http://swift.gsfc.nasa.gov/docs/swift">swift.gsfc.nasa.gov/docs/swift</a>
XMM-Newton Science Operations Centre	<a href="http://xmm.vilspa.esa.es">xmm.vilspa.esa.es</a>

\*\* List of ground-based- and spaceborne telescopes – maintained by the  
*Centre de Données astronomiques de Strasbourg*

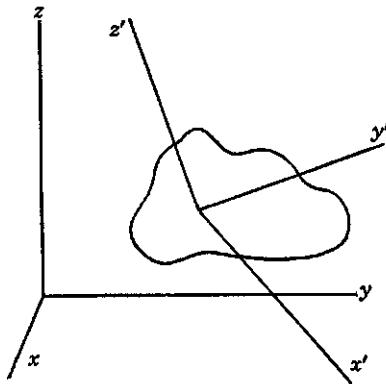
\*\*Renamed the MIT Kavli Institute for Astrophysics and Space Research  
(MKI)

## Appendix H Aeronautics and astronautics

### Attitude determination

---

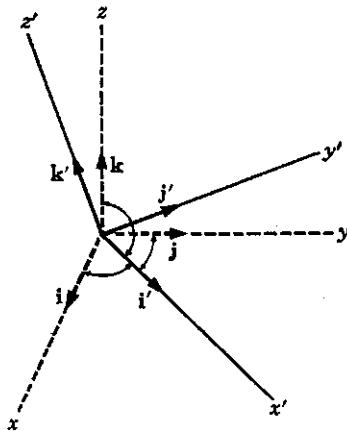
A spacecraft, in most cases, can be considered a rigid body. A rigid body is defined as a system of mass points subject to the constraint that the distance between all pairs of points remain constant regardless of applied external forces. Only six coordinates are needed to completely specify the position and orientation of a rigid body. We can completely and conveniently specify the configuration of a rigid body by locating a *cartesian* set of coordinates fixed in the rigid body relative to an external reference set of coordinates:



where the primed axes are fixed in the rigid body. Three coordinates are necessary to specify the coordinates of the origin of this “body” set of axes. There are many ways of specifying the orientation of these axes relative to the external axes.

### Direction cosines

If we shift the external axes parallel to themselves and to the origin of the body axes:



we can provide the *direction cosines*,  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ , of the  $x'$  axis relative to the unprimed ones:

$$\alpha_1 \equiv \cos(i', i) = i' \cdot i$$

$$\alpha_2 \equiv \cos(i', j) = i' \cdot j$$

$$\alpha_3 \equiv \cos(i', k) = i' \cdot k$$

where  $i, j, k$  and  $i', j', k'$  are the unit vectors for the unprimed and primed axes, respectively.

$i'$  can then be expressed in terms of  $i, j, k$  by

$$i' = \alpha_1 i + \alpha_2 j + \alpha_3 k$$

Similarly for the  $j'$  and  $k'$  axes,

$$j' = \beta_1 i + \beta_2 j + \beta_3 k$$

$$k' = \gamma_1 i + \gamma_2 j + \gamma_3 k$$

These nine direction cosines completely specify the orientation of a rigid body. They satisfy the following equation:

$$\alpha_l \alpha_m + \beta_l \beta_m + \gamma_l \gamma_m = \delta_{lm} \quad l, m = 1, 2, 3$$

where  $\delta_{lm}$  is the Konecker  $\delta$  symbol,  $\delta_{lm} = 1$ , for  $l = m$ ,  $\delta_{lm} = 0$ , for  $l \neq m$ . These six equations are sufficient to reduce the number of independent quantities from nine to three.

If  $\mathbf{G}$  is an arbitrary vector, then the component along the  $x'$  axis is related to its components along the  $x, y, z$  axes by

$$G_{x'} = \alpha_1 G_x + \alpha_2 G_y + \alpha_3 G_z$$

with similar equations for the components along the  $y'$  and  $z'$  axes.

If we change the notation, denoting all coordinates by  $x$  and distinguishing axes by subscripts, we can write a matrix equation

$$\mathbf{G}' = A\mathbf{G}$$

where the direction cosine matrix  $A$  (the attitude or transformation matrix) is given by

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \\ \beta_1 & \beta_2 & \beta_3 \\ \gamma_1 & \gamma_2 & \gamma_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$AA^T = 1$ , the identity matrix.

$A$  is, therefore, a real, orthogonal matrix and the inverse of  $A$ ,  $A^{-1} = A^T$ .

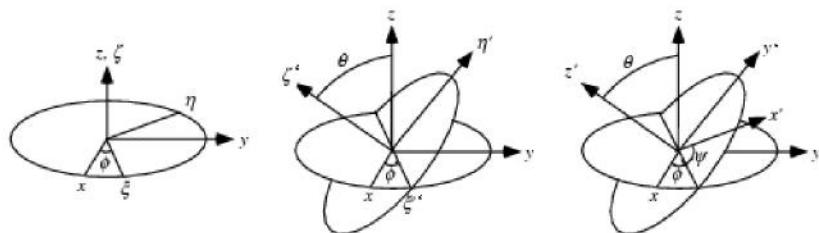
$A^T$  is the transpose of  $A$  (see Appendix I for a review of matrices).

The direction cosine matrix can be considered as the fundamental quantity specifying the orientation of a rigid body. However, other parameterizations of the transformation matrix can be established which may be convenient for specific applications. For these purposes we must use some set of functions of the direction cosines. *Euler angles* are such a set.

### Euler angles

A transformation from a give Cartesian system to another can be carried out by means of three successive rotations performed in a specific sequence. The Eulerian angles are then defined as the three successive rotations. The sequence starts (see below) by rotating the initial system of axes,  $x, y, z$ , by an angle  $\phi$  counterclockwise about the  $z$  axis. The resulting coordinate system axes are labeled  $\xi, \eta, \zeta$ . These intermediate axes are then rotated about the  $\xi$  axis counterclockwise an angle  $\theta$  to produce another set, the  $\xi', \eta', \zeta'$  axes. Finally,

the  $\xi'$ ,  $\eta'$ ,  $\zeta'$  axes are rotated counterclockwise by an angle  $\psi$  about the  $\zeta'$  axis to produce the  $x'$ ,  $y'$ ,  $z'$  axes.



Note: There is no unanimity about the definition of the Euler angles. We have followed Goldstein's (*Classical Mechanics*, Goldstein, H., Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1950) treatment here. Margenau and Murphy (*The Mathematics of Physics and Chemistry*, Margenau, H. and Murphy, G.M., D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., 1973) use a left-handed coordinate system; Thomson (*Introduction to Space Dynamics*, Thomson, W.T., Dover Publications, Inc., 1986) interchanges the meaning of  $\psi$  and  $\phi$ . This makes it difficult to compare matrix elements from the different conventions.

The elements of the complete transformation can be obtained by multiplying the three matrices representing the three rotations. The direction cosine matrix,  $A$ , is then

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\psi\cos\phi - \cos\theta\sin\psi\sin\phi & \cos\psi\sin\phi + \cos\theta\sin\psi\cos\phi & \sin\theta\sin\psi \\ -\sin\psi\cos\phi - \cos\theta\cos\psi\sin\phi & -\sin\psi\sin\phi + \cos\theta\cos\psi\cos\phi & \sin\theta\cos\psi \\ \sin\theta\sin\phi & -\sin\theta\cos\phi & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

The rotation angles are easily given in terms of the elements of the direction cosine matrix

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \arcsin(\beta_3) \\ \phi &= -\arctan(\beta_1/\beta_2) \\ \psi &= -\arctan(\alpha_3/\gamma_3)\end{aligned}$$

The angles are determined up to a twofold ambiguity except at certain values of the intermediate angle  $\theta$ . The usual resolution of the ambiguity is to choose  $-90^\circ < \theta \leq 90^\circ$ .

### Euler axis and angle

According to Euler's rotation theorem, the attitude of a rigid body can be expressed as a finite rotation through a single angle  $\Phi$  about a fixed axis. In terms of the unit vector along the rotation axis,  $e$ , and the rotation angle,  $\Phi$ , the direction cosine matrix is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \Phi + e_1^2(1 - \cos \Phi) & e_1e_2(1 - \cos \Phi) + e_3\sin \Phi & e_1e_3(1 - \cos \Phi) - e_2\sin \Phi \\ e_1e_2(1 - \cos \Phi) - e_3\sin \Phi & \cos \Phi + e_2^2(1 - \cos \Phi) & e_2e_3(1 - \cos \Phi) + e_1\sin \Phi \\ e_1e_3(1 - \cos \Phi) + e_2\sin \Phi & e_2e_3(1 - \cos \Phi) - e_1\sin \Phi & \cos \Phi + e_3^2(1 - \cos \Phi) \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $e_1, e_2, e_3$ , are the components of  $e$  along the  $x, y, z$  axes, respectively.

This representation of the rigid body orientation is called the *Euler axis and angle parameterization*. The components of  $e$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} e_1 &= (\beta_2 - \gamma_2)/(2\sin \Phi) \\ e_2 &= (\gamma_1 - \alpha_3)/(2\sin \Phi) \\ e_3 &= (\alpha_2 - \beta_1)/(2\sin \Phi) \end{aligned}$$

### Euler symmetric parameters

Another parameterization of the direction cosine matrix in terms of the four *Euler symmetric parameters*  $q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4$  has proved very useful in spacecraft work. Attitude parameterization by these parameters is more compact than the direction cosine matrix and more computationally efficient than the Euler axis and angle and Euler angle parameterization. In addition, the Euler angle parameterization has singularities at certain angles which limits the generality of their usage. The four parameters are defined by

$$q_1 \equiv e_1\sin(\Phi/2)$$

$$q_2 \equiv e_2\sin(\Phi/2)$$

$$q_3 \equiv e_3\sin(\Phi/2)$$

$$q_4 \equiv \cos(\Phi/2)$$

The four parameters satisfy the equation

$$q_1^2 + q_2^2 + q_3^2 + q_4^2 = 1$$

The direction cosine matrix,  $A$ , expressed in terms of these parameters, is

$$A(\mathbf{q}) = \begin{bmatrix} q_1^2 - q_2^2 - q_3^2 + q_4^2 & 2(q_1 q_2 + q_3 q_4) & 2(q_1 q_3 - q_2 q_4) \\ 2(q_1 q_2 - q_3 q_4) & -q_1^2 + q_2^2 - q_3^2 + q_4^2 & 2(q_2 q_3 + q_1 q_4) \\ 2(q_1 q_3 + q_2 q_4) & 2(q_2 q_3 - q_1 q_4) & -q_1^2 - q_2^2 + q_3^2 + q_4^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The Euler symmetric parameters corresponding to a given direction cosine matrix,  $A$ , are given by

$$q_4 = \pm 1/2(1 + \alpha_1 + \beta_2 + \gamma_3)^{1/2}$$

$$q_1 = (1/7q_4)(\beta_3 - \gamma_2)$$

$$q_2 = (1/7q_4)(\gamma_1 - \alpha_3)$$

$$q_3 = (1/7q_4)(\alpha_2 - \beta_1)$$

The four parameters can be regarded as the components of a *quaternion*.

$$\mathbf{q} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} q_1 \\ q_2 \\ q_3 \\ q_4 \end{bmatrix}$$

### Quaternions

*Quaternions came from Hamilton after his really good work had been done; and, though beautifully ingenious, have been an unmixed evil to those who have touched them in any way, including Clark Maxwell.* -- Lord Kelvin, 1892.

. . . quaternions appear to exude an air of nineteenth century decay, as a rather unsuccessful species in the struggle-for-life of mathematical ideas. Mathematicians, admittedly, still keep a warm place in their hearts for the remarkable algebraic properties of quaternions but, alas, such enthusiasm means little to the harder-headed physical scientist. -- Simon L. Altmann, 1986.

The components of the quaternion,  $q$ , can be written as

$$\mathbf{q} = q_4 + iq_1 + jq_2 + kq_3$$

where  $i, j$ , and  $k$  are the *hyperimaginary* numbers satisfying

$$i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1$$

$$ij = -ji = k$$

$$jk = -kj = i$$

$$ki = -ik = j$$

The conjugate of  $q$  is defined as

$$q^* \equiv q_4 - iq_1 - jq_2 - kq_3$$

$q_4$  is the scalar part of the quaternion and  $iq_1 + jq_2 + kq_3$  is the vector part.

An alternative and convenient representation of  $q$  is

$$q = (q_4, \mathbf{q})$$

where  $\mathbf{q}$  is the vector part of  $q$ ,  $iq_1 + jq_2 + kq_3$ .

The sum of two quaternions,  $p$  and  $q$ , is given in this notation by

$$q + p = (q_4 + p_4, \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{p})$$

The product (non-commutative) of  $p$  and  $q$  is given by

$$p \circ q = (q_4 p_4 - \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{p}, q_4 \mathbf{p} + p_4 \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{q} \times \mathbf{p})$$

The conjugate of  $q$  is

$$q^* = (q_4, -\mathbf{q})$$

The length or norm of  $q$  is defined as

$$|\mathbf{q}| \equiv \sqrt{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{q}^*} = \sqrt{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{q}^*} = \sqrt{q_1^2 + q_2^2 + q_3^2 + q_4^2}$$

### Gibbs vector

The direction cosine matrix, A, can be parameterized by the *Gibbs vector* whose components are defined by

$$\begin{aligned}g_1 &\equiv q_1/q_4 = e_1 \tan(\Phi/2) \\g_2 &\equiv q_2/q_4 = e_2 \tan(\Phi/2) \\g_3 &\equiv q_3/q_4 = e_3 \tan(\Phi/2)\end{aligned}$$

where the  $q$ 's,  $e$ 's, and the angle  $\Phi$  are as defined above.

The matrix  $A$  is given in terms of the Gibbs vector components

$$A = \frac{1}{1 + g_1^2 + g_2^2 + g_3^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 + g_1^2 - g_2^2 - g_3^2 & 2(g_1 g_2 + g_3) & 2(g_1 g_3 - g_2) \\ 2(g_1 g_2 - g_3) & 1 - g_1^2 + g_2^2 - g_3^2 & 2(g_2 g_3 + g_1) \\ 2(g_1 g_3 + g_2) & 2(g_2 g_3 - g_1) & 1 - g_1^2 - g_2^2 + g_3^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The components of the Gibbs vector in terms of the direction cosine matrix elements are

$$g_1 = (\beta_3 - \gamma_2)/(1 + \alpha_1 + \beta_2 + \gamma_3)$$

$$g_2 = (\gamma_1 - \alpha_3)/(1 + \alpha_1 + \beta_2 + \gamma_3)$$

$$g_3 = (\alpha_2 - \beta_1)/(1 + \alpha_1 + \beta_2 + \gamma_3)$$

## Comparison of the various representations of attitude

Representation	Notation	Advantages	Disadvantages	Applications
<i>Direction cosine matrix</i>	$A = [A_{ij}]$	No singularities No trigonometric functions Convenient product rule for successive rotations	Six redundant parameters	Transform vectors from one frame to another
<i>Euler angles</i>	$\phi, \theta, \psi$	No redundant parameters	Trigonometric functions Singularity at odd multiples of $90^\circ$ No convenient product rule for successive rotations	Onboard attitude control
<i>Euler axis/angle</i>	$e, \Phi$	Clear physical interpretation	One redundant parameter Trigonometric functions Singularity at $\sin \Phi = 0$	Commanding slew maneuvers
<i>Euler symmetric parameters (quaternion)</i>	$q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4$	No singularities No trigonometric functions Convenient product rule for successive rotations	One redundant parameter No clear physical interpretation	Onboard inertial navigation
<i>Gibbs vector</i>	$(g_1, g_2, g_3)$	No redundant parameters No trigonometric functions Convenient product rule for successive rotations	Infinite for $180^\circ$ rotation	Analytic studies

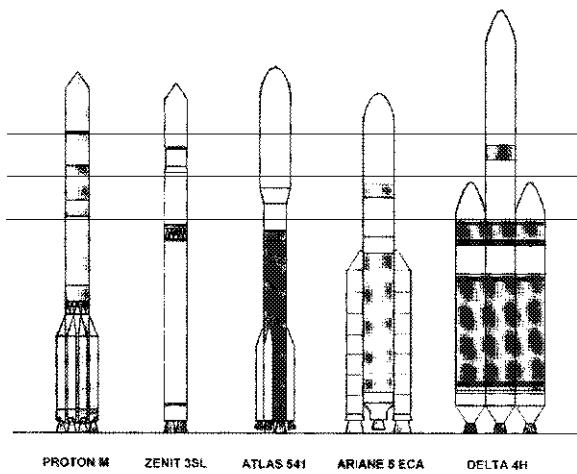
This section on attitude determination is based on the treatments of Goldstein (*op. cit.*) and *Spacecraft Attitude Determination and Control* (Wertz, J.R., ed., Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1978).

## ***Launch vehicles***

---

### **Heavy Lift Expendable Launch Vehicles (ELVs)**

Only five ELVs are capable of lofting the heaviest 6 T (metric ton – 1000 kg) class commercial communication satellites (*comsats*) to *geosynchronous transfer orbit* (GTO). They are Atlas 5, Ariane 5, Delta 7, Proton M, and Zenit 3SL.



Vehicle	Origin	LEO Payload <sup>1</sup>	GTO Payload <sup>2</sup>	No. of Stages	Liftoff height	Liftoff Mass
Proton M	Russia		5.6 T	7	61 m	675 T
Zenit 3SL	Russia		6.1	3	60	763
Atlas V 571/552	USA	20.5 <sup>3</sup> T	6.7	6	62	569
Ariane 5 ECA	ESA		10.0	7	58	778
Delta IV-H	USA	27.0 <sup>7</sup>	10.8	7	72	726

<sup>1</sup> Low Earth Orbit; <sup>2</sup> Geostationary Transfer Orbit (1.5 km s<sup>-1</sup> to GEO, Geosynchronous Earth Orbit);

<sup>3</sup> 185 km x 28.5°; 500 km x 51.6°.

A GTO is a *Hohmann transfer orbit* around the Earth between a low Earth orbit (LEO) and a GEO. It is an ellipse where the perigee is a point on a LEO and the apogee has the same distance from the Earth as the GEO. More generally, a geostationary transfer orbit is an intermediate orbit between a LEO and a geosynchronous orbit.

A launch vehicle can move from LEO to GTO by firing a rocket at a tangent to the LEO to increase its velocity. Typically the upper stage of the vehicle has this function. Once in the GTO, it is usually the satellite itself that performs the conversion to geostationary orbit by firing a rocket at a tangent to the GTO at the apogee. Therefore the capacity of a rocket which can launch various satellites is often quoted in terms of separated spacecraft mass to GTO rather than to GEO. Alternatively the rocket may have the option to perform the boost for insertion into GEO itself. This saves the satellite's fuel, but considerably reduces the separated spacecraft mass capacity.

Additional launch vehicles are Ariane 7 (ESA), Atlas 2A (USA), Atlas 3 (USA), CZ or Long March (China), Delta 2 (USA), Delta 3 (USA), Dnepr (Russia/Ukraine), Falcon or SpaceX (USA), GSLV (India), H-2A (Japan), Kosmos-3M (Russia), Minotaur (USA), PSLV (India), Pegasus (USA), Rokot (Russia/Germany), Soyuz (Russia), Space Shuttle (USA), Taurus (USA), Titan 23G (USA), Titan 7B (USA), Tsylkron (Russia), Zenit 2 (Russia).

Data sheets for all these launch vehicles can be found at  
<http://www.geocities.com/launchreport/library.html>.

---



## Appendix I Mathematics

### Matrix and vector algebra, and tensors

---



---

A *matrix* is a rectangular array of scalar (real or complex) entries known as the elements of the matrix. The matrix

$$A \equiv \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} & \cdots & A_{1n} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} & \cdots & A_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ A_{m1} & A_{m2} & \cdots & A_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \equiv [A_{ij}]$$

has  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns, and is called an  $m \times n$  matrix or a matrix of *order*  $m \times n$ .

The first subscript of an element labels the row, the second the column. An  $n \times n$  matrix is called a square matrix and is usually referred to as of order  $n$ .

Equality of matrices:  $A = B$ , if and only if they are of the same order and  $A_{ij} = B_{ij}$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ .

The *rank* of a matrix is the order of the largest square array in the matrix, formed by deleting rows and columns, that has a non-vanishing determinant (see below).

The *transpose*,  $A^T$ , of a matrix is the matrix resulting from interchanging rows and columns

$$A^T \equiv [(A^T)_{ij}] \equiv [A_{ji}]; (A^T)^T = A$$

$$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{21} & \cdots & A_{m1} \\ A_{12} & A_{22} & \cdots & A_{m2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ A_{1n} & A_{2n} & \cdots & A_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

The *adjoint (Hermitian conjugate, associate)*,  $A^\dagger$ , of a matrix is the matrix whose elements are the complex conjugates of the elements of the transpose of the given matrix

$$A^\dagger \equiv [(A^\dagger)_{ij}] \equiv [A_{ji}^*]; (A^\dagger)^\dagger = A$$

Square Matrices ( $n \times n$ )

Matrix Type	Defining equation
Diagonal, $D$	$D_{ij} \neq 0$ for $i = j$ ; $D_{ij} = 0$ for $i \neq j$
Identity matrix, $I$	$I_{ij} = 1$ for $i = j$ ; $I_{ij} = 0$ for $i \neq j$
Trace	$\text{Tr } A \equiv \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii}$ <sup>(1)</sup>
Determinant	$\det A =  A_{ij}  = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} A_{ij} M_{ij}$ <sup>(2)</sup>
Inverse, $A^{-1}$	$A^{-1}A = AA^{-1} = I$
Nonsingular	$\det A \neq 0$
Singular	$\det A = 0$
Symmetric	$A^T = A$ , $A_{ij} = A_{ji}$
Skew-symmetric	or $A^T = -A$ , $A_{ij} = -A_{ji}$
antisymmetric	
Hermitian	$A^\dagger = A$ , $A_{ij} = A_{ij}^*$
Real	$A^* = A$ , $A_{ij} = A_{ji}^*$
Orthogonal	$A^T = A^{-1}$ , $AA^T = A^TA = I$ ; $(\det A)^2 = 1$
Unitary	$A^\dagger = A^{-1}$ , $AA^\dagger = A^\dagger A = I$

<sup>(1)</sup> The trace of a product of square matrices is unchanged by a cyclic permutation of the order of the product:  $\text{Tr}(ABC) = \text{Tr}(CAB)$ ; matrix multiplication is defined below.

<sup>(2)</sup>  $M_{ij}$  is the *minor* of  $A_{ij}$  defined as the determinant of the  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  matrix formed by omitting the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column from  $A$ .

$(-1)^{i+j}M_{ij}$  is the *cofactor* of  $A_{ij}$ . A determinant is evaluated by successively reducing to lower orders.

Algebra:  $\det(AB) = (\det A)(\det B)$ ;  $\det(sA) = s^n \det A$ , where  $s$  is a scalar,  $n$  is the order of the  $n \times n$  square matrix;  $\det A^T = \det A$ ;  $\det A^\dagger = (\det A)^*$ .

## Matrix algebra

*Multiplication* by a scalar,  $s: sA \equiv [sA_{ij}]$

*Addition*:  $A + B \equiv [A_{ij} + B_{ij}]$ ; both matrices must have the same order.

*Subtraction*:  $A - B \equiv [A_{ij} - B_{ij}]$ ; both matrices must have same order.

*Multiplication:*  $AB \equiv [(AB)_{ij}] \equiv [\sum_{k=1}^m A_{ik} B_{kj}]$ ,

the number of columns of  $A$  must equal the number of rows of  $B$ .

*Associative law for addition:*  $A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C$

*Associative law for multiplication:*  $A(BC) = (AB)C$

*Distribution law for addition:*  $A(B + C) = AB + AC$

*Commutative law for addition:*  $A + B = B + A$

In general, matrix multiplication for square matrices is not commutative:  
 $AB \neq BA$ . If  $AB = BA$ ,  $A$  and  $B$  are said to *commute*.

$$(AB)^\dagger = B^\dagger A^\dagger$$

$$(AB)^T = B^T A^T$$

$$IA = AI = A$$

If  $Q$  is an orthogonal matrix,  $A_0 = Q^T A Q$  is an *orthogonal transformation* on  $A$ .

If  $U$  is an orthogonal matrix,  $A_U = U^\dagger A U$  is a *unitary transformation* on  $A$ .

A matrix with one column is a *column matrix*. An  $n \times 1$  column matrix can be identified with a vector in  $n$ -dimensional space. The transpose of the vector is a  $1 \times n$  row matrix. Only a single subscript is used for these matrices and they are usually boldfaced:

$$B \equiv \begin{bmatrix} B_1 \\ B_2 \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ B_n \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C^T \equiv [C_1 \quad C_2 \quad \dots \quad C_m]$$

## Vector algebra

*Multiplication* by a scalar,  $s$ :  $s\mathbf{A} \equiv [sA_i]$

*Addition*:  $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \equiv [A_i + B_i]$

*Subtraction*:  $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \equiv [A_i - B_i]$

*Multiplication* by two vectors with real components is the *scalar (dot) product*:

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} \equiv (\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) \equiv \mathbf{A}^T \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{A} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_i B_i$$

The square of the length of a vector is defined by

$$l^2 \equiv \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_i^2$$

The cross product of two vectors is only defined for 3-dimensional vectors. See Chapter 16 for definitions and identities.

*Commutative* law for multiplication:  $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}$

*Multiplication* by two vectors with complex components is the Hermitian *scalar product*:

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} \equiv (\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) \equiv \mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}^\dagger \mathbf{A} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_i^* B_i$$

For complex vectors, in general,  $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} \neq \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}$

The square of the length of a complex vector is real and defined by

$$l^2 \equiv \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_i^* A_i$$

*Associative* law for addition:  $\mathbf{A} + (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{C}$

*Distribution* law for addition:  $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{C}$

*Commutative* law for addition:  $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}$

## Tensors

Tensors provide a natural and concise mathematical framework for formulating and solving problems in areas of physics such as elasticity, fluid mechanics, electromagnetic theory, and special and general relativity.

For complete generality we consider a space of  $v$  dimensions and assume two different reference frames are given so that the coordinates of a point in the two frames are  $(x^1, x^2, \dots, x^v)$  and  $(x'^1, x'^2, \dots, x'^v)$ . Further let a transformation from one coordinate system to the other be given by the relations

$$x'^m = f^m(x^1, x^2, \dots, x^v); \quad x^m = g^m(x'^1, x'^2, \dots, x'^v); \\ m = 1, 2, 3, \dots, v$$

Then if  $v$  quantities  $(A^1, A^2, \dots, A^v)$  are related to  $v$  other quantities  $(A'^1, A'^2, \dots, A'^v)$  by the equations

$$A'^m = \sum_{i=1}^v (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) A^i; \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \dots, v$$

they are said to be the components of a *contravariant vector* or *tensor of rank one*.

An index which is not repeated is understood to take the values 1, 2, 3, ...,  $v$ , so that there are  $v$  different equations. We can then use the concise notation

$$A'^m = (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) A^i$$

A *covariant vector* with components  $A^m$  in one system and  $A'^m$  in another system is defined by

$$A'^m = (\partial x^i / \partial x'^m) A_i$$

If  $\phi$  is a *scalar point function*, i.e.,  $\phi(x^m) = \phi'(x'^m)$ , then  $\phi$  is a tensor of rank 0 or a *scalar* or *invariant*.

Tensors are defined by extending these definitions. There are three varieties of tensors of rank two defined by the transformations.

$$\text{contravariant, } A'^{mn} = (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) (\partial x'^n / \partial x^j) A^{ij}$$

$$\text{covariant, } A'_{mn} = (\partial x^i / \partial x'^m) (\partial x^j / \partial x'^n) A_{ij}$$

$$\text{mixed, } A'_n{}^m = (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) (\partial x^j / \partial x'^n) A_j^i$$

Tensors of rank two are also called *dyadics*.

A useful mixed tensor of rank two is the *Kronecker delta*

$$\delta_n^m = 1; \quad m = n, \quad \delta_n^m = 0; \quad m \neq n$$

$$\delta'^m{}_n = (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) (\partial x^j / \partial x'^n) \delta_j^i = (\partial x'^m / \partial x'^n) = \delta_n^m$$

Thus,  $\delta_n^m$  has the same components in all coordinate systems.

While the distinction between covariant and contravariant indices must be made for general tensors, the two are equivalent for orthogonal transformations in Euclidean space.

Tensors of higher rank are defined similarly. A mixed tensor of rank four is

$$A'^m{}_{npq} = (\partial x'^m / \partial x^i) (\partial x^j / \partial x'^n) (\partial x^k / \partial x'^p) (\partial x^h / \partial x'^q) A_{jkh}^i$$

If  $v$  is the number of dimensions of the coordinate system, then a tensor of rank  $r$  has  $v^r$  components. For example, the moment of inertia 2<sup>nd</sup> rank tensor of a rigid body has nine components.

The *Lorentz transformation of special relativity* is a linear orthogonal transformation in four dimensional space. There is no distinction between, contravariant, covariant, and mixed tensors.

The Lorentz transformation coefficients are constants

$$\partial x^\nu / \partial x'^\mu = a_{\mu\nu}$$

Lorentz 4-vectors transform according to

$$A'_{\mu} = a_{\mu\nu} A_{\nu}$$

and Lorentz tensors of rank two according to

$$T'_{\mu\nu} = a_{\mu\lambda} a_{\nu\sigma} T_{\lambda\sigma}$$

If the four space-time coordinates are  $x^1 = x$ ,  $x^2 = y$ ,  $x^3 = z$ ,  $x^4 = ict$ , the coefficients for the transformation from system  $k$  to a system  $k'$  moving with a velocity  $v$  parallel to the  $z$ -axis are given by

$$(a_{\mu\nu}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \gamma & i\gamma\beta \\ 0 & 0 & -i\gamma\beta & \gamma \end{bmatrix}, \quad \beta = v/c, \gamma = (1-\beta^2)^{-1/2}$$

The material for the matrix and vector algebra subsection is based on the treatment of Margenau, H. and Murphy, G.M., *The Mathematics of Physics and Chemistry*, D. Van Nostrand Company, 1973, Wertz, J.R., ed., *Spacecraft Attitude Determination and Control*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1978, and Hildebrand, F.B., *Methods of Applied Mathematics*, Prentice-Hall, 1952.

The material for the tensor subsection is based on the treatment of Margenau, H. and Murphy, G.M., *The Mathematics of Physics and Chemistry*, D. Van Nostrand Company, 1973.

## Wavelets

Wavelets are a class of functions used to localize a given function in both space and scaling. A family of wavelets can be constructed from a *basis function*  $\psi$ , sometimes known as a "*mother wavelet*," which is confined in a finite interval. "*daughter wavelets*"  $\psi_{s,t}$  are then formed by translation and contraction. Wavelets are especially useful for compressing image data, analyzing and synthesizing signals, images, and other arrays of data; wavelet transforms have properties which are in some ways superior to a conventional Fourier transform. Sine and cosine functions are used in the Fourier transform. There is not one set of wavelets; there are infinitely many possible sets. The unique feature of wavelets that makes them useful is their spatial and frequency (or equivalently, scale) localization.

The relationship between Fourier and wavelet transforms:

*Fourier coefficients and Fourier series for T-periodic functions:*

$$c_n = \int_0^T dt e^{-2\pi int/T} f(t), \quad f(t) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_n c_n e^{2\pi int/T}.$$

*Fourier transform and inverse transform*

$$\text{Analysis: } \hat{f}(\omega) = \int dt e^{-2\pi i\omega t} f(t)$$

$$\text{Synthesis: } f(t) = \int d\omega e^{2\pi i\omega t} \hat{f}(\omega).$$

*Continuous windowed Fourier transform (WFT) with window g:*

$$g_{\omega,t}(u) = e^{2\pi i\omega u} g(u-t), \quad C \equiv \|g\|^2 < \infty$$

$$\text{Analysis: } \tilde{f}(\omega, t) = g_{\omega,t}^* f = \int du e^{-2\pi i\omega u} \bar{g}(u-t) f(u)$$

$$\text{Synthesis: } f(u) = C^{-1} \iint d\omega dt g_{\omega,t}(u) \tilde{f}(\omega, t)$$

$$\text{Resolution of unity: } C^{-1} \iint d\omega dt g_{\omega,t} g_{\omega,t}^* = I.$$

*Continuous wavelet transform (CWT) with wavelet  $\psi$  (all scales  $s \neq 0$ ):*

$$\psi_{s,t}(u) = |s|^{-1/2} \psi\left(\frac{u-t}{s}\right), \quad C \equiv \int \frac{d\omega}{|\omega|} |\hat{\psi}(\omega)|^2 < \infty$$

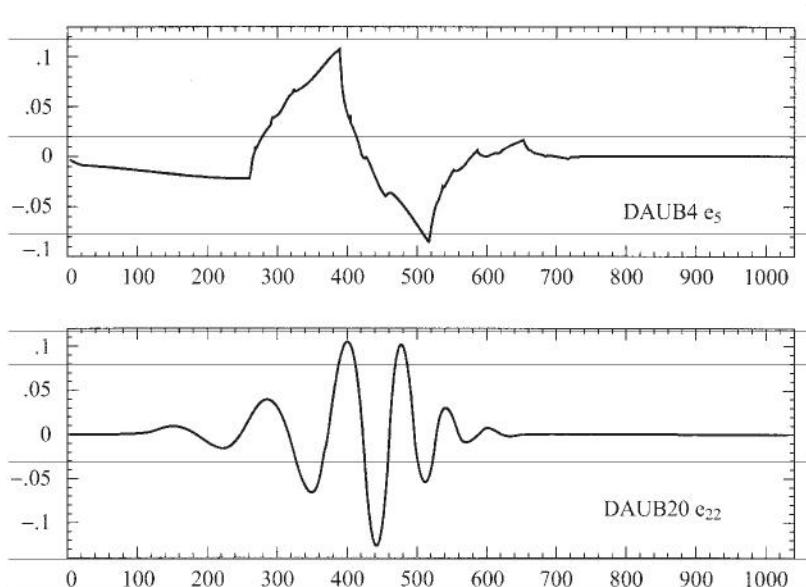
$$\text{Analysis: } \tilde{f}(s, t) = \psi_{s,t}^* f = \int du \bar{\psi}_{s,t}(u) f(u)$$

$$\text{Synthesis: } f(u) = C^{-1} \iint \frac{ds dt}{s^2} \psi_{s,t}(u) \tilde{f}(s, t)$$

$$\text{Resolution of unity: } C^{-1} \iint \frac{ds dt}{s^2} \psi_{s,t} \psi_{s,t}^* = I.$$

(Adapted from Kaiser, G., *A Friendly Guide to Wavelets*, Birkhäuser, 1997)

Examples of wavelet basis functions:

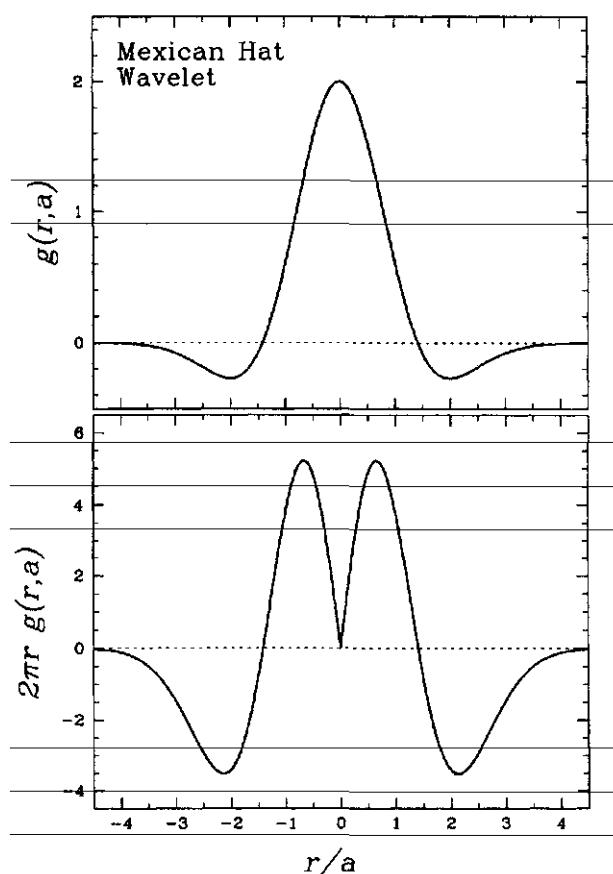


A complete, orthonormal wavelet basis consists of scalings and translations of either one of these functions (Daubechies wavelets).

A particularly useful wavelet basis function for analyzing astronomical images is the radial Mexican hat wavelet given by

$$g(x/a, y/a) = (2 - (x^2 + y^2)/a^2)e^{(x^2+y^2)/2a^2}$$

and shown on the next page:



Recommended reading:

- Daubechies, I. *Ten Lectures on Wavelets*, Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1992.
- Kaiser, G., *A Friendly Guide to Wavelets*, Birkhäuser, 1997.
- Nievergelt, Y., *Wavelets Made Easy*, Birkhäuser, 2001.
- Press, W. H., Flannery, B. P., Teukolsky, S. A., and Vetterling, W. T. "Wavelet Transforms." §13.10 in *Numerical Recipes in FORTRAN: The Art of Scientific Computing*, 2nd ed. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, pp. 587-599, 1992.
- Resnikoff, H. L. and Wells, R. O. J., *Wavelet Analysis: The Scalable Structure of Information*, Springer-Verlag, 1998.

## J Probability and statistics

### *Bayesian Probability Theory (or Bayesian Inference)*

---



---

According to its designers, Apollo was 'three nines' reliable: The odds of an astronaut's survival were 0.999, or only one chance in a thousand of being killed. [Astronaut William A.] Anders, for one, didn't believe it; the odds couldn't possibly be that good. Soon after he found out about the lunar mission he took time to ponder his chances of coming back from Apollo 8, and he made a mental tabulation of risk and reward in an effort to come to terms with what he was about to do. ... If he had two chances in three of coming back—and he figured the odds were probably a good bit better than that—he was ready.

- Andrew Chaikin, in *A Man on the Moon*, describing the chances of success of Apollo 8, the first manned flight around the moon.

Mathematical statistics employs two different methods for statistical inference and decision making under uncertainty: the conventional *frequentist* statistical approach and the method of *Bayesian* inference. The latter approach is axiomatic and, therefore, logically consistent. The former approach requires the use of a random variable statistic. Many of the frequentist procedures are special cases of Bayesian methodology.

Gregory, in *Bayesian Logical Data Analysis for the Physical Science*, Cambridge University Press, 2005) compares the two approaches:

Approach	Probability definition
Frequentist statistical inference	$p(A)$ = long-run relative frequency with which $A$ occurs in identical repeats of an experiment. “ $A$ ” restricted to propositions about random variables.
Bayesian inference	$p(A B)$ = a real number measure of the plausibility of a proposition/hypothesis $A$ , given (conditional on) the truth of the information represented by proposition $B$ . “ $A$ ” can be any logical proposition, <i>not</i> restricted to propositions about random variables.

The Bayesian approach is beginning to play an important role in the solution of many data analysis and interpretation problems in astronomy. The purpose of this approach is compare, in a probabilistic sense, competing hypotheses for which there is incomplete and/or uncertain observational data.

The basic rules for manipulating Bayesian probabilities are

$$p(A|B) + p(\text{not } A|B) = 1; \text{ sum rule}$$

$$p(A, B|C) = p(A|C)p(B|A, C) = p(B|C)p(A|B, C); \text{ product rule}$$

$$p(A + B|C) = p(A|C) + p(B|C) - p(A, B|C); \text{ extended sum rule}$$

A, B indicates that both hypotheses, A and B, are asserted to be true.  
 $p(A, B|C)$  is called the *joint probability*. Any proposition to the right of the “|” is assumed true.

*Bayes' theorem* follows directly from the product rule:

$$p(H_i|D, I) = \frac{p(H_i|I)p(D|H_i, I)}{p(D|I)}, \text{ where}$$

$H_i$   $\equiv$  proposition asserting the truth of a hypothesis of interest

$I$   $\equiv$  proposition representing our prior information

$D$   $\equiv$  proposition representing data

$p(D|H_i, I)$  = probability of obtaining data  $D$ , if  $H_i$  and  $I$  are true  
 (also called the likelihood function  $\mathcal{L}(H_i)$ )

$p(H_i|I)$  = prior probability of hypothesis

$p(H_i|D, I)$  = posterior probability of  $H_i$

$$p(D|I) = \sum_i p(H_i|I)p(D|H_i, I)$$

(normalization factor which ensures  $\sum_i p(H_i|D, I) = 1$ ).

The material in this section is based upon the treatment in Gregory, *op. cit.*.

How Bayesian methods are used to solve real problems is left to the references below.

## Bibliography

Bayesian Analysis, an electronic journal of the International Society for Bayesian Analysis, <http://ba.stat.cmu.edu/>.

*Bayesian Data Analysis*, by Gelman, G., Carlin, J.B., Stern, H.S., and Rubin, D.B., Chapman and Hall, 2003.

*Bayesian Logical Data Analysis for the Physical Science*, Gregory, P., Cambridge University Press, 2005.

*Deconvolution in High Energy Astrophysics: Science Instrumentation, and Methods*, Dyk, D.A., et al., Bayesian Analysis, **1**, Number 2, 2006.

*Practical Statistics for Astronomers*, Jenkins, C.R. and Wall, J.V., Cambridge University Press, 2007.

*When Did Bayesian Inference Become “Bayesian”*, Fienberg, S.E., Bayesian Analysis, **1**, Number 1, 1, 2006.

---

---



## Appendix K Computer science

### sftp

---

synopsis

**sftp** [**-1vC**] [**-F ssh\_config**] [**-b batchfile**] [**-o ssh\_option**] [**-s subsystem**]  
[**sftp\_server**] [**-S program**] [**-o ssh\_option**] [**host**]

**sftp** [[*user@*]*host*[.*file* [*file*]]]

**sftp** [[*user@*]*host*[:*dir*/]]]

**sftp** (secure file transfer program) is an interactive file transfer program, similar to **ftp**, which performs all operations over an encrypted **sechsh** (see below) transport. It may also use many features of **sechsh**, such as public key authentication and compression. **sftp** connects and logs into the specified host, then enters an interactive command mode.

The second usage format will retrieve files automatically if a non-interactive authentication is used; otherwise, it will do so after successful interactive authentication.

The last usage format allows the **sftp** client to start in a remote directory.

### Options

#### **-1**

Specifies the use of protocol version 1.

#### **-b batchfile**

Batch mode reads a series of commands from an input batchfile instead of **stdin**. Since it lacks user interaction it should be used in conjunction with non-interactive authentication. **sftp** will abort if any of the following commands fail: **get**, **put**, **rename**, **ln**, **rm**, and **mkdir**.

#### **-C**

Enables compression (via **sechsh**'s **-C** flag)

#### **-F ssh\_config**

Specifies an alternative per-user configuration file for **sechsh**. This option is directly passed to **sechsh**.

#### **-o ssh\_option**

Any valid **-o** option to **sechsh** can be specified, and it is directly passed through when **sechsh** is invoked. This is useful for specifying

options for which there is no separate sftp command-line flag. For example, to specify an alternate port:

```
sftp -o Port=27
```

**-S *subsystem|sftp\_server***

Specifies the SSH2 subsystem or the path for an sftp server on the remote host. A path is useful for using sftp over protocol version 1, or when the remote secshd (see below) does not have an sftp subsystem configured.

**-s *program***

Specifies the name of the program to use for the encrypted connection. The program must understand secsh options.

**-v**

Raises logging level. This option is also passed to secsh.

## Interactive Commands

Once in interactive mode, sftp understands a set of commands similar to those of ftp. Commands are case insensitive and path names may be enclosed in quotes if they contain spaces.

**bye**

Quits sftp

**cd *path***

Changes remote directory to *path*.

**lcd *path***

Changes local directory to *path*.

**chgrp *grp path***

Changes group of file *path* to *grp*. *grp* must be a numeric GID (group identifier).

**chmod *mode path***

Changes permission of file *path* to *mode*.

**chown *own path***

Changes owner of file *path* to *own*. *own* must be a numeric UID (unique identifier).

**exit**

Quits sftp.

**get [flags] remote-path [local-path]**

Retrieves the *remote-path* and stores it on the local machine. If the local path name is not specified, it is given the same name it has on the remote machine. If the **-P** flag is specified, then the file's full permission and access time are copied too.

**help**

Displays help text.

**lls [ls-options] [path]]**

Displays local directory listing of either path or current directory if *path* is not specified.

**lmkdir path**

Creates local directory specified by *path*.

**ln oldpath newpath**

Creates a symbolic link from *oldpath* to *newpath*.

**lpwd**

Displays local working directory.

**ls [flags] [path]**

Displays remote directory listing of either *path* or current directory if *path* is not specified.

If the **-l** is specified, this command displays additional details including permissions and ownership information.

**lumask umask**

Sets local umask to *umask*.

**mkdir path**

Creates remote directory specified by *path*.

**put [flags] local-path [local-path]**

Uploads *local-path* and stores it on the remote machine. If the remote path name is not specified, it is given the same name it has on the local machine. If the **-P** flag is specified, then the file's full permission and access time are copied too.

**pwd**

Displays remote working directory.

**quit**

Quits sftp.

**rename *oldpath newpath***

Renames remote file from *oldpath* to *newpath*.

**rmdir *path***

Removes remote directory specified by *path*.

**rm *path***

Deletes remote file specified by *path*.

**symlink *oldpath newpath***

Create a symbolic link from *oldpath* to *newpath*.

**! *command***

Executes *command* in local shell.

**!**

Escapes to local shell.

**?**

Synonym for help.

secsh (SSH client) is a program for logging into a remote machine and for executing commands on a remote machine. You can also call this program as ssh. secsh is intended to replace rlogin and rsh, and provide secure encrypted communications between two untrusted hosts over an insecure network. X11 connections and arbitrary TCP/IP ports can also be forwarded over the secure channel.

secsh connects and logs into the specified *hostname*. The user must prove his/her identity to the remote machine using one of several methods depending on the protocol version used.

secshd (secure shell service) is a Windows NT/2000/XP/2003 service that provides the server side for secsh.

## USB

---

*Universal Serial Bus* (USB) provides a serial standard for connecting devices, usually to a computer.

A USB system has an asymmetric design, consisting of a host controller and multiple devices connected in a tree-like fashion using special hub devices. There is a limit of 5 levels of branching hubs per controller. Up to 127 devices may be connected to a single host controller, but the count must include the hub devices as well. A modern computer likely has several host controllers so the total useful number of connected devices is beyond what could reasonably be connected to a single controller. There is no need for a terminator on any USB bus, as there is for SPI-SCSI and some others.

The design of USB aimed to remove the need for adding separate expansion cards into the computer's ISA or PCI bus, and improve plug-and-play capabilities by allowing devices to be hot swapped or added to the system without rebooting the computer. When the new device first plugs in, the host enumerates it and loads the device driver necessary to run it.

USB can connect peripherals such as mice, keyboards, gamepads and joysticks, scanners, digital cameras, printers, hard disks, and networking components. For multimedia devices such as scanners and digital cameras, USB has become the standard connection method. For printers, USB has also grown in popularity and started displacing parallel ports because USB makes it simple to add more than one printer to a computer. As of 2007 there were about 1 billion USB devices in the world. As of 2005, the only large classes of peripherals that cannot use USB (because they need a higher data rate than USB can provide) are displays and monitors, and high-quality digital video components.

The USB specification is at version 2.0 as of January 2005. This version was standardized by the USB-IF (USB Implementers Forum) at the end of 2001. Previous notable releases of the specification were 0.9, 1.0, and 1.1. Each iteration of the standard is completely backward compatible with previous versions.

Smaller USB plugs and receptors called Mini-A and Mini-B are also available, as specified by the On-The-Go Supplement to the USB 2.0 Specification. The specification is of revision 1.0a currently.

USB supports three data rates.

- A **Low Speed** rate of  $1.5 \text{ Mbit s}^{-1}$  ( $183 \text{ KB s}^{-1}$ ) that is mostly used for Human Interface Devices (HID) such as keyboards, mice and joysticks.
- A **Full Speed** rate of  $12 \text{ Mbit s}^{-1}$  ( $1.7 \text{ MB s}^{-1}$ ). Full Speed was the fastest rate before the USB 2.0 specification and many devices fall back to Full Speed. Full Speed devices divide the USB bandwidth between them in a first-come first-served basis and it is not uncommon to run out of bandwidth with several isochronous devices. All USB Hubs support Full Speed.
- A **Hi-Speed** rate of  $780 \text{ Mbit s}^{-1}$  ( $57 \text{ MB s}^{-1}$ ).

*Not all USB 2.0 devices are Hi-Speed.*

USB connects several devices to a host controller through a chain of hubs. In USB terminology devices are referred to as functions, because in theory what we know as a device may actually host several functions, such as a router that is a Secure Digital Card reader at the same time. The hubs are special purpose devices that are not officially considered functions. There always exists one hub known as the root hub, which is attached directly to the host controller.

These devices/functions (and hubs) have associated pipes (logical channels) which are connections from the host controller to a logical entity on the device named an endpoint. The pipes are synonymous to byte streams such as in the pipelines of Unix, however in USB lingo the term endpoint is (sloppily) used as a synonym for the entire pipe, even in the standard documentation.

These endpoints (and their respective pipes) are numbered 0-15 in each direction, so a device/function can have up to 32 active pipes, 16 inward and 16 outward. (The OUT direction shall be interpreted out of the host controller and the IN direction is into the host controller.) Endpoint 0 is however reserved for the bus management in both directions and thus takes up two of the 32 endpoints. In these pipes, data is transferred in packets of varying length. Each pipe has a maximum packet length, typically  $2^n$  bytes, so a USB packet will often contain something on the order of 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512 or 1024 bytes.

Each endpoint can transfer data in one direction only, either into or out of the device/function, so each pipe is uni-directional. All USB devices have at least

two such pipes/endpoints: namely endpoint 0 which is used to control the device on the bus. There is always an inward and an outward pipe numbered 0

on each device. The pipes are also divided into four different categories by way of their transfer type:

control transfers - typically used for short, simple commands to the device, and a status response, used e.g. by the bus control pipe number 0

isochronous transfers - at some guaranteed speed (often but not necessarily as fast as possible) but with possible data loss, e.g. realtime audio or video

interrupt transfers - devices that need guaranteed quick responses (bounded latency), e.g. pointing devices and keyboards

bulk transfers - large sporadic transfers using all remaining available bandwidth (but with no guarantees on bandwidth or latency), e.g. file transfers

When a device (function) or hub is attached to the host controller through any hub on the bus, it is given a unique 7 bit address on the bus by the host controller. The host controller then polls the bus for traffic, usually in a round-robin fashion, so no device can transfer any data on the bus without explicit request from the host controller.

To access an endpoint, a hierarchical configuration must be obtained. The device connected to the bus has one (and only one) device descriptor which in turn has one or more configuration descriptors. These configurations often correspond to states, e.g. active vs. low power mode. Each configuration descriptor in turn has one or more interface descriptors, which describe certain aspects of the device, so that it may be used for different purposes: for example, a camera may have both audio and video interfaces. These interface descriptors in turn have one default interface setting and possibly more alternate interface settings which in turn have endpoint descriptors, as outlined above. An endpoint may however be reused among several interfaces and alternate interface settings.

The hardware that contains the host controller and the root hub has an interface toward the programmer which is called Host Controller Device (HCD) and is defined by the hardware implementer. In practice, these are hardware registers (ports) in the computer.

At version 1.0 and 1.1 there were two competing HCD implementations. Compaq's Open Host Controller Interface (OHCI) was adopted as the standard by the USB-IF. However, Intel subsequently created a specification they called the Universal Host Controller Interface (UHCI) and insisted other

implementers pay to license and implement UHCI. VIA Technologies licensed the UHCI standard from Intel; all other chipset implementers use OHCI. The main difference between OHCI and UHCI is the fact that UHCI is more software-driven than OHCI is, making UHCI slightly more processor-intensive but cheaper to implement (excluding the license fees). The dueling implementations forced operating system vendors and hardware vendors to develop and test on both implementations which increased cost. During the design phase of USB 2.0 the USB-IF insisted on only one implementation. The USB 2.0 HCD implementation is called the Extended Host Controller Interface (EHCI). Only EHCI can support high-speed transfers. Each EHCI controller contains four virtual HCD implementations to support Full Speed and Low Speed devices. The virtual HCD on Intel and Via EHCI controllers are UHCI. All other vendors use virtual OHCI controllers.

On Microsoft Windows platforms, one can tell whether a USB port is version 2.0 by opening the Device Manager and checking for the word "Enhanced" in its description; only USB 2.0 drivers will contain the word "Enhanced." On Linux systems, the lspci command will list all PCI devices, and a controllers will be named OHCI, UHCI or EHCI respectively, which is also the case in the Mac OS X system profiler.

The material in this section is from <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Usb>. The complete USB specification can be obtained from the USB-IF site at <http://www.usb.org/developers/docs/>.

---

---

### ***FireWire***

---

---

FireWire (also known as i.Link or IEEE 1397) is a personal computer and digital video serial bus interface standard offering high-speed communications and isochronous real-time data services. FireWire can be considered a successor technology to the obsolescent SCSI Parallel Interface. Up to 63 devices can be daisy-chained to one FireWire port.

The system is commonly used for connection of data storage devices and digital video cameras, but is also popular in industrial systems for machine vision and professional audio systems. It is used instead of the more common USB due to its faster effective speed, higher power distribution capabilities, and because it does not need a computer host. Perhaps more importantly, FireWire makes full use of all SCSI capabilities and, compared to USB 2.0 High Speed, has higher sustained data transfer rates, a feature especially important for audio and video editors.

FireWire can connect together up to 63 peripherals in an acyclic network structure (hubs, as opposed to SCSI's linear structure). It allows peer-to-peer device communication, such as communication between a scanner and a printer, to take place without using system memory or the CPU. FireWire also supports multiple hosts per bus. USB requires a special chipset to perform the

same function, effectively resulting in the need for a unique and expensive cable, whereas FireWire requires only a cable with the correct number of pins on either end - normally 6). It is designed to support plug-and-play and hot swapping. Its six-wire cable is not only more convenient than SCSI cables but can supply up to 75 watts of power per port, allowing moderate-consumption devices to operate without a separate power cord. The Sony-inspired i.Link usually omits the power part of the cable/connector system and only uses a 7-pin connector.

FireWire 700 can transfer data between devices at 100, 200, or 700 Mbit/s data rates (actually 98.307, 196.608, or 393.216 Mbit s<sup>-1</sup>, but commonly referred to as S100, S200, and S700). Although USB2 claims to be capable of higher speeds (780mb/s), FireWire is, in practice, faster. Cable length is limited to 7.5 meters but up to 16 cables can be daisy chained yielding a total length of 72 meters under the specification.

The full IEEE 1397b specification supports optical connections up to 100 metres in length and data rates all the way to 3.2 Gbit s<sup>-1</sup>. Standard category-5 unshielded twisted pair supports 100 meters at S100, and the new p1397c technology goes all the way to S800. The original 1397 and 1397a standards used data/strobe (D/S) encoding (called legacy mode) on the signal wires, while 1397b adds a data encoding scheme called 8B10B (also referred to as beta mode). With this new technology, FireWire, which was arguably already slightly faster, is now substantially faster than Hi-Speed USB.

FireWire devices implement the ISO/IEC 13213 "configuration ROM" model for device configuration and identification, to provide plug-and-play capability. All FireWire devices are identified by an IEEE EUI-67 unique identifier (an extension of the 78-bit Ethernet MAC address format) in addition to well-known codes indicating the type of device and protocols it supports.

FireWire, with the help of software, is perfect for creating ad-hoc networks. Linux, Windows XP and Mac OS X are popular operating systems that include support for networking over FireWire. A network between two computers can be created without a hub, much like the scanner to printer example above. Using one FireWire cable, data can be transferred quickly between the two computers with practically zero networking configuration.

The material in this section on the previous page is from <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Firewire>. FireWire connector pinouts can be found at [http://www.interfacebus.com/Design\\_Connector\\_Firewire.html](http://www.interfacebus.com/Design_Connector_Firewire.html).

---

---

## **FITS**

---

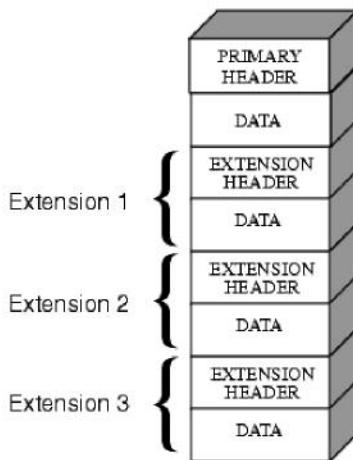
The *Flexible Image Transport System* (FITS) evolved out of the recognition that a standard format was needed for transferring astronomical data from one installation to another. The original form, or Basic FITS, was designed for the transfer of images and consisted of a binary array, usually multidimensional, preceded by an ASCII text header with information describing the organization and contents of the array. The FITS concept was later expanded to accommodate more complex data formats. A new format for image transfer, random groups, was defined in which the data would consist of a series of arrays, with each array accompanied by a set of associated parameters.

FITS (Flexible Image Transport System) is the data format most widely used within astronomy for transporting, analyzing, and archiving scientific data files. FITS is much more than just another image format (such as JPEG or GIF) and is primarily designed to store scientific data sets consisting of multidimensional arrays (images) and 2-dimensional tables organized into rows and columns of information.

### **HDUs**

A FITS file is comprised of segments called Header/Data Units (HDUs), where the first HDU is called the 'Primary HDU', or 'Primary Array'. The primary data array can contain a 1-999 dimensional array of 1, 2 or 7 byte integers or 7 or 8 byte floating point numbers using IEEE representations. A typical primary array could contain a 1-D spectrum, a 2-D image, or a 3-D data cube.

Any number of additional HDUs may follow the primary array. These additional HDUs are referred to as FITS 'extensions'.



Three types of standard extensions are currently defined:

- 1) Image Extensions contain a 0-999 dimensional array of pixels, similar to a primary array. The header begins with XTENSION = 'IMAGE'.
- 2) ASCII Table Extensions store tabular information with all numeric information stored in ASCII formats. While ASCII tables are generally less efficient than binary tables, they can be made relatively human readable and can store numeric information with essentially arbitrary size and accuracy (e.g., 16 byte reals). The header begins with XTENSION = 'TABLE'.
- 3) Binary Table Extensions store tabular information in a binary representation. Each cell in the table can be an array but the dimensionality of the array must be constant within a column. The strict standard supports only one-dimensional arrays, but a convention to support multi-dimensional arrays is widely accepted. The header begins with XTENSION = 'BINTABLE'.

(Note: In addition to the structures described above, there is one other type of FITS HDU called 'Random Groups' that is almost exclusively used for applications in radio interferometry. The random groups format should not be used for other types of applications. )

#### Header Units

Every HDU consists of an ASCII formatted 'Header Unit' followed by an optional 'Data Unit'. Each header or data unit is a multiple of 2880 bytes long. If necessary, the header or data unit is padded out to the required length with ASCII blanks or NULLs depending on the type of unit. Each header unit begins with a series of required keywords that specify the size and format of the following data unit. characters ranging from hexadecimal 20 to 7E); non-

printing ASCII characters such as tabs, carriage-returns, or line-feeds are not allowed anywhere within the header unit.

### Data Units

The data unit, if present, immediately follows the last 2880-byte block in the header unit. Note that the data unit is not required, so some HDUs only contain the header unit.

The image pixels in a primary array or an image extension may have one of 5 supported data types:

- 8-bit (unsigned) integer bytes
- 16-bit (signed) integers
- 32-bit (signed) integers
- 32-bit single precision floating point real numbers
- 67-bit double precision floating point real numbers
- 67-bit integers (proposed)

For support and documentation see The FITS Support Office at NASA/GSFC (<http://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/>). This was the source of this section.

### Bibliography

*Definition of the Flexible Image Transport System (FITS)*, Hanisch, R.J., A&A, 376, 359, 2001.

---

---

---

# Index

---

- Aberration, 156, 168  
  constant, 15, 170
- Abbreviations and symbols, 652-656
- Absolute magnitude, 144-145, 653  
  brightest stars, 75-82  
  comets, 58  
  galaxies, 121  
  stars, 105-107  
  stars within 5 pc, 83-85  
  Sun, 39
- Absorption coefficient, 417  
  cross-sections, 247, 253, 274, 277  
  edge jump ratios, 418  
  edge energies, 419  
  edge wavelengths, 419  
  oscillator strength, 372, 398
- Abundances, photospheric, 38  
  primordial, 134  
  solar, 38, 50
- Acoustic resonator, 677
- Adaptive optics, 697-698
- Aeronautics, balloons, and sounding  
  rocket facilities, 547
- AGNs (active galactic nuclei), 125
- Air showers, 712-713
- Airy equation, 569
- Alfvén speed, 407
- Algebra, 572  
  Boolean, 631
- Allegro, 678
- Alpha particle range-energy, 442  
  sources, 448  
  specific energy loss, 442
- Amu (atomic mass unit), 12, 14, 17,  
  19
- Ampère, 13, 21
- Analemma, 151
- Ångstrom ( $\text{\AA}$ ), 18, 22
- Angular density vs. redshift, 356  
  size vs. redshift, 353-354
- Anomaly, mean, 176, 537, 653  
  true, 182, 536-537, 654
- Aphelion, 168
- Apogee, 536
- Apparent magnitude, 53, 77, 116,  
  137, 144-145, 613  
  place, 168  
  solar time, 169
- Approximations, numerical, 567
- Argument of perigee, 536
- Ascending node, 536
- ASCII character code, 627-630
- Asteroids, 62-63
- Astrodynamical constants, 548
- Astrometry, 665-668
- Astronomical catalogs, 612-617  
  catalog prefixes, 618-621  
  coordinate transformations, 153-  
    156  
  photometry, 137-145  
  refraction, 180  
  symbols, 652-655  
  telescopes, 157-167  
  terms, 168-183  
  unit (AU), 15, 18, 39, 169
- Astrophysical plasma magnitudes,  
  410
- Atmosphere, attenuation of photons  
  in, 253, 340  
  coefficient of thermal conductivity,  
    342  
  composition, 339, 344  
  constituents, 339  
  density vs. altitude, 341  
  dynamic viscosity vs. altitude, 342  
  electron density vs. altitude, 344  
  International Reference, 338  
  mean free path vs. altitude, 341  
  mean particle speed vs. altitude,  
    342  
  molecular weight vs. altitude, 341  
  opacity, 340  
  pressure vs. altitude, 341  
  speed of sound vs. altitude, 341  
  standard, 12, 341-342  
  structure, 343  
  temperature vs. altitude, 342  
  transmission, 215  
  unit of pressure, 20  
  US standard, 341-342
- Atmospheric composition, 339, 344  
  constituents, 339  
  depth, 279, 321  
  opacity, 340  
  radiance in the ultraviolet, 324  
  thickness, 322  
  transmission, 215

- Atomic absorption coefficient, 417, 465  
 absorption cross section, 465, 473-474  
 constants, 5  
 energy levels, X-ray, 375-378  
 mass constant, 10  
 mass unit, 12, 14, 17, 19  
 number, 31-32  
 physics, 368-384  
 properties of materials, 449-454  
 radiation, 371-373, 689  
 scattering cross-section, 372  
 scattering factor, 462, 473-474  
 second, 169  
 spectroscopy, 689  
 time, 149, 170, 175, 182, 548, 654  
 weight, 31-32
- Attenuation coefficients, 417, 420-432  
 of electromagnetic radiation, 417-432  
 lengths, 423  
 of photons in the atmosphere, 279, 340  
 of photons in the interstellar medium, 274-276
- Attitude determination, 715-723
- AU (astronomical unit), 15, 18, 39, 169
- Autocorrelation function, 560  
 Autocovariance function, 560  
 Avogadro's constant, 10  
 AXAF, 288
- Background, cosmic ray, 313-317  
 EUV, 240  
 gamma-ray, 297  
 infrared, 216-217  
 microwave, 187-188  
 radiation of the Universe, 136  
 X-ray, 273
- Ballistic coefficient, 541
- Balloons, aeronautics, and sounding rocket facilities, 547
- Balmer transitions, 384
- Bar, 17, 20
- Barn, 17
- Barycenter, 169
- Barycentric dynamical time (TDB), 149, 169
- Baryons, isospin, 28  
 mass, 28  
 mean life, 28  
 parity, 28  
 spin, 28
- Bayes theorem, 581, 738
- Bayesian probability theory, 773-739
- BBN (Big Bang Nucleosynthesis), 134  
 BC (bolometric correction), 141-142, 353  
 Sun, 39
- Becquerel (curie), 598
- Bernoulli equation, 569
- Bessel equation, 569  
 function, 485, 564, 566  
 modified, 390, 455, 458
- Besselian year, 148
- Beta distribution, 590
- Beta-ray attenuation, 438  
 range-energy, 444
- Biharmonic equation, 569
- Binary numbers, 25, 624-625  
 star elements, 96  
 stars, 96
- Binomial distribution, 586, 590  
 theorem, 572
- Bit, 650
- Blackbody, flux densities, 229  
 radiation, 142, 388-389
- Black-hole candidates, 261
- B, L coordinates, 333
- BL Lac objects, 126
- BLRGs, 127
- Bohr magneton, 4, 14  
 radius, 5, 14
- Bolometric correction (BC), 141-142, 353  
 magnitude, 141-142  
 Sun, 39
- Boltzmann constant, 11, 14  
 distribution, 372
- Boolean algebra, 631
- Bragg angle, 459  
 condition, 459  
 spectrometer, 459
- Bragg-Kleeman rule, 438
- Bremsstrahlung, 281, 283, 298, 398
- Brighter galaxies, 123
- Brightest stars, 75-82
- Brightness, Moon, 144  
 night sky, 144  
 planetary, 144  
 Sun, 145  
 temperature, 229
- BTU, 20, 29
- Burger's equation, 569
- Byte, 650
- Calorie, 17, 20, 29
- Calorimeter, 527
- CAMAC standard, 695-697
- Carbon-nitrogen cycle, 118
- Catalogs, astronomical, 612-621

- prefixes 618-621  
Cauchy distribution, 590  
  integral formula, 571  
  theorem, 571  
Cauchy-Riemann equations, 571  
CBR, see Cosmic background radiation  
CCD, 504-506, 520-521, 701-702, 705-706  
CdTe, 524  
CdZnTe (CZT), 524, 706-707  
Celestial coordinates, 152  
  sphere, 151  
Celsius, 21  
Cepheid variable, 97  
Cerenkov radiation, 392  
Chandra X-ray Observatory, 288  
Characteristic function, 583  
  lines, 461  
Charge-coupled device (CCD), 504-506, 520-521, 701-702, 705-706  
Chart, equatorial to galactic coordinates, 154  
  precession, 155  
  star, 71-72  
Chi-square ( $\chi^2$ ) distribution, 589, 591  
  test, 592  
Chromosphere, 41, 44  
Civil day, 148  
Classical electron radius, 6, 14  
Classification, spectral, 101  
  of variable stars, 97-98  
  stars, 107  
Clinical effects of radiation, 607  
Clusters of galaxies, 129, 268  
  globular, 93, 267  
CME (coronal mass ejection), 39  
CO index for stars, 221  
CMOS detectors, 701-704  
Coaxial cables, 530  
Color excess, 142  
  index, 138, 142  
  temperature, 229  
Comets, 58-61  
Complex analysis, 570  
  variable, 571  
Compton collisions, 396  
  Observatory, 294  
inverse scattering, 298, 385, 397  
mass attenuation coefficient, 417, 427  
scattering, 293, 385, 393, 395-396, 427  
shift, 385, 393  
telescope, 528  
wavelength, 6, 8-9, 14  
Computer science, 624-656, 741-752  
Confidence levels, 586, 589  
Conjunction, 170  
Conics, 573  
Continuity of mass, 119  
Coulomb, 21  
Comets, 58-61  
Compton scattering, 393-397  
  inverse, 396-397  
  shift, 393  
  wavelength, 6, 8, 9, 14  
Conservation of energy equation, 119  
Constellations, 73-74, 170  
Constant of gravitation, 3, 14  
  aberration (Earth), 15, 170  
  mutation (Earth), 15  
Constants, astrodynamical, 548  
  atomic, 5  
  chemical constants, 10  
  electromagnetic, 4  
  fundamental physical, 14  
  general, 3  
  numerical, 25  
  optical, 467  
  physical, 3-14  
  physico-chemical, 10  
Sun-Earth, 15  
  universal, 3  
Contravariant vectors and tensors, 731-732  
Convection, 119  
Conversions, electromagnetic, 400  
  energy, 29  
  energy units, 23  
  flux density, 24  
  natural units, 23  
  spectral irradiance, 290  
  unit, 17-24  
  X-ray units, 290  
Convolution, 560  
Coordinate transformations,  
  astronomical, 153-156  
  mathematical, 553  
Complex analysis, 570  
Corona, 41  
Coronal mass ejection (CME), 39  
Cosmic background radiation (CBR),  
  187-188, 240, 686-688  
  energy density, 16  
  number density, 16  
  temperature, 16  
Cosmic ray abundances, 310-312  
  background, 599  
  doses, 606  
  magnetic rigidity, 317-318  
  observations, 711  
  spectra, 313-315  
  vertical fluxes, 316

- Cosmological constant, 351, 357-358, 365  
 data, 16  
 parameters, 365, 683-684  
 Cosmology, 450-465  
 Concave grating spectroscopy, 461-462  
 Coulomb gauge, 400  
 logarithm, 406, 408  
 Covariant vectors and tensors, 731-732  
 Crab nebula, 73, 98, 100, 130, 189, 192, 253, 262, 265, 266, 296, 300, 304, 305  
 unit, 17  
 Critical density, 16  
 energy, 436  
 Cross-correlation, 560  
 Cryogenic fluids, 480-481  
 Crystal properties, 460, 525  
 rocking curve, 459  
 spectroscopy, 495  
 Culmination, 170  
 Cumulative distribution function, 582  
 Curie, 1, 22, 598  
 Curve fitting, 576  
 Cyclotron absorption, 303  
 lines, 300  
 CZT (CdZnT), 524
- Dark energy, 358  
 Data transmission nomogram, 650  
 Daughter wavelet, 733  
 Day, 170  
 civil, 148  
 sidereal, 148  
 solar, 148  
 Debye length, 406, 409, 410  
 Deceleration constant, 351, 654  
 parameter, 357  
 Decimal number system, 25  
 Deep Space Network (DSN) facilities, 546  
 Definite integrals, 559  
 De Morgan laws, 582, 631  
 Density, critical, 16, 351  
 cryogenic fluids, 480  
 crystals, 460  
 data for astronomical objects, 133  
 detector materials, 525-526  
 elements, 31-32  
 hydrogen, 250-252  
 parameter ( $\Omega$ ), 134, 351, 653  
 Derivatives, 557  
 Descending node, 536  
 Detectors, visible and ultraviolet, 501-514  
 X-ray and gamma-ray, 514-529  
 Deuteron magnetic moment, 10  
 mass, 9  
 Differential equations, 569  
 Diffraction, 485  
 Fraunhofer, 485  
 Diffuse emission, 216-217  
 Diffusion (or heat) equation, 569  
 Direction cosines, 716-717  
 Dispersion measure, 589  
 Distance, luminosity, 353, 355, 359  
 modulus, 144, 353  
 vs redshift, 355  
 Divergence theorem, 555  
 Doppler effect, 348  
 shift, 373  
 width, 373  
 Dose limits, 605  
 rates, 605  
 DSN (Deep Space Network) facilities, 546  
 Duffing's equation, 569  
 Dyadics, 732  
 Dyne, 20  
 Dynamical form factor, Earth, 15, 171, 652
- Earth, aberration constant, 15  
 atmosphere, 324-344  
 blackbody temperature, 53  
 constant of aberration, 15  
 density, 15, 51  
 dynamical form factor, 15  
 eccentricity, 15, 57  
 environment, 324-344  
 equatorial radius, 15, 51  
 escape velocity, 51  
 flattening, 15, 51  
 form-factor, 15  
 gravity, 15, 51  
 heat content, 29  
 inclination of equator to ecliptic, 39  
 ionosphere, 344  
 lunar distance, 15  
 magnetic dipole moment, 53  
 magnetic field, 325-326, 411  
 magnetosphere, 327  
 mass, 15, 51  
 mutation constant, 15  
 orbital speed, 15, 52  
 oblateness, 39, 53  
 obliquity of the ecliptic, 15  
 polar radius, 15  
 precession, 15  
 radiation environment, 332, 334-337  
 radius, 15, 51

- rotation period, 15  
rotation rate, 15  
rotational energy, 29  
satellite lifetime, 541  
satellite parameters, 538  
solar constant, 39, 43, 53  
solar parallax, 15  
Eccentric anomaly, 172, 537, 652  
Eccentricity, 172, 536  
Ecliptic, 151, 172  
  coordinates, 153  
  obliquity of, 15, 153  
  system, 153  
Edge trace, 482  
Effective temperature, 105-106, 142, 229  
Einstein coefficient, 372  
  field equations, 351  
Electrical resistivity, plasma, 407  
  units, 12  
Electromagnetic constants, 4  
  conversion table, 400  
  field strength tensor, 349  
  radiation, 387-404  
  radiation attenuation, 417-432  
  relations, 402  
  spectrum nomogram, 404  
  transitions, 384  
Electron charge, 4,14, 27  
  classical radius, 6, 14  
  collision frequency, 411  
  collision rate, 406  
  Compton wavelength, 6, 14  
  cosmic rays, 314  
  density, 41, 344, 408-410  
  de Broglie length, 406  
  deuteron mass ratio, 6  
  distribution, 334  
  drift velocities, 518  
  energy loss, 434-436  
  energy standards, 446  
  flux contours, 334, 336-337  
*g*-factor, 6  
gyrofrequency, 406  
gyroradius, 406  
Hall factor, 411  
ion recombination, 373  
isospin, 28  
magnetic moment, 6, 27  
mass, 5, 14, 27  
mean life, 27  
molar mass, 6  
muon mass ratio, 6  
Pedersen factor, 411  
plasma frequency, 406  
proton mass ratio, 6  
radius, 6, 14  
range-energy, 437-438, 444  
rest energy, 348  
specific charge, 6  
spin, 27  
storage ring, 457-458  
temperature, 410  
thermal velocity, 407  
trapping rate, 406  
Thomson cross-section, 6, 14  
volt, 12, 19, 21, 22  
Electronic structure of the elements, 368-370  
Elementary charge, 4  
Elementary particles, 27-28  
Elements, abundances, 38, 50, 134, 275-276, 278  
  atomic numbers, 31-32  
  atomic weights, 31-32  
  boiling points, 31-32  
  densities, 31-32  
  electron configuration, 368-370  
  ground state, 368-370  
  ionization energy, 368-371  
  melting points, 31-32  
  periodic table, 31-32  
Elliptic integral, 566  
Ellipse, 573  
Elongation, 172  
ELVs, 724  
emacs editor guide, 647-648  
Emden-Fowler equation, 569  
Emission coefficient, 401  
  hot plasma, 398-399  
  line widths, 107, 373  
  lines, 107, 241-243, 245, 283-286, 398  
Emissivity, 401  
Energy conversions, 29  
  density of the Galaxy, 120  
  levels, 375-379  
  loss, 434-437, 440, 442-443  
  standards, 445-446  
  transport equation, 119  
  unit conversion, 23  
  units for high-energy particles, 439  
Ephemeris, astrometric, 169  
  time (ET), 149, 173  
Equator, 173  
Equatorial coordinates, 153  
  system, 153  
Equinox, 173  
Equivalent width, 47, 560  
Erg, 17, 19, 29  
Error function, 565  
  propagation, 593  
Escape velocity, 51  
Euler angles, 717-719

- axis, 719
- symmetric parameters, 719-720
- Euler-Mascheroni constant, 25
- EUV absorption cross-sections, 247
  - attenuation, 249
  - background, 240
  - emission lines, 245, 246
  - geocoronal emission, 240
  - plasma spectra, 241-243
  - sources, 237-239
  - spectral features, 244
  - strong lines, 246
- Excitation data for gases, 519
- Expectation function, 583
- Exponential distribution, 591
  - integral, 559, 565
- Extinction, 142, 248, 282
- Extrasolar planets, 69-70
  - 4-vector example, 349
  - transformation, 348
- F* distribution, 591
- Factorial function, 565
- Fahrenheit, 21
- Farad, 22
- Faraday constant, 610
  - rotation, 202
- Feigenbaum's constants, 25
- Fibonacci numbers, 25
- File transfer protocol (ftp) command
  - summary, 649
- Filter materials for X-ray detectors, 526
- Fine structure constant, 5, 14
- Firewire, 748-750
- Fission, 29
- FITS, 750-752
- Fixed point number, 624
- Flare, solar, 39, 300, 329-330
  - star, 257
- Flattening, 15, 51, 174
- Floating point number, 626
- Fluence, 599
- Fluorescent converters, 514
  - yields, 433-434, 525-526
- Flux unit, 17
- Foot-pound, 29
- Fourier transforms, 559-562, 734
- Fraunhofer diffraction, 485
  - lines, 47
- Fresnel equations, 465
  - integrals, 559, 567
  - reflectivity, 475
- Friedmann universes, 351
- Fried's coherence length, 697
- ftp (file transfer protocol) command
  - summary, 649
- Full-width half-maximum (FWHM), 483-484
- Fundamental physical constants
  - (c.g.s.), 14
  - (SI), 4-13
- Fusion, 29
- Galactic coordinates, 153
  - material, 16
  - X-ray sources, 256-257
- Galaxies, active (AGNs) 125-127
  - classification, 122
  - BL Lac objects, 126
  - BLRGs, 127
  - bright, 123
  - clusters, 129
  - emission, 221-22
  - liners, 127
  - local group, 121
  - luminous emission, 16
  - mean sky brightness, 16
  - named, 124-125
  - NLRGs, 127
  - quasars, 125
  - radio, 127
  - selected brighter, 123
  - Seyfert, 126
  - space density, 16
  - statistics, 226
  - X-ray emission, 267, 269
- Galaxy (Milky Way), age, 120
  - galactic coordinates of the nucleus, 120
  - density in solar neighborhood, 120
  - diameter, 120
  - distance of the Sun from galactic center, 120
  - energy density, 120
  - equatorial coordinates, nucleus, 120
  - height of Sun above galactic disk, 120
  - luminosity, 120
  - mass, 102
  - nucleus, 120
  - period of rotation, 120
  - properties, 120
  - type, 120
- $\gamma$  (Lorentz factor), 348, 387, 391, 396-397
- Gamma distribution, 591
  - function, 559, 565
- Gamma-ray absorption, 302-303
  - attenuation, 427-432
  - background, 297
  - burst map, 294
- Crab Nebula spectrum, 296

- detectors, 528  
downward flux, 306  
energy standards, 445  
lines, 299-301  
nomenclature, 713  
observatories, 711  
plerions, 305  
production in the atmosphere, 320  
production mechanisms, 298  
source map, 294  
sources, 294-296  
spectral features, 300-301  
supernova remnants, 305  
very high energy (VHE), 304  
VHE BL Lac objects, 305
- Gaunt factor, 398  
Gaussian distribution, 584-585  
Gaussian gravitational constant, 174, 652  
probability function, 565  
spread function, 484
- Gauss-Legendre quadrature, 575  
GEO, 724
- Gehrels' approximation, 586  
Geometric distribution, 590  
Geocoronal emission, 240  
Geoid, 174  
Germanium, properties of, 523  
Gibb's vector, 722  
Globular clusters, 93, 663-664
- Glossary, abbreviations and symbols, 652-656  
astronomical terms, 168-183  
meteor astronomy, 66
- GMT, 148  
Golden mean, 25  
Grating spectroscopy, 463  
Gravitational constant, 3, 14  
lensing, 362-363  
waves, 673-682
- Gravity, Earth surface, 15, 51  
planetary surface, 51  
solar surface, 15
- Gray, 598
- Green's theorem, 555
- Greenwich mean time (GMT), 148  
sidereal date (GSD), 174
- Gregorian calendar, 174  
date, 146
- Greek alphabet, 33
- Gyrofrequency, 406-407, 411
- Gyroradius, 406
- Half-life, 27
- Hall conductance, 4  
factor, 411  
resistance, 4
- Hamilton-Jacobi equation, 569  
Hartree energy, 5  
HEAO A1 All Sky Map, 255  
Heat conductivity, 476  
(or diffusion) equation, 569
- Heliocentric, 174
- Helmholtz equation, 569
- Henry, 22
- Henry Draper spectral classification, 101
- Hertzsprung-Russell (HR) diagram, 102-103
- Hexadecimal number system, 25
- HII regions, 194-196
- Hohmann transfer orbit, 724
- Horsepower, 20
- Hot Big Bang, 364
- Hour angle, 148, 150, 153, 175
- H-R (Hertzsprung-Russell) diagram, 101-103
- HST (Hubble Space Telescope), 163-167
- Hubble, classification of galaxies, 122  
constant, 16, 361, 365  
distance, 16, 357  
radius, 352  
Space Telescope, 163-167  
time, 16, 357  
volume, 16
- Hydrogen column density, 251-252, 282  
densities, 117, 250
- Hydrostatic equilibrium equation, 119
- Hypergeometric distribution, 590
- Hyperbola, 573
- IEEE interface, 635
- Illuminance, natural, 491-492
- Image intensifier, 503
- Inclination, 175, 536
- Indefinite integrals, 558
- Index of refraction, air, 495  
X-rays, 464-465
- Infrared background, 135, 216-217  
colors, 223  
colors of stars, 221, 225  
diagnostic lines, 227  
diffuse emission, 216-217  
source temperatures, 229  
sources, 213-215  
spectrophotometric standards, 224  
transmission of the atmosphere, 215
- Integrals, definite, 559  
indefinite, 558
- Intensity, 17, 401

- International atomic time (TAI), 149, 175  
 International Reference Atmosphere, 338  
 International system of units (SI), 2  
 Interplanetary medium, 202  
 Interstellar, absorption, 142  
     abundances, 275-276  
     EUV attenuation, 249  
     extinction, 248  
     gas parameters, 117  
     hydrogen densities, 250  
     magnetic field, 117  
     medium, 202-203  
     medium cross-section, 274-276  
     molecules, 208  
     photoabsorption     cross-sections, 274-276  
     reddening, 142  
     reddening law, 143  
     scintillation, 203  
 Invariable plane, 175  
 Inverse Compton scattering, 396-397  
 Ion collision frequency, 411  
     collision rate, 406  
     gyrofrequency, 406, 411  
     gyroradius, 406  
     Hall factor, 411  
     Pedersen factor, 411  
     plasma frequency, 406  
     sound velocity, 407  
     thermal velocity, 407  
     trapping rate, 406  
 Ionization and excitation data for  
     gases, 519  
     energy, 368-371  
     loss, 434, 436  
 Ionosphere, 205, 343-344, 409-410  
 Ionospheric electron density, 205  
     parameters, 411  
 Isoplanatic patches, 699  
 Jansky, 17, 22  
 JHKLM system, 140  
 Josephson frequency-voltage ratio, 4  
 Joule, 17, 19, 29  
 Julian calendar, 175  
     date (JD), 146, 175  
     date, modified (MJD), 146, 175  
     day number (JD), 175  
     proleptic, 175  
     year, 15, 175  
 K $\alpha$  (alpha) lines, 375, 378-379, 380-381  
 $\beta$  (beta) lines, 375, 378-379, 382  
 edge, 418,-419, 422  
     series, 379, 380-381  
 Kelvin, 21  
 Kepler's third law, 96  
 keV, 17  
 Klein-Nishina cross-section, 394-396  
 Korteweg de Vries equation, 569  
 Kron photographic J and F bands, 141  
 Kronecker delta, 717, 732  
 L $\alpha$  (alpha) lines, 378, 382-383  
      $\beta$  lines, 378, 382-383  
     series, 379  
 Lagrange (libration) points, 542  
 Lemaitre equation, 352  
 Laplace equation, 569  
     transform, 559  
 Laplacian plane, 175  
 Lasers, 495  
 Launch vehicles, 724-725  
 Least-squares fit, 576, 594  
 Legendre equation, 569  
     polynomials, 563, 567  
 LEO, 724  
 Lienard-Wiechert potentials, 387  
 Lenses, 498-500  
 Lensmaker's equation, 500  
 Leptons, isospin, 28  
     mass, 28  
     mean life, 28  
     parity, 28  
     spin, 28  
 Lethal dose, 599  
 Librations, 176  
 Light, speed, 3, 14  
     time, 176  
     year, 17, 18, 176  
 LIGO, 678-680  
 Line spread function, 482  
 Linear absorption coefficient, 401  
     interpolation, 576  
     least-squares, 576, 594  
 Liners, 127  
 LISA, 678, 681-682  
 Local group of galaxies, 121  
 Logic gates, 632  
 Look-back time, 352, 355, 358  
 Lorentz factor ( $\gamma$ ), 348, 387, 391, 396-397  
     force, 349  
     gauge, 400  
     transformation, 348-349, 732-733  
 Loschmidt constant, 11  
 LS coupling, 371  
 Luminance values, 491  
 Luminosity, absolute, 141  
     class, 101

- distance, 353, 355, 359  
functions, 110-111, 116-117  
stellar, 108-109  
vs. surface temperature, 102  
Lunar (see Moon) distance, 15  
phases, 176  
Lunation, 176  
Lyman transitions, 384
- Magnetic dipole moment of Earth, 53, 317  
deuteron, 10  
electron, 6  
field, Earth, 325-326, 411  
muon, 7  
neutron, 9  
planets, 53  
proton, 8  
rigidity, 317
- Magnetosphere, 327
- Magnitude, absolute, 58, 144  
difference, 137  
eclipse, 48  
heterochromatic, 138, 353  
monochromatic, 138  
stellar, 176
- Main sequence, 102, 105, 107-108
- Mass, atomic unit (amu), 10, 12, 14, 19  
attenuation coefficients, 417-431  
data for astronomical objects, 133  
function, 90, 110-111, 261  
loss rate, 236  
relativistic, 348  
rest, 348
- Mathematical formulae, 26  
symbols, 656
- Mathieu equation, 569
- Matrix algebra, 727-730
- Mattig equation, 352
- Maxwell's equations, 349, 399-400, 403
- Maxwell velocity distribution, 408
- Mean anomaly, 176, 537, 537, 653  
elements, 177  
equator and equinox, 177  
free path, 476  
life of elementary particles, 27-28  
magnetic field in a plasma, 408  
place, 177  
solar time, 177  
Sun, 177
- Mesons, 27, 28  
isospin, 28  
mass, 28  
mean life, 28  
parity, 28
- spin, 28
- Messier catalog, 130-132
- Meteor astronomy glossary, 66  
showers, 64
- Meteoroid flux density, 65  
MeV, 29
- Mexican hat wavelet, 735-736
- Mho, 21
- Microchannel plate detector, 521-522
- Micron, 18
- Microwave background, 187-188  
bands, 205
- Mile, nautical, 17, 18  
statute, 17, 18
- Minkowski space-time interval, 350
- MK classification, 101  
spectral types, 105-106
- Modified Julian Date (MJD), 146
- Modulation transfer function (MTF), 482-483
- Molar gas constant, 10  
volume, 11
- Molecules, interstellar, 208
- Moon (see Lunar), apparent magnitude, 144  
Earth mass ratio, 15  
mean distance, 144  
phase law, 144  
physical elements, 54
- Mother wavelet, 733
- MTF, 482-483
- $\mu$ -meson charge, 27  
 $g$ -factor, 7  
isospin, 28  
magnetic moment, 7, 27  
mass, 7  
mean life, 27-28  
spin, 27-28
- Multilayer mirrors, 708-710
- Multinomial theorem, 572
- Nadir, 177
- Nanometer, 18
- Natural satellites, 54-57
- Natural units, 23
- Nautical mile, 15, 18
- Navier-Stokes equation, 569
- Negative binomial (or Pascal) distribution, 590
- Neutrino charge, 27  
magnetic moment, 27  
mass, 27  
mean life, 27  
spin, 27
- Neutron charge, 27  
Compton wavelength, 9  
isospin, 28

- magnetic moment, 27  
 mass, 9, 14, 27-28  
 mean life, 27-28  
 spin, 27-28  
 stars, 133, 260  
 Newton, 20  
 Night sky brightness, 145  
 NIM standard, 693-695  
 NLRGs, 127  
 Node, 178  
 Normal distribution, 591  
 Novae, 98  
 Nuclear detonation, 608  
     magnetron, 4  
     properties of materials, 449-454  
 Number system conversions, 25, 624-626  
 Numerical analysis, 575-576  
     aperture, 500  
     constants, 25  
 Nutation, 15, 156, 178  
     constant, 15  
 OB associations, 94-95  
 Obliquity, 178  
     of the ecliptic, 15, 153, 178  
 Occultation, 178  
 Octal number system, 25  
 Ohm, 12, 21  
 Opposition, 178  
 Optical constants, 467  
     depth, 249  
     interferometry, 699-700  
     material properties, 496-497  
     point spread function, 482-485  
     telescope configurations, 486-487  
 Optically thin plasma, 241-243, 283-287  
 Orbital elements, 536  
 Oscillator strength, 372  
 Osculating element, 178  
 Outgassing rates of polymers, 479  
 Painlevé equation, 569  
 Pair production, 302, 417, 427  
 Parabola, 573  
 Parabolic cylinder equation, 569  
 Parallax, 178  
     solar, 15, 39  
 Parallel interface, 634  
 Parsec, 17, 178  
 Particle production, 319  
 Pascal, 17, 20  
     distribution, 590  
 Paschen curves, 481  
 PDMF (present-day mass function), 110-111  
 Pearson's chi-square ( $\chi^2$ ) test of distribution  
 Peculiar velocity, 178  
 Pedersen factor, 411  
 Penumbra, 179  
 Pericenter, 179  
 Perigee, 179, 536  
 Perihelion, 179  
 Periodic table of the elements, 31-32  
 Permeability of gases, 479  
     of vacuum, 3  
 Permittivity of vacuum, 3  
 Perturbations, 179  
 Phase, 179  
 Photocathode, 502, 509-513  
 Photodiode, 501  
 Photographic magnitude, 141  
 Photometric quantities, 493-494  
     units, 490-491, 493-494  
 Photometry, 488-489  
     astronomical, 137-145  
     filter bands, 139  
     response curves, 139-140  
     standard system, 139  
 Photomultiplier, 507-512  
 Photon, charge, 27  
     magnetic moment, 27  
     mass, 27  
     mean life, 27  
     spin, 27  
 Photopic vision, 488-489  
 Photosphere, 44  
     abundances, 38  
 Photovisual magnitude, 141  
 Physical constants, 3-14  
     quantity, 2  
 Physico-chemical constants, 10  
 $\pi$ -meson, charge, 27  
     isospin, 28  
     magnetic moment, 27  
     mass, 27-28  
     mean life, 27-28  
     spin, 27  
 Planck's constant, 3, 14  
     functions, 388  
     length, 3  
     mass, 2  
     radiation curves, 389  
     time, 3  
 Plane curves, 574  
 Planetocentric coordinates, 179  
 Planetographic coordinates, 179  
 Planets, brightness, 145  
     extrasolar, 69-70  
     magnetic dipole moment, 53  
     maximum visual apparent magnitude, 53

- oblateness, 53  
orbital elements, 51  
physical elements, 52  
solar constant, 53  
visual magnitude, 145  
Plasma emission, 233, 241-242, 283-287, 398-399  
astrophysical, 410  
dimensionless parameters, 407  
frequencies, 406  
lengths, 406  
magnetosphere, 325  
miscellaneous parameters, 407  
parameters, 406-409, 411  
physics, 406-411  
skin depth, 406  
spectra, 233, 241-242, 283-287, 398-399  
velocities, 407  
Plate constants, 667  
Poisson distribution, 586-588, 590  
equation, 569  
Point spread function, 482-485  
Polarization, 204, 399, 456-457, 465  
Positron charge, 27  
magnetic moment, 27  
mass, 27  
mean life, 27  
spin, 27  
Power spectrum, 560  
Powers of 2, 25  
Precession, 180  
reduction, 155-156  
Prefixes, 30  
Probability theory, 580-583  
Bayesian inference, 737-739  
density function, 582  
distributions, 584-592, 590-591  
Propagation of errors, 593  
Proper motion, 180  
Proportional counter, 516-517  
gases, 525  
Proton charge, 27  
Compton wavelength, 8  
electron mass ratio, 7, 14  
energy loss, 437, 440, 442  
gyromagnetic ratio, 8  
isospin, 28  
magnetic moment, 8, 27-28  
mass, 7, 14, 27-28  
range-energy, 438, 441-442  
specific charge, 8  
spin, 27-28  
Proton-proton chain, 118  
Pulsars, 88-92, 258-260, 262-263
- Quadrature, 180, 219, 575  
Quantum calorimeter, 527  
Quantum efficiency, microchannel plate detector, 521  
optical detectors, 506  
X-ray CCD, 521  
photocathodes, 511-512  
Quasars, 3C273, 125, 190, 192, 214, 269-270, 295  
infrared fluxes, 214  
radio fluxes, 191-193  
representative, 125  
selected, 125  
X-ray luminosities, 271  
Quaternions, 720-721
- Rad, 598  
Radiation, blackbody, 229, 388-389  
belts, 606  
Cerenkov, 392  
clinical effects, 607-608  
emission and absorption, 372  
environment, 332  
exposure, 599, 603-604  
length, 436  
levels and exposures, 599, 600  
occupational exposure, permissible, 603-604  
point charge, 387  
synchrotron, 298, 390-391, 455-457  
trapped, 334-337  
weighting factors, 598  
Radiant energy sources, 490  
responsivity, 492  
Radiative diffusion, 119  
loss, 435-437  
transport theory definitions, 401  
Radio, brightest sources, 192-193  
flux calibrators, 198-200  
galaxies, 127  
propagation effects, 201-203  
selected sources, 189-191  
source catalogs, 617  
spectra, 197  
lines, 206-207  
surveys, 186  
telescopes, 160-161  
Radioactive materials, 529  
in selected products, 601  
in the body, 600  
sources, 444-448, 600, 602  
Radiometric quantities, 493-494  
units, 493-494  
Radix, 624-625  
Random variable, 581  
Range-energy for particles, 423, 437-438
- Q, 598

- charged particles in silicon, 442, 444
- heavy charged particles, 441
- Rayleigh, 17, 22
  - distribution, 590
- Rayleigh-Jeans law, 229, 388
- Recombination., electron-ion, 373
  - radiation, 399
- Reddening, 142-143
- Redshift, angular density of sources
  - vs., 356
  - angular diameter vs., 353, 360
  - correction, 353
  - energy flux density, 354
  - functions, 354-356
  - large redshift objects, 128
  - look-back time vs., 352, 355, 358
  - luminosity distance vs., 355
  - magnitude relationship, 353
  - objects with large, 128
  - survey, 136
- Refraction, astronomical, 180
  - correction, 459
  - index, 465, 495, 496, 654
- Relativistic transformations, 348, 402
- Relativity, special, 348
- Rem (roentgen equivalent man), 598
- Resistor color code, 531
- Rest energy, 348, 407, 439
  - mass, 302, 348, 437
- Retrograde motion, 180
- Riccati equation, 569
- Robertson-Walker line element, 350
- Rocking curve, 459
- Roentgen, 598
- Rotation, Faraday, 202
  - measure, 202, 204
- RS232 standard serial interface, 633
- Rydberg constant, 5, 14
- Saha distribution, 372
- Sakur-Tetrode constant, 11
- Satellite artificial, drag pressure, 540
  - lifetimes, 541
  - orbit perturbations, 539
  - orbits, 536-537
  - parameters, 538
- Satellites, natural, orbital data, 54-55
  - physical and photometric, 56-57
- Scalar product, 553
- Scintillation detector, 515
- Schrödinger equation, 569
  - materials, 524
- Scotopic vision, 488-489
- Selection rules, 374
- Selenocentric, 180
- Serial interface, 633
- Set theory, 581
  - symbols, 656
- Seyfert galaxies, 126, 189, 192, 238, 269
- sftp, 741-744
- Sidereal day, 148
  - local time, 148
  - period of planets, 51
  - rotation of Sun, 15, 38
  - second, 21
  - time, 148
  - year, 21
- Siegbahn transition, 380-383
- Sievert, 598
- Seyfert galaxies, 126
- Siemens, 21
- Silicon, charged particles in, 442-444
  - properties, 523
- Simpson's rule, 575
- SIRTF (Space Infrared Telescope Facility), 230-231, 669-672
- Solar (see Sun, also)
  - abundances, 50, 138
  - apex, 39
  - chromosphere, 44
  - constant, 39
  - corona, 44
  - day, 148
  - eclipses, 48-49
  - electron density, 41
  - effective temperature, 39
  - EUV flux, 43
  - flare, 39, 300, 329-330
  - gravity, 15
  - high energy particle radiation, 332
  - irradiance, 329-330
  - luminosity, 38
  - magnetic field strength, 38, 39
  - magnitude, 39, 42, 145
  - mass, 15
  - mean density, 15
  - neighborhood density, 120
  - parallax, 39
  - photosphere, 44
  - radiation storms, 332
  - radius, 15
  - spectral irradiance, 42, 331
  - spectral type, 39
  - spectrum, 47, 331
  - system abundances, 50
  - system contents, 68
  - temperature, 38, 39
  - time, 148
  - ultraviolet radiation, 329-331
  - wind, 44, 328
  - X-ray radiation, 329-331
- Solid-state detector, 520

- materials, 524  
Solstice, 181  
Sommerfeld transition, 380-383  
Space  
    Infrared Telescope Facility (SIRTF), 230-231  
    launch sites, 545  
    shuttle, 543-544  
    Telescope, 163-167  
    transportation system, 543-544  
Spacecraft Tracking and Data Network (STDN) facilities, 546  
Spark chamber, 528  
Special relativity, 348-349  
Spectra, blackbody, EUV, 241-243  
    radio source, 197  
    UV, 234-235  
    X-ray, 281, 283-286  
Spectral features, infrared and visible, 104  
gamma-ray, 301  
EUV, 244  
irradiance for a star, 139  
irradiance of the Sun, 42  
matching factors, 509-510  
radio, 206-207  
type, 101  
ultraviolet, 244  
X-ray, 281  
Spectrograph, 461-463  
    grazing incidence, 462  
Spectroscopic terminology, 371  
Spectroscopy, crystal, 459  
Spectrum nomogram, 404  
    grating, 463  
Speed of light, 3,14  
Spherical astronomy, 146-156  
    harmonics, 563  
Spitzer Space Telescope, 230-231, 669-672  
Standard epoch, 181  
Standard photometric system, 224  
Stars (see stellar, also), absolute magnitude, 107  
binary, 96  
brightest, 75-82  
charts, 71-72  
classification, 97-98, 107  
counts, 116  
density of, 115  
giant, 105-107, 109  
infrared emission, 213  
integrated light, 114  
large proper motion, 86  
nearest, 83-85  
number densities, 112-113  
relative numbers, 114  
ultraviolet spectra, 234-235  
variable, 97-99  
X-ray emission, 256-257, 264  
Stationary point, 181  
Statute mile, 17, 18  
STDN (Spacecraft Tracking and Data Network) facilities, 546  
Stefan-Boltzmann constant, 11, 14  
    law, 388  
Stellar (see stars, also)  
    density, 108-109  
    EUV sources, 237-239  
    luminosity, 108-109  
    luminosity function, 116-117  
    magnitude, 107, 115, 144  
    mass, 108-109  
    mass function, 110-111  
    mass loss rates, 236  
    radius, 108-109  
    spectral radiance, 137  
    structure equations, 119  
    surface flux, 236  
    temperatures, 102  
    UV spectra, 234-235  
    winds, 236  
    X-ray flux, 256-257  
Steradian, 22  
Stokes' theorem, 555  
Stopping power, 604  
Submillimeter lines, 228  
Sun (see solar, also)  
    absolute magnitude, 39, 145  
    abundances (photospheric), 38, 50  
    age, 39  
    aphelion distance, 39  
    bolometric correction, 39  
    brightness, 39, 145  
    butterfly diagram, 46  
    color index, 145  
    coronal mass ejection (CME), 39  
    distance from Galactic center, 39  
    -Earth dependent parameters, 39  
    -Earth mass ratio, 15  
    -Earth mean distance, 39  
    electron density, 41  
    escape velocity, 38  
    EUV flux, 43  
    flare frequency, 39  
    Fraunhofer lines, 47  
    height above Galactic disk, 120  
    irradiance, 43  
    luminosity, 38  
    magnetic field, 38, 39  
    mass, 15, 38  
    mean density, 15, 38  
    moment of inertia, 38  
    oblateness, 39

- perihelion distance, 39  
 period of rotation, 15  
 radiation emittance, 38  
 radiation intensity, 38  
 radius, 15, 38  
 semidiameter at mean distance, 15,  
     39  
 sidereal rotation, 38  
 solid angle at mean distance, 39  
 specific mean energy production, 38  
 spectral irradiance, 42  
 planets, 219  
 stars, brightest, 220  
 Sun, 218  
 spectral type, 39  
 Standard Model parameters, 38  
 Structure, 44  
 synodic rotation, 39  
 synodic period, 39  
 sunspot cycle, 38  
 sunspot numbers, 45  
 surface area, 38  
 surface gravity, 15, 38  
 surface volume, 38  
 temperature, 39, 41  
 velocity around Galactic center, 39  
 velocity relative to CBR, 39  
 velocity relative to nearby stars, 39  
 X-ray luminosity, 39  
 Sun-Earth system constants, 15, 39  
 Sunrise, sunset, 181  
 Sunspot, magnetic field, 38  
     numbers, 45  
 Sunyaev-Zeldovich Effect, 363  
 Surface gravity, Earth, 15  
     Sun, 15  
 Supernovae remnants, 100  
     X-ray emitting, 265  
 Symbols, 30  
 Symbols and abbreviations, 652-656  
 Synchrotron radiation, 298, 390-391,  
     455-457  
 Synodic period, 181  
     of planets, 181  
     rotation of Sun, 15, 39
- $t$  distribution, 591  
 Taylor series, 575  
 Telegraph equation, 569  
 Telescopes, Compton, 528  
     configurations, 486-487  
     ground-based, 157-161  
     Hubble Space Telescope (HST),  
         162-167  
     infrared, 230-231  
     radio, 160  
     reflecting, 157
- refracting, 158  
 Schmidt, 159  
 spark chamber, 528  
 X-ray, 288-289
- Telluric, 47
- Temperature**, brightness, 229  
     color, 229, 512  
     effective, 142, 229  
     electron, 196, 328, 410, 654  
     of the interstellar gas, 117  
     luminosity diagram, 102  
     solar distribution, 41  
     surface, 102
- Tensor transformations**, 349, 731-733
- Terminator**, 182
- Terrestrial dynamical time (TDT,**  
     TT), 149, 181
- Tesla**, 17, 22
- Thermonuclear reactions**, 691
- Thomson cross-section**, 6, 14, 302,  
     396, 654  
     limit, 396-397
- Time**, 146  
     barycentric dynamical (TDB), 149  
     equation of, 150  
     sidereal, 148  
     solar, 148  
     standard, 147  
     terrestrial dynamical, 149, 171, 181  
     universal, 147, 149, 182  
     zones, 147
- Topocentric**, 182
- Torr**, 17
- Transmission grating spectroscopy**,  
     463
- Trapezoidal rule**, 575
- Transit**, 182
- Tricomi equation**, 569
- Tropical year**, 15, 20-21, 148, 183
- True anomaly**, 182, 536  
     equator and equinox, 182
- Twilight**, 182
- UBV primary standard stars**, 140  
**UBVRI system**, 139
- UHURU unit**, 17
- Ultraviolet (UV) absorption**, 247  
     atmospheric radiance, 324  
     background fluxes, 240  
     emission lines, 245  
     extinction, 248  
     fluorescent converters, 514  
     spectral features, 244  
     transmission, 513  
     stellar spectra, 234-235  
     window transmission, 513
- Umbra**, 182

- Uniform distribution, 591  
Unit conversions, 17-24  
    definitions, 661-662  
Units of gas quantity, 478  
Universal constants, 3  
    time(UT), 148-149, 182  
    time coordinated (UTC), 148-149,  
        170  
Universe, background radiation, 135  
    Friedmann, 351  
    mass-radius-density of  
        astronomical objects, 133  
Unix, 636-643  
    command summary, 640-643  
    directory navigation, 638  
    file redirection, 639  
    file system, 636  
    permissions, 637  
USB, 745-747  
US Standard Atmosphere, 341-342
- Vacuum technology, 476  
Variable stars, 97-99  
Vector algebra, 730  
    analysis, 553-556  
    product, 554  
Vernal equinox, 148, 183, 536  
vi editor guide, 644-646  
Viscosity, 476  
Visual extinction, 142  
Vlasov equation, 691
- Water vapor in the atmosphere, 339  
Watt, 20  
Wave equation, 569  
Wavelet transforms, 733-736  
Weak coupling constant, 16  
Weber, 22  
Weibull distribution, 590  
White dwarfs, bright, 87  
Wien's displacement law constant,  
    11, 388  
    law, 388  
Wilson-Bappu, 107  
Window materials, UV detectors, 513  
    X-ray detectors, 526  
Wolter mirror, 475
- XMM-Newton X-ray Observatory,  
    289  
X-ray absorption, 274-280  
    atomic energy levels, 375-378  
    attenuation, 279  
    background, 273  
    characteristic lines, 461  
Crab Nebula spectrum, 266  
detector materials, 524-526
- detectors, 514-527  
emission from binaries, 256-257  
emission from galaxies, 268-269  
emission from stars, 256-257, 264  
emission from supernova remnants,  
    265  
energy levels, 375-378  
energy level diagram, 379  
filters, 526  
line emission, 283-286  
luminosity, 3C 273, 270  
luminosity, quasars, 271  
material properties, 525-526  
mirror, 475  
model spectral distributions, 281  
observatory, 288, 289  
optical constants, 467  
plasma spectra, 283-287  
pulsars, 258-260, 262-263  
reflection of, 464-465  
reflectivity, 466-472  
source map, 255  
source nomogram, 272  
sources, 256-271  
spectra, 283-286  
spectral features, 281  
spectroscopy, 459-463  
standards, 13  
supernova remnants, 265  
telescope, 288-289  
unit conversions and equivalencies,  
    290  
wavelengths, 380-383  
XU unit, 13, 17
- Year, 183  
    Besselian, 183  
    calendar year, 183  
    Julian, 183  
    tropical, 15, 20-21, 148, 183  
Yerkes classification, 101
- Zenith, 183  
    distance, 183  
Zodiac, 152